

RASHTRAPATI BHAVAN
LIBRARY



Reg. No. 738 Vol. T

Clas. No. VIII - T



SOCIAL ENGLAND

ILLUSTRATED EDITION—VOL. I.

*FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ACCESSION OF
EDWARD THE FIRST.*

THE
ILLUSTRATED EDITION

OF

SOCIAL ENGLAND.

VOLUME II. will be published in the Spring and
VOLUME III. in the Autumn of 1902.
The work will be completed in Six Volumes.

ROMAN BRITAIN

by F. Haverfield

English Miles 0 20 40 60 80 100
Roman Miles 0 20 40 60 80 100



Errors
Towns and villages
Cities and fortresses
Roads
do dubious

DVMNONII
DEVA
Cannabritum

Tribe names thus
Large towns
Lesser towns and fort.
Maiden names
Contours above 500 ft
above 1000 ft

Ancient names
Large towns
Lesser towns and fort.
Maiden names
Contours above 500 ft
above 1000 ft

SOCIAL EVOLUTION

A Record of the Progress of the People

*IN RELIGION, LAWS, LEARNING, ARTS, INDUSTRY, COMMERCE,
SCIENCE, LITERATURE AND MANNERS, FROM THE EARLIEST
TIMES TO THE PRESENT DAY*

EDITED BY

R. D. KARL DOLL

SOMETIME FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, OXFORD

AND

T. A. CLUNN

SOMETIME FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, OXFORD

VOLUME I

CASSELL AND COMPANY, LIMITED

LONDON, PARIS, NEW YORK & MELBOURNE.—MCMII

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED



First Edition *October* 1893.

Reprinted January 1894, 1895.

Revised and partly re-written *January* 1898.

Reprinted April 1898.

Illustrated Edition, 1901.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
NOTES ON ILLUSTRATIONS	ix
LIST OF CONTRIBUTORS	xli
PREFATORY NOTE TO ILLUSTRATED EDITION (<i>J. S. Mann</i>)	xliii
INTRODUCTION (<i>H. D. Traill</i>)	xlvii

CHAPTER I.

ENGLAND BEFORE THE ENGLISH.

CELTIC BRITAIN (<i>O. M. Edwards</i>)	1
ROMAN BRITAIN, A.D. 43-410 (<i>F. T. Richards</i>)	37
THE ROMAN ARMY IN BRITAIN (<i>F. Haverfield</i>)	76
HEATHEN BRITAIN (<i>R. Camber-Williams</i>)	106
CHRISTIAN BRITAIN (<i>R. Camber-Williams</i>)	113
ART IN EARLY BRITAIN (<i>R. Hughes</i>)	122
THE ART OF ROMAN BRITAIN (<i>F. Haverfield</i>)	136
THE ENGLISH BEFORE ENGLAND (<i>F. Haverfield</i>)	161
AUTHORITIES	167

CHAPTER II.

FROM ROMAN TO NORMAN. A.D. 287-1066.

THE DECLINE OF THE ROMAN POWER (<i>F. York Powell</i>)	169
BRITAIN UNDER THE ENGLISH (<i>F. York Powell</i>)	175

NOTES TO ILLUSTRATIONS.

VOLUME I.

	PAGE
MAP OF ROMAN BRITAIN. (By Mr. F. Haverfield)	<i>Frontispiece</i>
IBERIAN AND CELTIC RACIAL TYPES, FROM THE RHONDDHA VALLEY	2
BOSNIAC COMMUNAL HOMESTEAD	5
<p>Reproduced, by permission, from A. J. Evans, <i>Through Bosnia and the Herzegovina on Foot during the Insurrection</i>, 2nd edition. London, 1877, p. 56 <i>seqq.</i> The original is a sketch taken at Bukovje, near Brod, on the Hungarian Military Frontier.</p>	
REMAINS OF A BRITISH VILLAGE AT CHYSAUSTER, CORNWALL	9
<p>In Gulval parish, near Penzance. Partly excavated by the late Mr. W. C. Borlase in 1873. It covered several acres, and consisted of eight or ten hut clusters, each walled round. The one which was then excavated was an oval ninety-five feet long, with chambers in the encircling wall opening into a central court. Traces were found of a hearth with a seat by it, of a small furnace, and of a mill-room. Similar structures are found in Carnarvonshire. See <i>Archæological Journal</i>, Vol. XXX., 1873, p. 325 <i>seqq.</i></p>	
GOLD COIN OF CUNOBELINUS	10
<p>His reign may probably fall between the years 5 and 40 A.D. (see Evans, <i>Coins of the Ancient Britons</i>, p. 284 <i>seqq.</i>).</p>	
BRONZE FIBULA OF BRITISH DESIGN, FROM SILCHESTER	11
"OLD MEN'S WORKINGS," BUNNY CLIFFS, ST. JUST, CORNWALL	14
BRITISH ENAMELLED ORNAMENTS	16
<p>Of these, <i>a</i> and <i>b</i> were found at Westhall, Suffolk (<i>Archæologia</i>, XXXVI., 454); <i>c</i>, of late British workmanship, was found in London (<i>Horæ Ferales</i>, Plate XIX.).</p>	
BRITISH BRONZE HELMET AND BOWL	17
<p>The horned helmet was found in the Thames near Waterloo Bridge, the bowl at Lochar Moss, Dumfries-shire.</p>	
SEVERN CORACLE TO-DAY	19
REMAINS OF TEMPLE AT LYDNEY PARK, GLOUCESTERSHIRE, AND OBJECTS FOUND THERE	21
<p>The oculist's stamp, cut in slate, was used to authenticate the eye-water compounded by the oculist Julius Jucundus: viz. "collyrium stactum," to be dropped into the eye: "collyrium melinum," containing oxide of copper; and "collyrium pencillatum," applied with a brush to the conjunctiva. A list of all such stamps discovered in the Roman Empire is given in the <i>Revue Archéologique</i>, 1893. The figure of Victory, "standing on the globe as if just alighted," is "an unmistakable specimen of Romano-British art" (Bathurst). The wolf-hound is probably Greek in workmanship. The cock, in bronze (used as a candlestick), may have</p>	

been part of the furniture of the temple (Bathurst, *Excavations at Lydney Park*). *C. I. Lat.*, VII., 1309.

WEAPONS AND TRUMPET. BRONZE AGE IN BRITAIN 25

The trumpet comes from Dunmanway, Ireland; the celts respectively from Bandon and Yorkshire: the dagger with handle was found in the Thames: the longer sword in the Medway, the shorter in the Lea; the broadest spear-head was found in Plaistow Marshes, the smallest in Naxby, Lincolnshire: the long, narrow one in a hoard in the south of England.

TIRES AND NAVES OF CHARIOT WHEELS; IRON MIRROR AND BITS. . . 29

These were found in a barrow at Arras, East Riding of Yorkshire (*cf.* Greenwell, *British Barrows*, p. 454).

BRITISH BRONZE ARMLET WITH TRACES OF ENAMEL 35

Found near Drummond Castle, Perthshire.

BRONZE JUG IN THE HUNTERIAN MUSEUM, GLASGOW 37

Discovered near Lesmahagow in 1807, in a stratum of clay at the bottom of a small stream. The bottom is marked by concentric circles beautifully turned, the body is plain; the figures on the lower part of the handle have been interpreted as Minerva with her owl; more probably they represent a girl playing with a pet bird with Cupid above her. On the handle is a draped shield with a Gorgon's head. The handle divides at top, clasping each side of the jug with the bill of a duck. The leaf above it is for the thumb to rest on in pouring out liquid. Similar but earlier jugs have been found in Pompeii, and are stated to be imitated from Alexandrian silverware of the age of the Ptolemies (Macdonald, *Catalogue of the Museum*).

COINS OF DUMNOVELLAUNUS (OR DUMNOBELLAUNUS) AND TINCOMMIUS 39

These gold coins are figured and described in Sir John Evans's *Coins of the Ancient Britons*, Plates IV., No. 7 (Dumnovellaunus); I., Nos. 13 and 14. Their weight is about 82 grains each. The first was found at Walton-on-the-Naze.—Commus, a British prince perhaps identical with the Gaul Commius mentioned in Caesar's Commentaries, had three sons, Tincommius, Verica, and Eppillus. These seem to have ruled over South-Eastern England (Kent, Surrey, and Sussex), whether jointly or separately is uncertain. Coins of all exist: *cf.* Evans, *op. cit.*

ROMAN ANTIQUITIES, SILCHESTER, HANTS 43

The Forum measures 276 feet by 313 feet. The eagle was found in one of the small rooms to the left of the basilica, under ten inches of burnt timber. The wings, which were erect in the middle of the back and were gilded, are missing; the broken talons show it had been wrenched from the standard. The bird is nine inches long, and each feather is carefully finished. It may have been hidden in the roof to avoid capture during the civil war of Carausius and Allectus (Chapter II.), and the whole fell in a fire of much later date: *cf.* Joyce, in *Archæologia*, XLVI., 363.

BRONZE COIN OF CARAUSIUS, STRUCK AT CAMULODUNUM 45

Obverse, head of Carausius, with inscription describing him as Imperator and Augustus; reverse, Peace (Pax), holding out wreath and leaning on spear; below, mint mark C (Camulodunum). This coin is not among the 413 types of Carausius's coinage catalogued by

Cohen and Feuardent, *Description Historique des Monnaies frappées sous l'Empire Romain.*

VIROCONIUM, WROXETER, NEAR SHREWSBURY 46

This represents the northern side of the old wall. The explorations, begun in 1859, are described by the late T. Wright in the *Journal of the British Archaeological Association*, Vol. XV. See also Vol. LIV. p. 123.

THE OLD ROMAN BATH AT BATH BEFORE RESTORATION 47

The great bath, placed in a hall 111 feet 4 inches long by 66 feet 6 inches wide, is about 6 feet 8 inches deep. The bottom measures 73 feet 2 inches by 29 feet 6 inches (*cf.* C. E. Davis, *The Excavations of Roman Baths in Bath*).

THE ROMAN PHAROS, OR LIGHTHOUSE, AT DOVER CASTLE 49

According to Canon Puckle, "Vestiges of Roman Dover," *Archæologia Cantiana*, Vol. XX., p. 128, it is "perhaps one of the most genuine examples of Roman work of its rough and massive period." Traces of a similar building, according to the same authority, were found in one of the casemates on the Western Hill, and point to the existence of a double system of signal lights to assist navigation.

DIPLOMA OF ROMAN CITIZENSHIP 51

Two tablets of copper, folding one over the other, presumably so as to be carried on the person as proof of citizenship: found in 1812, at Malpas in Cheshire, on the left of the Roman road to Viroconium; recording a grant by the Emperor Trajan of citizenship and "conubium" (or the right of marriage into Roman citizen-families) to certain time-expired soldiers from Thracian, Pannonian, Tungrian, and other auxiliary troops "now in Britain under L. Neratius Marcellus," who have served twenty-five years or more. The grantees are named, and an inscription at Rome is referred to as confirmation. L. Neratius Marcellus appears to have been Governor of Britain A.D. 101-103. The inscription will be found in *C. I. Lat.*, Vol. VII., No. 1193.

VOTIVE TABLET FROM THE CREW OF THE *TRIEMIS RADIAN* 54

Found at Montreuil, near Boulogne. The centre figure (presumably a divine being) has rays around its head, and is nude. That on the right holds a saucer (patera) over an altar on which is a fire. The other figure is unrecognisable. Below are two triremes, and the two side figures are supposed to represent officers of the fleet. See E. Desjardins, *Géographie de la Gaule Romaine*, I., pp. 364-368.

ROMAN AMPHITHEATRE, DORCHESTER, DORSET 56

It is (roughly) oval, 219 feet by 138 feet, and in area not much less than the Colosseum at Rome. About 10,000 persons were able to find room in it to witness the execution of a murderess in 1705.

PLAN OF THE FORUM AND ITS NEIGHBOURHOOD, SILCHESTER 57

Reproduced, with some verbal modifications, from the plan published by the Society of Antiquaries of London.

The Forum proper is about 142 feet by 130. The small chambers between the outer and inner ambulatories (arcades) were probably used as shops. The black lines in the plan represent walls, the hatched lines foundations of walls. See G. E. Fox, *Archæologia*, Vol. LIII., p. 540. The Christian church was discovered in 1892, and is ascribed to the fourth century.

	PAGE
ROMANO-BRITISH SCULPTURE: HERCULES AND HESIONE	58
<p>Found in the North City Wall, Chester, 1891; 1st or 2nd cent. A.D. <i>See</i> Haverfield, <i>Catalogue of the Grosvenor Museum, Chester</i>, No. 138.</p>	
RING WITH INSCRIPTION, "UTERE FELIX"	59
BAS-RELIEF OF DEAE MATRES (FOUND AT CIRENCESTER, 1899)	60
<p>The worship of this triad of kindly goddesses, whose "attributes are the fruits of the field and the horn of plenty," is nowhere referred to in Latin literature, but was extensively practised in some parts of Western Europe, especially Cisalpine and Narbonese Gaul, Lower Germany, and some districts of Britain. In Rome itself hardly any traces of it have been found. It seems to be associated specially with the army, and to have been either German or Keltic in origin. Haverfield, <i>Archæologia Æliana</i>, Vol. XV.</p>	
MOSAIC AT BRADING, ISLE OF WIGHT.	61
<p>The whole design (given p. 150) represents a female head (possibly Harmonia) surrounded by three medallions, containing respectively the mancock here shown, a gladiatorial combat, and a fox stealing into a vineyard. These have been interpreted as morning, noon and night-fall. The beasts are possibly winged panthers, the panther being sacred to Bacchus. Morgan, <i>Roman Mosaic Pavements</i>, p. 234.</p>	
THE GODDESS COVENTINA ON A WATER LILY	62
<p>Not otherwise known in Roman mythology. Apparently the deity of the well of Procolitia (<i>see</i> Map of Roman Wall on p. 86). This well was rediscovered and reopened during a dry summer, and this stone, with others, including a carving of three nymphs, attendants of the goddess, and ten altars, besides a few coins, was then found (1876). The inscription records the dedication of the image to the goddess Coventina by Titus Domitius Cosconianus, prefect of the first cohort of the Batavians. <i>Archæologia Æliana</i>, VIII. <i>Ephemeris Epigraphica</i>, IV.</p>	
ÆSCULAPIUS AND HYGIEA. FOUND AT BINCHESTER (VINOVIUM).	63
<p><i>Ephemeris Epigraphica</i>, VII., 979.</p>	
MITHRAIC STONE FOUND IN LONDON IN 1889	64
<p>Mithras-worship, introduced by the Orientals in the Roman armies, was widely diffused throughout the Empire from the second to the fourth century A.D. The god is here represented as slaying a bull (whose blood typifies the generative principle in nature) and attended by torch-bearers; the figures outside the medallion are Signs of the Zodiac. <i>See</i> Cumont, in Roscher, <i>Ausführliches Lexicon d. Gr. u. Röm. Mythologie</i> (1884), <i>sub voc.</i> Mithras. The cave mentioned in the text, at Chapel Hill near Housesteads, was discovered in 1822. <i>Archæologia Æliana</i>, O.S., I., p. 263.</p>	
TOMBSTONE OF CENTURION AND HIS WIFE IN WHITE SANDSTONE	65
<p>Found in the North City Wall, Chester, 1891. A tombstone to the memory of Marcus Aurelius Nepos, centurion of the Twentieth Legion, "set up by his devoted wife. He lived fifty years."—<i>Ephemeris Epigraphica</i>, VII., 889. Haverfield, <i>Catalogue of the Grosvenor Museum, Chester</i>, No. 37.</p>	
CHRISTIAN MONOGRAM, STAMPED ON BLOCK OF LEAD	66
<p>Several such blocks have been found in the Thames near Battersea, stamped with the maker's name, Syagrius, the monogram XP (Chi</p>	

Rho, the first two letters of the Greek word Christos), and in one case Spes in Deo (Hope in God). Haverfield, *Romano-British Inscriptions*, II., No. 84; *Archæological Journal*, XLIX.

BLOCK OF LEAD FROM LUTUDARUM, NEAR WIRKSWORTH, DERBYSHIRE 67

About 20½ in. by 4½ in.; weight, 83 lb.; found about the year 1783 at Matlock Moor, Derbyshire. The inscription reads, L. Aruconi Verecundi metal(lorum) Lut(udarensium). See *Corpus Insc. Lat.*, VII., 1214; but the correct name of the place is apparently Lutudarum, not Lutudæ. For other such blocks found in Britain see Philipps and May, *Archæological Journal*, XVI. (1859), and Haverfield, *Archæological Journal*, XLVII., p. 257, and *Proceedings of the Society of Antiquaries*, 1894, p. 188. The block with a date equivalent to A.D. 49, mentioned in the text, is described in *Corpus Insc. Lat.*, VII., 1201, but is now lost.

POT OF DUROBRIVIAN WARE, WITH HUNTING SCENE 63

JET ORNAMENTS OF ROMANO-BRITISH PERIOD 69

Found in various excavations at York. The figures are a little less than one-fourth the natural size.

REMAINS OF ROMAN VILLA AT DARENTH, KENT 71

The upper floor of the room was taken off to show the construction of the hypocaust. The villa, one of the largest yet found in Britain, is described in *Archæologia Cantiana*, XXII., p. 49 *seqq.*

TOWER OF GATEWAY OF ROMAN WALL, PEVENSEY 75

INSCRIPTION OF RUSTIUS, A ROMAN LEGIONARY 77

Probably 1st century A.D. Found in North City Wall, Chester, 1887. It may be freely translated thus: "To the memory of Publius Rustius Crescens of the Fabia tribe, who was born at Brixia [Brescia, in North Italy], and died at the age of thirty after ten years' service in the Twentieth Legion, this stone was set up by Groma, his heir."—*Ephemeris Epigraphica*, VII., 899. Haverfield, *Catalogue of the Grosvenor Museum*, No. 49.

FIGURE OF BOWMAN FROM HOUSESTEADS (BORCOVICUM) 79

44 in. by 23 in. Bruce, *Lapidarium Septentrionale*, p. 122.

PLAN OF HARDKNOTT FORT, CUMBERLAND 81

A small hill fort garrisoned by auxiliary troops. Plan from the *Proceedings of the Cumberland and Westmoreland Archæological Society*, XII.

WESTERN GATEWAY IN ROMAN FORT AT BIRDOSWALD (AMBOGLANNA) 82

THE ROMAN WALL NEAR HOUSESTEADS 85

The low wall on the left is, of course, modern and irrelevant.

MAP OF HADRIAN'S WALL. (By Mr. F. Haverfield) 86

A BIT OF THE ROMAN WALL 88

SECTION OF HADRIAN'S WALL 89

INSCRIBED ALTARS, FOUND AT ELLENBOROUGH. 91

The ancient Uxellodunum, near Maryport; these altars are preserved at Netherhall, the seat of Mr. H. P. Senhouse. Bruce, *Lapidarium Septentrionale: C. I. Lat.*, VII., 367-418.

	PAGE
MAP OF WALL OF ANTONINUS PIUS (By Mr. F. Haverfield) . . .	92
PLAN OF BREMENIUM	93
Excavations here made in 1852 are described by Bruce, <i>Lapidarium Septentrionale</i> .	
ROMAN SLAB FROM BRIDGENESS, CARRIDEN	95
In the National Museum of the Society of Antiquaries of Scotland, Edinburgh. Dimensions, 9 feet by 3 feet. Sculptured sandstone, found near the east end of Pius's Wall. The inscription states that the Second Legion (Augusta) constructed 4,652 "paces," or about $4\frac{1}{2}$ miles, of the wall for the Emperor Antoninus Pius. To the reader's left is a mounted Roman soldier, galloping over two slain and two living Caledonians. They are naked, but armed with spear, sword, dagger and square shield. On the other side, sacrifice of the Suovetaurilia (an offering of bull, sheep and pig, originally made by Roman farmers to purify their land; afterwards extended to military and other uses). . <i>C. I. Lat.</i> , VII., 1088.	
FACE OF NORTH CITY WALL, CHESTER, SHOWING PLINTH . . .	97
MULTANGULAR TOWER, YORK	101
The lower courses are Roman. The tower in the museum gardens once formed one of the angle towers in the wall of the Roman town. It has ten sides, and consists of neat and regular courses of small square blocks of stone, with bands of red brick.	
BURGH CASTLE, SUFFOLK (four miles south-west of Yarmouth) . .	104
RICHBOROUGH, NEAR SANDWICH	105
Roach Smith, <i>Antiquities of Richborough</i> . On the changes in the coast line, see <i>Archæologia Cantiana</i> , Vols. VIII and XXII. The place is also supposed to have been the landing-place of Augustine (p. 225).	
STATUETTES OF ROMAN DEITIES, BRITISH MUSEUM	106, 107
Found at various places in Britain—the Mars in Norfolk; the Jupiter at West Stoke, Sussex; the Apollo in the bed of the Thames, near London Bridge. <i>Archæologia</i> , Vol. XXVII., 46. For the Mercury see <i>Archæologia</i> , XXVIII.	
PLAQUE OF DEUS NODENS, LYDNEY	109
PECTILLUS AND THE WOLF	109
A votive tablet to the god Nodens, probably commemorating an escape from a wolf in "the vast Silurian forest" west of Lydney. Pectillus (a diminutive from <i>pecten</i> , a comb, or the instrument used for playing the lyre) was presumably either a valet or a musician, in service at Lydney. Bathurst, <i>Antiquities at Lydney Park</i> , Plate 20; <i>C. I. Lat.</i> , VII., 139.	
THE GLASTONBURY THORN	114
The original thorn was destroyed by Puritans, under Elizabeth and Charles I. It bloomed on Christmas Day, and its blossoms were taken abroad as great curiosities by Bristol merchants (Hearne, <i>History of Glastonbury</i> , 1722). Its place is marked by a stone on Wearyall	

Hill. Trees grafted from it still exist in the town, and one of them is here represented in bloom.

CHURCH OF LLANFIHANGEL GENEU'R-GLYN, NEAR BORTH 116

Anciently in a mountain fastness. (*See* text.)

ST. ILLTYD'S CROSS, LLANTWIT MAJOR 117

Ninth century; bears Illtyd's name and other inscriptions in Latin, one recording its erection by Samson. Haddan and Stubbs, *Councils*, I., p. 628. The monastery and school founded by St. Illtyd, soldier, saint, and practical agriculturist, flourished till the twelfth century, when its revenues were assigned to Tewkesbury Abbey. Fryer, *Llantwit Major*.

ST. BEUNO'S CHEST, CLYNNOG, CARNARVONSHIRE 119

St. Beuno's Church, Clynnog, Carnarvonshire, one of the finest in North Wales, is Late Perpendicular; it contains the reputed tomb of the saint, which is medieval, and this primitive chest for pilgrims' offerings at his shrine. St. Beuno's Well is adjacent.

DRAWING OF HORSE'S HEAD ON BONE, BRITISH MUSEUM 122

From Cresswell Crags, N.E. Derbyshire; found in 1875. *See* Boyd Dawkins, *Early Man in Britain*, p. 185.

DRAWING OF MAMMOTH ON BONE 123

From the Caves of La Madelaine, Dordogne, France. Boyd Dawkins, *op. cit.*

REMAINS OF NEOLITHIC AGE, BRITISH MUSEUM 125

The arrowheads are from the East Riding of Yorkshire. Below, the adze on the left is from Stourpaine, Dorset; the perforated celts were found respectively at Twickenham, Threadneedle Street, and Stanwick, Yorks. The long, slightly curved implements are knives.

STONEHENGE, FROM THE NORTH-WEST 128

A *précis* of some of the theories as to its purpose will be found in Rev. L. Gidley's *Stonehenge*, Salisbury, 1873. *Cf.* also A. J. Evans, *Archæological Review*, II.

LATE CELTIC SHIELD, BRITISH MUSEUM 129

Horæ Ferales, XV., 7.

ENTRANCE TO NEW GRANGE CAIRN, NEAR DROGHEDA 130

Cf. Fergusson, *Rude Stone Monuments*, pp. 43, 52. A passage leads from the entrance to a cruciform chamber, rudely roofed by converging stones.

LATE CELTIC GOLD ARTICLES, FOUND IN WALES AND N.W. IRELAND . . 131

a. Corselet, found at Mold, North Wales, in 1833, in a barrow, with human remains and amber beads. The part remaining weighs 17 oz. *Archæologia*, XXVI., 422. *b, c, d.* Late Celtic collar, bowl, and boat with oars, turned up by a ploughshare, near the north-west coast of Ireland. Presumably a thank-offering from a king to a sea-god. Evans, *Archæologia*, LV., p. 390.

EARLY BRITISH GOLD COIN 133

The design of this gold coin is indirectly derived (*see* text) from the stater of Philip II. of Macedon. The laurelled head and the two-horse chariot of the original have here respectively degenerated into decorative crescents (one representing a serpent) and one disjointed

horse with three tails and a single wheel underneath him. Evans, <i>Anc. Br. Coins</i> , Plate B., No. 9; <i>see also</i> p. 24.	
CHILLINGHAM CATTLE, FROM THE PAINTING BY SIR E. LANDSEER, R.A.	135
They are nearly pure white, with red ears and brownish muzzle; and are preserved in Chillingham Park, Northumberland (the purest breed); Cadzow Park, Lanark; Lyme Park, Cheshire; and Chartley, Staffordshire. According to Hughes, <i>Archæologia</i> , LV., the breed is largely descended from Roman stock; but this view is uncommon.	
HORSE TRAPPINGS FOUND AT STANWICK	137
SAMIAN WARE, BRITISH MUSEUM	139
The largest vase was found at Felixstowe, Suffolk; that on the left in White Hart Court, Bishopsgate, London.	
VASE WITH MILITARY GLADIATORS, COLCHESTER MUSEUM	140
Durobrivian ware, found in 1853 in an excavation at Colchester; 9 in. high, 7 broad. Bas reliefs: (1) a man irritating a bear, which another man is about to attack with clubs; (2) a combat of gladiators, <i>secutor</i> and <i>retiarus</i> ; the latter, who carried a net in which he had to entangle his pursuer, is prostrate and about to be slain; (3) hare and stags, pursued by dogs. Between the reliefs are scrolls and foliage. An inscription seems to give names to the gladiators. The vessel has been used as a cinerary urn. Roach Smith, <i>Collectanea</i> , III., IV.; <i>C. I. Lat.</i> VII., 1335.	
INSCRIBED GLASS VASE, FOUND AT COLCHESTER	141
About 4 in. high; shows chariot race, with inscription: "Hierax Va(le) Olympæ Va(le) Antiloce Va(le). Ave Crescens"; <i>i.e.</i> Crescens bids good-bye to his competitors and is hailed as victor.	
RIBCHESTER GOLD BROOCH, BLACKBURN MUSEUM	142
Found in 1884 at the ancient gateway of Ribchester, near Blackburn, at a depth of 8 ft. Weight, 373 grains; 2 in. long, 1 in. across the bow; could also be worn as a pendant. Roman gold brooches are rare. Smith and Short, <i>History of Ribchester</i> , p. 36.	
ROMANO-BRITISH ENAMELLED ORNAMENTS, BRITISH MUSEUM	<i>to face</i> 142
Mostly from Farley Heath, Surrey, and Pont y Saizon, near Chesham, Mon. The largest brooch has a movable dolphin in the centre.	
SILVER PATERA WITH ORNAMENTED HANDLE	143
Found (probably) in the county of Durham early in this century; an inscription inlaid in gold letters on the handle, indicating that it was dedicated to the Mother Goddesses by Fabius Dubitatus. The bowl is $4\frac{3}{4}$ in. broad and $3\frac{1}{2}$ in. deep. Probably it was used for pouring libations, though it is deeper than the usual <i>pateræ</i> . <i>C. I. Lat.</i> VII., 1283.	
PLAN OF AN ITALIAN HOUSE	145
The well-known "House of Pansa," Pompeii.	
PLAN OF BIGNOR VILLA. (<i>See text</i>)	147
MOSAIC AT BRADING, ISLE OF WIGHT. (<i>See text</i> , p. 61)	150
MOSAIC, FOUND IN BUCKLESBURY, LONDON	152
Guildhall Museum; discovered 1869.	
TOMBSTONES, FOUND AT CHESTER	153, 154
Haverfield, <i>Catalogue of the Grosvenor Museum</i> , Nos. 91, 108.	

TOMBSTONE OF STANDARD BEARER, HEXHAM ABBEY	155
--	-----

Discovered in 1881 under the porch adjoining the south transept of the church. The inscription, to the *Di Manes*, or spirits of the dead, is in memory of Flavinus, a standard bearer of the cavalry troop (*ala*) Petriana, of the squadron (*turma*) of Candidus, twenty-four years of age, and of seven years' service in the army. *Ephemeris Epigraphica*, VII., 995.

FOUNDATIONS OF FORUM GATEWAY, SILCHESTER	157
--	-----

GUARDHOUSES AT WEST GATE, SILCHESTER	159
--	-----

THE AESICA BROOCH	160
-----------------------------	-----

Found buried in a Roman guardroom at Aesica (Great Chesters), in September, 1894: described in *Archæologia*, LV., p. 181 *seq.* It is of exceptional size (4 in. long), and seemingly owes nothing to Roman art. It is Late Celtic work.

A LAND OF VILLAGES (ANGLO-SAXON)	164
--	-----

A LAND OF HAMLETS (CELTIC)	165
--------------------------------------	-----

SINODUN HILL, BERKSHIRE	167
-----------------------------------	-----

Overlooking Dorchester, Oxfordshire, but on the Berks or Wessex side of the Thames. A Celtic hill fort, with entrenchments at its base; believed by some antiquaries to have been the scene of a battle in the invasion of Aulus Plautius, and situated in a region closely connected with much Old English history.

COIN OF CARAUSIUS	169
-----------------------------	-----

Bronze; obverse, head of Carausius; reverse, Peace (Pax) with olive branch and cornucopia; and the mint mark ML, indicating that it was struck at London. Cohen, *op. cit.*, Vol. VII., type 221.

TOMBSTONE OF VORTIPORE	173
----------------------------------	-----

Now in a field near Gwarmacwydd House, Llanfallteg, Caernarthenshire, some twelve miles from Haverfordwest; formerly near that town, but removed to serve as a rubbing-post for cattle. An unhewn pillar of greenstone or trap rock, 4 ft. 9 in. high. On one of its broader faces is a cross within a circle, surmounting a Latin inscription in three horizontal lines, MEMORIA VOTEPORIGIS PROTICTORIS (*i.e.* protectoris: see text of this volume, page 105); over the left angle runs an Ogam inscription, 2 ft. 8 in. long, reading VOTECORIGAS. These were discovered in 1895 by Miss Bowen Jones, and were deciphered by Mr. E. Laws and Professor Rhys. See their paper in *Archæologia Cambrensis*, 5th Series, XII., p. 303.

THE OLD ENGLISH GENTLEMAN'S HOUSE (MS. Harl. 603)	176
---	-----

The Harleian MSS., collected by Sir Robert Harley, the first Earl of Oxford, and his son and heir Edward, were sold by the widow of the latter to the British Museum in 1753. The picture (from a Psalter of the eleventh century) primarily illustrates Psalm cxxvii. 1.

THE OLD ENGLISH KALENDAR	177, 179, 181
------------------------------------	---------------

Cotton MS., Julius A. vi. (eleventh century). As in a modern almanack, a page is given to each month, and a line (in Latin hexameters) to each day. The foot of each page is decorated by one of the drawings here reproduced. The Cotton collection of MSS., formed by Sir Robert Cotton (b. 1570, d. 1631), is of supreme value for Old English history and literature. It was presented to the nation by

his grandson in 1700. Cotton House was bought to keep it in, but it was subsequently removed, and in 1781 was greatly damaged by a fire. In 1753 it was placed in the British Museum. Originally it was arranged in fourteen cases, surmounted by busts of the twelve Cæsars, Cleopatra, and Faustina respectively, whence the customary method of reference to its contents.

A WINE PRESS 182

PAGE FROM THE "RECTITUDINES SINGULARUM PERSONARUM" . . . 185

From the unique tenth-century MS. of the Old English text known as C.C. 383, in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. The passages (abridged and translated in the text) are those referring to the thane, the peasant, and the cottar.

HUNTING THE HART AND THE BOAR 188

The first picture is an illustration of Psalm xlii. 1. The second is from an Old English calendar greatly resembling that figured on p. 181, but inferior in beauty of design and execution.

PAGE FROM AELFRIC'S COLLOQUY 189

This colloquy, written by Aelfric, Archbishop of Canterbury, was enlarged by his disciple, Aelfric Bata, whose edition alone is now preserved. As it stands, it is the earliest English school-book; a conversation in Latin, interlined with Anglo-Saxon translations, between a schoolmaster and a class of boys, who begin by professing their desire to be taught Latin and their willingness to be flogged if it will help them on. The boys respectively impersonate different characters and describe their occupations. (Full text in Wright-Wülcker, *Anglo-Saxon Vocabularies*.)

MAP ILLUSTRATING THE STAGES OF THE ENGLISH CONQUEST . . . 193

OLD ENGLISH ORNAMENTS FOUND AT DOVER 194

British Museum: *a*, amethyst beads; *b*, earthen beads; *c*, metal rings; *d*, brooch with gold filigree and garnets.

OLD ENGLISH ORNAMENTS FOUND AT SLEAFORD 195

Discovered in an old English cemetery at Sleaford, Lincolnshire, in 1881: *Archæologia*, L., 394. Those here figured were found in one large stone coffin: *a*, two large fibulae; *b*, necklace of amber and glass beads; *c*, brooch; *d*, silver discs, placed on the breasts of the corpse; *e*, bronze pin, 4 inches long, head richly chased and gilded; *f*, metal rings.

KING AND THEGNS, OR COMITATUS 199

From MS. Junius xi., Bodley (the paraphrase of the Old Testament attributed to Caedmon). Its illustrations have been reproduced in *Archæologia*, XXIV. The group are on their way to the building of the Tower of Babel. The MS. was written about the year 1000.

KING AND WISE MEN, OR WITAN 201

MS. Cott. Claud. B. iv., fol. 59 (part of the Old Testament, paraphrased by Aelfric; eleventh century MS.). The illustration primarily represents the execution of Pharaoh's chief baker (Gen. xl. 22).

THE BLOWING STONE, VALE OF WHITE HORSE, BERKSHIRE 205

A block of "Sarsen stone"—a red sandstone—3 ft. high, 3 ft. 6 in. broad, and 2 ft. thick, with openings communicating in its interior.

When one of these is blown into, a loud sound "resembling the bel-
lowing of a calf" is produced, which continues for some seconds
after the blowing ceases, and is said to be audible six miles off. Local
tradition declares the stone to have been found on White Horse Hill,
and used as a means of sounding the alarm against the Danes.—
Cf. Hughes, Scouring of the White Horse.

COIN OF WIGMUND, ARCHBISHOP OF YORK 207

Copper Styca: obverse, +VIGMUND: IREP+; reverse,
+EONERED. Keary and Poole, *Catalogue of Coins in the British
Museum*, I., p. 194, No. 736. As the moneyers were illiterate men and
had but few tools, the inscriptions on the coins are often ill-executed
and barely intelligible: *cf. Keary and Poole, Introduction.*

COIN OF ERIC BLOODAX 207

Obverse, ^{ERIC}_{OREN}; between the lines of the legend, a sword turned
to the right, with three dots at its point. Reverse +ACVLF MON,
signifying that Aculf was the moneyer who made it.

COIN OF WIGMUND, ARCHBISHOP OF YORK 208

Gold "solidus," Keary and Poole, I., p. 193, No. 718. Obverse:
VIGMUNDARE (*i.e.* Wigmund Archiepiscopus) with tonsured bust.
Reverse, MUNUS DIVINUM, and cross "pattée" with wreath.

COIN SHOWING MONEYER'S NAME, REMIGIUS 208

Obverse, EADMVD REA. Reverse, REMIGIVS ME F(ecit).
Keary and Poole.

COIN SHOWING MONEYER'S NAME, ABENEL 208

A penny; cross in centre; obverse, +EDER EL RE; reverse, ^{ABE}_{FAEL}
(Abenel). Keary and Poole, II. p. 59, No. 190.

PAGE FROM THE BENEDICTIONAL OF ST. ETHELWOLD . . . to face page 208

St. Ethelwold, or Æthelwald, Bishop of Winchester 963-984, had
this book made for him by a monk named Godemann (as its metrical
dedication states) "that he might from it sanctify the people of our
Saviour, and pour forth to God holy prayers for the flock committed
to his charge." It contains 116 forms of blessing, to be given by
the bishop just before he himself should receive the Eucharist, in
accordance with ancient ecclesiastical custom, each form adapted to
the service for some particular church festival. It is in the Duke
of Devonshire's library at Chatsworth. *Cf. Gage in Archaeologia*,
XXIV.

OLD ENGLISH METAL WORK 211

British Museum: *a*, Pin, found in river Witham, at Lincoln;
b, book-clasp, found at Lincoln; *c*, bird seizing fish, found in the Thames
near Wandsworth; *d*, bronze pommel of sword, found in West Smith-
field, London; *e f*, gilt bronze hairpins, found at Faversham, Kent;
g, embossed silver plate, found at Hexham; *h*, silver ornament, found
at Kirkoswald, Northumberland; *i*, bronze plate with buckle, found
in London.

MAP OF SETTLEMENTS OF THE NORTHMEN IN ENGLAND 213

COIN OF CANUTE 216

Obverse, +CNVT REC X AN. Reverse LVNDE. Keary and Poole,
II., p. 287, No. 464. Plate XIX., 2.

	PAGE
SILVER-GILT BROOCHES OF TEUTONIC TYPE	218
That on the left is of Continental type; that on the right, found in Suffolk, is ornamented with garnets and niello.	
SLEIPNIR, WODEN'S HORSE	221
National Museum, Stockholm: the Tjängvide Stone, found in Gotland. The eight-legged horse ridden by Woden to the lower world. See Grimm, <i>Teutonic Mythology</i> , pp. 547, 1335, etc.: Rydberg, <i>Norse Mythology</i> , pp. 163, 278, Eng. trans.	
WAYLAND SMITH'S CAVE, NEAR UFFINGTON, BERKSHIRE.	223
An "Iberian" cromlech, to which a later population attached their own legend. For this see Wright in <i>Archæologia</i> , XXXII., 315.	
FONT OF ST. MARTIN'S CHURCH, CANTERBURY	227
The church itself is probably, in part, of the Roman period, but restored by Augustine (<i>cf.</i> text, p. 284). The font may be designed for baptism by immersion: <i>Archæologia</i> , X. 187.	
BEDE'S ACCOUNT OF AIDAN	229
Aidan's name may be read in col. 2, line 3. The passage states that Oswald "sent for Aidan, a man of the greatest gentleness of disposition, having a zeal for God, but not according to knowledge," inasmuch as he followed the use of the Celtic Church in calculating the Easter Festival (<i>see</i> text of this volume, p. 229).	
ENGLAND AS ARRANGED IN DIOCESES BEFORE THEODORE	232
ENGLISH DIOCESES AFTER THEODORE'S REARRANGEMENT	233
A PAGE FROM THE CANTERBURY GOSPELS.	235
From an eighth-century MS., in which are inserted tenth-century designs, executed on magnificent pages of purple vellum. On one side of these pages is an inscription calling attention to some adjacent passage in the text, on the other a design. That here figured represents St. Mark. The Divine hand, issuing from a cloud above, holds the roll on which he writes. Westwood, <i>op. cit.</i> , p. 47.	
DUNSTAN, FROM AN ELEVENTH CENTURY MS.	237
Archbishop, enthroned, wearing pallium and splendid vestments; the Holy Dove at his ear; three ecclesiastics at his feet, one wearing the black, the other the white pink-tinted Benedictine habit; the third an archbishop in pallium and mitre. This latter is probably St. Dunstan, and the principal figure, which has been commonly taken for the Saint, is St. Gregory or St. Benedict. <i>Cf.</i> Westwood, <i>Miniatures and Ornaments of A.-S. and Irish MSS.</i> , p. 126, and Plate L. Above the picture a later hand has written <i>Dunstani Episcopi</i> .	
PAGES FROM THE LAWS OF OLD ENGLISH KINGS	242, 243, 244, 245
From MS. CC. 383, of the tenth and eleventh centuries, in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.	
PUNISHMENTS: WHIPPING AND BRANDING	249
Prefixed respectively to Psalm xxvi. and to Exodus v. 15 <i>seqq.</i> The first is part of a larger picture. For the MS. <i>see</i> note on p. 201.	
CHARTER OF HLOTHAR, KING OF KENT	251
Date, May, 679 A.D. A grant of land, seemingly at Sturry and in Thanet, to a monastery. From the collection of charters in Cotton MS., Aug. II. 2, formerly belonging to Canterbury Cathedral. Bond and Thomson, <i>Facsimiles of Ancient Charters in the British Museum</i> , Vol. I., No. 1.	

ST. SAMPSON'S CROSS. LLANTWIT MAJOR	253
---	-----

Traditionally attributed to St. Sampson : but the inscription has been interpreted to mean that the cross was erected for the repose of the soul of Sampson, who erected it, and that of Juthael, King of Gwent, who died in 848. The exact reading, however, is obscure. Haddan and Stubbs, *Church Councils* ; Hübner, *Inscriptiones Britannicæ Christianar*, 61.

WARRIORS RIDING TO BATTLE	256
-------------------------------------	-----

BATTLE SCENE, SHOWING WEAPONS	257
---	-----

For the MS. *see* note on p. 283.

OLD ENGLISH WEAPONS	259
-------------------------------	-----

a, Spearhead found in the Thames near the Temple ; *b*, sword found in Lakenheath Fen, Suffolk ; *c*, sword found in the Thames near the Temple (Scandinavian type) ; *d*, sword found at Canwick Common, Lincoln ; *e*, knife, inlaid with silver, brass, and niello, with maker's and owner's name, found at Sittingbourne ; *f*, spearhead found in the Thames ; *g*, *h*, battleaxes of Norse type. There is a general similarity between Teutonic and Norse weapons.

"VIKING SHIP" FOUND AT GOKSTAD, SOUTHERN NORWAY	261
---	-----

Entirely of oak ; sunk in blue clay below a peat moss. Length of keel, 60 ft. ; total length, 75 ft. ; greatest breadth, $15\frac{1}{2}$ ft. ; depth, $3\frac{1}{2}$ ft. It carried sixteen oars. Du Chaillu, *Viking Age*, II., 162.

WICKINGS WITH WEAPONS	263
---------------------------------	-----

"THERE THE ARMY WAS A-HORSED"	263
---	-----

Both these bronze plaques, now in the National Museum, Stockholm, were found (with others) in a cairn at Björnholm, Åland. They were probably used as belt ornaments. The figures may be meant for gods.

REMAINS OF THE DANISH CAMP NEAR READING	265
---	-----

The view represents the Forbury, Reading, as it was in 1835. The Danes came up the Thames (shown in the distance, beside the poplars) and encamped between that river and the Kennet at the Forbury. The circular ditch in the foreground was the fosse of their camp. It was filled in when the public gardens were made between 1850 and 1860. The mound in the middle distance was thrown up during the Civil War by the Parliamentary troops, and still exists. (Information kindly supplied by Messrs. S. Victor White & Co.)

PART OF THE TEXT OF "BEOWULF"	269
---	-----

From the only extant MS., probably "written from dictation by an ignorant monk in the first half of the eleventh century" (Morley, *English Writers*), and greatly injured in the fire (*see* note on p. 181). For this passage *see* Grein's text, 320 *seqq.*

CÆDMON'S HYMN OF PRAISE	275
-----------------------------------	-----

From the Moore MS. of 737 A.D. in the Cambridge University Library, described in Westwood, *Paleographia*. The story of the hymn is in Bede, *Historia Ecclesiastica*, IV., 23. The verse is written continuously, like prose.

TWO OF CYNEWULF'S RIDDLES. FROM THE "EXETER BOOK"	275
---	-----

These will be found in B. Thorpe, *Codex Exoniensis* (London, 1842), p. 479, and in Grein's *Bibliothek der Angelsächsischen Poesie*, II., Nos. 61 and 62, p. 397.

	PAGE
THE "EXETER BOOK," SHOWING THE LIFE OF ST. GUTHLAC	277
<p>One of a number of MSS. presented to Exeter Cathedral by its first Bishop, Leofric, about 1046, a folio volume, on vellum, of the tenth century, well written, but with frequent mistakes in spelling (Thorpe). It contains a metrical paraphrase of the life of St. Guthlac, and much religious and moral poetry, including "The Wanderer," some gnomic verses, and the Riddles of Cynewulf.</p>	
OLD ENGLISH BRONZE VASE FOUND AT TAPLOW, BUCKS	278
<p>British Museum: found in a barrow excavated in 1883, with the draughtsmen figured on p. 313, and various other objects.</p>	
OLD ENGLISH POTTERY AND GLASS WARE	279
<p><i>a, b, c</i>, Earthenware, the patterns frequently repeated with slight variations; the rest are glass; <i>d</i>, drinking vessel, from Slade collection; <i>e</i>, found at Reculver, Kent: in Canterbury Museum; <i>f</i>, at Sittingbourne; <i>g</i>, found at Desborough, Northants; <i>h</i>, found at Kempston, Beds.; <i>i</i>, at Bungay, Suffolk.</p>	
KING ALFRED'S JEWEL	281
<p>Ashmolean Museum, Oxford: found near the site of Athelney Abbey, Somersetshire, in 1693. Length, 2·4 in.; greatest breadth, 1·23 in.; thickness, ·46 in. The obverse is faced with an oval plate of crystal, through which is seen a miniature in enamelled mosaic of a man (probably St. Neot, reputed the king's special protector) holding in each hand a fleur-de-lys; the reverse is a detached plate of gold on which is traced a fleur-de-lys. On the edge is inscribed + AELFRED MEC HEHT GEWYRCAN (Alfred bid me be wrought). The jewel ends in a grotesque figure, apparently the head of a sea monster. It may have been the head of a stylus or pen, or possibly have served as a standard in battle (<i>Catalogue of the Ashmolean</i>, 1836). <i>See also</i> Earle, <i>The Alfred Jewel</i>, 1901.</p>	
OLD ENGLISH MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS	283
<p>The lyre and flute and the trombones are from MS. Cleop. C. viii. (the <i>Psychomachia</i> of Aurelius Prudentius, eleventh century); the organ from the Utrecht Psalter, ninth century, originally in the Cotton collection; the harp and horns from the Cottonian Psalter, of the latter part of the tenth or beginning of the eleventh century; the musicians from a Psalter of the eighth century.</p>	
THE WOODEN CHURCH AT GREENSTEAD, ESSEX	284
<p>Photographed from a print of 1748: built of tree-trunks sawn lengthways in two, "grooved and tongued together by their edges, and let into grooves in horizontal cells and heads" (G. G. Scott, <i>Lectures on Mediæval Architecture</i>, II., p. 57, 1879). The tower and chancel are post-Saxon.</p>	
GALLARUS ORATORY, NEAR DINGLE, W. IRELAND	286
<p>The upper line of stones is due to a restoration by an Irish Board of Works. A door, opening inwards, was suspended from the top of the doorway inside. The resemblances to early buildings in Lycia and India have occasioned extravagant and fanciful theories as to the period and purpose of the building. (<i>Cf.</i> Earl of Dunraven, <i>Notes on Early Irish Architecture</i>, I., p. 59; Ferguson, <i>History of Architecture</i>, II. 127.</p>	
BRADFORD-ON-AVON CHURCH, WILTS.	287
<p>Probably once attached to a monastery of St. Aldhelm: believed</p>	

by Prof. Freeman (*English Towns and Districts*) to be the only perfect church of its kind remaining in England, if not in Europe. Long secularised and forgotten, it was re-discovered about 1858.

SPLAYED EMBRASURE, CAVERSFIELD CHURCH, OXON. 288

In technical language, "the jambs are counter-splayed," *i.e.* the narrowest part of the opening is at the centre of the wall. This is characteristic of Anglo-Saxon work.

"GOUTY BALUSTRADES," EARL'S BARTON CHURCH, NORTANTS . . . 288

OLD ENGLISH ECCLESIASTICAL ARCHITECTURE 289

(1) Tower of Earls-Barton Church: notice the projecting vertical ribs of stonework—a feature of Anglo-Saxon work; the "long and short" work—blocks of ashlar set in alternate courses at the angles of the walls; the windows divided by baluster shafts, and the Greek crosses above them. (2) Sompington Tower. (3) Doorway, Colchester; and (4) St. Benedict's Doorway, Monkwearmouth Church, Durham (now covered by a porch), are dealt with in the text.

BUILDING A HOUSE IN THE ELEVENTH CENTURY 290

This miniature illustrates Psalm cxxvii. 1. It is notable for the variety of tools shown, and the elaboration of walls and roofs.

DOMESTIC ARCHITECTURE 290

From MS. Junius XI. (*see* note on p. 199). The illustration primarily represents Abraham in his journey to Egypt (Genesis xii.) parleying with the inhabitants of a town. Note the crenellated roofs.

THE EARLIEST ENGLISH GOLD COIN 291

"A barbarous copy of the *solidus* of Honorius," dating probably from the sixth century A.D. Obverse, D N HONORIUS P F. AVG. with bust: reverse, VICTORIA AUGGGG, the emperor holding standard of victory and placing his foot on a recumbent captive. There is also a Runic inscription on each face of the coin: that on the reverse may be a personal name. Keary and Poole, *op. cit.* I., p. 1, No. 1.

COIN WITH LATIN LETTERING 291

Lettered LONDINIE: *Ibid.*, I., p. 10, No. 88.

COIN OF OFFA 291

Penny: bears name of Ibba, the moneyer. *Ibid.*, I., p. 27, No. 13.

AN OLD ENGLISH HALFPENNY 292

Ibid., II., p. 80, No. 429. The letters on the obverse may be fragments of ELFRED REX: those on the reverse, part of a moneyer's name, Cudberht.

SERIES OF COINS WITH KINGS' PORTRAITS 293

The coins are dealt with here in chronological order. The references in brackets are to Keary and Poole, *op. cit.*, Vol. II.—Alfred (p. 47, No. 92), a halfpenny minted at London; Edward the Elder (p. 96, No. 84), halfpenny. moneyer Heremod; Athelstan (p. 114, No. 89), struck at Perham (*i.e.* Wareham), moneyer Aelfred; Edmund (p. 141, No. 156); Edred, struck at Exeter; Edwy. from the unique specimen in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow; Edgar (p. 170, No. 19), struck at Huntingdon, moneyer's name Pirim (Wirim); Ethelred (Plate XV. 1, type viii.), struck at Winchester; Edward the Confessor (p. 381, No. 549), struck at Hereford, moneyer Earnpi (Earnwi);

Harold II. (p. 472, No. 100), struck at Wilton, moneyer Centwine.
The P=W also occurs on the Conqueror's coins: *cf.* text, p. 480.

THE OLD ENGLISH BURGH	297
MS. Junius XL, Bodley: "The Tower of Babel planned."	
FORGE	301
OLD ENGLISH DOMESTIC ARTICLES	303
<i>a, b, c</i> , Rings: <i>a</i> , found on east bank of the Trent, N. Lincolnshire, once the property of Ethelswith of Mercia, sister of Alfred the Great; <i>b</i> , in the West Riding of Yorkshire; <i>c</i> , in Garrick Street, London; <i>d</i> , Silver spoon found at Sevington, Wilts, in 1834; <i>e, f</i> , Brooch and pin found at Goldsborough, Yorkshire, with Cufic coins; <i>g</i> , Key from Sibertswold, about 5½ in. by ¾ in.; <i>h</i> , St. Cuthbert's comb; <i>i</i> , book ornament; <i>j</i> , Chatelaine or girdle ornament from Searby, Lincolnshire; <i>g, i</i> are in the Mayer Museum, Liverpool; <i>h</i> is at Durham Cathedral; the rest are in the British Museum.	
ALDHelm PRESENTING HIS TREATISE TO THE ABBESS OF BARKING	307
From the dedication page of the treatise in question (<i>De Virginitate</i> , MS. eighth or ninth century), in Lambeth Palace Library.	
OLD ENGLISH DINNER PARTIES	311
DRINKING HORN OF ULPHUS, YORK MINSTER	312
Laid on the altar by Ulphus, Thegen of Eastern Yorkshire, shortly before the Norman Conquest, in token that he had bestowed certain lands on the cathedral. It is made of an elephant's tusk, and adorned with carved fillets, that nearest the brim representing lions, unicorns, and griffins. Its gold ornaments disappeared during the Civil War.	
GLEEMAN AND MUSICIAN	313
DRAUGHTSMEN FOUND AT TAPLOW	313
ON THE JUDGMENT SEAT	314
Part of a representation of Christ before Pilate.	
OLD ENGLISH BEDS	315
SLINGING	316
The inscription is "Habram" (Abram).	
ABBEY OF JUMIÈGES (two views)	319
The western façade and nave of the Basilica were built between 1040 and 1067; the choir is of the thirteenth century	
COINS OF DUKES OF NORMANDY	320
Only one Duke, Richard the Fearless, put his name on the coins he issued. The number of the rest, and the coarseness of their execution, have been attributed to the desire of the Dukes to facilitate subsequent debasement of the coinage. Poey d'Avant, <i>Monnaies Féodales de la France</i> , I.	
NORMAN CHURCH OF S. NICOLA, BARI, APULIA	323

Erected by Robert Guiscard in 1087, to receive the bones of the saint, brought from Myra in Lycia. To this day they attract crowds of pilgrims, including many Albanians; "the Manna of Bari." a "miraculous" fluid, which collects upon them, is prized as a panacea.

FALAISE CASTLE	PAGE 325
--------------------------	----------

Mainly twelfth century; but the Keep, much restored in 1869, is thought to date from the time of Duke Robert. The window from which he first saw Arlette, the tanner's daughter, is still pointed out; the "Fontaine d'Arlette" is at the foot of the rocks to the left. The Tour Talabot, in the foreground, was built between 1415 and 1450 by John Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury, and therefore is a memorial of the last stage of English rule in Normandy.

SEAL OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR	326
--	-----

The designs on the seals hardly need a detailed description, for which students may be referred in every instance to Birch, *Catalogue of Seals in the British Museum*. Edward here calls himself "By the Grace of God King of the English," using the Greek, not the Latin, term.

DUKE WILLIAM'S EXPEDITION AGAINST CONAN OF BRITTANY	327
---	-----

The Bayeux Tapestry, from which this and the three following illustrations are taken, is mentioned in an inventory of the property of the Cathedral Chapter of Bayeux of 1476, but first attracted attention in modern times between 1720 and 1730. It has been conjectured to be the work of Matilda, wife of the Conqueror, and her ladies, but the prominence given in it to certain obscure retainers of Bishop Odo indicates that it was made to his order, of course by women, and probably to adorn his new cathedral of Bayeux, while the form of one name (Hastingaceaster) suggests that it was made in England. The costumes and weapons agree with contemporary descriptions, and prove that it cannot be much later than the Conquest. Freeman, *Norman Conquest*, IV., pp. 573-580.

HAROLD CROWNED KING	329
-------------------------------	-----

THE BEGINNING OF THE BATTLE OF SENLAC	to face 332
---	-------------

A CRISIS IN THE BATTLE OF SENLAC	332
--	-----

Finding his men unable to storm the hill, William caused them to feign flight; the English charged the seeming fugitives, who turned upon them; but a small body of English, holding the little hillock facing the English main position and above Malfosse, repelled all attacks. Freeman, *Norman Conquest*, III., p. 490.

SEAL OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR	337
---	-----

The inscriptions, in hexameter verse, call on the spectator to recognise William the master of the Normans and King of the English.

THE BAILE HILL, YORK	339
--------------------------------	-----

The first of William I.'s castles at York (rebuilt by Richard III.) was on the left bank of the Ouse, on the present site of Clifford's Tower; the second, on the mound here figured on the right bank, was built in eight days; probably it was either wood or very rough masonry. Both castles were broken down by revolters under Waltheof, but were rebuilt by William. Freeman, *Norman Conquest*, IV.

COIN OF ALFRED, STRUCK AT OXFORD	343
--	-----

Obverse, name of king and mint (Orsnaforda); reverse, moneyer's name BERIVALDO, apparently meant for Berinwald or Bernwald. Kearny and Poole, Vol. II., No 118, and Plate V., No. 9.

A PAGE FROM DOMESDAY BOOK; OXFORD	345
---	-----

	PAGE
SEAL OF WILLIAM II.	350
He is described only as King of the English.	
TOMB OF WILLIAM II., WINCHESTER CATHEDRAL	351
A stone coffin sunk in the ground and surmounted by a slab of Purbeck marble. Its ascription to William Rufus dates from 1683, but his remains are stated to have been moved in the sixteenth century to a mortuary chest, along with those of Canute. When opened in 1868, however, this tomb was found to contain human remains, and for this and other reasons its identity has been questioned. <i>Cf.</i> Joyce, in <i>Archæologia</i> , XLII.	
SEAL OF HENRY I.	352
He is described as "King of the English.	
EFFIGIES OF HENRY I. AND "QUEEN MAUD," ROCHESTER CATHEDRAL	353
On the west doorway. These are among the oldest statues in England. They were much mutilated during the civil wars in the seventeenth century. "Good Queen Maud," daughter of Malcolm Canmore, King of Scotland, is better known under that title than under her baptismal name Edith. She was brought up at Romsey Abbey, and was there called Maud.	
COIN OF HENRY I.	354
Head three-quarters to right, sceptre, roses or stars in front. Reverse, cross potent over cross fleury, pellet, lozenge or star in each angle. Hawkins, Plate XVIII., No. 266.	
CHURCH OF ST. STEPHEN (ABBAYE AUX HOMMES), CAEN	357
<i>See</i> text, p. 330. The abbey was founded in 1064, the church consecrated in 1077. The towers are of the twelfth or thirteenth century. The remains of William the Conqueror lie in the middle of the sanctuary under a black marble slab with inscription, put in in 1801; but the tomb has been several times desecrated.	
THE HILL FORTRESS OF OLD SARUM	361
About a mile north of Salisbury; an important strategic position from the earliest times, and a military post under the Normans. The episcopal see, transferred hither in 1058 from Sherborne, was removed to New Sarum, the modern Salisbury, in 1216, in consequence of the constant disputes between the king's officers and the townsfolk and ecclesiastics. In later history the place is best known as the constituency of the elder Pitt, and the grossest example of the electoral abuses terminated by the Reform Bill of 1832.	
ST. WULFSTAN'S CRYPT, WORCESTER CATHEDRAL	363
SEAL OF ANSELM	365
EFFIGY OF ROGER THE POOR, SALISBURY CATHEDRAL	366
A coffin lid, on which is represented in very low relief a Bishop giving the benediction and trampling on the Old Serpent. The character of the border caused Stothard to attribute the effigy to the twelfth century, and to identify it as that of Roger, Bishop of Salisbury, 1107-1139, under whom, as Chancellor and Justiciar, the whole administrative system was remodelled.	

	PAGE
SEAL OF STEPHEN	367

The obverse describes him as "King of the English"; the reverse, "Duke of the Normans."

SEAL OF MATILDA	368
---------------------------	-----

She is described as "Queen of the Romans."

COINS OF THE PERIOD OF ANARCHY	369, 370
--	----------

(1) Robert, Duke of Gloucester. Figure on horseback, wearing conical bonnet and armed with sword: legend, ROBERTUS, with other letters of uncertain meaning. Reverse, cross pattée on cross fleury, with D and ornaments instead of legend. Ascribed to Robert from its resemblance to coins of Eustace and Stephen. Hawkins, p. 182. (2) Eleanor of Aquitaine. Obverse, DUCISIA (Ducissa, duchess) with two crosses "pattée" and letters M (? Moneta) and A (? Alienora); Reverse, AQUITANIE round cross. Ruding, Suppl., Plate X., Part II. (3) Stephen: Profile to right, with fleury and star on reverse, cross whose ends meet. Hawkins, Plate XXI., No. 271. (4) Eustace p. 370. Half-length figure to right, wearing conical bonnet and holding sword; reverse, cross in quatrefoil; legend, EBORACI (York), with other letters which have been thought to represent the name of a moneyer. Hawkins, p. 183.

THE STANDARD	371
------------------------	-----

From an almost contemporary MS. (139, 10) in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, containing the description of the "Battle of the Standard" by Ethelred, Abbot of Rievaulx.

SEAL OF HENRY II.	372
---------------------------	-----

He is described as "King of the English," and as "Duke of the Normans and Count of the Angevins."

EFFIGIES OF HENRY II. AND OF ISABELLA OF ANGOULÊME	373
--	-----

Originally on the left hand side of the nave, near the choir in the great church of Fontevrault in Maine, France, with many other royal tombs. The abbey was near the Plantagenets' castle at Chinon (the place of Henry II.'s death), and many of the family were buried there. At the Revolution all the tombs and effigies were destroyed except four (*cf.* p. 383), which were subsequently removed to a cellar, but now stand in part of the old church, the buildings having been converted into a prison. Henry II.'s hands are gloved, the gloves being ornamented with jewels, a sign of royalty (Stothard). The statues have been repainted and restored more than once. Isabella's is of wood, the rest of sandstone.

MURDER OF BECKET	375
----------------------------	-----

The illumination is probably early fifteenth century.

HENRY II.'S PENANCE AT BECKET'S SHRINE	376
--	-----

Reproduced by J. Carter, *Specimens of Ancient Sculpture and Painting* (1794), from a painting on glass then in the possession of a Mr. Fletcher, of Oxford. "The interruptions caused by the lead which confines the glass" are omitted. Carter, II., p. 67.

SEAL OF PRINCE HENRY, SON OF HENRY II.	377
--	-----

Implies that he was crowned in his father's lifetime.

	PAGE
COINS OF JOHN, RICHARD I., AND HENRY II.	378
<p>(1) Irish halfpenny of John: his full face and name on the obverse; reverse, moneyer's name and the usual cross (Grueber: <i>Handbook to British Museum Coins</i>, Pl. LVI., No. 7). English coins bear his father's name. (2) Richard I., as ruler of Aquitaine: a denier; obverse, RICARDUS, in two lines, with ornaments; reverse, name of province and the usual cross. Ruding, Suppl. II., Plate X., 7. (3) Henry II.: King's bust with nearly full face, sceptre in right hand; reverse, large cross with small cross in each angle. Ruding, Plate II., No. 4.</p>	
SEAL OF RICHARD I.	379
He is described in the same terms as Henry II.	
IMPRISONMENT AND WOUNDING OF RICHARD I.	381
<p>Taken from a thirteenth-century series of pictures of English kings from Edward the Confessor to Edward I., with short biographical notices in French. The illustration represents his imprisonment by the Duke of Austria, whom he had offended by his conduct in the Holy Land, on his way home, near Vienna, in 1193.</p>	
THE DOMINIONS OF THE ANGEVIN KINGS.	to face 382
EFFIGIES OF RICHARD I. AND QUEEN ELEANOR, FONTEVRAULT	383
See note on illustration to p. 373.	
SEAL OF KING JOHN	385
He is described as "King of England and Lord of Ireland."	
BURY ST. EDMUNDS, NORMAN TOWER	386
THE MONK OF SWINESHEAD OFFERING JOHN THE POISONED CUP. . . .	387
<p>MS. Vitellius A. xiii. (see on p. 381). Various forms of the legend here illustrated will be found in <i>Diet. Nat. Biogr.</i>, art. "John." Swineshead is near Newark.</p>	
EFFIGY OF KING JOHN, WORCESTER CATHEDRAL	389
<p>A high tomb in the centre of the choir, divided by panelled buttresses into compartments, each adorned with the royal arms. The king's feet rest on a lion, his right hand grasps a sword. The figure, once coloured, is now gilt.</p>	
CISTERCIAN ABBEYS, FURNESS AND KIRKSTALL	391
<p>The former was founded by King Stephen in 1124 when he was Count of Boulogne and Mortain, and was transferred to its present site in 1127. The latter was founded in 1147 at Barnoldswick in Craven, and transferred to Kirkstall, near Leeds, in 1152. It was an offshoot of Fountains Abbey. The ruins were presented to the town of Leeds by the late Col. J. T. North, the "Nitrate King."</p>	
THOMAS BECKET'S VESTMENTS, SENS MUSEUM	392
MEMORIALS OF BECKET	393
<p>(1) Grace Cup, in the possession of the Duke of Norfolk; belonged once to Becket, and was eventually left to the Howard family by Katharine of Aragon. It is ivory, overlaid with arabesque and pierced work, and mounted in silver gilt. (2) Painting of the</p>	

murder, from the restored drawing of a painting on wood in Canterbury Cathedral. (3) Glass medallion, from window in Canterbury Cathedral, showing the shrine of St. Thomas, from a photograph by the Rev. T. Field, Warden of Radley College, who has kindly permitted its reproduction here : *Journal Arch. Inst.*, XIX., 282. (4) Reliquary in Hereford Cathedral Library, formerly regarded as the shrine of King Ethelbert, patron saint of the cathedral, and representing his murder by order of Offa, King of Mercia. In 1862, however, it was exhibited at South Kensington, and its resemblance to other reliquaries of Becket corrected the mistake. It is composed of oak, covered with copper plates, overlaid in part with coloured Limoges enamel, and partly gilded ; it dates from the early part of the thirteenth century.

A RELIC OF THE CULT OF ST. THOMAS 395

Found hidden in a wall of Kewstoke Church, Somersetshire, in 1849 ; now in the Taunton Museum. In front was a carved figure under a canopy ; at the back an arched recess with a door, behind which was the wooden cup containing traces of human blood, presumably that of Becket. It is supposed to have belonged to Woodspring Priory, near Taunton, of which a descendant of one of Becket's murderers was the founder, and a descendant of another a benefactor, and whose prior had a cup or chalice on his seal. It was probably hidden in Henry VIII.'s reign. (*Cf. Luard, Materials for the History of Thomas Becket*, Rolls Series, Introduction.)

SCENES FROM THE HISTORY OF ST. HUGH 396, 397

From the modern windows of the Chapterhouse, Lincoln, by Messrs. Clayton and Bell : the funeral scene is a copy of the glass in the rose window of the north transept of Lincoln Cathedral. On the representations of St. Hugh, see Canon G. G. Perry, *St. Hugh of Lincoln*, Appendix D.

STATUTES OF WILLIAM I. 399

This record "contains what is probably the sum and substance of all the legal enactments made by the Conqueror, independent of his confirmations of the earlier laws" (Bishop Stubbs). It will be found in Stubbs, *Select Charters*, p. 83. The MS., written by several hands, is of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

A PAGE OF DECRETALS, WITH COMMENTARY 407

From a fourteenth-century MS., "written by an English hand for French use," but once belonging to the Monastery of St. Bartholomew, Smithfield, London. The text of the Decretals is enclosed in a border and surrounded by the commentary ; the lower and sometimes the side margins contain illuminations of great value.

PAGE FROM BRACTON'S TREATISE 410

The MS. dates from the reign of Edward I.

SITE OF THE FOLK-MOOT, PENNENDEN HEATH 412

Near Maidstone : the "mootstead" of the kingdom of Kent, and the scene of the memorable trial which determined the respective rights of Lanfranc, Archbishop of Canterbury, and Odo, Bishop of Bayeux, in 1076. Until the present century members of Parliament for the county were nominated here, and it was the site of the County Hall.

THE JUDICIAL COMBAT 414

Reproduced and described by Prof. F. W. Maitland, *Pleas of the*

Crown, Vol. i., p. xxix (Selden Society, 1888). From a fragment of an Assize Roll of Henry III.'s time, now in the Public Record Office. Walter Bloweberme was an accomplice turned king's evidence, who had received a pardon conditional on his accusing and vanquishing a certain number of his associates. He accused Hamo le Stare of complicity in a robbery, and defeated him. "Hamo's consequent fate is depicted in the background."

BISHOP WYVILLE AND HIS CHAMPION 415
From the incised brass of the Bishop (1375) in Salisbury Cathedral : the Bishop above, his champion below, standing in the doorway of Sherborne Castle.

PRESSING TO DEATH 421
From a stained glass window of the time of Henry VIII., in the Election Hall, Eton College. It has been necessary slightly to intensify the presentation of the figure and the weights.

RELICS OF SANCTUARIES 427

The Durham knocker is on the north door of the cathedral. Over the door are chambers for two doorkeepers, who admitted refugees at all hours, for nearly eight hundred years (740 to 1524). The Beverley sanctuary extended for a mile every way round the church, and was marked by crosses, of which three still remain. There was, however, a series of concentric boundaries, the penalty for violation of sanctuary increasing as each was crossed; it was highest if the fugitive was in the frydstool (seat of peace), which stood near the high altar. The Gloucester knocker is on the south door of St. Nicholas' Church. The refugees seem to have been fed and clothed at the expense of the monastery for a month or more, and, in the case of Beverley, their privilege protected them, on leaving, as far as the county boundary. See "*Sanctuarium Dunelmense et Sanctuarium Beverlacense*," London, 1836 (Surtees Society).

NORMAN HORSE AND BOWMEN 429

STORMING A STRONGHOLD 431

ATTACK ON A STRONGHOLD, SHOWING USE OF CROSSBOW 433

CHÂTEAU GAILLARD, NORMANDY 435

"Saucy Castle," erected by Richard I. to defend the valley of the Seine, near Les Andelys. Three lines of defence: the fosse which protects the first is connected directly with the keep by underground passages cut in the rock.

MEDIEVAL SIEGE ENGINE 437

From a fifteenth-century Italian MS. of working drawings for use in making machinery; given, though of later date than the period here treated of, as showing the principle of the machine. According to Oman, *Art of War* (1898), mediæval siege-engines were worked either by torsion, tension, or counterpoise, the last-named introduced in the thirteenth century. *Torsion* was the principle of the *mangon* or *mangonel*: two stout posts were connected by ropes, between which a beam was placed and twisted, then suddenly let go, so as to discharge a missile placed in a spoon or sling at its end. *Tension* was the principle of the *balista*, a large-scale crossbow with a winch to draw back the cord, and usually shooting arrows. The *trébuchet* (Lat. *trabucium*) as here shown largely superseded the *mangon* in the thirteenth century, and is worked by counterpoise. The barrel is loaded with sand and stones, but kept aloft; the other end of the beam, at which the missile is placed either in a cavity or a

sling, is held down by a catch : when this catch is suddenly let go, the barrel falls, and the missile is discharged with great force. Stones and iron balls were the usual missiles, but mention is also made of hives of bees, with the exit blocked—a primitive form of shell, found especially useful in causing horses to stampede—putrefying quarters of animals, and occasionally human heads. (*Cf. Oman, Art of War*, pp. 136–139 and 545–548 ; Kohler, *Kriegswissenschaft* ; A. Schulz, *Hofleben im Mittelalter*.) There appears also to have been a machine intermediate between the mangon and the trébuchet, in which the beam was pulled down by men instead of by the counterweight. The mangon and balista are derived from ancient Greek and Roman warfare. There is usually much vagueness in the nomenclature. After 1200, according to Mr. Oman, “perrière,” when used in conjunction with “mangonel,” means “trébuchet” ; before that date it probably means the transitional machine mentioned above. A modern trébuchet was constructed by Napoleon III., when Prince President, and is described in his work *De l'Artillerie*, Vol. II. (1851), page 38 *seqq.* With a counterpoise weighing 4,500 kilogrammes, or about 4½ tons, it threw a bullet 21 centimetres (8½ inches) in diameter nearly 200 feet ; but it seems to have been both cumbrous and dangerous to its manipulators.

THE MORA AND OTHER NORMAN SHIPS	439
LANDING THE CONQUEROR'S HORSES	441
SEAL OF PEVENSEY	445
On the obverse, two ships apparently in collision ; in that on the right (the colliding ship) St. Nicolas, the patron saint of the town, giving his benediction. Thirteenth century ; but given here as an illustration of the habits and views of the mariners of the Cinque Ports, as described in Chaps. III. and IV.	
WRECK OF THE WHITE SHIP	447
From a genealogical table. As a whole, the MS. representations of ships appear to be conventional till the latter part of the fifteenth century ; but the constant recurrence of certain details— <i>e.g.</i> the clincher build, the lugsail, crows' nests, fore and stern castles, and steering oar—is evidence that these are drawn from actual ships.	
TYPICAL MS. SHIP	449
From the “Roll of St. Guthlac,” a set of drawings intended for reproduction in stained glass at the abbey founded by the saint at Croyland, in the Fens of Lincolnshire ; illustrating his life, and probably executed in the twelfth century. He is here on an “inland voyage” to the site of the abbey. Birch, <i>Memorials of St. Guthlac</i> .	
SHIP, SHOWING METHOD OF STEERING	452
From the MS. of Matthew Paris at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge ; probably drawn by him.	
THE USE OF THE RAM	455
Battle between the Pisans and the Genoese, 1241. <i>Ibid.</i>	
NORMAN PIERS, ST. ALBANS CATHEDRAL	459
This and the following eleven illustrations are sufficiently dealt with in the text where they occur.	
NORMAN WORK IN THE WHITE TOWER, TOWER OF LONDON	460
TOWER AND NORTH TRANSEPT, WINCHESTER CATHEDRAL	461
MASSIVE NORMAN MASONRY, NORWICH AND WINCHESTER CATHEDRALS	463

	PAGE
THE ORNAMENTAL ARCADE, CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL	464
EAST END, SHOWING TRIFORIUM, ST. CROSS, WINCHESTER	465
INFLEY CHURCH, NEAR OXFORD	466
NORMAN MOULDINGS	467
BANDED PILLAR, CANTERBURY CRYPT	468
THE CHOIR, CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL, LOOKING WEST	469
THE GALILEE, DURHAM CATHEDRAL	471
The name is probably suggested by Mark xvi. 7.	
THE CHOIR, LINCOLN CATHEDRAL	473
INTERIOR OF ROCHESTER CASTLE	475
Built by William I. on the site of an Old English fortress; besieged by William Rufus; but the present tower is ascribed to William of Corbeil.	
NORMAN CASTLES	477
Guildford, exact date unknown, but certainly early Norman: Colchester, built by Eudo de Rie, the Conqueror's steward, 1097; the White Tower, by Gundulf, Bishop of Rochester, who also built the tower shown, at Malling, near Maidstone, Kent.	
MS. ILLUMINATION, SHOWING THE VISION OF JACOB	to face 478
Lambeth MS., No. 3. Twelfth Century.	
ILLUMINATIONS IN THE CANTERBURY PSALTER	478, 479
Now at Trinity College, Cambridge; the second illustrates Psalm i.	
FRESCO OF ST. PAUL AND THE VIPER	478
St. Anselm's Chapel, Canterbury Cathedral; hidden until a recent restoration by a buttress built early in the thirteenth century. The chapel was originally dedicated to St. Peter and St. Paul.	
COINS OF NORMAN KINGS	480
The coins of both William I. and William II. here shown have PILLELMUS REX on the obverse, and on the reverse, inscriptions signifying the moneyer and place of coinage. On the coins of Stephen and his Queen, <i>see</i> the text, page 481.	
FOUR LEADING AUTHORITIES ON MUSIC	483
From an eleventh-century MS. in Cambridge University Library (ii. 3, 12), containing treatises on arithmetic and music, ascribed to Boethius, better known as the author of the famous treatise "On the Consolations of Philosophy." It belonged to the monastery of Christ Church, Canterbury.	
PAGE SHOWING LATIN AND HEBREW	487
From Odo's Introduction to Theology, a twelfth-century MS. at Trinity College, Cambridge (B. 14, 33).	
PAGE OF (PROBABLY) AUTOGRAPH MS. BY ADELARD OF BATH	491
From a MS. of his "Questiones Naturales" at Eton College.	
PASSAGE FROM THE CHANSON DE ROLAND	497
From the oldest MS. of the poem, in the Bodleian Library, Oxford (MS. Digby 23; twelfth-century), once belonging to Osney Abbey.	

PAGE OF THE OLD ENGLISH CHRONICLE	PAGE 501
From the earliest MS. (No. 173) at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge (<i>see</i> table in text, p. 502).	

PAGE OF MS. PROBABLY WRITTEN BY WILLIAM OF MALMESBURY	505
---	-----

PAGE FROM MS. OF GEOFFREY OF MONMOUTH	507
---	-----

Clare College, Cambridge, MS. Kk. 5. 3. The drawing represents the reconciliation of Brennus and Belinus, princes of Britain, by their mother (*Historia Britannorum*, Bk. III. c. 7.) For Geoffrey of Monmouth, *see* Ward, *Catalogue of MS. Romances in the British Museum*, I., p. 203 *seqq.*

PASSAGE FROM THE "MORAL ODE"	510
--	-----

PASSAGE FROM THE ORRMULUM.	511
------------------------------------	-----

This unique MS. forms an oblong folio volume, containing ninety pages of parchment varying in size, and written in a bold hand, probably the author's, as there are numerous erasures; there are traces, however, of another hand. In the passage reproduced (Dedication, line 136 *seqq.*) the author says that he desires all Englishmen to hear, believe, recite, and follow the Gospel story. The book was first edited by Dr. White, on whose work the standard edition was founded by the Rev. Robert Holt (1852, republished 1878; Clarendon Press).

ILLUSTRATION FROM THE ELY BOOK	513
--	-----

St. Ethelwold and King Edgar, benefactors of the Monastery of St. Ethelreda at Ely; from a twelfth-century MS. of the "Inquisitio Eliensis" at Trinity College, Cambridge. This "inquisitio," forming part of the material from which Domesday Book was compiled, has been printed by N. S. Hamilton for the Royal Society of Literature (*Inquisitio Comitatus Cantabrigiensis subjicitur Inquisitio Eliensis*, 1876).

PLAN OF THE SOUTH COMMON FIELD, SWANAGE	514
---	-----

Represents the distribution of the strips in 1829. The letter G (glebe) marks the parson's share; R, S, etc., are initials of the surnames of various owners. The "Common Ware" is rough pasture land. The "North Field" adjacent was divided similarly. In these fields the strips are of less than the usual furlong in length, doubtless owing to the conformation of the ground. Originally, no doubt, the strips were of approximately equal size, and were periodically redistributed in accordance with the shares taken by the several holders in the provision of plough-teams, tools, and labour, for the joint cultivation of the field. (*Cf.* Seebohm, *The English Village Community*.) When this redistribution ceased—the date, in this case, is unknown—the shares became the property of their holders at that time, and the differences of size are probably due to sale, inheritance, etc., subsequently. The last remnants of the field were sold for building purposes in 1891. [Information kindly supplied by the Rev. T. A. Gurney, Rector of Swanage.] For other cases of common fields, *see* Seebohm, *op. cit.*, and note *post* on Vol. II., p. 135.

THE PRIORY MILL, CHRISTCHURCH, HANTS	517
--	-----

The Priory, at Christchurch (first called Twyneham), originally founded under Edward the Confessor for a Dean and twenty-four secular canons, was converted into an Augustinian house about 1150. Dugdale, *Monasticon* (ed. 1661), II. 177. The mill was for the use of the priory and its tenants.

	PAGE
CHARTERS OF WILLIAM I. (GUILDHALL, LONDON)	521
LEPER HOSPITAL, ST. GILES'S. LONDON	526
Drawn by Matthew Paris.	
A LEPER	526
This and the next illustration are from MS. Trinity College, Cambridge, O. I., 20.	
A TWELFTH-CENTURY DISPENSARY	527
PHYSICIAN AND PUPIL.	529
MS. Harl. 1585 : late twelfth or early thirteenth century.	
LEPER RELICS, HOSPITAL OF ST. NICHOLAS, HARBLEDOWN, KENT. . .	531
Facing the spectator is the (framed) charter, with Archbishop Peckham's seal, granted to St. Nicholas' Hospital in 1290 ; below it are a wooden and (to the left) an earthenware dish, and on each side wooden ladles, all used by the lepers. Underneath the last-named dish is a bowl with a lion and medallion : below it, the ancient sacramental plate of beaten silver used in St. Nicholas' Church. To the right, "The Warwick" bowl of the fourteenth century. On the extreme right at the top are various dishes, skewers, etc., used by the lepers, with pepper pot and old plum-pudding cloth ; below these are a box given by Erasmus (who stayed at the hospital), Becket's shoe, with a crystal set in the centre (probably fourteenth century) ; a pilgrim's wallet, a "mazer" or maple bowl of the thirteenth century with silver medallion in centre, riveted together ; the padlock of the chest, and an incense dish used by the lepers.	
THE NORMAN HOUSE, CHRISTCHURCH, HANTS.	537
Probably the house of the steward or bailiff of the monastery.	
THE SOLAR, CHARNEY BASSET, BERKS	539
In the "Monks' House"—probably once a grange of the great Abbey of Abingdon—at Charney, in Longworth parish, between Abingdon and Wantage ; belongs to the latter part of the thirteenth century, and retains its original open timber roof.	
THE HALL, OAKHAM CASTLE	541
Now used as the Assize Court ; built about 1180.	
MUSIC AND DANCING (Royal MS., 2 B. vii.)	543
From a very beautiful MS., which, as a Latin note in it records, was about to be sent abroad in 1553, when it was stopped by Baldwin Smith, a Customs officer, who presented it to Queen Mary. Hence it is known as Queen Mary's Psalter. It contains an Old Testament history, a calendar, and a Psalter, with a great variety of draw- ings, often of secular subjects and grotesques, but also of Biblical history and the martyrdoms of various saints.	
IN THE GARDEN (Same MS.)	544
HOODMAN BLIND	545
From a famous MS. of the Romance of Alexander, in verse, written in the fourteenth century ; a description will be found at the note on the illustrations to Vol. II., p. 247.	

	PAGE
CHESSMEN AND DRAUGHTSMEN. (British Museum)	547
<p>Carved in walrus ivory: found at Uig in the Island of Lewis, in the Hebrides, about 1830. They are probably of Icelandic make, but the kite-shaped shield is both Norse and Norman (<i>cf.</i> pp. 266, 332, 429), and the ornamentation of the backs of the seats strongly resembles Norman decorative work, while the arrangement of the hair corresponds with that adopted by the Normans and in some cases by the Franks. <i>Cf.</i> Sir F. Madden in <i>Archæologia</i>, XXIV.</p>	
GLEANING: THE STORY OF RUTH AND BOAZ	549
<p>Lambeth MS., No. 3. Part of the Old Testament, twelfth century.</p>	
PLAN OF A CHURCH AND ITS MONASTIC COMMUNITY	551
<p>Plan of Christ Church Cathedral and Monastery, Canterbury, MS. R. 17. 2 (Trin. Coll. Camb.). The principal buildings are conceived as forming the opposite sides of a parallelogram.</p>	
THE ABBOT'S KITCHEN, DURHAM	553
<p>Now the Dean's: begun in 1368, finished soon after 1400.</p>	
GUEST-HALL OF ST. AUGUSTINE'S MONASTERY, CANTERBURY	555
<p>The buildings, dating from the fourteenth century, were restored, after many vicissitudes, by the late Mr. Beresford Hope, and are now St. Augustine's Missionary College.</p>	
MONK TRAVELLING	557
<p>Taken from a late fifteenth-century illustrated MS. chronicle of benefactors of the Abbey of St. Albans. This represents Frederick, the thirteenth abbot, who migrated to Ely to escape the Conqueror's oppressions, and died there "in great bitterness of soul."</p>	
SEAL OF HENRY III.	561
<p>The first seal, of 1243. The titles are King of England, Lord of Ireland, Duke of Normandy and Aquitaine, and Count of Anjou.</p>	
HUBERT DE BURGH IN SANCTUARY. By Matthew Paris (<i>see</i> on p. 631, <i>post</i>)	562
SEAL OF SIMON DE MONTFORT	563
JUG, SHOWING THE ARMS OF THE CLARES, GUILDHALL, LONDON.	564
TOMB OF HENRY III., WESTMINSTER ABBEY	565
<p>By William Torell. Slabs of porphyry are let into the sides.</p>	
OPEN-AIR PREACHING	576
<p>From a MS. romance of the Holy Graal, written in France in the fourteenth century. The picture primarily is of Joseph of Arimathea converting his relations; but the pulpit, which is portable, doubtless represents a common mediæval type. The story will be found in F. J. Furnivall's edition of the <i>History of the Holy Grail</i> (E.E.T.S., Extra Series XX.).</p>	
REMAINS OF THE SHRINE OF LITTLE ST. HUGH OF LINCOLN	578
<p>Lincoln Cathedral; destroyed by Puritans. The skeleton of a child was found in 1791 in the stone coffin buried below the shrine.</p>	

	PAGE
EVIL SPIRITS DEFEATED BY ST. GUTHLAC	581
<p><i>See above, note to p. 449. St. Guthlac, during his retirement at Croyland, was much tempted by the devils who haunted the fens. The first medallion represents his castigation of the leader of a band that invaded his oratory, with a whip given him by St. Bartholomew, who had intervened on another occasion to protect him; in the second, he is shown casting out a devil with his girdle from one Egga, whose companions look on in astonishment.</i></p>	
REMAINS OF THE GREAT CHARTER	583
<p><i>This, alone of extant examples, has the seal appended.</i></p>	
RUNNYMEDE.	585
SEALS OF FAVERSHAM, LYDD, AND WINCHELSEA (thirteenth cent.)	587, 588
SHIP ATTACKING A FORT	589
<p><i>MS. CCC. Camb. 16; probably drawn by Matthew Paris; represents the attack on the "Tower of Damietta," in Egypt, by the Crusaders in 1218.</i></p>	
A SEA FIGHT (Same MS. and artist)	590
THE DANGERS OF THE SEA <i>to face</i>	590
<p><i>From a thirteenth-century Bestiary, executed in England (or possibly Flanders), MS. Harl. 4751, containing edifying Latin stories from natural history. The picture is of interest as illustrating details of rigging, etc. The text accompanying this illustration tells how a huge whale sometimes sleeps on the surface of the sea for so long that sand gathers on it and shrubs spring up, and mariners, thinking they have found an island, land on it in order to cook their food. Then the monster, awakened by their fire, suddenly dives, carrying down ship and crew; and thus Satan draws down those who trust him into the bottomless pit.</i></p>	
THE GALILEE, ELY CATHEDRAL	593
<p><i>The name is perhaps suggested by Mark xvi. 7. For its meaning, see text, page 470.</i></p>	
PETERBOROUGH CATHEDRAL, WEST FRONT	594
CHOIR AND APSE, WESTMINSTER ABBEY	595
THE CHAPTER-HOUSE, WESTMINSTER	597
THE FRESCOES, WESTMINSTER CHAPTER-HOUSE	599
SCULPTURES AT WELLS CATHEDRAL	601, 602
<p><i>The standard account of these is that of the late Mr. C. R. Cockerell, R.A., <i>Iconography of the West Front of Wells Cathedral</i>, 1851. Edward the Martyr (murdered at Corfe Castle by his step-mother, and identified by the chalice he holds, the symbol of martyrdom) is on the fourth tier, nearly over the north door. Fulk, Earl of Anjou, is identified by the Oriental character of his dress, he having become King of Jerusalem, 1131. Robert, Duke of Normandy, father of the Conqueror, is next to him. Lindhard, Bishop of Senlis, was brought as her chaplain by Bertha, the Christian Queen of Ethelred of Kent (text, p. 228). These two statues are on the lower tier.</i></p>	

	PAGE
THE "DEAN'S EYE," LINCOLN CATHEDRAL	607
In the north transept, date 1220. The "Bishop's Eye," the corresponding window in the south transept, dates from 1350.	
COUCY CASTLE, NEAR LAON, FRANCE, SHOWING PLACE OF BRETACHE .	609
This castle, of which the donjon is described by Viollet-le-Duc as the finest mediæval military building remaining in Europe, is about twenty miles W.S.W. of Laon. It was built by Enguerrand III., Sire de Coucy, in 1225-1230, and demolished by Mazarin in 1652.	
AYDON HALL, NORTHUMBERLAND	611
"A border house carefully fortified": about five miles from Hexham, overlooking the valley of the Tyne.	
COINS OF HENRY III. (<i>See</i> the text)	612
BRASENOSE COLLEGE GATE, STAMFORD	615
The college was founded, according to tradition, in 1292, for students of the Order founded by Gilbert of Sempringham, and occupied by immigrant students from Oxford, during the secession.	
THE MONASTIC ORDERS, FROM A PSALTER	619
Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge, No. 76; fourteenth century. Of English workmanship, and believed to come from the diocese of Exeter. In the initial, Christ, with globe; above, busts, on margin. At the top (left) are two secular priests in copes, and two Benedictine monks in black habits; at the bottom are two Cistercians in white, two Dominicans in black over white, two (probably) Premonstratensians in white, two more Dominicans, two Franciscans in brown, two Carmelites in white over black, two more Benedictines. On the right are two Franciscan nuns, two Benedictine nuns, and two acolytes in albs, swinging censers. The miniature illustrates Psalm xcvi. The page is ten inches by six and a half. The MS. has been much defaced. <i>Cf.</i> James, <i>Catalogue</i> of the Sidney Sussex MSS.	
ARISTOTLE TEACHING	623
From a thirteenth-century MS., Royal 12 G. v., written in England, and containing a Latin translation of Aristotle's <i>Physics</i> .	
LEAF FROM GREEK MS., USED BY GROSSETESTE	625
From a MS. in the Cambridge University Library, Ff. 7, 24, containing, amongst other things, the "Testaments of the Twelve Patriarchs" in Greek. From a story that this treatise was discovered at Athens by John Basingstoke, Archdeacon of Leicester, and obtained from Greece by Grosseteste, who translated this treatise into Latin, it is inferred that this MS. is the one he used. <i>Cave, Hist. Litt. I.</i> , p. 309, quoted in the <i>Catalogue</i> of the Cambridge University Library, Vol. II., p. 315. The passage shown represents 1 Chron. i.	
LINGUISTIC DIVISIONS OF THE BRITISH ISLES ABOUT 1250	631
These boundaries must be taken as approximations only. For the Cornish line the authority followed is H. Kluge in Paul, <i>Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie</i> , I. (Strassb., 1889). Gower and Southern Pembrokeshire were occupied by English and Flemings respectively. The Lowlands of Scotland, and the valleys of the Clyde, Nith, and Esk, were settled by English colonists, often under Norman leadership, during the century after William the Conqueror's accession; but Gaelic was dominant in Galloway and Kirkcudbright in the reign of James I. of England, and was not extinct even under James II. For	

the Gaelic of the Highlands, the "Highland line," as traced by Skene, *Celtic Scotland*, is taken as representing the boundary. Cf. that work, Vol. III., p. 22. Orkney and Shetland were still Norse in allegiance as in speech, and Norse was also spoken in the lowlands of Caithness. As to Ireland, Down and Antrim, and in a less degree the districts round Dublin and Wexford, were settled by men of English speech, while there had been Danish settlements in the towns of Wexford and Waterford. The district round Limerick was also settled by English, but no linguistic limits can be very definite, because the English settlers notoriously often became "more Irish than the Irish." Wicklow and the adjacent hill districts certainly remained Celtic. Cf. Richey, *History of the Irish People*, p. 137 *seq.* For the boundaries of the English dialects see the text; for the northern boundary of Midland, Mr. A. J. Ellis's demarcation, which relates to the present day, has been followed. See his *English Dialects*, and Morris and Skeat, *Specimens of Early English*.

MATTHEW PARIS WRITING HIS CHRONICLE 634

MS. Royal 14 C. vii., a thirteenth-century English MS. of Matthew Paris's *Historia Minor*, an abridgment of his larger history, believed by Sir F. Madden, who edited it for the Rolls Series, to have been written and illustrated by the author.

MATTHEW PARIS, DRAWN BY HIMSELF 635

He is prostrate at the feet of the Virgin.

SCENES FROM THE ROMANCE OF ALEXANDER 639

Trinity College, Cambridge: 1, The Rhiphaeans fighting the Griffins.
2, Alexander and his party. 3, Alexander disembarking.

MILKING EWES, FROM THE LUTTRELL PSALTER 642

The date of this famous Latin Psalter is fixed as earlier than 1340 by the statement contained in it that it was caused to be made by Sir Geoffrey Luttrell (of Irnham, Lincolnshire), who died in 1345, and by a miniature representing the knight himself, his wife (who died in 1340), and one of their daughters-in-law. A calendar is prefixed, and this and the margins of the Psalter are adorned with drawings, including many grotesque and fanciful figures. It belonged about 1600 to Lord William Howard, who is commemorated in the *Lay of the Last Minstrel* as "Belted Will," and a hundred years later to Sir Nicolas Shireburn, from whom it eventually passed by inheritance to the family of Weld, of Lulworth Castle, Dorsetshire. It was described by Mr. J. G. Rokewode in *Vetusta Monumenta*, Vol. VI., where some, but by no means all, of its principal illustrations are reproduced. Those given in this work are, it is believed, the first photographed directly from the originals, and the editor and publishers desire to express their gratitude to the Weld trustees for the unrestricted permission accorded them to draw on the stores of this famous MS.

A COUNTRY CART, FROM THE LUTTRELL PSALTER 649

The driver is one of the grotesque figures frequent in this MS.

PEWTER SPOONS, GUILDHALL MUSEUM, LONDON 650

MEDIAEVAL JUGS, GUILDHALL MUSEUM, LONDON (13th and 14th cent.) 651

A SPANISH TINAJA, OR WINE-JAR, GUILDHALL MUSEUM 652

Made of coarse, greenish earthenware; three feet in height, and about ten feet in circumference; found under several feet of soil in Bucklersbury, in the City of London, in 1865. The finer wines were, doubtless, imported in such jars, which could be closely sealed.

	PAGE
THE FIRST STAGES ON THE ROAD TO ROME	655

MS. Royal 14 C. vii. (*see above*). The route runs up the left-hand column from London through Rochester—one day's journey—Canterbury, one day from Rochester, and “the chief of the churches of England,” near which St. Augustine's monastery is shown, and Dover, “the entrance and key of the rich isle of England,” nearly a day's journey from Canterbury. The traveller has then a choice of routes *viâ* Wissant, Calais, or Abbeville. By the first-named, which is most conspicuous, he reaches Paris, or rather St. Denis, in five days, and thence proceeds *viâ* Nogent, Troyes, Bar-sur-Seine, Châtillon-sur-Seine, and Beaune to Lyons in eleven days. Going by Calais or Abbeville he avoids Paris, and joins the main route at Troyes or Beaune respectively. From Lyons he proceeds to Turin by the Mont Cenis in about seven days. In Italy a great variety of routes is given, and most of the great towns are marked, but the indications of time seem to stop just beyond Bologna. The chief aim of the Itinerary is as a guide for pilgrims to the Holy Land, of which, and of the Mediterranean, considerable detail is shown (including a camel), and much information given in notes. Acre appears to have been the usual port of debarkation. The whole occupies seven folio pages. It has been reproduced (according to Sir F. Madden, inaccurately) by M. Jomard, and in part by Gough and Camden, but a full representation and commentary seem to be urgently desirable.

A LOOM.—FOLDING THE WOVEN FABRIC	657
--	-----

These two illustrations, from the MS. of the Alexander Romance at Trinity College, Cambridge, are there given as representing the weaving of silk by the Seres or Chinese; but the artist doubtless found his models at home.

ROPEMAKING, FROM THE LUTTRELL PSALTER	658
---	-----

The large wheel moves a smaller one, which twists the yarn.

A WINDMILL, FROM THE LUTTRELL PSALTER	659
---	-----

The whole mill can be turned on an axis.

THE COBBLER, WELLS CATHEDRAL. (<i>See on p. 631</i>)	661
--	-----

CARICATURE OF ISAAC OF NORWICH	667
--	-----

A drawing from the top of a “Roll of the Jews” of 1233, preserved in the Record Office, and recording receipt of sums from various Jews, *e.g.* “Of Rachael, the daughter of David, 11s. 4d., for an aid to marry the king's daughter.” *See Jacobs, Jews of Angevin England*

A JEW OF COLCHESTER, FROM A FOREST ROLL OF ESSEX	668
--	-----

The roll is of 5 Edward I. (1332). The drawing, which is superscribed “Aaron fil diaboli” (Aaron, son of a devil), is set against a record of the proceedings taken against certain Jews of Colchester. In 1267 a gentleman of the neighbourhood was hunting; the deer ran through the town, and the chase was joined by Jews and Christians alike. The deer, in endeavouring to jump a wall, broke its neck, and the townsmen were charged with an offence against the forest laws. The Christians were let off with moderate fines, the Jews sentenced to heavier fines and imprisonment. The drawing is to be regarded as a portrait rather than a caricature, in spite of the superscription, and probably represents one of the offenders who, having fled, came back again ten years after (the entry is dated 1277) and compounded for reversal of sentence of outlawry. The story is effectively told in

	PAGE
Jacobs, <i>Jewish Ideals</i> , p. 225 <i>seqq.</i> , from which the above account is summarised. For the square patch on Aaron's cloak <i>cf.</i> text, p. 675.	
MOYSES HALL, BURY ST. EDMUNDS	671
A JEWISH STARR OR DEED	672
INTERIOR OF MOYSES HALL	673
MARTYRDOM OF ST WILLIAM OF NORWICH	676
From a painting in Loddon Church, Northumberland, of about 1500. Figured in Earle, <i>Anglo-Saxon Chronicle</i> .	
MEN'S HAIR AND BEARDS IN THE TWELFTH CENTURY	681
The MS. contains drawings of Biblical subjects by an Anglo-Norman artist. Primarily this illustrates the anointing of David by Samuel.	
A NORMAN LADY'S HAIR	682
Mary Magdalene falling at the feet of Christ.	
ANGLO-NORMAN LADIES' DRESS	683
Same MS. ; primarily representing the visit of Mary to Elizabeth.	
COSTUME, LATE THIRTEENTH CENTURY (Queen Mary's Psalter)	684
THE DEVIL TIGHT-LACED	684
See note to p. 681 ; part of a picture of the Temptation of Christ.	
A LADY HUNTING	685
MS. Add. 24,686 ; a Psalter of about 1284, probably begun for Alphonso, eldest son of Edward I., afterwards the property of his sister Elizabeth, Countess of Hereford.	
ARMOUR AT THE CLOSE OF THE THIRTEENTH CENTURY	687
Except where otherwise stated, the brasses represented are from the great Addington collection of rubbings in the British Museum, MS. Add. 32,490 (44 vols.). The Stoke d'Abernoun brass is said to be the earliest extant in England. Plate armour is superadded to that here represented about 1320 ; <i>see</i> Vol. II., p. 54.	
KNIGHT IN ARMOUR	688
MS. Royal 2 A. xxii. ; late thirteenth cent. A Book of Prayers.	
WATER TILTING (Queen Mary's Psalter)	689
ARMOURED KNIGHTS, FROM THE ROLL OF ST. GUTHLAC	689
TILTING, FROM THE LUTTRELL PSALTER (<i>see</i> on p. 642)	689
THE FAVERSHAM HELMET	690
Found in a church at Faversham, Kent, and believed by Planché to have belonged to King Stephen ; now in the Musée de l'Artillerie, Paris. Planché, <i>Cyclopædia of Costume</i> , art. "Helmet."	
THE QUINTAIN, OFFHAM, KENT	692
The only extant specimen. It was repaired, however, in 1826, and appears to have been moved from its original situation to another part of the village green. The buildings behind it are oast-houses, or kilns for drying hops, so characteristic of the county of Kent.	

CONTRIBUTORS TO THIS VOLUME.

- CAMBER-WILLIAMS, Rev. R., M.A., Keble College, Oxford; Canon Residentiary of St. Davids, and Diocesan Missioner; sometime Lecturer in Theology at St. Davids, Lampeter; author of *A History of the Church in Wales* (in Welsh).
- CLOWES, W. LAIRD, Fellow of King's College, London; Gold Medallist, U.S. Naval Institute; Editor and Principal Author of *The Royal Navy: A History*; and of *A Naval Pocket Book*.
- CORBETT, W. J., M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.
- CREIGHTON, C., M.A., M.D.; Author of *A History of Epidemics in Britain*.
- EDWARDS, OWEN M., M.A., Fellow of Lincoln College, Oxford; sometime M.P. for Merionethshire; Lecturer in Modern History at Lincoln, Corpus Christi, and Pembroke Colleges, Oxford.
- HALL, HUBERT, F.S.A., Public Record Office; Author of a *History of the Customs Revenue*, and Editor of *The Red Book of the Exchequer* (Rolls Series).
- HASSALL, A., M.A., Student and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford; Author of *The French People*; *A Class Book of English History*, 1901; *European History, Chronologically Arranged*, 476-1871; *Bolingbroke* ("Statesmen" Series); *Louis XIV.* ("Heroes of the Nations" Series); Joint Editor of and Contributor to *Constitutional Essays*; Editor of and Contributor to *Periods of European History*.
- HAVERFIELD, F., M.A., Censor, Student, and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford; Member of the German Imperial Archæological Institute; F.S.A., Hon. F.S.A. Scot., etc.
- HEATH, H. FRANK, Ph.D. Strasburg; Registrar of the Academic Council, University of London; one of the Editors of *The Globe Chaucer*.
- HUGHES, REGINALD, D.C.L. Oxon.
- HUTTON, Rev. W. H., B.D., Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Oxford Author of *The Marquess Wellesley*; *William Laud*; *Sir Thomas More*; *The Church of the VI. Century*, etc.
- JACOBS, JOSEPH, B.A., Late Scholar of St. John's College, Cambridge; President of the Jewish Historical Society of England, and Corresponding Member of the Royal Academy of History at Madrid and of the American Jewish Historical Society at Philadelphia; Author of *The Jews of Angevin England*; *Sources of the History of the Jews of Spain*; *Jewish Ideals*, etc.

- MAITLAND, F. W., LL.D., Hon., D.C.L., Downing Professor of Law in the University of Cambridge; Author of *Domesday Book and Beyond*; *Township and Borough*; *Canon Law in England*; Editor of *Pleas of the Crown* (Selden Society); joint Author with Prof. Pollock of *A History of English Law*.
- MANN A. H., M.A. Oxon.
- MAUDE, Rev. J. H., M.A., Examining Chaplain to the Bishop of St. Albans; sometime Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford.
- MEDLEY, D. J., M.A., Professor of History in the University of Glasgow; sometime Tutor of Keble College, Oxford; Author of *A Student's Manual of English Constitutional History*.
- OMAN, C. W. C., M.A., Fellow of All Souls' College, and Deputy Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford; Author of *The Art of War in the Middle Ages*; *Warwick the King-maker*; *The History of Europe, 476-918*, etc.
- POOLE, REGINALD L., M.A., Ph.D., Fellow of Magdalen College and Lecturer in Diplomatic in the University of Oxford; Editor of the *English Historical Review*; Author of *Illustrations of the History of Mediæval Thought*.
- POWELL, F. YORK, M.A., LL.D., Glasgow; Fellow of Oriel College, Student of Christ Church, and Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford; Author of *A School History of England to 1509*; Co-Editor of *Corpus Poeticum Boreale*.
- RICHARDS, F. T., M.A., sometime Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Oxford.
- SMITH, A. L., M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Balliol College, Oxford.
-

PREFATORY NOTE TO THE ILLUSTRATED EDITION.

SINCE the first issue of this work, the sections dealing with the military history and with the art of Roman Britain, and with social life and manners from the earliest period down to the reign of Elizabeth, have been entirely rewritten, while two additional sections have been inserted dealing with the history of the Jews in England from the Norman Conquest to their expulsion under Edward I. Of these new portions, Mr. Haverfield's account of Romano-British Art in Chapter I. has been written specially for the illustrated edition, as have the sections on social life in the later Middle Ages by Professor Medley and in the Tudor period by Miss Bateson, which will appear in Vols. II. and III. respectively. The text, moreover, has undergone occasional rearrangement and condensation. At the request of the publishers, and with a view to render the book as widely useful as possible, the popular spelling of the more familiar Old English names has been adopted, as well as of a few technical terms; and brief explanatory notes have been occasionally inserted. Where these are not the work of the contributors, they are in brackets. A few trifling changes, consequent on the new contributions, were made in the Introduction, with Mr. Traill's approval, in view of the publication of a revised edition in 1896. Unhappily, he did not live to see his work in its ultimate and most perfect form. His death deprives his own contributions of the final revision he had promised, and the work as a whole of the further aid of one of the ablest and most widely accomplished of political writers and literary critics in the later Victorian era.

The purpose of the work is fully described in the Introduction; but, in view of some criticisms on the earlier issues,

it is desirable to add a few words of explanation. The co-operation of a number of writers, without which such a work as the present one could not be undertaken, necessarily involves not only some repetition, but occasional divergencies of opinion. In the present edition, these divergencies have been reduced to a minimum. Where they remain, they have been left intentionally, to remind the ordinary reader that history is, after all, to some extent still in the making, and that he must not expect to be saved the trouble of forming his own judgment on points which may still be reasonably regarded as controversial.

In selecting the illustrations, the primary aim has been to elucidate and emphasise the information given in the text. In almost all cases it has been found possible to draw directly from contemporary and original sources; where this is not so, the fact is stated either below the illustration or in the notes. Many of the MS. subjects, it is believed, have never been reproduced before; many others have hitherto been known only through drawings, which cannot be so trustworthy as the results of photography; and many of these drawings have been contained only in works quite out of the reach of ordinary readers. Of the store of art treasures contained in the famous Luttrell Psalter, and exhibiting in remarkable variety the rural life, the domestic manners, and the amusements of fourteenth-century England, as well as an important aspect of its art, some examples have been published in accessible books, but the ultimate source available to the general public has hitherto been the selection given in the volume of *Vetusta Monumenta* published by the Society of Antiquaries in 1846. A number of the subjects there given, and several which are not, have been photographed for this work directly from the MS. Of the treasures even of such well-known MSS. as Queen Mary's Psalter, the famous Decretals (10 E. iv.) and the theological encyclopædia of the monk Jacob in the British Museum (MS. Roy. 6 E. vi., vii.), very little use appears to have been made hitherto in any popular work; while the college libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, and the great Addington collection of monumental brasses, seem to present to the archæologist a mine almost unworked. It would require many books on social history to exhaust their treasures;

the present publication can only claim to have revealed the best.

For anything like a complete list of authorities on English history the student must, of course, be referred to special bibliographies, such as those constructed by Messrs. Gardiner and Bass Mullinger or Dr. Gross. The lists given at the end of each chapter have been compiled with the assistance of the contributors to the work, and are intended for such students as are desirous of following up any of the multitudinous lines of inquiry suggested by its contents.

To make anything like a full and adequate acknowledgment of the assistance liberally and generously given by the possessors or custodians of the subjects photographed would require much more space than can be afforded here. Special thanks are due to Bodley's librarian, Mr. E. W. B. Nicholson, for his advice and the facilities he has given us; to the librarian of Cambridge University, to the authorities and librarians of Trinity, Corpus Christi, Sidney Sussex, and Clare Colleges, Cambridge; to Mr. A. J. Evans, Keeper of the Ashmolean Museum at Oxford; to the Society of Antiquaries and their secretary, Mr. W. St. John Hope; to the Provost of Eton; to the librarian of Lambeth; to the authorities and curators of the museums at Blackburn, Chester, Colchester, Durham (University), Edinburgh, Glasgow (Hunterian Museum), Maidstone, Stockholm (National Museum), Shrewsbury, Taunton, and York; to the Library Committee of the Corporation of the City of London; to the Weld Trustees, for their unrestricted permission to select subjects from the Luttrell Psalter; and, above all, to the officials of the British Museum, without whose unfailing courtesy and readiness to assist the inquirer it would have been impossible to undertake this work. In respect of this volume, special thanks are also due to Miss Bowen Jones, Messrs. C. A. Cripps, C.B., W. Ransom, C. Bathurst (Lydney Park), A. T. Martin, H. P. Senhouse, J. Arckoll, the Rev. T. A. Gurney, Rector of Swanage; the Rev. James Pryse, Rector of Clynnog, and the authorities of St. Nicholas Hospital, Harbledown, Canterbury, for permission to photograph subjects which will be found duly specified in the proper place. We have also to acknowledge with gratitude the valuable assistance rendered in

selecting illustrations for the first volume by Mr. F. Haverfield, in the sections dealing with Roman Britain, and by Prof. Medley and Dr. Montague James, of King's College, Cambridge, for the second, third, and fourth chapters. Numerous acknowledgments are also due for assistance in connection with subsequent volumes, which will be made in their proper place.

J. S. MANN.

October, 1901.

ERRATUM.

In page 374, last line, and in map of the dominions of the Angevin kings, facing page 382, *for* Debenborth *read* Deheubarth.

•

INTRODUCTION.

A CIVILISED nation has many aspects, and the story of its life might be told in as many ways. But, broadly speaking, the forms under which it presents itself to observation may be reduced to three. We may consider it either as a Society, as a Polity, or as a State among States. The first and simplest conception of it is, of course, as a Society—a body of individuals associated, primarily, for the purposes of mutual support in the struggle with the hostile forces of Nature, and of common advantage in the acquisition and distribution of her products. Association, however, necessarily creates rights and duties; from rights and duties spring law and government; with law and government the Polity is born; and from the intercourse of one polity with another arises the still wider conception of the State among States.

Under which of these three aspects we propose to review the life of the English nation in the following pages is sufficiently indicated by the title of the work. It is with our career as a Society, and not as a Polity, nor as a State among States, that this history is concerned. At the outset, however, it may be as well to guard against the risk of any misconception as to the sense in which our title is employed and the limits within which it applies. Every civilised Society is in the nature of an organism, the shape and direction of whose evolution depend in part upon the action of internal forces and in part upon the influence of its surroundings. Among those surroundings the laws and institutions of every such Society form a most important element and play a very potent part. True as it may be that they often owe both their origin and complexion, wholly or in large measure, to the character of the people who devise or who accept them, it is no less true that they react powerfully upon that character and materially affect its development. Still more obvious is it that, whatever may have been a nation's

natural tendencies of growth, they are liable to be profoundly influenced by the nature of its relations with other States—with States from whom it may learn arts and industries or derive wealth; with States whom it may conquer or be conquered by; with States who may strengthen it by alliances or exhaust it in wars. In strictness of language, therefore, the social history of any country is not, and cannot be, absolutely separable from the history of its political events, its legal and administrative institutions, and its international fortunes. The undue prominence formerly given by historians to these matters has produced a reaction, which is, perhaps, in some danger of running to excess; and the influence of politics upon social progress is again, perhaps, beginning to assert itself as a force of greater activity and potency than a certain modern school of historical writers are disposed to acknowledge. “Drum-and-trumpet histories,” no doubt, deserves much of the contempt which the late Mr. J. R. Green, by implication, cast upon them in the preface to his famous work; but nevertheless there are passages in the epic of a nation’s life which seem imperatively to require recitation to the strains of these martial instruments. Without such an accompaniment, indeed, the historical narratives would sometimes be not only inadequate, but positively unintelligible.

Yet, although we cannot entirely detach the history of the Society from that of the Polity and State, although we cannot escape the necessity of combining with our narrative of the material, moral, and intellectual progress of the people some parallel record of their politics at home and abroad, we can approximate sufficiently for our present purpose to a separation of the two subjects. It is open to us, and it has been the object aimed at in these pages, to *abstract* from the political, and to *isolate* the social facts of our history wherever this can be done; to deal as concisely as the demands of clearness will permit with matters of war and conquest, of treaty and alliance, of constitutional conflict and dynastic struggle; but to treat at length and in detail of the various stages of our English civilisation, whether as marked by recognisable epochs in moral and intellectual advance, or as indirectly traceable through those accretions of wealth which, by increasing comfort and enlarging leisure, do so much to promote the intellectual development, and, within

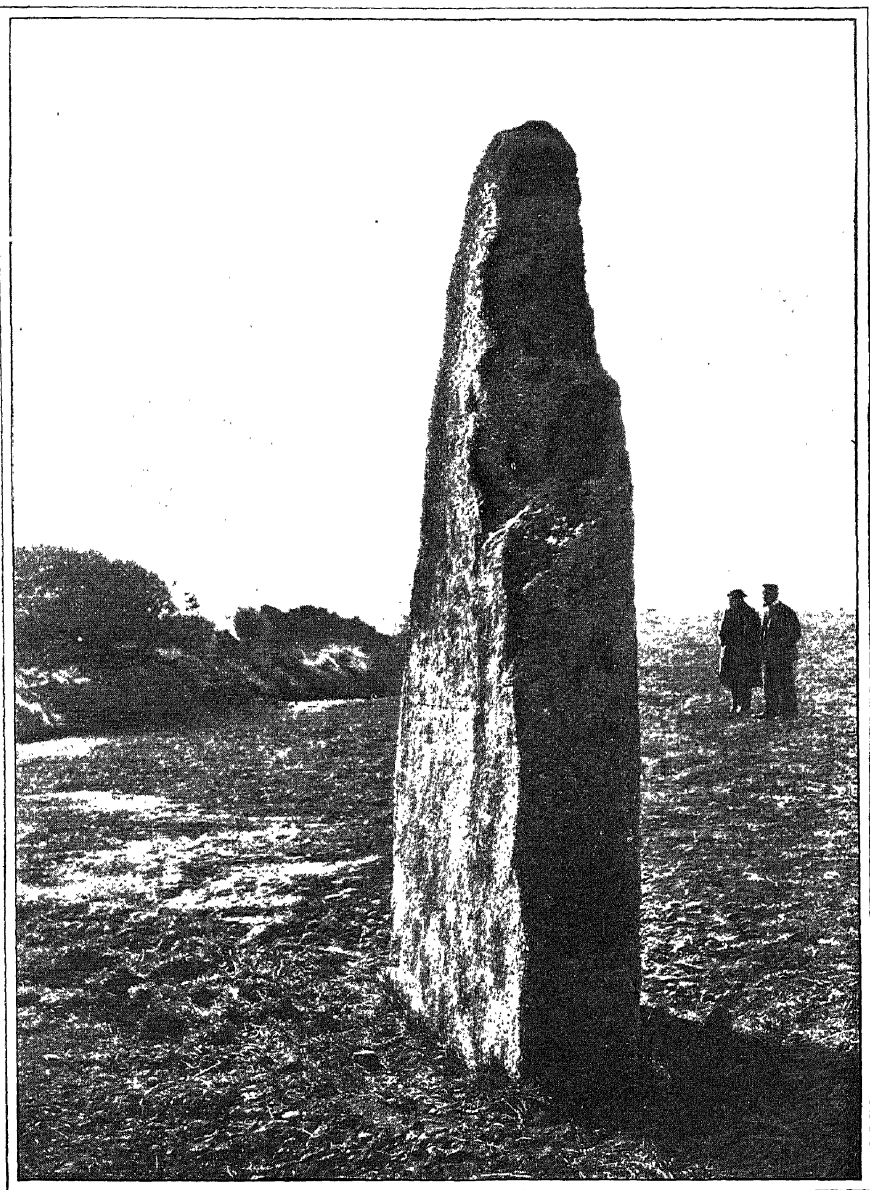
certain limits, the moral improvement of peoples. It is possible, and it is here intended, to dwell mainly on such matters as the growth and economic movements of the population, the progressive expansion of industry and commerce, the gradual spread of education and enlightenment, the advance of arts and sciences, the steady diffusion, in short, of all the refining influences of every description which make for the "humane life."

Such a treatment of the history of a people must obviously follow one or other of two methods. Either their forward movement, from the first rude and simple beginnings of Society to the complexity of modern life, may be viewed throughout as a whole; or the progress made by them in all the various departments of human activity may be examined period by period, in detail. In other words, we may take up a position from which we can survey the entire array of our civilising forces in their wide-winged advance; or we may collect reports from those who have separately followed the onward march of each of the great divisions of which the army is composed. Either method has its advantages, and either its drawbacks. The former undoubtedly presents us with a picture more impressive to the eye, but the latter yields results less bewildering to the mind. What is lost to the imagination through the employment of this method is the gain of the understanding, and perhaps no other justification is needed for its adoption in a work of this kind. For it may at least be claimed for a Social History of England compiled on this principle, that if it will not of itself enable the reader to comprehend the entire subject in all its vast proportions, it is the best preparation which he could have for an attempt to grapple with that formidable task. A powerful imagination, aided by exceptional clearness of head and tenacity of memory, might possibly attack so many-sided a subject *en bloc* with some prospect of success; but for the great majority of mankind a patient study of it, detail by detail, must precede any attempt to survey it as a whole.

There is also, I venture to think, another convenience, and an additional aid to fulness of comprehension, in the method which has been here adopted. By the plan of tracing our social progress through the various departments of activity which sum up the life of a people, that continuous movement from the general to the special, from the simple to the complex, from unity to

multiplicity, which the advance of civilisation involves, and indeed implies, is brought before the reader in, perhaps, the most conspicuous of all possible ways. It "leaps to the eye," so to say, from the very table of contents. As the centuries roll on the six or seven great categories under which the various forms and forces of social life may at first be divided become unequal to the needs of classification. The accumulating facts under each of them grow too various in character to be massed together without risk of confusion. New activities arise which refuse to class themselves under the old headings. Divisions of the subject throw off subdivisions which themselves require later on to be further subdivided. In every department of our national life there is the same story of evolutionary growth—continuous in some of them, intermittent in others, but unmistakable in all. Industries multiply and ramify; Commerce begets child after child; Art, however slowly in this country as compared with others, diversifies its forms; Learning breaks from its mediæval tutelage and enters upon its world-wide patrimony: Literature, after achieving a poetic utterance the most noble to which man has ever attained, perfects a prose more powerful than that of any living competitor, and more flexible than all save one; and finally, Science, latest of birth but most marvellous of growth, rises suddenly to towering stature, stretches forth its hundred hands of power, extending immeasurably the reach of human energies, and, through the reaction of a transformed external life upon man's inner nature, profoundly and irreversibly, if still to some extent obscurely, modifies the earthly destinies of the race.

It is surely no reproach to the intellectual faculties of the average modern Englishman that he should require the aids of classification and arrangement to assist him to realise this mighty and manifold advance. To attempt to review the whole line of a moving army through stage after stage of its march might well confuse the perceptions of all save the trained military expert, and dazzle any but the most practised eye. And some such effect could hardly fail to be produced by a Social History of England which, in chapter after chapter, and sometimes even in paragraph after paragraph, should interweave the story of our progress in arts or letters with the record of the growth of our industries and the expansion of our commerce.



MENHIR, "THE BLIND FIDDLER," NEAR PENZANCE.

One of the best British examples of a class of stones formerly thought to be sepulchral, now connected (with more probability) with nature-worship. Larger menhirs are found in Brittany.

It is with the view, as has been said, of avoiding such confusion that the plan of these volumes has been determined on. To those responsible for its selection it has seemed best to treat of each great department of our social life in severalty, and as far as possible (though this, of course, is not always entirely possible) in strict segregation from the rest; and so to arrange the work as that each chapter should carry on the history of our progress in every such department from the point at which the preceding chapter left it.

It may be objected to this arrangement that it inevitably entails a certain amount of repetition. The objection is just, but not, as it has seemed to the projectors of this work, of any considerable weight. Certain events and influences do undoubtedly touch our social history on more than one of its sides, and certain historic personages belong to it in more than one capacity. Economic movements, for instance, are sometimes inseparably associated with changes in manners, arts and industries occasionally overlap each other, the religious leader in early periods is often the promoter of learning, not infrequently also the eminent man-of-letters. All such things and persons require, of course, to be dealt with under more than one section, and have been so dealt with in fact. But it will be found, I venture to think, that these unavoidable duplications are neither numerous nor important enough to weigh against the general convenience of the adopted arrangement.

The various heads, then, under which our Social History may be considered are as follow :—

- I. Civil Organisation.
- II. Religion.
- III. Learning and Science.
- IV. Literature.
- V. Art.
- VI. Trade and Industry.
- VII. Manners.

The general character of the contents of Section I. may be gathered from the foregoing remarks. It will contain a concisely summarised account of the more important political events of each period, especially of such as have an immediate bearing on the social life of the people; but it will be mainly

devoted to tracing the development of our administrative institutions (the history of English law and of our judicial system being dealt with in a separate section), and will, in fact, render a continuous account of the various modes in which the Society has expressed and expresses itself as the Polity. Our progress in the arts of military and naval defence, which would properly fall, perhaps, to be treated of under this section, is the subject of special contributions.

In Section II. we shall deal with the subject of Religion under each of the three distinct forms in which it has influenced our social life—the forms, namely, of faith, worship, and discipline. We shall treat of it, that is to say, not only in its inner aspect as a force, in promoting, directing, or modifying, both by ritual and doctrine, the spiritual energies of the individual citizen, but also in its outward aspect as a system of injunctions and observances affecting civil life as a whole. The twofold or threefold character of this treatment will not at first necessitate any subdivisions of the subject. Throughout those centuries during which the faith of the nation was formulated, its worship directed, and its discipline prescribed by a single authority, the history of the Church of England covers the history of national religion. It is not till after the Reformation and until the centrifugal influences of Protestantism come into full play in the multiplication of nonconforming sects, that it will be necessary to expand this section for the inclusion of all the religious influences bearing upon our Social History.

The combined treatment of Learning and Science in Section III. will, of course, be only possible in the earlier volumes of the work. But during the period covered by those volumes the two titles were, in fact, names of the same thing. Where Science indeed has from the first depended to some extent on experiment, as in the case of medicine, we begin at once to give it separate treatment; but it is not till it becomes exclusively and universally experimental that it ceases to belong to the household of Learning and claims an “establishment” of its own. Before that time, both alike begin and end in the study of written records. In this section, however, we shall deal, not only with the subject of the acquisition but with that of the diffusion of secular knowledge. It will be a combined history of research and of education.

It is, perhaps, unnecessary to observe that Section IV. cannot always, from the nature of the case, be completely separated from the preceding section. The dividing-line between Literature and Science is frequently effaced, even in these days—sometimes agreeably enough, through the literary gifts of scientific men; at other times, less desirably, through the scientific affectations of contemporary men-of-letters. But in earlier times, when poetry was still in its infancy, and romance and drama and criticism were as yet unbegotten, much of the existing national literature was the literature of Learning, and the appearance of the names of many early writers and their works, both in this and in the foregoing division, was, therefore, inevitable. Nevertheless, the capacities in which they will thus appear being distinguishable from each other, they have a right to the double mention. Primitive epic, for instance, and ancient chronicle may be one; but the influence of the bard on the future of letters and of the language is something quite distinct from his contribution to contemporary learning and to our own knowledge of his time. His achievements in each capacity must be separately studied if his place in the history of English Social Life is to be accurately adjudged. Still, it is only in the earliest volume of this work that cases of this kind will be likely to occur. Later on the distinction between Literature and Learning will become and remain sufficiently well marked.

The subject of Section V. is from the outset more clearly defined. It is, indeed, in its earliest stages that Art is most distinctly independent and self-sufficing—most clearly the product of the natural human striving after the beautiful. In the story of almost every nation the progress of this struggle has an interest of its own, irrespectively of the measure of its success, and it is far from being wanting in such interest in our own country. For a long time, however, the record of success, or at least of distinguished success, is with us, in a certain sense, a limited one. The history of English art is, for many ages, the history of a great architecture—mainly, indeed, of a great religious architecture alone. With the two other leading art-forms—with painting and sculpture—it is long before English social history has to concern itself; and we approach almost within sight of our own time before the subject of this section so expands as to compel its subdivision.

It is in the section which follows that the need of specialisation is soonest felt. Under the joint heading of Trade and Industry we have been able at the outset to deal in one and the same article with the entire history of national industry and of national and international exchange, whether of natural or manufactured products. But at an early stage of the work the urban industries claim separation from agriculture; production and exchange soon after part company; and it may be that at last the ever-growing volume of our foreign commerce will require to be treated apart from the history of inland trade.

To the comprehensive title of Section VII. it may be objected that it is of somewhat indefinite import and extent; but it is on that account all the more fitted to describe the miscellaneous character of the matter which it covers, and to enable us to sum up under it all that remains to be recorded in the history of social progress. Needless to say, perhaps, it makes no pretence to be scientific, and indeed it so far departs from strictly logical principles of classification as to introduce a new order of phenomena to the group. For it will, of course, be observed that whereas Religion, Industry, Learning, and the other titles which have been already under consideration, represent forces as well as their realised effects, the title now to be considered has not that duality of meaning. It is, in fact, only a name for the resultant of all the forces in question. The manners of a people are simply such as its industries, its religion, its art and learning and literature combine to make them; for upon the first of these factors depends that wealth which determines the material aspect of manners, while the other factors represent the humanising, refining, and sanctifying influences to which their moral aspect at any given stage of a people's social history is due.

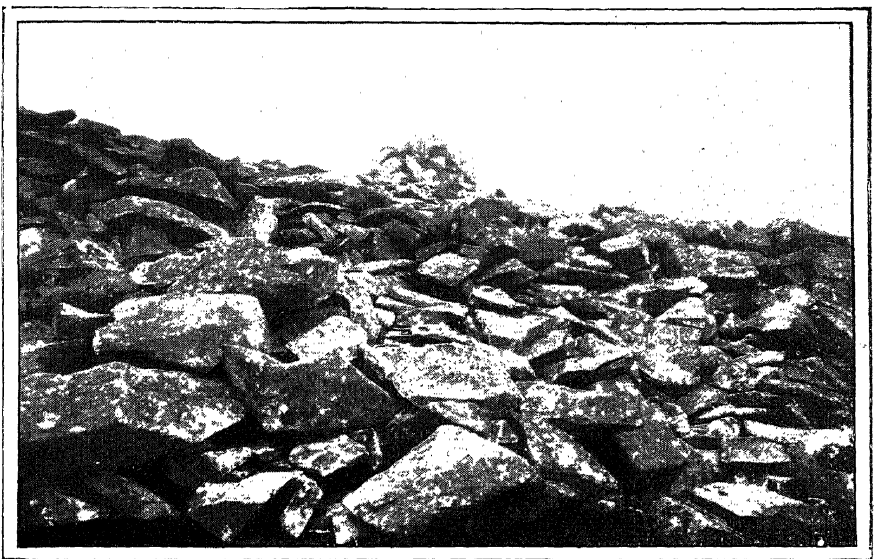
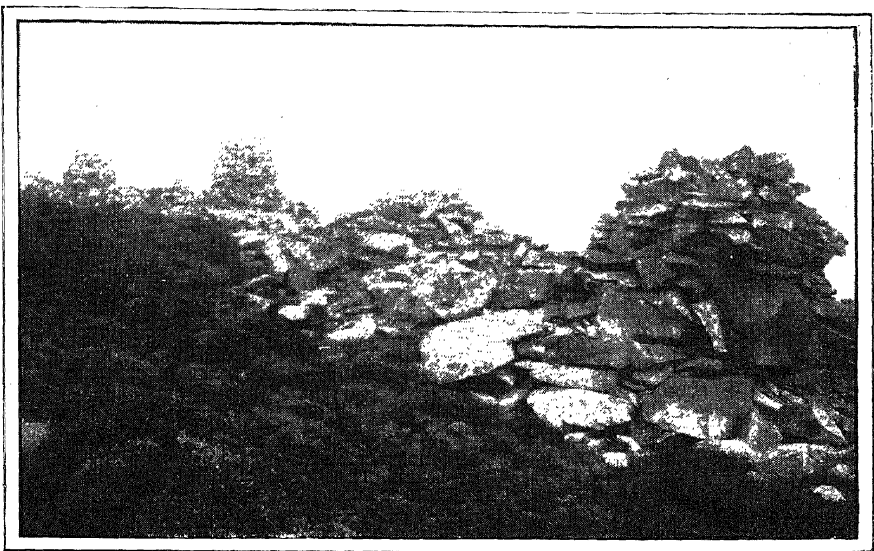
Hence, no doubt, it may be said with truth that every phenomenon recorded in our sections on manners is, strictly speaking, referable to one or more of the sections into which the work is divided. For where it is not the expression of some physical fact or material force, it is the product of some moral or spiritual agent in the formation of a national character, which has, or should have been, already dealt with elsewhere. Nevertheless, the phenomena in question are so multitudinous that in the vast majority of cases it is only possible to note them in the

mass, and without endeavouring to correlate them with each other, or to trace them to their creative causes. To the senses of most of us the social state of any country at any given stage of its civilisation is expressed by—is, indeed, almost identical with—the condition of its manners; and however thoroughly a social history may investigate the inner forces which have made for the civilisation and advancement of the community, it could not complete the picture to the eye, and still less to the imagination of a reader, without devoting an ample, perhaps even a relatively greater, space to the presentment of the outward aspect of their lives.

I. CIVIL ORGANISATION.

It is difficult for those who are confronted as we are at every turn by that endless intertexture of institutions of which contemporary society is made up, to realise the beginnings of our English life. Civil organisation among the earliest inhabitants of these islands—what was it? What meaning would the words have had? Or, if the words themselves are too abstract, what things and thoughts which we should nowadays contemplate under that subject-name were before the eyes and in the minds of the men among whom Cæsar's legionaries sprang, sword in hand, from their galleys on a certain day in the fifty-fifth year before the birth of Christ? Can "Civil Organisation" of any sort be predicted of them; or are not the words, it may be asked, altogether too big to describe appropriately the rude and primitive arrangements of their common life?

Modern research is not of that opinion. It is not so very long, it is true, since the youthful student of this era of our history was not taught to see anything in the men who resisted the Roman invasion but a mere horde of naked barbarians, as little entitled to the name, and as destitute of any of the characteristics, of a civil society as a band of Blackfeet or of Sioux. This yelling, woad-bedaubed savage, however, has been by this time expelled, it may be hoped for good, from the popular imagination. Much, no doubt, is yet to learn about the race on whose shores the Roman conqueror planted his eagles before the dawn of the Christian era; but enough is known to satisfy us that the words in question are far from being unapt of application to their mode of ordering their lives. Cæsar, in fact, descended upon a country



HILL-FORT, TRE'R CEIRI, CARNARVONSHIRE.

On one of the lower peaks of "Yr Eifl." Described in Pennant's "Tour" (where the name is wrongly given) and in "Archæologia Cambrensis," 1855 and 1871. Supposed to be either the stronghold of an early Celtic piratical tribe, or (more probably) one of the last refuges of the Goidel against the Brython.

which had been the scene of repeated invasions and of successive conquests before his arrival; and so far were its people from being without civil organisation that they possessed a polity and society, in some measure compounded of and often visibly traceable to preceding ones, which it had in part assimilated and in part displaced.

At some early stage or other in that westward movement of peoples which has continued from prehistoric periods down to our own times, a wave of non-Aryan immigrants, short of stature and swarthy of complexion, had swept over the island, to be followed in course of time by first one and then another incursion of Aryans—of Gaelic, that is to say, and Brythonic Celts; and when Cæsar came, the mixed community deposited by these succeeding floods of invaders showed a distinctly legible history of social growth. The earliest settler, the dark Iberian, had long since been subdued and enslaved by the tall and fair-hued Celt who had followed him, and from whom in language, in character, in mode of life, and form of institutions, the conquered Iberian conspicuously differed. But the Aryan tribesman, with his pride of race and his more advanced conception of property as of a subject not of common but of family ownership, had declined to the condition of a despised villager, so far as social and political importance were concerned, before the Roman conquest. The tribal chief had by that time grown into the tribal king; the free land of the tribe, alike with the common land of the villagers, had become tributary to him; and the two communities, family and communistic, were alike his subjects. It was through the strife of tribal kings, with its consequences of the flight, the exile, and the appeal for Roman assistance of those who had been worsted in the struggle, that the way was opened for the conquest of Britain to the conquerors of Gaul.

A people who had already passed through such a history are surely well entitled to a record of their civil organisation. But the claim of the inhabitant of pre-Roman Britain is stronger and more enduring than this; for the social system which grew up in these islands between the date of their earliest settlement by westward-journeying explorers and their subjugation by the Mistress of the World has left ineffaceable marks behind it to this day. Dim with the dust of centuries, yet still distinctly visible in dialect and tradition, in boundary lines of shire and

diocese, and in the strange survivals of prehistoric feud, the tribal divisions of Celtic England can still be traced, while "the rule of the Roman has been forgotten, even where his villa and his storied gravestone remain."

Long, indeed, as was the period of Roman domination, its four centuries must be regarded from the point of view of our civil progress as a mere interval of arrested growth. Here, indeed, as everywhere, the conquerors set their mark deeply enough upon the outward features of the land which they had made their own. Roman road and Roman villa preserve for us the traces of their labours and their luxuries, and history testifies, in scattered but sufficient records, to the material prosperity, with its opportunities of education and enlightenment for those within the area of diffusion, which grew up under the Roman Peace. But they never succeeded in, if they ever systematically attempted, that work of civil reconstruction which followed so many of their Continental conquests. The Britons may, at most, have been better able to prolong their resistance to the English invaders, owing to the cohesion set up among them by those local institutions which were a Roman gift. But whatever traces of Roman rule may be incorporated into the law and polity of England under her new masters are buried so deep that, when they are apparently disinterred, their age and character are the subject of active controversy among the explorers. Hence, until and unless future discoveries greatly modify our attitude, the Roman dominion can only be regarded as, politically speaking, an irrelevant episode—a digression from the main narrative, which does not resume its course again until the Imperial legions have been withdrawn.

And then the thread is taken up by another hand, and from the new masters to which Britain has now to submit herself her civil life receives an impress and her social forces a direction which are the most marked and most potent that she is destined in all her history to undergo. For the English conquest of Britain laid the foundations of the English social order that we know to-day. The Norman conqueror who came after did for England what the Roman conqueror had not endeavoured, or had failed, to do. He built upon the main lines of that civil organisation which he found in existence at his coming; and widely as the "elevation" of the completed structure may have

departed from the prospective ideal of the Saxon architect the ground plan remains his. Henceforth, at any rate—from the “English conquest” of Britain in the seventh century down to the close of the nineteenth—the history of our social order is a history of uniform growth. There are no violent breaks in the narrative, nor, indeed, is there any material departure from what one may call the logical evolution of the “plot.” Norman and Angevin, Tudor and Stuart, often working unconsciously enough, added each his chapter to the story; but its lines were laid from the beginning, its development has been continuous, and its course, through all political fluctuations and vicissitudes, orderly. At whatever period in our annals we turn away from the often troubled current of politics to survey the stream of social progress we find the same regularity in its steady onward flow.

II. RELIGION.

Of the other great agent in civilisation—Religion—a somewhat different story has to be told. Christianity dawned in Western Britain at a period when the civil virtues of the conquered Celts were declining under the paralysing effects of Roman rule; but its early light was naturally feeble, and ere it had time to broaden eastward and southward, Rome withdrew her legions, and a fresh flood of paganism poured over the land. The precise duration of the era thus brought to so disastrous a close is hard to determine. Secular legend contends with religious myth in the pious but futile effort to indicate the apostle of Britain; but history, which cannot even fix with precision the date of the conversion, is naturally silent as to its author. All we know for certain is that there were Christians in Britain at the commencement of the third century, and that in the early years of the fourth there is evidence of the existence in this country of a fully organised Church. But the faith spread slowly, and had not permeated the mass of the people even of Southern Britain when the Roman occupation came to an end, and the one bond of connection between these islands and the western centre of Christianity was thus violently severed. The conquest of Britain by the pagan English “thrust a wedge of heathendom,” as Mr. J. R. Green picturesquely put it, “into the heart of that great Christian communion which comprised every

country, save Germany, in Western Europe, as far as Ireland itself"; and it was from this furthest point of illumination that the rays of Christianity were destined to be reflected back upon the intervening darkness. It was due to the ardour and devotion of Irish missionaries, and to the spirit which they infused into the Saxon princes who had embraced Christianity, that the light kindled by Augustine in south-eastern Britain was not extinguished in blood.

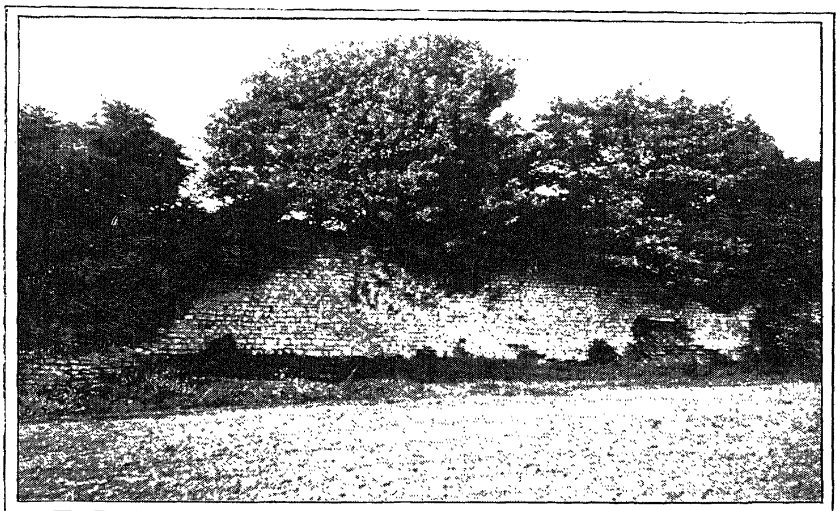
Nevertheless, if it was the Celtic Church which conquered England for Christianity, it was to the Roman obedience that the country was won. The struggle of over two centuries between the old faith and the new was followed within a few years of its close by a controversy among the victors as to the ecclesiastical rule which it was their duty to follow. At the Council convened for the settlement of this momentous question the claims of the Irish Church were rejected and the authority of Rome prevailed. Following up her victory with her wonted promptitude, she despatched the Greek monk, Theodore of Tarsus, to fill the archiepiscopal See of Canterbury, and the CHURCH OF ENGLAND as we know it to-day was born.

Its history for the twelve hundred years which have since elapsed has been, in large measure, the history of the nation, for which, indeed, during some nine or ten of these centuries, it was only another and a spiritual name. That its periods of development and of arrested growth, of prosperity and adversity, of splendour and obscurity, have always had their counterparts in contemporary secular eras, it would be too much to say. The temporal history of the Church in England, as in most European countries, has always been a subject of controversy. It touches the burning fringe of party politics at many points, and men of opposite opinions as to the proper policy of the State in civil matters cannot be expected to take the same view of the influence of the Church on social progress at certain given periods of her history. True, their differences turn mainly on political questions; true, the direct action of the Church upon society has, except during certain rare and brief intervals of corruption or stagnation, been too manifestly beneficent to admit of dispute; yet nevertheless—and there is here an illustration of the truth on which it seemed desirable to insist at the outset of these remarks—it is impossible so to separate the social from the

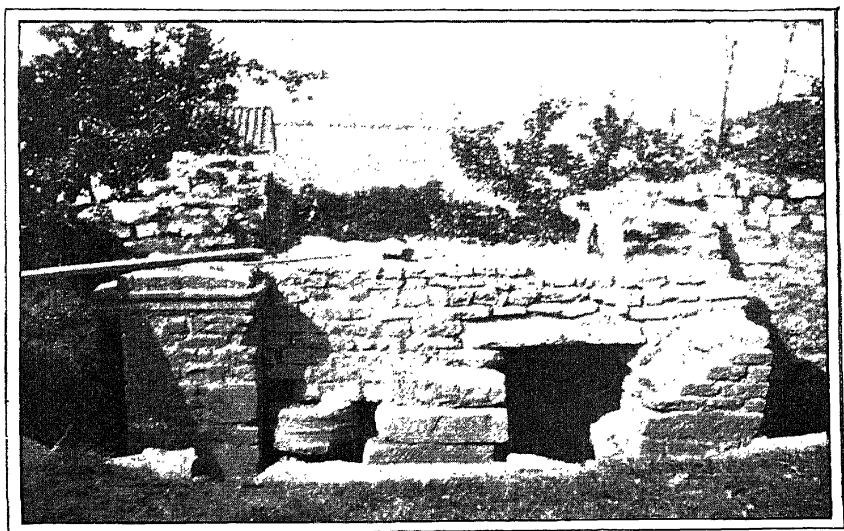
political organism as to justify us in regarding the political conduct of the Church of England throughout the various ages of our history as without bearing on our social destinies.

It would be the merest pedantry, for instance, to treat the great conflict of the twelfth century between the Church and the Crown—between the civil and the ecclesiastical jurisdictions—as a mere episode in our political history, as an incident which the social historian as such can afford to regard with indifference, or at any rate to study as a subject lying outside the sphere of his special work. The importance of that struggle was no less momentous from the social than from the political point of view. It would, indeed, be absolutely irrational to suppose that a question so profoundly affecting civil life in so many of its relations as was then in issue could have nothing or but little to say to social history. Should the Church possess judicial authority co-ordinate with and independent of, if not encroaching on, that of the State? Or were the State courts to be supreme? Primarily, no doubt, the issue here is an issue of politics, yet it is surely evident that its decision in a great measure determined the line of development of our English social body. Clearly it cannot be a matter of indifference to any society whether civil or ecclesiastical influences prevail in directing its advance.

Sometimes, it is true, in those shifting scenes which show us the Church of England now active in the assertion of its spiritual privileges or temporal pretensions, now allied with the champions of popular rights against the Crown, the political side of its history overshadows every other aspect of it. Throughout the reign of John and into that of his son and successor it may, with substantial truth, be said that the political and the social importance of the Church varied inversely with each other. Its prominence as a participator in the strife of politics had never been so marked; but it was a stationary, and became at last a declining, influence on private life and manners. Great as had been its gains in popularity through its attitude in the struggle for the Charter, they were not so great or nearly so important as its losses in popular reverence. Everywhere its prelates and clergy displayed signs of a growing secularisation of temper and of habits. Preaching had fallen into disuse, the monastic orders had degenerated into mere wealthy landowners, the ignorance or



SOUTH WALL, CAERWENT.



NORTH GATE, CAERWENT.

(By permission, from photographs by F. F. Tuckett, Esq.)

Caerwent (*Venta Silurum*) was a walled city between Caerleon (*Isca Silurum*) and the Wye. The first illustration (the south wall) is taken from the outside, the second from the inside of the city. The upper part of the gate has perished, except part of the arch, and the gateway has been blocked up at some later period.

the priest left parishes without the reality of spiritual direction, even when his non-residence did not deprive them of its very form. Services were neglected and pluralism abounded, abuses of all kinds were rife, and the temporary failure of the Church to keep pace with the moral needs of the nation was attested by the eager interest with which the coming of the friars was welcomed by the people.

For the revival of religion that followed, these devoted missionaries are no doubt entitled to the chief credit. Yet the Church which their enthusiasm did something to awaken was soon to find them sharing with her in that process of degeneration which went on through the next period of relapse. It is curious to contrast their condition in the first quarter of the thirteenth century with what it had become in the second half of the fourteenth, to reflect on the change which had taken place between the time when thousands of followers flocked, full of religious zeal, to the outstretched hand of the mendicant preacher, and the time, not much more than a century later, when Wycliffe could, with general applause, denounce them as "sturdy beggars," and declare that "the man who gives alms to a begging friar is *ipso facto* excommunicate."

These words were uttered by a man who was not content with mere denunciation, and in the struggle of Lollardism, from the initiation of the movement by Wycliffe, to its final suppression some thirty years after his death, we have an illustration of that recuperative principle within the Church itself by which it was preserved from age to age, until, purged more thoroughly and renovated more completely than ever before by the great convulsion of the Reformation, it finally assumed that place in the guidance of the moral and spiritual progress of the people which, except for one comparatively brief period in a later century, it has never lost.

And it is, of course, on that momentous crisis in the fortunes of Europe that the profound interest which the Church and religion of the nation possess for the student of its social history mainly concentrates itself. For the future of civil society in England, as in every European country, may almost be said to have turned on its choice between the old faith and the new. The far-reaching consequences of that choice stand inscribed for us indeed on wider tablets than those of the history of a single

continent: they are written across the face of the world. There is a form of civilisation suited to the genius of Catholicism and to the racial characteristics—on which, however, it also importantly reacts—of the nations which took the Romeward road at that great parting of the ways; and it is not the concern or within the purpose of this work to compare this form of civilisation, either favourably or unfavourably, with that which has flourished and advanced in countries holding the Protestant form of the Christian faith. It is enough that the two forms are essentially distinct, that they lend themselves respectively to the development of wholly different moral and intellectual qualities, and that the people which definitely accepts one of them must be content to travel to its goal at a different rate, if not by a different route, of progress from that of the other. Hence it is that the decision between the claims of the two faiths which contented at the Reformation was of such vast social as well as political and religious importance. Issues inconceivably remote from the question of the number of the Sacraments, or the Petrine Commission of the Pope, and—if temporal may be compared with spiritual things—of vastly greater moment, it might be said, to humanity, were tried out in that tremendous struggle; and the results of the trial for most European countries, and for England pre-eminently, are visible to those who look around the world to-day, with an impressive clearness which even the most vivid and powerful imagination of the great men of either Church who took part in that conflict could not possibly have realised.

By that fateful decision of the sixteenth century the whole future course of our social history, so far as religious influences have guided it, was determined. For the Reformation was the unquestionable though not the immediate progenitor of that great spiritual movement of the ensuing century which left an impress on the life and manners of the nation so deep and so abiding as to be still plainly discernible, after an interval of two hundred and fifty years, in some of the most conspicuous and characteristic qualities of our people. Without Protestantism, no Puritanism; and without Puritanism the Englishman of to-day would have been a different man. Not only in thought and feeling, not only in moral and intellectual temperament, must he have deviated from the existing type, but his whole scheme and

theory of life, his rules of individual conduct, his code of social usages, his tastes and amusements, his preferences in literature, his attitude towards Art—in a word, his entire estimate of the relative proportions of human interests and human objects, would have been other than they are. The history of Puritanism is properly speaking, of course, a part of the general history of religion; and after the birth of the Puritan movement the religious factor in our social growth can no longer be identified as heretofore with the now waxing, now waning influence of the English Church. Yet the Church, though it resisted and for a time suppressed the Puritan movement, was itself and still is affected by it, and indeed may fairly be said, from the date of the Wesleyan revival to that of the Tractarian reaction, a period of a hundred years, to have been indebted for the chief sources of its vital energy to the Puritan spirit. And since it was in the largest, the soberest, and on the whole the most conservative class of Englishmen that this spirit arose in the sixteenth and renewed itself in the seventeenth century, so it is in this great middle class—the class that typifies the whole people for the foreigner, and even, so far as we may judge from popular conceptions and from the caricatures that reflect them, for themselves—that its survival is the most marked at the present day. Culture and scepticism, and the growth of luxury and refinement are no doubt affecting it, but to an extent, which only seems considerable because the cultivated and sceptical, the refined and luxurious minority exaggerate it. The exaggeration is apt to deceive, because the classes who have outgrown the influence of Puritanism are as disproportionately vocal as they are relatively small, while the classes among whom that influence is still dominant are a virtually voiceless multitude. But the impartial student of the national character is constantly being confronted with evidence to the fact that the process of so-called “emancipation” has reached but the merest fringe of the community, and that the great bulk of middle-class Englishmen are still, to all intents and purposes, the true spiritual descendants of a Puritan stock.

III. LEARNING AND SCIENCE.

The spiritual and intellectual factors in our social development may here, perhaps, with advantage be still pursued, though

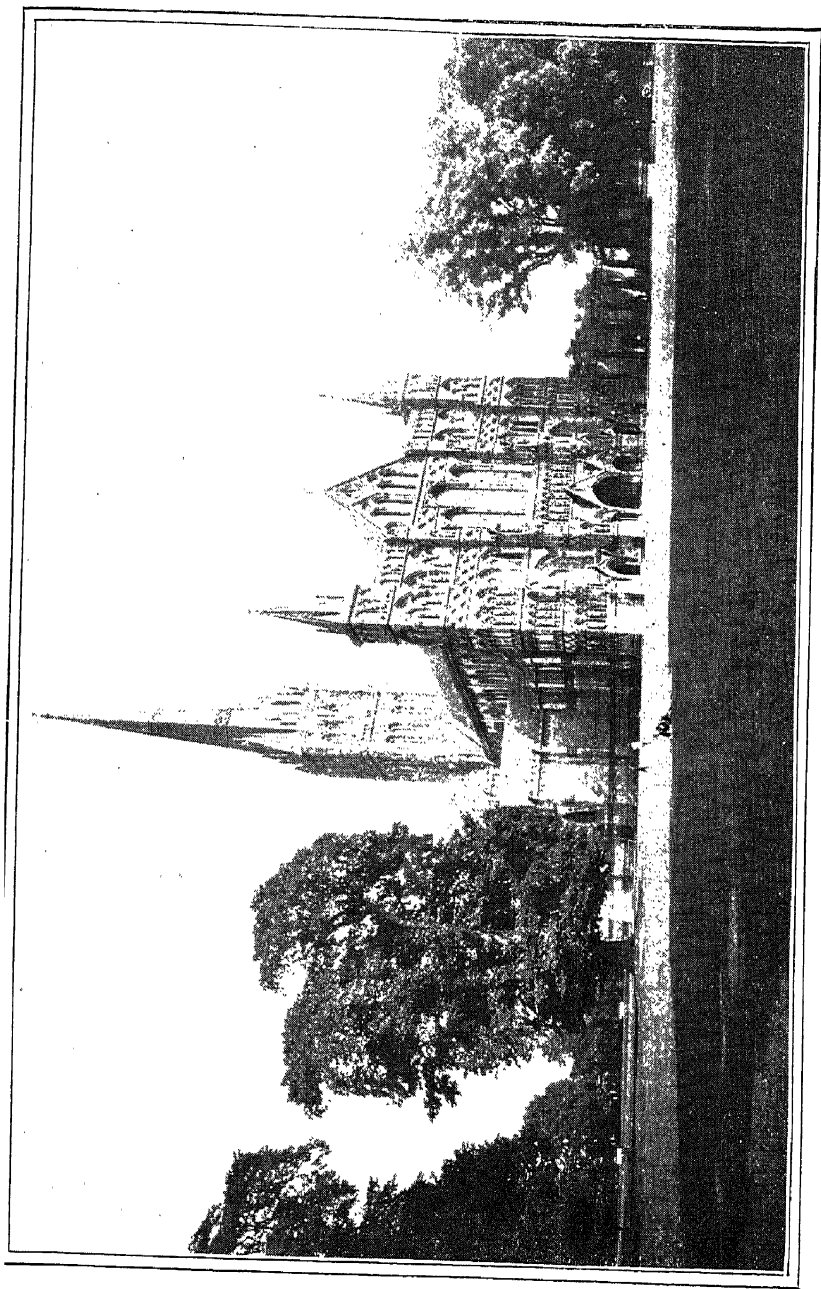
another order of arrangement is for the most part followed in the body of the work; and here, perhaps, it may be in place to say that the sequence of subjects will often vary in successive chapters, according to the prominence or importance of those subjects at the particular period dealt with. The history of Learning and Science runs parallel with that of religion, and sometimes, though not always, in the same channel. In the earlier ages of our social history, however, the identity of the two is, of course, almost unbroken. At a time when Learning was the monopoly of the ecclesiastical order it was inevitable that its progress should mainly follow religious lines. The careers and characters of those who promote it will often fall to be dealt with under the head of Religion, and sometimes under that of Literature also; for the earliest literary efforts of men so situated will, for the most part, be devoted to religious subjects, while at the same time they naturally form the beginnings of Learning for the otherwise rude and unlettered society in which they appear. Thus one or more among the earliest of Old English poets throw Scripture into metrical paraphrase; and Alfred, as a translator of Bede, lays the foundations not only of Old English prose but of English history.

It is not, indeed, till after the rise of the English Universities, nor even then immediately, that the fortunes of Learning can be said to have detached themselves from those of the Church. The academic system was, it is true, ecclesiastical in form and origin, and even to a certain extent, in affiliation. The wide extension which medieval usage gave to the word "orders" still gathered the whole educated world within the pale of the clergy. "Whatever might be their proficiency, scholar and teacher were alike clerks, free from lay responsibilities or the control of civil tribunals, and amenable only to the rule of the bishop and the sentence of his spiritual courts." Nevertheless, as the collegiate foundations testify in their very origin to a decline in the impulse towards exclusively religious endowments and reveal a new desire to dedicate wealth to educational instead of to more literally "pious uses," so in their development and in that of their mother Universities does the secularising spirit which gave birth to them become more and more conspicuous in its operation and potent in its effects. The influence of the Church, so seriously threatened by that great expansion of the field of

education which coincides with the rise of the Universities, was to some extent indeed to be re-established by the aid of the Friars and the renewed supremacy which their teaching procured for scholastic theology in the academic course. Yet from this very school sprang Roger Bacon, whose hand was to unlock the doors of the temple of Science, and to reveal at least a glimpse of those treasures within it which future generations were to explore.

The great Friar, however, was born before his time; the age in which he lived was not yet ripe for those studies which in after ages were to be pursued to such mighty issues. Scholasticism was destined to remain for yet two centuries supreme. But it is no unmeaning chapter in the history of our intellectual progress that contains the record of its sway. Its system was an unrivalled course of discipline in clear thinking, in vigorous analysis, in searching criticism, in the comprehension and use of every weapon in the armoury of human reason. If knowledge made no advance under the reign of scholasticism, the instruments of knowledge were being steadily, if undesignedly, brought by it to perfection. It was the schoolmaster to lead men to science. Such fruits as it produced in the meantime were exclusively, it is true, of the theological or ecclesiastical order; they are to be traced in the daring Erastianism, as a later age would have called it, of Occam, and in the reforming energies of Wycliffe. But its methods were all the while preparing the faculties of man to appropriate and profit by the great possessions into which they were one day to enter.

With the discovery of the New World a new era dawned upon the human mind. The great period of the Renaissance opened; and first in Italy, then over all the Continent, and then finally in England, the Revival of Letters stirred the human mind into more vigorous activity. The rise and progress of the New Learning belongs in part, but in part only, to the history of Religion. It has had much to say to the advance of knowledge on the secular side, and pre-eminently so through its influence on education. Dean Colet's foundation of St. Paul's was the first step in an educational movement which was destined, in the course of a generation or two, to transform the face of the country. The aim of the founder was the union of rational religion with sound learning, the exclusion of the scholastic logic,



SALISBURY CATHEDRAL.

The most perfect example of Early English architecture. (See page 592.)

and the steady diffusion of the two classical literatures. Greek, the newcomer, did not obtain admission without a struggle, but it established itself in time. Not only did its study creep gradually into existing schools, but the influence of Colet's example was so powerful that new foundations came in numbers into existence in which Greek was from the first included in the curriculum. More grammar schools, it has been said, were founded in the latter years of Henry than during the whole of the three preceding centuries. The grammar schools of Edward VI. and of Elizabeth carried forward the movement, which by the end of the century had completed its transforming work.

Nor was the influence of the New Learning confined to the earlier, the primary and secondary, stages of education; it invaded, and, after a sharp conflict at each of the two Universities, it mastered the higher education also. For a time it divided Oxford between its partisans and its opponents—the "Greeks" and "Trojans"; and the spirit of contention rose high enough, in one instance at any rate, to provoke interference and call forth rebuke from the king. But in the Universities, as in the schools, the triumph of the New Learning was not long delayed. A newly founded college in Oxford signalised itself by the establishment of the first Greek lecturership; the Crown at a later time created a professorship of the same study; and the work was consummated by Wolsey's munificent foundation of Christ Church.

At the full tide of the educational movement, in the first years of the reign of Elizabeth, Bacon was born—Bacon, who may with substantial accuracy be described as a born philosopher who mistook himself for a man of science, and whose contribution to the intellectual advancement of mankind, though large in amount, was widely different in character from his own conception of it. His design was to lay the foundations of a true method of scientific inquiry; his achievement was to devise and expound a system which, while as a whole it is not that of science, yet anticipates modern scientific methods in many striking ways. He insisted, and rightly, on the Experimental Principle, though he attained to no true comprehension of experimental methods; and to have succeeded in the former even while failing in the latter point was an achievement which can only be properly appreciated by those who have due regard

to the educational dogmas and intellectual superstitions against which Bacon had to contend. But apart from the services—great, if misunderstood, both by himself and others—which he indirectly rendered to the cause of natural science, a large debt is due to him from the whole body of human studies then awaiting the application of that great principle which Bacon insisted upon in physics as a condition of advance. If the two words which entitle this section be distinguished—if Learning, that is to say, be treated as a generic and Science as a specific appellation—we shall have to admit that the work of Bacon in behalf of the wider was even greater than that which he accomplished for the narrower cause.

As the seventeenth century advances, the horizon of knowledge—including thereunder the contributions made by deductive reasoning, by inductive inquiry and by criticism of ancient records—immeasurably widens. Old methods of inquiry are more fruitfully pursued; scholarship, wielding fresh weapons, enlarges the borders of erudition; new experimental sciences are born, and the oldest of all the deductive sciences achieves its greatest triumph in the hands of the most illustrious of its students. It is the age of Harvey and Sydenham, of Boyle and Gilbert, of Locke and Hobbes; above all it is the age of Isaac Newton. The Royal Society is founded, and enrols the greatest astronomer of all time in the list of its presidents. By the close of the seventeenth century the whole face of the intellectual world had been transformed. The Science upon which Swift looked forth in scorn at the beginning of the next age, and on which he cut his irreverent jests in “Gulliver”; the philosophy which he ridicules in the “Voyage to Laputa”; nay, the very Learning against which he so audaciously measured himself in the “Battle of the Books,” wear an aspect wholly different from that which they would have presented to the eye of any observer at the beginning of the reign of James I. Philosophy and Science bore indelible traces of the labour of Locke and Newton, and Learning would have been at another stage than it had by this time reached in England if Bentley had never lived.

Through the first half of the ensuing century the rate of progress in the sciences a little slackens, but it recovers towards its close. There are foreshadowings of the age which was to follow and in its course to add more by a thousandfold to the

volume and import of scientific discovery than had been slowly and doubtfully accumulating during the countless cycles that had elapsed since the dawn of human intelligence. In its earlier years, as has been said, the eighteenth century was more remarkable as an era in the history of our national literature than for any contributions to the advancement of Science. Its second half was rendered memorable by the application of physical research and mechanical invention to industrial purposes; and in this respect its achievements belong rather to the economic division of our survey. Yet pure science was not neglected in any of its main departments. Herschel in astronomy, Hunter in anatomy and physiology, Black, Cavendish, and Priestley in chemistry, are names memorable and reverend in the annals of British Science, and every one of them recalls some important conquest won for humanity in the region of the unknown. But, if for no other cause, the period would deserve to be lastingly remembered as having, in the great work of Adam Smith, given birth to a new science, which, if the successors of its founder have failed to advance it to conclusions as universally true and as irrefragable as was once expected, has probably done more for human happiness and prosperity during the hundred and twenty years which have elapsed since its principles were first enunciated in the "Wealth of Nations," than any other product of the pure intellectual energy of man.

The birth and early years of the nineteenth century found our country still locked in the death-grapple with Napoleon; and though even so, there is, of course, discernible, as with every nation which still retains its vitality, a steady, if not very rapid or extensive, widening of the field of knowledge throughout this period, it was not till the century had well-nigh half run its course that that extraordinary scientific movement which has given it its place among the ages first took its rise. The application of steam to terrestrial locomotion dates from late in its fourth decade, and it was only in its fifth that our railway system first flung wide that net whose meshes we have ever since been weaving closer and closer over the land. Electric telegraphy dates its beginning from much about the same time, though the growth of its employment in the arts of life was for a long time sensibly slower than that of its coeval power. It was, perhaps, not until the Fifties that Science began to advance in earnest,

but thenceforward its rate of progress has been increasing almost continuously, until it has reached its present bewildering speed. No doubt it is in the domain of applied physics, and notably in that part of their domain to which belongs the wonder-working science of electricity, that this rush of discovery and of the utilisation of discovery is the most conspicuous. The employment of this force for the three purposes of sound-transmission, of illumination, and of locomotion, represent three distinctly novel applications of it, dating all of them from within the last quarter, if not the last twenty years, of the nineteenth century. And not only, so far as we can judge, is the number of these applications still a long way from being completed, but the extent of progress possible in those departments of activity to which this Protean force has already been applied seems quite beyond the reach of precise estimation.

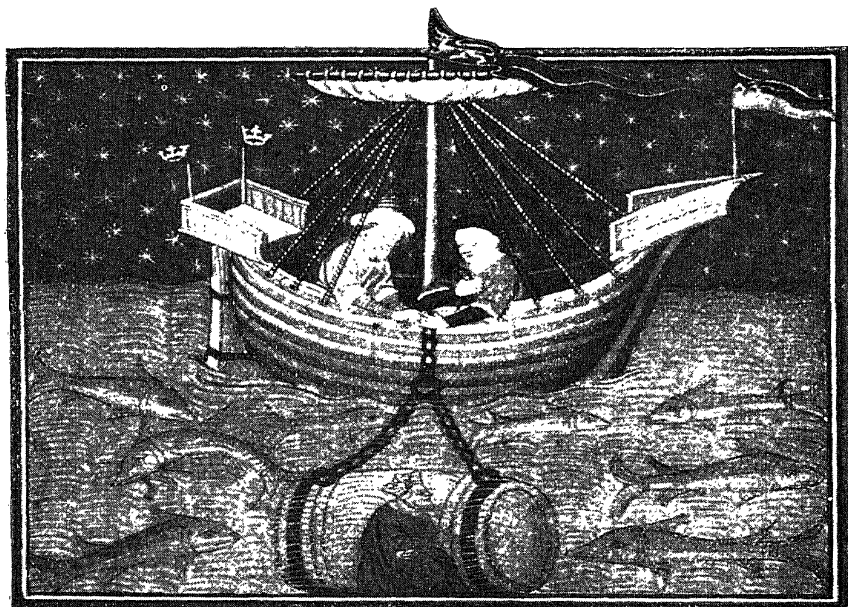
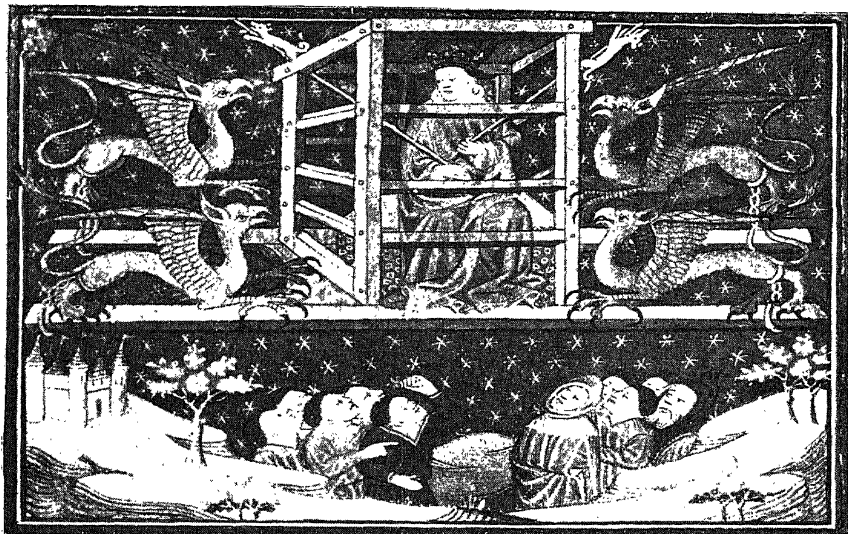
Nevertheless, it is not in applied physics alone that the progress of human knowledge, and the part played in it by our country, have during the last and present generations been remarkable. Nay, it is not in that domain that our conquests, though the most striking to the eye, have been the highest as achievements of the human mind, or even, perhaps, the most potent in their ultimate effects upon the future of the race. While the discoveries of the physicist, appropriated and applied by the engineer, have transformed the outward aspect of English life, the great work of Darwin has been effecting a silent revolution in the mind of man. The publication of the "*Origin of Species*" marked an epoch, not merely in the record of scientific inquiry, but in the whole history of human thought. It has profoundly affected all studies, of whatsoever description, into which the nature of man—whether in its moral, its physical, its intellectual, or its spiritual aspect—enters as a factor to be considered. History, psychology, ethics, economics, have all taken a new departure from the starting-point indicated to them by the doctrine of Evolution. It may be said to have founded that science of Comparative Theology—if we may so call it—which for the first time has brought the methods of scientific inquiry to bear on the history of religion and of the religious instincts in man. There is, it must be repeated, not a single study having any affinities with biological science or depending in any of its processes on the conclusions of the biologists, which

has not received both a new impetus and a new direction from the Darwinian theory.

But in every branch of Science the progress made during the last half-century has been immense. It is scarcely an exaggeration to say that in almost every department of scientific inquiry—not only among those to which the name of “physics” should in strictness perhaps be confined, but among those also which are more directly concerned with the human economy than the constitution and laws of external Nature, and among those, lastly, such as chemistry, which may be regarded as intermediate between the two—discoveries of a far-reaching, sometimes of a revolutionising character, have during the period in question been made. Chemistry has developed its always subtle processes to a pitch of almost inconceivable delicacy; physiology has widely extended its domain and revised its conclusions by the increasingly helpful aid of microscopic research; surgery, through the invention of the antiseptic treatment, and in many other ways, has made vast advances; therapeutics and sanitation have achieved successes which would have been unattainable, and have entered upon an almost boundless field of conquest which would never have been opened to them but for the construction and application of the germ theory of disease. In branches of inquiry unconnected—except as all instruments of human enlightenment are related to human interests—with the physical nature of man, the progress accomplished has been more remarkable still. The laws of the great cosmic forces—of heat and light, of magnetism and electricity—have been investigated, with the result that our knowledge of the behaviour of these forces, in regions or on stages of their operation which lie outside the cognisance of the senses, has now been placed on a basis of more assured hypothesis than they ever rested on before. And, highest triumph of all, the discovery of the world-embracing and time-spanning principle of the Conservation of Energy has knit the entire body of the physical sciences together, and practically made one science of the whole.

IV. LITERATURE.

To tell the story of English literature adequately within the limits of this preliminary sketch would be an even more hopeless



AIRSHIPS AND SUBMARINES: AN ANTICIPATION.

For MS. (Roy. 15 E. vi.), see Vol. II., p. 484, note on illustration. Above, Alexander the Great is drawn upwards by birds tempted by meat on a pole: below, he is being let down into the sea in a glass barrel for the purpose of scientific research. The attack of a huge fish led him to conclude that such researches were not for mortals. Such was science in medieval romance.

task than that which has just been imperfectly attempted in the case of Learning and Science; for the beginnings—even the noticeable beginnings—of literature are earlier, the contributories to its growth are much more numerous, the causes which have directed the course of its development in this direction or in that are at once more obscure in their origin and more subtle in their operation; while, finally, the fact that the history of a literature is at once a history of thought and a history of language, instead of being, as is the case with religion or science or philosophy, a history of thought alone, must indefinitely enlarge the field of inquiry. A subject so vast, however, may be said, in a certain sense, to simplify itself. A survey of it within the limits of a few of these preliminary pages must of necessity conform to one of two types. It must either take the shape of one of those severely compressed summaries which always threaten to resolve themselves into a mere catalogue of names and dates, and frequently fulfil the threat; or it must content itself with merely noting the great “periods” in the history of English letters and its great epochs of change.

In such a sketch, for instance, as the present it would be impossible to traverse otherwise than cursorily that long and interesting era of literary growth which stretches, roughly speaking, from the seventh to the fourteenth century. The history of Old English poetry, whether in its lyric form from Cædmon downwards, or in that rude barbaric shape of which the epic of “Beowulf” is the earliest example; the development of Old English prose, from its cradle, so to speak, in the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, to that arrest of its growth which befell it in the eleventh century, will be found traced in adequate detail in the second chapter of this volume. So, too, with that critical period in the fortunes of the language and its literature which began with the Norman Conquest and may be said to have lasted until after the accession of the dynasty of Anjou—that period during which our speech and literature, banished from the Court by French and Latin, still maintained themselves among the people, giving proof of that indestructible vitality in the strength of which they were ultimately to prevail. Over this era and the most memorable work which it produced—the “Brut” of Layamon, that monumental testimony to the self-sustaining vigour of our English tongue which, written nearly a century and

a half after the Conquest, contains in thirty thousand lines but some fifty words of the Conqueror's language—it is impossible to linger here. One must hasten onward through another century and a half, when the struggle between the two languages had at last ended in the final triumph of the native speech, and Chaucer entered in, not merely to reap the fruits of victory, but to reunite the victor and the vanquished, and to work the surviving remnants of the Norman-French into that matrix of pure English from which the pure gold of his poetry emerged.

For the philologist himself, as distinct from the critic, the poems of Chaucer must ever possess supreme interest, for they constitute an imperishable record of the state of the written language at a momentous epoch of transition. That the poet himself did not merely register but contributed to the transitional process is probable enough. Inspired innovation has been the prerogative of the highest literary genius in all ages, and it may well be that Chaucer's courtly, official, and diplomatic training revealed to him points of vigour or of grace in words and idioms of the Norman-French with which he was tempted to strengthen and enrich the English of his verse. But it is certain that these additions cannot have been important in amount. The old notion of the seventeenth-century writers—that Chaucer, writing in English upon most familiar English subjects, and producing works which at once made him the most popular writer of his time and country, yet “corrupted and deformed the English idiom by an immoderate mixture of French words”—is repugnant to common sense. There can be no reasonable doubt that the bulk of the words in question—and their proportion to the whole is small—had already won their way into the speech of the nation, and that all that the poet did was to fix them in its literary language.

And it is literature—the world's literature—not English philology, which has the first claim upon Chaucer. Whatever had been the linguistic peculiarities in the external structure of his poetry—if, that is to say, it had taught us as little of the history of our tongue as, in fact, it teaches us much—the place of that poetry in the story of our civilisation would nevertheless have remained unaffected. The unrivalled array of poetic qualities, both of feeling and expression, which it presents to us, the grace and gaiety of the poet, his humour and pathos, his

dramatic force of portraiture, the catholicity of his sympathies, never to be again approached in literature till the coming of Shakespeare, his fine broad artistic treatment of the human figure, the dewy freshness of his landscape studies, and the clear sunny atmosphere through which he looks out alike upon Nature and upon man—it is these things which have raised the Father of English Poetry to the rank of one of the great poets of the world. It is in virtue of such things that that train of pilgrims which left Southwark for the shrine of St. Thomas of Canterbury, on a certain day of April in or about the year 1383, remains so real to us, that the student still labours to fix the precise date of its departure and the times and places of its halts. It is for such reasons that these shadows of the poet's fancy are shadows more enduring than their substance, and that knight and squire, clerk and franklin, reeve and miller, pardoner and sompnoir, prioress and nun, and wife much widowed, move still, and will ever move, before us across the great imaginative panorama of the past, joyous and immortal as a Bacchic procession on a frieze of Phidias.

But Chaucer's light in literature was of as brief a radiance as Wycliffe's in religion, and was followed by the re-invasion of as dense a gloom. Again we have to carry the eye forward for another century over the sombre period covered by the long war with France and the civil strife which followed it in England; nor do we find anything to arrest the gaze until we reach that great time of awakening which dawned for England, as for all Western Europe, with the Revival of Letters, the invention of printing, and the discovery of the New World.

The story of the century that followed is itself the history of a literature. England was slower than some countries to feel the quickening of the Renaissance, but that magical influence made itself felt at last. First the poets of mediæval Italy, then the Greek and Latin classics, began to win their way to the heart of English culture. Translations of Tasso and Ariosto showed the new interest of Englishmen in the chosen land of this intellectual dayspring; versions of the more famous works of classical antiquity followed, and before the close of the sixteenth century the greater poets and historians of Greece and Rome had been given to the English people in their own tongue. But meanwhile to the native Muse herself the awakening had come. In

the poems of Wyatt and Surrey and their contemporaries there were signs not only of the stirring of that new life of thought and fancy, but of the beginnings of that new feeling for metrical form which were to find their culmination in the "*Faerie Queene*." An English prose began to feel its way in the writings of Ascham and of Hooker to its present structural form, and to dare with Sidney—if experimentally, and not always in a spirit of wisdom—to borrow colour from imagery and warmth from rhetoric. And, last and greatest birth of all, the "*Morality*" and Mystery play of the Early Tudor period brought forth that glory of the world's literature, the Elizabethan drama—that ever broadening light upon the face of man and Nature which had its flush of dawn in Marlowe and its meridian splendour in Shakespeare.

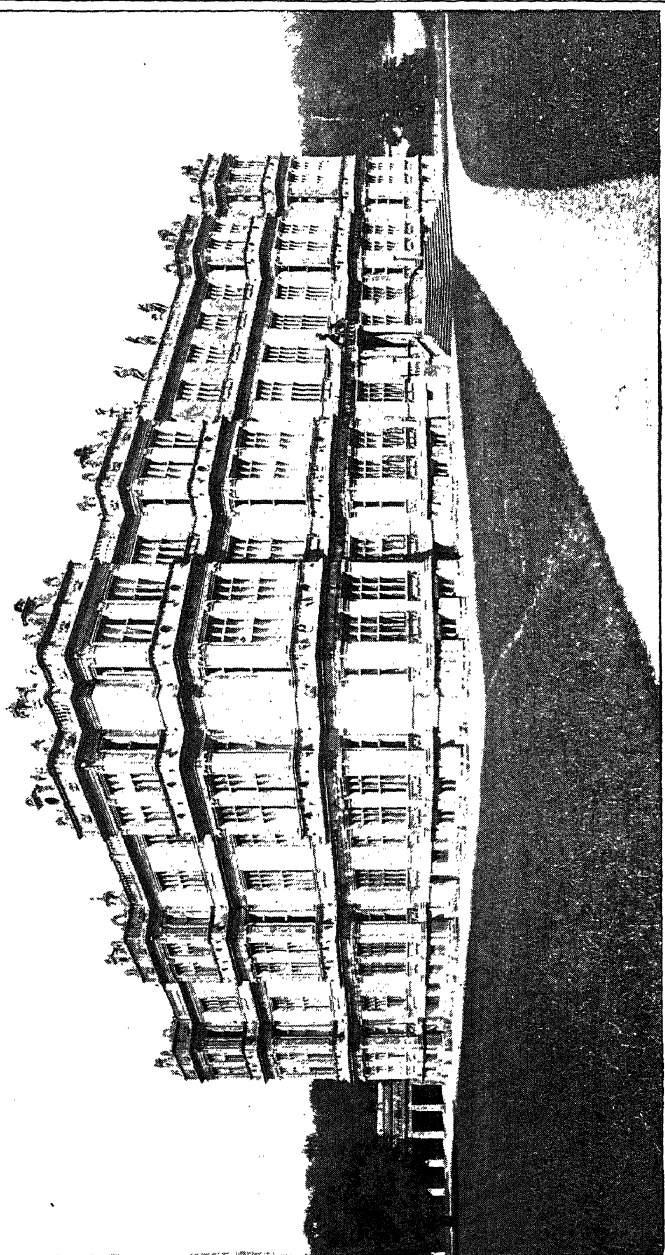
The sixteenth century passes into the seventeenth; the burst of song sinks gradually into silence; the fire of dramatic genius burns lower and lower and at last expires, never again to be re-kindled, except at times into a faint and transient flicker, throughout the ages which have since passed. But still the stately march of English literature, in mighty verse or memorable prose, through Milton and Dryden, through Bacon and Jeremy Taylor, through Browne and Hobbes and Clarendon, moves on. Even the Restoration comedy, morally corrupt and dramatically imitative though it be, has yet its part in the movement; for the literary quality of Congreve, and in a lesser degree of Vanburgh, is of high excellence, and the former was the first to teach the English writer how to impart somewhat of that point and balance to the prose epigram in which he may approach, though the genius of our language forbids him to rival, the French. The services of Dryden to English letters in every department were inestimable. He not only gave order and regularity to the heroic couplet, but he left behind him a more mobile and elastic prose than he found; and both by the style and matter of his literary dissertations he may claim to have been the father of the modern science of criticism. He resumes the literature of the later seventeenth century both in prose and verse, and he wielded over the former the sovereignty which passed at his death into the hands of as many partitioners as did the empire of Alexander. Within a little more than a dozen years from his decease the sceptre of poetry was as firm in the grasp of Pope as it had ever been in his own; but many writers of high merit, among whom

the names of Swift and Addison are the most distinguished, were the successors to his fame in prose.

The fortunes of this latter portion of his bequeathed work were more evenly prosperous, and ultimately not less brilliant, than those of the former. English prose, strengthened by Swift, refined and purified by Addison, has had to pass through no interval of decline or retrogression between that day and our own, and has proved itself an instrument of equally marvellous reach and power in the hands alike of every great master of fiction, from Fielding and Richardson to even the too negligent Scott, and from Scott to Dickens, Thackeray and George Eliot; of every historian, from Hume and Gibbon to Macaulay and Froude; of every critic and essayist, from Johnson and Goldsmith to Southey and Landor, Lamb and Hazlitt, and from them to Ruskin and Carlyle. English poetry, on the other hand, after being carried through, at no little cost in sincerity of feeling, to the highest possible technical perfection by Pope, was destined to decline in the hands of his innumerable imitators into a lifeless art, a condition from which Gray and Cowper—true poets as they were—were only forerunners of its redemption. It is not till we reach the very threshold of the nineteenth century that a new poetic movement sets in, less potent of immediate influence, but in literary distinction second only to that of the Elizabethan period, and of so much more lasting vitality that it has hardly even yet exhausted its force. The publication of the *Lyrical Ballads* in 1798 was the birth-cry of that new poetic spirit—a spirit part romantic, part mystical, part naturalist—which has transmitted its triple influence from Coleridge and Shelley, from Keats and Wordsworth, to Swinburne and William Morris on the one hand, to Matthew Arnold and his school on the other, and may be regarded as having reached its highest pitch of inspiring power in the poetry of Tennyson, wherein all three of its constituent elements unite.

V. ART.

The student of the history of art in England has no such many-threaded narrative to follow out as the explorer of this subject in Italy or even in other less artistically famous Continental countries would find it necessary to trace. England has



LONGLEAT: A GREAT ELIZABETHIAN HOUSE.

Photo: R. Wilkinson & Co., Froehridge.

Built 1567-79: completed after the original design, as three sides of a square, 1682: a fourth side added by Wyatt early in the 19th century. (See Vol. III., Chapter XI.)

produced many great works of art, but at no period of her annals has she produced great art-works of many kinds. With substantial accuracy indeed it may be said that until a comparatively recent period of her annals she produced them only in one kind. Painting and sculpture had elsewhere had a long and glorious history before we meet with the name of any Englishman born which has acquired a right of enrolment beside those of foreign masters in these branches of art. Even the very breath of the Renaissance, which passed over certain other countries like that wind of resurrection which swept the valley of the dead at the summons of Ezekiel, awoke no new artistic life in England. Centuries had yet to pass, and the one great form of art in which Englishmen excelled, even then declining, was to die out altogether, before an English school of painting arose. Fortunate is it for us that the form in question is prominent over all others for the durability of its creations, and that many a majestic monument remains to attest the power and nobility to which English architecture attained.

If, however, the history of our art in its greater and more famous departments has, so to speak, but little lateral extension, yet if we take major and minor art forms together, the record of its total activities stretches wide, and is of deeply significant bearing on the general narrative of our advance in civilisation. In the pages which we here devote to it we shall endeavour to trace its lineage, as near as may be, in continuous descent from the remotest past. In so doing we shall show how the arts of design began before the beginnings of history, and how the earliest conceptions of architectural grandeur date from the pre-historic builders. We shall show how the Roman invader found means to beautify his place of exile with the work of British craftsmen; and how his rude English successor in conquest developed here into the most laborious of illuminators, the most skilful of embroiderers. We shall note the suggestive importance of the English loom five centuries before the Frenchman or the Fleming came to teach us a more perfect method, and a thousand years before the first spindle turned in Manchester. Later on we shall see how, with the coming of the Norman, the English burgh gave place to the impregnable castle, and how the perishable wooden churches of the Saxon were replaced by Norman stonework, built as for eternity. Or, later still, how a

profusion of carving and decoration covered the churches of the day of Anselm and Lanfranc. We shall watch the rise, and follow the decline and fall, of Gothic architecture; its coming, under the first of the Angevins; the grace of its spring-time under Richard and John and Henry; its sumptuous decoration under the Edwards; its grave, autumnal beauty under their successors; its Indian summer and final eclipse under the Tudors.

Our survey of the development of lay architecture will show its moving along similar, but not parallel, lines. The massive Norman castle—the great seal which William set everywhere on his conquests—outwardly gave little promise of progress. Yet even these stones, cemented with the tears and sweat of the conquered, soon bear witness to the outward movement of material civilisation. New fashions rapidly invade the keep and donjon. The stronghold grows larger; it becomes commodious; later it is seen to aim at actual comfort; finally it approaches something like luxury. The manor-house now begins to compete with it, and in the end successfully, save in those few cases where under the pressure of military discipline the castle has to serve the purpose of an elaborate government fortification. Later on we shall see how, while retaining the old menace of external aspect, it becomes internally a residence not unfitted for civilised man. At length the castellated form entirely disappears, and the country houses built by English magnates show their military descent only in certain soldierly stateliness. The Renaissance too, comes in to derange further the old designs, though it must be confessed that in comparison with religious architecture our lay buildings suffered little injury from the new influence.

The art of painting seems to have begun everywhere (except possibly in Egypt) as ancillary to some other art. In England it appeared as the handmaid—and the humble handmaid—of architecture. But England was not singular in this respect; nor shall we find any proof that in the infancy of art the fresco painters of York or Canterbury were behind those of Tuscany and the Romagna. Though, of course, behind the Italians, they were not more so than were the artists of France and Flanders; but while those countries suffered nothing worse than an arrest of growth, in England there was actual death. The seed of artistic genius, which in more fortunate lands was alive if dormant, seems to have perished altogether. The long and

exhausting war with France, and the internecine strife of York and Lancaster, were not merely unfavourable to the harvest of art-production; apparently they sterilised the soil. Painting, like Christianity, had a second time to be imported into England.

Sculpture, though nowadays regarded somewhat as the Cinderella of our national art, had rather better fortune, probably because it was more an integral part—indeed, almost a branch—of architecture. It happened, moreover, to be the one form of artistic effort in which Englishmen early displayed what in our modern phrase we call “a feeling for decoration.” The reader will see in the course of these pages how largely it was developed by the Gothic masons in finial and ornament, and how sepulchral sculpture (including portraiture in stone and bronze) assumed an importance which even in our darkest architectural age it never afterwards lost.

The art of painting as we find it in the England of the Tudors came from abroad, and had all the tenderness of an exotic. It struck no roots in our chilly soil. The illustrious artists who were tempted from Italy and Switzerland and the Low Countries by the hope of enriching themselves at the Tudor and Stuart Courts had pupils indeed, and imitators, but neither they themselves nor their disciples succeeded in founding any school, in establishing any tradition. Yet, small and infantile as their influence has been, we shall have briefly to record the English doings of these artistic settlers on our shores, as well as of the comparatively obscure Englishmen who were tempted to emulate their achievements. These were not few, but hardly any of them attained commanding success. Some good miniaturists in the sixteenth century, one great English and one great Scottish portrait-painter in the seventeenth, form a promising beginning, but the promise is not fulfilled. The want of public appreciation, the troubles of the Civil War, the subjection to France, and, above all, the blighting influence of Protestantism in the former century, and of Puritanism—its quintessence in the latter—go far to account for the failure, reinforced as they, moreover, were by simple bad luck in the early deaths of artists of ability. The story which we have to tell is full of interest, but not of that interest which attaches to a phase of national development. That comes later.

Any consecutive history of English-bred art must naturally

begin with Hogarth. During his life nearly all our greatest artists were born, and the last of the survivors of the band lived on into the second quarter of the present century. It will be our privilege to summarise, however briefly, the fascinating records of their splendid achievements, and to indicate their hardly less splendid failure. We shall mark, too, that strange phenomenon which seems the abiding note of English effort, that our victories in art, as in war, have mostly been "soldiers' victories," where every man did that which was right in his own eyes. This is true not only of the painters of our age, but also of the men who succeeded them, and of the men of to-day. There have, of course, been movements distinguished by more orderly aims and the effort after a more uniform artistic ideal. The most important of these is still great, if no longer a directly vitalising one; but here, since we are trespassing on the threshold of the present, our survey of English art must be closed.

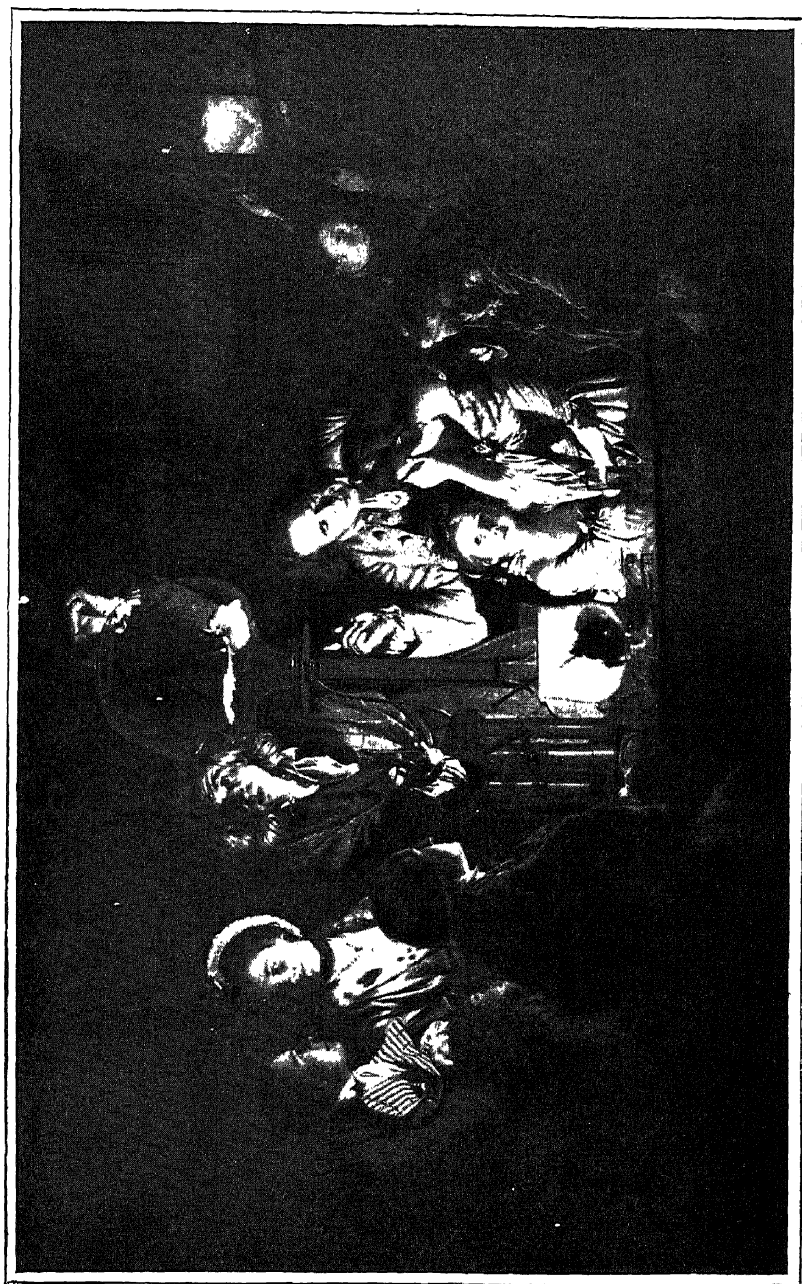
VI. TRADE AND INDUSTRY.

And now that the moral, the intellectual, the spiritual factors, in the sum of our modern civilisation have thus been passed in review, it remains only to glance at the physical agencies which have contributed to its growth. We shall have in these volumes to trace the progress of our material prosperity, step by step, and through stage after stage of its advance. We shall have to note the successive utilisation of the various sources of wealth; the development of the corresponding methods of production; the chequered fortunes of our agriculture; the rise and growth, in its later stages so enormous, of our manufacturing industry; the progressive expansion to its present astonishing volume of our external trade. Incidentally thereto, of course, we shall have to render, period by period, an account—for it will be hardly less than that—of the physical well-being of the great body of the English people; to show how it has been affected by causes natural and artificial, by "act of God" or ordinance of man; by laws, in the legislator's literal sense of the word, and in the economist's figurative use of it; by war, pestilence, or famine with their depletions of population, arrests of production, and displacements of industries; and last, and most important of all influencing causes, by those applications of man's inventive

faculty to his productive work, which by directing the stream of industry into new channels and leaving others bare and dry, may within a few score years reverse the work of ages, and not only transform the external aspect of a society, but almost create a new type of national character.

It is on this side of the subject that the history of a nation's industry is so intimately bound up with the history of its manners; and though for convenience of treatment the two subjects have of course been severally dealt with in the body of the work, I need make no attempt to separate them here. The external aspects of the life of any people—their manners and customs, their social institutions and usages their habits in short (from the broadest down to the narrowest sense of the word, from the most important observances of social intercourse down to the very cut and colour and material of costume), are, if not in exclusive, in obviously closer dependence upon the character of their industries than on any other cause. No sooner has colonisation or conquest laid the bases of civil society; no sooner does the war with Nature, or with human rivals, for territorial possession come to an end, and the colonist or the conqueror settle down to live of his labour, than a process of mutual interaction between industries and habits sets in, the resultant of which defines the particular line of development along which such a society must advance in the arts of life. Soil and climate, opportunity and instinct, combine to direct a people to one kind of industry or another; but the industry once chosen, and any others subsequently added to it, leave an ever deepening mark upon their character. Our own early history supplies one of the most notable of all the illustrations of this truth in the tale of Saxon and Dane. The sea rovers who descended upon Britain in the fifth century had before the close of the eighth been transformed into the race of home-keeping landmen in whom another breed of maritime marauders found at first an almost defenceless prey.

In the order of man's advance towards civilisation, agricultural or pastoral industry was everywhere no doubt his earliest form of settled labour. The plough-handle or the crook was the first implement to his hand after the hunting-spear. Undoubtedly he must have tilled the earth before he mined it; yet, inasmuch as the most primitive form of agriculture originates in the



AN EXPERIMENT WITH AN AIR-PUMP.

From the picture by Joseph Wright, of Derby (1734-97), in the National Gallery. An example of the popular interest in science in the eighteenth century.

immediate personal needs of the cultivator, and for a long time seeks no other object than the satisfaction of those needs through more or less rude processes of local barter, its beginnings may leave no deep trace upon the history of a people. It is not until a race is far enough advanced to become producers for the purposes of exchange against the products of other and more advanced communities that their industries find their way into written record. In the case of countries more favoured by climate than Britain their earliest trade with the foreigner which history has to record is usually in the surface products of the earth—in corn or wine, in the yields of the olive-grove or the orchard. But it is as a producer of minerals that our group of islands is first met with in the pages of the historian and the geographer; and a variety of evidence goes to show that its inhabitants must have possessed the art of working in metals before the Roman occupation. The country, however, which had been marked out by destiny to become the greatest manufacturer in the world was slow in taking its place among the manufacturing nations of Europe. Other peoples whom the English race have since far outstripped were ahead of us for many centuries, and throughout that period England existed mainly as a producer of raw material, and as, what she still pre-eminently remains, an emporium of exchange. In Roman and Saxon, as in later times, our great capital was a notable centre of international commerce, and to the Danish invasion and the rule of the Danes we owe the rise and growth of the trading ports on our eastern coasts. It is before the Danish rule that the merchant, asked in the Old English Dialogue “What do you bring to us?” replies, “I bring skins, silks, costly gems, and gold, besides various garments, pigments, wine, oil, and ivory, with brass and copper and tin, silver and gold, and the like.”

It was as a trader that England first began her career of prominence in the history of the world; but long after she had become a producer far beyond her own needs she still remained, so to speak, at the first stage of production. The great wool-producing country of the Western world, she was for long dependent mainly on the demand of the Flemish looms for the exchange of this product, and it was not till the reign of Edward III. that an attempt was made to promote the manufacture in this country. But here, of course, we approach a subject of such

magnitude that in a few prefatory observations of this kind it is impossible to do more than touch upon it. It is one upon which the two sections of agriculture and commerce come in contact with each other, and it forms a main element in that great question which will fall to be dealt with in the economic department of these volumes—namely, the reciprocal action and reaction of trade upon industry, and of industry upon trade.

Other, however, than economical factors will, of course, have to be taken into account. Influences wielded by legislation and royal policy, such as are particularly noticeable in the thirteenth century; the shock of great physical calamities, such as made memorable the succeeding age; civic movements and developments, active throughout both these periods and thereafter—these and many other forces have to be reckoned with in tracing the vicissitudes of our industrial and commercial history, even so far down as the accession of Elizabeth, while with the sudden outburst of the exploring and colonising spirit which marked that glorious era a new chapter opens in the history of our commerce. Then comes the long pause of the seventeenth century, when the eye of England, no longer sweeping the horizon of the outer world, as under the Tudor princes, turned inwards, and the adventurer-race of the preceding age seemed absorbed in the work, to use an expressive French phrase, of “making their souls,” and—what has been known to accompany that process in private families—fighting among themselves. Upon this follows the Revolution and the exhausting European war which succeeded it; then that revival and growth of British trade under the peaceful policy of Walpole which carries us well-nigh to the middle of the seventeenth century; then the new Empire won for us, and the world-wide market thrown open to us, by the elder Pitt; until at last we are in sight of those epoch-making inventions and discoveries which finally settled the future of England as a manufacturing nation, and started her on the career which she has pursued to such mighty issues down to the present day.

Thus in the first of the periods above referred to we shall have to trace the history and to record the great industrial change which, beginning in the reign of Henry III., continued with increasing energy during the reign, and through the legislation, of his son—a change which, in the domain of agriculture

created out of the masses of rural bondsmen a new class of tenant farmers, and, in the department of commerce, was attended by a rapid increase in the wealth. Passing on to the next century we shall see how the progressive and hitherto peaceful development of that new agrarian system, which based on the contract of landlord and tenant, and worked on that of hire and service, had replaced, or was replacing, the old feudal relations of tenure and feudal organisation of labour, received a sudden check from the terrible national visitation known as the Black Death; and how from the widespread mortality which attended that scourge, and the consequent depletion of the cultivator class which was caused by it, there followed—through successive stages of harsh legislation, popular revolt, and executive repression which left untouched the root of evil—an enforced diversion of productive effort on the part of the owners of the soil, which in the end revolutionised the whole agricultural system of this country. Through the century which follows, a period of exhausting warfare abroad and at home, we shall trace the continued operation of the same causes in the still prevailing distress and discontent of those rural labouring classes whom this great agricultural change above referred to, with its incidents of eviction and dispossession, the consolidation of small holdings, the expansion of pasture land, and contraction of arable, was throwing in ever increasing number out of employment. To these classes the word “enclosure” became as hateful as, in its supposed portent of peril to their means of subsistence, was the word “machinery” to the urban artisan of three centuries later; and their fears found vent like his in outbreaks of violence and riot. Still onward through its political and social consequences shall we pursue the record of this slow and painful re-adjustment of agricultural labour to its new conditions, till the more urgent of the sufferings inflicted in the process are alleviated by the Elizabethan poor-law, while agriculture, now beginning to reap the benefits incidental to its change of method, re-absorbs much of the surplus labour which had been flung off at the commencement of the transition period, and a sensible growth of manufacturing industry, accompanied by a far greater expansion of commerce, comes finally to complete the relief of the unemployed.

English commerce, born to a less chequered career and to

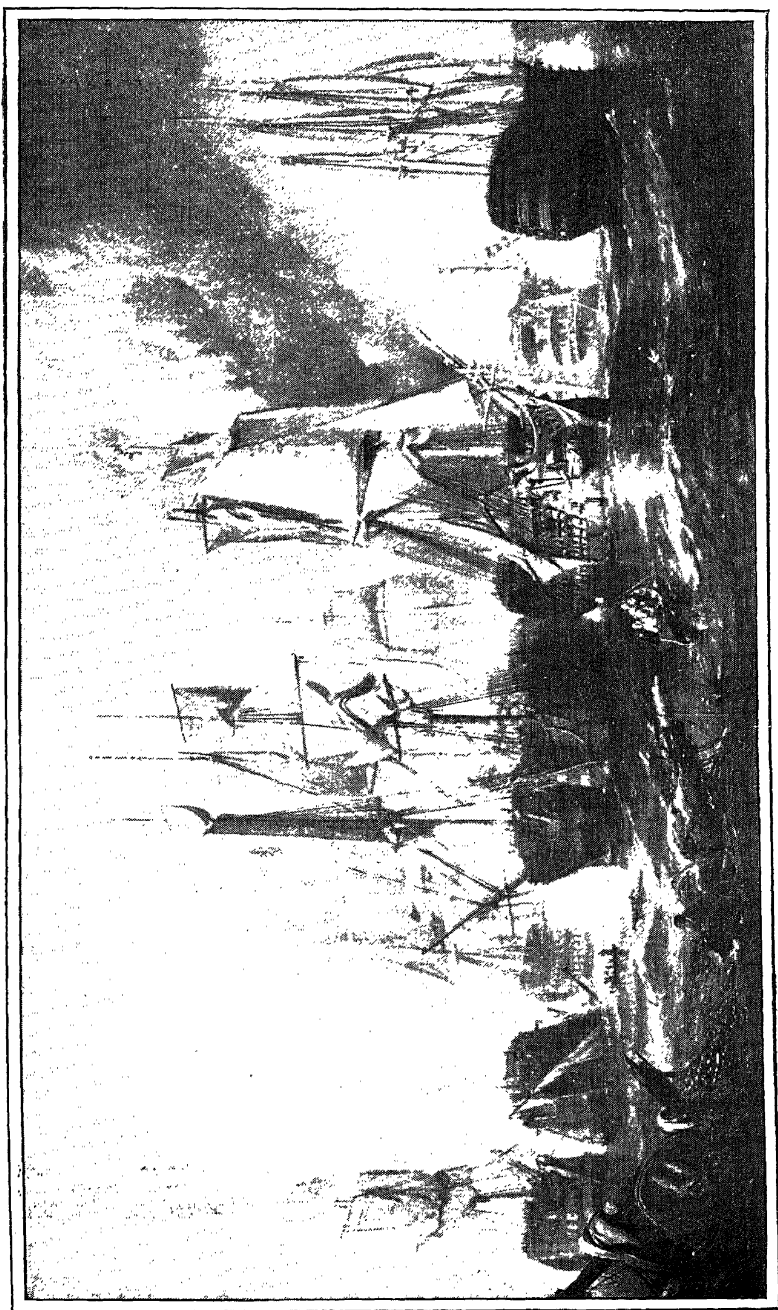
milder vicissitudes than agriculture, has been all this while, "without haste but without rest," maintaining its progress. Already, as has been remarked, a striking feature in the general life of the country many centuries before its great manufacturing industries came into existence, and while some of its richest natural products were still unexploited, English commerce never loses, nor even seems to suffer any temporary decline of importance during the ensuing ages. Neither conquest nor change of dynasty does other than increase it. Under Angevin as under Norman, under Dane as under Saxon, the external trade of England is conspicuous for its steady growth. The history of its internal trade is bound up with the stirring narrative of the struggle for municipal liberties, with the rivalry of the guilds, and with the less eventful but no less interesting annals which record the rise and progress of the English towns. With the story of our commerce in both its branches another subject will be found inseparably intertwined. Side by side with the English trader marches for a thousand years and upwards the English legislator—a travelling companion whose attentions were not always disinterested, and even when they were, were too often embarrassing if not injurious to their object. The record of their long journey together reveals an alternation of attempts on the part of the legislator now to protect the trader, now to enrich the king or the community at his expense, and in each case with either manifest damage to one or with doubtful advantage to the others. Through chapter after chapter of the Statute Book—in fiscal, sumptuary, and protective laws of all descriptions; in enactments for the promotion of one form of production and the repression of another, for the encouragement of an export here and the prohibition of an import there; in laws against forestalling, regrating and engrossing; in an endless series of "Statutes of the Staple"; in incessant attempts to fix the prices of goods and regulate the wages of labour—the incidents of this secular companionship of trade and legislation are plainly traceable; and though the interference of the latter with the former becomes rarer in its occurrence and less disturbing in its character as we approach our own times, it is not till close upon the middle of the present century that the ill-assorted fellow-travellers finally part company.

But the long story of their intercourse affords perhaps the

most striking illustration of national progress. It is in this very record of the innumerable obstacles against which English industry and trade have had to fight their way, that their unconquerable vitality finds its strongest proof. And the national qualities by virtue of which alone could these obstacles have been overcome are, of course, equally well attested by the victory. It is through the tenacity of their life and the energy of their operations that, in the teeth of many if not all those adverse influences which Macaulay enumerates in a famous passage, the prosperity of the country has steadily grown. It is through these causes, as he has said, that "the national wealth has, during at least six centuries, been almost uninterruptedly increasing; that it was greater under the Tudors than under the Plantagenets; that it was greater under the Stuarts than under the Tudors; that, in spite of battles, sieges, and confiscations, it was greater on the day of the Restoration than on the day when the Long Parliament met; that, in spite of maladministration, of extravagance, of public bankruptcy, of two costly and unsuccessful wars, of the pestilence and the fire, it was greater on the day of the death of Charles II. than on the day of his Restoration"; and (to add a last and most marvellous chapter of all to the history which Macaulay here breaks off) that, in spite of the loss of the American Colonies and the exhausting drain of a war of more than twenty years' duration, it was greater on the day of the meeting of the Congress of Vienna than on the day of the accession of George III.

VII. MANNERS.

Concurrent everywhere with the growth of a nation's wealth is its advance in refinement of manners and its progress in what are called the arts of life. A primordial instinct of human nature insures this concurrence and maintains it. It is guaranteed by the universal tendency of mankind to save labour and procure leisure, to diminish pain, to increase pleasure, to avoid discomfort. The surplus of national wealth which is applicable to this purpose may be differently applied in different ages (and the history of manners is to a large extent the history of its variations), but on the whole the sum of the material luxuries of a nation and of the appliances for obtaining them increases in direct proportion to the amount of this disposable surplus. It is only to a partial



THE BATTLE OF TRAFALGAR, OCTOBER 21, 1805.
From the painting by Clarkson Stanfield, R.A., in the National Gallery.

and imperfect view of the manners of the past—to an eye that concentrates its gaze upon some single feature of the national life instead of surveying it as a whole—that any doubt of this could be possible. Extravagance of outlay on costume, on domestic establishment or personal retinue, or on other like matters, may attract to itself so much of the effective desire for material pleasure in any given historical period, that if we were to contemplate it alone we should form an altogether false idea of the contemporary standard of luxury. A man of fashion, for instance, in the time of Richard II. might spend as much as £200 on the “clothes he stood upright in,” while a dandy of the Victorian era attires himself to perfection for little more than as many shillings. The personal attendants of a great noble under the Tudors would often outnumber twentyfold the average domestic staff of a duke of to-day. But the food and lodging, the lighting and warming, the household comforts and conveniences, the medicine and surgery, the means of communication and locomotion, at the disposal of the fourteenth century courtier, or the sixteenth century grandee, were of a rudeness which far more than made up for their luxury of apparel or the pomp and circumstance of their lives. A prince or a peer of the Angevin period might wear velvet and ermine on his back, but he had rushes under his feet; his hall might be grand in proportions and rich in decorations, but its primitive illuminants made little more than darkness visible; his meal might be served up to him on costly dishes, but he fed himself with his fingers.

Yet the full extent of the contrast between the civilisation of the present and that of the past would never be realised if we were to confine our attention to the change of manners which has taken place among the richer orders of society alone. In the famous chapter of Macaulay's *History* which has been already quoted, the historian compares the condition of the labouring class at the time at which he was writing with that of the nobility and gentry, of the higher professions, and of the magnates of commerce at the end of the seventeenth century, and shows how well provided were the former with many of those equipments and agencies of civilised life which the latter altogether lacked, or which they enjoyed in far scantier measure. He shows how, as regards the facilities of travel, the opportunities of communication, the amenities of social intercourse,

the protection of life and property, the securities for the preservation of health, the appliances for the cure of disease, the position of the humblest members of the community in his own time was preferable to that of the wealthiest citizen of the age of which he writes. But the interval between his own time and ours has had a history hardly less remarkable. The vast development of production which has followed upon the economical liberation of commerce and industry, with its corresponding increase in the purchasing power of money and cheapening of the necessities of life, has, no doubt, been the principal cause of progress. But the ever-widening conquests of science, the immense extension of the means of communication by steam and electricity, and the enlightening and humanising influences of education, have all contributed in their respective degrees to the same happy result. It is due to the combined operations of all these causes that that chapter of the social history of England, which commenced about the middle of the nineteenth century, has, in point alike of the material gains which it records, and the intellectual interest which it inspires, so immeasurably surpassed all previous periods in the annals of our nation.

So rapid, so almost breathless, has been the rate of our material progress during the present generation that it has, more naturally perhaps than reasonably, provoked utterances of disappointment from those who, like the divine or the philosopher, are mainly concerned with other than the material aspects of human life. Such persons, however, too often begin by demanding more from what is known as Progress than it can be justly expected to yield, and then go on to arraign it for its failure to satisfy their excessive requirements. Perpetually reminding us that "Man cannot live by bread alone," they seem to think that this entitles them to deride the cultivation of wheat. No doubt there is truth in their complaint that our increased and increasing mastery over the physical world has been attended by no corresponding—that is, by no proportionate—elevation of the moral and spiritual faculties of human nature. But the truth is one which they systematically exaggerate. It is true that man as a moral and spiritual being changes little and changes slowly in the course of ages, and that in these respects the reaction upon him of his material surroundings is very gradual and very slight. It

is untrue to say, as those we speak of are apt to say, that as a moral and spiritual being man changes not at all, and that the reaction of his surroundings upon his character is *nil*. The Englishman of the nineteenth century, no doubt, differs far less in his inner nature than in the outward circumstances of his social life from the Englishman of the fifteenth or even of the eleventh century: but still he differs; and the changing circumstances of his social life from age to age have played their part with other causes in producing this difference. Let us not fear to add that it is on the whole a difference for the better, and that to the pessimist, therefore, who contends that the Englishman of the future will not differ, or only differ for the worse, from the Englishman of to-day, we are entitled to say that the burden of proof rests upon him. It is for him to show cause for believing that the path which throughout the centuries has on the whole led upwards will hereafter stretch for ever over a monotonous plateau, if not descend to lower levels. It is for him to rebut the presumption, forced upon us by many examples in the past, that no apparent arrest of the progress of the human race is more than temporary, and that its general onward movement is as little affected, even by brief intervals of actual retrogression, as the inflowing tide is affected by the reflux of the broken wave. In all periods of man's history this mistake of the casual and transitory for the uniform and permanent has been made by one age to be discovered by the next; and those among us who are apt to despond of our future can safely assure themselves that the Englishmen of a century hence, though possibly enough they may be occupied with their own misgivings, will at any rate smile at ours.

H. D. TRAILL.

SOCIAL ENGLAND

CHAPTER I.

ENGLAND BEFORE THE ENGLISH.

THE history of the most important part of the world is the history of the migration of nations from east to west. From the dawn of history to our own time we see nations moving westwards. Rome placed boundary marks and built boundary walls, but its power waned, and the nations passed on as before. Until the fifteenth century, when a daring Genoese ventured out into the ocean to discover a new world, the British islands lay on the confines of the earth, beyond which no man could go. It was the most adventurous nations that reached this limit, and they only. It became the home of those who stopped because they had reached the furthest limit of migration.

O. M. EDWARDS.
Celtic Britain.

The first wave of immigrants that reached Britain—after the primeval cave-dwellers, who will be dealt with later (p. 122)—was a wave of men of short stature and of swarthy countenance, whose purest descendants may be seen among the miners of the Rhondda Valley or in the quadrangles of Jesus College at Oxford. We call them Iberians (p. 124), and suppose that they came from the deserts of the East—from Arabia and from Egypt. Many imagine a resemblance between their faces and the faces of men depicted on Assyrian stones and Egyptian mummies, and suppose they followed the northern shore of the Mediterranean in their journey westwards.

The Peopling of Britain.

The second wave we call the Celtic wave. The Celt was taller than the Iberian, of fair complexion, and had reached a higher stage in the development of civilisation—having

reached the marriage stage, and having domesticated every creature that we regard as domestic now, except, perhaps, the pig and the bee (p. 17). The Celts journeyed, probably, through Central Europe. They seem to have come to the British Islands in two divisions: the Gaelic Celt still survives in the Isle of Man, in the west of Ireland, and in the north-west and north of



THE TWO TYPES IN SOUTH WALES TO-DAY.

Scotland. The language of the Brythonic Celt is still the language of Brittany and of Wales; it was the language of the district between the Dee and the Clyde eight centuries ago; Cumberland shepherds still count their sheep in Welsh; and it was only during the last century that it died in Cornwall. The Gael passed over into Ireland, and then, finding only the boundless ocean ahead of him, he turned back. On the western coast of Britain, from St. David's to Dumbarton, he found the

Brythonic Celt following in his footsteps ; and the early history of Wales and of Scotland consists of the history of the struggle between these kinsmen.

At the time of the birth of Christ, Celtic tribes were following each other from the Continent into Britain, and the closest connection existed between the people on each side of the Channel. At the same time the conquests of Julius Cæsar and the extension of the power of Rome had checked the advance of the tribes who were pressing onwards from the east and south-east. Rome had arisen in the path of the migrating nations, and the pressure on Britain became less. The tribes began to settle down, and the tribal king was beginning to develop into something like a national sovereign, with his capital on the eastern shore, from which he exercised a sovereignty that became more vague and shadowy as one travelled westwards to the country of the unconquerable Silures.

The Immi-
gration
Arrested.

Rome built its walls and constructed its roads across the old paths of the Celt and of the Iberian ; the villas of new rulers arose by its road-sides, and flourishing towns around its garrisons. But it could only stop the migration for a time. Other tribes—the Teutonic tribes—were gathering beyond its northern boundaries, and preparing to pour southwards and westwards by land and sea. Finally these burst through the defences of the Roman Empire, and Britain saw new invaders : first came the Teutonic Jutes, Saxons, and Angles, and then came the Teutonic Danes and Normans.

From the earliest times to the beginning of the twelfth century, invasion after invasion broke over Britain, and each invasion brought a new class. During three hundred and sixty years, from A.D. 50 to 409, the Romans prevented or checked the migration, and taught the restless tribes the ways of fixed habitation and consolidated government. When the Roman Empire fell, its ideas remained in the countries which had once formed part of it. And when the Teutonic invaders forced their way into any of the Roman countries they seem to have been conquered by Roman ideas. The West Saxon chieftain, after ruthlessly destroying the Roman city and temple in the south of Britain, eventually bedecked himself with the insignia of Roman sovereignty, and took the title of the Roman governor as his own. The Norman pirate, after devastating every river-

mouth on the Atlantic side, became the defender of France and the final consolidator of Britain. The leaders of the old migration became the defenders of the newly-formed countries. In the last invasion of England, when a Norse descent was made upon the isle of Anglesey, at the beginning of the twelfth century, the defenders as well as the invaders were Normans. The Norman earl of Roman Chester, with its Roman memories, defended his country against invasion, as his Roman predecessor had done six hundred years before. Though the Norwegian Magnus was able to send an arrow into Hugh of Shrewsbury's eye, the last invasion was beaten off. But traces of the successive invasions remained in the classes into which the inhabitants of Britain were and are divided—the highest class representing the latest invaders. Having related so much political history, let us look at the social side of early British history.

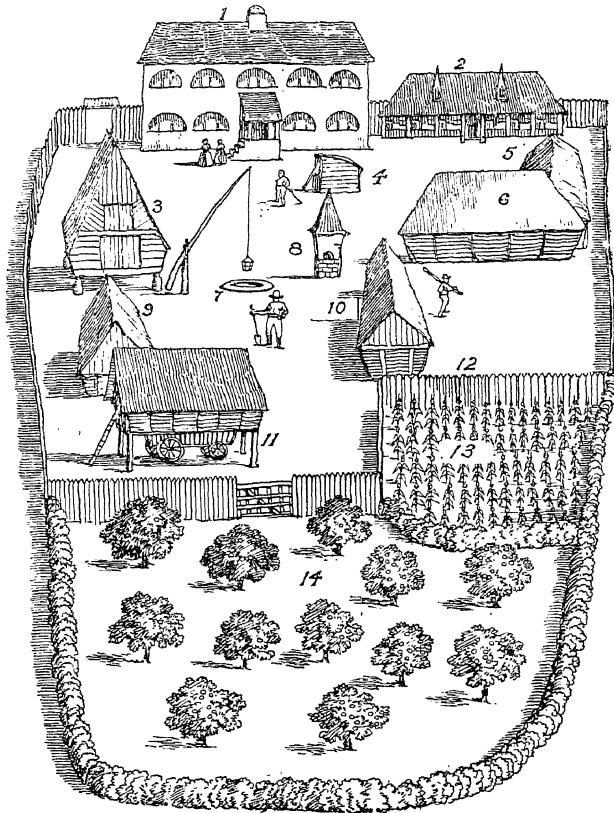
Social
Organisa-
tion.

Before the rise of the Roman system of society in Britain, the characteristic institutions of the island were what we may call, for the sake of distinction and for the sake of brevity, the free tribe and the bond village. It is the relations between the tribesmen and the villagers that explain social British history before the Roman conquest.

Tribe and village represent two races, different in origin, in language, in character, in institutions. The free Aryan tribesman thought that he himself had come from the East, from the land of the rising sun, while he regarded the short, dark, Iberian villager as one who had emerged out of some dim, mysterious Western land, a land on the confines of the nether regions of the earth. There are traditions of the struggle between the two languages; and though the Iberian eventually forgot his own language and learnt a Celtic one, he has (possibly) given his acquired language peculiarities which are still a continual stumbling-block to Welsh grammarians. The tribesman was tall and fair-haired, hospitable and generous, fond of war and of the chase; the villager was cunning and deceitful, adept in handicraft and magic, rarely venturing far from his hill-side or hill-top home. The tribesman ruled with all his pride of race; the villager, who could boast of no ancestry, served or paid tribute.

Let us first look at the tribe. It is a community of free heads of families, united together for purposes of defence, of

law, and of tillage. The homesteads are scattered along the borders of the woods, between the pasture-lands and the hunting-grounds. Each homestead is large enough to contain a whole family in its one room. It is a square or a round



BOSNIAC COMMUNAL HOMESTEAD. SELECTED AS AN EXTANT INSTANCE OF THE TYPE EXEMPLIFIED IN CELTIC BRITAIN.

- 1, Common Dwelling House; 2, Summer Dwelling House; 3, Granary; 4, Common Goose-house; 5, Cows' and Goats' House; 6 For making Slivovitz or plum-brandy, the staple beverage of the country; 7, Well; 8, Common Oven; 9, Stables; 10, Swine Stall; 11, Loft for Kukurutz or Maize; 12, Paling; 13, Maize; 14, Orchard.

edifice, built of unhewn or roughly hewn trees placed on end, with a roof of interlaced boughs, covered with rushes or with turf. In the middle of the floor the family fire burns, and the members of the family sit round it, along the side of the

room, upon a bed made of rushes and covered with hides or coarse cloth. Upon this bed, around the fire which continued to burn by night as well as by day, the members of the family had the right to sit at meal-times and to lie at night. At meal-times large platters, containing oatmeal cakes, meat, and broth, would be placed on the rushes and green grass which intervened between the family bed and the family fire. At nightfall the fire would be renewed, and the privileged circle—from grandfather to grandson—lay with their feet towards it. The land belonged to the family; the right of sitting in the circle round the family hearth and the right of reposing in the family bed carried with them the tribesman's right to his acre strips, his share of the waste, and his privilege of hunting the wild boar and the wolf and the deer in the family hunting-grounds.

The family remained united to the third generation. When the head of the household died, his youngest son took his place as the master of the old homestead, and the remaining brothers built other homesteads on the family land. When all the brothers died, there was a second division of the family land among first cousins; and finally, on the death of all the first cousins, the second cousins might divide the family land for the third time. Then the old family was regarded as having broken up into new families—all anxious, however, to remember their common descent.

All crime was crime against the family; it was the family that was regarded as having committed the crimes of its members; it was the family that had to atone, or to carry out the blood-feud. In time, money payments were fixed as commutations for injury; but, even as late as the twelfth century, Welsh blood-feuds were fought out to the death, and whole families rose at the command of the master of the household to pursue the murderer.

Every free tribesman had the right of bearing arms, and the young men of the tribes were often engaged, under a chosen leader, in warlike expeditions against their neighbours. While so engaged, no homestead belonging to their own tribe could be closed against them. In time this privilege became a dangerous one, for brothers quarrelled about their shares in the divisions of the family land, and a turbulent tribesman,

when driven from his family, could gather an army of followers and live upon the country. A legend, written in its present form in the thirteenth century, tells how a prince, jealous of his brother's position as head of the household, called together an army of foster-brothers and dependents—an army that soon became the terror of the country. Some of his pursuers are described as entering a house which may well be taken as the ruined homestead of an old free family. They saw an old homestead, so the legend runs, black and upright, and from it there came a great smoke. The floor was uneven and miry, with holly boughs spread over it. When they came to the entrance they saw that the family seats around the inside of the homestead were dusty and poverty-stricken, and the smoke which arose from the fire could hardly be borne. They sat around the hearth, while their barley-cakes were being made; and they tried to sleep in the old family bed—a bed of boughs and straw, covered with a coarse cloth of British manufacture. One of them, however, slept on an enchanted yellow calf-skin, probably the privileged place of the old master of the household, and saw passing before him, in review, the old gods and heroes of his country, transformed into Arthur's knights.

Subject to the free tribal communities were the villagers¹—quite distinct from the tribal slaves. The characteristics of the villagers, whose descendants are called "villeins" in the thirteenth century laws, were their communism and their subjection. Probably they were at first a totemistic community, and their totems may still survive in the local nicknames of Celtic localities—such as the pigs of Anglesey, or the goats of Arvon. Land belonged equally to all, son and stranger alike. In later times there could be no escheat on the failure of heirs, for no heir was recognised save the whole community. The land was tilled in common, and its produce was common property. These bond communities were, doubtless, non-Aryan; and their name remained in proverbs as a term of reproach when the distinction between them and the tribesmen had long been forgotten.

When subjected to the Celtic tribesmen, their land was divided among the villeins equally, without any reference to kinship. They were not allowed to bear arms—their property

¹ The *tazog* of later Welsh law.

was theoretically regarded as that of their conquerors; they could not rise into an equality with the tribesmen, by learning, or manufacture, or trade, and it was impossible to enter into a free tribal family by marriage, or to become the head of a new free kindred.

Political
Organisa-
tion.

Gradually, however, the conditions of tribesman and villager became assimilated; and it is this assimilation that accounts, if not for the rise of the tribal king, at least for the increase of his power. The tribal king was at first, perhaps, a purely military leader; but his position became perpetuated, even in times of peace, because of the presence of subjugated communities. The villein lands were divided, when the periodical divisions came, by the tribal lord's officer, and not, as was the case with the tribal lands, by the owners themselves. The governing of the subject people was the tribal chief's source of strength, as well as his duty. By them his dwelling-place was built or repaired; by them his table was furnished; by them his dogs and slaves were maintained. Gradually he distanced his fellow heads of families in wealth and in power, and the free land of the tribe as well as the geldable¹ land of the villeins came under tribute to him. The two communities—family and communistic—were finally united in one political society² under the jurisdiction of a lord and his officers.

The
Roman
Conquest.

When Julius Cæsar had conquered Gaul, refugee kings came from the isle of Britain to implore his help. Many of the numerous tribal kings were in danger from the growing power of some ambitious tribe and its king. The districts of the headwaters of the Nen and the Ouse were occupied by the Catuvelauni, whose able king, Cassivelaunus, seems to have reduced the tribes of the south-east of the island under his own sway. Julius Cæsar tried to destroy the power of this king by protecting the kings of the tribes he had subjugated, especially Mandubratius, king of the Trinobantes. The encroachments of the Catuvelauni did not cease; and, by the time of the Claudian conquest in A.D. 43, nearly a hundred years after Cæsar's departure, they seem to have established a kind of shadowy right over the whole of Southern Britain. The tribes under their sway were probably divided into two groups—the tribes of

[¹ *I.e.* already tributary to the free tribesmen.]

[² The technical term is "commot."]

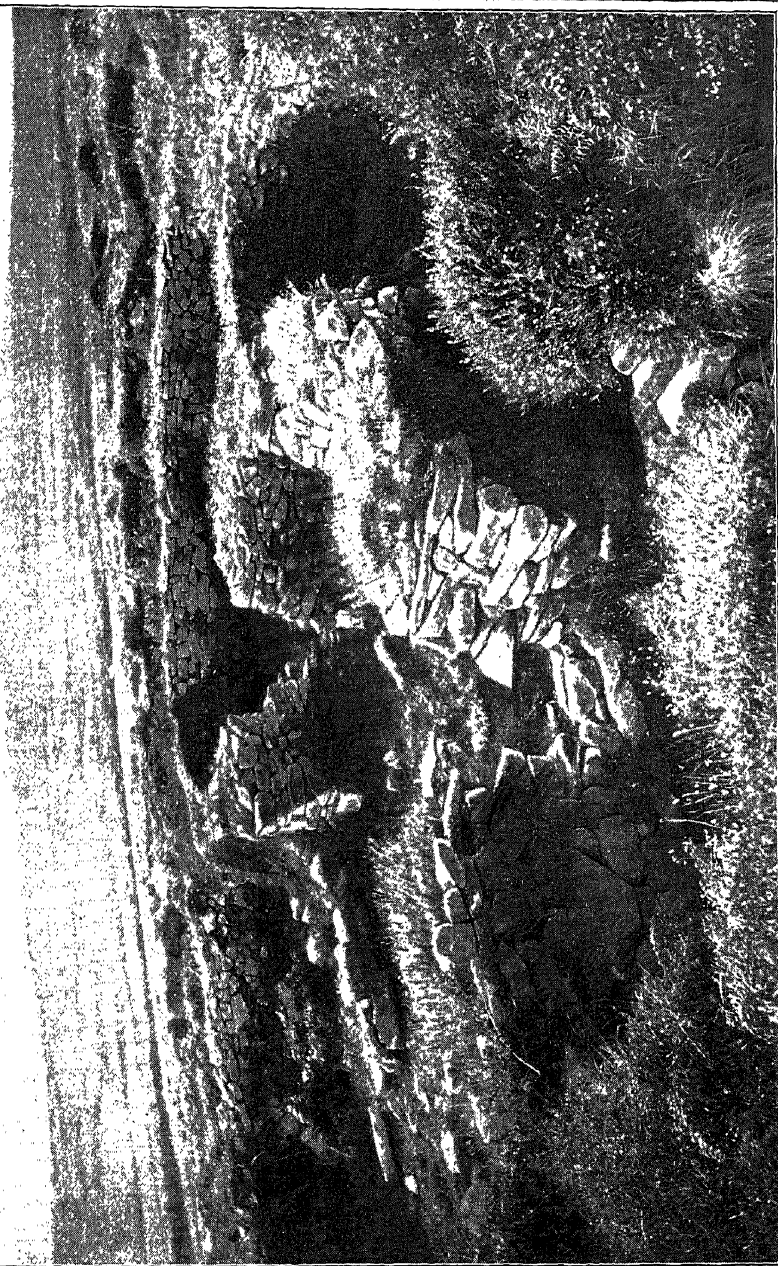


Photo: Gibson, Penzance.
REMAINS OF A BRITISH VILLAGE AT CHYSAUSTER, NEAR PENZANCE, CORNWALL.

the plains of the south-east, and the tribes of the mountains of the west and north. These two confederacies occupied the lands which, after the Roman conquest, became respectively Lower and Upper Britain. Cunobelinus, "the radiant Cymbeline," had died before the coming of the Romans, and his kingdom was ruled by his two sons, Caractacus¹ and Togodumnus. Aulus Plantius wrested the eastern portion from the sons of Cymbeline; Togodumnus fell, and Camulodunum (now Colchester), Cymbeline's capital, was taken. The kingdom of the sons of Cymbeline was the more easily conquered on account of the disaffection of the subject tribes. These tribes soon found that the Roman



GOLD COIN OF CUNOBELINUS, STRUCK
AT CAMULODUNUM [COLCHESTER].

(British Museum.)

yoke was no lighter than that of Cymbeline and his sons. The Romans established a colony of veterans at Camulodunum, and each tribal revolt was sternly and speedily put down. Caractacus fled westwards, and took the command of the Silures and other western tribes that had, perhaps, ac-

knowledge his father's rule. When the Silures were defeated in battle by Ostorius, Caractacus passed to the Brigantes of the north, to organise another opposition in addition to that of the still unconquered Silures. The submission of the Brigantes and the capture of Caractacus put an end to all unity among the British tribes, and the Roman conquest of the island became a comparatively easy task. When Julius Agricola came in the summer of 78 to organise the conquered tribes, he found that the only opposition he need meet was that of some isolated British tribes. Agricola's son-in-law Tacitus tells us that the Britons were once under kings, but that in his time they were divided into factions and parties. It was the greatest advantage of the Romans that the tribes could no longer act in concert.

**Conquered
Britain.**

Between 78 and 400 the Romans introduced into Britain a unity of their own. The island is divided geographically into mountainous west and flat east—the scenes of the later and earlier struggles of Caractacus. But the fortresses which

[¹ The strictly correct spelling is Caratacus.]

the Romans built in the valleys of the Severn and the Dee to protect the frontiers of their earlier conquests became flourishing and prosperous cities as well as the homes of the legions of the west. Before Britain was thoroughly Latinised, however, it was attacked by the new nations who were threatening the whole length of the northern boundary of the empire. For purposes of defence against the tribes who attacked the eastern shore and the northern wall, Britain fell apart into its old natural divisions, north-west and south-east, under the Dux Britanniarum ("Duke of the Britains"). The eastern province was conquered by Teutonic invaders between 450 and 630; the western province, though divided into the three districts of Cornwall, Wales, and Strathclyde, by the battles of Deorham and Chester, remained independent. Here the old tribal wars began anew, and some powerful tribal king was ever trying to get himself acknowledged as the successor of the Duke of the Britains. In the east the British tribes were merged in the conquering Teutonic tribes and among them also the memory of the Roman sovereignty remained.¹ Throughout the Middle Ages the dream of British unity lives in chronicle and romance, and Arthur's crown was supposed to exist at Carnarvon until the Plantagenet conqueror took it away in 1284.

But, however affected by ideas of imperial unity, the oldest tribal divisions still exist. Dialect and traditions still show that the division into shires and dioceses is based upon the old division into tribes. The tribal king amalgamated his free tribe



Photo: Victor White, Reading.
BRONZE FIBULA OF LATE CELTIC DESIGN.
(Strathfieldsaye Collection.)

¹ The title of Bretwalda, applied to some of the more important English tribal kings, is held by high authorities to be simply a translation into English of the title Dux Britanniarum.

and his subject communities; Cassivelaunus and Caractacus aimed at subjecting the tribal chief to an island king; the Roman introduced a still wider conception of sovereignty—subjecting kings to the emperor, as each king had subjected tribal lords. The first struggle, however, has left more lasting effects than the last; in Celtic portions of modern Britain there are traces of the old antipathy between tribesman and villager, while the rule of the Roman has been forgotten even where his villa and his storied gravestone remain.

Briefly to recapitulate what has been written, the beginnings of our social history may thus be summarised:—

Summary.

When the Romans invaded Britain in 54 B.C. and 43 A.D., they found a great tribal king trying to subdue other tribes. In 54 B.C. they found Cassivelaunus extending his sway over the eastern portion of the island; in 43 A.D. they found that Caractacus had some shadow of sovereignty over even the Silures of the west. How had the tribal kings arisen?

The people of Britain had come in two waves. First the short, dark Iberian came; then came the mighty Celt who conquered him. The two people existed side by side, with very different social characteristics, and the Iberian communities remained subject to the leader of the invading Celtic tribe. Hence the leader became very powerful—became a king among his own people.

The Celtic tribes were not at peace among themselves. New invading tribes were ever coming, with better weapons. In a condition of incessant war, it was possible for one tribal king to become powerful enough to subject the others. It was against the encroachments of a great king that minor kings appealed to the Romans, and the Romans came.

The Roman destroyed, for the time, the power of tribal chiefs, and united the southern part of Britain under his own rule, as a part of a wider empire. The Celtic tribe and the Iberian community remained, however, when the Roman was forced to depart. The later history of our islands exhibits, in various forms, a struggle between the old tribal independence and the traditions of Roman unity.

The social condition of Britain in British times is explained by this political history. The lowest class, a class subjected to all invaders, was composed of the first inhabitants of Britain—

the so-called Iberian, with his dark Druidism and communal life. Above the Iberians we get the Celtic tribesmen, united in families and tribes, and jealous of their privileges. Above the Celtic tribesmen were the kings, who, owing to political reasons, distanced their fellows. And in time even they were subjected to the Romans, whose "red tunic" was regarded as a sign of nobility long after their departure. When these classes had once been formed, Druidism forged chains of iron for each subject class. In the world to come, as in Britain, the slave was never to be free from his master. New invasions and higher classes came, old social history repeated itself with weary monotony until the time came when the levelling influence of two widely different agencies—religion and military invention—was to bring a new social era into being.

From the earliest times there was a belief that a happy land, full of pearls and sunshine, lay far out in the Western Ocean. The first wall of its king's palace was coated with bronze, the next with tin, and the third flashed with the red light of orichalcum (brass).

O. M. EDWARDS.
British
Trade and
Industry.

During the decay of the Phœnician cities, when all the isles of the Ocean mourned over the fall of Tyre, the Greek and the Roman longed for a share in the Phœnician trade with the mysterious tin islands of the West. During the lifetime of Alexander the Great, and of Aristotle, about 330 B.C., the Greek colonists of Marseilles fitted out an expedition for exploring the Western Ocean. The command was given to Pytheas, who had won renown by his studies in mathematics and navigation. It is from the fragments that remain of his works that we get our information about the earliest stage of the history of British trade and industry. He saw the abundant wheat of a Kentish harvest, he was struck by the great barns in which the corn was threshed, he tasted the mead made of wheat and honey, but did not visit the interior, and did not see the tin mines.

Two hundred years after Pytheas, the geographer Posidonius, Cicero's tutor, visited the West. Expecting, probably, to find the islands of the Ocean even richer than the farthest regions of the mainland—the soil of which glittered with silver, tin, and

Tin.

white gold—he crossed over to Britain, and pierced further into the west than Pytheas had done. He saw the more savage life of the interior, and visited the tin districts of Cornwall. He found the tin-workers hospitable, civilised, and expert at their work. The ground is described as rocky, but containing earthy veins, from which the tin was ground down, and smelted, and purified, before being made into knuckle-shaped slabs for transportation. It was carried in waggons, during the ebb of the tide, to a neighbouring island, whither the merchants came

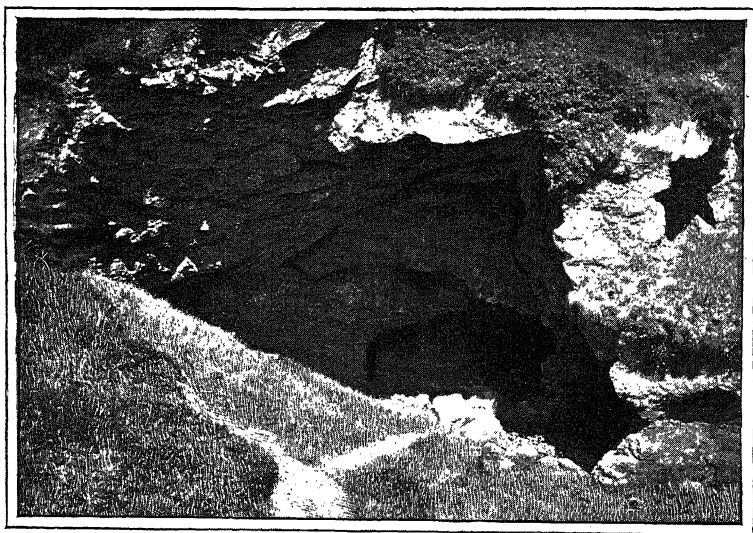


Photo: Gibson, Penzance.

“OLD MEN’S WORKINGS,” BUNNY CLIFFS, ST. JUST, CORNWALL.

to seek it. The tin island has been supposed by different writers to be St. Michael’s Mount, the Isle of Wight, and the isle of Thanet. From it the tin was carried in ships to the coast of Gaul, and thence overland to the Rhone Valley and Marseilles.

TOWNS.

During the three hundred years that elapsed between the visit of Pytheas and the Roman intercourse, the trade and industries of Britain must have developed very rapidly. Pytheas says nothing about towns: in his time, probably, there were only huge hill-fortresses, into which a whole tribe fled for safety in time of invasion. By the time of the Roman Conquest, inhabited towns were taking the place of these hill

or marsh fortifications. The intercourse with Greek and Roman merchants was closer, as the number and character of British coins show. The Britons' first standard of value was cattle, and perhaps bars of iron or small slabs of tin. About the time of Pytheas's visit, or soon after it, they had coins in imitation of Greek coins (p. 132). It is supposed that they began by imitating Gaulish copies of the gold stater of Philip II. of Macedon. Later, they coined silver and bronze. Before the Roman Conquest they had begun to letter their coins, in consequence of the growing intercourse with the Roman conquerors of the mainland. The corrupt Greek models were no longer followed, and British kings described themselves, in imitation of what they saw on Augustus's coins, as "*Tincommios Commi Filius*," or "*Cunobelinos Rex*" (p. 39). Caesar, however, in a passage which has certainly been altered,¹ says that the British money was either brass or oblong pieces of iron of a certain weight.

Before the Romans came, iron as well as tin was found and manufactured in Britain. Caesar says that iron was found on the coast, but only in small quantities. There is no doubt that there were ironworks in the Severn valley before the Romans began to work them or to tax them.

At first British weapons were made of bronze, and probably imported. But, before the coming of the Romans, the bronze axes had been discarded in favour of the new iron swords and spears. These were at first imported from Gaul, but the Britons soon learnt to manufacture them for themselves. The sword-blades were iron, manufactured in the south-west of the island; the sheaths were bronze, and the hilts were beautifully decorated with studs of red coral. The scythe-blades attached to the war chariots of Cassivelaunus were undoubtedly of British manufacture.

Handi-
crafts.

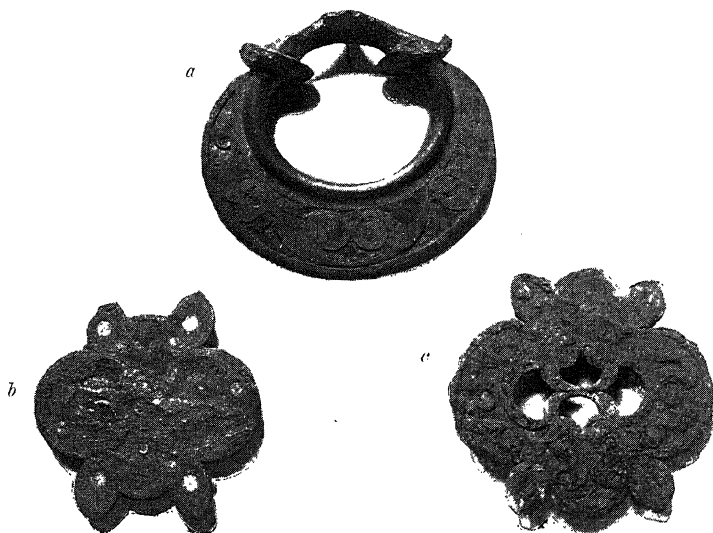
In the earliest Welsh romances—romances full of pagan reminiscences, long anterior to the Arthurian cycle—the western parts of Britain are regarded as the home of skilful handicraft. The fashioning of iron cauldrons, the enamelling of sword-hilts, the colouring of sword-blades, the sharpening of whalebone javelin-points, the dyeing of shields, the plying of crafts bordering on magic, are generally associated with the west. One romance describes the journey of needy kings of

¹ Bell. Gall., v. 12.

Dyfed (roughly Pembrokeshire) into Lloegr (England), plying a craft. They came first as saddlers, and their saddles were so beautifully coloured that none could be sold but theirs. Driven into another place by the jealousy of the saddlers, they tried shoe-making, with the same success, on account of the beauty and excellence of their work. They had also succeeded as manufacturers of shields, which they could work in blue enamel.

Agriculture.

The romances are full of legends concerning the beginnings



BRITISH ENAMELLED ORNAMENTS.

(British Museum.)

of agriculture and stock-farming. Hugh the Mighty is described as bringing the plough into the Isle of Britain, and many a legend is connected with the first sowing of seed. At the dawn of historical times, all animals that have been domesticated at all were in domestic use among the Britons. Probably the last to be domesticated were swine and bees, and concerning the domestication of these we have legends. Swine were first brought into Britain by Gwydion ab Don, and he stole them from a kingdom lying on the border of Hades. Bees, on the other hand, were a gift from Heaven, and a medieval

Welsh poet refers to the legend in his description of snow-flakes—

“Bees from Heaven, so white, are they.”

On the eve of the Roman conquest, Britain was rich in agricultural produce. Whatever invaders had come into the



BRITISH HORNED HELMET AND BRITISH BRONZE BOWL.
(*British Museum.*)

island, Caesar says, had given up war for tillage. The island was densely populated, Caesar thought, the buildings were numerous, and the number of cattle was great. Among the agricultural exports were cattle and hides, and wheat and barley, of which there was abundance in the island. British hounds were highly prized, being used in war by the Gauls and in the chase by the Romans. Slaves were probably

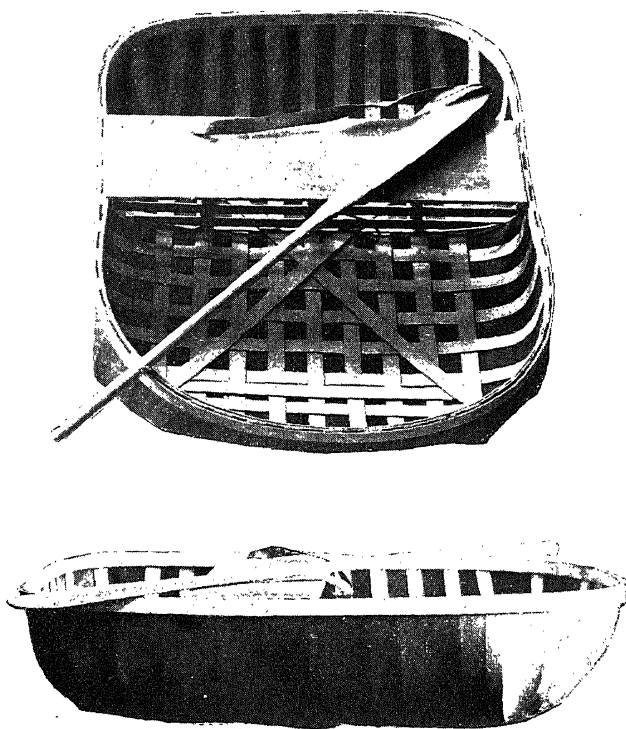
exported, and the slave trade was not condemned until St. Patrick censured the Welsh king of Ceredigion for selling Christian slaves to the pagan English.

In exchange for these exports, the Britons obtained manufactured iron and bronze articles, pottery, salt, and manufactured cloth. It is known, however, that they had, besides iron articles of their own, pottery of native manufacture, and coarse cloths which were gradually coming into use instead of skins. Pliny describes the texture of the cloth from which the Briton's sleeved jacket, trousers, hat, and cloak were made. It was a coarse felt, made of wool pressed and treated with some chemical, and so thick as to be a protection against a sword. The cloth was worked in glaring colours, and the Briton seems to have been excessively vain. His favourite dress was one of striped cloth, containing little squares of all bright colours. The favourite colour seems to have been flaming red. Dyes were obtained from the bark of various trees and from lichen: lichen is still used in Wales as a dye, and it produces a very lovely colour. The gold torques and rings were probably of native manufacture; but the glass beads, with which the Briton so loved to decorate himself, were probably brought by Greek merchants from Egypt. From time immemorial the Britons had beads of amber, jet, and various stones; they wore beaten gold and silver on their coats of various colours; they had pins and brooches made of polished boars' tusks. The smith was in the highest estimation, and the potter, as yet without his wheel, could produce vases and cups of various kinds.

Cæsar says that Britain contained all the trees of Gaul with the exception of the beech and the fir. Tacitus heard that all ordinary produce could be found in Britain, except such as that of the olive and the vine. The vine was introduced by the Romans, and the vineyards of the south-east had not become quite unimportant even in Norman times. In a Welsh poem written in its present form in the thirteenth century, there is a description of a battle between trees. The birch is there, but the fir is still probably a stranger; the pear-tree is newly introduced, and the plum-tree is scarce.

Internal communication was carried on by means of rivers and of ridgeways. On inland rivers the coracle was used—

a small round boat, with a keel of thin planking and sides of basketwork covered with hides. The inhabitants of the south-western parts, especially, were good sailors. The Gaulish tribes of Morbihan summoned them to their aid against Cæsar, who gives us a description of their ships. The ships were adapted



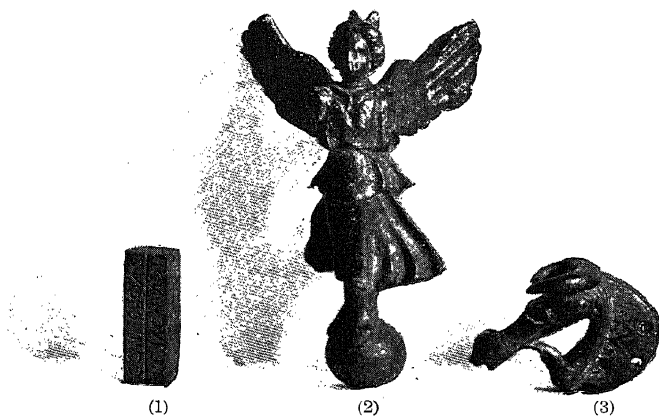
SEVERN CORACLE TO-DAY, SEEN FROM ABOVE AND AT SIDE.

both for coasting purposes and for putting out into the deep sea. Their bottoms were considerably flatter than those of Roman ships, in order to be able to land everywhere and to pass over shallows. Their poops and prows, on the other hand, stood high out of the water, in order to withstand the storms of the open sea. The vessels were strongly built of oak, the cross-benches were fastened by iron spikes, and the anchors were secured by chains of iron, and not by ropes. Their sails were

raw hides—often painted blue in order to escape observation at a distance. Cæsar does not think they used hides because they had no canvas, or were unaccustomed to its use. They probably thought that no canvas sail would be strong enough when such huge vessels were battling against a storm. The ships were too strongly built to be injured by the beaks of the Roman ships, too high to be caught by grappling irons, and excellently fitted for fighting among shallows and rocks. They were manned by intrepid sailors who would dare to put out into what is now the Irish Sea even in open boats. The commercial intercourse between Britain and Gaul explains the coming of the Romans, as the like intercourse between Wales and Ireland in later times explains the conquest of Ireland by the kings of England.

The two important rivers in the history of British commerce are the Thames and the Severn. On the bank of each of these rivers a temple had been erected to Lud, the god of commerce. On a hill on the western side of the Severn, in Gloucestershire, where the river is tidal, the fisherman and the merchantman sacrificed to Lud. The place—Lydney—still bears the god's name, and remains of a Romano-British temple have been discovered. Another temple stood, undoubtedly, on a hill by the Thames, still called Ludgate Hill. It might be mentioned, also, that the Welsh name for London is *Caer Ludd*—"Lud's town." In British legend, Lud was his people's protector and the cause of their prosperity. He has a silver hand; he delivers his people from three scourges; he had twenty-one thousand milch cows; he was famous among the gods for his generosity and for the prosperity he caused. He has a fleet, and occasionally appears as a god of war. King of the Orkneys, with a temple at the mouth of the Severn and of the Thames, his reputation undoubtedly grew with the increase of British commerce, and the Roman merchant came and worshipped at his altars.

When the Romans conquered it, Britain had ceased to be a land of sunshine and pearls. Tacitus knew that the ocean produced pearls, but of a dusky and bluish hue. Nevertheless he thought that the island contained gold and silver and other metals, as the prize of conquest. The Romans did much for British mining, and especially for internal traffic. But tin,



(4)

(5)

REMAINS OF TEMPLE IN LYDNEY PARK, AND ROMAN OBJECTS EXCAVATED THEREFROM.

- (1) Oculist's stamp, cut in slate, for stamping the seal of bottles of eye lotion with the oculist's name; (2) Bronze figure of Victory; (3) Bronze fibula or brooch, forming head and neck of a bull; (4) Dog in bronze; (5) Cock in bronze (a candlestick).

lead, and iron had been worked, perhaps, centuries before they came. The Roman invasion helped the development of British trade and industry, but the development was proceeding steadily before they came. Military conquest followed in the wake of Roman commercial enterprise.

Summing up, we may say that, before the Roman conquest, there was commercial intercourse between all the tribes within the island of Britain, for we find the coins of the south-eastern districts in the valley of the Severn and in the valley of the Clyde. There was also a close commercial intercourse between the western coast and Ireland, and between the whole length of the southern coast and Gaul. The exports were almost entirely raw produce, the imports almost entirely manufactured goods. Still the Briton wove cloth of various colours, manufactured gold ornaments and iron weapons, and was expert in enamelling and in the manufacture of chariots. When the Roman came, he found that the tin mines, the gold mines, and the iron mines were being busily worked. The Roman occupation put an end to the native coinage, but it greatly developed British agriculture and manufactures, and greatly extended British trade. And the sway of Lud's silver hand became wider than ever.

O. M. EDWARDS.
Social Life
and
Manners.

WE get glimpses of the life and manners of the British people—of all those races that had reached our islands before the Roman power became too weak to keep new invaders at bay—in the laws, the romances, and the poems which remained useful or delightful to later times. The Welsh laws, codified centuries after the period we are now describing, are full of suggestions of what the earlier life must have been. The Welsh poems—in which gods appear as heroes—supply us with many a glimpse of the manners of men who lived centuries before those who put their deeds down in writing and tried to explain them. The Welsh medieval romances—the *Mabinogion*—are collections of earlier traditions; they are unskillfully put together very often, because they belong to different stages of a very long course of development of social life. Four of these romances are older than Christianity older even than Arthur—that is, older than the struggle between

the Britons and the Romans. It is from the customs described in these legends, as related in after-time—customs that have often lost their true meaning—it is from these, and not from Tacitus or Gildas, that we can get our best glimpses of the social life of our early ancestors. Many of these customs have lingered on in a shadowy form almost to our own days, even the strangest of them. Carnarthenshire girls still drop pins or leave a rag at wells where once a more serious sacrifice was made; bride-capture was recently mimicked in Ireland and in the North of England, and the modern firing of guns is, in some parts of the country at least, a reminiscence of the old battle for a bride; burning in effigy, now practised under cover of night, recalls a time when the administration of law was in the hands of the whole body of tribesmen.

The chief characteristic of the life of this period is the absence of any sense of social equality. The farther back we go, the less equality there is. The gulf between the free tribesman and the conquered villein was well-nigh impassable, even when centuries had dimmed the memory of conquest and subjection. The power of the head of the tribe over the tribesmen was absolute—their chief concern being that his successor, the representative of the life and unity of the tribe, should be worthy to take his place. The individual tribesman had no rights as such—he was simply a member of his tribe, tied to tribe land, bound up with the general action of his tribe. If he had committed a crime, his tribe defended him, or turned away the wrath of the tribe of the wronged man by compensation. And when none of the tribesmen of Penllyn came to take the place of their lord when the unerring blow of his enemy was to fall upon him, they were execrated by the whole country, and their crime was expressed in the new name given them—"the traitor tribe." If the tribesman even wanted a wife, his tribe would find her for him. When Kulhwch¹ had heard of the beauty of Olwen, the romancer does not send him to the court of Olwen's father—though he had been clothed as no suitor was clothed before—his four-winters-old steed had a bridle of linked gold, and of beaten gold was his saddle; his spear was sharp

Early
Social Life
Tribal.

[¹ Of course, w is a vowel in Welsh—"Kulhookh."]

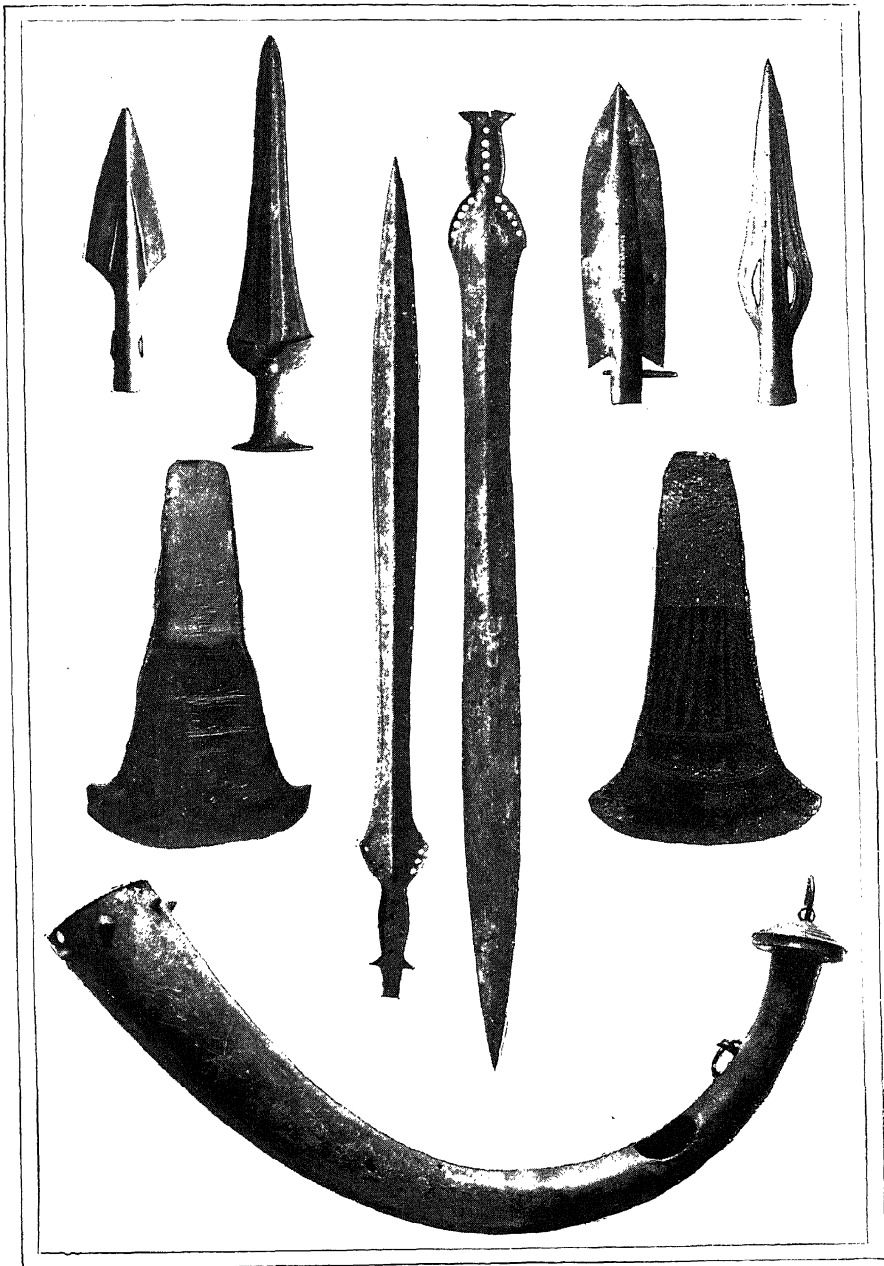
enough to wound the wind, and the blood would fall faster than the first dewdrops from the stalk when the dew of June is at its heaviest; his two white-breasted greyhounds sported like sea-swallows around his horse, "and the blade of grass bent not beneath him, so gentle was the amble of his steed." Though the finery from his knee to his toe alone had cost more than three hundred kine, he was sent, not to Olwen's father, but to Arthur's court, there to prove that he was of Arthur's kin, and to demand that his kin should find a wife for him. And Olwen was won, not by her lover, but by the might of Arthur's family.

Decline of
Tribal
Society.

For defence, for purposes of justice, for the holding of property, the tribal unity was long kept intact. The old life was protected against developments, probably, by religion. It is clear that there was something like ancestor-worship in early British times; though there is, probably, no known case of a tribe existing in order to carry on the traditional sacrificial worship. The mythical ancestor, living in times of savage war and interminable feud, would often be, or bear the name of, an animal. Arise Evans, a native of Barnmouth, who was not more mad than many are, and who insisted upon telling Oliver Cromwell his dreams, ended his pedigree with the words "the son of the Red Lion, the son of the Wren"; and, even nowadays, the very poachers of Pennant Melangell look upon the hare with a certain amount of superstitious reverence. Sometimes the nature-gods and goddesses are made the ancestors of men. "Daylight," for example, is Arthur's aunt. But even the chains of religion could not make the old tribal stage, based on inequality and slavery, permanent. The growth of commerce and the introduction of coins, define the limits of obedience and responsibility; outside these limits, the individual became free. Even before the coming of the Romans, the tribal or family system was changing, and greater inequality—escape from the old unalterable status—was becoming possible.

The King's
Hall.

The king, sometimes living in his court, sometimes on progress among his people, is represented in the legends as the centre of the whole social life of the land. To his court the people repaired for justice and for feasting. Of perfect beauty and of great strength the king must be; a scar on the



WEAPONS AND TRUMPET OF THE BRONZE AGE IN THE BRITISH ISLES.
(*British Museum.*)

face, or the loss of a limb, would be an insuperable objection to succession to the kingship. Lud of the Silver Hand was enabled to recover his kingship after losing his right hand, because a cunning artificer made him a hand of silver. The king was maintained by his people, subjects and kinsmen at the same time; and by the serfs who lived on his men's land and on his own. He was absolute save in one particular. "You have no right," says a legendary king to the kinsmen who wanted him to put away his wife on account of a very heinous sin, "to ask me to separate from my wife, except only for lack of heirs." The kingship was inherent in him—the very birds of Safaddan Lake would know him, and would sing at his command alone.

**The King's
Wealth.**

The king's court contained the treasure of the country. Of the booty obtained in the frequent forays, three things the king was not to share with anyone, according to the custom of Gwynedd—gold and silver, buffalo-horns, and a dress with a gold border. According to the same customs, treason against the king had to be atoned for by the payment of a hundred cows, and a white bull with red ears for each hundred cows, for as many districts as the king ruled over; a rod of gold as long as himself, and as thick as his little finger; and a plate of gold as broad as his face, and as thick as a ploughman's nail. The arrangement of the kingly court, described in the Welsh laws, was undoubtedly more elaborate than that of the courts of early Celtic times. But the "chief of the household," one of the king's officers, probably represents more nearly the old tribal king; and his legal privileges and duties carry us back to a remoter time, when kingship was more patriarchal. His protection enabled any man he liked to reach a place of refuge unmolested; he had the fairest lodging when the king went on progress; he had a third of the fines for offences committed in the king's court, and a certain proportion of the proceeds of suits concerning land; he wore the king's clothes, he used the king's horses, dogs, hawks, and arms; four horseshoes and their nails were given him every year; a present was given him by every man of the king's household when he first rode on horseback; he reconciled men who withdrew from the king's table in anger; he selected men for forays, and could not be disobeyed; he got a double

portion of the spoil, and a third of the king's third; he could command three hornfuls of mead and a song when he liked; his medicaments, also, he got free of charge. In one particular, his privileges give us a glimpse of the times when cattle were the only form of wealth, and when gold was unknown—his "worth" was the same as that of the king, save what was paid in gold.

Judging from the legends, the chief occupations of the king and his court were hunting and feasting, with an occasional foray, and the hearing of complaints. Stag-hunting was the favourite pastime. The first and one of the oldest of the *Mabinogion* describes the meeting of two kings while hunting. "And as the king was listening to the cry of his hounds, he heard the cry of another pack—and the two packs had not the same cry—coming from another direction. And he came to a glade in the midst of the forest, and as his hounds gained the glade, he saw a stag pursued by the other pack, overtaken by it in the midst of the glade, and thrown down. And he looked at the strange pack, without taking thought of looking at the stag. And of all hounds he had ever seen, he had not seen any of the same colour as they. Their colour was a shining pure white, and their ears were red; and as the whiteness of their bodies shone, so did the redness of their ears glisten. And he came towards the dogs, and drove the pack that had killed the stag away, and set his own dogs upon it. And as he was setting them on, he saw a horseman coming towards him on a gigantic grey horse, with a hunting-horn around his neck, and in a hunting-dress of greyish woollen cloth." The plot of the romance depends upon the amends made by the one king for his unsportsman-like act of driving away the hounds of another. Next to stag-hunting, we hear most about boar-hunting. There are two or three descriptions of a wild boar hunt in the *Mabinogion*, including Arthur's famous hunt of the mythical boar that was slain in the Severn after running over sea and land before the whole host of hunters of the isles of Britain. While the stag and the boar were hunted for their flesh, the beaver, the marten, and the ermine were hunted for their skins; according to a Welsh triad, these three beasts belonged to the king, "for out of their skins are made the borders of

**The King's
Hunting.**

the king's garments." By the time the Welsh laws were codified, the chief huntsman's duties and privileges had been thus defined: at stated periods he was to hunt deer and swine, and to divide the skins; he could not be sued unless he could be caught in the morning before he could put his boots on; he need not swear, even, after the conversion to Christianity, except by his horn and leashes; and he could grant protection to all as long as they remained within hearing of his hunting horn.

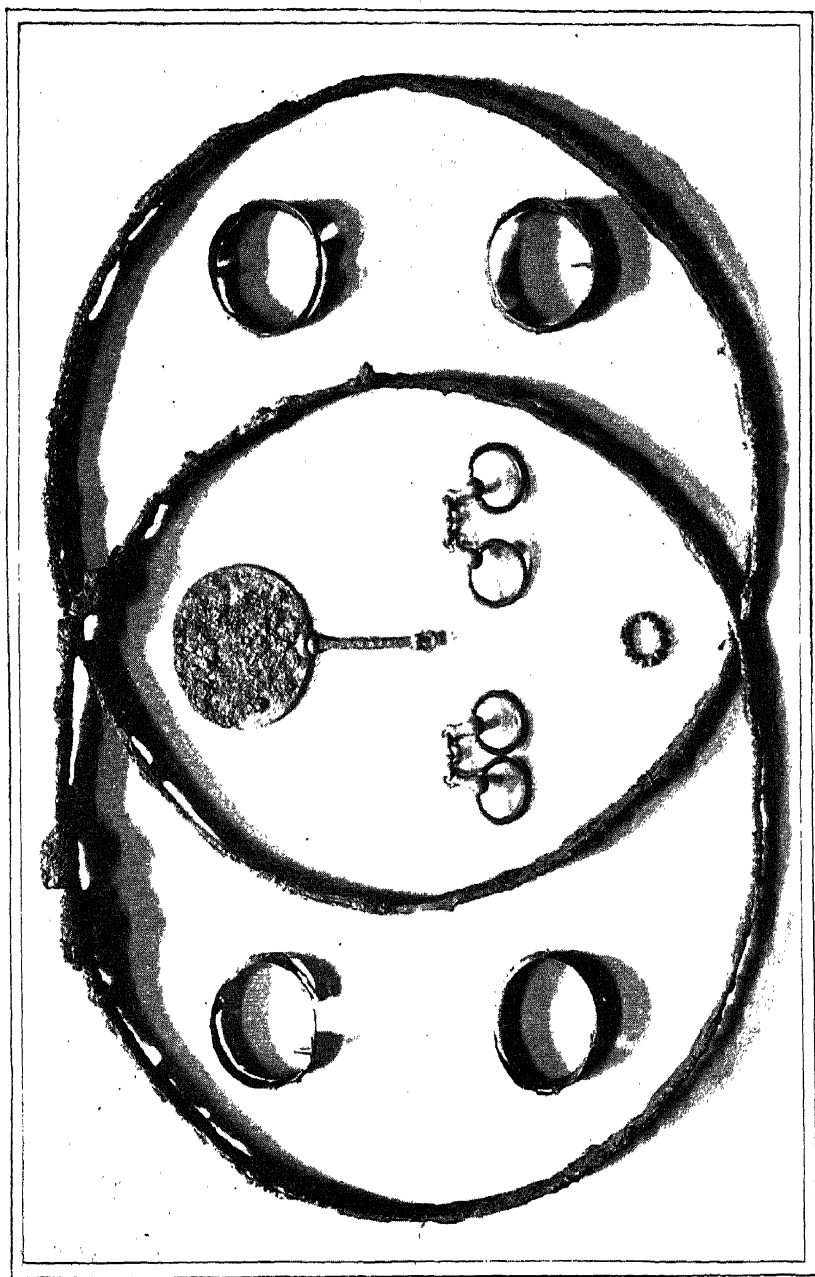
Hawking. In hawking, the queen and ladies of the court joined. The hawk, the falcon, and the raven were trained. Their keenness of sight is the object of much anxiety; the falconer was not allowed to bring them to the hall, lest the smoke should affect their eyes; he had to live with them in the king's barn. In later times the falconer could not be summoned on any plea as long as the hawk was in the mew; and he could grant protection to the furthest place to which he should let fly his hawk at a bird.

**The King's
Feasting.**

We have many descriptions of the king's feasts that carry us to very early times. The hall was made of upright logs and thatch; out of it, on all sides, opened the sleeping apartments; sometimes, undoubtedly, without any curtains or skins to hide them. The mead-cell was conveniently near. We get descriptions of the preliminary ablutions and change of dress; and a king's glory was estimated by the quantity of mead and food which could be handed round to his family and guests. The mead was prepared by his own servants. The meat came from the king's hunt. Fish was brought him by his subjects, for the sea was one of his "pack-horses," or sources of revenue. The villeins brought bread and honey. The bard was present at feast, hunt, and foray. He sang a warlike song when the host was dividing the spoil; he sang at the king's feast in the king's hall, a loud song to the king's praise when the king called for it, and a song in a low voice, to avoid disturbing the conversation in the hall, when the queen demanded it. His rewards are the most ancient known—a cow or a ring.

**The
Tribe's
Wealth.**

The home of the head of a tribe was a king's hall on a more modest scale. The traditional essentials of his hall were his harp, his cloak, and his cauldron. The chief possessions



TIRES AND NAVES OF CHARIOT WHEELS, IRON MIRROR AND HORSES' BITS. FOUND IN A BARROW
AT ARRAS, EAST RIDING OF YORKSHIRE. (*British Museum.*)

of the family were cattle, horses, sheep, and swine. Cattle were the oldest, and value was expressed in kine. Their meat, their milk, and their skins were of value; but no cheese was made, probably, until the Romans came. Oxen were used for ploughing. Horses were used for riding, for pack-carrying, and for the chase only, the saddles being of wood, painted or unpainted. In war they were used in the east and the south for the war-chariots described by Cæsar. The vast forests were the homes of wild swine and the feeding-place of great herds of the domesticated kind. Wild goats were hunted, and herds kept for their skins and milk. Wild cats were probably plentiful, and their extermination was only recently completed; but a tame cat seems to have been rare and valuable. If a cat is killed, the Welsh law says, let her be held up by her tail, and let the corn which will cover her be paid for her. "And he who sells a cat let him be responsible that she be not given to caterwauling every moon, and that she destroy not her kittens, and that she have ears and eyes and teeth and claws sufficient for good mousing." Dogs were greatly prized for hunting and for herding, and were among the first exports of the country. A herd dog was equal in value to the best ox. It was used for keeping the wolf and the fox at bay. When affected with quinsy, it was tended with the greatest care; when mad, the herd of swine it helped to keep was regarded as being almost already lost. Geese and hens were kept, and their cackle is one of the traditional signs that a homestead was inhabited. Bees had been domesticated, and were greatly prized for their honey and for the mead that could be made out of it, and for their wax. Hawks were kept by everybody, from the king to the villain.

Indus-
tries.

Corn was grown abundantly—wheat and oats. It was ground by means of hand querns and in mills. The trees of most ancient renown were the oak, the apple, and the sour crab-tree. The oak, on account of its acorns for swine, was especially valuable. According to the laws of Gwent, a man had to pay a fine to the king for felling an oak; and if the king happened to pass by, he had to cover it with cloth of one colour. Fishing was carried on in the inland rivers, light wicker skin-covered coracles were used, and weirs

were made. According to the laws of Gwynedd, mills and weirs and orchards were "the three chief ornaments" of a family community. Salt was dug, or obtained by evaporation; and it was a commodity of the greatest importance, as the people had to depend for sustenance on salted meat during the greater part of the year. Carpentry, weaving, dyeing of cloth, and working of iron there were as far back as we can go. Smithcraft was held in special esteem; the chief smith occupied a most honourable place in the king's hall; and no villein was to become a smith without the lord's leave.

Bardism was a special profession from the earliest times. **Bardism.** The work of the bard in historical times was to compose odes and to sing them in the presence of the king, or among the freemen, or among the villeins. He did not look for the same reward everywhere—"if he comes to demand a reward from the king, let him sing one song; if he comes to a noble, let him sing three songs; if he comes to a villein, let him sing until he is exhausted." But the great reverence paid to the bard shows that in earlier times his only task was not to inspire on the eve of battle, or to enhance the delights of the feast. He foretold the future, and was without doubt the successor of the soothsayer or magician displaced by Christianity. Two of the earlier traditional bards were remembered long as the incarnations of prophecy and magic—Taliesin and Merlin. In the traditions relating to the former, we get a glimpse of the struggle between the ancient bard, helped by magic, and the bards of Maelgwn,¹ the king who came from the north after the departure of the Romans and forced the western parts of the island to accept Christianity.

Of early medicine and surgery we do not possess many trustworthy details. **Medicine.** It was in Ireland that a silver hand, endowed with motion as if it were living flesh and blood, was made for Lud. It was in Arvon that a bride was fashioned out of the leaves of the oak, the flowers of the broom, and the flowers of the wood anemone. In the later Welsh laws, a doctor follows the army, or resides in the king's court. It is probable that each tribal community had a medicine man of some kind. He is to give medicine free to the family, only getting the blood-stained clothes; except

[¹ Pronounced "Mael-goon."]

in the case of the three dangerous wounds, for dressing which he gets a money payment. He applied red ointment to a wound, and herbs to a swelling, and he let blood. Like the smith, he got his food from the stores of his kindred.

Villeins'
Wealth.

The serf communities—probably conquered races—were becoming united with the free tribes, or had well-defined rights. They had their own land (p. 7), their own method of tilling and dividing it, their own dwellings, their own herds of cattle and swine, and their own swarms of bees. But, at first at any rate, they could do nothing without the consent of their lords. A daughter could not be married; a stallion, or swine, or honey, could not be sold; a son could not practise smithcraft or bardism, without consent.

The breakdown of the tribal or village community system was brought about chiefly by the growth of trade and the introduction of a money economy. Responsibilities—those to which a man was born, or those which he incurred by misfortune or crime—were gradually commuted. Payment of cattle took the place of a hopeless life-long slavery. It is calculated that gold was coined between two hundred and one hundred and fifty years before Christ, and it may have been used earlier as a medium of exchange. However, right up to the decline of the Roman power in the third century after Christ, we get glimpses of that gradual emergence from pure labour and land relations into money relations, from inequality and slavery into equality and freedom, which is the characteristic of the unbroken progress of our social history.

Furniture.

Dwelling-places, from the hall of the king to the hut of the villein, were very scantily furnished. Chests of clothes, horn drinking-vessels, iron cauldrons are spoken of in the legends; foreign writers mention pottery and bronze vessels; combs and scissors are mentioned in romances of great antiquity. There were no candlesticks in the king's hall, for his candle-bearer held his candle beside him, and marched before him when he walked into darkness. The chief ornaments of a king's hall would undoubtedly be the armour and horse trappings—the shields of gold and enamelled blue, the spear with its cunningly decorated shaft, the saddle on which the most exquisite workmanship of the time had been expended.

Three necessities of the villen's hut were his feet trough, his auger, and his back fire-stone. But he also had his bow and arrows hanging up, and his wooden saddle of rough workmanship.

There was as great an inequality in the matter of dress. **Dress.** The king wore a furred mantle, of a rich dark colour, and we hear much about costly rings and golden collars. The free tribesman had a flowing mantle, and wore skin shoes. Tribesman and villen alike wore a bonnet; but the dress of the latter was presumably shorter. Beards were worn, and the hair was usually worn long, in the case of the free men. We can gather from a late law that no man could take his place in the deliberations of his family until his beard had grown. Subjection was marked by cutting the hair. When Kulhwch has proved to Arthur that he is of his kindred, the king takes a golden comb and silver-handled scissors and cuts his flowing locks. A stanza which probably comes down from pre-Roman times is quoted as Arthur's, and it shows that a free man lost his beard only with his life:—

“Behold a leash made by Cai,
From Dillus' beard, son of Eurai,
If Dillus lived, then Cai would die.”

The women also wore their hair long, and it fell over a mantle which half hid a tunic of various colours. Both men and women were fond of ornaments, especially of collars of gold or polished iron or bronze. As far back as we have any evidence, light hair was considered most beautiful.

At first sight, it is exceedingly difficult to reconcile the accounts we have of the position of women. On the one hand, we find great queens—Boadicea (p. 52), queen of the Iceni, and Cartismandua, queen of the Brigantes—apparently ruling over powerful tribes, and even leading them to battle against the Romans. On the other hand, many centuries after the fall of the Roman power, the freeing of women from a condition of abject servitude seems to be but just beginning. In the oldest romances, women sometimes apparently rule over courts of their own, but are more often a mere chattel—handed over without their own consent, like horses or falcons. In the oldest mythology, Arianrod is semi-divine

**Women:
Queens
and
Slaves.**

in power and attributes; in the laws of Howel the Good the owner of a woman can demand her and her children "as he could demand his cattle." Christianity came into Britain at the end of the period we are now trying to get a glimpse of; and the growth of the power of the church over marriage, and the introduction of the practice of making wills, helped to give women a more definite and a higher status. But why were there queens at least two hundred years before the introduction of Christianity?

**Superim-
position
of Classes.**

The inconsistency disappears when we remember that the inhabitants of Britain were made up of various races, differing from each other in state and rate of development, in political power, even in the weights and measures they used—a great variety of local methods of land measurement are still traceable, in spite of centuries of attempts at uniformity. The governing class among the Brigantes was, undoubtedly, the most recent conquering race ruling over subject tribes. The queen of the Brigantes was, among the conquering class, part of her husband's family, and the ruler during her widowhood only perhaps; but to the subject people she was their sovereign by right. Among the subject classes, however, there is no trace of any freedom of action on the part of woman; we are far even from the time when, by law, she had the power of lending her headgear and her sieve as far as her voice could be heard from the top of the dunghill requesting its return.

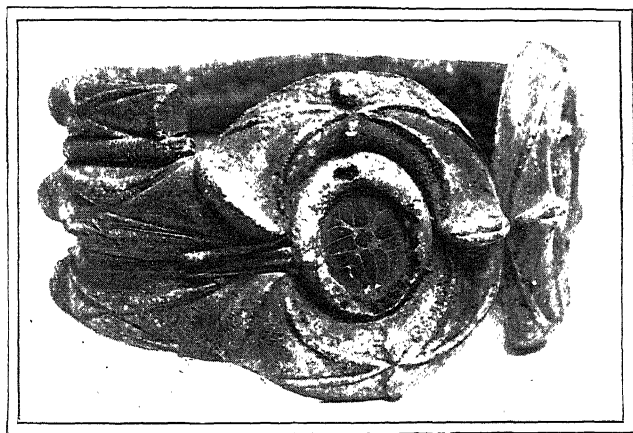
Marriage.

The customs connected with marriage carry us to the very beginning of our social history. Do we find marriage as a recognised institution there? According to one theory, men lived at first in a horde state, and marriage is the crown of a long course of development. Traces of this communal stage, it is asserted, are found in the laws and customs of every race; and the rise of marriage is detected in the prevalence of obtaining a bride by capture. The captured woman would be the object of the care of her captor exclusively, and gradually his married wife. According to the other theory, marriage is the earliest institution in social history; and the tendency of later times is towards laxity rather than towards greater strictness of the marriage tie. But when our social history begins, we must take for granted that marriage was recognised though, so far, religious rites had nothing to

do with it. Without sexual jealousy, without the passion which "caused the wrath of Achilles and the agony of Othello," man would be unintelligible to us. Social history, the study of human beings we can understand, begins with marriage. What there was beyond, if there was anything beyond, does not concern us.

There are a few curious customs which are taken by some as proofs that our ancestors had emerged from a horde state. Bede says that his Pictish neighbours chose a king "from the female royal race rather than from the male ;

Traces
of the
"Horde."



BRITISH BRONZE ARMLET.
(British Museum.)

which custom, as is well known, has been observed among the Picts to this day." This is taken to mean that in the Pictish royal family descent through the mother alone was recognised, and that relationship between son and father was not. The tribe marks, often the figure of an animal regarded as the ancestor of the tribe, are taken as proofs that at one time tattooing was the only method of proving kin. Among the serfs in the west of the island, kin was not taken into account in the periodical division of land. Cæsar says explicitly that communal marriages existed—a set of brothers, for example, having wives in common, but having separate possession of the children.

**Marriage
by Cap-
ture.**

Cæsar probably misunderstood the life of the people he saw living in families of many generations in the same tribal house. The other vestiges mentioned, and many more that might be added to them, are capable of various explanations. Marriage by capture may or may not be the transition from a communal to a marriage state; of its existence in our early social history there can be no doubt. It is not often that an early romance has a love-plot; a fight, especially in carrying out a family feud, was a far more attractive subject; but one of the Mabinogion—full from beginning to end of ancient customs relating to marriage—has the difficulties connected with a love-suit of those days as the materials for its plot. A king bethought him that he wanted a wife, and he asked the advice of his great men. And one of the great men said: "I know of a wife that would suit thee excellently, the wife of king Doged." And they advised the king to go and fetch her. And they killed King Doged, and brought his wife away with them. The wife so obtained told her stepson Kulhwch of the wonderful beauty of Olwen. Kulhwch went to his family, and asked them to win Olwen for him. A mighty host was sent to seek her father's stronghold, and to bring Olwen back. No man who had entered the stronghold on that quest before ever came back. Finally, after many adventures, in which Kulhwch himself does not take the chief part, the stronghold is stormed, the chieftain is shaven by force, and then killed. Then Olwen becomes Kulhwch's bride. The narrator of the legend did not understand that his story came from a time when a wife was the spoil of war, and so he explains the difficulty by saying that Olwen had promised not to marry without her father's leave—"for his life lasts only while I am not given to a husband." In this tale, however, there are the signs of a later development—something like connivance on the part of the bride, and peace-offerings demanded by her father. The death of the father and the granting of peace-offerings—the old and the new manners—are made consistent by showing that he tried to demand conditions impossible of fulfilment. The empty form of capture lingered on in marriages, in various parts of the country, into the middle of the present century; the peace-offerings are still made in the form of wedding presents. The presents demanded

by Olwen's father were—wheat and honey for the bridal bread and mead, oxen, flax for the bride's white head-dress, drinking vessels and horns, a harp that played of itself, a cauldron, a comb and scissiors, and a great number of others which take us far back to the land of magic.

Death, in some forms, was personified. There are accounts of various modes of burial belonging, probably, to different races. The cromlech may have been a grave, built on the plan of a cave-dwelling—a house for the dead. There are legends which confirm Caesar's description of the Gaulish cremation of dead lords, favourite effects, and living slaves: the same race, probably, burnt human sacrifices, and burnt the dead in a bonfire after a battle. Again, as we draw nearer the coming of the Romans, entombment became the universal custom, always accompanied, undoubtedly, by sacrificial rites performed by the family of the dead.

Burial.

ON Britain, as upon the other neighbours of the great Empire, Roman influence began to tell even before Roman arms. It crossed frontiers in a thousand forms. Now a slave escaping from his master, aware that within the Empire there was no safety for him, fled to the barbarians, taking with him some sparks of the civilisation which he had renounced. Sometimes Roman merchants pushed over the border and risked their goods and even their lives in the pursuit of new markets. Traffic went to and fro across the boundary. Some-

times bold foreigners passed within the dominion of the emperors, on business or for mere curiosity, and came home dissatisfied with the simple ways in which they had grown up. Contending parties among the barbarians looked for Roman



Photo: Annan & Son, Glasgow.

BRONZE JUG.

(Hunterian Museum, Glasgow.)

**F. T. RICH-
ARDS.**
Roman
Britain.
A.D. 43-410.

support, courted it by assuming Roman ways, and invited Roman interference. Even Cæsar found that part of the island which lay nearest to the Continent the most polished; and in all the above ways the Roman civilisation, as it spread in Gaul, must have begun to influence Britain from the moment when Cæsar retired from its shore. It is probable that South Britain made no inconsiderable strides in development during the interval between the second landing of Cæsar (54 B.C.) and the conquests of Claudius's generals (beginning 43 A.D.). The Britons of Tacitus are no longer the downright savages of Cæsar's narrative. London, of which the latter makes no mention, is, in the year 61 A.D., a town "crowded with merchants." Coins were struck by British chiefs, bearing Latin legends. Even diplomatic intercourse and some exchange, perhaps, of friendly services had taken place with the Roman government. The chiefs set up offerings in the great temple of the Capitol. The broken marbles of Angora, which still bear fragments of the record made by the Emperor Augustus of his own reign, tell how Dumnobellaunus and another British prince fled to him for help. Some years later, when a Roman fleet was shattered by a storm in the North Sea, the petty chiefs of our island sent home those soldiers or sailors who were cast away on the British coasts. We may suspect that they all wished to stand well with their great neighbour, that they aspired to be honoured, while they kept their independence, with the ivory staff, and the embroidered robe, and the titles of King and Friend of Rome; and that each hoped that, if subjection must come, he might be the prince through whom the Romans would control his country.

**The
Conquest.**

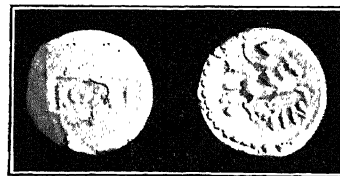
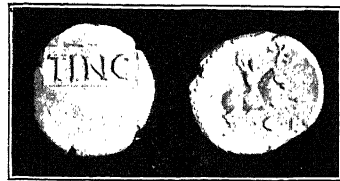
Subjection did come, before many years were passed, and at least one king kept his place under Roman sovereignty. Tiberius Claudius Cogidubnus seems to have united a royal title with the position of a Roman official, and, receiving some districts from the conquerors, he governed for a time the neighbourhood of Chichester (Regnum). But the new government by no means intended to exercise sway through native princes. Its control was direct, and the conquered people had to look up to a Roman magistrate, not to a ruler of their own blood. Peace and security were aimed at by uniform subjection, and, very probably, by disarming the people. But yet the

"fierce Britons" never seem to have wanted arms, and, if Rome could control the island with a small force of perhaps thirty to forty thousand men, it was chiefly because she was civilising—or, as some people would have said, corrupting—the nearest parts, while, of the land generally, it was true that feuds set the natives one against another, and made the task of the foreigners easy. "Nothing," says a philosophic Roman observer, "helps us better against the strongest of the tribes than the fact that they never agree."



COIN OF DUMNOBELLAUNUS.
(British Museum.)

The whole of the island, however, was never brought under Roman sway. The northern limit of Roman government fluctuated, advancing or receding according to the fortune of war or the spirit of an emperor. But Graham's Dyke, or Grime's Dyke, a line of earthworks running between Carriden on the Forth and Dumbarton on the Clyde, indicates the furthest limits which that government ever really undertook to maintain, and the so-called Picts' Wall, or Roman Wall (crossing the neck of land between Carlisle and Newcastle), a stronger work by far, represents the more modest boundary which she was really able to make good (p. 88, *seqq.*). Ireland was never occupied at all. Within these limits, the famous Roman Peace was supposed to reign supreme. It was upheld by the system of provincial government.



COINS OF TINCOMMIVS. Circ. B.C. 10.
(British Museum.)

Britain was governed as one province from the time of the conquest down to the year 197 A.D. It was not, that is to say, divided for purposes of administration into distinct territories, as Gaul was divided into four, and Spain into three provinces, but knew only one governor. It belonged to the list of provinces

**Provincial
Divisions.**

administered by the emperor's deputies, not by officers of the Senate of Rome, and therefore the full title of the governor was "Legatus Augusti pro prætore." He was understood to have charge of the ordinary administrative business of law, and of the military forces; and by his side stood a procurator, charged with financial affairs. The governor was by no means necessarily a mere soldier, rough and illiterate. The recorded careers of many men who rose to provincial governorships show that they saw service of many kinds, and in many lands; and one governor of Britain¹ received a Greek education at Massilia (the later Marseilles), and took keenly to the study of philosophy. When he received the charge of our island, he interested himself in the elevation and improvement of the natives.²

After 197 we find Britain divided by the Emperor L. Septimius Severus, at least for a while, into two provinces. Speaking roughly, the southern half of England (not of the whole island) was Britannia Superior, and the northern was Britannia Inferior. The interests of the State suffered. War could not be so well carried on against the Northern tribes. But it was probably thought unsafe to leave the whole island and the whole force in the hands of one man. D. Clodius Albinus, governor of the united Britain, had been a formidable adversary to Severus; and that emperor, after defeating Clodius, was minded to run no such risk again. But before long there was introduced the policy of breaking up into small and safe—but helpless—units the great provinces which the founders of the Empire had organised, and Britain shared the fate of the other countries (p. 101). We find it under the arrangements of Diocletian, or not long after, divided into four districts or provinces—Britannia Prima, Secunda, Maxima Cæsariensis, and Flavia Cæsariensis. Somewhat later still, A.D. 369, the successes of Theodosius against the troublesome land-neighbours of Roman Britain justified his adding one more, Valentia, in honour of his imperial

¹ Gnaeus Julius Agricola, whose life was written by his son-in-law, Tacitus, the famous Roman historian.

² But, we are told, the Britons in the early part of the period in question complained, "We have now two kings on our shoulders instead of one, a legatus and a procurator; the former sweeps off our young men into the army, the latter sweeps off our goods."—Tac. Agr. c. 15.

master Valentinian I.¹ But it was already found that sub-division of provinces had its drawbacks, and so the four or five civil governors of the island (of whom some were called *Præsides*, others *Consulares*) were placed under a common superior, a *Vicarius Britanniarum*, who was himself answerable to a great officer on the other side of the British Channel, the *Præfectus prætorio Galliarum*.² Finance-officers there were of course also; and, toward the close of our period, when enemies were closing in from all sides upon the Roman world, and Britain had to face something more than its share of them, there were three high military commanders, independent of all the authorities in Britain, but subject to the Gallic *præfectus*. These were the *Dux Britanniarum*, the *Comes Britanniarum*, and the *Comes Litoris Saxonici*³—a soldier in charge of the whole south-eastern coast.

Within the area above described, however, order and all that was essential to good government were secured—at least, during the long interval between the close of the conquest and the coming of the bad days. There were risings among the people, of course, at times, and we must suppose that the walled towns, such as Silchester in South Britain, where no open warfare was to be feared, were meant as places of refuge for such a crisis—unless, indeed, we hold that these fortifications only date from the days when the Roman Peace had broken up. But order was maintained as a rule, and, when taxes were once paid, the people were left pretty well alone. The government which we have described was all foreign, external to the people—giving them certain undoubted benefits, such as the English give to India, but making little attempt, as the English do, to elevate the subjects to the power of self-government. There may have been a sort of national council allowed, or even convoked, by the Romans.

The
Roman
Govern-
ment.

¹ In what towns the governors of these provinces had their official residences we cannot tell; but London is likely to have been the residence of one, and York seems certainly to have been the headquarters of another.

² ["The Gauls" formed one of the four divisions of the Empire constituted by Diocletian in 292, each having its own chief with his household troops under a commander called *Præfectus prætorio*. *Vicarius* = deputy.]

³ Duke of the Britains, Count of the Britains, and Count of the Saxon Shore. This latter included all the district which in modern times has been protected by martello towers.

If so, it was at Camulodunum or Colonia Victricensis (Colchester), in connection with the temple where the Emperor Claudius, the first conqueror, was honoured. But we know nothing of such a council, and only think it likely from the analogy of other provinces. We find no Britons rising in the Roman service, except in the army—and not very high there. Nor do we know how far local self-government was allowed to the towns. We can only make a conjectural picture of certain townships managing their own affairs if we take the two or three titles of local officials found here in inscriptions of the Roman period and add to them a great many particulars known of Gallic or other Continental towns, but not known to be true of Britain. Town councils there were, miniature senates, for we have inscriptions on stone referring to town councillors of Gloucester, York, and probably Lincoln; but to know more about the administration of a town in a Roman province we should have to cross the Channel.

**Roman
Towns.**

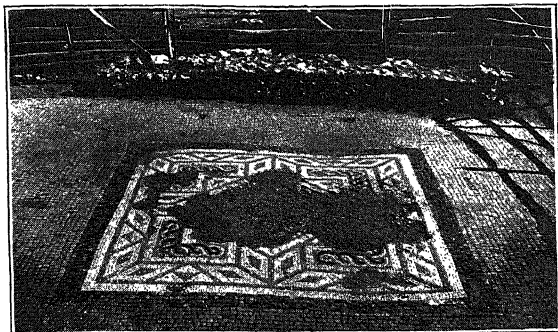
With the help of what we find there we may imagine the towns of our island controlled by a governing class, or senate, of well-to-do men (*curiales* or *decuriones*), originally filled up from ex-officials of the town; but later, sitting for life, and transferring the qualification from father to son. When this state of things had come in, the officials were elected by the senate out of its own members, no longer chosen by the people. These magistrates might bear various titles: that of *Duumvir*¹ occurs most often elsewhere. A council filled up as just described was, of course, quite out of touch with the people. It must be kept up, and could not be abolished, because there was no other class of persons whom the government could use, and from whom it could raise taxes directly, but it ceased to represent the citizens of the town. In consequence, a new officer was called into being by the Emperor Valentinian I., a *Defensor Civitatis*² in each town—a champion of the people against the town council. But this was only done in 364, about forty years before the Romans abandoned Britain. A *Sevir* from York is mentioned

[¹ "One of two," implying that, like the Roman consul, he had a co-equal colleague.]

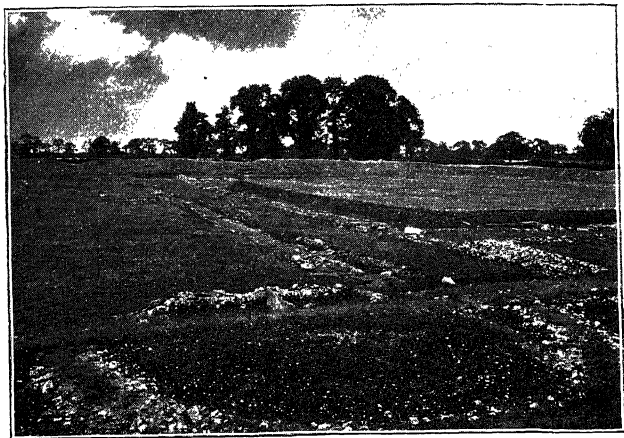
[² Defender of the State.]



Bronze Eagle from Standard.



Pavement in Dwelling House.



Site of Forum, showing circular end of Basilica.



Sacrificial Knife.



Venus.



Oystershell Layer.

Photos: S. Victor White & Co., Reading.

ROMAN ANTIQUITIES, SILCHESTER, HAMPSHIRE.

in one of the inscriptions which have come down to us; and therefore, arguing from the analogy of Continental provinces, we may suppose that one or more British towns contained corporations (*collegia*) of *Augustales*—*i.e.* worshippers of the deified Emperor Augustus. Of such corporations the *Seviri*¹ were the officiating members, serving for a year. But still the worship of Augustus can hardly be supposed to have flourished in Britain as much as in Gaul, seeing that the former country was not conquered till after Augustus's death.

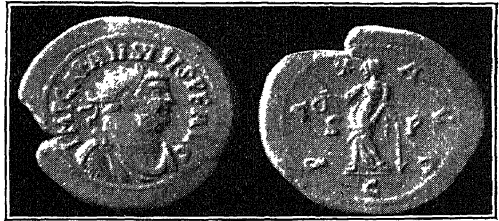
Differences of size and importance were, of course, recognised in speaking of the groups of houses, as we distinguish between a hamlet, a town, and a city. Townships of any size were called *oppida* (as London, then *Londinium*, or *Augusta*). More important, perhaps, were *municipia*, a title which had long since ceased to imply the considerable powers of self-government which the word once suggested to a Roman ear. Such was *Verulamium* (the later St. Albans). The name of "colony" might indicate a real settlement of strangers, as at *Camulodūnum*, where the Romans planted at the very outset a garrison of old soldiers; but it might also be merely an honourable title for a town of importance, as *Eboracūm* (afterwards York), which presently became the chief town of the island, *Lindum* (Lincoln), or *Glevum* (Gloucester). A tombstone of a citizen of *Glevum* found at Rome makes it probable that *Glevum* was made a colony by Nerva—*i.e.* between 96 and 98 A.D. Colonies in the latter sense might, in other parts of the Roman Empire, enjoy more self-government and lighter financial burdens, and they doubtless had the same privileges in Britain. Some of the Britanno-Roman towns appear to have had mints, distinguished by initials placed on the coins struck; but the coinage was not theirs, not local, but always imperial. The most important of the towns must, in the long run, have been York, the administrative centre and imperial residence, and London, the place to or from which many routes are marked in an ancient itinerary or road-book of the third or fourth century.

Besides the towns which we have already mentioned, several others rose to importance. It is true that we hear little of them in books, but the remains found on the sites show us, on

[¹ Literally, a body of six.]

the best of evidence, what places were centres of population and of luxury. Bath (*Aquæ Sulis*) was frequented in Roman days—and probably even earlier—for the sake of the waters. The baths attracted visitors whose number and wealth must be measured by the greatness of the preparations made to receive them. The still existing masonry and lead-work show how large and costly was the actual bathing institution. Wroxeter (*Viroconium* or *Uriconium*) has been called the British Pompeii, from the richness of its remains. In or near several of our old towns, as at the Dorsetshire *Dorchester* (*Durnovaria*), the ground is full of Roman interments.

But there were also towns which, though they may have existed in some sense earlier than the Roman conquest, owed their greatness, if not their very existence, to the Roman garrisons which held them. Population naturally gathers to any place where there is a strong and permanent military force. The various wants of the men must be provided for. The officers build themselves cottages in the neighbourhood, and bring servants. Civil officials prefer to reside in spots where they can get society; and, in some cases, the court of the Roman governor would keep the place full of petitioners and litigants. The poor quarter which inevitably grew up outside a great Roman camp was called *Canabæ* ("The huts") in certain parts of the continent of Europe, and though the name has not yet been found in Britain, the thing itself no doubt existed. Thus, even when the legions and auxiliary forces (*i.e.* non-Roman troops) were withdrawn from these centres they still had a population left, and *Caerleon-upon-Usk* and *York* have probably never ceased to be inhabited since they were Roman stations. At *Caerleon* (*Isca Silurum*)¹ was long posted the Second Legion (*Legio Secunda Augusta*), a body of, say, 5,000 men, bringing with it various



BRONZE COIN OF CARAUSIUS, STRUCK
AT CAMULODUNUM.
(*British Museum.*)

¹ The modern name, *Caerleon*, is no doubt derived from *Castra legionis*.

minor bodies of foreign soldiery. At Chester (Deva) stood the Twentieth Legion, which bore the proud title of *Legio Vicesima Valeria Victrix*. At York (Eboracum) the long presence of the Ninth and afterwards of the Sixth Legion (*Legio Nona Hispana* and *Legio Sexta Victrix*) has left many records cut on stones or stamped on tiles. In these towns, then, were the headquarters, the depôts, the reserves, of the legions which had to keep order in Britain and guard her growing civilisation



Photo: R. J. Bayliff, Shrewsbury.

VIROCONIUM, WROXETER, NEAR SHREWSBURY

against the savages beyond the frontier or across the sea. But, of course, the legions could be moved on occasion. They built the two walls across Northumberland and Cumberland and across Scotland, and when the Welsh of the mountains (against whom the camps in Caerleon and Chester were originally set up) became less a source of danger than the Picts, the men must often have been marched north. But the soldiers who were regularly in garrison on the Northumbrian wall, and who have very literally left their mark in the neighbourhood, were rather auxiliary forces of lower rank than legionaries or troops of the line. Whether Carlisle (*Luguvallium*) and Newcastle (*Pons Ælius*), near the two ends of the Wall, owe their rise to resident Roman forces, we cannot tell. In the south and east of Britain it is likely enough that

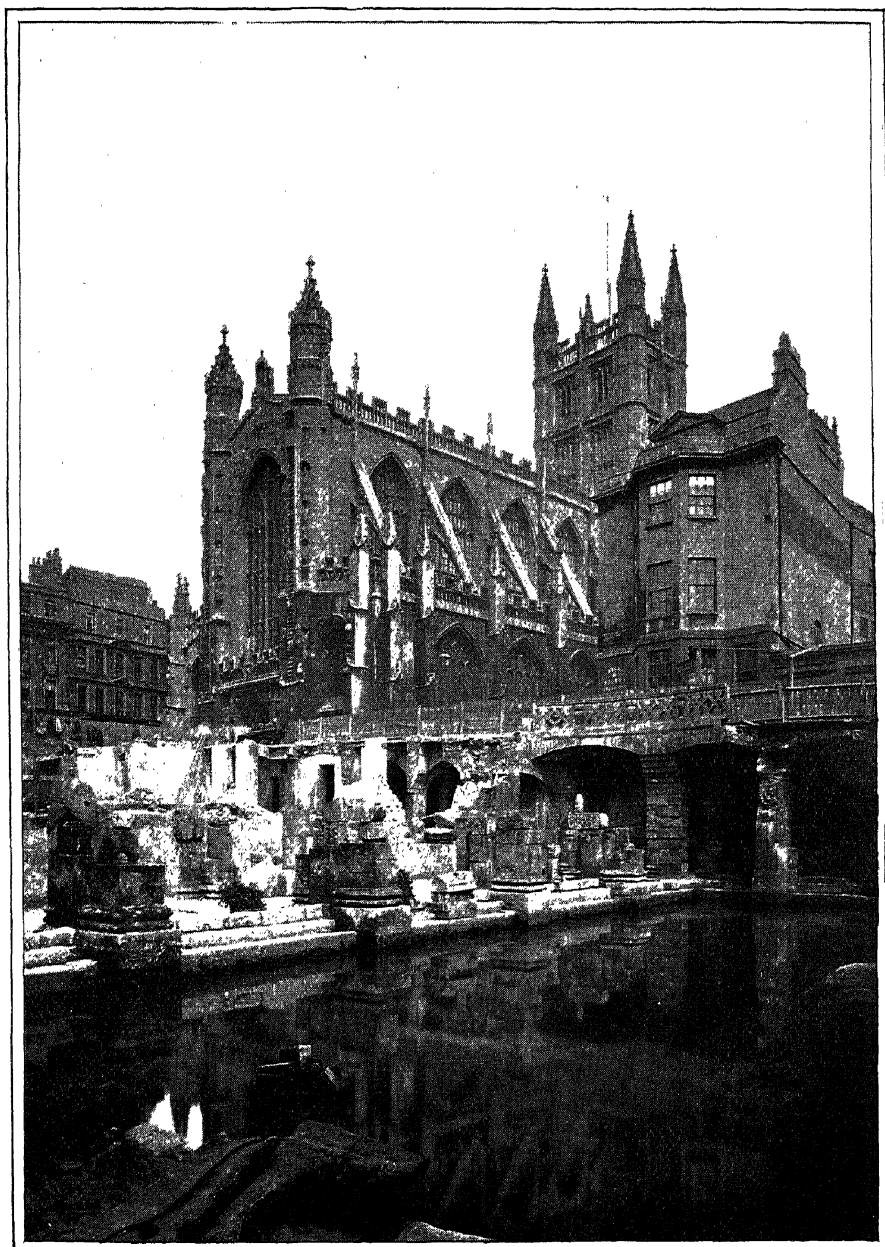


Photo: Hudson.

THE OLD ROMAN BATH AT BATH BEFORE RESTORATION.

the sites of many coast fortifications were never occupied by man until the Romans saw their strategical importance. To take two examples: Reculver (Regulbium) and Richborough (Rutupie) would hardly be worth occupying till there was a regular and considerable arrival of ships from the Continent at the mouths of the strait which then separated the Isle of Thanet from Kent, and which was very probably the ordinary approach to the Thames and London from the south. When such traffic was established it was worth while to guard the two entrances; but Richborough at least has lost its population and is now totally deserted. The withdrawal of the sea would be enough to ruin it, even if no great blow fell on it in war. Reculver has suffered, at a still later time, something very near to total destruction from the encroachment of the sea.

Advantages of
Roman
Rule.

When we look back on what the Britons were when Caesar invaded and described them, and compare his picture of their miserable state with what we can learn of Roman Britain between, say 100-300, we cannot hesitate to affirm that the conquest was for a long while a good thing for the various races which inhabited our island. Taught to keep the peace toward each other, the quarrelsome tribes were obliged to refer their disputes to a law-court instead of to the issue of battle. Thus internal peace was secured for many generations, and, as to external peace, Britain was at all events organised and helped in the task of securing that too by the greatest military power of the world. The generations during which the wars of conquest were going on must have suffered almost beyond our power of imagination. The Roman laws of war were stern indeed. But, once the struggle over, new generations grew up with chances of safe life, of comfort, of civilisation, and of careers such as their ancestors could never have dreamed of. The law administered was just and, on the whole, humane. Some of the punishments which it inflicted were such as modern humanity shudders at. We could not bear that any criminals should be thrown to wild beasts or burnt alive. But the Roman system protected the innocent against these or any other dangers; the Roman law of evidence was strict. No one could be condemned without a fair trial or on insufficient proof; no one could be tortured or put to death at the whim of a chief or in the name of religion.

Even before the year 79 a Roman official could write that "It is impossible to over-estimate the good service which the Romans have done in putting an end to human sacrifices." Nor did the benefits which Rome conferred on her province end here. She gave it roads, marked out with milestones, and fit, not only for the march of troops or for pack-horse

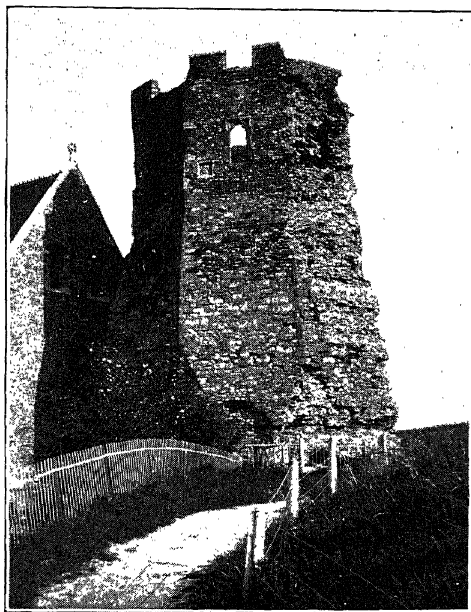


Photo: Chester Vaughan, Acton, W.

ROMAN LIGHTHOUSE, DOVER CASTLE.

traffic, but for driving too; and she thereby threw the whole country open to trade and intercourse. Such roads as the Romans made could not be kept up by their successors, and our island saw nothing more like them for many a century. The remains of the ruined lighthouse within Dover Castle still point to the Roman care for the interests of navigation. The introduction of theatres gave at once a civilised amusement and a means of education.¹ The varied collections in our

¹ Wild and mysterious cries heard in the theatre at Colchester (Camulodunum) were among the signs which presaged the destruction of that city in the bloody rising of the natives in A.D. 61.—Tac., Ann., xiv, 32.

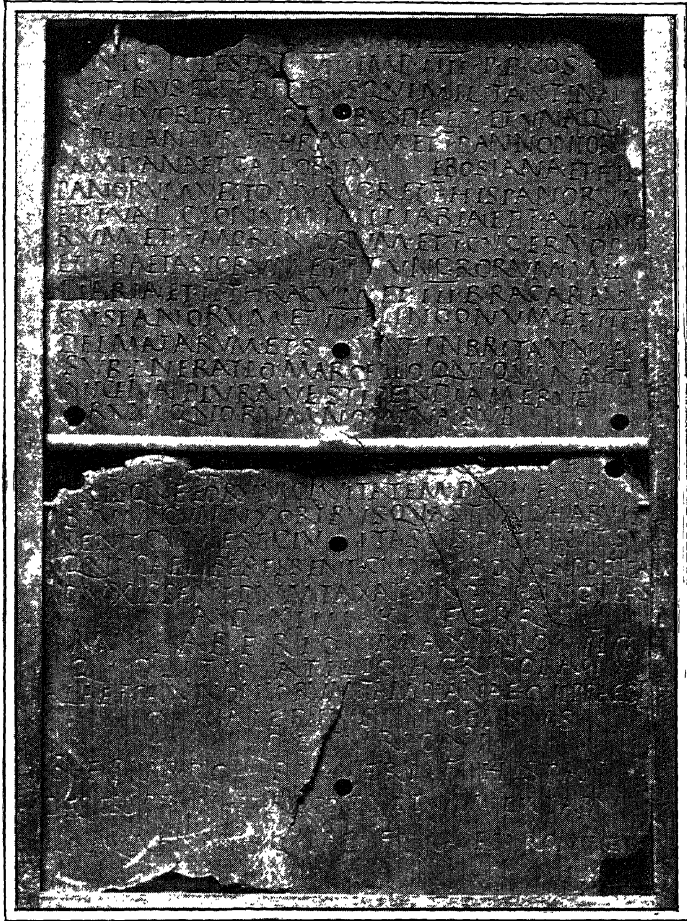
museums show how far some, at least, of the population had progressed in the direction of polish and external civilisation. Keys and steelyards, roofing tiles and hair-pins, glass bottles and spoons, statues and bells, represent wants and comforts strange to the "savage and shivering Britons," dressed in skins, whom earlier writers knew. The young men of the province who joined the army, whether voluntarily or by compulsion, might be rewarded after perhaps twenty-five years of service with a grant of Roman citizenship for themselves and their wives, and their children would then enjoy full Roman rights.¹ Decrees of the emperor granting this favour to the bodies of men who became eligible for it were registered at Rome, and copies of the decree were sent to the place where the men were stationed, and perhaps given to them individually. Four or five such copies have been found in Britain, and though they only refer to companies of non-British troops, raised in other provinces and serving in our island, it is reasonable to suppose that British companies serving abroad were rewarded in the same way. Individuals who seem to have been of British extraction certainly received the citizenship. Thus Tacitus tells us how one Sulpicius Florus, "of the British forces, lately admitted to citizenship by Galba," was in Rome in 69, and distinguished himself when Galba fell, by murdering that emperor's adopted son Piso in the street. In any case, the Britons shared in the advantage of the Emperor Caracalla's gift of Roman citizenship to all free-born provincials, in 212. Henceforth, any position in the Empire was as much open to a Briton as to anyone else.

Taxation.

But it would be absurd to expect the Britons to be aware of all that they were really gaining by their connection with Rome; and there were things to be put in the other scale of the balance—things which hindered the permanent pacification and Romanising of the province. It was not only that the passion for a wild liberty remained strong in many breasts, and that in certain parts of the island it was never overpowered. There was, too, the pressure of taxation, and there was the sense of various grievances which could hope for no redress. At no

¹ Among these rights was, as the well-known case of St. Paul shows, immunity from scourging.

time was the system of Roman taxation arranged very intelligently, or with great regard to the interests of the taxpayer, and, as the Empire grew older, its incessant struggle to make



DIPLOMA OF ROMAN CITIZENSHIP.
(*British Museum.*)

both ends meet brought with it great misery to the taxpayers, even when the payers were full citizens, which the mass of residents in Britain were not till after 212. The ordinary taxes of a province fell, of course, upon this island. *Tributum*,

or property-tax, found out all whom it was worth while for a tax-gatherer to visit, while, as the island happened to be a corn-growing country, there was an extra burden to be borne in the form of *annona*, a fixed supply of corn which must be handed over to Roman officials, and which was applied chiefly to provisioning the army in Britain or on the Continent. Admission to the Roman franchise brought with it liability to the further burden of a legacy duty of 5 per cent.¹ Revenue was raised, too, by import duties,² levied on imported goods at the harbours where they were landed. To them reference is probably made in a Latin speech, whose author lauds Britain as "a land wealthy from its heavy crops, its rich pastures, its veins of metal, its revenues, and *its many harbours*." There is a story told, too, of the rich philosopher Seneca, that some of his immense wealth was lent to the British "against their will," and that his calling the debt in was among the causes or occasions of the rebellion of Boadicea. This is all we hear about it, but, if we may judge from what happened in some other provinces, Seneca had lent the townships of Britain money at high interest to meet the immediate demands of tax-collectors. As the times grew worse, the weight of taxes rested more and more heavily on the well-to-do members of the town-councils, and, if in various parts of the Continent these sank under their burden utterly ruined, it is not likely that the British councillors were much better off.

Yet of taxation as a regular charge the British were patient enough. "Taxes and other burdens," says a contemporary observer, "they bear cheerfully if they are spared actual outrage." It may be believed, though we can hardly say that we know it for certain, that outrageous treatment was rare or accidental. The foundation of the colony of Colchester led to hardship. The original dwellers on the spot lost their land, and the old soldiers embittered the quarrel by taunting the ejected possessors as prisoners and slaves. But such plantations were certainly few, and probably confined to early days. The abominable usage of Boadicea³ and her daughters is not to be forgotten:—

¹ *Vicesima hereditatum et legatorum.*

² *Portoria.*

³ The correct Celtic spelling is *Boudicca*.

“ Me they seized and me they tortured, me they lashed and humiliated,
Me the sport of ribald veterans, mine of ruffian violators ” ;

and some of the dealings of the government—or at least of its officials—in the matter of the corn-supply bore a stamp of wanton insolence which made them hard to bear for a high-spirited people, who were, as one of the conquerors said, “ reduced to obedience, but not yet to slavery.” That the Britons, who had corn to pay and actually had none in hand, should be compelled to buy it, and buy it at a fancy price, of the officials in order to pay it back immediately to those officials, was an arrangement so clumsy and withal so irritating that we are not surprised to find Agricola doing away with the system. But his reform came early in the history of Roman Britain, and the story of Boadicea, earlier still, belongs to the period of the invasion and to the lawless deeds of conquest. Time brought law, for conquerors as well as for conquered.

But there were still some permanent grievances, worse than taxation. “ We pay,” a Briton is made to cry in a narrative of the conquest¹—“ we pay a yearly tribute of our bodies.” Every year the conscription carried off a fixed number of the young men to serve in the *auxilia* or “ native regiments,” and, as these were employed abroad, no British soldier could be sure of seeing his home and his friends again. The terror of being thus banished, “ mixed with other nations and dragged to the ends of the earth,” would weigh with both the men and their parents; and the native chiefs, while there were any, must have reflected with disgust how they were strengthening the Roman forces with all their strongest men. The fleet, too, which guarded the coast and kept up communications with the rest of Europe, may have been partly manned in the same way. This fleet was probably created by the Emperor Claudius at the time of his conquest. It was employed by the Governor Agricola to circumnavigate the island, but seems to have been given up before the fall of the Roman dominion; perhaps united with a Continental squadron, it lost its name. It had stations at Dubrae (the later Dover), Portus Lemanis (Lymne), and Gesoriacum or Bononia (Boulogne). There is a tablet with figures of ships preserved in the museum at Boulogne which

British
Griev-
ances.

¹ Tac., Agr., 19.

is apparently an *ex-voto* from the crew of a ship of this fleet, the *Triremis Radians*. Bitterly, too, would forced labour on road-making, or in the mines, be felt; and wherever native simplicity and virtue were conjoined with intelligence, or wherever a Briton had imbibed the best side of the Roman civilisation, there the resentment would be deep against those who were bringing strange vices into the country.

With these causes in our minds, we shall not wonder



VOTIVE TABLET FROM CREW OF THE *TRIREMIS RADIAN*.
(Boulogne Museum.)

that there was plenty of discontent among the Britons in at least the earlier generations. The later ones had grown up in their splendid cage, but the earlier men were furious at their position. The free Caledonii, or northern tribes, and the free Irish were a reproach to their conquered neighbours. Moreover, there was the hope of plunder to encourage the subjects if they rose, or the yet unconquered North Britons if they raided into the province. Hence the Roman position was long an anxious one, and the garrison was always on the defensive. The great island was simply held down by foreign troops. The Britons who were enlisted could, it seems, not

be trusted fully, for there are few known cases of any native soldiers being permanently stationed within the island. We hear rumours of various risings among the rest of the population. Bare hints survive to show us that Yorkshire was a hard region to control, and when we find the Ninth Legion leaving no trace of itself after 108 or 109 in the monumental records at York, where it was stationed (and none elsewhere), we may not unfairly suspect that it had been cut to pieces. It was not for nothing that the great Roman Wall from Newcastle to Carlisle was made defensible both ways, so that it could be held no less against the restless subjects within than against the untamed Caledonii without.

But with all this restlessness, time fought on the side of steady and civilised government; and even at an early day the south-east of the island was reconciled to its position and sought a new outlook by becoming as Roman as possible. The legions could, with safety, be moved from those parts of the country. The wise governors favoured the change. They encouraged and helped the Romanising party to decorate the towns with temples, showy market-places, and fine houses and the leading men among the South Britons were not slow either in taking or in setting the new example. A whimsical consciousness of the work which the conquerors were doing is shown in the frequency with which the mosaic pavements of Roman villas in England exhibit the device of Orpheus taming the birds and beasts. The Britons were the birds and the beasts, and, if they did not know it, the Romans did. The sons of British nobles were trained up in "liberal studies" and set the fashion to their countrymen. The great number of the inscriptions which have come down to us shows a widespread use or knowledge of writing, and even of Latin—though, of course, more than half of the whole number comes from non-British writers. It was thought at least possible that young British lawyers should go to be trained at Augustodunum (Autun), a great school in Gaul. The Roman dress and Roman habits of table established themselves on British soil; and a Greek "grammatikos," or lecturer on literature, might find it worth his while to travel even from Asia Minor to Britain. Another side of Roman

**Roman
Influence.**

life, too, made itself at home here—the bloody sports of the arena. One or two amphitheatres of a rough kind yet survive, as at Dorchester and Silchester; and the use to which they were put may be inferred from the vigorous group of gladiators depicted in mosaic-work on the Roman pavement which has been unearthed at Bignor, near Chichester, and from some designs on pottery.

Still, we must not exaggerate the extent of the Romanised area. There are hardly any inscriptions from Devon and Cornwall, and from the greater part of Wales; and it is, therefore,

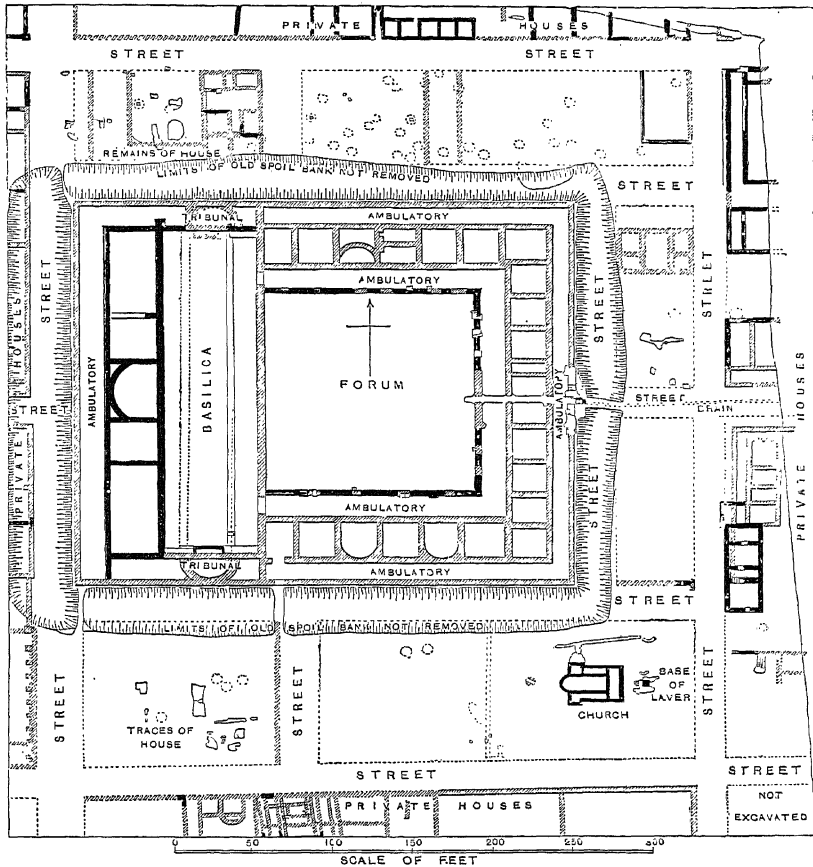


Photo: W. Pouncey, Dorchester.

ROMAN AMPHITHEATRE, DORCHESTER, DORSET.

not without significance that we find Celtic speech still surviving in Wales and not long dead in Cornwall. No Roman villas have been discovered much north of Aldborough in Yorkshire. Britain produced no distinguished Latin author, no one to set off against an Ausonius from Gaul, a Quintilian or a Martial from Spain. It had no famous schools or great professors, such as the Gallic ones made known to us by the piety of Ausonius. The works of art from British soil which are stored in our museums are often, like many of the inscriptions, of singularly rough and, indeed, barbaric character. Hewn in coarse material, ill-proportioned, and clumsily wrought, they show what the art of Greece, transmitted by

Roman teachers, might come to in a remote land. The tombstones and other such records mention comparatively few but military and official people. Of the Greek civilisation, which had elevated and softened that of Rome and which went



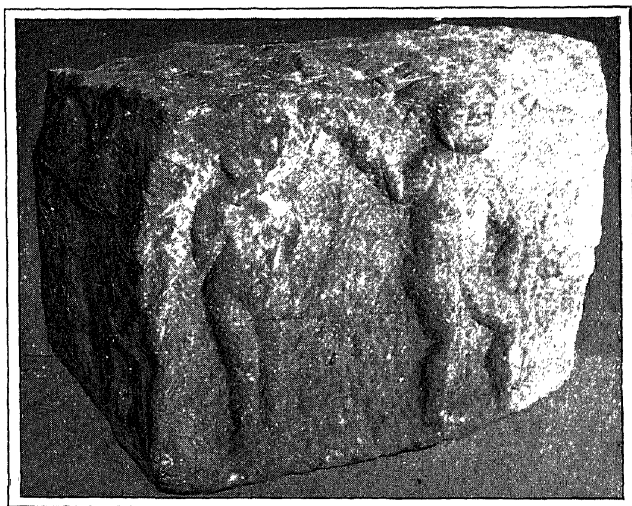
PLAN OF FORUM, SILCHESTER.

(By permission of the Society of Antiquaries, London.)

hand-in-hand with it in its conquests, Britain has but poor traces to show. Some Greek inscriptions there are, but they are few and uninteresting.

The fact is that there was a wide gulf between the polished

gentleman of British descent, who had embraced the Roman life and learning, and his poor countrymen, unimproved and obstinate in adhesion to their own ways and their own religion. Some such contrast between classes as Russia can show now, Britain might show then. In spite of the fact that Martial could boast of his books finding readers in this island, and that Juvenal could jestingly talk of Thule (Shetland or Iceland?) engaging a teacher of rhetoric, the mass of the folk must have been plunged in the deepest ignorance. No wonder that



A SPECIMEN OF ROMANO-BRITISH SCULPTURE (HERCULES AND HESIONE).
(Grosvenor Museum, Chester.)

Britain, like other Western provinces, was a favourite hunting-ground of eye-doctors and other quacks. No wonder that of the very few doctors' names which are come down to us as those of men practising in the island, half are good Roman names and the other half are Greek. Where science languished, magic thrived, and British magic was known even in Rome. Two curses written out on leaden plates, and probably left buried to work out their fulfilment, have been preserved into our time. According to one found at Bath, somebody has stolen the writer's napkin: "May he melt (or rot) for it!" From the other, discovered in Gloucestershire, it appears that Silvulanus

has lost a ring. The gods shall have half the value if they will bring it to light. "May they refuse health to the thief!" Charms were in use too, either among the men of the garrison or among the Britons. There were signs by which the evil eye could be baffled. There were forms of words likely to bring good luck, and therefore engraved on objects of daily use, as *Vivas*—"Long life to you!" *Utere felix*—"Use me and prosper!" These, of course, are thoroughly Italian in character.

A belief in magic has been found compatible with all forms of religion, but in Britain magical rites were very closely connected with the Druid system, which had been crushed in the island of Mona (Anglesey) by the two campaigns of 61 and 78. The curses which the Druids uttered "with hands raised to heaven," as they stood on the shore of the sacred island, had for a moment frozen the blood of the soldiers and stayed their advance; and even after the hopeless defeat of these priests and of the excited women who stood by them, "dressed in black like furies, with loose hair and brandishing torches," the various forms of British religion by no means died out. The Roman government did not try to destroy the religion of any of its subjects. If they were orderly and law-abiding, they might worship what they pleased and as they pleased. They were encouraged to take part in emperor-worship, but no one save a madman tried to make that worship compulsory. If they would identify their gods with those of their conquerors, so much the better; but they could do as they liked. Tolerance bore its natural fruit: religious strife was unknown, and worshippers of a most motley host of deities have left us their names and those of their gods, chiefly engraved upon votive offerings. Who these worshippers were it is not always easy to say. Sometimes there is but the name of a good Italian deity, and we have no means of knowing whether the dedicator was a Romanised Briton or a soldier of the garrison. Thus Neptune and Hercules, Mars and Minerva, Jupiter Optimus Maximus and Apollo found worshippers here. The words *Fulgur divom* seem to mark, with old-fashioned Italian scrupulousness, the place which the wrath of

Religion.



RING WITH INSCRIPTION, *UTERE FELIX* (two views).
(British Museum.)

Heaven had struck with lightning somewhere on the bleak line of the Northumberland Wall. Dedications to the Genius Loci, or guardian spirit of the place, have a true Roman ring. But when Apollo's worshipper cannot spell Apollo's name, we begin to think he was not much of a Roman; and when Minerva is identified with dea Sulis, or dea Sulis with Minerva, we suspect that the dedicator was a provincial trying to stand well with both his own old god and the new one of his masters.



BAS-RELIEF OF DEAE MATRES.

(By permission of W. Cripps, Esq., C B., Cirencester.)

"Mars Camulus," again, represents an attempt to unite a Roman deity with the British god after whom Colchester took its early name of Camulodunum. Sometimes a group of Oriental deities goes along with the name of Syrian votaries. Sometimes we can trace the gods to Gaul or Germany; they may then be deities whose worship was

widely spread among the Celts on both sides of the sea, or they may have been brought in by foreign settlers or by foreign cohorts serving with the army of occupation. The Deae Matres or Matronae, who appear on (foreign) carved stones as three seated figures, holding what may be symbols of increase and fertility, are known in Roman Germany as well as in Britain. But then, again, we find swarms of

barbarous god-names, to which we can assign no meaning and no home. The strange human figure with the legs and head of a cock, which appears in the mosaic pavement of the Roman villa at Brading, had perhaps a religious meaning now lost. A few of the deities are distinctly national or tribal, as *dea Brigantia*, the goddess of the "blue (painted) Brigantes" of Yorkshire. Here and there natural features or powers were worshipped. The dedication to the nymphs and fountains found near Chester reminds us that our holy wells are older than Christianity; so does the image of the goddess



Photo : F. N. Broderick, Ryde.

MOSAIC AT BRADING.

Coventina floating on a water-lily, found in a well near Newcastle; while the respect paid to the *Dea Tertiana*, a personification of fever or "tertian" ague, shows the natural tendency to worship what is dreaded and not understood.

In fact, the religious monuments of Roman Britain exhibit a compendium of the religious state of the world in those days—of its old cults still surviving, and of its new tendencies. The altars and the votive-tablets are probably the most numerous class of the inscribed stones, and they illustrate fully the diversity of belief and practice. The worship of emperors, dead or living, was a common rite in which all provinces might join, and

Britain was probably not behind the rest, although we cannot point with confidence to any central altar at which all the tribes might meet for the purpose, as we can point to the altar of Rome and of Augustus at Lugudunum (Lyon), the religious



Photo : J. P. Gibson, Hexham.

THE GODDESS COVENTINA (p. 61).

(Museum at Chesters.)

centre of Roman Gaul. A pious regard for the emperors is illustrated by many inscriptions, besides that one about the Sevir at York which was noticed before (p. 42). Dedications are frequent to the deity of the emperor, numen Imperatoris or Augusti, or numina Augustorum. The worship of Asklepios or Æsculapius, so fashionable under the early Empire in lands farther East, may possibly have been discouraged in Britain by the greatness of the goddess Sulis and her medical springs at Bath, but still traces of it are found. The more mystical religions which had crept into the Empire from the East are represented here too. A dedication to the god Æon, set up

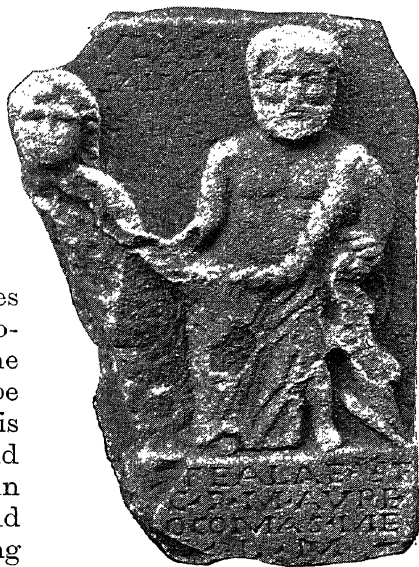
by some one with the name of Arimanius, perhaps a Persian, reminds us how far beliefs and believers could travel in days of universal peace. Serapis, originally a god from the south coast of the Black Sea, illustrates the tendency of the enlightened later paganism to fuse its deities and seek for one godhead under various titles. He was identified with Egyptian and with Greek objects of worship; he became great and fashionable in Alexandria and in Rome; and he has left traces of his worship even in this remote island of the Northern sea. Mithras-worship, too—a dangerous rival at one time of Christianity—had travelled all the way from Persia to South Wales and to Northumberland. This god was generally identified with the Sun, and the curious symbolic representations of him in the act of sacrifice are well known from the collections in the

Louvre and the British Museum. On the line of the Roman Wall near Housesteads, was found a cave, chosen, as caves or pits usually were, for the celebration of his secret rites; and we can imagine the believer, ardent for the remission of his sins, descending into the pit to be washed clean by the blood of the victim—a sheep or a bull—slain above him on a platform of pierced planks. Other representations occur elsewhere, *e.g.* in London.

It had been a very common feature of religious practice in Greece and in Rome for individuals to combine voluntarily into associations for the honour of the deity whom they preferred and this way of organising religious service is represented in Britain by a collegium Apollinis, and by a guild of worshippers of Mercury, and one of votaries of Sulis.

A number of inscriptions in honour of "the old gods" suggest to us the probability that many persons must, while they adopted a certain amount of Roman cultivation, have yet disapproved the religious innovations which they saw creep in. The name of "Druid" does not occur among the Romano-British inscriptions, but the Druidical system would not be easily forgotten (what religion is easily forgotten?), and loyalty and superstition would co-operate in keeping up a reverence for the old faith. Another kind of lingering regret breathes in the tomb-formulæ which the province took over from Roman usage — *Dis Manibus*, or the rarer *Memoriæ*.¹

The affectionate words which the sorrow of father or child, of husband or of wife, carved below these standing expressions, remind us of the common people, and of the daily sorrows and joys of which



AESCULAPIUS AND HYGIEA (p. 62).
(University Museum, Durham.)

[¹ "To the spirits of the dead," or "To memory."]

sight is so often lost, when we study the external history and the administrative mechanism of a nation. The Roman garrison and the Romanised provincials are brought very near to us when we read such expressions of grief as the following :—

Simpliciae Florentine anime innocentissime. (From York.)

Filia matri et fratri piissima. (Found near Caerleon.)

Filie dulcissime. (Northumberland.)

Fil(ice) car(issimæ). (Bath.)

Conju(gi) et filie pientissi(mis). (Old Penrith.)

Conjugi sanctissime quae vixit annis xxxiii sine ulla macula. (Northumberland.)



MITHRAIC STONE FOUND IN LONDON (p. 62).

(By permission of Wm. Ransom, Esq., Hitchin.)

(Conjugi cum qua) vixi sin(e ulla querellu). (Somersetshire.)¹

It is generally in Britain a man's heirs who have buried him, not, as so often in Italy, a club (*collegium*) to which he belonged. This probably does not point to the strength of domestic affection, but is due to two facts. (1) The tombstones

[¹ "To the innocent soul of Simplicia Florentina." "A daughter most dutiful to her mother and brother." "To a sweet daughter." "To a very dear daughter." "To a most dutiful wife and daughter." "To a wife of sacred memory who lived thirty-three years without a stain." "To a wife with whom I lived without a word of disagreement." The spelling (which is sometimes incorrect) and other peculiarities of form are preserved as they stand on the originals.]

which we have are those of soldiers or of men of position, who would not have to rely on a burial club. (2) The poorer Britons cannot have been educated up to the point of peaceful co-operation at which burial clubs could be founded and regularly worked.

About Christianity in Roman Britain we must speak with



TOMBSTONE OF CENTURION AND HIS WIFE IN WHITE SANDSTONE.
(Grosvenor Museum, Chester.)

caution, because so very little is known. The Christian inscriptions are few, and chiefly from sites not then of great importance. To adopt the careful summary of a modern inquirer: "Statements about British Christians at Rome or in Britain, or apostles or apostolic men preaching in Britain in the first century, rest on guess, mistake, or fable. . . . Evidence for the existence of a Christian Church in Britain during the second century is also unhistorical." But the names of some British bishops are known from the end of the third

century or beginning of the fourth; and at the end of the fourth there was "a settled Church" in Britain with churches, altars, scriptures, discipline, holding the Catholic faith, and having intercourse with both Rome and Palestine.¹

In spite of all the civilising power and appliances which the Romans brought to bear upon their province, it must have been widely different in appearance from the land which we know. Centuries of drainage, of tree-felling, and of road-making have altered our country to an immense extent. A thousand swamps, which the old roads had to bridge or to avoid, have disappeared. The land was then covered with deep forests, of which only fragments survive in parks, or memories in such names as "the Weald" of Kent. Through these forests the Romans cut their long, straight highways, but the primitive wood stood close on both sides, and the Stone

Natural
Products.



CHRISTIAN MONOGRAM (THE
CHI-RHO) ON BLOCK OF LEAD
FOUND IN THE THAMES.
(*British Museum.*)

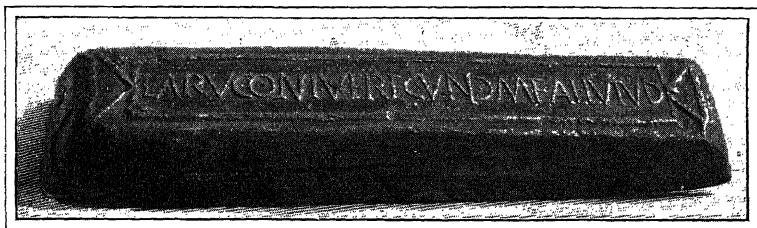
Street, across Surrey and Sussex from London to Chichester, must have been like our shadowy New Forest roads. Wild beasts there were, such as have now vanished. The beaver dammed the streams: wolves wasted the flocks all over the island, bears remained in some parts; red deer were common. In a remote corner of Durhan has been found a tablet of thanksgiving to Silvanus, the hunter's god, dedicated by a Roman cavalry officer, who had killed a wild boar of remarkable size, "which many people before him could not bring in." The Romans are said to have introduced fallow-deer, pheasants, hornless sheep, geese, and fowls; but the evidence is, perhaps, not conclusive for all these things. Nor can we be sure, though it is possible, that they began some of the embankments which protect our low grounds against the sea or against river-floods. The climate was much what it is now. The Romans were pleased to think—and they were right—that they held the best part of the island; but they

[¹ Haddan and Stubbs, *Councils*, 1, 22, 24, 7, 10. But see F. Haverfield in "English Historical Review," 1896; and *cf.* Plan of Silchester, page 57.]

noted of the climate that it was "rather rainy than snowy, and, when it is fine, there is a fog." The goddess of ague, Tertiana, was not worshipped for nothing. Vines were introduced later: olives would not grow, but corn and timber thrived. The island was "very woody," and produced, as we have seen, all the trees of Gaul, "except the beech and the fir," and in excepting even these Cæsar was possibly mistaken.

Having no vines, the island had to import wine; and ivory and amber also occur in a list (obviously very imperfect) of its imports. To set off against these, corn may have been one of the chief exports. The export trade in corn with the Continent began before the Roman occupation, but was no doubt methodised and extended by the new government. A historian about 380 speaks of "the corn supply usually brought over (to Gaul) from the Britons," while another writer of about the same time shows that the corn (or some

Industry
and Trade.



BLOCK OF LEAD FROM MINES OF LUTUDARUM, DERBYSHIRE.
(*British Museum.*)

of it) was habitually sent from Britain up the Rhine. But so much of this corn as was "annona" (p. 52) was, of course, not paid for. Another of the chief exports was metal. The mines were often in the hands of the Roman government, but no traces have been found in Britain of such elaborate organisation of the mining community as the records of Vipasca, in Spain, show us. Roman mining tools have been preserved in the workings on the Mendip hills, and elsewhere have been found bars of silver and tin, pieces of copper, and blocks of lead. The pigs of lead were often dated in the mould, and we see from them that the Romans

lost no time in exploring the resources of a new province. The conquest began in 43, and a mass of lead from Somerset has been found with a date equivalent to 49. The lead came partly from the Mendips, partly from Derby, and partly from Flintshire; the tin is from Devon and Cornwall, but is rare. The lead was so abundant that the output was limited by law—in order, we may suppose, to keep up the price. Copper was got from Anglesey and Shropshire. Beds of iron scoriæ, containing

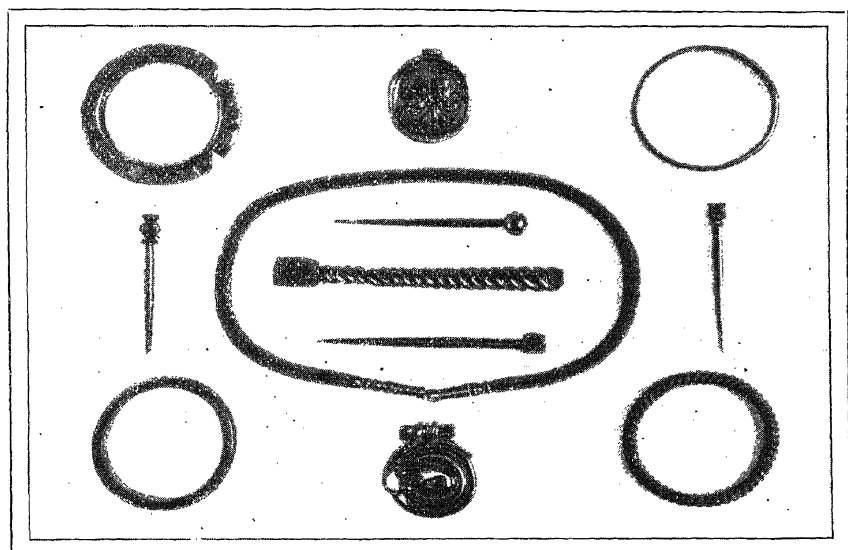


POT OF DUROBRIVIAN WARE, WITH HUNTING SCENE.
(*British Museum.*)

coins or other Roman remains, tell where iron was extracted in the Forest of Dean, in Herefordshire, and in Monmouthshire. The Sussex clay-ironstone was well known, if not worked on so large a scale as afterwards by the English from the thirteenth to the eighteenth century. It may well have been these beds which Cæsar had in mind when he said that iron was got in the coast region. Gold and pearls, we suspect, were more often talked about than found. But cattle and sheep, skins or furs, and slaves were regularly exported, as also wild beasts for shows at Rome.¹ British dogs were valued abroad for hunting; and hunting scenes with dogs are

¹ The wild beasts, however, may not have been paid for.

not uncommon on the British pottery of the age. A Roman satirist speaks as if Kentish oysters were well known on dinner-tables at Rome toward the end of the first century. The value of jet and of "Kimmeridge coal" for ornamental purposes was well understood; jet ornaments have been found in graves of this period, but there is nothing to show that jet was exported. Nor is it likely that British coal was then sent abroad, although it was certainly burnt on British soil.



JET ORNAMENTS OF ROMANO-BRITISH PERIOD.
(York Museum.)

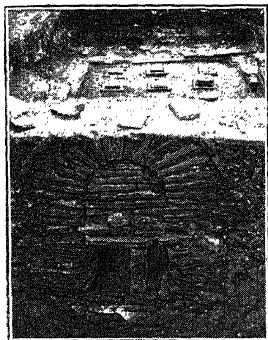
Coal ready for use has been found among the fortifications of the wall in Northumberland, and reminds us how Wallsend (the Roman Segedunum) has been famous for coal in modern times. Of woven fabrics we do not hear that any were exported from Britain; but still of home labour and of products for home consumption there was no lack. The stone-cutter was a busy man. Slates were dressed for roofing; bronze articles were probably cast here as well as imported. Beer was brewed. Glass and pottery were made in large quantities, so that the importation of glass, which an early writer mentions, may have ceased to be necessary. The red

earthenware, called Samian, was imported; but the coarser kinds of pottery were made in many parts of Britain. Kilns for making them, and even parts of makers' stocks, have survived. Among the chief centres of production were London; Upchurch, on the Medway; parts of the New Forest; Dymchurch; and Castor, in Northamptonshire (*Durobrivæ*). Pottery, too, of many more or less artistic kinds was either made in Britain or at least valued there. An enormous trade was done in bricks, and in tiles for building, flooring, or roofing. These were made by soldiers for military purposes, but also by manufacturers, and probably in any part of the country where suitable earth could be obtained.

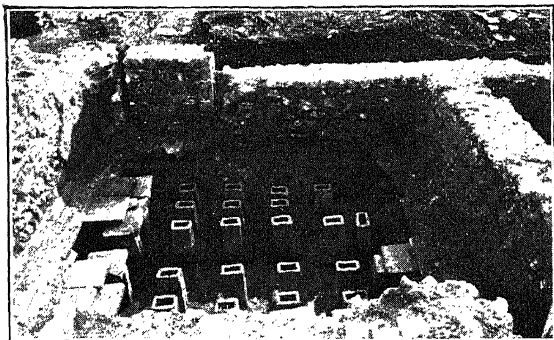
Whether here, as elsewhere in the Roman world, trade gathered itself into guilds or corporations, we do not know. Two inscriptions, which seem to speak of "*collegia*" (guilds) of smiths, may perhaps mean only army-smiths.

Roman
Villas.

We cannot, on the whole, think of Britain in the first centuries after Christ as a very rich province, but it is one of the provinces in which the existence of a well-to-do class has left the plainest traces. This class may be accounted for by wealth made in business, by wealth seized in war, or by the salary and emoluments of office. The bodies and the huts of the poor have alike crumbled away and left no trace; but the tombs of the well-to-do survive to show us their jewellery, and the remains of Roman town houses and country villas are numerous and fine. These ruins are now found underground, sometimes in our towns, sometimes well out in the country away from any modern building, and with nothing to draw attention to the spot save the oyster-shells which the plough brings to the surface. But it will generally be found that these country houses stood near, not on, the line of a Roman road, so that an easy approach was secured. They prefer a west or south aspect, and always have plenty of water in the neighbourhood, or even brought on to the premises in pipes. Baths formed a regular part of such houses; just as many inscriptions referring to larger baths being built or rebuilt, show how important bathing was thought to be wherever bodies of men were gathered together, in towns or on the lines of the great fortifications. The profound peace of the southern country is indicated by the fact that none of the country houses show any,



Furnace Arch of Hypocaust.



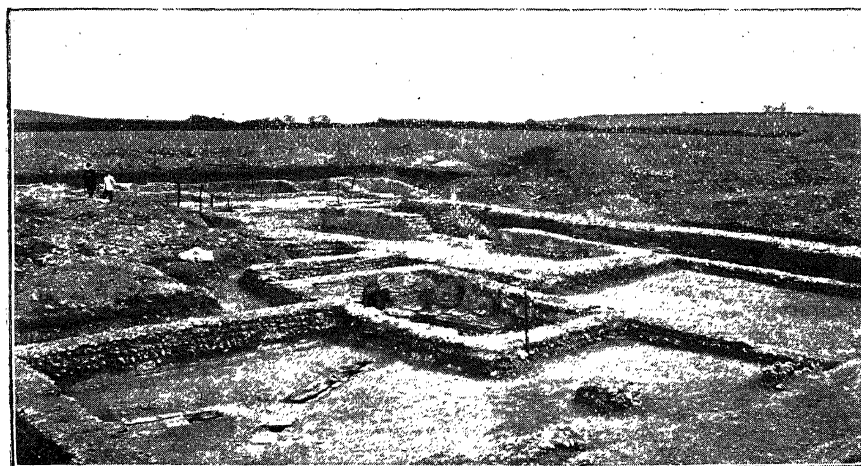
Hypocaust with Flue Pipe in the Wall.



Tessellated Pavement in one of the Summer Apartments.



Conduit.



General view of Winter Rooms.

REMAINS OF ROMAN VILLA EXCAVATED AT DARENTH, KENT.

(Photos: E. C. Youens, Dartford).

traces of having been fortified. In spite of the decay of centuries, we can often still follow the ground plan of the villa, see the arrangement of small sleeping-rooms and store-rooms round a quadrangle, and find our way to the reception or dining-rooms. The well can be cleared out, and yields very curious finds. We can explore the system of warming the house—more applicable to a one-storeyed building than to a building of many floors. Below the ground was a low crypt or series of chambers placed underneath the living rooms. Slaves, told off for the purpose, kept up great fires in these vaults (the hypocausts), and the hot air was made to circulate in pipes under the floor and round the walls of the rooms above. The risk of fire was diminished by using pipes of thick pottery.

The mere size of these houses is in some cases worth noting. Built low, they naturally spread out; but, even when we allow for that, we shall find that the area covered by the structure and its outbuildings indicates great wealth and great numbers of slaves. The buildings at Woodchester, which have never been explored to the end, are known to stretch 330 feet in one direction and more than 300 in the other. But the glory of the villa is usually its tessellated or mosaic pavement. Such pavements, as is recorded on a later page (p. 149), have been found in England of great splendour, but even the simple geometrical patterns, in quiet and harmonious colours, are pleasant to the eye and creditable to the taste of the designer. The fragments of painted stucco which have been found in the ruins show how the walls were decorated internally. Slices of foreign marble, as a wall-decoration, though not unknown in Britain, are very rare. They were probably too costly. None of the houses have yet yielded anything to show the name and the quality of the owner, but the signs of taste and wealth are generally unmistakable.

Foreign
Admix-
ture.

The Roman occupation must have done a good deal toward making the mixed population of Britain more mixed still. New comers from any land under the Roman government might settle here. We find a Palmyrene at home in Durham, and a Moor or Mauritanian in the service at Ellenborough. The men of the legions, wherever they came from, were not of British birth (p. 77)—the officers might be of Italian origin; and the strong auxiliary forces—called Belgians or Batavians, Alpine troops or Spaniards, Gauls or Germans,

Dalmatians or Sarmatians—whether they were really levied in the countries whose names they bear or not (p. 79) were more or less foreigners, and must in some degree have mingled their blood with that of the people among whom they were quartered. But the whole population, including the foreign garrison and all its hangers-on, is not likely to have been very dense. The Roman towns, wherever we can trace their circuit, occupied a smaller area than the English ones which took their places occupied in the seventeenth or eighteenth century; and the ability of the island to export corn is itself evidence of a thin population.

There can be no doubt that the British provinces, whatever their prosperity in the good days of the Empire, shared its degeneracy and decay, and suffered many evils from internal mismanagement and foreign aggression before the final withdrawal of the legions. It is possible, of course, that certain places known to us as thriving Roman towns may have begun to suffer, before the end of the Roman period, from the withdrawal of the sea, which brought them all their business. Richborough, Pevensey, Lynne may already have found themselves silted-up and cut off from the open water by deposits of mud and shells. But the greater part of the mischiefs which affected the later Roman Britain must be put down to the folly or the violence of man. Particulars are wanting, but we hear dimly of internal troubles towards the end of the fourth century, of highway robbery, of the armies going unpaid, and of the men deserting. Moreover, the island was suffering at both ends from inroads which the government was no longer strong enough to beat off. From one quarter came the Picts, the Scots, the Attacotti, harrying the north and the midlands, while the south and south-east coasts had reason to dread the inroads of the "Saxons, who might come with any shift of wind." The Count of the Saxon Shore had his hands full with these Saxons (or English), and with the Franks, many years before the final settlement of the former (449). We hear nothing of ability on the side of the Romanised Britons to defend themselves. Here, then, by the final test of history, the Roman government of Britain stands condemned. It found the natives warlike, though untrained; it left them helpless and unwarlike. The Empire brought with it all the

Fall of the
Roman
Power.

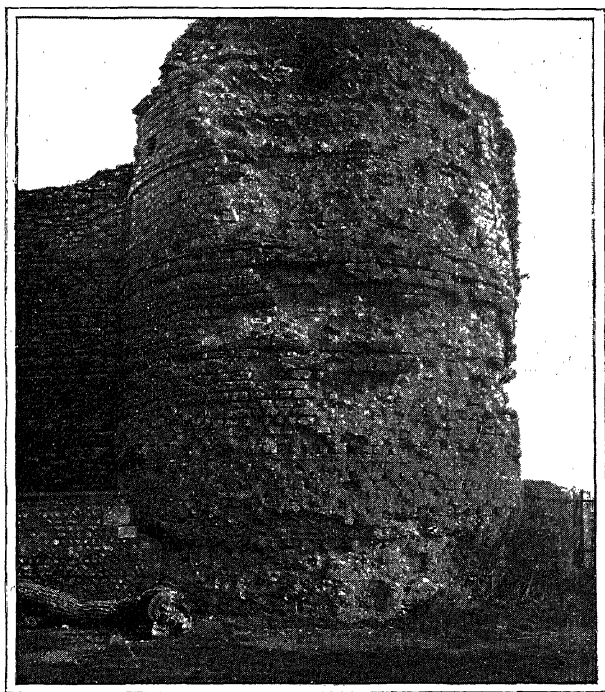
benefits of peace; it introduced material prosperity and well-being; it offered the highest education and development which the times afforded; but, when it came to the actual test of manly excellence, the inhabitants of the island were found wanting, and a civilisation which was unable to defend itself perished by fire and sword.¹

Whether or not the Saxons utterly destroyed all traces of Roman civilisation in Britain, their work was at any rate very terrible. Even now the remains of the villas show how many of them were burnt down. The towns were taken one by one, though some struggled on, abandoned, but true to the Roman tradition. Bath and Cirencester, Gloucester and Wroxeter held out till near the end of the sixth century. But whether the towns held out, or whether they at once admitted English masters, they were ruined. They had formed parts of a highly organised commercial system, bound to all regions of the Continent by a magnificent network of highways. When the roads were neglected, when the communications were cut, and the stream of commerce dried up, the towns lost their very reason for existence, and ages passed before they found another. The mouths which trade had fed went unsatisfied; the sword was bare for centuries throughout the length and breadth of the island. The new conquerors were not merely conquerors; they were thoroughly out of sympathy with the inhabitants. The lands from which they came had been untouched by the greatness of Rome; they cared nothing for her institutions, her language, or her name. They were not, as the German invaders of Roman provinces on the Continent so often were, somewhat Christianised before they were let loose on the country. Hence they were not to be mollified by religion or overawed by the clergy, and the destruction they wrought was thorough, because it was the work of foreigners, of savages, and of heathen. What is told us of one place by the Old English Chronicle²—how “Ælla and Cissa besieged Andreds-cester (Anderida, Pevensey), and slew all that dwelt therein, so that not a single

[¹ The reader will find a different view taken on page 105. The matter is, of course, purely one of inference from extremely imperfect evidence. The two conflicting views are allowed to stand that he may realise that the question is still unsettled amongst scholars. He must form his own conclusion.]

[² Under the year 491.]

Briton was there left"—cannot have been true of all, but the spirit of it meets us everywhere. Many sites of Roman trade and civilisation have stood empty from that time to this. There is no cottage now within the walls of Richborough, and the water-birds could at one time lay their eggs undisturbed within the baths of Bath. Nor did the hostility of



TOWER OF GATEWAY OF ROMAN WALL, PEVENSEY.

the new race to the old order end with the conquest. The modern inhabitants of Scotland may have treated the remains of classical antiquity with a spirit of "reverential enthusiasm,"¹ but in England the remains have suffered outrage upon outrage. Here they have been pulled down to repair a highway, to build a pigsty or a farmhouse; there, they have been dug through in search of hidden treasure; there, fear of magic has defaced

¹ Burton's "History of Scotland," i., p. 47.

the inscriptions and the carvings. Let us be thankful that we have yet so much of them left.

**F. HAVER-
FIELD.**
The
Roman
Army in
Britain.

THE following paragraphs deal with the military aspects of Roman Britain, or, in other words, the part played by the Roman army stationed in the province of Britain. A correct appreciation of this subject is, however, impossible without a correct appreciation of the Roman army itself. We shall, therefore, commence with a brief sketch of the organisation and general arrangements of that army as it existed from Augustus to Diocletian—that is, during the first three centuries of the Empire and of our era. We shall, secondly, proceed to describe the work done by the Roman army in Britain during the same three centuries; not so much in conquering the island (43 to about 120) as in retaining the conquest (about 120–280). A third division of the subject will deal with the character of the Roman army as reformed by Diocletian and his successors, and the corresponding position of the army in Britain during the fourth century. The questions which here arise are, however, very difficult, and the evidences scanty and not wholly intelligible; while, as Roman rule in Britain ended soon after 400, the true meaning of the period can hardly be discerned in our island: the third division of our subject will therefore claim less of our attention than the first and second divisions. A fourth division will touch upon an even more obscure topic—the Romano-British army in the fifth century after the Roman government had ceased to administer the province.

The organ-
isation of
the Roman
Army.

I. The army of the Roman Empire, as it existed during the first three centuries of our era, was in its main features the creation of the first emperor, Augustus, and formed part of the new order which he built up from the ruins of the fallen Republic. It comprised two principal classes of troops—legion and “auxilia.” The primary distinction between these two classes lay in the fact that the legions represented the old burgher-army of the Republican age, while the less distinguished “auxilia” were levied from the subjects, not from the citizens, of Rome, and were first systematically enrolled by Augustus. This primary distinction corresponds to numerous

differences in detail. (i) The legion, at its full strength, contained rather more than five thousand heavy infantry and a handful of riders, six score in all, who were probably employed for scouting and for carrying despatches. The whole corps was commanded by a senator of high rank, usually one who had held the praetorship; he was nominated by the emperor, who was commander-in-chief, and he retained his post during the emperor's pleasure; in the eye of the law he was the

(i) Legions.



INSCRIPTION OF RUSTIUS, A LEGIONARY, MENTIONING HIS BIRTHPLACE.

(Grosvenor Museum, Chester.)

emperor's delegate, and hence bore the title "Legatus Augusti legionis," or more briefly, "Legatis legionis." Beneath him were six military tribunes, sixty centurions elaborately graduated in seniority, and numerous inferior officers. The tribunes were young men of high social rank commencing their career and apt to be ornamental rather than useful; the chief officers within the legion were the centurions, who correspond in many ways to our majors and captains, but who were in general promoted from the ranks, and, after reaching the responsible position of senior centurion ("primuspilus"), had little further advancement directly open to them. The common soldiers were, in theory, recruited from freeborn Roman citizens,

but the theory was often neglected. Its principle was, however, so far observed that the legionaries were drawn only from districts familiar with Roman civilisation, and if not already citizens, received the franchise on enlistment. In recruiting, the eastern and western provinces of the Empire were kept separate. The legions stationed in the Eastern or Greek provinces were recruited in the East; the legions of the West, which alone concern us here, were recruited in the West, partly in Italy, but more commonly in various provincial districts which had obtained the Roman franchise and were familiar with Roman civilisation. After about the year 120, or thereabouts, legions were largely recruited in their own provinces; in many cases soldiers' sons, the so-called "children of the camp," furnished considerable contingents. Service lasted nominally twenty years, but men were often retained with the colours, as "veterans," beyond this limit. Once discharged, the ex-legionary received a substantial bounty, or a plot of land on which to settle. At the death of Augustus (A.D. 14) there were twenty-five legions, making 125,000 heavy infantry, on the army list; during the next two centuries this number was slowly raised to thirty-three legions, or 165,000 men. Each legion was known by a number; and as, for various reasons, several legions bore identical numbers, each legion had in addition an epithet or epithets, usually selected with some reference to its history and achievements. (ii) The auxiliaries were divided into infantry cohorts and cavalry troops ("alae"), each 500 or sometimes 1,000 strong, commanded by Roman officers called "praefects" or "tribunes," and recruited among the provincial subjects of Rome. Their pay was less than that of the legionaries, their years of service were longer, their general condition was less favourable; they received the Roman citizenship, however, at their discharge, or, in a few cases, even earlier. Their internal organisation presents a curious and perhaps unique feature—the combination of infantry and cavalry in the same regiment, and, in particular, the inclusion of cavalry in infantry regiments (cohorts), very many of which were three-quarters foot soldiers and one-quarter riders, and were accordingly styled "horsed cohorts" (cohortes equitatae). Each troop and cohort was distinguished by some epithet or epithets, usually taken either from the name of a tribe or people or from

Numbers
of the
Legions.

(ii) Auxili-
ary troops.

that of the officer who founded the corps. The auxiliary regiments seem to have been raised in the first instance from the tribes or peoples whose names they bore, but the subsequent recruiting was not, as a rule, tribal. As the Empire grew more homogeneous, recruits from different districts were mixed together; the tribal epithets ceased to have any real meaning,

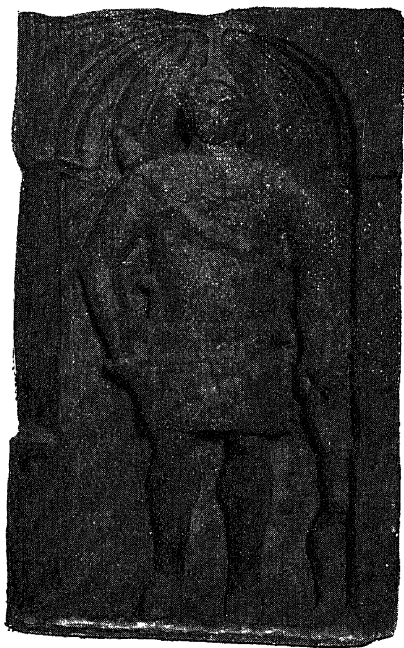


FIGURE OF BOWMAN, FROM HOUSESTEADS: IN BLACKGATE MUSEUM, NEWCASTLE.
(By permission of the Society of Antiquaries of Newcastle-on-Tyne.)

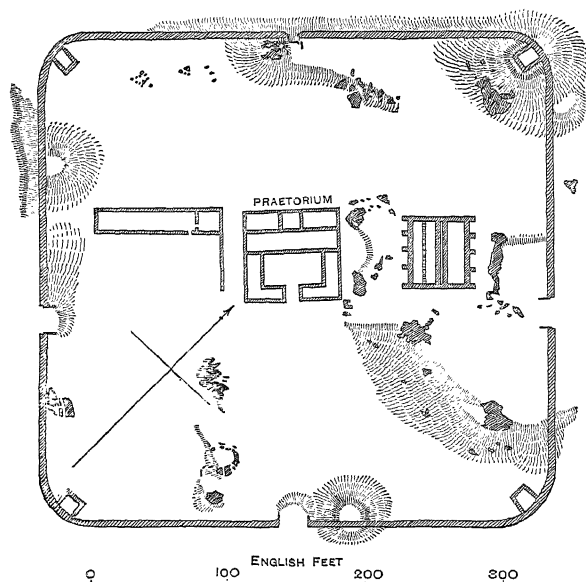
and "Spanish" cohorts, for example, contained soldiers born near the Rhine or the Danube. Exception to this mixture was made in favour of some special troops, like the Syrian bowmen; in general, the auxiliaries (we may say) were denationalised. This tendency to uniformity was, however, counteracted in a curious way. In and after the second century of our era a new order of auxiliary troops appeared, loosely organised in companies (called "numeri" or "cunei") on a tribal system of recruiting; such irregular auxiliaries

were largely used beside the regular cohorts and cavalry troops in Britain and other uncivilised lands under Roman sway. The total of the auxiliary forces is generally taken to have equalled, or nearly equalled, the total of the legions, and if this was so, the whole Roman army must have numbered some 250,000 to 350,000 men during the first three centuries of our era. This supposition is not in itself improbable, but the available evidence on the subject is scanty.

Frontier
Defence,
Provincial
Armies.

The method in which this army was employed is, in several ways, characteristic of the Roman Empire. The central interests of Roman Imperial history are to be found not in Italy or Rome, but in the provinces, and not least in the defence of the frontier provinces against barbarian invasions. Similarly, the army of the Empire was posted in the provinces, and principally in the frontier provinces. There were no troops in Italy except the emperor's Praetorian bodyguard at Rome; there were few or none in what may be called the interior provinces, such as Gaul or Spain, Greece or Asia; almost all were massed along the frontiers—Northern Britain, the Rhine, the Danube, the Euphrates, the Sahara. Again, the Empire was a collection, one might nearly say a confederation, of provinces rather than a centralised or uniform empire, and the army was not so much one army as a series of small provincial armies. Each frontier province had its own army, which might vary in strength from time to time, but was on the whole permanent in the very real sense of being composed of permanent parts. Legion did not relieve legion, or cohort relieve cohort, at brief and fixed intervals, like English regiments in India or South Africa: the same corps stayed in the same province, perhaps in the same fortress, for scores of years, even for centuries. The officers—commanders or “legati,” tribunes, praefects, centurions—were changed frequently, but the common soldiers generally served their twenty or twenty-five years in one and the same province, and regarded themselves as members of the provincial army, not members of the army of Rome. The size of these provincial armies varied with the size of the province and the needs of the age. The two armies which kept the watch on the Rhine against the Germans during the earlier years of the Empire, counted each of them four legions and numerous auxiliaries; no provincial army

appears to have been normally stronger than this, while several were much weaker. Each army was commanded, as a rule, by the governor of its province, the "legatus Augusti," nominee and delegate of the emperor like the "legatus legionis," but a higher officer than the latter and exercising (as Roman officers often did) both civil and military authority. The troops, as a rule, included both legions and auxiliaries, though a few small provinces had only the latter.



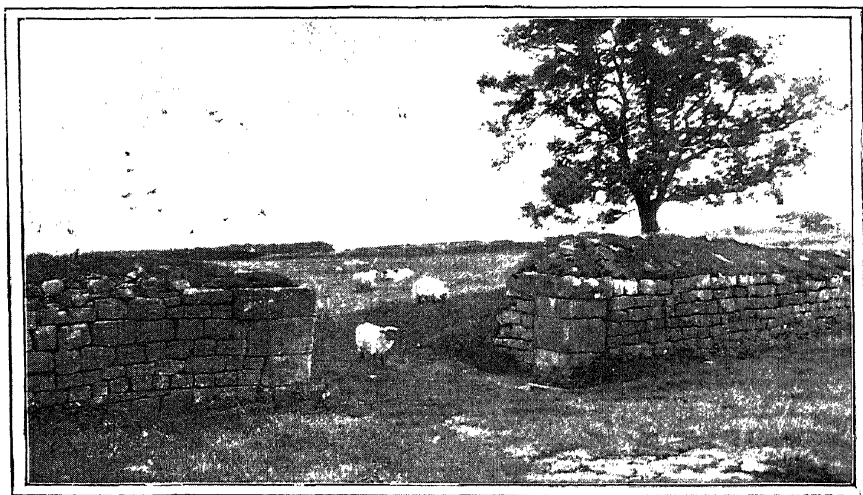
PLAN OF HARDKNOTT FORT, CUMBERLAND.

(By permission of the Cumberland and Westmoreland Antiquarian and Archaeological Society.)

These provincial armies were not quartered according to modern fashion, in barracks close to or actually within large cities, but in separate forts or fortresses more resembling our Indian cantonments. The civic element was strictly excluded from these fortresses. The camp-followers, womankind, trading-folk, "squatted" as best they could outside the gates, in settlements, technically "canabae," like the bazaars outside Indian cantonments. These bazaars sometimes grew into towns; in the more civilised provinces they often earned the Roman franchise and developed into fully privileged municipalities.

Cantonments and "Canabae."

In the distribution of the troops, legions and auxiliaries were treated differently. The latter were scattered in small forts along or near the frontier. The legions occupied larger fortresses, often at some distance from the frontier, and, except in the early Empire, each legion occupied one fortress, governed by a "prefect of the camp" (*praefectus castrorum*: usually an *ex-centurion*). Round each fort or fortress was the "territory" of the garrison, providing the troops with



WESTERN GATEWAY IN THE ROMAN FORT AT BIRDOSWALD.

(By permission, from a Photograph by Thomas Ashby, Esq.)

corn and cattle: army contractors and large provision-contracts were thus unnecessary. The legionary cantonments served as *dépôts*, whence detachments were sent on special errands, new frontier fortifications, punitive expeditions, and the like. To a small extent the legions thus provided field forces, but the provincial armies were in reality garrison armies. A large field force could only be collected by reducing individual garrisons and combining the troops thus economised: the same plan was followed when a frontier war grew serious and one provincial army needed reinforcement from another. It was long the good fortune of the Roman Empire, as it had been of the Republic, that difficulties came singly. But when,

toward the end of the third century, enemies assaulted the whole frontier line at once, from the Euxine to the North Sea, the old plan of defence collapsed, and a new system (to be mentioned presently) was evolved during the fourth century.

The provincial army in Britain was among the most powerful and important of the provincial armies. Its size and strength gave it a high rank: the narrative of its deeds includes the frequent rise and fall of emperors, and even the details of its internal organisation have a special value as illustrating the organisation of the whole Roman army. Its importance was emphasised by a circumstance which recurs in few other provinces: the British army was the most important element in the province, and civil life, so prominent elsewhere, is insignificant beside it. This predominance of the army was not unqualified: not everything in Roman Britain was military. English antiquaries sometimes write as if every Roman road in our island was constructed exclusively for troops and used by them alone, every "station" a halting-place for marching columns, every "villa" the luxurious seat of some high military official. This view is misleading (p. 44, *seq.*). The Midlands and the South-east of Britain were almost as empty of soldiery as Italy itself. They contained a peaceful population which was not unacquainted with Roman speech and culture. Numerous "villas" were occupied by large landowners, busy with corn-growing or sheep-farming. Small towns were not uncommon: there were even four "colonies," fully-privileged municipalities—in short, there existed in the land east of the Severn and south of the Humber a considerable body of Romanised Britons. But the province, as a whole, was small in area, poor, perhaps thinly populated; the civil life which developed in it was necessarily also small and poor, and was far inferior to that exhibited by the Romanised provincials of Gaul or Spain, or Africa or Pannonia. It remains true, though with the above qualification, that the military aspect of Roman Britain is its most important aspect.

The
Provincial
Army of
Britain.

II. Our present account of the Roman army in Britain may be divided into two parts. The first comprises the period of the Conquest, from the invasion in A.D. 43 to the establishment of a definite northern frontier by Hadrian about 120. This was a period of constant war and advance: the boundaries were

Periods
of its
History.

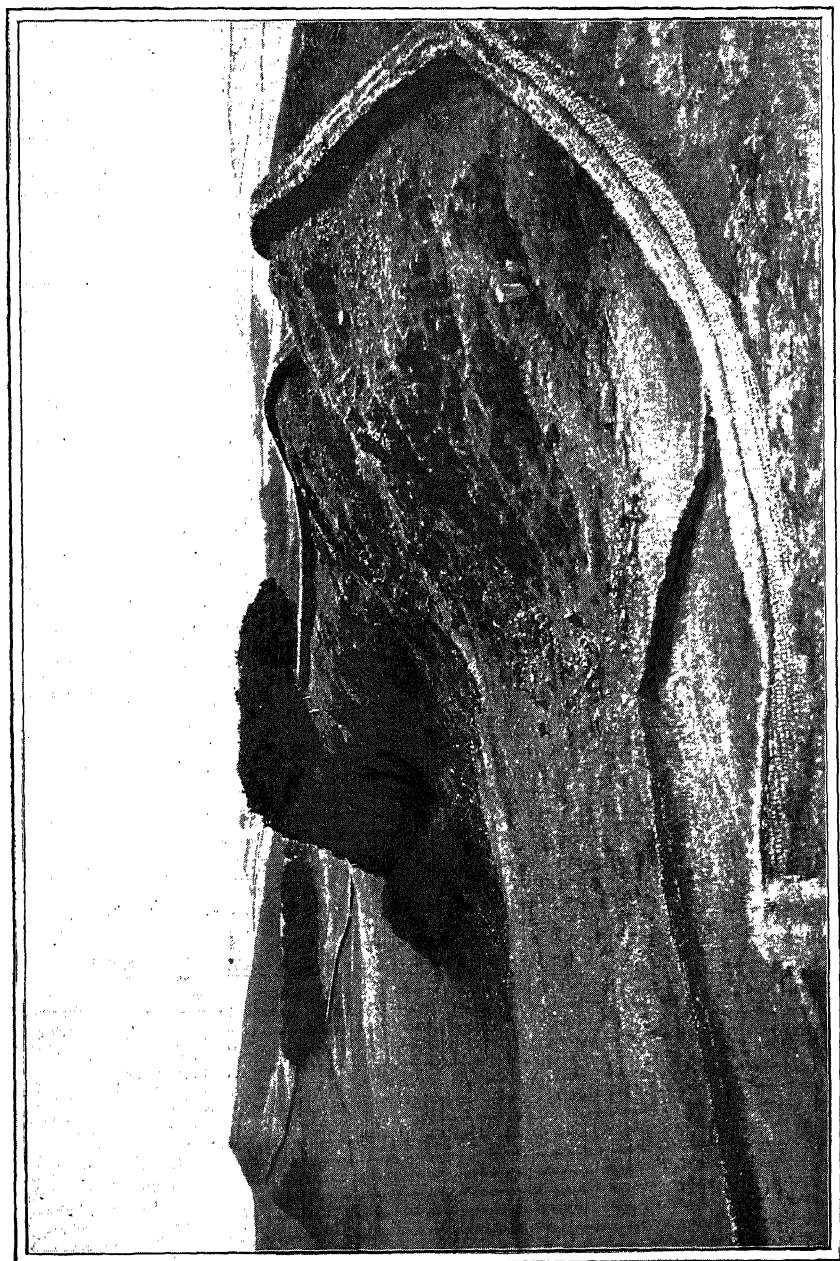
pushed forward at frequent intervals, and the troops were from time to time relieved or reinforced. The second part comprises a period of settled occupation, during which frontiers, troops and fortresses remained generally the same, and the wars were undertaken to punish raids from without the frontier or revolts within it. A change came with the end of the third century: the barbarians burst into the Empire, the Roman military system was reformed, and the Roman army entered on a new epoch. We have called this a third part of our subject, and shall say below the little which can be said on the topic.

Author-
ities.

Our authorities for these periods are partly literary, partly archaeological: they are either the statements of historians and other writers, or the testimony of coins, ruins, and, above all, inscriptions. For the first period, our evidence is of the first kind. We learn a great deal from such sources as the "*Life of Agricola*" (written about 95), and the "*Annals*" (about 120) of Tacitus, or the "*Roman History*" of Dio Cassius (about 220). Tacitus is a contemporary authority, but his value for us is seriously lessened by his contempt for technical details and his exclusive regard for picturesque or ethical effect. Dio wrote at secondhand, and is imperfectly preserved to us, but he was one of the few Greek writers who really understood Rome and things Roman. On the other hand, few remains of buildings and few inscriptions can be dated to this period. For the second period the reverse is the case. Literary evidence is rare, and most of it untrustworthy, while many remains of forts and fortifications, and many inscriptions, chiefly in the North, may be referred to the second and third centuries.

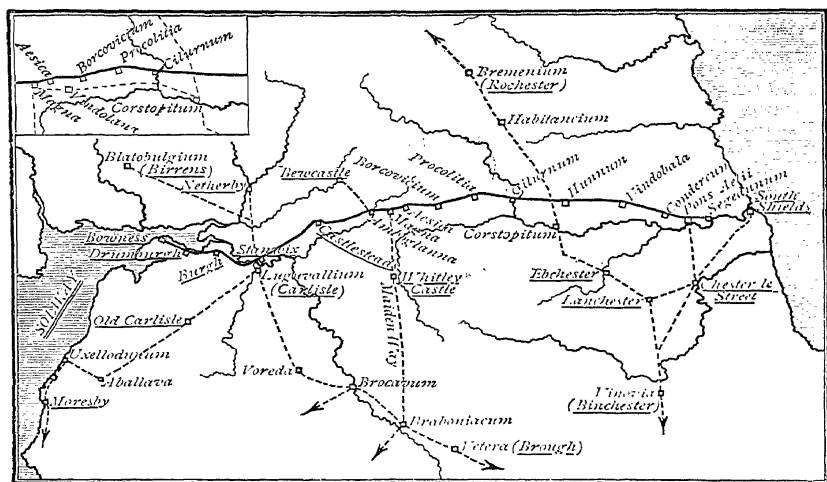
(1) A.D. 43-
120.

(1) The events of the first period hardly come within the scope of the present work, but a very short account may not be out of place. The Emperor Claudius commenced the conquest in A.D. 43, sending over a powerful army of four legions and many auxiliaries—perhaps 40,000 men—and even visiting the island in person. During his reign the conquest was vigorously pursued. The first governor, Aulus Plautius, conquered the South and Midlands up to the Humber and the Severn (43-47); his successor, Ostorius Scapula, attempted, with less success, to subdue the Welsh hill-tribes (47-52). In this period, permanent cantonments were formed for the legions: at Isca Silurum (Caerleon-on-Usk) for the Legio II Augusta,



THE ROMAN WALL, LOOKING E. FROM NEAR HOUSESTEADS. HOUSESTEADS FORT IS JUST BEHIND THE NEARER COVERT.
(By permission, from a Photograph by Thomas Ashby, Esq.)

at Deva (Chester) for the Legio XX Valeria Victrix, and probably at Lindum (Lincoln) for the Legio IX Hispana. The other legion, XIV Gemina, may have been at Viroconium (Wroxeter) helping the Second and Twentieth in the Welsh wars. Ostorius further planted a colonia for time-expired veterans at Camulodūnum (Colchester). Nero's reign (54-68) brought little forward movement; but Vespasian (69-79) recommenced the conquest. Wales and Yorkshire were now conquered; the Ninth Legion was advanced (as it seems) from Lindum to Eboracum (York); and Agricola (Governor of Britain,



MAP OF HADRIAN'S WALL.

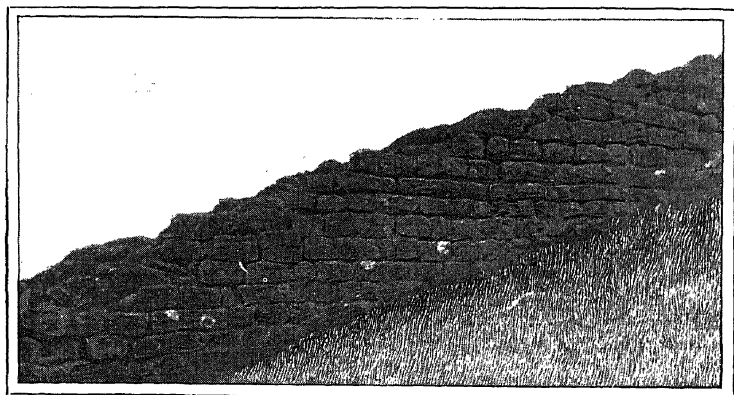
78-84) even penetrated into Scotland, though he appears to have effected no permanent conquests in the North. There were four legions in the province till 84, the Legio II Adjutrix having taken the place of the Fourteenth; but then Agricola was recalled, the Second Adjutrix Legion was at the same time sent to Germany, and the forward policy in Britain was apparently abandoned. The events of the next thirty-five years (85-120) are a blank. We know only that in the course of them, and probably not long before 120, the Ninth Legion was annihilated in a serious insurrection. But, in general, there seems to have been a cessation of active advance since 85.

We are approaching what we have called the second period of Romano-British history, the period of settled occupation (p. 84). That period opens with the Emperor Hadrian and the establishment, by his orders, of a definite and fortified frontier-line across the north of the province. It was now declared, not by the secret resolutions of Cabinets but by the work of the spade marking the solid earth for ever, that the era of conquest and advance was over.

(ii) The age of Hadrian and his successors, Pius and Marcus, (ii) 120-280. was the age of scientific frontiers. The first emperors had scorned such devices, but as the years went by this confidence of strength faded slowly away. At the end of the first century men became uneasy (a stronger word would be misleading), and in Hadrian's reign (117-138) this uneasiness took visible shape in the organisation of frontier defences. In Britain the results were singularly striking and important. Hadrian sent the Sixth Legion to replace the Ninth (if that had not been done before), and about 124 set the governor, the trusted and distinguished Aulus Platorius Nepos, to construct a line of continuous fortifications across the northern frontier of the province, and to place a wall, like the Great Wall of China, as an everlasting barrier between the province and the unconquerable Caledonians. The recent annihilation of the Ninth Legion may have hastened this measure: in itself it differs from the general policy of Hadrian only in the exceptional elaborateness given to it. The line selected ran from the mouth of the Tyne to the mouth of the Solway, from Newcastle to Carlisle and a little further, a distance of rather more than seventy miles. We have no means of telling whether this line was north or south of the Roman frontier during the preceding years, except that Luguwallium (Carlisle) was perhaps occupied by Agricola. It was certainly well chosen. Between Tyne and Solway the North of England contracts to an isthmus, like though far wider than the isthmus between Forth and Clyde, and this isthmus, like its northern parallel, is made more distinct by a valley which runs from Newcastle through the hills into the lowlands round Carlisle, and provides (as it were) a long pass, used alike by medieval road and modern railway. The north side of this valley is formed by a chain of hills, which slope again steeply and, in the centre of the isthmus, precipitously to the north;

Hadrian's
Wall.

beyond them wild moors and wastes and mosses, trodden to this day by few but the sportsman and the shepherd, stretch far into Scotland. Here was a natural limit. On these hills stood, and still stands, the Wall of Hadrian: in the east following a straight course over their level tops, in the centre winding along the brinks of precipices, in the west crossing the lowlands of Carlisle to end on Solway. The Wall, as we know

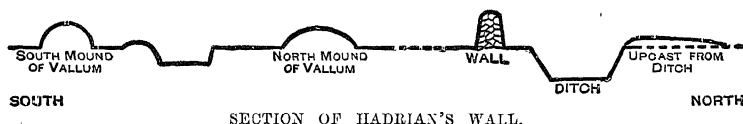


A BIT OF THE ROMAN WALL.

(By permission, from a Photograph by Thomas Ashby, Esq.)

it to-day by its massive and astonishing ruins, consists of various parts. The wall proper is a wall of hewn stone, some eight feet thick and once, perhaps, some eighteen feet high, fronted by a ditch forty feet wide. At frequent intervals turrets and small forts (mile-castles) are built on to the wall; at longer intervals there are larger forts, some sixteen in number, usually contiguous to the wall, sometimes a short space south, with stone ramparts enclosing three, four, or five acres, and connected together by a solid road twenty-two feet in width. Various evidences, notably inscriptions, make it probable that wall, forts, turrets, road, are mainly, if not wholly, the work of Hadrian; and though some of the large forts may conceivably be earlier or later than this date, no positive proof exists of either hypothesis. The object of the whole is plain: it is to form a military defence against the assaults of northern enemies. South of these works is another work, constructed of earth, and running roughly parallel to the wall at a distance which

varies between thirty and thirteen hundred yards. It may be described as a broad ditch, out of which the earth has been cast up north and south into two or (often) three ramparts, the whole, from outside to outside, measuring 120 to 150 feet. This earthwork has been called by English antiquaries the Vallum; and the name is convenient though incorrect. The object of the Vallum is not so clear as that of the wall, nor is its date certain. Its course and character suggest that it was not intended as a military work: recent excavations tend to show that it is coeval with the forts and the wall, and we can only guess that it formed some civil or legal boundary, erected by Hadrian along with the wall. South, again, of the Vallum in the inland region is another road, popularly called Stanegate. Such is Hadrian's Wall, rightly called by his name, although portions of it may be possibly older or later than his reign.



It is, however, not the whole of Hadrian's frontier defences. The western part of the wall is, topographically, its weakest part. The lowlands round Carlisle offer no vantage ground to fortifications, and no obstacle to invasion save some large mosses, while the configuration of the Solway estuary exposes Western Cumberland to the opposite coast of Dumfries and Kirkcudbright. Here, accordingly, Hadrian's Wall was liable to direct attack and to outflanking, and here Hadrian provided additional defence. He established two outlying forts, each a few miles north of the wall; while to prevent outflanking he built two, and perhaps more, forts on the Cumberland coast.¹

Forts on
Hadrian's
Wall.

¹ The following list contains the forts on and near the wall, alluded to in the preceding sentences, with their garrison and acreage, in order from east to west; the numbers after the English names give roughly the distance from the last-named fort in miles, omitting Chesterholm, which lies south of the wall. Nos. 1-16 are adjacent to the wall, the rest are the western outliers:—

1. Wallsend	...	...	SEGEDVNVM	...	cohors iv Lingonum	...	3½ acres
2. Newcastle (8)	...	...	PONS AELLI	...	?	...	?
3. Benwell (2)	...	...	CONDERCVM	...	ala i Asturum	...	4 acres
4. Rutchester (7)	...	...	VINDOBALA	...	cohors i Frisiavonum?	...	3½ acres
5. Halton (7)	...	...	HYNNVM	...	ala Sabiniana	...	4½ acres

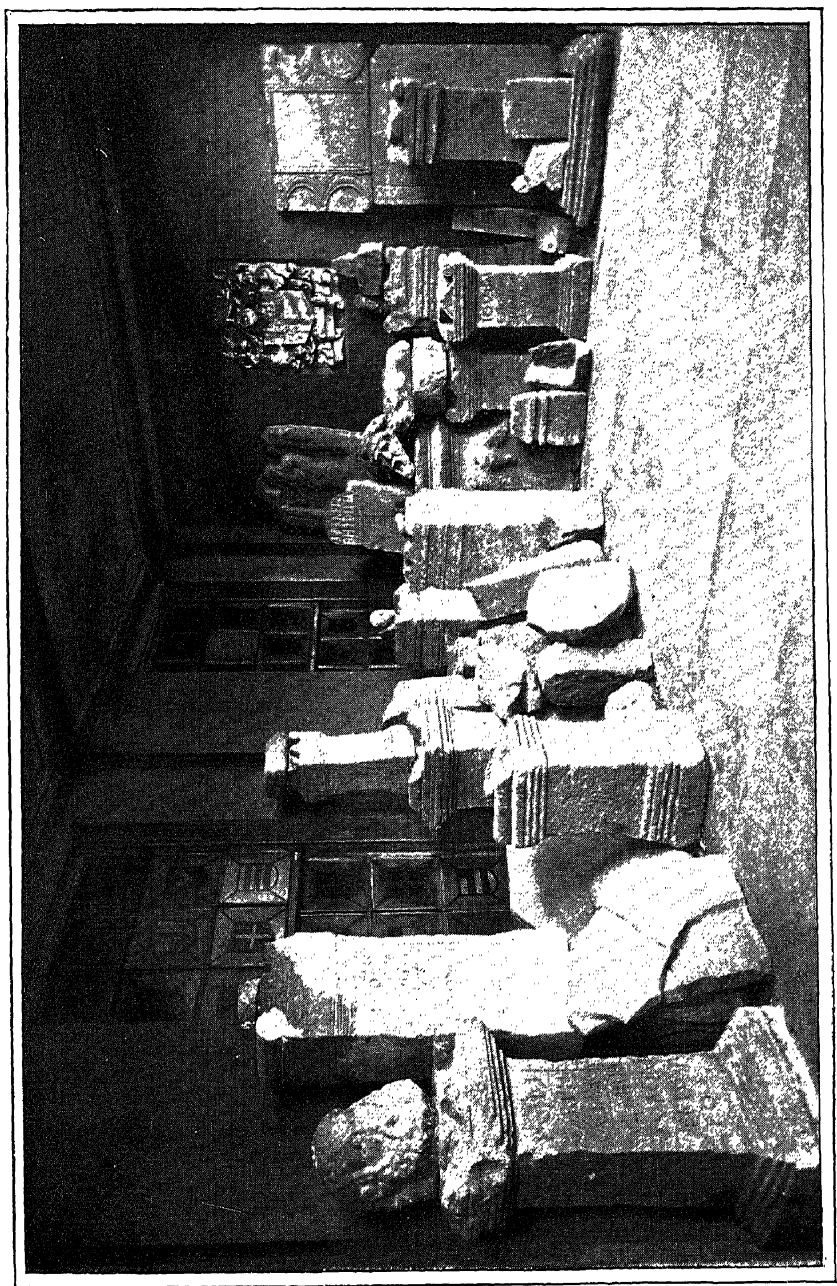
**The Wall
of Pius.**

Hadrian's successor, Antoninus Pius (138-161), the same who advanced and fortified part of the Roman frontier in Germany, attempted to advance and fortify the frontier of Britain. The cause may have been a serious revolt among the Brigantes, which apparently burst forth in the first year of his reign; certainly in or about 140-142 the then governor of the province, the capable and experienced Lollius Urbicus, constructed a new wall nearly 100 miles north of Hadrian's lines, from Dumbarton, on the Clyde, to Carriden, on the Forth. Here is an isthmus, only thirty-five miles wide, with a valley crossing it; north of it rise at once the outskirts of the Highlands, and Lollius built his wall along the low hills which form its southern side. It was a wall of regularly laid sods, resting on a stone pavement. Probably it was originally fourteen feet thick at the base, and about the same height; in front was a capacious ditch. At intervals were ten or eleven large forts, also (as it seems) with earthen ramparts, while a paved road provided communication throughout; but we possess no information concerning the garrisons, except that they seem to have been drawn from the garrisons of Hadrian's Wall. The district between the walls was not occupied. One road, the Northumberland

6. Chesters (5)	CILVRNV	...	ala ii Asturum	5½ acres
7. Carrawburgh (8)	PROCOLITIA	...	cohors i Batavorum	3½ acres
8. Housesteads (5)	BORCOVICIVM	...	cohors i Tungroorum	5 acres
9. Chesterholm	VINDOLANA	...	cohors iv Gallorum	3½ acres
10. Greatcchesters (6)	ÆSICA	...	cohors ii Asturum	3½ acres
11. Carvoran (?)	MAGNA	...	cohors ii Delmatarum	3½ acres
12. Birdoswald (3)	AMBOGLANNA	..	cohors i Aelia Dacorum	5½ acres
13. Castlesteads (7)	?	...	cohors iv Gallorum <i>or</i> cohors ii Tungroorum	2½ acres
14. Stanwix (near Carlisle) 8)	?	...	?	2½ acres
15. Burgh on Sands (5)	?	...	?	3 acres
16. Bowness (7)	?	...	?	5½ acres
17. Bewcastle	BANNA ?	...	cohors i Dacorum ?	6 acres
18. Netherby	?	...	cohors i Nervana Germ	3 acres
19. Ellenborough	VXELLODVNM	...	cohors i Hispanorum	4 acres
20. Moresby	?	...	cohors ii Thracum ?	3½ acres

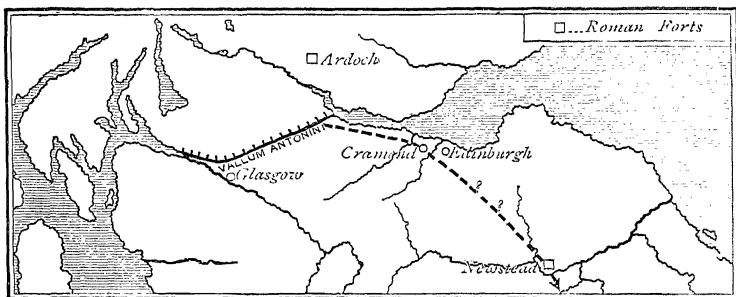
To these we might add forts on the roads which lead from the south to the wall; but it is impossible to decide, on our present evidence, how far these roads and forts were the work of Hadrian, and how far they are earlier or later in date. A fort at South Shields guards the mouth of the Tyne and the eastern flank of the wall, but the date of its erection is still uncertain.

At one point, near Birdoswald, another wall appears—a regularly built sod-wall, like the wall of Pius to be mentioned later—which can be traced for about two miles, running between wall and Vallum, and roughly parallel to both. Its object and origin are as yet too obscure to be even matter for dispute; it seems, however, to be older than the stone wall and the stone forts on it.



INSCRIBED ALTARS, FOUND AT ELLENBOROUGH.
(By permission of H. P. Senhouse, Esq.)

Watling Street, can still be traced most of the way from the Tyne to the Forth, and we may, perhaps, ascribe to Pius both this road and five forts which guarded it: Habitancium (now Risingham), Bremenium (now Rochester), Cappuek, near Jedburgh; Newstead, near Melrose; and Cramond, on the edge of

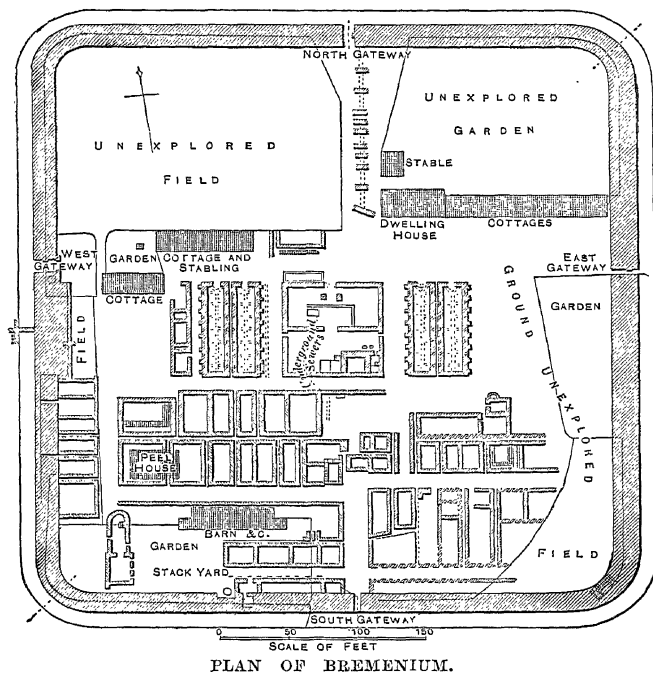


MAP OF WALL OF ANTONINUS PIUS.

Edinburgh. Later, in 157, we have apparent evidence of the construction of a fort at Blatobulgium (now Birrens), near Ecclefechan, a few miles north-west from Carlisle. But the conquest as a whole was soon given up. We cannot trace the presence of Romans along the Vallum of Pius except close to the time when the work was erected. What precisely may have caused the loss or abandonment, we do not know, but the period which ensued was full of trouble, and it is easy to understand how the district might have been both lost and never regained. Pius, at his death, bequeathed a serious British war to his successor, the philosopher Marcus Aurelius (161–180), and the ancient writer who notes the war is silent about Roman success in it. Twenty years later, when the incompetent Commodus was emperor (180–193), Hadrian's Wall itself was lost and recovered (about 183). Then the governor, Clodius Albinus, struck a blow for empire (193), and took his troops with him to Gaul. A little later a governor of Britain is reduced to buying peace and ransoming captives. At last the ablest man of the age, the Emperor Septimius Severus, interfered in person (208). He was old and ill, but his savage and indomitable vigour carried him into Scotland and cowed his enemies. He died before his work was done (211), and the stories which collected

Severus.

round him have, perhaps, obscured his achievements. But, whatever he did or meant to do—he is said to have built a wall, like Hadrian—the frontier after him was well defined. For half a century, and possibly longer, it consisted of Hadrian's Wall and some outlying forts, Bremenium, Habitan-

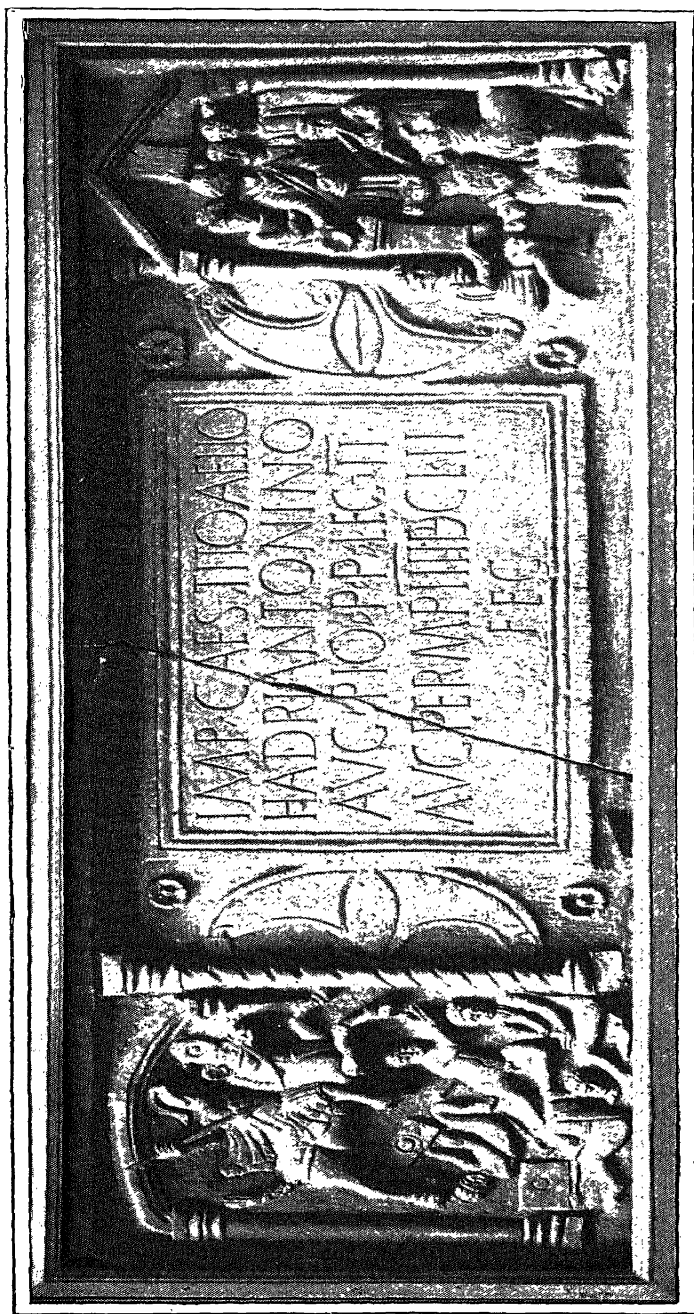


cium, Netherby, Bewcastle. All the land north of Tyne and Solway—that is, Scotland and Northumberland—remained, as before, untouched by Roman civilisation. The Roman occupation of Southern Scotland was short and purely military. It has left traces—roads and ruins that are still visible—though those traces are by no means so numerous as Scotch enthusiasts in the last century liked to assert; but it affected neither the customs, nor the language, nor the “late-Celtic” art of the natives. We shall see in the next paragraph that Roman civilisation laid also little hold on the north part of the province, and this fact, doubtless, aided the freedom from foreign influence visible in free Caledonia.

The Army
behind
the Wall,
A.D.
120-280.

In the
North.

We have now described the chief military feature of Roman Britain: the north frontier defences, as they existed through various vicissitudes from Hadrian to Diocletian. We pass on to the army which garrisoned the province during the same period. The composition of this army was not, so far as we know, seriously affected by the change from the policy of progress to that of defence. There were three Legions, as there had been since the *Legio II Adjutrix* departed with *Agricola* in 85 (p. 86) and a large but uncertain number of auxiliaries, perhaps slightly increased by Hadrian, the total being about 40,000 men. These troops were distributed according to the system described above. Legions and auxiliaries were treated differently; the legions being in permanent cantonments inside the province, the auxiliaries on the frontier. This difference corresponds in Britain to a geographical division of some importance. During the period now under consideration all Roman Britain north of the Humber and the Mersey had come, in effect, to be a large military district. It was, save for the fertile Vale of York, a wild hill-country; it had few attractions for traders or civilised settlers: it probably required a strong hand to keep it quiet, and, as the district immediately behind the frontier, risings in it were especially dangerous. Accordingly, it was garrisoned heavily, and the garrisons were dispersed over the whole of it. The centre and capital of the district was *Eboracum* (York), where the Sixth Legion remained in cantonments, while the settlement outside grew into a colony, and afforded a residence for the governor of the Province. The rest of the district was held by auxiliaries who can hardly have been less than 15,000 men, and may well have been more. These troops garrisoned the wall, as we have seen (p. 90), they also held the numerous forts south of the wall. Four principal roads gave access to the wall from the south. From *Eboracum* a road ran past *Cataractonium* (Catterick), *Piercebridge*, and other places, to the eastern part of Hadrian's Wall, and, as *Watling Street*, to *Bremenium* (p. 92). A second road, branching from the first at *Catterick*, crossed *Stainmoor*, and reached *Luguvallium* (Carlisle), a Roman settlement close behind and almost touching the western portion of the wall. Two other roads, variously ramified, formed a west coast route through Lancashire and



ROMAN SLAB FROM BRIDGENESS, CARRIDEN.

(Edinburgh Museum.)

Cumberland. Starting by Mancunium (Manchester), and the larger fort of Bremetennācum (Ribchester), a traveller could either attain the west coast of Cumberland, pass Moresby, Uxellodūnum, and other forts, and arrive through Old Carlisle (Petrianae?) at Luguvallium; or he could bend north-east along the mountainous Maiden Way, and reach Magna in the centre of the wall. Forts, some of them named in the preceding sentences, protected these roads; the forts on the Lancashire and Cumberland coasts also formed a kind of coast defence against Irish pirates, and there were a few other forts in Yorkshire. We do not know enough to draw up a precise list of these forts, like that given above for forts on the wall. We cannot, as yet, adequately fix the dates of foundations or the garrisons at various times; but there is no doubt that the whole district in question was guarded by these forts, and that the garrisons, like those of the wall, were auxiliary troops. The mural garrisons were cohorts of infantry and troops (*alae*) of cavalry, most of them (nominally, at least) 1,000 strong, and they remained generally in the same quarters from Hadrian's reign into the fourth century. The other garrisons were probably less strong and less permanent, except in the more important positions. Unless our evidence is accidentally deficient, we may add that the irregular auxiliaries, as we have so called them (p. 79), were sometimes used on the wall, and often in the other forts. The York Legion was not concerned in this garrisoning. It sent detachments or marched out *en masse* for special work—for a campaign or for the erection of a wall or a fort. When the generals of Hadrian and Pius were building their walls, they drafted men to help in the work from all three British legions. When the fort at Bremetennācum was constructed or reconstructed, about 162, probably in connection with the war (p. 92), a detachment of the Sixth Legion was present. But no legion ever occupied permanent cantonments in Northern Britain, except the Ninth and its successor, the just-mentioned Sixth Victrix, at York. The South was different. There the army consisted mainly, if not wholly, of legionaries, and it was quartered wholly in the west; south and east there were no troops, for even Lincoln had ceased to be a fortress when the Ninth Legion was pushed on to York some time in the first

In the
South.

century (p. 86). On the edges of the Welsh hills there were two full legions, each stationed in the cantonments which it had occupied since the earliest days of the Conquest: the Second Augusta at Isca Silurum (Caerleon); the Twentieth Valeria Victrix at Deva (Chester). Auxiliaries are hardly traceable. Three or four tombstones at Durocornovium (Cirencester) and

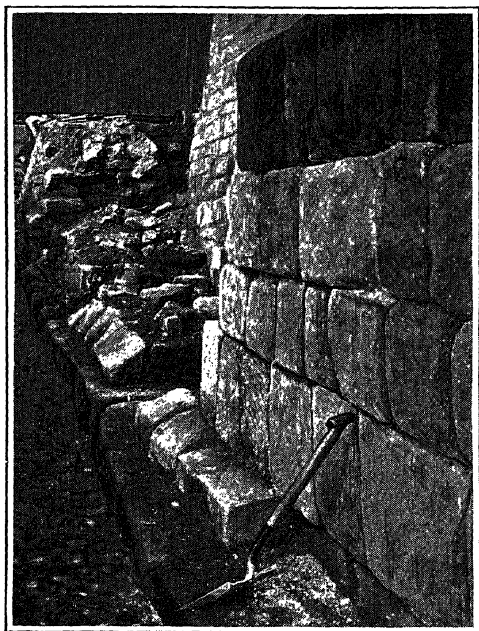


Photo: J. H. Spencer, Chester.

FACE OF NORTH WALL, CHESTER, SHOWING PLINTH.

Glevum (Gloucester) belong, perhaps, to the first century and the wars against the Silures. Three or four other instances in Wales itself are not datable, while one records the creation of a water supply at Segontium (Carnarvon) by a cohort of Sunici in the reign of Septimius Severus. There were, however, forts in Wales, whether garrisoned like the northern forts by auxiliaries, of whom we chance to have no record, or held by detachments from the great legionary cantonments at Caerleon and Chester. These forts were situated along the routes which skirted the sea-coasts or traversed to some small extent the

interior of Wales. Roads, still partly traceable, ran along the south coast from Caerleon to Maridūnum (Carmarthen), and along the north coast from Chester through Canovium (Caer-hyn, on the Conway) to Carnarvon, and the two were joined by the famous Sarn Helen, which started in the north from Caer-hyn, climbed a shoulder of Moel Siabod, and skirted Cardigan Bay, guarded by forts at Festiniog, Aberystwith, and Llanio, in Cardiganshire. Other, perhaps fewer, roads and forts existed in the interior: for instance, at Usk, Abergavenny (the Roman Gobannium), and Brecon, in the valley of the river Usk. We know little about these forts and roads, but some of them certainly existed in the second, third, and fourth centuries, and they do not deserve the neglect with which even Welsh patriots have often treated them. The garrisons of these stations, both the fortresses at Caerleon and Chester, and the scattered smaller forts, no doubt, preserved order in the Welsh hills, but they had, perhaps, another duty. From the third century onwards, the "Scoti"—that is, not the Scots but the inhabitants of Ireland—began to find their homes too narrow; raids and invasions followed, principally into Scotland, but also into Wales. The garrisons of Southern Britain were well planted to face such attacks. The cantonments at Caerleon and Chester guarded the two gateways of the west coast, the Severn Sea, and the estuaries of Dee and Mersey; while the smaller forts, like those in Lancashire and Cumberland (p. 52), protected the coast-line. South of the Severn, however, we have no traces of forts. In the time of Caracalla there was a military post on the hill-top south of Bath (A.D. 213–217), but its object is unknown; further west neither Romans nor Irish often approached the coast—an iron-bound, harbourless shore, with moor and marsh behind it. The legions were, however, not used simply for local defence; detachments were drafted to meet passing needs elsewhere, or to support the claims of governors who aspired to the Imperial throne. The British army even helped on occasions to aid the legions on the Rhine in the task of garrisoning Gaul. There appears, for instance, to have been disturbance in Armorica (Britanny) at some period in the third century: one Artorius Castus, commander of the Sixth Legion, suppressed it, acting as "leader of the legions, cohorts and cavalry troops from Britain against the Armoricans."

Legions and auxiliaries were not the only defenders of Britain. Careless as the Romans generally were of naval organisation, the Emperor Claudius established a fleet for Britain at the first invasion of the island (p. 53). It was itself, like most of the Imperial flotillas, of little importance, and it was allowed to decay in the third century. The Fleet

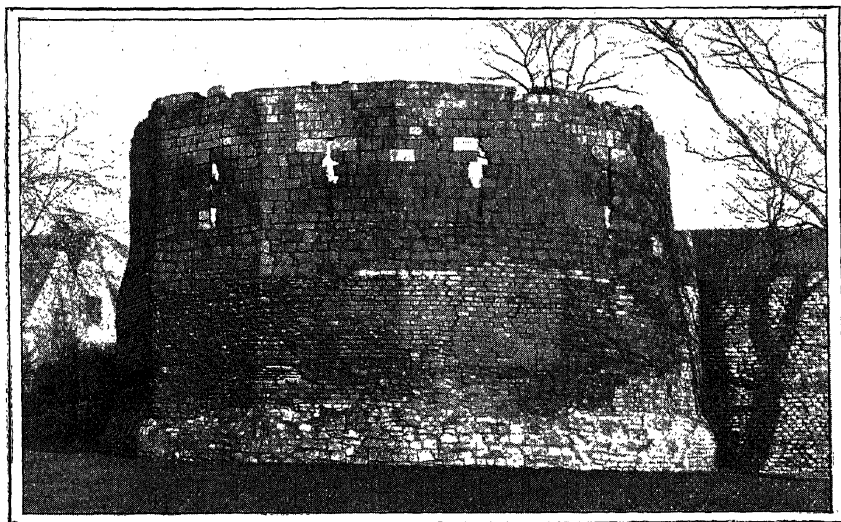
It remains to sketch briefly the recruiting of the forces hitherto described or mentioned, and to estimate, as briefly, the effect which they may have had on the island in which they were stationed. We shall deduct from our survey the fleet, which was unimportant and, probably, without serious effect. The land forces, as we have said, may have amounted to 40,000 men. We can, therefore, reckon the recruits annually required at a little more than 2,000 men, the time-expired soldiers at something less than that number. During the early years of the Conquest, the bulk of the legionaries in Britain came apparently from towns in the north of Italy, but after about 70 Italians become very few. Spain and Gaul were also early laid under requisition, and some men hailed from the Danubian Provinces. In the second century, under and after Hadrian (120 onwards), the legions were to some extent filled up by British levies, and to some extent supplied from the Rhine and the Danube. The auxiliaries were drawn from a variety of sources; most came from the valley of the Lower Rhine or from Gaul, some from Spain, some from the Danubian Provinces, a few from even further east, and some bowmen from Syria. Hardly any were of British birth. From time to time, generals like Agricola may have employed local levies. Occasionally a Briton found his way into an auxiliary regiment. About 145, for instance, a Yorkshire Brigantian served in a "Thracian" cohort on the Wall of Pius. But Britain was in general too restless for British auxiliaries to be quartered safely in the island. These arrangements correspond closely with the arrangements for the disposal of recruits levied in Britain. British-born legionaries were, probably, never numerous, for Britain contained few municipalities of Roman citizens; but the few examples known to us of such soldiers occur on the Rhine and the Danube. British-born auxiliaries, on the other hand, were levied in abundance; the restless, half-civilised Britons were as ready to recruit as to rebel, and the regiments thus National-
ality of
the
Soldiers.

raised provided a large portion of the best auxiliaries on the Rhine, and even on the Danube. It appears, indeed, that, at any rate, in the second century Britain and Germany exchanged levies for both classes of Imperial troops. We may say, in short, in the matter of recruits the troops stationed in Britain were drawn principally from the Rhine, some from other parts of Western Europe, a few from Italy (mostly in the early part of the occupation), and next to none from Africa or the East. On the other hand, the troops levied in Britain were quartered partly in Britain, but principally along the Rhine and the Danube. A more important but more difficult question is the destiny of the time-expired men. For these veterans colonies were often founded in the first century; others returned to their homes, and others settled where they had served. In Britain there were few colonies, veteran or other. Camulodunum was established by Claudius expressly for veterans (p. 44); Glevum, founded about A.D. 95, may have served the same purpose; of Lincoln the origin is unknown, while Eboracum (York) apparently arose, in the second or early third century, out of the "canabae" of the Sixth Legion. Colonial provision for veterans was, therefore, scanty in Britain. For the rest we have little evidence. We must for the present leave unsettled the two problems whether the veteran element in the province was sufficiently large to accelerate the spread of Roman speech, civilisation, and franchise, and whether it was sufficiently foreign-born to affect seriously the native Celtic population. We may suspect that, so far as either result followed, it was the first rather than the second, but it should be remembered that in Britain, as in Gaul, the pure blood Celt must have been, for other reasons, somewhat rare in Roman days.

The
Reforms of
Diocletian
and his
Successors.

III. We pass on to the fourth century the reforms of Diocletian and the military occupation of Britain subsequent to those reforms. Diocletian (284-305) became master of the world at the end of a troubled time. For a whole generation, since the Goths routed and slew Decius in the marshes of the Dobrudja (251), the Roman Empire had hardly been an empire. The barbarian and the plague had marched to and fro in it, each leaving desolation behind; the seditions of generals claiming to be emperors, the seditions of troops demanding to be electors, the weakness of some rulers, the early,

deaths of others, had combined to overthrow the great structure reared by Augustus. Diocletian commenced a new system, and his work, begun perhaps in details by his predecessors and extended by his successors, gave fresh life to the Roman world. For the army the new system meant three principal changes. In the first place, the army ceased to be recruited exclusively (at least, in theory) from within the Empire; barbarian strangers



MULTANGULAR TOWER, YORK.

were admitted in large and ever larger numbers both to the rank and file and to the highest posts of command. In the second place, the heavy infantry legion ceased to be the chief feature in the army: it survived, it was even still composed for awhile of citizens, but the light troops, and especially the cavalry, both supplied by barbarians, grew more and more predominant. In the third place, the army ceased to be merely a chain of frontier garrisons; the defence of the frontiers went on, but besides the troops which sustained it, and excelling them in dignity, there was a new field army of infantry and cavalry stationed in no permanent or definite cantonments and only loosely connected with the provincial system.

The system which we have described is clear in its main

outlines; it contains difficulties in detail, and not the least is its application in Britain. Our chief information about the army in fourth-century Britain is derived from the "*Notitia Dignitatum*," a list drawn up about 415 of all the offices, civil and military, and of all the troops then existing in the Empire. The general organisation of Britain, as given in this list, is intelligible enough (p. 41). The island was ruled by a civilian, *Vicarius Britanniarum*. Under his control were five provinces (their positions are almost wholly unknown) with five civilian governors. For the army there was a "*Comes Britanniarum*," who commanded the field army, a "*Comes Littoris Saxonici*" (to whom we shall return presently), and a "*Dux Britanniarum*," general of the frontier defences. The field army is comparatively small—detachments of one or two legions (the list is here obscure) and six regiments of cavalry; it was, perhaps, thought that the island-province was safe from the huge barbarian raids which assailed the provinces of the European mainland. The frontier forces are comparatively numerous; the "*Duke of the Britains*" commanded at least thirty-seven regiments, posted along Hadrian's Wall, or in small forts (so far as we can identify them) in the North of Britain, with the Sixth Legion at York. These regiments do not bear names characteristic of the Diocletianic army, nor are they organised on the new system; they are, in reality, the regiments which garrisoned the North of Britain in the preceding period described above (120–280), and their appearance in a fifth-century document is somewhat annoying. Are we to suppose that the compiler of the "*Notitia*," working at a date when Britain was practically lost to Rome, inserted an obsolete list to hide an ugly gap? That is the theory of Mommsen. Or shall we say that Diocletian never completed his military reforms, and that the frontier forces of Britain survived the general change? Diocletian's own work was done in the East. He left the West largely to colleagues, and his financial reforms were most thorough in his own district. It may well be that his military reforms were also less perfect in the West. Unfortunately, we have little further evidence: neither inscriptions nor literature tells much about fourth-century Britain. The wall and its forts, and the roads which led to it and along it, were certainly held, though not without occasional interruption from Pict and Scot

rushing southwards. The coast road from Chester to Carnarthen was also still in use; but the troops which held these lines have left no lapidary memorial of their names and characters in this century, and we must be content with possibilities. One dilemma, at least, the historian of this age may offer to his critics: either the army in Britain was then much what it was in the third century, or it has vanished so utterly that it might never have been.

One portion of the subject only is better known to us. The "Count of the Saxon Shore" (p. 41) was a high military official. He ruled nine forts on the south-east coast, called

The Saxon
Shore.

"Saxon" because it was the prey of Saxon pirates. Carausius (p. 169) had been sent against these pirates; after his death we hear no more of the dangerous Channel squadron to which he owed his power. Instead, Constantius Chlorus, colleague and representative of Diocletian in Britain, formed a coast defence of forts—some old, some newly erected, extending from the Wash to Sussex.¹

We approach the end of Roman rule in our island. Soon after 400 every kind of disaster fell at once on the Western world. In 407 a vast host of Vandals, Franks, and Goths burst through the Roman frontier forces along the Rhine, and swept like a hurricane over Gaul and Spain to the shores of Ocean and the Pillars of Hercules. In 408 Alaric the Visigoth invaded Italy itself; in 410 he stormed and sacked the capital of the world, the Eternal City of Rome. Meanwhile Britain was the battle-ground of rival pretenders (p. 171);

¹ The list of them illustrates well the system of the age; the order of names is that of the "Notitia," not of geography:—

Othona	Bradwell (Essex)	Numerus Fortensium.
Dubrae	Dover	Milites Tungricani.
Lemannis	Lymne (Kent)	Numerus Turnacensium.
Branodanum	Brancaaster (Norfolk)	Equites Dalmatae Branod.
Gariannonum	Burgh Castle, near Yarmouth	Equites Stablesiani Garian.
Regulbium	Reculver (Kent)	Cohors i Baetasiſſorum.
Rutupiae	Richborough (Kent)	Legio ii Augusta (part).
Anderida	Pevensey (Sussex)	Numerus Abulcorum.
Portus Adurni	? Porchester	Numerus Exploratorum.

Only two of these forts have vanished: Portus Adurni (of which even the site is not known), and Dubrae, undoubtedly Dover, where the fort was probably near the present harbour. Of four the remains are extensive and imposing, but we can write no history of them; we know the dry facts only of their dates, names, and object.

and when at last, three or four years later, the chaos cleared and order was somewhat restored, Britain, like Gaul and Spain, had been virtually severed from the Empire. After 409, says the Saxon Chronicle, repeating a statement made by Greek and Latin writers, the Romans ruled no more in Britain.

Post-
Roman
Britain,
409-450.

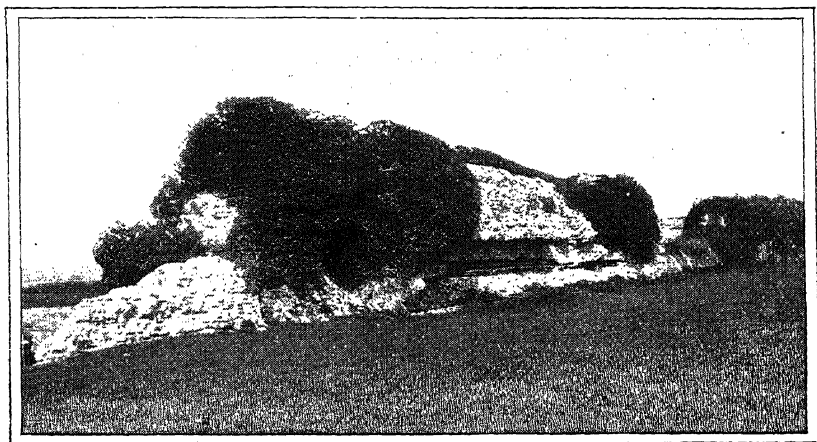
IV. The connection of Rome with its British province did not cease suddenly. The much-talked-of "departure of the Romans" was not the exodus of a race or a civilisation; it



BURGH CASTLE, NEAR YARMOUTH, SUFFOLK.

did not mean what the departure of the English from India or the French from Algiers would mean to-day. After 409 the Roman government probably ceased to send officials regularly to rule in Britain; but Britain was still Roman, and held itself to be Roman. Its inhabitants, or at least its upper classes, spoke Latin. Their names were often Latin; and though Celtic names became common as time went on, they were at first no commoner than non-Roman names generally among high Roman officials in the fourth century. Their towns were inhabited as in the fourth century, and were known by the same names and titles. Even in the sixth century they called themselves "Romani" in contrast to surrounding

barbarians. The administration of the country seems to have fallen into the hands of the great nobles, just as, but for the Franks, it might have done in Gaul. Of the army we know very little, but that little confirms us in the belief that it was more or less a rough continuation of the Roman system. Roman military titles—"emeritus,"¹ "protector," "tribunus"—meet us on inscriptions. The Saxon "Bretwalda" and the dragon ensign of Wessex may, perhaps, be traces of things Roman transmitted through the Romano-Britons; and, if the historian Jordanes be right, a British chief, Riotimus, crossed



RICHBOROUGH, NEAR SANDWICH.

the ocean with 12,000 men to help the Emperor Anthemius, who was struggling with barbarians in Gaul, about 470. Stout resistance was shown to the Saxons, invading, since 450, no longer as mere raiders, but as settlers come to stay (p. 163). The contemporary Gildas, priest and pessimist, denounces his countrymen for disgraceful weakness (p. 174), and modern historians have used his words to discredit the Roman government. Its despotic system, we are told, crushed local independence and local vigour (p. 74), and men "forgot how to fight for their country when they forgot how to govern it." The truth, in the view of the present writer, is almost the reverse. The Romans, either

[¹ A time-expired soldier. The title "protector" occurs on the Vortipore stone, p. 173.]

from laziness or from more enlightened motives, accorded much local autonomy to provincials, and it was largely owing to them that the Britons so long resisted the English. Their task was doubtless lightened by the fewness of the English, but this is not all. The Celt with Roman aid did what the Celt alone could never have done.

R. CAMBER-
WILLIAMS.
Heathen
Britain.

PAGANISM, to use a later word, was the religion of the classical



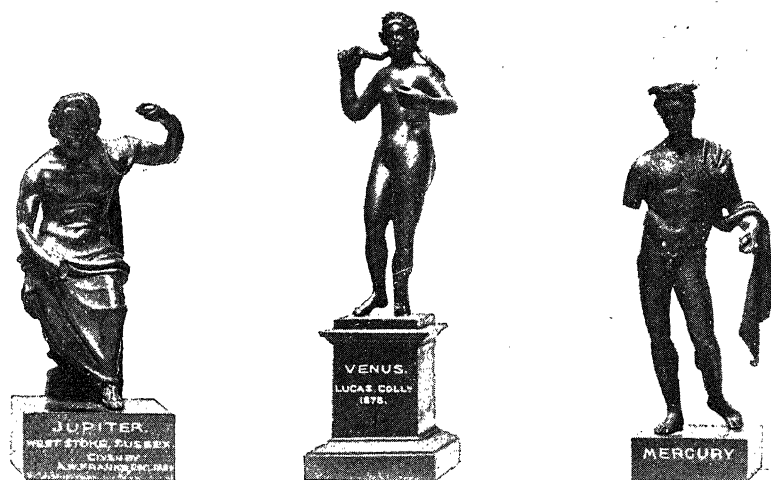
STATUETTES OF ROMAN DEITIES.
(British Museum.)

world during the heyday of its civilisation. Consequently there is a plentiful supply of materials, in writings, structures, etc., which render the depicting of the religious life, and the reconstruction of the religious creed, of the Greek and the Roman a comparatively easy undertaking. With the Celt it was otherwise: he abjured his paganism at a time when civilisation can scarcely be said to have dawned upon him. The picture of Celtic heathenism can, therefore, be drawn only in a faint and often uncertain outline. Such information as we do possess is derived from three sources:—(1) The writings of Greek and Roman authors, recording the writers' observations or the narratives of such as had travelled, com-

manded, or governed in countries inhabited by Celts. (2) Writings of Celts themselves, of a later and chiefly post-pagan date. (3) The results of modern anthropological and antiquarian researches.

At the time of Julius Cæsar's invasion, Britain was peopled by the Iberians, and two branches of the Celtic family—the Gaels (or Goidels) and the Brythons.

These three different peoples, though alike much given to religion, as Cæsar relates, yet differed in their religion as



STATUETTES OF ROMAN DEITIES.

(British Museum.)

in their civilisation. Civilisation travelled westwards, and carried with it religious as well as social and political innovations; so that what were at one time the religious practices of the Brythons of the eastern districts, became, at a later period, those of the Gaels of the west. And with the advent of the Romans, considerable modification of the old Celtic religion took place in the direction of the conquerors' faith.

Cæsar identifies the chief Celtic deities with the well-known gods of the Roman pantheon—Mercury, Apollo, Mars, Jupiter, and Minerva. The basis of this identification was we cannot doubt, identity of attributes and powers ascribed to the various deities by Celt and Roman. In the main,

The Gods.

therefore, the leading ideas of the heathen Celt were those of heathen nations generally—the deification of Nature and the personification of its powers.

Of these deities, Mercury, probably known in Britain as Ofydd (Ovyth), was considered the chief. He was the inventor of all the arts, the patron of all roads and journeys, and his was the most potent influence in the acquiring of money and in commercial transactions. Of him, Cæsar states, there were very many representations, and of these Lucan has left us an interesting description. The god was represented as an extremely old man, with bald forehead, the remaining hair quite grey, the skin wrinkled by years and embrowned as that of men who have grown old in seafaring life. His clothing was a lion's skin. In his right hand he held a club and in his left an outstretched bow, for which a supply of arrows was provided in the quiver which hung at his side. But Ofydd was also the god of speech. In the representation, he drew after him, by means of amber and gold cords fastened to their ears, a willing crowd of men. The other ends of the cords passed through the tip of the god's tongue, who, so far from appearing to suffer in the ordeal, smiled benignantly upon his audience.

Of Apollo, Cæsar merely states that he was considered the repeller of diseases. Besides this, however, he was the Celtic sun-god. His British name was Mapon—later, Mabon—meaning “a boy, or male child.” He was generally represented accompanied by an elderly goddess known as Sirona, his mother, according to Welsh mythology, where Mapon figures as “Mabon mab Modron”—Mabon, son of Modron.

The god of war, Mars of classic mythology, was specially venerated among the Celts. Camulus, as he was most popularly known, in addition to presiding over and deciding the fortunes of war, also ruled the winds. At an early period he seems to have occupied the position of the state god *par excellence*. Upon the outbreak of war a public vow was made that all the spoil taken from the enemy should be devoted to the war-god. And when the war was ended, and victory assured, the captured animals were sacrificed, and the other booty heaped up in the sacred spots of the cities. Any violation of this vow, either by withholding, like Achan

or subsequently purloining the booty, was regarded as the highest form of treason, and treated accordingly.

Jupiter was known under various names, according to the functions and powers attributed to him. As *Sucelus* or



(a) PLAQUE OF DEUS NODENS. (b) PECTILLUS AND THE WOLF.
(*Lydney Park.*)

Taranus, he wielded the thunderbolt. As *Esus* or *Hesus*, he was the lord of woodlands, fields, and gardens, and the patron of the shepherds. Under the name *Nodens*—Welsh, *Nudd* or *Lludd* (*Lud*)—he is thought to have answered to the Roman *Neptune*, the ruler of the sea. Under this character

he had a temple at Lydney, on the Severn, where a picture of him has been discovered. He is shown as a youthful deity, crowned with rays, standing in a chariot drawn by four horses, and accompanied by winged figures representing the winds.

The only goddess mentioned by Cæsar is Minerva. She was not, however, by any means the only female deity, most of the gods having goddesses associated with them. The goddess whom Cæsar identified with Minerva, and to whom the initiation of the various arts and trades was ascribed, was Brigantia, the Irish Bridget, known in later Welsh mythology as Keridwen.

There remains Dis Pater, or Cernunnos, as the Celts called him. He was the Celtic Pluto and Janus in one. To him the Celts traced their descent, and in honour of him, in all probability, it was that they started all their computations of time with the night.

Fairies
and
Demons.

In addition to these, there was a multitude of inferior deities, fairies, genii, and demons—remains, probably, of the element-worship supposed to have prevailed among the Iberians, and flourishing principally among the Goidels of the Western districts. First among these came the Genius Loci. Every neighbourhood had its special protecting genius, whose festival was annually celebrated with offerings and libations. Next came the Mother Goddesses, called in Latin inscriptions *Matres* or *Matronæ* (p. 60). There was also a host of divinities, friendly and unfriendly to man, with whom the salient features of the landscape were peopled. Each forest, every mountain peak, rock, lake, river, and spring had its divinity. The name *Dee*, so common for British rivers, is a survival of these times. The North Wales *Dee* enjoyed special renown as the *Aerven*, or genius of war. Even as late as the twelfth century its banks were carefully and eagerly scanned upon the outbreak of war between the English and the Welsh. The eating away by the river of its English or Welsh bank foretold disaster to the corresponding army in the pending struggle. Like the Greeks, the Welsh also personified diseases. The yellow death was "*Y Fad Felen*,"¹ while to this day the ague is known in some parts of Wales as "*Yr hen wrach*,"¹ the old

[¹ Welsh F=English V: "*Ivad vellen*" and "*Irrhen oorach*."]

hag. Closely allied to this was the belief in witches and witchcraft which prevailed. This, like many of the other beliefs of these early times, long baffled all the efforts of Christianity and enlightenment to banish it. Within living memory in North Wales a bedridden young poet's long-continued infirmity was implicitly believed to be the result of his having been "offered to the sea" by an old hag animated by family spite.¹

The Druidical system, also supposed to be a modified form of the Iberian religion, prevailed among the Gaelic Celts only. Its most remarkable feature was a powerful hierarchy—the Druids, so called from "*dru*," the Gaulish for oak. They were exempted from payment of the tribal taxes, and the obligations of military service. So great was their influence, that when two armies were on the point of joining battle, the Druids, rushing in between, could forbid the combat. And the excommunication of Hildebrand was not more feared nor followed by stricter ostracism than was that of the Druids. From these high privileges many either voluntarily entered their order (the Druids were not a caste), or were brought up for and placed in it by parents or friends.

Druids.

The whole order was presided over by an Archdruid elected for life from among the senior Druids. If there was one whose merits rendered him pre-eminent, he succeeded without dispute. If several eligible candidates entered the field, the chief was chosen by the vote of the order—not always, however, without an appeal to arms.

Besides the chief, or Archdruid, the order comprised three grades—Druids proper, Bards, and Ovates. The respective status and the distinctive functions of each grade are difficult to ascertain. But thus much is generally agreed upon—that the Druids were the philosophers and the masters of religious ceremonies; the Bards were poets and singers, lauding their benefactors, invoking confusion for their enemies, and recording the prowess and excellencies of the departed, in verses, which they accompanied on the harp; the Ovates were augurs and diviners—the Roman Vates—and possibly chroniclers; and

¹ Since the above was written, the writer has been astonished to find, in central Wales, a district where witchcraft is still implicitly believed in, and believed to be practised.

the grade also included the novices.¹ An order of Druidesses is also supposed to have existed.

The Druids in general were priests, judges—both criminal and civil—medicine men, magicians, and the instructors of youth. So famous were the British Druids in this latter capacity, that in Cæsar's time Gaulish youths often resorted to them to complete their education. No sacrifice, either private or public, could be offered without the sanction and the presence of a Druid. These sacrifices, more especially in times of war or pestilence, often consisted of human victims. He who could not procure such a victim vowed to immolate himself. For the public and state sacrifices each tribe had its settled sacrificial code. The immortal gods, if greatly incensed, could only be propitiated with human blood—that of condemned criminals being specially acceptable. On more than usually solemn occasions huge images of wicker-work were constructed, filled with these unhappy victims, and set ablaze. The event of a war, or other important future matter, was also not unfrequently sought by means of a human victim. He was struck with a sword upon his loins, and the future divined from his contortions or sought in his entrails.

The great veneration of the mistletoe was a curious feature in the Druids' system. Its discovery on an oak was the occasion of a general festival. The presiding Druid, clothed in long, flowing robes of white, ascended the tree, and with a golden sickle cut the precious plant, which was received below into a white linen cloth held between two Druids, and a thankoffering of two white bulls was sacrificed.

Another equally curious superstition was the myth of the snakes' egg. A multitude of snakes, it was asserted, came together in summer, and, by blowing into the air a kind of foam, artificially formed an egg. The Druids pretended that they were able to divine the exact time when this took place, and that they caught the descending egg in a linen sheet. This, however, was a perilous undertaking, as the snakes fiercely pursued the thief till a river was placed between them. When possessed, the egg was supposed to ensure success in legal matters and access to the presence of kings. The Emperor

¹ That the order existed seems certain, but the name is adopted from Strabo's transliteration of *vates* as *Obareïs*.

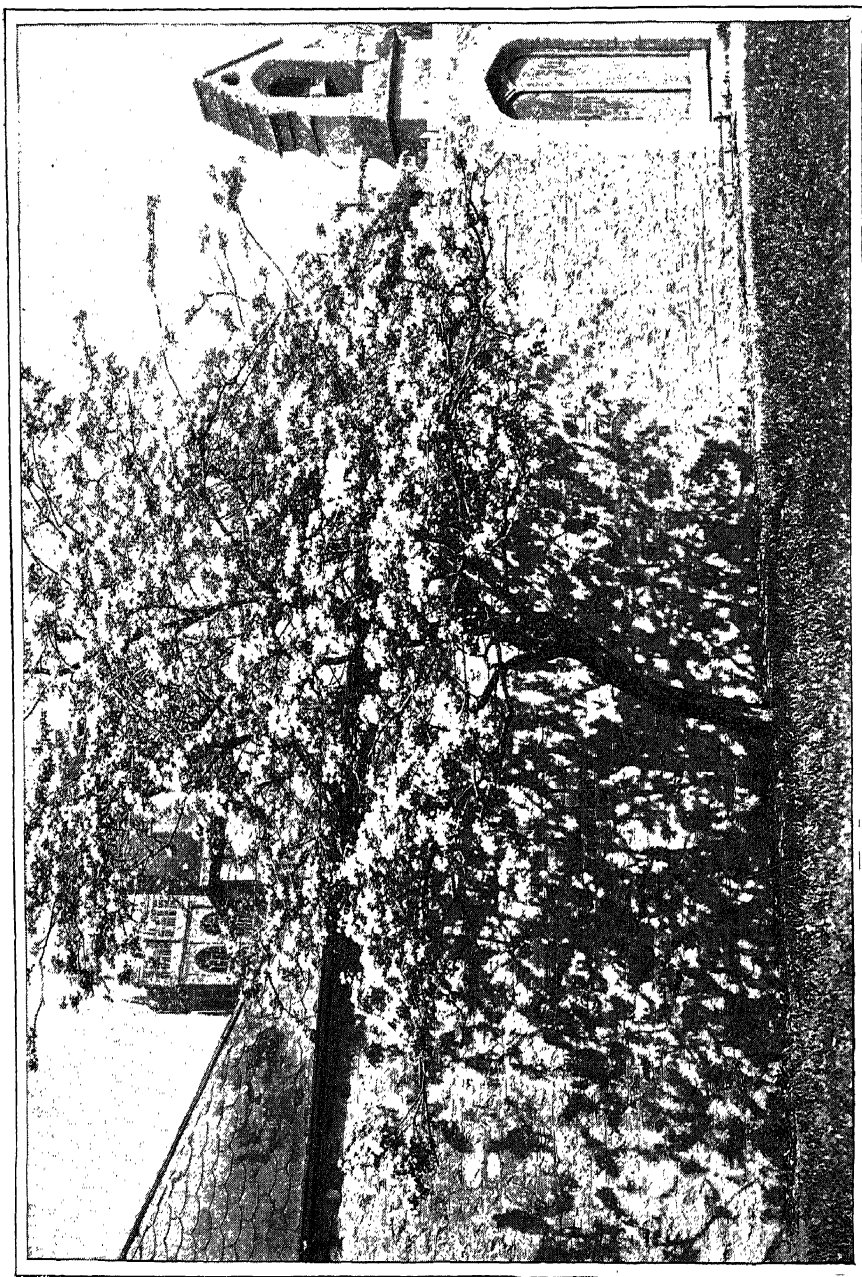
Claudius put a Roman knight to death for wearing it in his bosom while prosecuting a legal action. And Pliny relates that he had himself seen one of these eggs, of the size of an ordinary apple. The truth respecting it seems to have been that the egg was made of glass and used by the Druids to further their impostures.

The doctrinal system of the Druids is all the more difficult to ascertain inasmuch as all their teaching was oral—partly the better to preserve its secrets, partly for the culture and preservation of the memory. The teaching, so far as it is known, comprised the knowledge of the immortal gods—chiefly, it is inferred from their open-air worship, of Jupiter; the immortality of the human soul, and the Pythagorean doctrine of its transmigration; the movements of the stars, and the extent of the earth. This teaching lasted sometimes for twenty years, and usually consisted in committing to memory oracular sayings generally expressed in triplets (triads) and often in verse, a mode of imparting knowledge which lasted among the Welsh down to a comparatively late period.

The power of the Druids was irretrievably broken by the invasion of Anglesey (in 61), the slaughter of the order, and the felling of the groves. When we next meet them in Irish and Scottish history they are little more than the counterparts of Elymas the Sorcerer, pretenders to magical powers, hanging about the courts of the tribal chieftains. Celtic heathenism became, especially in the towns, more and more assimilated to the eclectic paganism, the then fashionable religion of Rome, till both disappeared before Christianity.

Who the first apostle of Britain was cannot now be determined. St. Clement's words, that St. Paul travelled "to the extremities of the West," led some to assert that he was the great apostle of the Gentiles himself. Another tradition attributed the work to Bran, the father of Caractacus. Bran, detained in Rome as a hostage for his son, was converted by St. Paul, a contemporary prisoner, and ultimately returned to carry the good news to his countrymen. Again, a third, and the most renowned legend, claims St. Joseph of Arimathea as the founder of the British Church. According to this legend, St. Joseph, Lazarus, and his two sisters, having been exposed by

Christian
Britain.



THE GLASTONBURY THORN.

their persecutors in an open boat, without either oar or sail, were providentially carried to Southern Gaul. Thence St. Joseph, always bearing with him the Holy Grail, with twelve companions started to convey the Word of Life to Britain. Landing in the Bristol Channel, they settled on the Isle of Glastonbury, where St. Joseph, constrained by the incredulity of his hearers to perform a miracle, planted his staff in the earth, commanding it to put forth leaves and blossom. This led to the conversion of the king—St. Joseph's staff becoming the famous Glastonbury thorn which ever afterwards bloomed on Christmas morning, the anniversary of the miraculous event.

These, and other stories, do not possess the historical authority, antiquity, or consistency sufficient to raise them from the domain of legend into that of even probable history. Like many another good man's name, that of the first apostle of Britain is lost in the mist and haze of the past. The probability is that Christianity reached this country as it reached others—through a variety of agencies. Individual Christian believers among the soldiers and civilians, who were continually passing and repassing between the Continent and Britain, in all likelihood made the first converts, while missionaries from the Greek missions at Lyons and Vienne, in Gaul, founded before 150, organised these scattered converts into a Church. The earliest historical evidences on the subject confirm and seem to mark the successive steps in this theory. The existence of Christians in Britain is first mentioned by Tertullian about 208. In 304, during the Diocletian persecution, St. Alban was martyred at Verulam, since called St. Albans. Christianity had then attained a position deserving the notice of the civil powers. In A.D. 314 the presence of the British Bishops of York, London, and (probably) Caerleon on Usk, at the Council of Arles in France, proves the existence of an organised Church in the southern half of the island.

Probable
Agencies.

It must not, however, be supposed that the whole, or the mass, of the nation had yet been converted. Though, thanks to their religious disposition and their quick, sympathetic temperament, the Britons were in a marked degree predisposed to welcome the call of Christianity, yet it was not till centuries later that the Church had penetrated among the mountains and glens of even Southern Britain. Churches in Wales were

originally dedicated to their founders. At the beginning of the eighth century this practice was superseded in favour of dedication to St. Michael. Now the churches so dedicated—Llanfihangel—are, with hardly an exception, situated in wild mountain glens or places which, in early times, must have been

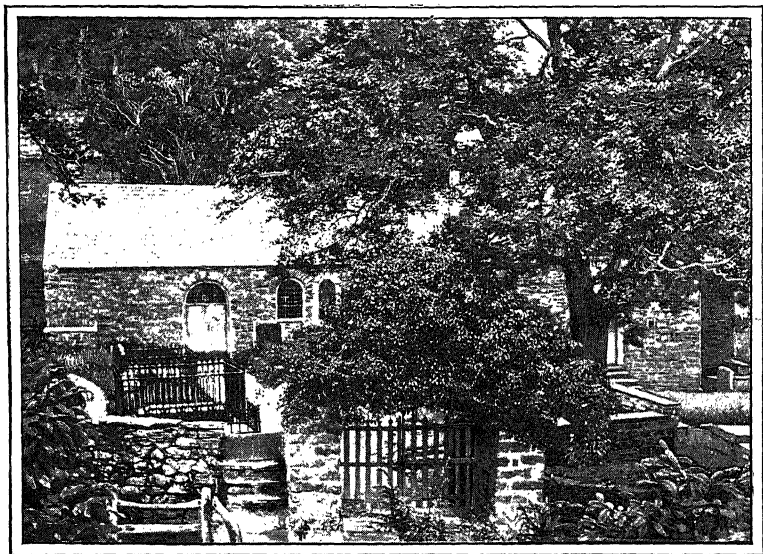


Photo: H. Gyde, Aberystwyth.

LLANFIHANGEL-GENEUR-GLYN CHURCH, NEAR BORTH.

marshy fastnesses. These mark the last retreats of dying paganism, and were evidently not occupied by the Church until about the beginning of the eighth century.

**Character-
istics :
Bishops.**

Christendom was as yet undivided, and the leading features of the universal Church, episcopal orders, the Catholic faith, and a sacramental liturgy, appear from the first in the British branch. The existence of the threefold ministry—bishops, priests, and deacons—is shown by the presence of British representatives of each order at the Council of Arles. From the beginning the episcopate was diocesan or territorial, but possessed some features peculiar to itself. One of these was the absence of an archbishop. Though personal eminence secured a primacy of honour for bishops of different sees at different times, no archbishop, in the common acceptance of the

title, existed in Wales even down to the union of the Church in Wales with the Church in England in the twelfth century. Another peculiarity was the absence of any obligation of celibacy—a condition of things which lasted in the Welsh Church down at least to the eleventh century. A son frequently succeeded his father in the episcopate, as was the case with Sulien and Rhyddmarch of St. David's, in 1088, two names unsurpassed in Welsh history for piety and learning. There were also peculiarities of ritual in the consecration of bishops. Consecration might be performed by one bishop instead of three, which was elsewhere the rule, and was attended with some ceremonies, such as anointing the hands and head of the consecrated, not in vogue in other Churches. But what more than anything else distinguished the British episcopate was the noble origin of its members. The bishops were either princes or members of princely houses. St. David, the founder of the diocese called after his name, was a Prince of Ceredigion. Saints Teilo, Deiniol, and Cyndeyrn, the founders of the other Welsh dioceses, were also scions of the noblest families.



ST. ILLTYD'S CROSS, LLANTWIT
MAJOR.

Members of the princely houses were also the leaders in what constituted the special glory of the British or Welsh Church, viz. its numerous monastic establishments.¹ The chieftain often became the abbot, and the clan the members of his monastery. The country was covered with a network of these houses. The smallest had a roll of fifty inmates. The largest, such as the famous colleges—for they were educational as well as

**Mission-
ary Mon-
asteries.**

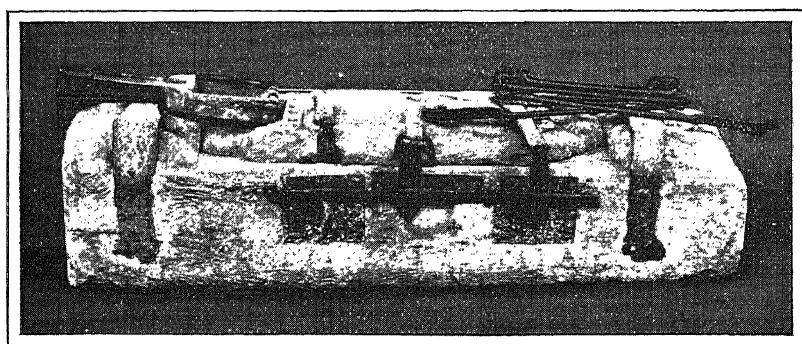
¹ Or "coreu" (sing. *côr*), as they were termed.

religious institutions—of Bangor-is-Coed in Denbighshire, and St. Illtyd's College at Llantwit Major, reckoned their members by thousands. The time was apportioned between worship, study, and hard manual labour, the last being a distinguishing feature of Welsh monasticism. But the great purpose of these settlements was missionary. The Celtic monastery had an entirely different rationale from that of the later English and Continental monasteries. The latter were the refuge of those that fled from the evils of the world. The former was the training home of those who sallied forth to battle with those evils. Each house was the centre of missionary efforts. The daily round was varied with evangelising journeys into neighbouring districts. Stone crosses were set up to mark the preaching stations; and, in course of time, converts were made and a rude building, answering in purpose to the corrugated-iron mission room of the present, was constructed. Ultimately a suitable church was erected, an endowment and a burial-ground provided, and the whole consecrated by the fasting and prayers of the mission-priest and then called after his name. Thirty-one parishes in Carnarvonshire alone still bear the names and testify to the missionary labours of the original founders of their churches, such as St. Tudno, St. Peris and St. Cybi, in Llandudno, Llanberis and Llangybi. Often the name of the church does not appear in the parish name. St. Beuno, having obtained from Cadwallon the township of Clynnog, in Carnarvonshire, settled there with his community. The conversion of the neighbourhood, and the erection of a church dedicated to the saint, quickly followed. The surrounding districts were next invaded, and, in addition to those dedicated to members of his college, no less than seven parish churches dedicated to St. Beuno himself testify to his missionary activity.

During succeeding centuries waves of religious enthusiasm, or revivals, still characteristic of Celtic religion, swept over these monastic colleges, always resulting in a fresh swarm of missionary offshoots, which issued in the successive conversion of Ireland, Scotland, and, thence, of the greater portion of Saxon England.

The earliest Creed was the Apostles'. In 325 the British bishops assured St. Athanasius, the great champion of the

true faith in that age, of their acquiescence in the Creed of Nicæa, put forth seven years before, and of their adherence to the Catholic faith. These, with the later so-called Athanasian Creed, completed the triad of formularies which continue to this day the standard expression of the faith in the Anglican Church. But this adherence to orthodoxy was not by any means a matter of course. With his religious propensities the Celt has a distinct turn for metaphysics. Controversial questions of this nature produced violent disputes.



ST. BEUNO'S CHEST, CLYNNOG CHURCH, CARNARVONSHIRE.

When Morgan the Briton, better known as Pelagius, about the year 400 promulgated his heretical notions respecting original sin and man's natural powers of spiritual recovery, in no part of Christendom did the controversy rage more fiercely than among the heresiarch's compatriots. The tribal character of British monasticism tempted the monks to interfere in intestine strife. During religious controversies the civil and ecclesiastical issues were often intermixed, and the inter-tribal struggles assumed the aspects of religious wars. Thus it happened during the Pelagian controversy, till, at last, the British bishops in despair appealed to their kinsmen in Brittany for assistance in combating the error; and two Breton bishops, Saints Germanus, or Garmon, and Lupus, or Bleiddyn, were deputed to come over for the purpose.

Of the Liturgy in use in the British Church prior to this visit of St. Garmon, 429, little is known. It is probably the Liturgy.

old Gallican modification of the Ephesine Order, originally brought by the founders of the Gallic missions from Ephesus. During St. Garmon's sojourn the Liturgy was again brought into conformity with the later Gallican use. The services consisted, besides the occasional services, such as baptism, burial, etc., of the offices for the hours and the Liturgy proper, or the service of the Holy Communion. The latter consisted of two portions—the service of the catechumen, for those under instruction preparatory to baptism, and the service of the faithful, from which the catechumen was excluded. The services for the hours consisted of hymns, psalms, collects, and lessons from Holy Scripture. Of this latter, the British Church possessed a version peculiar to itself, differing from both the Old Latin and the Vulgate.

The method adopted in the instruction of the laity resembled, and was probably borrowed from, that of the Druids. Moral, spiritual, and scriptural truths were expressed in the form of poetical aphorisms. "The best of occupation, work"; "The best of sorrows, sorrow for sin"; "The best of attitudes, humility," are among the recorded sayings of the prince-abbot St. Cadoc of Llancarvan. Sunday was strictly observed in the monasteries, but it was long before cessation from work became total and general. The ecclesiastical season of Lent and the great festivals were also duly celebrated. The time for celebrating Easter was one of the subjects of dispute between St. Augustine and the British bishops, on the arrival of the former to evangelise the Saxons. Single immersion in Holy Baptism and the shaving of the front portion of the hair, "from ear to ear," constituted the other differences when the British Church, after its isolation consequent upon the Saxon conquest, again came into contact with Christian Europe. With Rome the relation of the Celtic Church was what might be expected under the circumstances of the time. To the Briton Rome represented the heart and centre of the world, the home of civilisation and the source of all learning. The bishop of such a city was naturally honoured and respected. But, as was afterwards shown, this was not meant to imply any supremacy or authority, which, when claimed centuries later, was promptly repudiated.

Until persecution had been stopped by the Edict of Milan,

in 313, but few ecclesiastical buildings could have existed. **Buildings.** The structures afterwards erected partook of the character of the surrounding buildings. Town and country churches differed then as now. In the towns, where the Romans had reared, or taught the natives to rear, stone buildings, such edifices were constructed for ecclesiastical purposes. Remains of one, of Roman date, still exist at Silchester, the Romano-British Calleva (p. 57). In the country, on the contrary, where the inhabitants still dwelt in rude structures of wood logs or wattle, the churches were of similar construction. The erection of a stone church, in 401, by St. Ninian at Candida Casa is recorded as a "practice uncommon among the Britons." The model upon which these early churches were built was the Roman Basilica; and they generally consisted of a nave and chancel—in the case of stone buildings, also of side aisles. Inside the chancel, which had a raised floor, were placed an altar, usually of stone, a wooden pulpit, and seats for the clergy.

Endowments have already been mentioned. Gildas, writing 550 A.D., states that the "*parochiæ*" of Wales were formed and endowed in his time. These *parochiæ* were not, at least in most cases, the modern parishes, but the spheres of labour assigned to, or undertaken by, the monastic centres. The duty of almsgiving was taught as one of the special obligations of the Christian life; and the Scriptural, and indeed heathen, precedent of giving a tenth, generally recommended. Testamentary bequests to the Church, recognised in the earliest known code of Welsh laws, were also sources of endowments; while the privileges attaching to a consecrated church rendered lord and serf equally ready to further its erection and endowment. The existence of a church on his estate doubled the lord's rent. The consecration of a church in a township of serfs enfranchised the inhabitants. **Endowments.**

This last provision is an instance of the many ways in which the Church of that day sought to mitigate the condition of the miserable and to succour the oppressed. It is not easy to overrate the value, in an age of brutal violence, of a system which cowed unrestrained physical force with moral power. The power and influence of the clergy were

great and were unsparingly exercised on behalf of the unprotected. The dying lord was exhorted to will the freedom of his slaves. The weak and pure were fearlessly defended from violence and lust. The churches and their precincts were sacred and afforded a refuge which even kings durst not violate. This led to the entrusting of charters to the care of the monastic colleges. "Breiniau Arfon," the privileges of Arvon, were consigned to the custody of the monastic communities of Clynnog and Bangor. Even the brute creation were safe. King Meirchion dared not drag the hunted stag from the feet of St. Illtyd, where it had sought safety.

REGINALD
HUGHES.
The Art
of Pre-
Roman
Britain.

THE earliest trace of art in Britain hardly perhaps comes within the scope of our history, for it takes us back to the Palæolithic Era, when men had not yet learned to polish the chipped flint implements which served for all their needs. The range of these primitive wanderers was wide, and they have left their stone arrow-heads and hatchets in half the river-drifts of the world. It was, however, only a section of



DRAWING OF HORSE'S HEAD ON BONE, FROM CRESSWELL CRAGS.

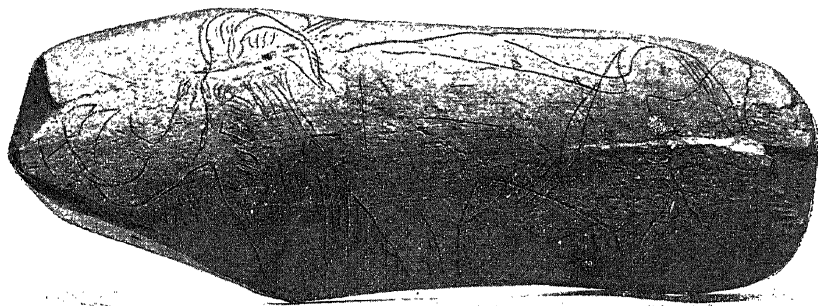
(*British Museum.*)

Palæo-
lithic
Period.

their descendants, the men who made their homes in the caves of North-Western Europe, who possessed the rare gift of artistic design. These Cave-men of France and England were the Greeks of palæolithic humanity, and it is to one of them that we owe this convincing proof of the antiquity of art on British soil.¹ It consists of an exceedingly spirited sketch of a horse's head with an upright or hog mane, etched

¹ Boyd Dawkins, "Early Man in Britain," p. 185.

with a flint point on a fragment of rib, and was found in the Robin Hood Cave in the Cresswell Crags, on the dividing line between Nottingham and Derbyshire. It was buried under many feet of rocky deposit, so hard as to require blasting, which itself underlay a dark stratum of earth containing fragments of Roman pottery. This unique specimen has indeed a special value, for it conclusively connects the inhabitants of what is now England with the hunters and engravers who lived in the caves of what is now France.



DRAWING OF MAMMOTH ON BONE, FROM THE DORDOGNE.
(From Cast in British Museum.)

These were the men who etched the contemporary mammoth on his tusk and the reindeer on his antler, and wore as necklaces or amulets the engraved teeth of the Cave-lion. It is necessary to be guarded in our geography in dealing with the people of this ancient time, because our modern England was then but the centre of a broad promontory divided by a narrow sea from Scandinavia, while neither the English Channel nor the Bay of Biscay was in existence. But these gifted savages passed away, leaving us in utter ignorance of their appearance and their habits—of all, in short, except their genius in art; and although a hazardous attempt has been made to connect them with the Eskimo, it is probable that no existing race can claim to be of their descendants or their kindred.

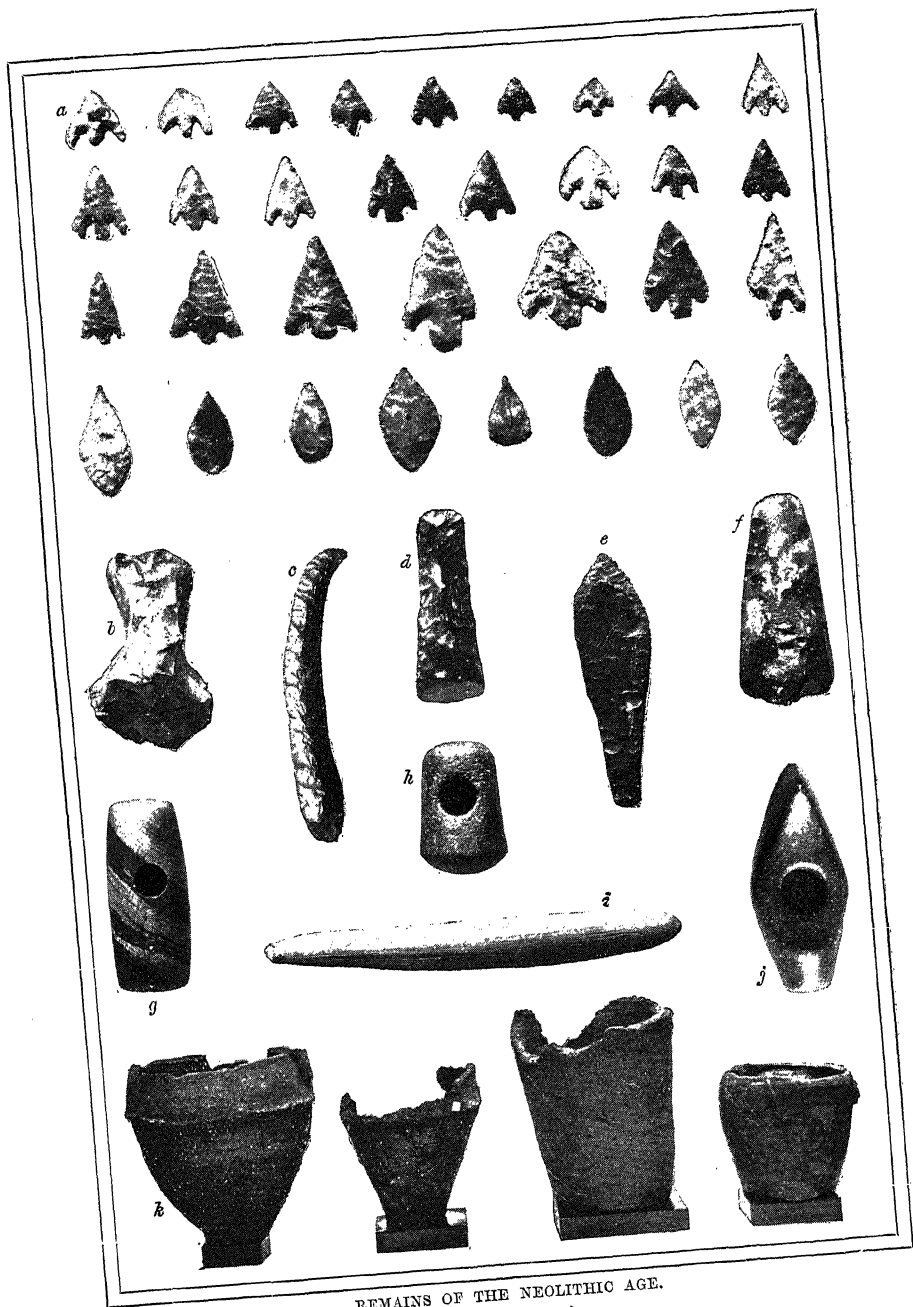
It is otherwise with the next race, the long-headed and short-statured people who, after an interval the length of which we leave geologists to fix, inhabited England—and

Neolithic
Period.

England practically as we know it now. Probably among the small dark Welshmen and the black Irish of the West the type of these people still survives; and there is less doubt that the swarthy Silurians, whose obdurate ferocity, not more than their unlikeness in character and physique to the Celts of Gaul and Britain, so deeply impressed the Roman invaders, were their lineal descendants. Probably they were a non-Aryan people, akin to the Basque or Tchudic races; and their sepulchres, in the shape of the famous long barrows, are with us to this day. Though still ignorant of the use of metals, they had learned the art of grinding the flint, and their polished stone implements, their axes and their knives, are of excellent workmanship. In some respects they were comparatively advanced, but in artistic matters they were far behind the dwellers in the caves, who with all their talents had neither hut nor sepulchre. Unlike the Cave-men, all the Neolithic races were ceremonious with the dead, and it is on their tombs that we find the first trace of the modern decorative feeling. Some of these tombs, which also served as crematories, are not only flagged and chambered, but elaborately ornamented with whorls and spirals. They had learnt the art of making pottery, though without the potter's wheel, and of decorating it, though only with the simplest geometrical forms.

The
Bronze
Age.

It is not until after the arrival of another race—a tall, round-headed people whose affinities are uncertain—that any advance in the rudimentary arts takes place in Britain. Whether the newcomers were the vanguard of the Celtic army, or a hybrid race, or a tall Finnish stock, it is not necessary to determine; but we may note as evidence in favour of the last view that the Aryan has not, as a rule, been a tomb-builder, as this early Briton emphatically was. In default of more precise information, these two races—the short-statured, long-skulled people and the tall, round-skulled race (though conceivably two families may be covered by the latter description)—can be conveniently distinguished as the people of the long and of the round barrow, though the latter may belong to two stocks, or two divisions of the same stock. The long barrows are plentiful, but the round are still more numerous, crowding every spot sacred to the elder race. It was these people of the round barrows who brought us the use



REMAINS OF THE NEOLITHIC AGE.
(British Museum.)

of bronze, if not the art of making it ; and with the age of bronze we enter the domain of consecutive history.

Decora-
tive Art.

Pottery in Britain at this epoch is still hand-made, but it exhibits considerable skill in the making. The shapes are good, and some examples are of considerable dimensions, approaching three feet in height. The variety of ornamentation also is, within certain limits, extraordinary. We find food-vessels, cinerary urns, drinking vessels, and the somewhat mysterious perforated cups which have been variously taken for lamps and incense-burners, but which are now generally believed to have been fire-baskets for conveying the lighted embers to the funeral pile. The patterns are generally made up of straight lines arranged in crosses (of which there is an endless variety), in network, and in zigzag ; sometimes with toothed impressions filled with white, or diversified with alternate cut and raised squares, and rows and groups of dots—round, oval, and triangular. Sometimes, too, we find impressions of a withe or twisted thong, and in one case a braid of three distinct plaits is clearly visible. Though the results are so various, the method of making seems to have been of extreme simplicity, the patterns having been worked either with some pointed instrument, or by pressing a notched stick or braid against the wet clay. Curved and circular patterns indeed exist, but they are far from being common, and more probably indicate a later date ; but there is never any trace of the attempt to delineate animal or vegetable life. Nor is there much change in the character of ornament as the Bronze Age becomes more completely developed ; the advance being shown by the increasing substitution of metal for bone and horn, stone and clay, rather than by any progress in the *tasté* displayed in working it. The decoration of the bronze is also geometric, and so remains until the coming of the Iron Age, though the increased desire of personal adornment is attested by elaborately graduated necklaces of imported amber, by the frequency of rings and armlets, and by stone wristlets adorned with gold and silver which the native workers had not yet learned to separate.

Beginning
of History.

Britain, moreover, is now entering on the period of written history. It is impossible to be sure that our shores were not touched on by the Carthaginian Himilco, though the identifi-

cation of his *Æsrtymnides* with the Scilly Islands must be abandoned; and if, as is likely, they were reached soon after by other Sidonian navigators, no record has come down to us. But probably about 330 B.C. Pytheas, a citizen of the Greek colony of Marseilles, had certainly visited Britain, and the account of his voyage in search of new markets became the centre of a literature, partly romantic and partly serious which served for the next four centuries as the storehouse of information about these islands (p. 13). This was the case with numerous writers of Imperial times, some of whom, like Strabo, persistently decried Pytheas and his travels. It is to one of the compilers of this period, Diodorus Siculus, a contemporary of Juvenal, that we owe the preservation of a most interesting story. He tells us—quoting from Hecataeus, a writer whose work was openly founded on Pytheas—that Britain is the birth-place of Latona, and in consequence that Apollo was honoured there above all the other gods, and, more remarkable still, that he possessed in the island a “magnificent sacred enclosure and a remarkable temple of circular shape.” Of course, this may be a mere coincidence, but one cannot help remembering the existence of Stonehenge. That extraordinary erection sufficiently answers the description in Diodorus, and whether referred to or not, it was certainly the greatest architectural effort of the early Britons. It is unnecessary to discuss whether it was erected as a place of burial or a place of worship; for among rude races the honours paid to the dead ancestors are apt to blend inextricably with those paid to the living gods. But the people who raised these great trilithons in the centre, and ringed them round with that gigantic palisade, had a fine sense of what constitutes imposing architecture. Moreover, the large upright blocks which form the circumference bore imposts dovetailed into each other so as to form a continuous architrave, evidence that the methods as well as the spirit of architecture were then in course of development. An examination of the tombs in its neighbourhood—some of which seem later, some older, than the temple—point to its being a work of the bronze epoch; nor does its method of construction, any more than its conformation, justify the



Photo: F. Frith & Co., Reigate.

STONEHENGE, FROM THE NORTH-WEST.

opinion put forward by one archæologist—that it is subsequent in date to the Roman invasion. Later in date than the vast stone circle of Avebury, which from time immemorial has been quarried by the inhabitants of the district, it was probably somewhat earlier than the Age of Iron, the next chapter which an examination of British soil opens to the reader.

The Iron Age.

The Iron Age could not have been many centuries old at the time of Cæsar's landing, for bronze was not wholly superseded. But the introduction of iron produced vast improvement in the tools of the craftsman, and in this way made a considerable difference in the art, though hardly in the architecture, of Britain. But the improvement in design is not less striking in the Iron Age than the improvement in manufacture, though the former seems to have been rather the result of external influences than of esoteric development. The Celtic population, albeit the date of their coming is a matter of controversy, had by that time consolidated a great part of their conquest; yet fresh swarms must have for a long time been passing from the mainland and establishing the various kingdoms which the Romans found. This close intercourse between the Continental and the island Celts

would naturally lead to the export into Britain of products which the former obtained from adjacent and more civilised communities, and it is precisely at this time that we meet with metal work distinctly borrowed from southern forms. The gold corselet disinterred at Mold in North Wales, the gold cup found in Tipperary, are obviously copies of Etruscan *repoussé*, and may be matched by finds at Corneto and Praeneste; while the British metal work of this period includes, besides Celtic torques and bracelets, rings and safety-pins and brooches, which loudly proclaim their foreign parentage. Combinations of the spiral and the volute, and various examples of flamboyant tracery, now become abundant, many of their forms being of extreme beauty. Such are the designs on the famous head-ring dug up at Stichel in Roxburghshire, and on the dagger-sheath found in the river Witham. Moreover, these patterns continued in use far on into historic times, and in combination with Italian and German forms reappear in Missal drawings centuries later. Another important feature of this age, the practice of interring the dead in stone chambers with a complete equipment of the weapons and ornaments that were theirs in life, has greatly added to our knowledge of the arts and culture of this period. In some cases the corpses or the ashes were deposited in megalithic tombs, the finest examples of which are found near the Boyne, in Ireland. One of these (at New Grange) is a cruciform structure, ninety feet long, made of large blocks embedded in a cairn



LATE CELTIC SHIELD.
(British Museum.)

seventy feet high, with a long passage leading to a lofty dome at the intersection of the arms of the cross, and the entrance stones, ornamented with groups of most elaborate spirals framed in lozenge or zigzag borders, of a character unknown in the preceding age. Probably these tombs are of somewhat later date than the barrow at Mold which

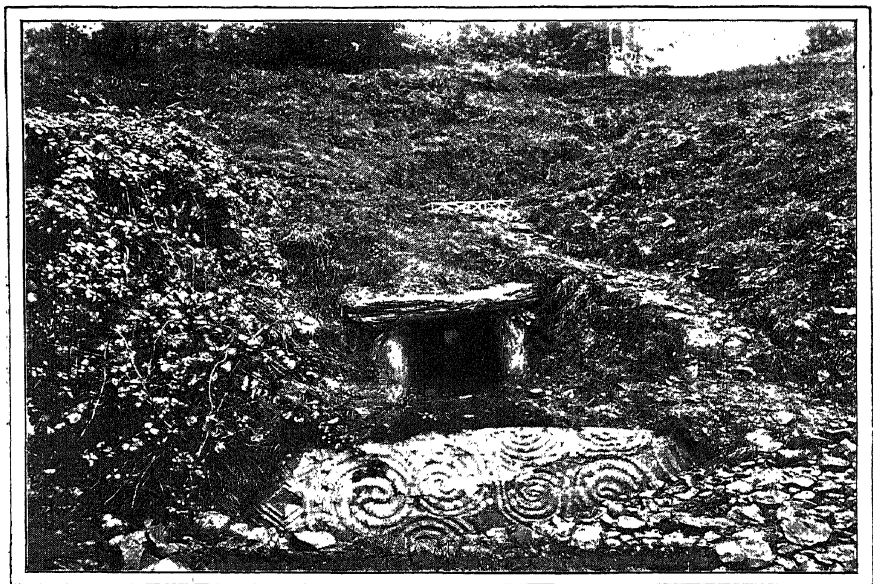
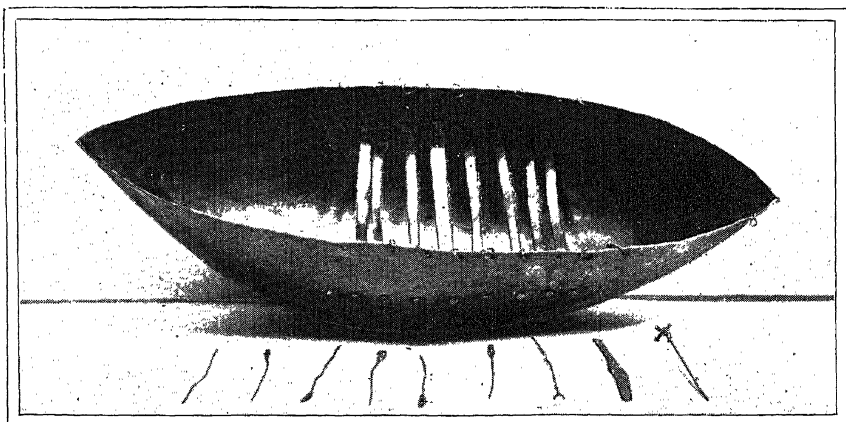
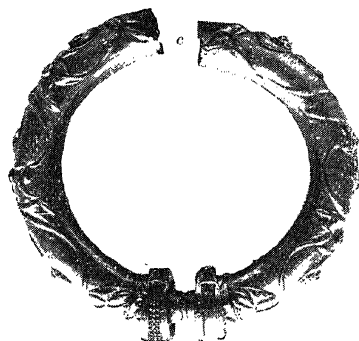
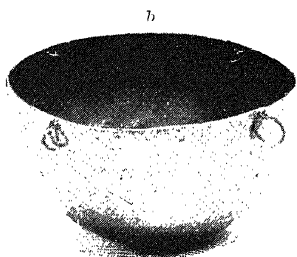
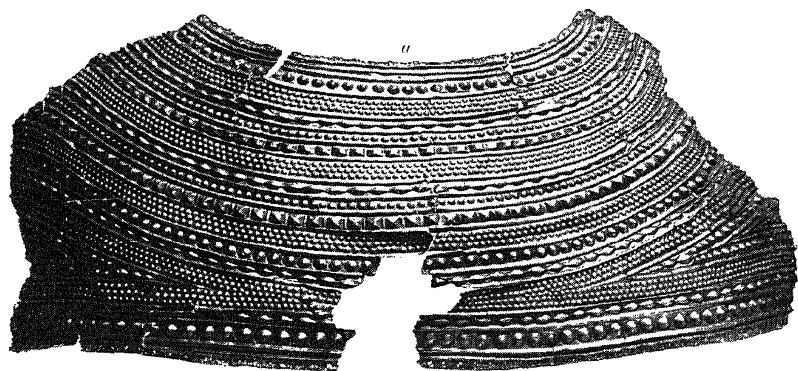


Photo: R. Welch, Belfast.

ENTRANCE TO NEW GRANGE CAIRN.

produced the gold corselet we have mentioned, and near which three hundred amber beads were found, while a few yards off was an urn full of ashes. This is also true of the tombs explored near Market Weighton, where cremation seems not to have been practised. In one of these last was a skeleton with weapons, a wooden shield with a bronze boss in the centre and a rim of iron, a horse-bit, and the wheels of a chariot. In another, in addition to the human bones, were the skeletons of two ponies, and iron and bronze chariot ornaments. In another, where the body was, according to expert opinion, that of a woman, were hundreds of glass beads (blue and green, with white lines through them), an



LATE CELTIC GOLD OBJECTS FOUND IN WALES AND N.W. IRELAND.
(British Museum.)

ivory carving, two enamelled bracelets, and rings of red amber, bronze, and gold. The production of glass has generally been contemporaneous with the smelting of iron, so that these beads may possibly be of British origin.

But the skill shown in the manufacture of ornaments is far in excess of that exhibited in the humbler walk of domestic architecture. Indeed, the Britons whom the Romans encountered possessed, apart from their tombs and temples (some of which may even then have been prehistoric), no architecture at all. Their round dwellings, though in the north occasionally of stone (owing, no doubt, to the scarcity of workable timber), were usually made of stakes interlaced with boughs, and seem to have resembled, though they probably did not equal in neatness, the like constructions in a Zulu kraal. The mimic Camulodunum which, at Claudius's triumph, was erected in the Campus Martius, to be stormed and defended by British captives, was intended to be a facsimile of the British capital, and we know that it was but an affair of palisades surrounded by artificial water, of reed-thatched palaces and streets of wattled huts.

Early
British
Coins.

The coinage of præ-Roman Britain is a somewhat difficult field of investigation (p. 15). Probably the British Celt was in this respect somewhat less advanced than his Continental neighbours, but still the art of coining was not altogether unknown. Some British tribes certainly seem to have had a coinage of their own in gold, and possibly in tin, at a date which may not unreasonably be fixed at a hundred and fifty years before Christ. The coins appear to have been mostly copies, though hardly at first hand, of the beautiful stater of Philip II. of Macedon—a coin which, it is supposed, came abundantly into Gaul as part of the spoil of Brennus. But though our coins seem to have been copied from Gallic imitations of a genuine Philippus, there are indications that these imitations were themselves of early date. This is shown by the fact that many of the British versions are fair though imperfect likenesses of the original; while in the later Gallic coins, such as were in use in the time of Cæsar, the original design had, through ignorant repetition, practically disappeared. Thus the beautiful head of Apollo on the Philippus, his

wreath and his curls, had become replaced by a series of unmeaning lines and crescents; while the charioteer in his biga (which forms the reverse) had, after passing through a preliminary stage of a burlesque man-headed horse, come to be represented by fragmentary limbs and unintelligible bunches of pellets. This is true, too, of some of the British coins, and, in a case mentioned by Mr. Evans, the head may still be recognised, but the horse has been so much altered that its neck and



EARLY BRITISH GOLD COIN.

body have been mistaken for the golden sickle used by the Druids for cutting their sacred mistletoe, while the mistletoe itself has also been found in one of the bunches of pellets which are merely the *dissecta membra* of the charioteer. It may be added, however, that the tradition that there was a horse somewhere seems never to have been quite lost by the British artists, and occasionally there was an attempt to make a fresh start in the shape of a sketch from nature of the animal at a gallop, though the result was hardly satisfactory. The early British coins, though comparatively neatly executed, are uninscribed, though it is possible that there are exceptions to this rule. But after the coming of Cæsar and the imposition of tribute, legends identified as referring to various kings and minting-places, such as Cunobelinus and Camulodunum, become common (p. 10).¹

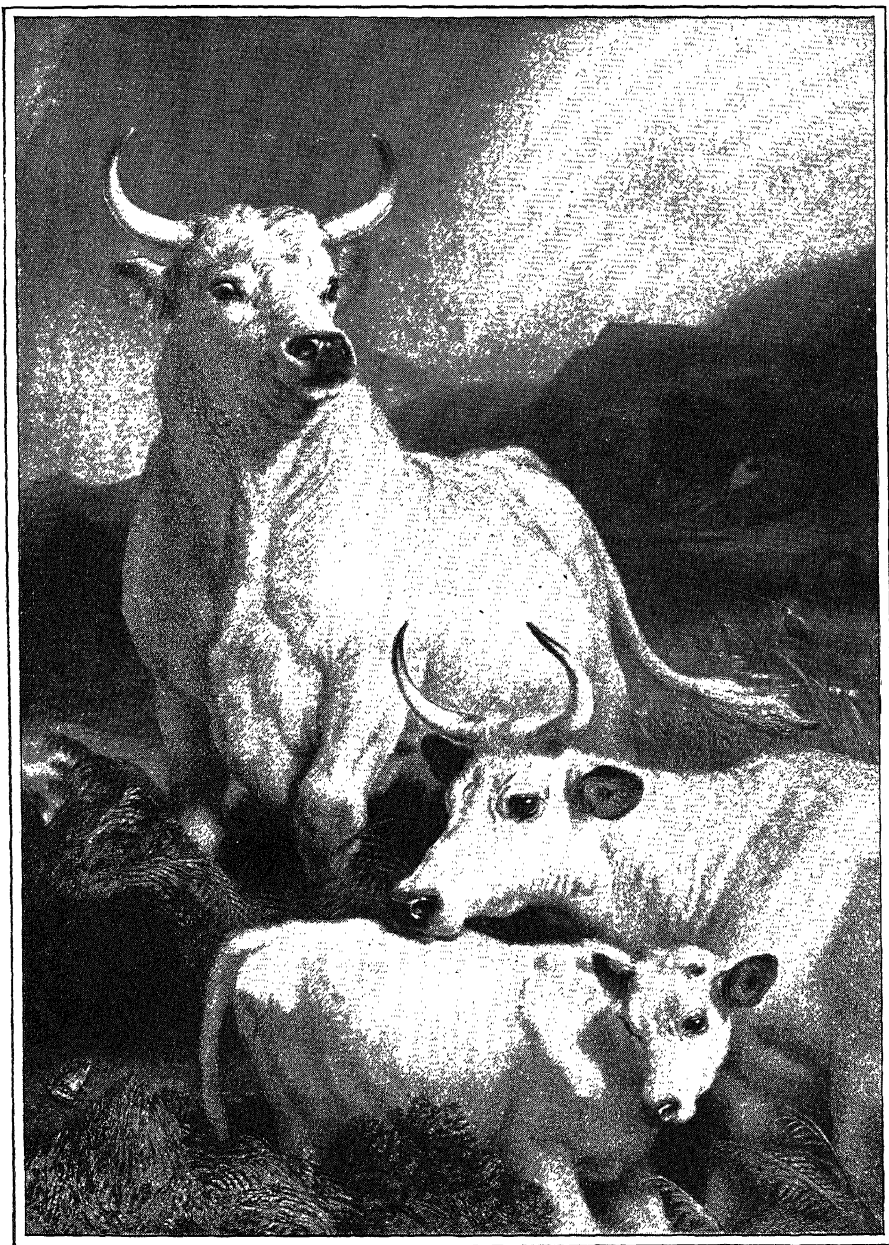
It was a rude people such as we have described that Julius Cæsar encountered, though the tribes with whom he came into contact represented the latest immigrants, and, presumably, the most civilised inhabitants of the island. But there was nothing in the barbarous arts which they displayed to attract the attention of the patrician soldier, bred in the material luxury of Rome, and familiar from his youth with the glories of Athens. As a warrior he admired the skill and courage of the British charioteers, which reminded the educated Roman of the heroic combats of the Iliad; but neither in Cæsar nor the later commentators on Britain do we get anything but

The
Coming
of the
Romans.

¹ The Silurians of the West, however, were ignorant of the use of coin even in Vespasian's reign.

the sparsest reference to her civilisation. One of his few references of the sort is in the passage in which he describes (though evidently confusing them with the bison of Lithuania) the wild cattle of Britain, the progenitors of the herds of Chillingham and Chartley. He mentions particularly the great spreading horns set in silver, which he seems to have seen, and which he describes as being eagerly sought after by the natives and used as drinking-vessels at their gluttonous feasts. The corselet of British pearls which he suspended in the Temple of Venus suggests, no doubt, a certain skill in the jeweller's art, though Pliny seems to have doubted whether it was not a fraud, both he and Tacitus referring to the bad colour of the pearls of the British Ocean, in which they are corroborated by the later testimony of Ælian. In the century which separates the flying visits of Cæsar from the partial conquest of Aulus Plautius and the triumph of Claudius, the improvement in the arts of peace in Great Britain could not have been rapid. The native kings, whose frontiers varied with the chances of intestine war, may, as we gather from the tablet of Ancyra (Angora, p. 38), have obtained the contemptuous friendship of Augustus, have propitiated the favour of Rome by embassies, and have dedicated in the Capitol the gold work of Britain. But except that they seem to have learnt to inscribe names on the native coinage, there is no evidence of any forward step in art or architecture.

Still, the invasion, no doubt, gave a stimulus to trade with the Continent, and Strabo speaks of the ivory bracelets, the amber, and the glass which at this time formed the staple of the commerce with the Celtic lands. The immigration of Gallic settlers assumed, no doubt, increased proportions, and these brought with them fresh examples, which the natives were not slow to imitate; and it is likely that the armour which the Parisian settlers of Yorkshire decorated with coral from the Mediterranean was emulated by the natives in the red enamel in which their proficiency became notorious. Sheaves of unfinished sword-blades of a Gallic pattern have been found in quantities in the south-western counties, and may reasonably be adduced as another testimony of British progress in an essentially Gallic art. The commerce in articles of more or less artistic character was at any rate sufficient to



THE WILD CATTLE OF CHILLINGHAM.
(From the Picture by Sir Edwin Landseer, R.A.)

provide the chief part of the tribute, which was apparently onerous neither in its amount nor in its collection. The duty on these imports and exports was, in fact, regularly collected; but beyond this, Britain was not oppressed by the arms or influence of Italy.

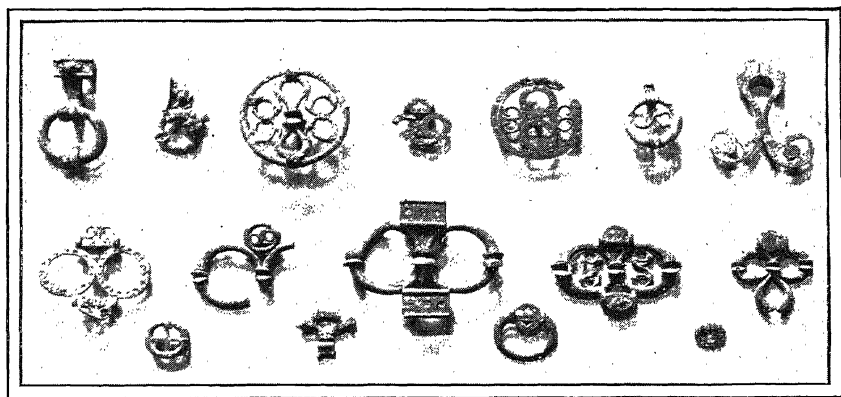
F. HAVER-
FIELD.
The Art
and Archi-
tecture of
Roman
Britain.

THE Roman Empire is usually and conveniently described as a centralised autocracy. But its centralisation was curiously uneven; in some points it closely resembled a confederation of provinces, and even its mainstay, its soldiers, all of them sworn servants of the Emperor, were grouped in provincial armies and obeyed provincial commanders (p. 80). This want of uniformity in the government was matched by a similar feature in the governed. The nationalities ruled by Rome were, in the first instance, widely different one from another, and though they necessarily grew more like as they grew more Romanised, they never wholly lost their original differences. Hence the Romanisation of each province, or group of provinces, has its special features. Western Europe, for example, learnt to speak Latin. But the older native tongues, Punic in Africa, Gaulish in what is now France, Basque on the slopes of the Pyrenees, survived till the fall of the western Empire or later, and even the Latin spoken in the various provinces had many and striking varieties. Thus also it was with the special subject of the following paragraphs, Art and Architecture in Britain during the three and a half centuries of the Roman occupation. A native art and civilisation existed in this island before the Roman conquest, and though this civilisation gave way to the Roman, the result was not quite the same as the result of Romanisation elsewhere.

"Late
Celtic"
Civilisa-
tion.

The civilisation of Britain which immediately preceded the Roman was not purely British. It extended over much of central and western Europe; it was continental, not insular, in origin, and as it flourished most among Celtic-speaking races, it has been named late Celtic. Artistically its characteristics are a flamboyant and fantastic treatment of plant and animal (though not human) forms, a free use of the returning spiral ornament (*see* illustration, p. 129), and great skill in enamelling,

which the ancients considered a Celtic invention. The primitive abundance of gold and tin in our islands encouraged extraordinary excellence in metal work. This was the supreme product of the British craftsman: what else he fashioned was characteristic but seldom beautiful. The gold coinage of the Britons and the remarkable remains discovered at Stanwick in Yorkshire, at Hunsbury in Northamptonshire, at Aylesford in Kent, at Glastonbury and the Polden Hills in Somerset, well



HORSE TRAPPINGS FOUND AT STANWICK.

(British Museum.)

illustrate various aspects of this art in the century and a half which preceded the Roman conquest. Of Late Celtic architecture, properly so called, we know nothing. The dwellings in the little lake village of Glastonbury, on the hill of Beuvray in Gaul, and elsewhere, are round or quadrangular huts, the habitations of the poor, and we can only doubtfully infer, from indications surviving in Roman Gaul and Britain, that the houses of the rich were more elaborate and distinctive.

But this culture did not survive the Roman conquest. In Britain, as in Gaul, the Late Celtic civilisation receded before the Roman. It did not wholly perish. In Ireland and Scotland, outside the Empire, the workers in metal retained their skill and preserved the Late Celtic style for a splendid future, while its traditions lingered in the province, sometimes embodied in local survivals, sometimes visible in

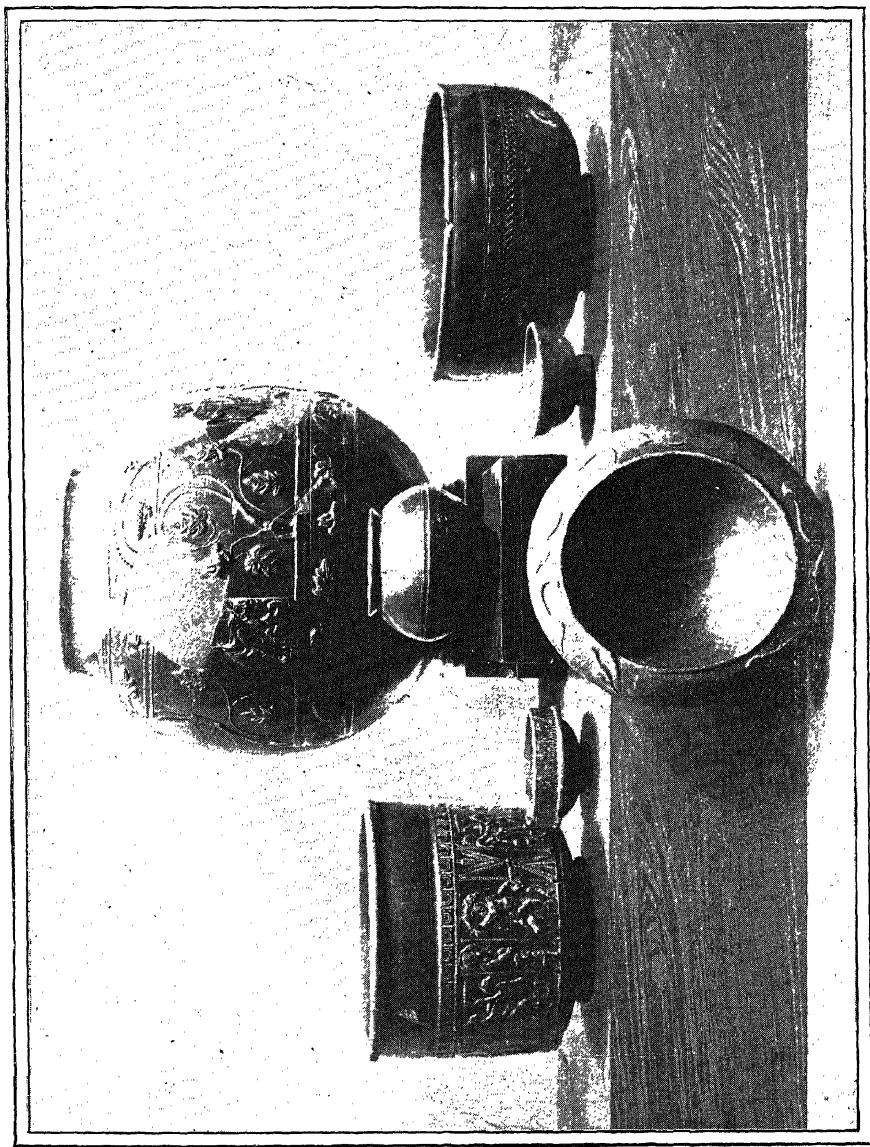
The Decay
of Celtic
Art.

general modifications of Roman uses. But despite native influences, the whole civilisation of the province was really Roman, and the conquest brought the decline of native art. This was not the fault of the Romans, nor of the Roman Empire, which has been freely blamed for it. Rather it was the natural outcome of a meeting between unequally matched civilisations. Roman art drove out Celtic, just as printed calicoes have displaced ancestral costumes in many parts of Europe. Disraeli, in "Tancred" cynically sketched some Syrian ladies who preferred the French polish on a Western boot to their own jewelled slippers. With such a preference the Celt abandoned his native art; others have done the same before and since.

The resulting Romano-British art and architecture may be conveniently described under three heads—first, the small objects of personal use, pottery, glass, metal work; secondly, the private houses, with their mosaics, frescoes, and other fittings; thirdly, the public buildings, statues, and other public and semi-public works.

Pottery.

I. The finer pottery used ordinarily throughout the western half of the Empire was all of one type, a red glazed ware rather like sealing-wax, which is known as Samian or "*Terra sigillata*." It has no connection in fact with Samos. The first seat of its manufacture was at Arretium (Arezzo) in Etruria, and this Arretine ware was extensively imitated during the second and third centuries in various Gaulish potteries, notably along the Allier Valley in the Auvergne. Very little of the genuine Arretine reached Britain. On the other hand, the Gaulish "*Pseudo-Arretine*" was imported in huge quantities and was used in every part of the province, in forts, in towns, in villages, in country houses; unsuccessful efforts were often made to imitate it. Though produced in Gaul, and often stamped with names of Gaulish potters,—Caratedo or Cobnertus, Dagodubnus or Dagomārus—this ware is Roman in every detail: it is not merely an imitation but an absolute copy of its Arretine original, and, as might be expected, it is in consequence apt to be conventional and monotonous. Still it is an attractive ware. The finer bowls are decorated with good designs in low relief, gladiatorial combats, scenes from classical mythology, hunting incidents; the figures are



SAMIAN WARE. (*British Museum.*)

well drawn, the scrolls and borders are elegantly arranged, and the shapes of the vessels are graceful. It will stand comparison with the better kinds of porcelain in common English use.

Contrast with this imported ware, Romanised, artistic, universal, some native products, less technically excellent, less widely used, but also less conventional. The Castor ware made in the Nen Valley near Castor (*Durobrivæ*), in



VASE WITH MILITARY GLADIATORS.
(*Colchester Museum.*)

Northamptonshire, comprised small vases of rusty copper or slate colour, with white ornament laid on in low relief. Foliated scrolls, or animals chasing other animals, form the usual decoration; less often we find human figures or scenes from classical legend, and on the well-known Colchester vase a fully-equipped combat of military gladiators. The execution is rude but vigorous. The Castor ware, though it borrows Roman subjects, is neither Roman nor conventional. It is rather a local survival of Late Celtic art, which finds analogies with objects dug out of the Late Celtic *oppidum* at Hunsbury, not so very far from Castor. In the ornamentation

of an urn discovered by Mr. Artis at Castor, both the scrolls below and the leaves above and the animals are treated in the old native manner. Similar survivals, but ruder, occur on the Upchurch ware of the Medway estuary, decorated with half-circles and wavy or zigzag lines, and on the New Forest ware with its curious leaf patterns. But none of these wares can match the Gaulish "Samian" in artistic merit, and none were so widely used throughout the province.

Glass was made in pre-Roman Britain—as, for instance, at **Glass.**



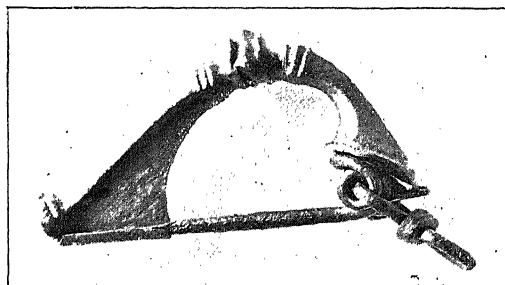
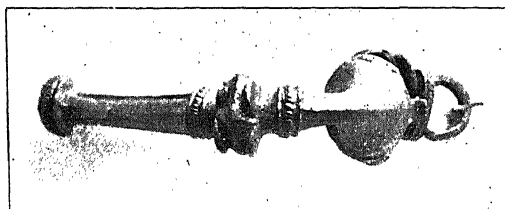
INSCRIBED GLASS VASE FOUND AT COLCHESTER.
(*British Museum.*)

Glastonbury—but chiefly for beads. It became common only after the Roman Conquest, and all the glass used in the province is Roman in character. Some may have been made here, like the large square green jars which, among other uses, served in Roman fashion for receiving the ashes of the dead. The finer fragments found occasionally, such as illustrate cut glass, pillar moulding, variegated colouring, and other refinements of glass-making, were doubtless imported from Gaul, where glass was largely manufactured. But the province was not rich enough to import much of the finest glass, the choice pieces with pictorial representations in gold leaf or the *vasa diatreta* ("pierced vases") with delicate network of external rings. The

best, or rather the most ambitious, glass ware known in Roman Britain was coarser—a class of cups adorned in low relief with chariot races or gladiators' fights, and probably made in northern Gaul. The subjects are Roman, and conventionally handled, and the art, as Mr. Hartshorne well observes, is a rude art, distinct from that of Italy.

Personal
Ornament.

Gold and silver ornaments were rare in Roman Britain. The specimens preserved to us have been found chiefly at



TWO VIEWS OF THE RIBCHESTER BROOCH.
(Blackburn City Museum.)

military centres, and were presumably imported by officers. But a Yorkshire inscription mentions a working goldsmith, and the inference which it suggests is confirmed by occasional discoveries. A gold clasp, or *fibula*, discovered at Odiham, is remote from garrisons, and another, discovered at Ribchester, has Late Celtic features and is unquestionably of British fabric. The common material, however, for decorative metal work was bronze, and bronze objects abound, some imported, some native. Among the imports are fine works like the Ribchester Helmet in the British Museum, jugs and *patere*



ROMANO-BRITISH ENAMELLED ORNAMENTS (BRITISH MUSEUM).

with highly-wrought handles, and many smaller pieces, such as the little figures of Roman gods and others which occur on every Roman site. Some of these imports are Gaulish copies of classical originals: such is a statuette of Mars found near the Roman Wall, which is imitated from two Greek models differing two centuries in date. But the majority are Roman alike in character and manufacture. The native metal work is very different. Like the native pottery above mentioned, it embodies a Late Celtic tradition in local



PATERA WITH ORNAMENTED AND INSCRIBED HANDLE.
(British Museum.)

survivals, as at Brough in Westmoreland, where a special type of *fibula* was fashioned. But artistically it far surpasses the pottery. The distinctive feature is the use of the enamels, red or blue or green. The old Celtic art of enamelling was better understood in Britain than anywhere else within the Empire, and numerous charming pieces of enamelled bronze have been found here which declare themselves by their characteristics to be of British fabric. We possess, too, an abundance of unenamelled ornamental bronze work which shows in various instances, more or less clear, traces of the Late Celtic style. But the native metal work, with all its merits, was limited. The native artists very rarely attempted large objects. Their kinsmen

outside the Empire, in Ireland and Scotland, continued to produce considerable works of art (p. 137). The Romano-Briton confined himself to brooches and clasps and trappings, and what he fashioned of greater size was fashioned under Roman influence. The two most ambitious specimens of enamelled bronze which have been found in Britain are the Rudge Cup and the Bartlow Vase: both are Roman in style and sentiment. Moreover, the native manner was not universal. All over Roman Britain we meet with small bronze ornaments which are purely Roman. They occur not only in forts, but far away from the garrisons, in the southern towns, in villas, in villages such as those excavated by General Pitt-Rivers. Metal work, like pottery and glass, bears witness that Roman civilisation penetrated into every corner of the province, and rich and poor alike chose by preference from it the smaller artistic objects which they desired.

Coinage.

With the metal work we may class the coinage, though that depends necessarily on State control, and not, like the metal work just considered, on private enterprise. In general the Roman coins minted in Britain—for instance, at London—do not differ substantially in design or *technique* from those minted elsewhere in the Empire. But during the period when Britain was separated from the Empire—that is, during the reigns of the British Emperors Carausius and Allectus, 287–297 (p. 169)—the coins issued from the British mints show a style of engraving distinct from that which is generally prevalent. Carausius, for instance, struck a few coins in honour of Diocletian and Maximian, with their full names and titles. They are so unlike the ordinary pieces of those emperors which were struck, *e.g.* at Tarraco or Sirmium, that a numismatist can detect them at a glance without needing to look for the British mint marks.

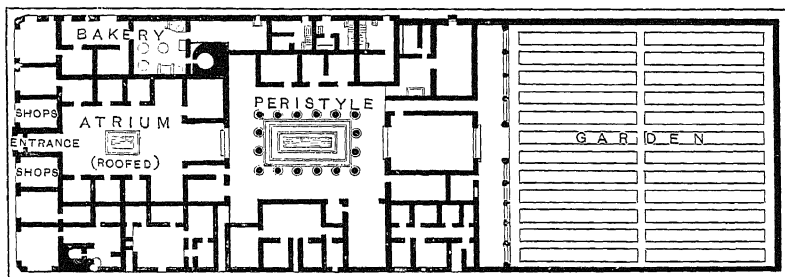
Architecture.

II. We pass on to architecture, with its ancient accessories, sculpture and painting; and in the first place, the architecture, internal fittings and ornamentation of the private houses in Roman Britain. Here a fresh factor influences the invading Roman civilisation. Differences in climate do not seriously affect the lesser arts; they affect architecture in a striking manner. When a full-grown civilisation enters a new climate, much of its architecture follows it: the forms of the public

buildings, the fittings and decoration of the private houses. But the plans of those private houses are new; they are copied or adapted from the houses of the new country, if such exist, or at least from houses known to suit the new climate. So in the north-west provinces of the Empire, in northern Gaul and Britain. Here, under chilly skies, the public edifices were Roman and the internal fittings of the dwelling-houses are Roman, but the plans of those houses were not such as obtained in sunnier Italy.

The Italian private house was normally a square or oblong block, in which the rooms were ranged to face into one

The Dwell-
ing House
in Italy.



PLAN OF AN ITALIAN HOUSE.

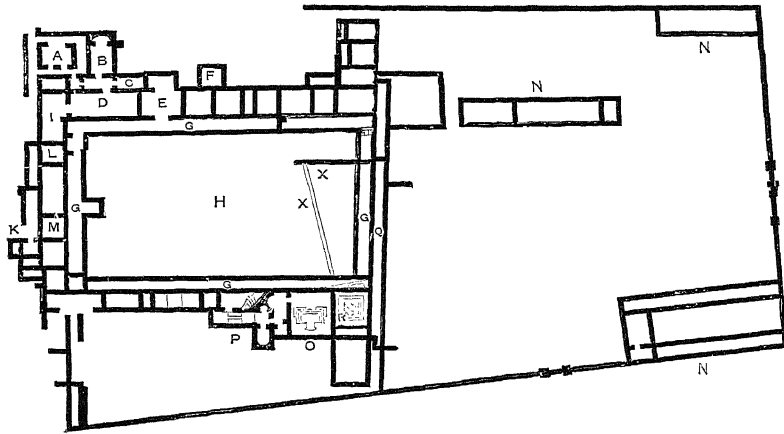
or two small interior openings, the half-roofed *atrium* and the little colonnaded court or garden called the *peristyle*. There was no proper front or façade, and external windows were few and small; the building looked in upon itself, not outwards to the glare of the Italian sun. Variations naturally abounded. Sometimes there was more than one *atrium* or *peristyle*; sometimes one of the two was absent, and much depended on the tastes or needs of householders. The villas of the wealthy, spread along seashore or hillside near Rome, were complex and luxurious. The homesteads of the farmers were intricate with oilpress and vinepress, cellar and granary, and their *peristyles* were sometimes utilised for farm purposes. But the original type is recognisable through all such variations; it was more or less closely followed by Italian house-builders during the Empire, alike in town and country. It extended also beyond Italy; it was copied in hot provinces

like Africa, and survives in some regions to this day. But it was ill-adapted to the chillier north, and seldom crossed the Alps. In Britain it was scarcely known. One might expect it in one or two strictly Italian foundations, like the Colonia which Claudius planted at Colchester in the first years of the conquest, but it has never been actually found. We can trace it, if at all, only in a few small country houses—one, for instance, at Carisbrooke, and another near Andover, and perhaps in a town house at Silchester (Block xiv. 1), which faintly recalls the Roman model.

The
Dwelling
Houses of
Roman
Britain.

The dwelling-houses of the north-western provinces, Britain and northern Gaul, were planned on other lines. With the few exceptions just indicated, none had *atrium* or peristyle; their characteristic was an external corridor, not an internal court. We can distinguish two leading types which were employed, as it were, indiscriminately in town and country, throughout Britain and northern Gaul during the same periods, so far as we know, and for the same purposes. They do not occur in fortresses or military districts, but are the distinctive marks of comfortable civil life. One of these types is simpler than the other; it is a straight row or range of rooms with a corridor along them, and has been styled the Corridor type. The other type has three such rows of corridor rooms set round three sides of a large and open rectangular yard, and has been styled the Courtyard type. As might be expected, houses of the first type are usually smaller than houses of the second type. Their respective dimensions in towns have been determined by measurements made at Silchester, the one Romano-British town which has been scientifically examined. Here the corridor houses average 100 feet in length by 40 feet in width, and contain ten or more rooms, which we should now consider small. The courtyard houses, on the other hand, often cover a third of an acre, including a yard of some 60 feet by 70 feet, and contain twenty-five or thirty similar rooms. In the country the contrast is greater. The corridor houses are rarely large; a "villa" at Frilford, near Abingdon, measures 40 feet by 65 feet, and is not exceptionally small. The courtyard houses are far more extensive. The Bignor "Villa" near Chichester has a yard measuring 120 feet by 185 feet, and, with various out-

buildings, covers two and a half acres. The Darent "Villa," in Kent, has a row of apartments 350 feet long, and with its annexes is as large as that at Bignor. The Northleigh "Villa" covers an acre and a quarter, including a yard of 160 feet by 180 feet, and it probably possesses outbuildings which have not been discovered. These dimensions refer only



PLAN OF BIGNOR "VILLA."

A. Small open court with cloister. B. Large room with elaborate mosaic floor (20×32 ft.), representing gladiators and geometrical ornament, and with warming apparatus. C. Smaller room with geometrical mosaic floor (20×10 ft.) and warming apparatus. The furnace of B and C was just outside the angle where the two rooms join. D. Open court (?) E. Large double room with elaborate mosaic floor (32×30 ft.). In the larger part of it was a fountain round which the mosaic showed dancing figures. In the smaller part the floor was decorated with the "Rape of Ganymede." Perhaps a dining-room for summer use. F. Smaller room with geometrical mosaic floor (16×16 ft.). G. Cloister or *cryptoporticus* round the open court H, partly floored with mosaic. H. Open court (137×96 ft.). The walls, X X, seem relics of earlier structures. I. Large room with elaborate mosaic floor (40×17 ft.) showing figures in geometrical panels; one of these is said to represent Winter. This room was heated, and may have been a winter dining-room. K. A western entrance (the chief entrance has probably not been found, unless it was by the central courtyard, H). L. Rooms with fireplaces (figured by Lysons). N. Outbuildings, probably barus, stables, etc. O.P.R. Baths. O. Large room with cold bath (18 ft. long \times 3 ft. deep). P. Three hypocaust rooms for hot air (*sudatoria*) and hot baths. R. Room with geometrical mosaic. The ground falls away somewhat toward the south side of the house—that is, the lower part of the plan. Probably the villa included other rooms and buildings not yet explored.

to ground floors, but upper stories were probably rare, and they may be taken as indicating fairly the dimensions of our two types of houses.

The origin of these types is uncertain. It is easy to suggest that the second grew out of the first. It is safer to observe that both differ essentially from the Roman type of house. Probably they were in the first instance rural. In a

Their
Origin.

Romano-British town like Silchester, the houses are arranged in an odd disconnected fashion, which shows that they were not copied from a civilisation familiar with streets. They do not fit together like the houses of Rome and Pompeii, but stand detached or semi-detached in their own gardens; in brief, they are country houses loosely conglomerated into a town. We may go further and call them Celtic. The Celts lived precisely in the countries where these houses occur. They had loose and somewhat incoherent towns, and they also had a definite style (or styles) of house-building, which Cæsar noticed to be the same in Gaul and in Britain. He does not describe these houses, nor have we yet discovered their remains. But the conjecture is near that our two types are their descendants, copied and very probably altered by the Roman civilisation.

The
Roman
Elements.

But if outline and plan be Celtic, the rest is Roman. The masonry of the walls, it is true, exhibits none of the special features visible in the villas round Rome; we have, for instance, no "reticulated work" in Britain nor any attempt to imitate it. It is plain and featureless masonry, but Roman in character. Similarly the architectural fragments, bases and capitals, and the like, which are occasionally found in our villas, are seldom remarkable for elegance or distinction; for the most part they are poor in style and late in date. But they are derived from Roman models, and give no hint of a real provincial manner. The glass which filled the windows and the warming apparatus or hypocausts which heated the rooms (p. 72) were equally borrowed by the British provincials from the higher Roman civilisation. Climate compelled their more frequent use here, but only slight mechanical improvements resulted from the frequency. The bath-rooms again, indispensable for every "eligible residence" in Britain, merely reproduced a Roman convenience which made its way throughout the Empire in virtual defiance of climate. So, too, the stucco which coated the walls, and the frescoes which adorned the stucco in the principal apartments. These frescoes were seldom splendid or elaborate in Romano-British houses; nothing in them matched the abundance of mythological scenes and landscapes and graceful genre sketches and complex architectural decoration which beautified the houses in

Italy, and—to a less degree—in most provinces. A few fragments prove that such pictorial frescoes were not unknown, for instance, in Londinium (London), but the current decorations were simpler—square panels, for example, in red with white or yellow designs of arabesque work, birds or flowers or foliated scrolls, the whole as monotonous and conventional as any modern wall-paper, and differing from its Roman original only by its lack of distinctive artistic features.

Mosaics

One feature in the decoration of the houses deserves perhaps brief separate attention—the mosaic floors which adorned the vast majority of the houses, both in town and country, in our province. Much interest has been taken in these mosaics, and much—indeed, too much—has been written in their praise. Technically considered they all belong to one type, which is the ordinary type of mosaic work. The method of their construction is uniform; small cubes (*tessellæ*) were laid with a very durable cement of lime on a concrete bed, beneath which was either a hypocaust or some other foundation. These cubes were usually made out of local stone or clay; glass and marble were rarely employed. Experiments made on a Cirencester mosaic showed that there cream-coloured cubes were obtained from a local limestone, grey from the same slightly roasted, white from chalk, yellow from local gravel drifts, slate-coloured from a Gloucestershire lias, and chocolate from a Herefordshire old red sandstone, while red and black were baked clays with added pigment, and a small piece of bright red was proved to be ruby glass. The designs of the pavements fall into two classes: first, those with a continuous pattern, independent of any special area; secondly, those of which the pattern, often based on an eight-pointed star, has been created to fit its destination. The first class was popular, as it seems, in the first and second centuries; the second class in the third and fourth centuries; but it is difficult to assign dates with much certainty. In both classes single figures or whole scenes were freely introduced. The subjects are familiar Roman subjects. Bacchus with his tiger, Orpheus with his lute and circle of admiring monsters, Actæon devoured by his dogs, the Seasons, the Muses, Cupids, and so forth. Occasionally inscriptions are added—two unmetrical hexameters to identify Neptune on a pavement at

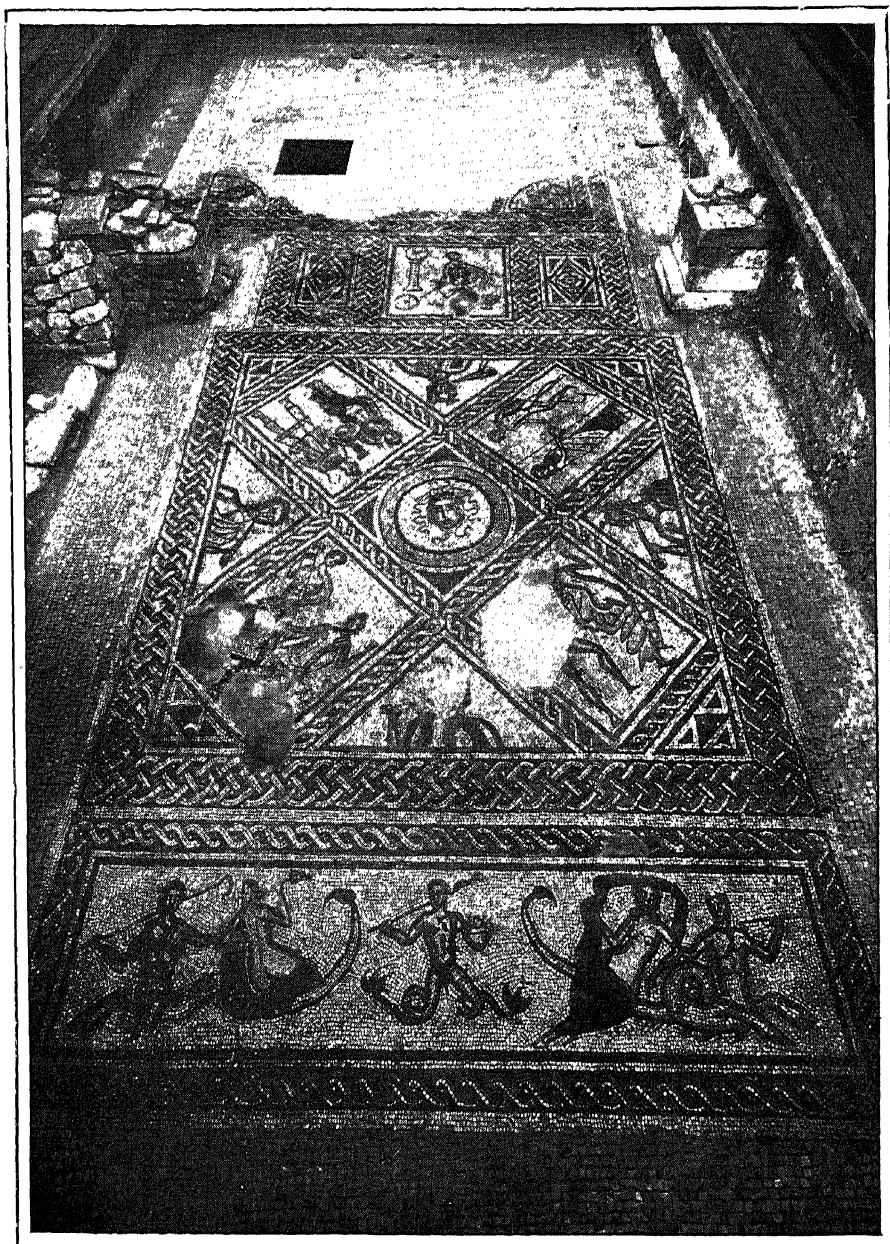


Photo: F. N. Broderick, Ryde.

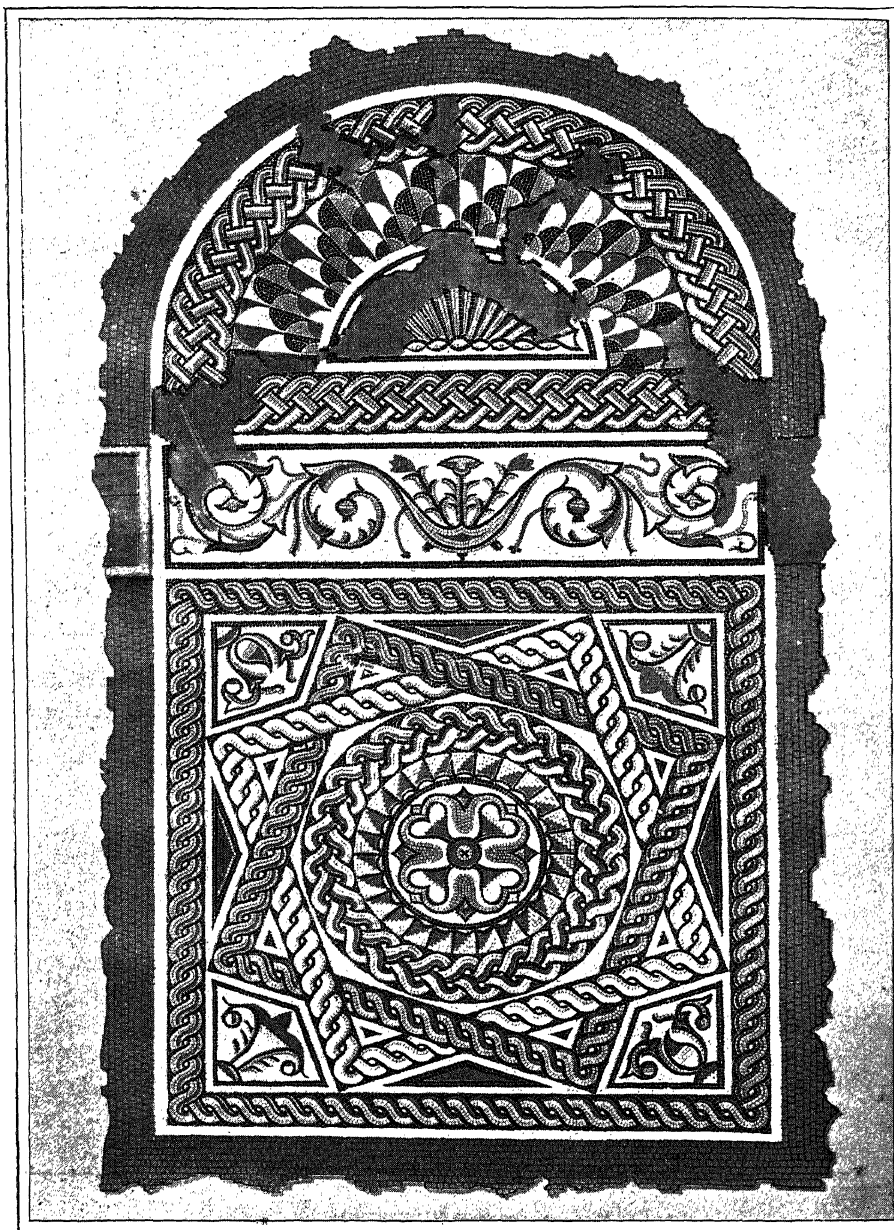
THE BRADING MOSAIC.

Frampton, the name "Helicon" in Greek letters to explain a most conventional mountain on which a Muse is seated, in an Aldborough pavement. The technical and artistic merits of these mosaics have often been overstated. The choicest varieties of Italian mosaic work, like the choicest glass (p. 142), were practically unknown in Britain, and while the pavements of Bignor, Woodchester, and a few other "villas" are excellent specimens of the ordinary type, many more are coarsely executed, and almost all are conventional and wholly imitated from Roman patterns. No Late Celtic traits, no specially Romano-British style intrudes; the artists of the mosaics rarely, if ever, ventured even to introduce objects which might be supposed to be drawn from their British surroundings. Here, as in the other fittings and decorations of the Romano-British residence, Roman fashions ruled alone. The plan of the house may have been Celtic; it was inhabited in Roman ways. This Romanisation was not confined to the better houses or the upper classes. Rude hypocausts and painted plaster were used even in the wattle and dab huts of the little Dorsetshire villages excavated by General Pitt-Rivers. Through the whole range of domestic life the same features confront the student of Roman Britain. The lesser arts contain a few local traditions of Late Celtic culture; the houses, beyond the plan, contain none. In both the higher civilisation has been closely copied, often with technical skill, seldom with vigour or originality.

III. The public buildings of the province show the pre-dominance of this higher civilisation in an even higher degree; they are Roman in plan, fittings, and decoration, and are free from any trace of native art. We may consider them in two divisions, military and civil. The military works are by far the most important; their existing remains still testify to the magnitude of the military element in Britain. Many of them, like the great walls of Hadrian and Pius, concern the engineer rather than the architect, but the fortresses of the legions, the frontier forts garrisoned by the auxiliary troops, and the castles of the Saxon shore may fairly be treated as specimens of military architecture. Two styles of masonry appear in their ramparts. Where good building-stone abounded they were faced with regular free-

Public
Buildings.

Military
Works.



THE BUCKLESBURY MOSAIC.

(Guildhall Museum.)

(By permission of the Library Committee of the Corporation of the City of London.)

stone blocks, and filled in with rubble or concrete. In general, small facing-stones were used; at Chester on the Dee the strikingly massive wall of the fortress, erected perhaps about A.D. 200, was faced with large blocks of local sandstone, while the core was obtained by spoiling a neighbouring cemetery. Where building-stone was scarce, the walls were built of concrete, faced with rough flints, and strengthened



Photo: J. H. Spence, Chester.

TOMBSTONE FOUND INSIDE THE ROMAN NORTH WALL OF CHESTER.

—or at least diversified—with bonding courses and lacing courses of tile or stone. These types were not peculiar to Britain; they were used in Gaul, and in most provinces of the Empire. They differ from the types of masonry prevalent in Italy and in Rome, but the difference is mainly due to difference in materials; the matchless *pozzolana* cement of the Campagna encouraged methods at Rome which could not be applied unaltered elsewhere. But they are natural modifications of the Italian methods, and they differ wholly from the native styles of the various provinces, so far as we know them. They bear no resemblance, for example, to the masonry of the ramparts



Photo: J. H. Spencer, Chester.

TOMBSTONE FOUND INSIDE THE
ROMAN NORTH WALL OF CHESTER.

round the Gaulish fortified places (*oppida*), as we know it from the text of Caesar and from the result of excavations.

The internal architecture of the forts and fortresses is, like all military architecture, seldom artistic, usually massive and dignified. Even in small "auxiliary" forts, such as guarded the north of Britain or the German frontier of Gaul, the gates and the principal buildings within — *Prætorium*, officers' quarters, storehouses — were built solidly and with some architectural pretence. The larger fortresses of the legions naturally contained more striking work, and the few fragments which have been recovered of the headquarters at Chester (Deva—Legio xx.) indicate an ambitious and perhaps a stately

design. In ground plan, these and all other military edifices, such as the never absent bath-houses, conformed to the regular military types, and differ wholly from the Romano-British dwelling-houses described above. The details, too, are Roman, both the capitals and bases of columns and the carved cornices and the various sculptures. The shrines where the soldiers worshipped and the tombstones above their graves belonged equally to the style which prevailed throughout the Empire. Sometimes a worshipper portrayed a native god in native costume; the three Mother Goddesses (p. 60), specially venerated in Britain and on the Rhine, were regularly represented with their native head-dress. But the native feature was not treated in any native manner: hair and drapery were handled in the manner conventional to the Roman soldier. So too the reliefs on the tombstones, the horseman riding over a fallen foe, the dead person at the Sepulchral Banquet, are mere copies of types well known in many lands, and indeed in almost every civilian town

throughout the Empire. As used by the soldiers, they were pure conventions. The natives of Gallia Belgica interpreted the Funeral Banquet in their own fashion, and adapted the representation to suit their idea: the soldier, alike on the Rhine or the Dee, repeated the scene unaltered and uncomprehended. Artistically, the soldiers' sculpture falls below the soldiers' architecture: details, like eyes or hair or hands, are rendered both rudely and conventionally, and the effect is grotesque or repulsive. It claims its mention in a paper on the art of the province, but it is not art of any sort.

Civil
Buildings.

Beside the military architecture, the buildings of public civil life in Britain may seem slight and scanty. But the ungarrisoned towns of the south and east and midlands contained edifices which claim attention — town walls, the forum, the temples, the public baths. Of surviving remains, the walls are the most striking: even in its civil districts, the military aspects of Britain were, after all, the most prominent. Fragments of walls remain in abundance—a gateway at Leicester, another at Lincoln, walling at St. Albans and Wroxeter, and half a dozen other places. The wall round the little town of Silchester is still nearly complete—a stout concrete core backed with earth, faced with flints, and strengthened with bonding courses of flat stones, which embraces a circuit of a mile and a half and rises here and there to the height of twenty feet. The provincials in Britain, as in Gaul, constructed such defences for themselves in the evil day of the falling Empire. Their towns, like the Celtic



Photo: Messrs. Gibson & Son, Hexham.
TOMBSTONE WITH RELIEF OF ROMAN
STANDARD BEARER.
(Hexham Abbey.)

fortresses before them, had always been rather centres for the countryside than towns, as we use that word. Now, like those old fortresses, they became places of refuge. This reappearance of the Celtic fortress did not mean the reappearance of the building style according to which its ramparts were built. Walls and gates of these towns were constructed in Roman fashion. Their only peculiarity is that they sometimes contain, in core or foundations, broken slabs from graveyards or altars from temples. This peculiarity simply testifies to the haste with which they must often have been constructed in the hour of sharp danger.

The
Forum.

Of purely "civil" buildings the Forum is the most important. It was the centre of the town. All that in Roman life corresponded to our town hall and parish church, law and police courts, public statues and markets and assembly rooms, was connected with the Forum, stood in and round it, and practically formed it. Every town in Italy and in the provinces had its Forum, whether it possessed municipal rank or not, and surviving remains show that one type prevailed, at least throughout the Western Empire. This type distantly resembles the normal type of military *Prætorium*, and may possibly have sprung from the same prehistoric original. As we know it, it differs considerably. It may be described as a large colonnaded "Place," oblong or square, surrounded by the chief public buildings, the *Curia* of the local senate (if the town had one), the courts of the local officials, the public hall which *Vitruvius* tells us was called *Basilica*, a temple or two, banks and shops. Such was the Forum Romanum of early Rome, later transformed into the centre of the civilised world; such the forum of any ordinary town. There were fora in Britain, as elsewhere; their traces survive in the municipal cities of Colchester and Lincoln, and in lesser towns like Cirencester or Wroxeter. The forum of Silchester (p. 57) is the most perfect instance yet excavated with proper care. It is a nearly square block, not quite two acres in extent. A corridor or colonnade runs right round the outside; within are buildings facing on to the central "Place," a court measuring 132 feet by 140 feet. A colonnade runs round three sides of this court; the buildings between it and the outer colonnade contain small rooms, probably shops. On the fourth side is the *Basilica* with

three apses, a hall 270 feet long and 58 feet wide. Two rows of Corinthian columns supported the roof; the walls were plastered and frescoed, the apses fitted with marble linings, and there were one or two statues. But there was no Curia, no Temple, not much ornament; the whole, as a French scholar has observed, is simpler than the fora (five or six in number at present) which have been examined in other countries.

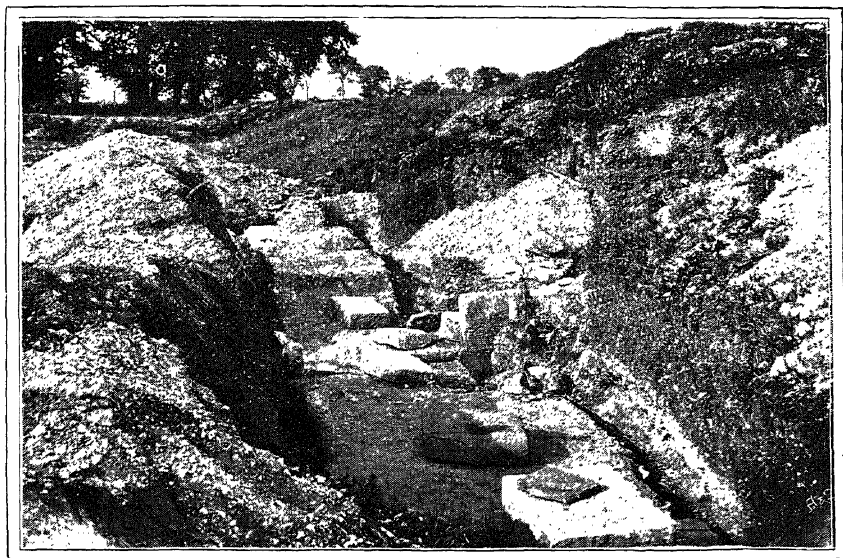


Photo: S. Victor White & Co., Reading.

FOUNDATIONS OF FORUM GATEWAY, SILCHESTER.

Silchester, indeed, was a comparatively small place; the man who laid it out—for the town is laid out on one plan—possibly Agricola about A.D. 80, gave it a small forum, which it never outgrew. But the size of the Basilica is remarkable. It appears to be a Romano-British peculiarity. In other Romano-British towns the Basilicas were as large or larger, so far as we know their dimensions; in Italy and other provinces, on the other hand -- we have no details from Gaul—the Basilicas are smaller, even though the fora are larger. Probably the British climate is responsible. The Silchester Basilica no doubt accommodated magistrates in its three apses and traders in its main hall. Even in Italy, said Vitruvius, the Basilica should be in a warm

corner of the forum, to shelter merchants from the cold, and in Britain the need of shelter would be greater.

Temples.

The other public buildings, temples, baths, theatres, and amphitheatres are less known to us: probably they were never numerous. The foundations of two small square temples and one small round one have been traced with much probability at Silchester: something more magnificent exists at Bath in honour of Sul Minerva, goddess of the hot springs. At Lydney in Gloucestershire was the temple of the native deity Nodens, and attached to it a large dwelling-house of the courtyard type, a row of chambers for visitors, and the inevitable baths. Of public baths, the stateliest and most famous were those at Bath, built, like the temple of Sul, of massive and elaborate work, aided no doubt by the good Bath stone.

Baths.

**Theatres
and
Amphi-
theatres.**

Of theatres scarcely an example is known, except at Verulam. Of amphitheatres there are a few—a little one outside the walls of Silchester, others at Cirencester, Dorchester (p. 56), and so forth. Here, too, we may class the cemeteries and grave-stones which, in true Roman fashion, lined the roads outside the towns. Our English excavators have somewhat neglected them, and indeed, important as they are to the true archaeologist, they can never have possessed striking architectural features. Probably there was little in Roman Britain to match the great sepulchral piles along the Appian and the Latin Ways; or the monuments, no less stately though not Roman in manner, which the Romano-Gaulish nobles reared in northern Gaul. The tombstones, like the other buildings mentioned in this paragraph, show the same features as I have noted elsewhere in this article: no trace of native or peculiar manner, copy of things Roman, imitation skilful in technique but rarely excellent in art.

**Grave
stones.**

Sculpture.

The sculptures and detailed ornament of these buildings tell the same tale. In northern Gaul there existed something like a special manner in sculpture. Men delighted to reproduce in stone the scenes of daily life: boatmen ferrying wine-casks down the Mosel, tenants paying their dues or offering presents in kind to their lords, ladies at their toilette, children at their school. These scenes are figured minutely, accurately, vigorously, and with patent originality; their sculptors were acquainted with Roman and with Greek models, but

they produced work which possesses individuality; their art was a real Romano-Gaulish art. We find no parallel in Britain. Sculpture claims the same judgment which has already been passed on the other products of art and architecture, and with sculpture the survey is complete. The final verdict is inevitable. Under Roman rule Britain was penc-



Photo: S. Victor White & Co., Reading.

GUARDHOUSES AT THE WEST GATE, SILCHESTER.

trated with Roman civilisation. Before that organised, coherent force the old native art retired. And the province was not wealthy or populous or educated enough to turn its Roman culture into a new mould, as men did in northern Gaul; the imported art and architecture remained, supreme and skilful, but conventional, imitative, almost monotonous. Here and there we may note, with something of a melancholy pleasure, the scattered survivals of the older art. But they are survivals with strength only to survive. The true development of the native instinct in its favourite art of metal-work and enamelling must be sought elsewhere. Outside the bounds of the Empire, in Scotch and Irish wildernesses, craftsmen still wrought flamboyant decoration in curious and

Survivals
of Celtic
Art.

graceful spirals, and fantastic forms of plant or animal. Some of their work found its way over the Roman boundary. The great silver brooch found at Æsica, on Hadrian's Wall, in 1894, has been called, enthusiastically but not indiscreetly, the most fantastically beautiful creation that has come down to us from Celtic antiquity; it appears to be Caledonian work of the second century, which somehow found its way into

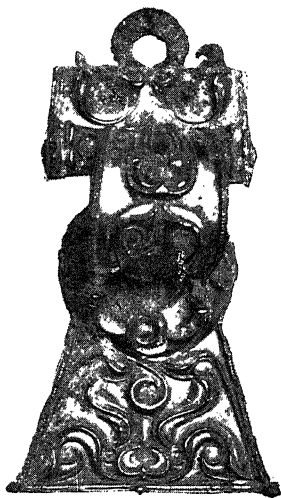


Photo: Mr. Parker Brewis.

THE ÆSICA BROOCH.

(In possession of Society of Antiquaries, Newcastle.)

a Roman frontier fort. This art continued, and in time there sprang from it the spirit of Gothic tracery, and the style of Irish illumination.

Within the province the Romano-British art and architecture which we have described came to an early end. They doubtless survived the so-called departure of the Romans in 409; they vanished before the invading English. Neither the lesser arts nor the public edifices nor the private houses used by the newcomers bore any resemblance to those of Roman Britain. Here and there an English man used Roman coins as ornaments or buried Roman glass with his dead. Here and there he took Roman pillars or capitals from some ruin and used them in his own building; or, maybe, he copied once and

again such remains in his own style. But such cases do not affect the general principle. The art and architecture of Roman Britain did not survive in England. The English art and architecture contained, undoubtedly, elements which can be traced to Roman origins, but these were taken from continental, not from insular sources. Roman art and architecture, driven out by the English invasion, re-entered our country afresh in altered forms, in a new manner and as one only among many influences.

THE barbarians who poured out of northern and eastern Europe, from the plains and forests of Germany and Russia, and invaded the Roman Empire during the fourth and fifth centuries, have been described by modern writers in two different ways. Some tell us that the barbarians came as whole tribes, with women and children, waggons and oxen; they call these centuries the age of the Great Migrations. Others consider the invasions to have been principally raids, frequently (no doubt) executed on a gigantic scale, but directed in almost every case to plunder and destruction. The first view is held principally by German scholars, the second by French scholars, and naturally. The barbarians were for the most part Germans: to magnify their numbers and their permanent influence is to magnify the measure of the influence of Teutons upon Europe. But the countries most affected by the invasion were the Latin countries, those in which Romance languages are spoken: to minimise the permanence of German invasions here is to reduce the part which Teutons played in forming modern France. Truth, as a matter of course, lies in the middle. Many of the barbarians were mere raiders; perhaps all of the earlier invaders were nothing more. Such raids were well known in antiquity. Hannibal's ten years' desolation of Italy was a raid on a colossal scale, directed and organised by science. The Roman Empire in its infancy suffered from fearful Dacian raids. In the third century, when it grew weak, the raids at once recommenced along the whole frontier of Rhine and Danube. But there were others besides raiders battering at the gates of the Empire. Plain and forest had grown too narrow for Frank, Vandal, and Goth; their own numbers had increased, and the

F. HAVER-
FIELD.
The
English
before
England.

Raid or
Migra-
tion?

"kings that arose out of the populous East," above all the terrible form of Attila the Hun, the Scourge of God, drove them from their proper homes. Thus it was that the whole tribe of Visigoths entered the Empire, refugees seeking fresh settlements; thus many others poured over Rhine and Danube. In considering the English before they came to England, it is necessary to recollect that they partook of both of the characters indicated: some left their homes as raiders, some as settlers.

Homes
of the
English.

Three tribes, according to the authorised version, were the conquerors of Britain—the Saxons, the Angles, and the Jutes. Of all three thus much at least is certain, that they were Teutons living east and north and, perhaps, also west of the Lower Elbe—the Saxons close to the Elbe, in the land between Kiel, Lübeck, and Hamburg; the Angli traditionally, in Holstein; the Jutes, according to one (the common) account, in Jutland, according to a recent theory, westwards between Elbe and Weser. They were barren and uninviting homes—vast tracts of level moss and moor that are desolate to this day, washed by a sea which ever threatened to swallow up the scanty fields along the shore and the long sand-dunes which fronted it. The sea itself was rich with fish and dangerous with currents; here, just as much as in the striking scenery, the forests, mountains and fiords of Norway, was a home of hardy seamen. The Saxons, "the knife-men," the most important of the three tribes with which we have to deal, were perhaps a confederacy rather than a single tribe. They are first mentioned, as it seems, by Tacitus (about 95) under the name of Reudigni, as worshipping a goddess Nerthus—that is, Earth—in common with other tribes, among whom are the Angli. Under their ordinary name they first appear in the end of the third century as pirates raiding in the English Channel (287), and from that date onward we hear only too much of their raids in Britain and in Gaul. The Angli, "the crafty ones" (?), probably lived at one time on the Middle Elbe and near the Harz Mountains, whence they advanced, willingly or unwillingly, northwards into Holstein. Of them we hear nothing important till they came to Britain; they were, perhaps, included in the Saxons, as the Saxons were later included under their name. The Jutes are far more puzzling.

Saxons.

Angles.

Jutes.

They are called "Iutes" or "Iotes" by Bede and the Saxon Chronicle, and in a statement, probably borrowed from an older source, in Florence of Worcester. But it is not at all certain that they lived in or near Jutland—indeed, various slender indications suggest that they possibly dwelt west of the Elbe, around the Weser. The question is of some importance. The civilisation of the Anglo-Saxon lands was unquestionably German; that further west was perhaps partly Celtic, though the population was German in blood.

In the fourth and fifth centuries the Saxon tribe or confederacy expanded widely. It came to comprise the tribes between the Elbe and the Rhine, including, no doubt, the Jutes if they really lived in this district. The Saxons certainly and the Angles very probably came in contact with the Roman Empire, and possibly even with Roman civilisation. Both Saxons and a tribe named suspiciously like Angles figure, though only to a small extent, in the fourth-century Roman army, as described in the "Notitia Dignitatum." Julian and Valentinian, Roman emperors about 360–75, had serious fighting with them along the Rhine, and some even settled within the Empire. The expansion is no less marked by sea, and here also settlements appear; the Saxons were no longer mere raiders, they were immigrants. Some settled at Bayeux, on the coast of Normandy, and helped the allied Romans and Visigoths to repel Attila and his Huns in the great battle of Chalons (451); others found homes on the Loire at Saumur and Angers. But the growing Frankish kingdom limited, though it could not actually prevent, such settlements, and the Saxons in France failed to anticipate the Northmen, who later conquered and gave their name to Normandy. At the same time as these settlements were formed, Saxons began to enter Britain. Tradition connects their coming with a special request for aid from a British chief in 450. If we might interpret the tradition, we should say that the British leaders desired to imitate the Roman emperors, and to receive within their borders a number of barbarians, assign them lands, and demand military service from them in exchange. As it was with the emperors, so it was with the Britons: the Saxon became the master. Once in possession, the settlements of Saxons increased, and a definite migration set in. The Jutes occupied the south-east, Kent;

Invasion
of Britain.



A LAND OF VILLAGES. (Country East of Oxford.)

Their
Early
Civilisa-
tion.

the Saxons, in three divisions—the south, the west, and the east—occupied the rest of Southern England; the Angles took the east, the midlands, and the north.

The civilisation of these tribes, when they reached Britain, is not accurately recorded for us. Few subjects, perhaps, present such difficulties as the history of the change from Roman Britain to Saxon England, and not the least of these difficulties is due to our ignorance of what Saxon civilisation was before the Saxons and their confederates settled on our shores. That the invaders were mainly or wholly Germans seems beyond question, but this only puts the difficulty a little farther back. We know only in part the civilisation of the German tribes in the fourth and fifth centuries; their political system, their laws, their land system, their division between free and unfree men, and much more, can only be seen dimly, and the outlines which we can at present distinguish are hardly as certain as is sometimes stated. For many features of Saxon civilisation we must go to the later history of the race, when settled in England, and that history the reader will find later in this volume. Still, we can, perhaps, say that the land system was based on villages, like those common still in most parts of England—groups of houses built either along some high road or in a labyrinth of little lanes, or round a village green, with the village fields lying around. This is the German type of village, distinct in every feature from the solitary farms or scattered hamlets which characterise Celtic districts (for instance, Cornwall), and this is the type of village which the invaders brought with them to England. It is more difficult to determine how the lands round the village were cultivated. In later Saxon and Norman England we find in force a system which is often called the three-field system, that is (to quote Mr. Seeböhm) an adaptation of the early “open-field” husbandry to a permanent three-course rotation of crops. It has been often supposed that the English learnt this system from the Romanised Britons (pp. 178, 183); recent research suggests, however, that if the system existed at all in early England (which has yet to be proved), the Saxons may have been acquainted with it before they left Germany. We should be fortunate if we could say as much about the political system of the Saxons as we have said about their

village-life. All that we can discern is a tribal system, like that of other Teutonic tribes, in which tribal chieftains rule free men who owe them some sort of service, and both possess slaves, or serfs, or thralls. But here, again, recent research suggests that a large proportion, at least, of the Saxon immigrants were free men. Arguments are drawn principally, as above, from agriculture. We have, it is thought, traces of free peasant proprietors, who cultivated either their own land, or perhaps the common land of the village to which they belonged, and free peasants mean in this case free political communities—not free, of course, with the freedom of democratic Athens, but still free in a real sense. In respect of material civilisation, the invaders were not far advanced. In respect of religion, they had not learnt, like many of the barbarian invaders of the Empire, to embrace Christianity.



SINODUN HILL, BERKSHIRE.

AUTHORITIES.

Celtic Britain.—Cæsar, *De Bello Gallico*; Tacitus, *Agricola* and *Histories*; Rhys, *Celtic Britain*, *Celtic Heathendom*, and *Arthur*; Skene's *Four Ancient Books of Wales*; Elton, *Origins of English History*; Evans, *British Coins*; Gomme, *Village Community*; Seebohm, *English Village Community*; Isaac Taylor, *Origin of the Aryans*; Seebohm, *Tribal System in Wales*.

Roman Britain.—The literary evidence is well put together in Marquardt's *Römische*

Staatsverwaltung, vol. i. See also Merivale's *History of the Romans under the Empire*, Mommsen's *Roman Provinces*, and books named below.

SPECIAL SUBJECTS.

Religion: Celtic Heathenism.—The Druids are dealt with by Cæsar, *Bell. Gall.*, v., 12–14; vi., 11–20; Tacitus, *Agricola*; and Pomponius Mela. The Welsh reader will find a mass of information, undigested, in *Hanes y Brytaniaid a'r Cymry*, i. *Celtic Heathendom*, Rhys, for scholars.

British and Roman Christianity.—Haddan and Stubbs, *Councils and Ecclesiastical Documents*, i., 1–234, gives the materials. The Laws of Hywel Dda (Howel the Good) may be seen in Welsh in *Myfyrian Archaeology*. Romilly Allan, *Monumental History of the British Church*, chaps. i., ii. Price, *Ancient British Church*. Bright's *Early English Church History*. A short summary in Welsh, by R. Williams, *Hanes yr Eglwys yn Nghymru*, c. i. See also F. Haverfield, in *English Historical Review*, 1896; and Hunt, *History of the English Church*.

The Roman Military System.—Best general account in Marquardt's *Römische Staatsverwaltung*, vol. ii. (Berlin, ed. 2, 1884), supplemented by Mommsen's articles in *Hermes* (xix., xx., and xxiv.), the last dealing fully with the military system after Diocletian, Otto Seeck's *Untergang der antiken Welt I.* (Berlin, 1895). Scattered articles abound. The discoveries of the last thirty years are so extensive that most of the older books are now obsolete. No good book exists dealing with the Roman army in Britain. The inscriptions, which are the basis of our knowledge, are collected in the seventh volume of the *Corpus Inscriptionum Latinarum*, by Dr. Emil Hübner (Berlin, 1873). More recent finds are noticed in the *Ephemeris Epigraphica* (vols. iii., iv., vii.), and by F. Haverfield, *Romano-British Inscriptions* (reprints from the *Archæological Journal*, vols. xlvii. foll.). Dr. Hübner's two articles, "Das römische Heer in Britannien" (Berlin, 1881, from *Hermes*, xvi.) and "Eine römische Annexion" (englished *Archæologia Eliana*, xi., 82), are valuable, but the general views of the Roman Conquest expressed in them are dubious, and the short but excellent chapter in Mommsen's *Roman Provinces* is far preferable. For Hadrian's Wall: J. C. Bruce, *The Roman Wall*, 1867, or "Handbook," ed. 3, 1885. Of older writers, Horsley's *Britannia* (1732) is excellent, though in parts obsolete. Roy, Colt Hoare, etc., are useless.

Art and Architecture.—Boyd Dawkins, *Early Man in Britain*; A. H. Keane, *Ethnology*. The art of Roman and Celtic Britain has never been properly treated by any one writer. For Late Celtic art see A. Evans's papers in *Archæologia*, lii.-lv; for Samian and other pottery, Artis, *Durobrivæ*, C. Roach Smith, *Collectanea and Roman London*; for glass, A. Hartshorne, *Old English Glass*, 1897. The private houses are known from Fox and Hope's reports of the Silchester excavations in *Archæologia*, lii. seqq., and from sporadic excavations elsewhere. For foreign instances, see De Caumont's *Abécédaire*, and Hettner in *Westdeutsche Zeitschrift*, ii.; for frescoes, see Roach Smith's works, Bowman and Buckmaster's *Corinium*, etc.; for mosaics, see the accounts of *Corinium*, *Isurium*, and other towns; Morgau—*Romano-British Mosaic Pavements*—is of little value. For the *fora* of towns, see the Silchester Reports.

The Angles and Saxons.—August Meitzen's *Siedelung und Agrarwesen* (Berlin, 1895) contains incidentally much valuable matter. The evidence to be drawn from English history is given by Professor Maitland in *Domesday Book and Beyond* (Cambridge, 1897). On the homes of the Saxons and Jutes in Germany see, amongst other literature, R. Much, *Deutsche Stammsitze* (Halle, 1892); on the Angles, Much, and a tract by Erdmann, *Ueber die Heimat und Namen der Angeln* (Upsala, 1890).

CHAPTER II.

FROM ROMAN TO NORMAN. 287-1066.

WHEN the Roman Imperial system fell weak, and the farthest possessions of Rome began to feel the power of the central bureaucracy a little less, Britain, which had greatly increased in riches and in tillage, in health and accessibility, became for a time the starting-point and stronghold of a succession of notable generals and administrators, who trusted in their fleet and legions and island position to enable them to bargain with the Continental holders of the purple for a share of their rank and power. For this purpose Carausius, the

**F. YORK
POWELL.**
The
Decline of
the Roman
Power.
"Britain
fruitful in
tyrants."

first and most famous of these "island emperors," is reported to have made terms with the barbarians that threatened the coasts of Gaul and Britain. He himself came from the Menapii, a Teutonic tribe dwelling by the Scheldt.¹ He held his own for seven years, won acknowledgment



COIN OF CARAVSIUS.

from Maximian by hard fighting, and finally fell by the treachery of his own admiral, Allectus, A.D. 294. For two years the latter ruled the island, the bulk of his forces being Franks, who had gladly entered their kinsman's service, and maintained their own garb and fashion. A sudden invasion of Constantius's troops, creeping in a fog past Allectus's galleys lying off the Isle of Wight (as Harold's did long after), a landing to the west of Southampton Water, and two victories—one in the south, one in London—destroyed the

¹ There were also Menapii on the East Irish coast, probably a branch of the same stock.

Frankish hosts and saved London from the horrors of a sack. Constantius the conqueror dwelt chiefly in the land he had won, and died at York. After a successful war against the Caledonians, his son, Constantine the Great, took the purple, depending greatly upon his father's ally, Crocus, the king of the Alamans, who desired his election.

The Franks and Alamans were as ready to ravage as to protect Britain, and our island might have become "France" or "Almaine" instead of "England" had not the emperors found constant and well-paid employment for every volunteer that the Frankish tribes could furnish. The rapid spread and sudden Imperial acceptance of Christianity probably led to a more vigorous policy against the heathen marauders from east and west. In 360 the western foes, Scots and Picts, were repulsed. In 367 the Count of the Saxon Shore and the Duke of the Britains fell before their foes. From west and east and north at once the island was invaded, with cruel forays and plunderings, burnings, and slave-raids. It needed all the skill of Theodosius, with two legions and many German auxiliaries, to clear the unhappy diocese of its persistent invaders. When he was recalled, King Fraomarius (a Teutonic ally) and his host were sent by Valentinian, the emperor, to guard the islands. The policy of fighting the barbarians by barbarians was not only accepted, but for a long while successful. It was the fear that the Emperor Gratian would reward his allies, the Alans, with a settlement in Britain, that led to the choice of Clemens Maximus (a general proven against Picts and Scots) as emperor by his soldiers in 383. He slew Gratian, and took his seat of rule at Treves, at the head of the army of Britain, the pick of the natives who had now recruited the Roman garrison for years. They followed him in his southern march into Italy, and fought for him till he fell by the Save. Afterwards they came north again, though not to their own land: they settled in Armorica, to guard Gaul from the Irish sea-rovers. Again in 396 and 400 the island was overrun by Scots and Saxons (the Franks were then busy in Gaul), till Honorius's lieutenant, the saviour of the Empire, Stilicho, came with his legions and succoured the Romans. But Rome could do no more for her remote citizens, for the Vandals, Sueves, and Alans burst into

The Bar-
barian
Enemies of
Britain.

450]

Gaul, cut off the island from Rome, and even threatened invasion. The isolated Roman troops in Britain chose for themselves, from among themselves and their allies, emperor after emperor. Marcus (possibly an Irish king) and a second Gratian (a Briton) successively met violent deaths; but a second Constantius crossed the Channel, swept back the Teutonic tribes, and won back Gaul and Spain with his troops from Britain (a fresh drain upon the fighting stock of the island). His exploits and power compelled acknowledgment of his colleagueship from Honorius. However, a rival British usurper, Gerontius, dared to call upon the defeated barbarians to attack Britain, as she now lay open to a hostile fleet and stripped of her troops. They came, but the "Civitates" of Britain (by which seem to be meant the Municipalities, with the Romanised districts about them) raised troops, foiled their foes, and casting out the useless Roman officials—who could tax them but not defend them—resolved to carry on their own government. Honorius was content, since he could not help himself, and even wrote in answer bidding the "cities" look to their own defence henceforth. And so in 410, with a final Imperial gift to the regular troops yet remaining in the lost diocese, the tie was broken that had bound Britain to Rome for more than three centuries. The rival usurpers in Gaul, who might have set up an island empire for a while, perished by each other's hands.

Christian independent Britain was now ruled by tribal kings (for the tribes had survived the Romanisation of the island), and one of these tribal kings at least claimed a kind of supremacy, and clung to the official ornaments and titles of the Count of the Britains. But these kings' selfishness and unrestrained passions, and their subjects' inter-tribal feuds and bitter disputes on religious points, weakened the independent island. Picts poured south over the Wall, and even settled within the diocese; Scots broke in from the west by Solway, Dee, Severn, and Wight; Saxons infested the whole east and south coasts. Save in the Church, public spirit seemed lost in dismay. When the Gallic bishops Germanus and Lupus came on a peaceful mission to heal dissension, discomfit the Paulician and Pelagian heresies, and strengthen the Church, they used the arm of the flesh against a

**The Con-
quest of
Britain.**

heathen host that threatened their flocks in the Dee valley in 429. But this, the far-famed Halleluia Victory, could not be final, though it was deemed miraculous. The harassed Christians were driven, wholly in vain, to appeal to the famous Roman general Aetius. Something had to be done, or the island was lost, and Vortigern, the chief king, took counsel, and resolved to follow the Roman policy, and call in one band of barbarians against the rest. A band of Geotas, whom we usually call Jutes, with their renowned leaders Hengest, often called Hengist, and Horsa, entered the British king's service, and overthrew his enemies, the Picts and Scots, wherever they fought. More of these "Saxons" were engaged, and the experiment was successful; but soon trouble came. The mercenaries claimed higher monthly pay, and turned their arms against their employers. Dissension and treason crippled the Britons, and fire and sword again swept the country. Both British and English writers have left descriptions of the great cities stormed and fired and made desolate, the fallen towers, the desecrated altars, the broken walls, the unburied bodies left to the wild beasts and birds. Of those that escaped the assault, many were pursued and killed in the hills, many forced to yield themselves as slaves, many fled over sea to their kinsmen in West Gaul, many took refuge in the wild mountains, forests, and rocks of the sea. Exact dates and details we have not. But we are told how the Kentish Britons fled to London in 457 after a battle at Crayford, and how in 473, after Hengist won a battle and took booty beyond count, "the Welsh fled from the English as from fire." In the last half of the fifth century many parts of the east and south coasts were settled by bands belonging to the tribal confederacies known as Angles,¹ Saxons, Frisians, and Jutes.

At the end of the fifth century there was a notable rally of the Romanised Britons, under Ambrosius Aurelianus—a modest man "whose kinsfolk had for their merit been adorned with the purple," and whose descendants after his death kept up the war upon "the cruel conquerors." It was at this time that the British resistance was most stubborn, and after various victories and defeats, "forty-four years and one month after the landing

¹ Englas, Seaxan, Frisan, Geotas, as they called themselves.



TOMBSTONE OF VORTIPORE, NEAR HAVERFORDWEST, SOUTH WALES.

(Photographed by permission of Miss Bowen Jones.)

of the Saxons" came the year of the siege of Mons Badonicus (520), a great British victory, which for a time put a stop to Teutonic advance, and led to an unexpected "reviving of the island" or great part of it, though the cities that had been ravaged still lay desolate—for civil troubles, as so often, prevented Celtic union. Gildas, in the spirit of a Hebrew prophet and in his words, denounces the tyrannous king and evil priests. He mentions Constantine of the Damnonii, a perjurer and an assassin; Aurelius Conanus, whose kinsmen and brethren were cut off in youth; Vortipore, the ruler of the Demetians (men of South Wales); Cuneglas, who had raised civil war; Maglocune, the "dragon of the island," greater, but not better, than the other rulers, who had fought against the king, his uncle, and preferred vain poets' pæans and satires to "God's lauds sung by Christ's soldiers," had slain his own wife and his brother's son, in order to wed the murdered man's widow. And these "five wanton steeds, mad followers of Pharaoh," Gildas, the son of Caunus, warns of wrath to come.

The sorrowing patriot sums up: "Disobedience and subjection [the Roman conquest]. Rebellion, second subjection, and slavery [the reconquest after Boadicea's rebellion]. Christianity, persecution, holy martyrs, divers heresies [the spread of the new faith, Diocletian's nine years' suppression, martyrdom of St. Alban of Verulam and SS. Aaron and Julius of Caerleon, the non-Trinitarian doctrine]. Tyrants, two hostile and ravaging nations [the usurpation of Clemens Maximus and the incursions of Picts and Scots]. First devastation and defence [Theodosius's aid]. Second devastation and vengeance [Stilicho's help]. Third devastation and famine, the letters to Aetius [in the first half of the fifth century]. Victory and crimes, rumour, and the famous pestilence [the victory of the Cities, civil quarrels, the panic report that this island was to be conquered, the pestilence of 445]. Her counsels, her newest enemy far crueller than the former ones, the subversion of her cities [the plan of calling in Saxon against Pict and Scot, the quarrel with the new allies, their seizing of the coasts and destruction of many walled towns]. The remnant that escaped, and finally the peace [the rallying of the Romanised British of the better sort under Ambrosius, and the peace that followed the victory at Mons Badonicus]." Such is the text

upon which the historian of this period is left to comment. It is to the period at the end of the fifth century, a period of comparative peace, within restricted bounds, from outward foes and of attempts at organisation, thwarted by family quarrels and reckless pride and crime, that the legends of Arthur, the Emperor of Britain, the champion of the Christians, the leader of heroes, refer.

The newcomers had entered upon a noble inheritance, the most fertile and most civilised part of Britain. They came from a country overgrown with big timber and thick scrub down to the water's edge, with rivers for its highroads, clearings and glades for its oases, and broad heaths and thick swamps and shallow lakes varying the else unbroken stretch of woodland. The country they came to was largely cleared and drained and tilled. Here were long water meadows and fine hill pastures with herds of cattle and flocks of sheep of divers breed, here were herb-gardens and orchards and vineyards about the houses, and here were broad cornfields of many acres, producing more grain than the island could consume. The arable was neatly tilled, mostly in Roman fashion, on the three-field course, and worked with the improved tools and plant of Roman husbandry—iron-coultered ploughs, iron hoes and picks, and iron-shod spades. There were ironworks, mines for tin and lead, marl-pits, quarries, potteries, brick- and tile-kilns, glassworks and fisheries. There were more than thirty walled towns, and many camps or military stations; and these were knit together by good, well-graded, stone-made roads, practicable all the year through for men, horses, and even wheeled vehicles. The rivers were bridged, or, where the ford was at all dangerous, staked or stone-bedded. Near each town was an area of tilled land; but along the roads, at intervals of a few miles, stood neat and comfortable country houses, after the Italian fashion, each with its farm and cornfields tilled by slave or serf labour. The ports and havens were safe and handy for the vessels of that day, and a constant traffic during the summer kept up the regular supply of many foreign luxuries and utilities, which were brought in exchange for British produce—grain, metal, jet, slaves, hounds, and horses. It was a golden land to the Teutonic eye.

Britain
under the
English.

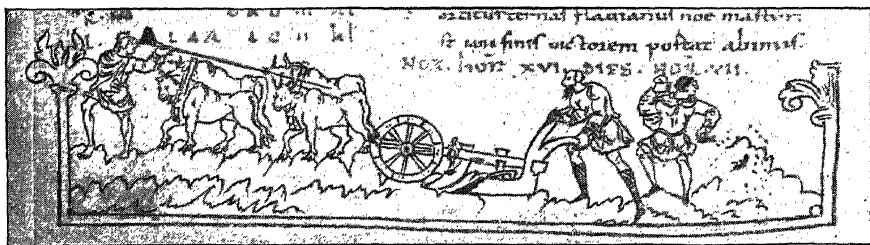
The
English
Village
and its
life.

The manner of division of the conquered country, according to tradition, was by lot. A stretch of country would be marked out into lots according to the number of villas or estates (round a town there would probably be several lots), and these lots would be dealt out by hazard in some hallowed and accustomed fashion among the conquerors—the leaders of the newcomers taking several shares, and a small knot of brothers or kinsmen counting as one allottee. The Roman “villa” of Calpurnius or Severianus became the “ham” or “tun” of the Billings or Wellings. The new owners put up timber



THE GENTLEMAN'S HOUSE (MS. Harl., 630).

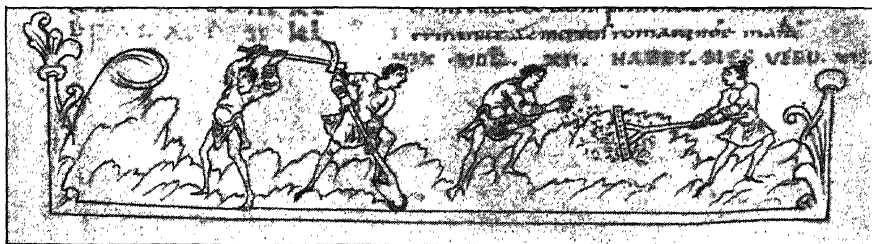
houses after the fashion of the mainland, and each little group of buildings—hall and bower, byre and barn, storehouse and stacks, horse-shed and waggon-shed—that made up a gentleman's or yeoman's homestead stood in its own garth with a hedge or wall of mud or stone around it. The long timber-roofed hall, the bell-house, the big gate, and the moat about the stockade were the signs of the gentleman's house. Two or three homesteads for the English yeomen and gentlemen, and some dozen or score of rush-thatched wattled cots for their British serfs and bondsmen, housed the stock and labour that worked the land that had belonged to the deserted villa of a Roman landlord. The Roman villa



January—Ploughing and Sowing.



February—Pruning.



March—Field-work.



April—Feasting.

THE OLD ENGLISH CALENDAR (MS. Jul. A. vi.)

buildings, if not burnt down in the raids preceding the settlement, were usually left to fall into decay or pulled down for the useful materials, though in a few cases they may have been taken over as a dwelling by some Saxon settler. The slaves and bondsmen seem to have lived and worked precisely as they had for their former masters; but the new masters were probably fonder of putting their hand and eye to their own farm-work than the Roman provincial had been.

We know from pictures in manuscripts and from notices the routine of the year's work: the four great Feasts—that of Midsummer, with its straw-fires and flowers; that of Easter in spring, when “Lenten came to town”; that of All Souls, with its bone-fires, when the harvest was home and the cattle slaughtered and the winter stores laid in; and that of Midwinter, Yule and Twelfth Night. It is more difficult to say whether any particular custom connected with these feasts was of English or British or pre-British origin. The English had early borrowed the calendar, which the Romans had got from the East, and the week of seven days replaced the older and ruder unit of five days that long prevailed in Scandinavia.

The ploughing and digging and sowing and wood-cutting and lambing season takes up the early part of the year; hay-making, harvesting, shearing, fallow; cattle-tending and pig-feeding, hunting and hawking, killing and salting meat, and brewing, prepare for the year's close. In the dark cold weather smith and carpenter and wright do their work, and the thresher and winnower are busy with the corn. At midsummer and in spring and autumn, the great courts and musters were held. Wars and voyages and fairs could only go on in the summer.

Old
English
Agricul-
ture.

The allowance of arable to a free holding was the hide or family lot—a unit of 120 acres whether the Roman three-field system existed, or the place held to the English system of two-field course. By the former, one field was fallow, one sown with winter seed, and one with spring seed.¹ In the two-field course, one was fallow and one under seed. The hide needed a full team of eight oxen to till it, and was usually divided into four yardlands (each of which took a



May—Tending Sheep.



June—Wood-cutting.



July—Haymaking.



August—Harvesting.

yoke of oxen to till it, and was the average peasant's holding). The yardland was made up of four farthings or fardels. (A fardel was often attached to a hind's cottage, and was probably hoe-tilled.) All the arable of a village lay in two or three common fields, divided by grass balks into furlong strips (40 perches by 1), four of which went to the acre (40 perches by 4). Such an acre would (the perch measuring $16\frac{1}{2}$ feet) make 4,840 square yards, but perch and acre varied largely in different places. The plough went four "rounds," or four "rounds" and a half, to each perch, and the furrow was about eleven inches broad. The summer fallow was ploughed twice or thrice. The first ploughing was about three rods and a half, the second an acre, per day. These are thirteenth century calculations; but with very little variation in measure they are probably applicable to Old English agriculture. The furlong or half-acre (double furlong) strips were allotted to the various village land-holders in each field, and the strips were in many places shifted yearly by lot. The arable was usually thrown open for pasture after Lammas, when the crops had been carried. The fallow was manured and occasionally marled. There were large common meadows also where hay was grown, and common pastures, the use of which, subject to the local rules, was common to all village householders, as were the woods belonging to the village for building-timber and the feeding of swine.

The chief crops raised were rye, oats, barley, wheat, beans, and pease. In the garden patch of the cottage or homestead, herbs, leeks, and kale were grown, and hives kept, the honey being used for mead and for flavouring where we should use sugar. River-fish and pond-fish, especially eels, were eaten after Christianity came in, but still not much sea-fish, save herrings, sturgeon, and such large aquatic mammals as porpoises or whales. Fish was boiled and eaten with a sauce of wine or vinegar and herbs. Flesh was roasted, or boiled and eaten with the broth; Roman cooking-pots and cauldrons of metal being largely imported by the Teutonic tribes along the border of the Empire and known to the English before they conquered Britain. Bread was made in round flat cakes, of various kinds of grain, ground in a hand-mill or stone quern by the women



September—Boar-Hunting.



October—Hawking.



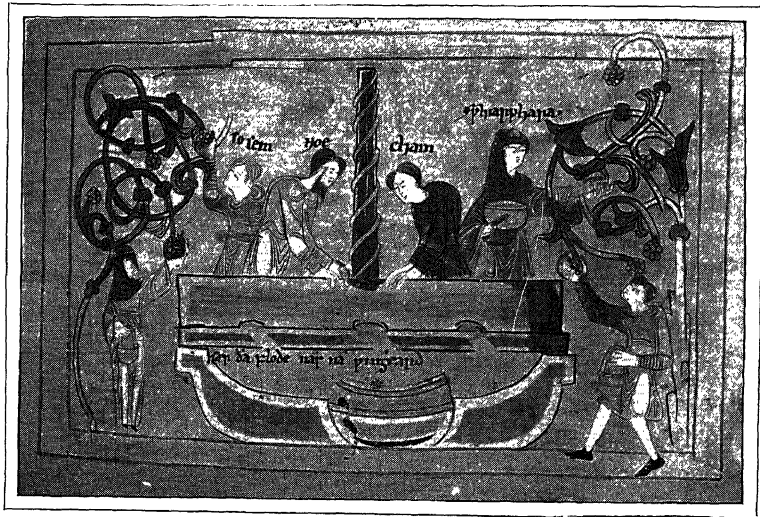
November—Bonfire.



December—Threshing, Winnowing, and storing Grain.

THE OLD ENGLISH CALENDAR.

slaves. The baker or bakester was an important person in a gentleman's household. Ale of various flavours and strengths, and mead, were brewed by every great household. Sheep and cows were milked, and butter-milk and cream and butter and cheese, a Roman dainty, largely used. Wine was brought over from Gaul, and probably made in England in a few places, but it was a rare and expensive luxury.



A WINE PRESS (MS. Claud. B. iv.).

**Social
Classes.**

One may picture the average Old English village with its classes somewhat after the following table:—

<p><i>a</i> GENTRY</p>	<p>Thane or <i>Thegen</i> (squire, landlord)</p>	<p>{ Living on his own land, but owing special duties to the king to whose <i>comitatus</i> he has belonged. <i>Of gentle blood or rank.</i></p>
	<p>{ Priest (parson)</p>	<p>{ Living on the glebe with which the lord (his patron who appointed him) has endowed the village church; he receives and administers the tithes and other churchdues. <i>Of gentle rank.</i></p>

1066]

<i>b</i> FARMER	{ Yeoman or <i>Geneat</i> (tenant-farmer)	{ A <i>freeman</i> , farming his own land, or farming his lord's and then working for, as well as paying rent to, the landlord.
<i>c</i> PEASANTS	{ Cottager (<i>cotsetla</i>) Copyholder (<i>gebur</i>)	{ A labourer with five acres in lieu of wages. <i>Unfree</i> . A copyholder, with no stock of his own and bound to heavy task work. <i>Unfree</i> .
<i>d</i> LABOURERS	{ Bee-keepers, cheese-wrights, barn-keepers, swine-herds, ox-herds, shepherds, beadle, woodward, hayward	{ <i>Serfs</i> , who were paid partly in food and clothes, partly, in the case of the village officials, in perquisites and dues.
<i>e</i> VILLAGE TRADESMEN	{ Fisher, hunter (keeper), fowler, craftsmen (smiths, carpenters, leather workers), merchant-peddler, potter, and other travelling tradesmen	{ <i>Free men</i> , who either took service or who pursued some trade or occupation. The travelling "tradesmen," of course, sometimes had their houses in the towns.

It is probable that the thanes and yeomen and village tradesmen, save perhaps the smith, were mostly of English blood with such mixture as intermarriage or concubinage with the British women caused; the other classes, over most of the island, were probably largely of Celtic or pre-Celtic blood.

The same kind of division of classes seems to have prevailed from as far back as we get evidence as to the condition of an English village down to the present day; of course, with slightly differing legal rights. Thus, in early times the women-servants and menials about the yeoman's or gentleman's house were absolute slaves, and were bought and sold as cattle; while the regular labourers, though serfs, had some protection in the "custom" of the place, which limited their lord's rights over them, and they lived in their little cottages and not at their masters' houses.

The German theory formerly generally accepted, that free village communities were the rule among the English, has little direct evidence to support it (p. 302). The English conqueror found estates cultivated by British slaves and freedmen and half-free cultivators [*coloni*], according to certain rules and customs for the profit of the master or patron [*dominus*

or *patronus*] and their own living. He stepped into the Roman patron's or even the earlier Celtic chief's, place, exacted his dues, and farmed more or less after his fashion. The village council to settle matters of unjust trading, the common tillage and pasturage, and things that touched all householders, he presided at—or sent his steward if he were away at a muster or folk-moot, or if he were on service with the king for peace or war. Many villages belonged to the king, and a big thane (or a monastery or a bishop in Christian times) might own many villages. In such cases the big house or hall was only occupied from time to time, when the king, with his guard and council, was travelling, as was his duty, through his domains, or when the lord came to exact his dues and hold his courts.

The
Landed
Classes:

A few quotations will best show the condition of the various landed classes. The first citations are from an old law-tract¹ of the eleventh century, but describing far earlier conditions. It begins:—

The
Thegn.

“Of the gentleman or thane [*thegen*].—It is his law that he is worthy of the right of book or charter [*i.e.* to convey or devise his land according to his charter], and that he must do these things for his land—war-service, fortress help, and bridge-work.² Also on many lands more land-right [*rent-duty*] ariseth at the king's ban [*summons*], such as maintaining of a deer-fence for the king's estate, and clothing for war, and guarding of the sea, and head-ward, and army-guard, alms-fee and church-scot, and many other divers things.

The
Peasant.

“The peasant's or geneat's right is divers, according to the custom on the land. On some lands he must pay rent [*land gavel*] and a grass-hog³ a year, and ride and carry and take loads, work and maintain his lord, and reap and mow, hew deer-fences and keep up hedges, build and make enclosures, bring new fare to town, pay church-scot and alms-fee, keep head-ward and horse-ward [*do errands far or near, whithersoever he be told*].

The
Cottar.

“The cottar's right, according to the custom on the land. On some he must work all Monday the year through for his

¹ *Rectitudines Singularum Personarum*, of which one Old English and several Latin MSS. are preserved.

² Commonly referred to as the “*trinoda necessitas*.” ³ A fat pig.

lord, and three days every week in harvest; and on some lands all days throughout August, and must mow an acre of

DEGEHES LAGV.

DEGEH LAGV IS þæt he syl his boc sihtes syn
 ðe. þæt he ðreo ðine of his lande do syn
 fæpeld. 7 buph bore 7 bryc ze peope. eac
 of manegum landa manre land siht apur
 to cýniges ze harnie spilec is. deop he ze
 to cýniges hame 7 scort to fudscipe. 7
 sceapd 7 heapod peapd 7 synð peapd. æl.
 mes feoh 7 cýpic sceat 7 mænige oðere
 misfelice ðinge. GE HEATES. RIHT.

Genear siht is misfelic beðam ðe on lan-
 de siht. onsumon he sceal land 7 apol
 syllan 7 seap syn. onseape. 7 midan 7
 auepian 7 lade leedan. pýpcan. 7 hlafod
 feoruman. ripan 7 mapan. deop he ze
 heapan. 7 sece halðan. byctian. 7 buph
 he ze gian nize fapan to time feccan.
 cýpic sceat syllan. 7 ælmes feoh. heapod
 peapde healdan. 7 hois peapde. æpendi.
 an. syn. spa nýp. spa hpyðen spa him
 mon to toed. KOTSETIAN. RIHT.

Kote seclan siht. beðam ðe on lan-
 de siht onsumon he sceal ælce
 mon ðæge of eh seapel synst his la-
 fopde pýpcan. oððni. ðazas ælcne
 pucan on heapfett. ne deap he land
 7 apol syllan. him ze bypud. æ. æce.

MS. OF THE "RECTITUDINES SINGULARUM PERSONARUM."
 (Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

oats a day, and he shall have his sheaf, which the reeve or lord's bailiff shall give him. He need not pay rent [land-gavel]. He ought to have five acres—more if it be the custom of the land—and it is too little if it be less, for his

work is often used. He pays hearth-penny on Holy Thursday, as every freeman is bound to do, and he must ward his lord's inland or demesne, if he be summoned so to do, making sea-defence or king's deer-fence and such things as his measure may be, and he pays his church-scot at Martinmas.

"The tenant's at will [gebur's] rights are divers; in some places they are heavy, in some middling or light. On some land it is so that he must work two days' week-work, whatever work he is told off to, the first of each week, the year through, and at harvest three days' week-work, and at Candlemas and Easter three. If his horse is being used [for his lord's service] he need not work while his horse is out. He must pay at Michaelmas Day ten pence rent, and at Martinmas Day twenty-three pence and a bushel of barley and two hen-fowls; at Easter a young sheep or two pence, and he shall from Martinmas to Easter lie at his lord's fold as often as he is required. And from the time when men first plough up to Martinmas he must each week plough one acre, and clean the seed himself in the lord's barn; moreover, three acres of corn-work and two of grass-ploughing; if he need more grass, he must plough according as he is permitted. Of his rent ploughing he must plough two acres and sow it out of his own barn, and pay his hearth-penny; he must feed a hound in equal share with his fellow, and every small farmer must pay six loaves to the swineherd when he drives his herd to mast. On the same land whereon this custom holds the small farmer must be given, for stocking his land, two oxen and one cow and six sheep, and seven acres sown on his yardland. But, the first year over, he must pay all the dues that he is bound to. And he is given tools for his work and furniture for his house; and when he dies, what he leaves goes back to his lord. . . . In some lands the small farmer must pay honey-rent, on some meat-rent, on some ale-rent. . . . The land-laws are divers, as I before said, nor have we established these rights of which we have before spoken over all the people, but we are making known what the customs are where we know them. If we come to learn better ones, we will willingly cherish and hold them according to the usage of the people we are dwelling among, for—

'He must teach laws to pleasure the people
That would not be willing to lose his renown.'

There be many different country laws; in some there is due winter-farm [provisions brought to the lord in winter], Easter-farm, and many more that I cannot tell out."

This good writer also tells of dues paid by, and liveries or allowances of food and clothes paid to, the different classes of landless workmen on the estates (bee-keepers, swineherds, bondmaids, hinds, cowherds, oxherds, shepherds, goatherds, cheesewrights, barnkeepers — all unfree), and of the beadle, woodward, and hayward, their dues and perquisites. These latter were chosen by their fellow village householders, with the acceptance of the landlord, to take care of the village, its arable and woodlands, for the common good. They were as a rule unfree men, though in later days the pindar or pound-keeper, and the parker or keeper, and the miller (when water-mills had taken the place of hand-querns) were freemen, often come of the yeoman class.

Of the various workers free and unfree, the famous Old English Dialogue¹ of the beginning of the eleventh century gives a vivid picture. Says the Ploughman: "I work hard; I go out at daybreak, driving the oxen to the field, and I yoke them to the plow. Be it never so stark winter I dare not linger at home for awe of my lord; but having yoked my oxen, and fastened share and coulter, every day I must plow a full acre or more. I have a boy driving the oxen with a goad-iron, who is hoarse with cold and shouting. And I do more also. I have to fill the oxen's bins [mangers] with hay, and water them, and take out their litter. . . . Mighty hard work it is, for I am not free."

The
Work-
man's
Life.

The Shepherd says: "In the first of the morning I drive my sheep to their pasture, and stand over them, in heat and in cold, with my dogs, lest the wolves swallow them up; and I lead them back to their folds, and milk them twice a day, and their folds I move; and I make cheese and butter, and I am true to my lord."

The Oxherd says: "When the plowman unyokes the oxen, I lead them to pasture, and all night I stand over them

[¹ The "Colloquy" of Ælfric, preserved in two MSS., one in the British Museum and one in the library of St. John's College, Oxford.]

waking against thieves; and then again in the early morning I betake them, well filled and watered, to the plowman."

The King's Hunter says: "I braid me nets, and set them in fit places, and set my hounds to follow up the wild game, till



HUNTING THE HART (MS. Harl. 603).

they come unsuspecting to the net and are caught therein; and I slay them in the net. . . . With swift hounds I hunt down wild game. I take harts and boars, and bucks and roes, and sometimes hares. I give the king what I take, because I am his hunter: He clothes me well, and feeds me, and some-



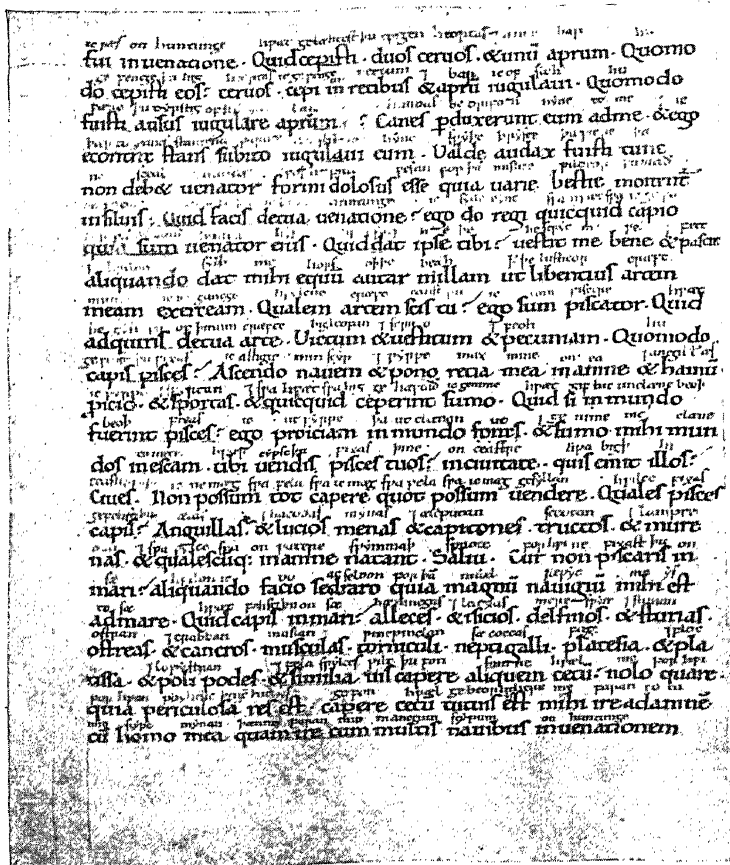
HUNTING THE BOAR (MS. Tib. D. v.).

times gives me a horse or an arm-ring that I may pursue my craft the more merrily."

The Fisher (a freeman), who gets victuals and clothes and money by his craft, says: "I go on board my boat and cast my net into the river, and cast my angle and baits, and what they catch I take. I cast the unclean [fish] away, and take

1066]

me the clean for meat. The citizens buy my fish. I cannot catch as many as I could sell. Eels and pike, minnows and eel-pout, trout and lampreys." Sometimes he fishes in the sea, "but seldom, for it is a far row for me to the sea."



ÆLFRIC'S COLLOQUY (MS. TH. A. III.).

He catches there "herring and lax [salmon], porpoises and sturgeon, oysters and crabs, mussels, periwinkles, sea-cockles, plaice and fluke, and lobsters, and many of the like. . . . It is a perilous thing to catch a whale. It is pleasanter for me to go to the river with my boat than to go with many boats whale-hunting."

The Fowler witnesses: "In many ways I trick the birds—sometimes with nets, with gins, with lime, with whistling, with a hawk, with traps." His hawks "feed themselves and me in winter, and in Lent I let them fly off to the woods; and I catch me young birds in harvest, and tame them. But many feed the tamed ones the summer over, that they may have them ready again."

Of Craftsmen there are mentioned ironsmiths, goldsmiths, silversmiths, coppersmiths, wood-wrights, shoe-wrights, "who make out of hides and fells shoes of various kinds, leather hose and bottles, bridle-thongs and horse-trappings, flasks and hide-vats, spur-leathers and halters, purses and pouches."

The Merchant says: "I go aboard my ship with my goods, and go over sea and sell my things, and buy precious things which are not produced in this country, and bring them hither to you. . . . pall [brocade] and silk, precious gems and gold, various raiment and dye-stuffs, wine and oil, ivory and mastling (brass or bronze), copper and tin, sulphur and glass, and the like. And I wish to sell them dearer here than I buy them there, that I may get some profit wherewith I may feed myself and my wife and my sons."

The
English
Conquest :
First
Stage.

The early Chronicles, whether Welsh or English, do not give us much help with regard to the Settlement. The entries of the English Chronicle referring to the south coast are plainly unhistoric, many of the names—such as Wihtgar, Stuf, Cissa, Port—being plainly fictitious; while Cerdic, a Giwising, like many later persons of the West Saxon royal house, bore a Welsh name. The occupation and fortifying of Bambergh, first with hedge and then with wall, by Ida a Branding, and the ruling of Ælle an Yffing, further south, seem as certainly historic—as do the entries after 544. Other English authorities help us to eke out the Chronicle's brief records as to the names of early settlers; and we know that the first kings of the East English, East Saxons, Mercians, Lindesmen, came of royal clans, and traced to Woden. The East English and West Saxon Etheling families were connected, as were the Northumbrian Yffings, with the later royal house of the Hwiccas. That the Kentish house was of close kin to the royal house of the Goths its names testify. We know that the land was settled when clans were

still powerful, for the new villages bear clan-names, not personal names. We know that the river-deltas and valleys and lines of open country were followed by the settlers. Thus in Sussex, as Mr. Allen has pointed out, each river-gap has been separately settled by a group of South Saxons. We may ascertain from the study of place-names and ancient topography pretty much the lines the Conquest followed. Broad extents of fen and forest often formed barriers to the new settlements, which were long kept to. Thus the East English were geographically limited by the fens, the three dykes, and the rivers. The South Saxons were parted by the Weald from Kent, and by the huge forest that filled the lowland between the Downs from the Southern Island [Southry] that was the farthest outpost of the Saxons that settled on the Thames.

Second
Stage.

Place-names again help us in making out the second stage of the Conquest, when, after the British rally at Mons Badonicus and half a century of what Gildas calls "peace," the Conquest began again, the new coast colonists pushing westward up dale and river till the backbone of the western hills and the fiords of the Severn and Dee stopped the invaders. From 550, when Sarum fell, to 571, when they gained the Chilterns and the land between the Middle Thames and Upper Ouse by a battle at Bedford, and to 577, when Dyrham fight gave them the three ancient cities of Gloucester, Cirencester, and Bath, and opened the Severn Valley and the Western Channel, the Gewissas (West Saxons) swarmed out in colonies, Dorsetas, Wiltsetas, Somersetas, Magesetas, Devonsetas—their general moot-place being at Downton, as that of Kent was at Pennenden. The South English only reached the Irish Channel in 613 after the battle of Chester; for the Welsh were stronger, better organised and led, and the country more difficult. The Middle English were long before they won the midland plain, and the March (Lichfield diocese) was long their border, and Tamworth apparently one of their political centres. But the rough high ground to the north of the Ribble and beyond the Peak, and parts of the forest and fen land by which the midlands were cut off from the north, were still held by the Welsh. Devon and Cornwall kept their native dynasties. No settlement was made north

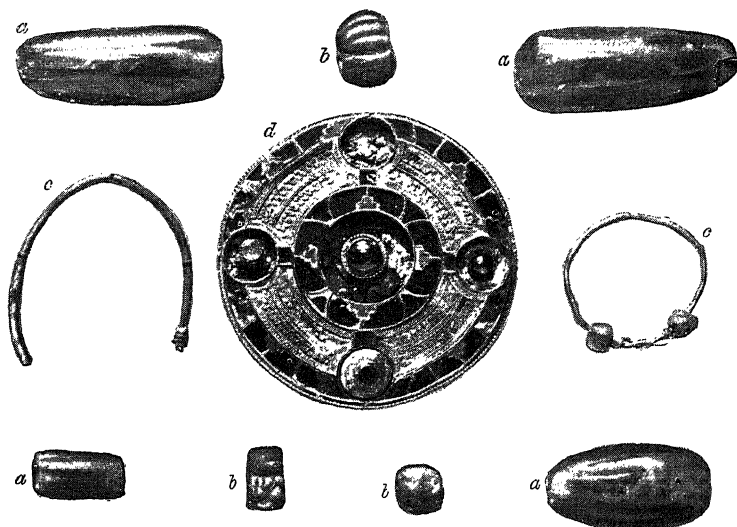
of the Forth; the Fortren Britons were strong by Stirling, and to the back of them lay Pictish tribes. The Vale of Clyde and the Lake District were a strong Welsh kingdom, and behind them the sea was ravaged by bands of Irish rovers, Celts and Picts. The following table may illustrate the probable direction of the Conquest:—

TRIBES.	FIRST STAGE.	SECOND STAGE.
I. Geotas (Jutes, from Jutland and Göteborg district).	{ E. Kent } { W. Kent } { I. of Wight } Meon-waras ¹ (in Hants) East English Lindisfaras Gainas Gyrwas (N. and S.)	
II. Englas (Angles, from Sleswick and Holstein coasts).	{ Mid English } { N. English of Deira } { N. English of Bernicia }	{ Pecsetas } { March-men } { Chiltern-setas } { Hwiccas (royal house) } { Southumbrians }
III. Seaxan (Saxons, from Lower Weser and Elbe).	{ Middle Saxons } { East Saxons } { South Saxons } { West Saxons (Gewissas) } Saxons about Boulogne and Bayeux	Surrey Dorsetas Wiltsetas Somersetas Devonsetas Magesetas Hwiccas (584) Hecanas „
IV. Frisan (Frisians, from Lower Ems and Rhine).	Small colonies on the Forth and by Dumfries.	

¹ The Meon-waras ("Men of Meon") settled the River Hamble in Hampshire where three villages to-day (Meon Stoke, East Meon, West Meon) preserve the name of their conquest. The Lindisfaras and Gainas settled round Lincoln (Lindum) and in the district of which the centre is now Gainsborough. The Gyrwas occupied the fen country, the North Gyrwas penetrating into what is now Northants, the South Gyrwas into the present Cambridgeshire. The Pecsetas settled in the Peak district of Derbyshire, the Southumbrians between the Trent and the Humber; the Marchmen gave their name to Mercia (see text). The Dor-setas were West Saxon colonists that settled the valleys of the Stour

How far
British
Popu-
lation
Survived.

What the English Conquest implied, how far the natives were uprooted or driven west of long. 2°, can only be inferred from various kinds of evidence. That there is a large percentage of Celtic and probably of pre-Celtic blood to the east of this line is certain, and the facts of the English language, which is to a great extent "the tongue of one people spoken by another," may be appealed to in confirmation rather than in contradiction of this position. Women of all classes and slaves were clearly of value to



OLD ENGLISH ORNAMENTS FOUND AT DOVER.

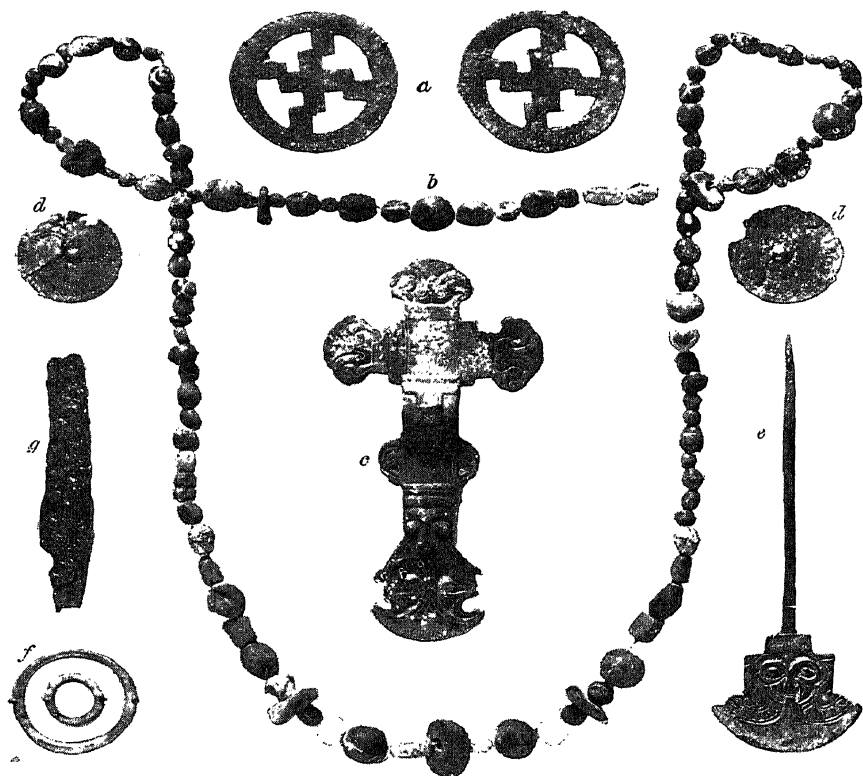
(British Museum.)

the English colonists, though they might be massacred in an occasional raid; and one may infer their being spared through the second stage of the Conquest, though many

and Frome, the Wil-setas about the River Wil or Wiley. The Devon-setas settled in the old Welsh kingdom of the Damnonii, and the Somer-setas in the Parret valley; the Mage-setas occupied the plain of Hereford; the Hwiccas, the district about Worcester: traces of their name have also been suspected in *Wyeh*-wood in North Oxfordshire; the Hecanas occupied the table-land west of the Lower Wye, now Monmouthshire. It is noticeable that the English tribes—Geotas, Eng'las, Seaxan, Frisan—were confederacies of the later type, comprising many older and earlier and smaller tribes. Hence their colonists were known by geographic designations.

1066]

of them may have been exported to the slave markets of the Continent. In the east, which was a good deal Romanised, probably it was mostly the Latin speech which the English replaced. The east coast bears every mark of being more fully Teutonic than inland Britain, though it



OLD ENGLISH ORNAMENTS FOUND AT SLEAFORD.

(British Museum.)

is fair to remember that successive Teutonic migrations, Danish and Flemish, have certainly deepened the Teutonic strain. That the greater number of the upper classes of Roman or British blood were either expelled or slain is likely throughout the country; but that the land was continuously tilled in the same fashion, and chiefly by people of the same stock, from the time when the

Romans came to the time of Henry VIII., now seems pretty certain. The Kentish tradition of the Conquest, drawn probably from Welsh sources, points to the invaders bringing their women with them, as they brought their cattle; and it is stated that part of the land from which the immigrants started for Britain was long left untilled and ungrazed. In later days the Northmen carried their cattle and their women from the British Isles to Ireland, and thence to Greenland and Wineland, as authentic records declare. The West Saxon royal family possibly intermarried with some royal Welsh house. East English and North English kings assumed the titles of the Roman officials they replaced, and (as Dr. Rhys points out) *Bret-wallda* must be taken to be an English translation of *Comes* or *Dux Britanniarum*. The prevalence of a great mass of folk-customs, feasts, and observances, beliefs and traditions, that cannot be referred to Teutonic origins, is a proof of the survival of the native population and of the intermixture of races that must have resulted from this survival. Ethelward cites a statement in his Chronicle (*c.* 1012) that when the Jutes took Wight they killed but few of the people there. That cities such as Anderida, Silchester, Uriconium, were fired and destroyed, and that Chester, Carlisle, and Bath lay in ruins, does not prove that all trade and commerce was destroyed by the coming of the English, though the evidence of coins seems to prove that there was less use of metal money than before, till the eighth century and the resumption of regular trade with Gaul. The disappearance of the Welsh tongue east of long. 2° W. can easily be accounted for; it may be paralleled by the Celticising of the pre-Celtic populations of Ireland, and by the later Englishing of the Celtic population in Ireland and Scotland. In the case of Gaul the great cities, the powerful Church, and the greater mass of Roman-speaking population converted the scattered Frankish landlords to their subjects' tongue. That there was much paganism among the Briton country-folk when the English came is probable, and this will account for the sparse remnants of Roman Christianity found in Britain, and explain the ease with which the servile population would accommodate themselves to heathen masters, since the

difference in faith' seems to have been a strong hindrance to intercourse between the free heathen Teuton and the free Welsh Christian, save in exceptional cases. In examining the physical characteristics of the present mixed populations, it must be remembered that ever since the fifteenth century there has been a steady re-migration of Celts from Wales, Ireland, and Scotland into England, and that this migration has been greatest in and near the towns.

There is little evidence for the size of the population, much less for its composition, in the fifth and sixth centuries. We learn, however, that in Sussex there were reckoned 7,000 [8,400] households, and in the Isle of Wight 1,200 [1,440] in St. Wilfrid's days (in the last half of the seventh century).¹

Of the law and order of Old England we have what Old
English
Law. knowledge can be gained from—

1. Customals, or collections of the customs and laws of certain Kentish, West Saxon, and English kings.

2. Charters and legal documents from the seventh to the eleventh century, especially the epitome of William's great survey known as Domesday Book.

3. Information and allusions in the Old English Chronicle and other Old English writings, prose and verse.

The condition of things of course varied greatly during the six hundred years which we count as Old English, and the period may be divided into—(*a*) the time of heathen conquest; (*b*) the time of separate tribal States, over which one of the three bigger kingdoms of the Northumbrians of York, the men of the March, and the West Saxons successively, had a kind of supremacy or traditional leadership;² and (*c*) the time when the Danes had destroyed the old Northumbrians' and March-men's native dynasties, whereby the West Saxon kings and, for thirty years, their Danish supplanters became sole kings in England and patrons of the whole island.

In the early period the English tribe (a congeries of ancient clans) was ruled by a tribal chief or folk-king. We are told of one of the two host-leaders or aldermen who led the Jutish

¹ The unbracketed figures represent the Old English reckoning in "long hundreds" of 120 each.

² Like the "hegemony" in ancient Greece.]

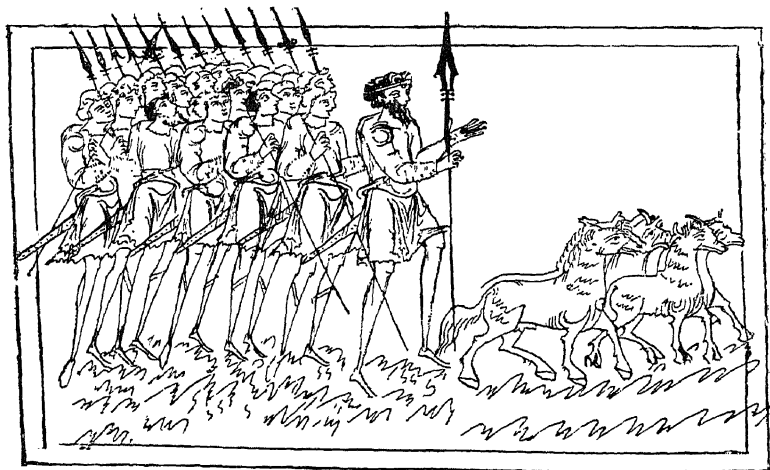
King and
Comitatus.

invaders' fleet took the title of king (being of the blood of Woden), and the "kingly helm" became hereditary in his family. His power was subordinate to the customs of his people; he could touch no freeman's heritage or life without a process at law, which gave the freeman the right of defending his cause before his fellow-freemen; he could pass no law without his people's deliberate consent; he habitually acted by the advice of his counsellors and wise-men, who formed his privy council, as it were; and he presided at the folk-moot or tribal assembly held at regular annual intervals, surrounded by the elders of the nation, the gentry, and his officers. He led the levy or fyrd of his tribe to war; he represented his tribe in negotiations and alliances; and it was his duty to go about his kingdom and see that justice was upheld and that evil customs and oppression were put down. His marriages were means of conciliating other tribes. The gods punished his crimes by bad seasons and other natural catastrophes. He had to preside at the great feasts and sacrifices of the year. There was something of divinity about him, as there is about some native African kings to this day.

He kept, like all gentlemen of estate, a *comitatus*—a number of retainers, men of valour—at his hall, whom he fed, clothed, armed, horsed, and rewarded with gifts, in return for their sworn fidelity and obedience and their defence of his person. These men were classed as the "doughty" or veterans, and the "youth" or novices, and among them were frequently exiles and aliens, "guests," and "hostages," either men of proved valour or young gentlemen adventurers seeking service with a famous or generous king. Beowulf and Heremod are types of these men in the old poetry.

The classic Old English story respecting the fidelity of these *gesithas* or comrades of the king is told in the Chronicle, when Cynewulf, king of the West Saxons, went with a small company to see his mistress at Merton, and was beset by a great band of his enemies under Cyneheard, and wounded to the death, and his thanes on his fall refused reparation or quarter, but fought over their lord's body till all were slain save one, a Brit-Welsh hostage. But the news spread, and Alderman Osric and the thanes of the dead king gathered in the morning swiftly, and rode to Merton, where Cyneheard still lay;

and he offered them their own assessment of money and of land if they would have him as king, and told them that kinsmen of theirs were with him that would never leave him. But they declared that none of their kinsmen could be dearer to them than their lord, and that they would never follow their lord's slayer, and they offered their kinsmen to let them go safe. But the men with Cyneheard said that they would not do otherwise than those that had fallen with the king. So they fought about the gate till the avengers broke in and



KING AND COMITATUS (MS. Jun. xi.).
(Bodleian Library, Oxford.)

slew Cyneheard and all with him save one, who was Osric's godson, and he had many wounds. The reproach addressed in the lay of Beowulf to certain comrades that forsook their lord in his need is striking, and shows the penalties of such treason :—

“ Now the taking of treasure
And the joys of your homes
You and your kindred :
Your family bonds
From every man of you :
Shall hear from afar
Deed beyond doom.
For a gentleman

and gifts of swords to you,
shall wholly fail
All right to your lands,
must be cast away idle
as soon as the princes
of this flight of yours,
Death is comelier
than a shameful life.”

It was the increase of such a guard that made Canute and

Harold formidable, and the enlistment of a number of the banished sea-rovers of Jom under Thureytel the Tall was the nucleus of the force of house-carles¹ or guardsmen that never met its match till it perished overwhelmed by numbers one dark October evening in the great battle when the last island-born king of the older England fell at the foot of his own standard.

Kings were chosen by the people at a tribal moot, and in Christian times consecrated, in heathen times lifted to the holy stone and "chaired" on a shield. The next-of-kin of full age was usually chosen, brother succeeding brother, and claimants sometimes fighting for their claims. Women could not as a rule be queens regnant, though masterful ladies, such as Cwenthryth, the Mercian Queen, or Ethelfleda, the Lady of London, sometimes wielded royal power.

The
Witan.

The growth of the royal power, and the parallel development of the king's "hired" or court and its officials, kept pace with the extension of the West Saxon kingdom till it became the kingdom of the English race. At the time of the Conquest the king had a hoard or treasury, and a hoarder or treasurer, a *referendarius* or chancellor, and a number of thanes about his person, looking after his plate, his clothes, his lodging, and his horses. When to these were added the bishops, abbots, and the aldermen who had succeeded the tribal kings in the separate "folks" or "shires" under him, the king was said to hold a Witena-gemót [meeting of wise-men], or Concilium Sapientium. The deliberations of this body had great weight; all important actions, such as law-making, were done by their advice; but they could not, and did not, pretend to do without the consent of the freeholders (yeomen and gentry and burgesses) when a capital decision—such as the voting of a tax, the election of a king, the passing of a law—was in question. At first the king of the English would go round with his proposed laws to the several folkmoets, getting the separate consent of each; but in the tenth century the kings bethought them of summoning the moots of the various shires to meet them at some convenient central spot, as Oxford or London, and

¹ Literally "housemen"—a Scandinavian word that in the tenth century came to mean the armed (and paid) retainers of a king or noble.

1066]

what this collective moot or Mycel-gemót agreed to need not be confirmed again, since men from every shire were present. The Mycel-gemót is, of course, the Magnum Concilium of the Normans; and was to develop into the High Courts and Parliaments of the thirteenth century, Godwine's case being anticipatory of the Good Parliament's impeachments.

At the folkmoot or tribal court the "concilia" of Tacitus are continued. The freeholders, full citizens, meet armed, and

The Folk-moot.



KING AND WITAN (MS. Claud. B. iv.).

their meeting is at once a Parliament, a muster, and a court of law. The place of meeting was on an open moor, where the terraced mound for law proclamations, and the pit and gallows for executions, marked the sacred ground east and west. It was fenced in and hallowed in the heathen days by special ceremonies to ensure good luck and justice. At this court, before which all greater civil and criminal cases within the tribe or shire must be tried, the king or alderman sat as president, and with him a grand jury of a certain number of freeholders, sworn to do justice. The accused, if it were a criminal trial, was solemnly indicted on oath by a regular number of jurors, his peers. If he pleaded "not guilty," and had not been caught red-handed, he was allowed to try to prove his innocence, according to definite customary rules, by ordeal or oath of "law-worthy" men. If he failed, he was sentenced to the customary penalty by the king or alderman. A few offences—such as secret killing, kin-murder, arson, witchcraft, treason to lord or

tribe—were bootless, and implied death or exile, according to the case. The rest might be atoned for by fines to the court and compensations to the injured person, or, if he had been slain, to his family. Christian men offending against Church-law also incurred heavy and varied penances from the Church, which were laid down in the Penitentials settled at Church councils with the archbishop's authority.

Crimes of lust, of violence, and of simple greed were not uncommon, and the list of "boots" or compensations in the Old English records of customary law are curious reading; they are of the same type as the Burgundian, Lombard, and other early Teutonic laws—extremely minute in their distinctions of wounds and injuries. This was needful, for down to the tenth century feud was almost completely alternative to law; a man could "buy off the spear or bear it" at his pleasure; and there are records of *vendette* pursued outside and even against the law, as the famous feud between the ruling Northumbrian families proves—a feud in which the sainted Waltheof himself joined. The stronger a king was, the more he strove to make a man's offence against a neighbour a heavy offence against himself and his peace, accompanied with a heavy fine (called 'wite'); and the broad domain of feud was already greatly curtailed when William and his lawyers came to rule.

Hundred-
Moots and
Hall-
Moots.

Beneath the shire-moot were the hundred-moots and, in later days, the hall-moots. The hundred-moot, presided over by a lord or a hundred-elder, did for a district what the shire-moot did for the county, and was a court of first instance, criminal and civil, with its grand jury and enforced attendance of persons from each manor (vill) within the hundred. It met at regular intervals—probably quarterly—and did much of the work which in the fourteenth century was taken over from it by the Sessions of Edward III.'s Justices of the Peace. The origin of the hundred would seem to lie in the military organisation, which at first grouped together a number of free homesteads enough to furnish at least a hundred and twenty fully-armed freemen for war, or fully-qualified jurors for the cases of the district.

The hall-moots answer to the Norman courts baron, and

were held under the franchise of the lord of the township as a kind of private hundred. A quorum of freeholders gave the court validity, and the business was of course local, and comprised a variety of small civil causes and of misdemeanours for which local custom had settled proper fines and compensations. The local tenure of land and local agricultural customs and rents gave rise to much of its business. Persons not freeholders could give evidence and sue before it.

When the king was not himself present at a shire-moot, the Ealdorman (alderman) of the shire, a local magnate named by the king, often a descendant of the old tribal kings, presided, and was the natural leader of the shire in war and peace. The Danes called him Earl in their district of England, and the Normans translated him as Count. To watch the king's interest there was another local freeholder of the better sort chosen by his fellows, often at the king's nomination, as shire-reeve or sheriff (scir-gerefa). He saw to the king's rights, dues, and fines, and took care of royal estates situate in his jurisdiction. He acted as the king's representative as regards finance and the execution of justice. Cities and walled towns or boroughs had port-reeves (port-gerefas) of their own, and in general a city had something like the organisation of a shire; a borough that of a hundred; the several city or borough parishes being looked on as townships. There were often fellowships, called guilds, in the towns for the furtherance and control of trade and pleasure.

Sheriff
and Police.

As long as the family remained strong, and the duty of giving up or paying for an offending member and avenging an injured member was acknowledged and carried out, the place of general police was fairly if roughly filled; but as population, migration, and new ideas loosened family ties, the kings began to substitute local mutual responsibility of freeholders arranged in little groups which were neither too large to make their duties too light, nor too small to make them too heavy. This frank-pledge or frith-borrow system lasted till it was superseded by the greater administrative rigour and police of the Angevin kings.

The army of an Old English king was made up of two

Army and
Navy.

elements—the *gesiths* or (in later days) house-carles of himself and his aldermen, and the “*fyrd*” or shire-levies. The first were excellent soldiers, but too few—armed with ashen iron-headed spear; linden target; straight, broad-bladed, double-edged, cross-hilted sword; leathern, brass-rimmed helmet, and longsleeved mail-coat of metal rings. They rode to war and fought defensively in long ranks as close to one another as the free use of over-handed spear and sword or axe allowed, or offensively in a wedge, the “*boar’s head array*,” the invention of which, like many others of the war-customs, was ascribed to the war-god. The shire-levies formed the bulk of the army: all freeholders, men in the prime of life, yeomen and gentry, less well armed than the king’s or aldermen’s companies, yet only needing discipline to make the best of soldiers. They were, however, subject to panic, not obliged to serve out of their own shire, nor willing to stay long from home; and they were moved by local prejudice rather than by *esprit de corps*. Alfred revived an old custom of value, and by only calling out half the legal levy at a time prevented “either the practice of war or the continuance of tillage” from being interrupted. Each shire and most big towns had to furnish a regular quota of ships, manned and victualled, for the national defence; and Alfred had warships built by Frisian shipwrights, which helped to stop the Danish invasions for nearly a century. Alfred and his successors also built stockaded mounds or stone-walled forts (*burhs*), which it was the duty of the neighbouring freeholders to maintain and garrison. These strongholds effectually put an end to the Danish land-forays, and formed centres for the new division of the Midlands into administrative shires not wholly conterminous with the old tribal divisions.

The moated and stockaded hall of the alderman or thane was in small the reproduction of the king’s stronghold; both gave place to the Norman castle with stone tower-keep and walled bailey. The enormous breadths of untilled, undrained, uncleared land made hunting a true “mimicry of war,” and the levy was called out against the wolves as against the Danes. Men could only travel armed and in companies. The main commerce of the country districts was carried on at great fairs, which took place at regular dates each year. The

weekly market in the nearest borough or city supplied such commoner necessities as could not be made in the home-stead. It was forbidden by law to buy or sell land, cattle, or slaves, save before law-worthy witnesses or in open market at a privileged place. Cattle and horse fairs were always seasons of festivity and merry-making—often of feud and robbery.

Towns
and
Routes.

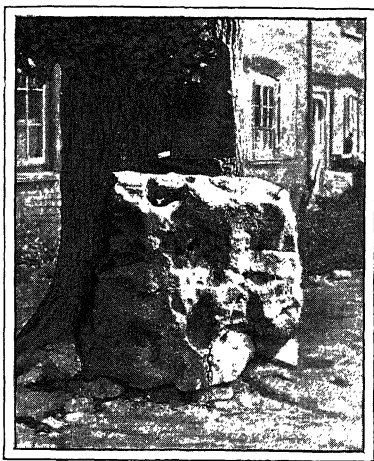


Photo: S. Victor White & Co.

THE BLOWING STONE, VALE OF WHITE HORSE.

THE details of the fresh invasion from the east, and the re-settlement of parts of these islands in the ninth century, are too intricate to set out here, but their main course must be followed. The Christian empire of the Franks was threatened at the end of the eighth century by armed heathen fleets under Jutish or Danish leaders, that laid waste the Low German coast-lands, and by degrees pushed farther west till the English Channel, St. George's Channel, the Bay of Biscay, and even the Spanish and Moorish coasts, were ravaged before the middle of the ninth century.

F. YORK
POWELL.
The
Danish
Invasion.

The leaders of these pirates at first sought only slaves, horses, and plunder, but soon they began to make permanent camps on headlands and islands convenient as rendezvous for their ships and winter-quarters for their men. The third stage of this movement was reached when attempts were made

The Scan-
dinavian
Settle-
ment of
the Ninth
Century.

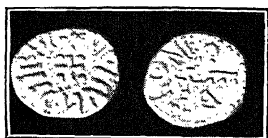
permanently under successful leaders to occupy parts of the ravaged coast-lands as a regular colony. The era of reconnoitring incursions in England closes with the year 855, when "heathen men first on Sheppey over winter sate"—just as the era of methodical plundering ends and that of settlement begins with the year 876, when "Halfdan dealt out the land of the Northumbrians, and they [the newcomers] were ploughing and tilling it."

Of the three great kingdoms of the English, those of the Northumbrian and the East English were re-settled by Northmen and Danes, respectively under Halfdan Lodbroc's son (from the South of Norway), and Guthrum the Old, a Danish prince. The Mercian king was driven from his throne, and the eastern half of his realm occupied by various bands of invaders, mostly Danes. But west and south of Thames the West Saxon king, Alfred, after a long and fierce struggle, held his own, and the invaders were obliged to make terms with him, and promise to take on his faith and keep peace with him, 878. The rest of the century is taken up with the baffled attempts of Hæsten [Hasting], a Northman, to seize the West Saxon kingdom or part of it, and with revolts of the settled Northmen of York and the Danes of East England against their West Saxon suzerain. In the tenth century Alfred's son, daughter, and grandsons recover the whole land, as the intrusive dynasties die out, till after the battles of Brunbury (937) and Stanmoor (956), the West Saxon Edgar (959), reigned as Emperor of All Britain and king of all the English lands. Early in the tenth century, too, the invasions in Gaul ended with the establishment of two alien principalities—the one on the Loire, the other on land west of Seine under Hrolf (p. 317). Then for a time there was peace.

Its consequences.

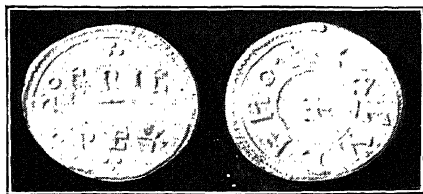
The first results of this great immigration were the ruin and destruction of great part of the English coasts. Nearly every big minster and town was at one time or another plundered or burnt or put to ransom. The culture of the Northumbrian kingdom suffered a deadly blow. The Church, with its civilising and cosmopolitan influences, was for a time swept out of great districts, which fell back momentarily into heathen hands. The amount of misery caused by the

murders, cattle-liftings, kidnapping, and cruelty incident to these pirate forays, was very great. In the north and east the English gentry fled or made terms with the invaders; in the south many fled over sea, and of those left many seem to have given up their lands to those better off, for bread's sake. For years the impoverished people had not sense to support their king heartily in his attempt to secure their land permanently by establishing and garrisoning strong forts of stockaded earthwork at places where the movement of alien troops could be checked; in building, manning, and keeping up a fleet to guard the coasts; and in making alliances with foreign prelates and princes against the heathen foe. When they determined to settle, the newcomers seem to have parcelled out great blocks of land (from which the owners had



COIN OF WIGMUND, ARCH-
BISHOP OF YORK.

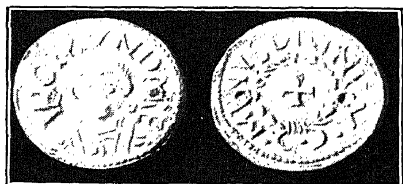
fled or been driven away) among themselves by lot, and set up townships called by their own names. In many of the towns they had stormed or forced to surrender they sat down by the side of the English as traders and merchants. At York the Archbishop, whether out of jealousy for the Church of Canterbury (so closely connected for two generations with the ruling house of Wessex) or out of practical wisdom in the desire to make the best of things for the conquered and the conquerors, allied himself with the new northern kings. Hardi-Canute-Godfred was the *protégé* of St. Cuthbert himself; and Eric Bloodax, though he seems to have been one of the causes of the burning of Ripon Minster, "which St. Wilfrid timbered," and though his wife was held a witch, yet seems to have been on good terms with local churchmen and to have done little for heathendom himself.



COIN OF ERIC BLOODAX.

In East England the Danish and Norwegian settlers seem to have taken easily to the new creed, which enabled them to trade far more freely than before, for there had been difficulties in the way of their

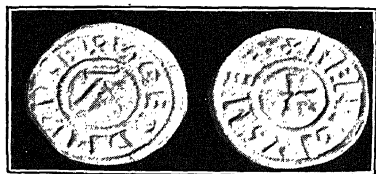
intercourse with Christians, with whom, as long as they were heathen, they could not eat or drink, or join in social or legal ties. The increase in trade is shown by the improvement of the Northumbrian currency (brought up to the Continental



COIN OF WIGMUND.

Frankish type, not hitherto adopted in the north), and in the amount of money struck in East England under Danish rule. Even in the West Saxon kingdom fresh silver had to be struck in great quantities to pay the Danes and Northmen, and the fact that they preferred coined metal to bullion shows that they meant to use their booty in trade. Such moneyers' names as Abenel, Hludovicus, Milo, Robert, Remigius, Johannes, and Stephen, some clearly Frankish and others certainly not English, point to the fact that foreign traders had found their way to employment in England as moneyers.

The law and organisation of the newcomers were very like that they found in the land. Many of their terms—such as *law*, *husting*, *outlaw*, *bylaw*, *hansel*, *riding*—drove out the older

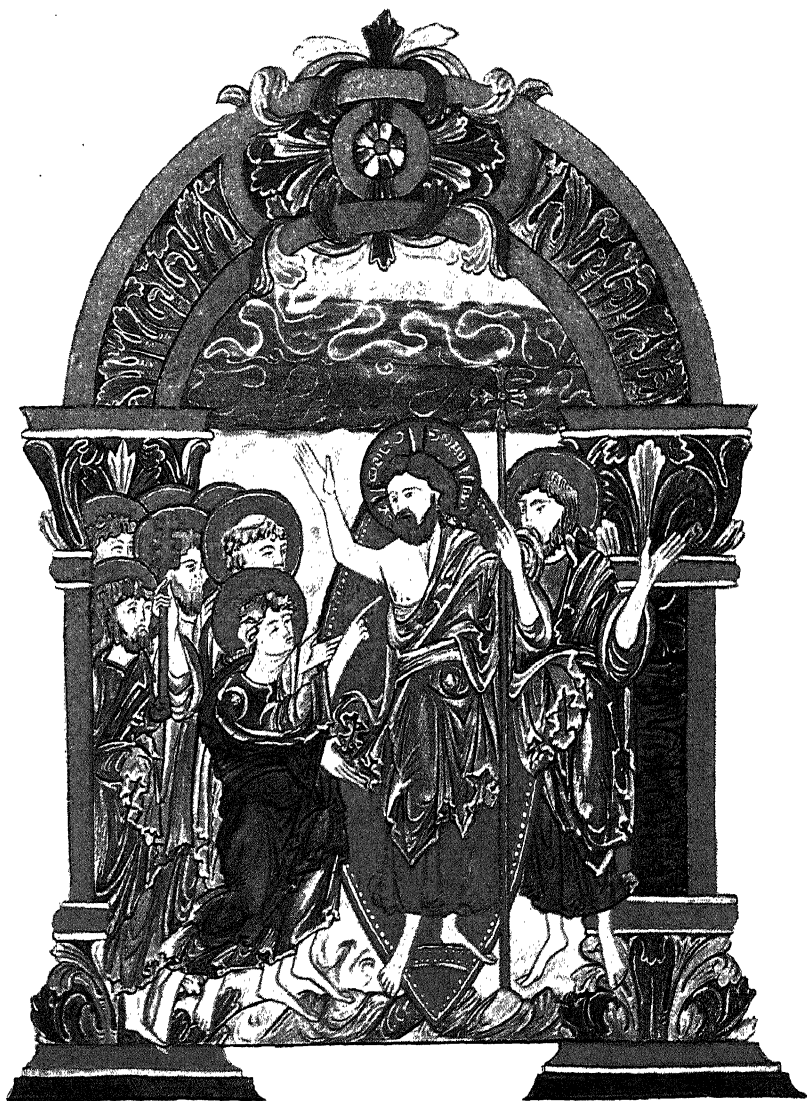


COIN SHOWING MONEYER'S NAME, REMIGIUS.



COIN SHOWING MONEYER'S NAME, ABENEL.

terms when the English law was finally consolidated under the Norman and Angevin kings, and have become part of our language. There was, as might have been expected, far less unfree land-holding in districts settled by the Danes and Northmen than is found in those parts which they did not occupy. Powerful families were founded, such as that of Siward Beornsson, whose blood, through the martyred Waltheof, flows in our present Queen's veins. There were some among the newcomers who could not tolerate a life of obedience to a



PAGE FROM THE BENEDICTIONAL OF ST. ETHELWOLD.

[To face p. 208.]

powerful king, and these, during the two generations that followed the settlements in the ninth century, preferred to go forth with their booty and slaves, and their English, Scottish, or Irish wives, to lands as yet unsettled or untilled. Hence descendants of King Ciarval and King Oswald are to be found enrolled in the Icelandic Book of Settlements, and emigrants from the British Isles peopled the Faroes and Iceland.

As to the comparative civilisation of the English and the Northmen, there is little to be said, for there cannot have been much difference. The harder climate and rougher life of the Scandinavian Peninsula, and the isolation of the habitable districts, probably preserved old ways and customs longer than in Great Britain. But the merchant voyages in the Baltic and the north; the walrus-killing, whale-fishing, and seal-hunting that had trained many of the Northmen; the discipline of the ship and the sailor-life had filled the Northmen with energy and self-help. They were indifferently traders or pirates, according to circumstances; they had furs to sell, and wine and weapons to bring from Gaul and Germany; they furnished slaves to the southern merchants (Jews or Moors), who led them in sorrowful gangs across Gaul to the Mediterranean coasts, where they fetched good prices. The foreign arts of stone-building, of broidery (by surface-stitching in coloured yarns), and of music the English had learned, but the Northmen admired and adopted them as soon as they settled in our islands, and the charms of church-music and church-pictures had as much weight in attracting converts among the Scandinavians in the tenth and eleventh centuries as they had had in the fifth and sixth among the heathen English.

Character
and civil-
isation of
the new
Settlers.

In the domestic arts, save that the English had better land, and probably better customs of tillage, there was not much difference between the Christians on the west and the heathen on the east of the North Sea.

In epic poetry the Northmen excel their kinsfolk, and the lays that remain of the Wicking¹ period are far superior in

¹ Wicking (Wicing) means warrior—Wieging, according to Mr. Sweet. The modern form "Viking" comes from late Icelandic, and is misleading. It has nothing to do with Vik, a bay, and is used to denote a pirate or buccaneer, such as the "Jom-Wickings" whom Earl Eric defeated.

power and simplicity and the true epic qualities to those of the English that have survived, though there is among the North English poems the charm of a deep poetic melancholy, of a half-lyric and Celtic character, that has not its analogue among the Old Northern poems. Two of the most characteristic northern forms of literature—the prose epic or *saga*, and the elaborately metred *drapa* or panegyric—were developed out of contact with the Celtic tales and poems in the British Isles, and owe their cultivation to the western Icelanders, in whom there was no small proportion of Irish blood.

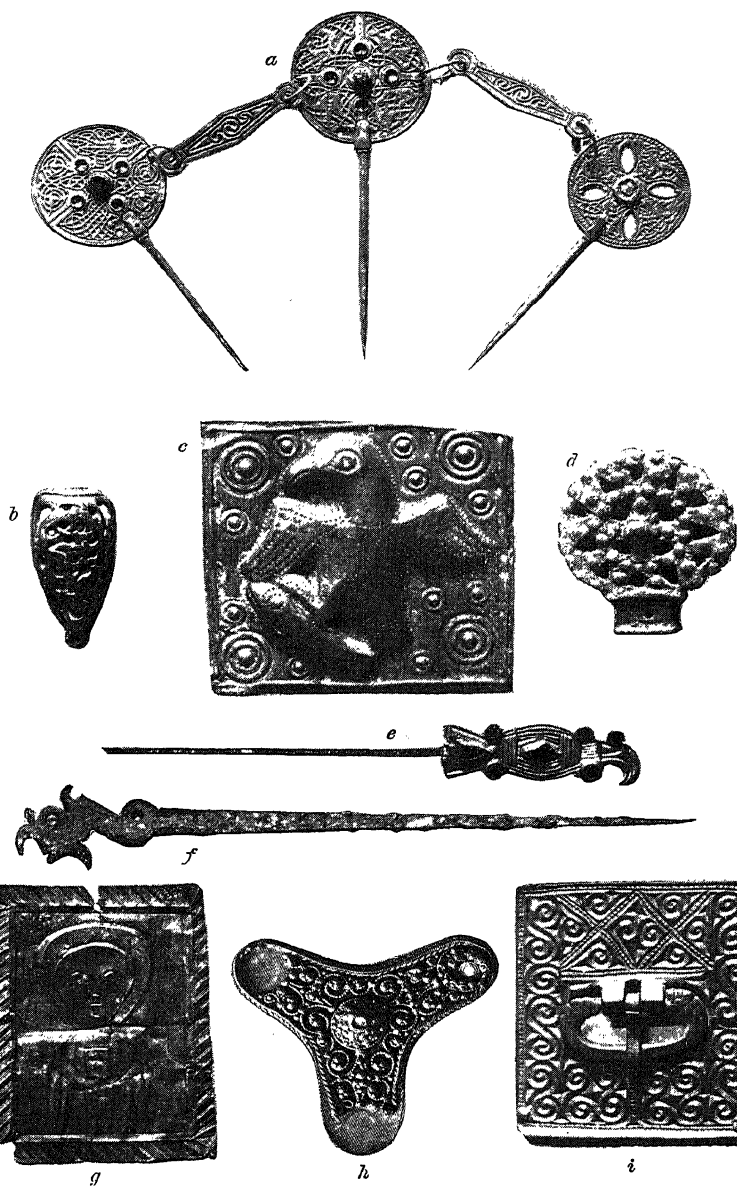
The moral qualities most in esteem among the newcomers were those which the English had always honoured—bravery, generosity, faithfulness, devotion to friend, kin, and lord. Pity and mercy and self-restraint were Christian virtues that the English had found hard to assimilate; and it was not till they had been some time in the new country, and taken the new faith, that the Northmen put them on and tried to cast away the cruelty and treachery and reckless vengeance for which they had been long badly famed.

Little evidence as to the survival of the Danish tongue is forthcoming; but the races continued distinct in Essex, for instance, as late as the end of the eleventh century; and personal names of northern origin marked out the descent of their bearers for at least a century later.

Area of
the North-
men's
Settle-
ment.

The areas settled by the Northmen can be easily traced by the place-names on the English map. On the north-west coast there are the settlements each side of Solway, with the “thing-wald” or “moot-stead”¹ north of that water, and another up in the Cumberland fells—probably others in Westmorland. These districts were settled by Northmen from Ireland and the Isle of Man, of Norwegian stock. The date of their settlement is not recorded, but it would probably be some time in the ninth century. From Ireland, too, but at a later date in the tenth century, came the invaders that settled in Wirrall and in the neighbourhood of Manchester, where three “thing-steads” still remain.

[¹ Place of meeting of the courts and folk-moots.]



OLD ENGLISH METAL-WORK.
(British Museum.)

It was the sturdy resistance of Ethelfleda, the Lady of the Marchmen, to these newcomers that saved the flank of the West Saxon line of defence from being turned and kept the Severn valley out of the "Dane-law."

The Dane-law proper consisted of the present fifteen shires—

Middlesex	Essex	Saxon land, settled chiefly by the Danes.
Norfolk	Suffolk	East English land, settled chiefly by Danes.
Bucks	Beds	Land of English of the March, settled chiefly by Danes, but in parts by Northmen.
Herts	Northants	
Cambs	Hunts	Land of English of the March, settled chiefly by Northmen.
Lincoln	Leicester	
Derby	Notts and	
	Stamford	
	District	North English land, settled chiefly by Northmen.
Yorks	part of Durham	

Of course there were many English or Saxon districts in these shires, though they all followed the Dane-law instead of their own Saxon or Mercian or Northumbrian laws. Thus Holderness and Northumberland remained English, and great part of St. Cuthbert's patrimony. One can trace in East England, Essex, and Lincolnshire very plainly the streams of colonisation, the little groups of northern settlers' villages. A line drawn from the Nen's mouth to Rugby, from Rugby to Skipton, and from Skipton to Preston, would be the southern line of the country, where the English "hundred" division is represented by the Northmen's "wapentakes."

Four of the new shires were grouped about four of the Five Boroughs, but we do not know the reason why Stamford was not, like the others, made the head-town of one of the new Alfredian shires.

That the Five Boroughs were on the way to form a kind of town-league seems likely from several passages in the Chronicle, but there is little direct information on the subject.

Bedford and Northampton are spoken of together in connection with a Danish or Norwegian earl in Bedford, one Thurcytel, in 918. But the passage is ambiguous, and a Northern earl, Thurfirth, is spoken of in 921, who may have been the Scandinavian earl in Northampton.

Two consequences followed from the settlement of the

Political
Results of
the Settle-
ment.

Scandinavians in England that need separate notice. First, the several Christian powers of Great Britain were driven to ally themselves together against the heathen foe of them all; and though individual kings, like Constantine, foolishly chose to join the invader for what looked like present gain, this policy was persistent generally. In Alfred's time (885) the Welsh kings and princes—Hemeid of South Wales; Howel, Brocmail, Fernmail, kings in Mid-Wales; Helised, king of Brecon, and Anarawd and his brother of North Wales, as Asser tells us—had sought his help against the heathen, and the alliance had apparently stood firm. His son ransomed Bishop Cameleac of South Wales when he was captured by the two Norwegian earls, Ohter and Hroald, in 918, though there was a war between the South Welsh and the Lady Ethelfleda in 916. In 922 "the kings of the North Welsh, Howel and Cleddauc and Ieothwel, and all the North Welsh folk, sought him as lord." Two years later, at Bakewell, in Peakland, "these chose him as father and lord there, the king of Scots and all the nation of Scots, and Ragnald and Eadulf's sons, and all that abide in Northumberland, whether English or Danish or Northmen or other; and also the Strath-Clyde Welsh king and all the Strath-Clyde Welsh." In 926 Ethelstan, Edward's son, at Eamot received pledges and oaths of peace from Huwal, the West Welsh king, and Constantine, king of Scots, and Uwen, king of the men of Gwent, and Ealdred Eadulfing from Bamborough. But Constantine broke the peace, and, leaguings himself with Anlaf Cuaran the Northman, a famous sea-king (who has left behind him a legend of his marvellous career), marched south. Ethelstan met his foes at Brunbury, somewhere on the north-west coast of England, and defeated them "by Christ's mercy, and slew their five kings and eight earls." Edmund, Ethelstan's brother, when he had harried over all Cumberland in 945, "let it all to Malcolm, king of Scots, on the agreement that he should be his fellow-worker both on sea and land." The Scots again repeated their oaths to King Eadred, Edmund's brother and successor in 946, and in 972 at Chester to Edgar. And this patronage or suzerainty was acknowledged by Welsh and Scottish princes afterwards repeatedly down to and in the Conqueror's days. The old

1086]

friendship and probable inter-marriages between the house of Cerdic and the royal houses of Wales no doubt made it easier for the Welsh and West Saxon kings to be friends; while the Scots would rather look for friends farther south than the Northmen's king at York or the English earl at Bamborough.

The incorporation of Northumberland with the realm of the English king seems finally to have taken place in 954, when there ceased to be a separate under-king at York. The incorporation of East England had taken place in 921, and of Danish Mercia in 942. The new settlers had a distinct policy of their own, and one can see traces of the struggle between the reforming Scandinavian party and the old West Saxon patrons and prelates over church questions, and between the Northern and Danish earls and the great aldermen of English Mercia over political questions, for two or three generations. The jealousy between York and Canterbury had been strong enough, as we have noticed, to make Archbishop Wulfstan ally himself with the Northmen Anlaf Sihtric's son and Rægnald Guthfirth's son and with Eric Harold's son, against his "natural lord," King Edmund, and it persisted as late as William the Norman's day and later, in a less violent form.

The disputed elections in 975, like the earlier division of the realm in 955 and the later murder of 979, may be referred to the divided state of the country under the "old" and "new" parties, as they may be called; and the inefficiency of the resistance of Ethelred to the Danish attacks in the eleventh century were probably due to the same cause. The distrust the Northern earls showed of Harold, in spite of his alliance by marriage with them and his ready succour against the Norwegians, was possibly based upon the deep difference in feeling between the northern and eastern parts of England and the shires of the south and west.

The dynastic conquest, by which for thirty years kings of the Danish house ruled all England in the place of kings of the West Saxon house, must be explained partly by the large body of professional soldiers in the Danish king's employ, partly by the folly of Ethelred and the vigour of Sweyn and Canute, partly by the feeling over a great part of the country that it was not much more unnatural to be ruled by a Dane than a West Saxon, provided local rights were respected. Still

**The
Danish
Kings.**

it is noteworthy that it was in East England, under Alderman Brihtnoth, in 988,¹ at Maldon, that Anlaf Tryggvesson, Sweyn's ally, met with a severe check, and that it was Ulfketyl the Swift, another alderman of the East English, who, in 1004, all but cut off Swegen and his host on their way down to their ships after burning Thetford, "when there was great slaughter on either side. The noblest of the East English were slain there, and, if they had been in full strength, the Danes would never have got back to their ships, as they themselves said." The sudden death of Sweyn in 1104 led to the recall of Ethelred, on his promising to rule better. But the Mercian alderman's treason opened the way for Canute on Ethelred's



COIN OF CANUTE.

death in 1016, and, in spite of the heroic efforts of Edmund Ironside in a campaign wherein nearly all the English nobles fell, a compromise was come to at Olney. Canute was made king in Northumbria, and Mercia and Edmund in East England and Wessex. Edmund's murder at the close of the year left Canute sole king. But after a long and prosperous reign, during which he had allied himself with the Pope and the Archbishop of Canterbury, and raised men of his own choice but of native birth to the rule as great earls of the four parts of his English kingdom, and kept up his guard of house-carles (paid guards) as a permanent security to the crown, Canute died. At the great meeting at Oxford of all the Wise Men, Leofric and the Mercians and "most all the thanes north of Thames and men of the fleet at London" chose Harold. But Godwin and all the West Saxon nobles wanted Hardi-Canute, and got him chosen as their West Saxon king, with Godwin and Elfgifu, Hardi-Canute's mother, to act as regent for him, as he was dwelling in his Danish kingdom. But two years later, tired of waiting for him in vain, the West Saxons drove out Elfgifu, and accepted Harold as sole king. Hardi-Canute succeeded his brother, and ruled but a brief while, favouring his kinsfolk of the old West Saxon line :

¹ This seems the most probable date; but the MSS. of the Old English Chronicle vary between 991 and 993.

so that when he died, "as he stood at his drink," the way was open for his half-brother Edward, who was chosen by "the whole people, as was natural."

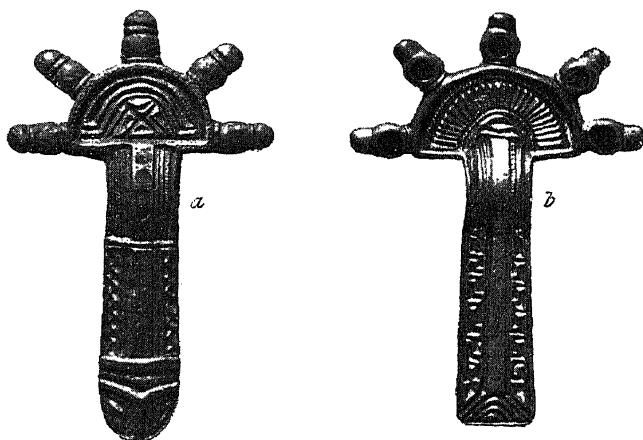
The rule of the Danish dynasty did probably little, save in London and a few cities, to increase the body of Scandinavians settled in England; nor did it last long enough to bring about full unity of English law, though steps were taken in this direction. Its influence on English speech and culture is slight and difficult to observe, compared with that of the ninth-century settlement. The influence of England upon Denmark was far greater than the influence of Denmark upon England. English soldiers fought for Canute in the Baltic, English priests and bishops reorganised and revived the Danish Church. English gold paid for the house-carles, and by so providing a legitimate career for military adventurers helped to keep the peace in the north; English gold overthrew St. Olave, and helped to secure everlasting fame for Canute from the poets that crowded to the court of a king who was known to be bountiful to foreigners if he was frugal toward his own servants and subjects.

THE ecclesiastical writers to whom we are indebted for the earliest accounts of our forefathers have little to tell us of the form of religion they brought with them into Britain. Bede was most painstaking in his search for records which might throw light on the progress of Christianity; whenever he has occasion to mention the heathenism it supplanted, he dismisses the subject with a few contemptuous words.

A. H.
MANN.
Old
English
Paganism.

Though we are thus deprived of much valuable information in regard to details, there is abundant evidence that in its main features the paganism of the Anglo-Saxon was the same as that of other branches of the Teutonic family. With but slight variations we find the days of the week named after the same deities in all Teutonic countries. These names must have been substituted for those of Roman gods by the German tribes on the frontier of the Empire (for this, apparently, was the immediate source of the week of seven days), and by them handed on to our own ancestors, who then dwelt along

the shores of the Northern Sea. Another link with German and Scandinavian tradition is given us in the genealogies of the Anglo-Saxon kings. In the form in which they have reached us they are probably the work of a later age, but they doubtless embody ancient legends, for they contain the names of many gods and heroes who play a great part in the myths of the north. It is also certain that the Saxons continued to worship the same gods long after their arrival



SILVER GILT BROOCHES OF TEUTONIC TYPE.

(a) Found on the Continent; (b) found in Suffolk

in this island, for there are places named after them in all parts of the country, *e.g.* Tewesley (Tiw's lea) in Surrey, Wednesbury (Woden's borough) in Staffordshire, and Wampool (Woden's pool) in Cumberland. If we may trust comparative mythology, these gods were originally personifications of the forces of Nature, especially such as exert a powerful influence over the welfare of man. The tendency of the primitive mind to ascribe natural effects to living agents led men to see in the changes of sunshine and storm the actions of beings with forms and passions like their own. As the conception of the god grew in the imagination of the people, new fancies gathered round the central idea; fresh virtues were ascribed to him; myths arose concerning his life and adventures; and the mysterious power that lurked behind Nature assumed more and more the character of an earthly hero.

1066]

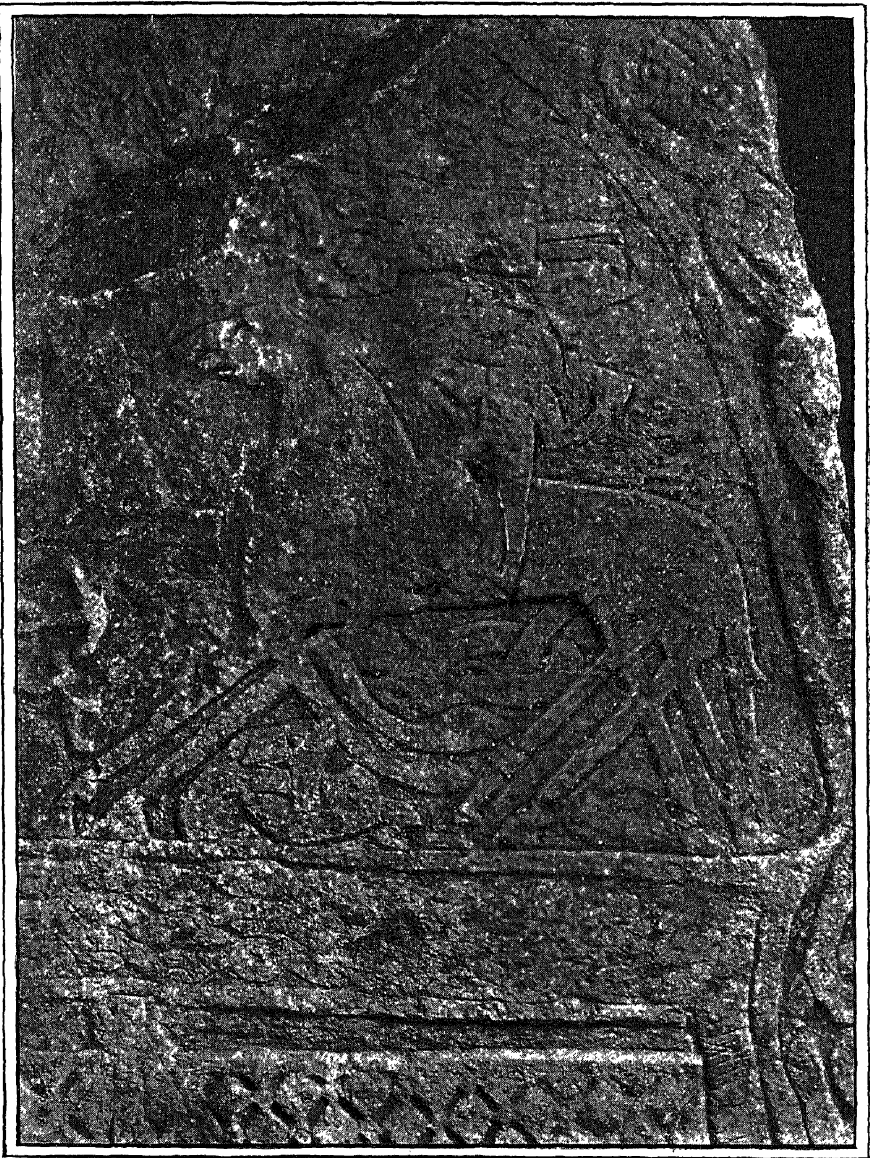
The
Greater
Gods.

In England the Church was so successful in stamping out heathenism at an early period that there are few traces of the worship or attributes of the greater gods, and even these gain a meaning only in the light of Continental legends and customs, and especially the rich mythology of the north, preserved for us in Icelandic literature. There is some reason for thinking that Woden, the Norse Odin, was the favourite god of the Anglo-Saxons. The number of places named after him is exceptionally large, and he is mentioned in all the royal pedigrees. He does not appear at the head of the list; other gods and heroes are reckoned among his ancestors, and some of the names in the ascending series are really titles of Woden himself. But this confusion only tends to show how large a place he filled in the minds of the worshippers, while his low position may be accounted for by supposing that the Woden named was a new birth of the original god in a less divine form—a notion of which there are other traces in Teutonic mythology. As far back as the close of the first century Tacitus, writing of the German tribes best known to the Romans, says that they “pay especial reverence to Mercurius,” and the Teutons themselves afterwards identified Woden with this god (the Greek Hermes) by assigning to him the fourth day of the week. The attributes of Woden were, indeed, far more extensive than those of Mercury. His name is said to be derived from the root of a verb meaning “to go” or “wander” (English *wade*), and has been supposed by some to denote his all-pervading influence. In the substantive, however, the primary meaning seems to have become merged in that of “energy” and “impetuosity,” so that Woden would signify “the wild, furious one.” This is hardly the light in which Hermes or Mercury is presented to us in classical mythology. Yet the northern and southern gods possessed many traits in common. They were both protectors of boundaries—we find trees and stones marking divisions of land named after Woden in Anglo-Saxon charters—and in Norse mythology the invention of runes¹ is ascribed to Odin, as

[¹ Runes (literally “secrets”) are the old Norse alphabet, probably derived through the Goths—who at one time lived about the sources of the Vistula—from an early Greek alphabet used by the traders of Olbia, a colony on

that of writing and the alphabet was to Hermes. But it was probably as the arranger of battles and giver of victory that Woden was most vividly present to the minds of the fierce bands who descended on the shores of Britain. He seems, in fact, to have assumed many functions which properly belonged to other gods. Thus the real war-god was Tiw (Norse *Tyr*), whose name is preserved in Tuesday. The fifth day was named after Thunor—the Thor of whom we hear so much in Scandinavian mythology. His name is the same word as “thunder,” which was believed to be the sound of his waggon rumbling over the clouds, as the thunderbolt was the hammer with which he dealt blows on the giants of the hills and the frost. The name of the weapon seems to have been afterwards transferred to the god himself, so that in England we have not only a Thursley and a Thundersfield, but also a Hammerwick and a Homerton. Very different in character was the peaceful Frea, the god of the sunshine and the fertilising rain. To him the boar was sacred; its figure was worn as a charm by warriors on their helmets, as we see in the poem of “Beowulf,” and the customary boar’s head at Christmas-time is probably a survival of superstitions connected with his worship. Of the beautiful myth of the death of Balder, the sun-god, there are no traces in Anglo-Saxon literature. In the genealogies he is called Bældæg. The names Baldersby in Yorkshire, and Balderston in Lancashire, probably date from the period of the Danish and Norwegian invasions. It is, however, believed that *Polesworth*, *Polstead*, and other names of Saxon origin, contain the name of this deity in another form. Saturday is said to have received its name from Sætere, whose name also appears in Satterleigh and Satterthwaite; but nothing is known concerning this god, and the name may well be a corruption of the Latin “Saturn’s day.” Chief among the female deities was Frigge, the wife of Woden, who gave her name to the sixth day; and among the others was Eostre (whence our *Easter*), probably the goddess of dawn and the returning year, to whom sacrifices were offered in April, called by the Saxons “Eostre’s

the Black Sea, settled from the Greek city of Miletus. The amber known to Herodotus perhaps reached Greece from the Baltic by way of the Vistula, the Dnieper, and Olbia. Cf. Isaac Taylor, “The Alphabet.”]



SLEIPNIR, WODEN'S HORSE.
(*National Museum, Stockholm.*)

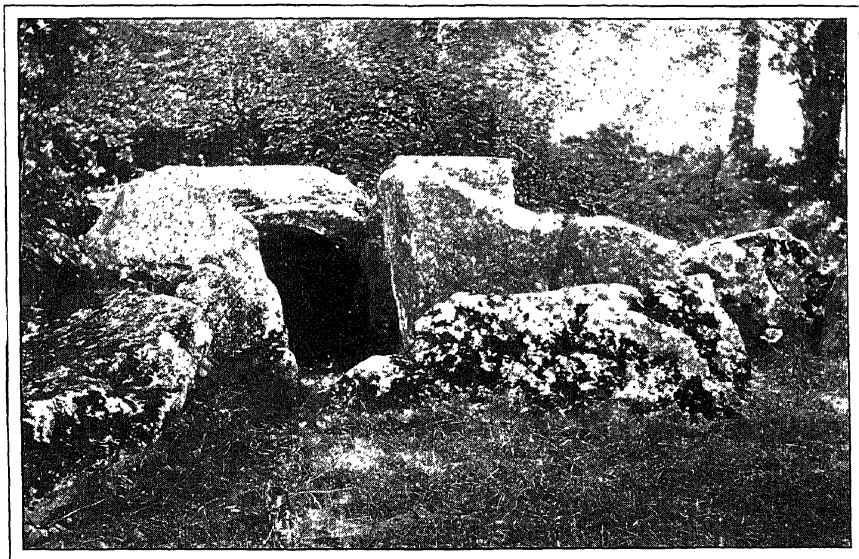
month." All we learn from Bede concerning the worship of these gods is that they had temples, in which images and altars were placed, and that priests were dedicated to their service. After listening to the preaching of Paulinus, Coifi, the chief priest of Edwin, king of the Northumbrians, violated the heathen sanctuary—which, we are told, was surrounded by hedges—by hurling into it a spear, and afterwards gave orders for it to be burnt. This anecdote helps us to understand the ease with which the missionaries overthrew the belief in gods like Thor and Woden, of whose existence thoughtful men had already begun to grow sceptical. They were the chief objects of their attack, for the signs of their worship were everywhere visible.

**Other
Divinities.**

But there were other deities of a vaguer and more impersonal nature, who were, perhaps, more intimately associated with the inner life of the people, and whom they would instinctively call to mind in moments of difficulty and danger. Such were the dread goddesses Hel and Wyrd (Fate), who held sway over the destinies of life and death. The conception of Hel as a woman seems early to have faded away, though many features of her realm of gloom and sorrow—the abode of those who die the death of the coward, and have no share in the joys of Valhalla¹—reappear in Anglo-Saxon descriptions of the Christian place of punishment. The remembrance of Wyrd lingered on side by side with the doctrine that Fate is the decree of the Almighty; in "Beowulf" we find such expressions as "Wyrd pursueth us, cruel and grim in hate," and in this and other old poems there are allusions to the web of destiny woven by the goddess for every man at his birth. Other denizens of the pagan world—giants, wights, and elves—easily found a new home in a universe which was everywhere peopled by the malignant hosts of the Evil One. Grendel—the water-spirit slain by Beowulf—is represented in the Christian poem as one of the offspring of Cain, who fled in despair from the joys of his fellow-men. Of like nature were the Nicors—monsters of the sea and fens, quelled by Beowulf in fierce combat—and the fire-dragon whom he slew, though at the cost of his own life. Among the giants were Weland (the wondrous craftsman who forged

[¹ The strictly accurate form is "Waelheall."]

the sword with which Beowulf killed Grendel) and Ægel or Eigel, who performed the feat afterwards related of Tell and other heroes. The names of these brothers survive in Aylesbury and Aylesford, and in Wayland Smith's Cave (originally Weland's Smithy) in Berkshire. Even the greater gods were not altogether forgotten. Long after their worship had ceased they were remembered as the ancestral heroes of



WAYLAND SMITH'S CAVE, NEAR UFFINGTON, BERKSHIRE.

the race, and tales of their virtues and prowess were sung in the courts of Christian kings. Thus in the opening lines of "Beowulf" we have the legend of Scyld or Sceaƿ, the child who drifted to the shores of the Spear-Danes, and who lived to become their king and to found the dynasty of the Scyldings. The hero Sceaƿ or Ing was none other than the god Frea, who taught men to till the ground and to follow the arts of civilised life. But as a national life grew up under foreign influences, these old memories gradually died away. The Church gained the control of men's thoughts, and paganism survived only in those forms in which it was thoroughly in keeping with the materialistic conceptions of

medieval Christianity. The belief in witchcraft and in the efficacy of spells and incantations was probably as widespread in the fifteenth as it had been in the fifth century. Even now, in remote parts of the country, traces are found of practices for the origin of which we must go back to the days of Woden and Thunor.

**J. H.
MAUDE.
The
English
Church.**

**Its
Historian.**

INTERESTING and important as is the history of the Church of England as a whole, the story of its foundation unquestionably possesses an exceptional charm. This is due principally to the merits of the writer who has told the tale, and a short account of his life and work will form a fitting introduction to a sketch of the events which he has recorded. Bede was born about the year 673, on lands belonging to the twin monasteries founded by Benedict Biscop at Wearmouth and Jarrow, and from the age of seven he passed almost the whole of his life in the latter monastery, where, to use his own words, he "gave his whole energies to meditating on the Scriptures, and, amid the observance of the monastic rule and the daily ministry of singing in the church, ever held it sweet either to learn or to teach or to write." He summed up in himself all the learning of his age, and transmitted it to the school which he helped to found at York, to be diffused again by Alcuin over Europe. In him, Dr. Stubbs says, "the great knowledge of the scholar was coupled with the humility and simplicity of the purest type of monasticism." In his "*Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum*"—a work in which candour, charity, and far-sightedness are combined with a power of narration and a mastery over his materials quite unparalleled in that age—he has given us almost all the knowledge that we possess of the early history of the English Church. It is especially to be noticed that the actors in this history stand out from Bede's pages real living men and women, and around the life and work of three of them—Augustine, Aidan, and Theodore—the events which issued in the formation of the English Church group themselves.

**Augustine's
Mission.**

In the year 596 Gregory the Great, who among his manifold anxieties always had missionary work at heart, and who had wished to go himself to convert the English, sent

Augustine, the provost of his own monastery, with about forty other monks to take the work in hand, and the expedition reached Kent in the spring of the year 597. The country to which they came was in an exceptional condition. It was the only country that had formed part of the Roman Empire where the Teutonic invaders had extirpated Christianity. For whether the British had been exterminated or not, at least their religion had made no impression whatever on their conquerors, and in the eastern half of the island it had ceased to exist. In the western half it still held its own, but without making the slightest attempt to convert the English heathens. Perhaps Christianity had always been weak in Britain. There is good evidence that there was an organised Church at least from the latter part of the third century onwards (pp. 66, 121), but the extreme scarcity of Christian remains suggests that it had no very strong hold over the people. When the English invasions began, all communication with the rest of Europe ceased for a hundred and fifty years, and for a century the history of the British Church is a blank. Fifty years before Augustine's arrival its condition is painted in the darkest hues by Gildas (p. 174), but, for all that, it gave at this time some signs of activity, and seems to have exerted a good influence over the sister Church in Ireland. That island had been first converted by St. Patrick, who began his labours, according to the traditional but probably inaccurate chronology, in 432; but the work was not completed, and the task of really Christianising the country was left to what is called the Second Order of Irish Saints, whose leaders received their education in Britain. The most illustrious of these missionaries, St. Columba, founded in 563 the monastery of Hii or Iona, which diffused Christianity not only among the Scots from Ireland, who occupied the south-west corner of modern Scotland, but also among the Picts. The chief peculiarity of this Scotie Church was that it was almost exclusively monastic, forming a sort of federation of groups of monasteries, without any centralised organisation, while the bishops were in some cases abbots, and in others apparently lived in monastic subjection to a presbyter abbot, their episcopal functions being almost entirely confined to conferring orders. In common also with the British Church

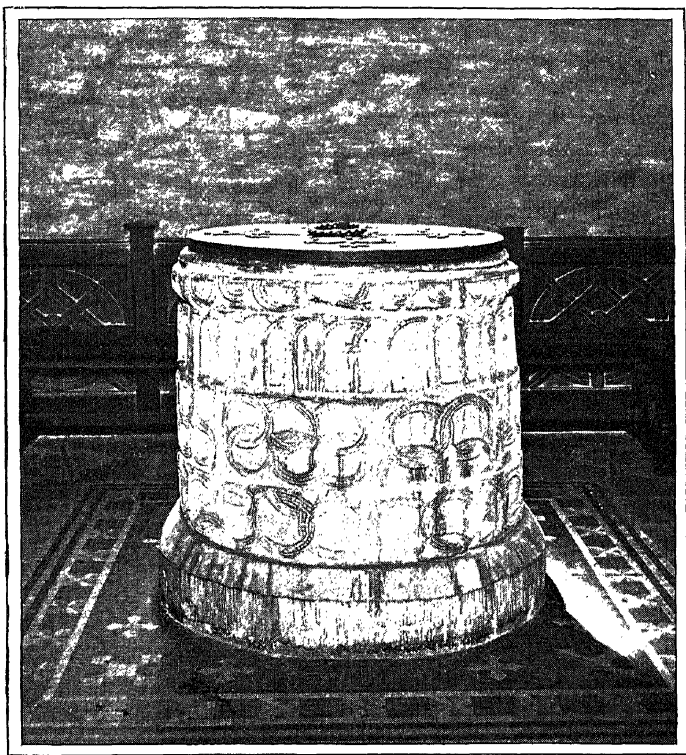
it still followed an older way of calculating Easter—that which was in use in the West when communication with Rome was broken off—and it had a peculiar form of tonsure. These two points produced much friction later on. There was, however, this difference between the Scotie and British Churches—that the former was full of intense devotion and missionary zeal, while the latter, coming in contact only with their hated enemies the English, was entirely isolated and self-centred.

Such were the principal characteristics of the Christianity with which the Roman mission would come in contact. A few words must be added about the condition of the English themselves. Ethelbert of Kent held, at the time of Augustine's arrival, the foremost place among the English kings. Northumbria was rising into the position of predominance which it held until 685. Mercia was consolidating itself into a powerful kingdom, and Wessex was still engaged in pushing its way westward against the Britons. East Anglia and Essex were of less importance, and Sussex was almost entirely cut off from the rest of the country. The religion of the English does not appear to have differed originally from that of the other Germanic tribes, but at this time it had a very slight hold on the affection or superstition of the people. In the narrative of the conversion of the English a priest is only once mentioned, and he took the lead in destroying his own temple (p. 222). The only king who showed an animus against Christianity tolerated it in his own dominions—at least, towards the close of his life. Temples and idols are very rarely mentioned, and there is no trace of any such prolonged struggle against superstition as can be traced, for instance, in the legendary history of Ireland. Moreover, the English had reached a stage of progress in which they would naturally welcome contact with more highly civilised peoples, and Ethelbert had already married a Frankish princess, and had guaranteed the exercise of her religion. The soil was ready for the seed.

The Con-
version
of Kent.

These circumstances explain the rapidity of Augustine's first success. Ethelbert was baptised, perhaps on the Whit Sunday after the arrival of the mission, and his subjects, though no compulsion was put upon them, followed his example in crowds. In the same year Augustine was consecrated bishop at Arles, and the conversion of Kent was an accomplished

fact. This was, indeed, the one solid and permanent result of Augustine's work, and, though it is less than what has been often ascribed to him, its importance was immense. Christianity from this time forward always had a centre and a starting-point in England. This was not all, however, that the mission



FONT OF ST. MARTIN'S CHURCH, CANTERBURY.

was intended to effect. Two other tasks lay before Augustine, and in neither was he successful. One was to enter into relations with the British Church, and, if possible, secure its co-operation; the other, to organise a hierarchy and introduce Christianity throughout the other English kingdoms. How communications were first opened with the British bishops we do not know; but some years after his arrival Augustine met them in more than one conference, and finally propounded

The New
Ritual
and the
Old.

what seem to us not unreasonable terms—namely, that the British Church should accept the Roman method of calculating the date of Easter; should make some alteration, apparently of no great importance, in their baptismal rite; and should join in preaching the Gospel to the English. These terms were rejected, and for two hundred years the English and British Churches remained bitterly hostile to each other. Probably there were faults on both sides. Gregory and Augustine seem to have assumed as a matter of course that the British bishops would submit to their authority, and the latter could not divest themselves of that hatred of the English which a war of extermination naturally engenders. With regard to organisation, Gregory's scheme was to divide England into two provinces, with Metropolitans of equal dignity at London and York, and twelve suffragans to each. But all that Augustine was able to do towards realising this was to consecrate a bishop for Rochester in the Kentish kingdom, and one for Essex. But when Ethelbert died, Essex went back at once into heathenism, and Laurentius, Augustine's successor, was on the point of giving up the whole mission and taking refuge in Gaul. This was averted, but it was not until 625 that the mission again ventured out of the Kentish kingdom. The wise and powerful king of Northumbria, Edwin, wishing to marry the sister of the king of Kent, was only permitted to do so on condition of allowing her to bring, as her mother had done, a Christian bishop as her chaplain. After much thought, and a discussion in the Witenagemot, Edwin himself was baptised, and the bishop, Paulinus, preached and baptised under his protection throughout Northumbria and Lindsey.¹ But in 633 the Battle of Hatfield,² against Penda of Mercia and a British prince who was more cruel than the heathen themselves, ended Edwin's reign and life, and Paulinus fled with the queen to Kent, and ended his days as Bishop of Rochester. Kent was again the only Christian kingdom. At Rome it seems to have been thought that the mission had failed altogether. Just before the news of the disaster arrived, the Pope had sent letters

[¹ The district round Lincoln.]

[² In the West Riding of Yorkshire, where Hatfield Moor still exists: "Hethfeld" in the Old English Chronicle.]

and palls¹ to Canterbury and York. But a year or two afterwards an independent missionary, Birinus, was consecrated in Italy and sent by the Pope to make a separate attempt at the conversion of England. Through his preaching the king of the West Saxons was baptised, and the See of Dorchester² founded. The only other kingdom that owed its conversion to Roman sources was that of East Anglia, whose king some years later, having himself become a Christian in Gaul, summoned missionaries from Canterbury to teach his people.

Birinus.

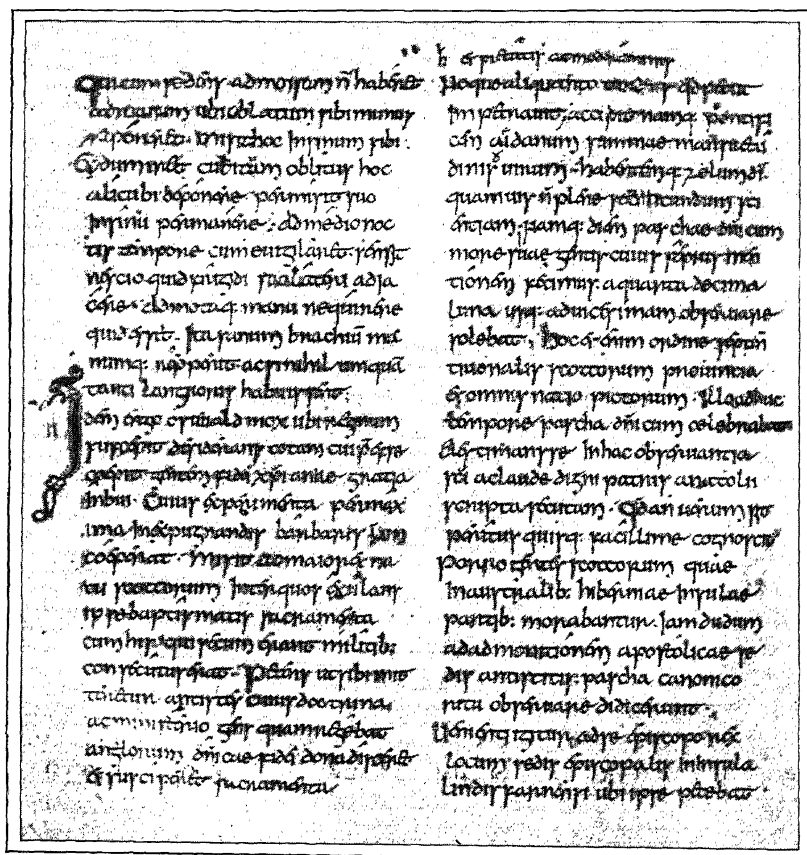
Meanwhile the prostration of Northumbria had not lasted long. A year after the disaster, Oswald, a prince of the Bernician house, who had been an exile in "Scotia," and had there embraced Christianity, drove out the British invaders. His first care was to re-convert his people, and he naturally looked for help, not to Canterbury, but to Iona. Thence was sent Aidan, whose saintly life and character make the conversion of Northumbria one of the brightest episodes in the history of the English Church. Attended by a band of pupils, often slaves whom he had ransomed (for he spent in this way any money that might be given him), he traversed Northumbria on foot, preaching in every village, and yet never omitting to spend a considerable part of each day in study of the Scriptures and in prayer. No man ever acted more consistently on the maxim *Ora et labora*. Charity, gentleness, humility, fearlessness, and an absolute devotion to his work are the traits that Bede especially marks in his character. And his companions and successors were men of the like unworldliness. Wherever they went the people thronged to hear them in veneration of their sanctity. Bede mournfully contrasts them with the monks and clergy of his own day. To them more than half of England owed its conversion. The two great Anglian kingdoms of Northumbria and Mercia, and the smaller kingdom of Essex, were Christianised almost entirely by missionaries from the north. Twenty years after Aidan left Iona the work was practically completed, and England was a Christian country.

Aidan.

But it can hardly be said that the English Church had as yet come into existence. There were really several independent Churches. There were no differences that would

[¹ The pallium, sign of primacy.] [² On the Thames near Wallingford.]

at the present day appear serious, and there was much friendliness; but there was no generally recognised centre, there was no united action, there was, especially in the north, very little organisation. This, indeed, was the weak point in the Scotie



BEDA'S ACCOUNT OF AIDAN (MS. Tib. C. II.).

Church, and its peculiarities in a modified form were reproduced in Northumbria. The Scotie missionaries were full of an intense devotion, but they cared little for the externals of worship or Church government. The work of welding together the Churches of the several kingdoms into an organic whole was reserved for Theodore. He was the

1066]

first archbishop, says Bede, "whom all the Church consented to obey."¹

Before he came, indeed, one difficulty had already been removed. The two different modes of calculating Easter had soon produced some friction in Northumbria, and in the year 664 the question was settled in favour of the Roman use by a Synod which King Oswy summoned at Whitby. The Scotie bishop, Colman, with some of his followers, retired to Iona, but most conformed, and we hear no more of the Celtic usages in the English Church, though they were not given up for more than a century by many of the Scots and Britons. But in spite of the settlement of this question the Church was in a very disorganised state. After Whitby, King Oswy selected Chad, a man of great piety, to fill Colman's place; but his son, who governed part of the country, caused his friend Wilfrid, who had been the champion of the Roman party, to be also consecrated "for himself and his own people." The Archbishop of Canterbury, Deusdedit, the first Englishman who held that office, died immediately after the Synod, and there was a long delay in filling it. After some time the kings of Northumbria and Kent selected a successor to the archbishop, and sent him to Rome to be consecrated, but he died there. Then, after another delay, the Pope chose a Greek monk, Theodore, of whom little was known, but who proved to be a man not only of learning but of remarkable force of character and power of organisation, to fill the vacant place. When he reached England, a man of these gifts was sorely needed. The archbishopric had been vacant for five years. Only three bishops were left in the whole of England; of these, two were rivals for the See of York, the third had bought the See of London, with money. The organisation of the Church was utterly inadequate to the task that lay before it. What Theodore effected may be summed up under five heads. First, he exercised a constant and effective superintendence over the Church throughout the whole of England. The first thing that he did after his arrival was to go through the whole country, consecrating new bishops, arranging, organising, and bringing

Theodore
of Tarsus.

¹ "Is primus erat in archiepiscopis, cui omnis Anglorum ecclesia manus dare consentiret."

the whole Church into a close relation with himself. Secondly, he instituted a system of Synods. Before his arrival the Council of Whitby had been the only great gathering of the English churches, and that was altogether exceptional in its circumstances, and did not meet under the presidency of Canterbury. The Council of Hertford,



which Theodore summoned in 673, was not only a great ecclesiastical event, but it possesses, Dr. Stubbs says, the highest possible constitutional importance as the first collective act of the whole English race. It was not only the birthday of the English Church, but also a most important step towards the formation of the English nation. It was Theodore's design that such a council should be held every year, and though this does not seem to have been carried into effect, the possibility of united action was secured. The

third great achievement was the subdivision of the dioceses. This was a more difficult matter. The conversion of the English kingdoms in almost all cases began with the Court, and the bishop was at first the king's chaplain. Thus, as there was one king in each kingdom, there was one bishop, who took his title, not from a See, but from the people; he

Dioceses
and
Kingdoms.



was Bishop of the East Anglians or the Mercians, or the Northumbrians. And the sole ruler of the Church of an independent kingdom clearly occupied a position very different from that of one among several bishops of Northumbria or Mercia. It is not surprising that the English bishops should have strongly opposed the subdivision of their dioceses. Theodore tried to pass a canon on the subject at Hertford, but failed. Nevertheless, in spite of a lamentable collision with Wilfrid, he effected a good deal. Before his

death, or shortly afterwards, Northumbria had three bishops, Mercia four, East Anglia two, Wessex two; Kent had had two since 604. That more subdivisions were not made is deplored by Bede, and it was probably a permanent loss to the Church, but it clearly was not Theodore's fault. Furthermore, although it can hardly be said that Theodore instituted the parochial system, the prevalence of this system as opposed to the exclusive monasticism of the Scotie Church was secured by his measures. And lastly, moral and religious discipline was strengthened, and Canterbury became under Theodore's care, and through the teaching of the abbot Hadrian, who came with him from Rome, a centre of learning and a school of clergy for the whole Church. The general result of Theodore's work was to secure once for all the unity and solidarity of the Church in all the English kingdoms, and to make the adhesion of the Celtic Churches a question of time.

The Seeds
of Decay.

Thus the conversion of England was complete. The main interest of the remaining history of the English Church until the Conquest centres round the decadence caused, partly by internal and organic weakness, partly by the Danish invasions, and round the various efforts at reform which culminated in the work of Dunstan. Only a few years after the death of Theodore the monasteries had deteriorated to an extent that calls forth the most outspoken remonstrances from Bede. They had multiplied beyond all reason; many of them were purely secular; and luxury and evil living were very prevalent. Some reform, however, was effected by the Council of Cloveshoo¹ in 747, and the dominance of monasticism had at all events this good result—that it tended to break down the barriers between the kingdoms, and to unify both the Church and the nation. In this century the unity of ecclesiastical administration which Theodore had established was to some extent broken up by the gift of a pall to the Bishop of York, and later on by the establishment by Offa of a third archbishopric at Lichfield. But this last arrangement was very short-lived. Before the century closed the Danish invasions had begun. Their immediate results on the Church were in the main three. They inflicted vast material loss, especially on the great monasteries, which were

[¹ Or Clovishoch; possibly Cliffe-at-Hoo, near Rochester, in Kent.]

so constantly pillaged and burnt that the original monastic system nearly came to an end. Secondly, they interrupted all the work of the Church to such an extent that some bishoprics ceased to exist altogether, in others the succession



A PAGE FROM THE CANTERBURY GOSPELS (Royal MS. I. E. vi.).

was interrupted, and religion and learning fell before Alfred's accession to the lowest ebb. Thirdly, the province of York was for a time almost entirely cut off from the rest of the Church.

With the revival of patriotism under Alfred there came

Church
and State.

Dunstan's
Reforms.

also a revival of the power and influence of the Church, and to some extent a revival of religion and learning, earnestly fostered by the pious labours of Alfred himself and some others of the kings. But the way in which this was effected brought another evil with it. A very intimate relation to the State was always a characteristic of the Church before the Conquest. No sharp line was drawn between the two provinces. The bishop sat with the alderman to judge secular causes, and ecclesiastical business of all kinds was transacted in the Witenagemot. Thus there was always a danger of confusing the two spheres, and at this period the Church undoubtedly became more secular. The bishops began to be statesmen, and this continued until the Conquest. Some bishops were soldiers as well, and died in battle against the Danes. Sees were held in plurality. The destruction of the great monasteries caused an increase in the importance of the secular clergy as compared with the monks, and although the English clergy did not come so near to becoming an hereditary caste, as was the case in Ireland and some parts of the Continent, there are many indications that this was a real and lasting danger. When the great reformer Dunstan began his work, he had to deal first with a general decay of religion and learning, which had been only partially arrested by the exertions of Alfred. The remedies by which he tried to meet this were the promotion of intercourse with the Continent, a more intimate communication with France, Flanders, Germany, and the Apostolic See being re-established, and in connection with this a reform of the monasteries, which he sought to bring under the strict Benedictine rule, and to transform into schools of learning and devotion. The discipline of the English monasteries, as we know from Bede, had often been from the first of the laxest kind; and those of Scotie origin were not even nominally under the rule of St. Benedict. Latterly secular canons had in many cases taken the place of monks. The monastic reforms which Dunstan took in hand have overshadowed in the eyes of his biographers the rest of his work, and have given occasion to the exaggerated eulogies and attacks which have obscured his life.

The second great evil to be dealt with was the secularisation of the Church. For this less could be done. The bishops, if



DUNSTAN (MS. Claud. A. iii.)

they had ceased to fight, continued to perform secular functions. Dunstan himself was perhaps more of the statesman than the prelate. He seems to have made some effort to enforce the rule of the Western Church about celibacy on the secular clergy, but without much success. He is commonly said to have persecuted the married clergy, but this rests on the slenderest evidence. Enough may, however, have been done to check the tendency to make benefices hereditary. A third danger to the Church was the isolated position of the province of York, which seemed likely at one time to become an independent Church. But the policy of peaceful consolidation pursued by Edgar and Dunstan averted this, and the adhesion of the northern archbishop was further secured by his connection with the See of Worcester, which from 963 to the Conquest was usually held either in plurality with York or by a near kinsman of the archbishop.

The
Church
and the
Danes.

In the early part of Ethelred's reign, Dunstan gradually retired from public life, and spent his last days in peace and devotion. The next thirty years, to the accession of Canute, form a period marked by disaster and retrogression, both in Church and State. The Church, indeed, has but little history during these years: the heroic death of the Archbishop Alphege is one of the few events which light up the gloom. The accession of Canute, however, which might have seemed an augury of the worst fate for the Church, was the beginning of a short period of peace and prosperity. "The society," says Dr. Stubbs, "which is unable to withstand the arms of Canute, almost immediately humanises and elevates him." Not only was he a great builder and restorer of churches and monasteries, but he was also an active and wise legislator for the Church as well as the State, and brought the former into a closer connection with the Continent and with Rome. And yet, though the Church was in a way prosperous, religion declined, and even when, after the savage rule of Canute's sons, the accession of Edward seemed to promise better things, abuses such as simony and pluralities went on unchecked, and a general inefficiency and indifference prevailed in the Church as in the State. Edward, no doubt, was sincere in his wish for reform, but his policy was a signal failure. By forcing foreign ecclesiastics, in season and out of season, into the chief

dignities of the Church, he only intensified the evils which he would have remedied. The foreign prelates were mistrusted and hated by the people, and despised them in turn, and the attempt to elevate the Church by contact with a higher civilisation only deprived it of any efficient government. Foreign influence was destined to prevail, and to infuse new energy into an exhausted society, but this was only effected through the great tribulation of the Conquest.

These are the main outlines of the history of the first period in the life of the English Church. This history supplies a record, quite unique in its detail and accuracy, of the conversion of a people altogether untouched by Roman civilisation. It further describes the process by which a number of petty communities, converted from different sources to different types of Christianity, were united in one National Church. And it shows the development of a National Church which was but little influenced, and hardly at all controlled, by the rest of Christendom. The history of the next period will show how it became an integral part of the great hierarchy of the medieval Western Church. Summary.

WHEN we speak of a body of law, we use a metaphor so apt that it is hardly a metaphor. We picture to ourselves a being that lives and grows, that preserves its identity while every atom of which it is composed is subject to a ceaseless process of change, decay, and renewal. At any given moment of time—for example, in the present year—it may, indeed, seem to us that our legislators have, and freely exercise, an almost boundless power of doing what they will with the laws under which we live; and yet we know that, do what they may, their work will become an organic part of an already existing system. F. W.
MAIT-
LAND.
Old
English
Law.

Already, if we look back at the ages which are the most famous in the history of English legislation—the age of Bentham and the radical reform, the age which appropriated the gains that had been won but not secured under the rule of Cromwell, the age of Henry VIII., the age of Edward I. (“our English Justinian”)—it must seem to us that, for all their activity, they changed, and could change, but little in the great Continuity
of English
Law.

body of law which they had inherited from their predecessors. Hardly a rule remains unaltered, and yet the body of law that now lives among us is the same body that Blackstone described in the eighteenth century, Coke in the seventeenth, Littleton in the fifteenth, Bracton in the thirteenth, Glanvill in the twelfth. This continuity, this identity, is very real to us if we know that for the last seven hundred years all the judgments of the courts at Westminster have been recorded, and that for the most part they can still be read. Were the world large enough to contain such a book, we might publish not merely a biography, but a journal or diary, of English law, telling what it has done, if not day by day, at least term by term, ever since the reign of Richard I.; and eventful though its life may have been, it has had but a single life.

Beyond these seven centuries there lie six other centuries that are but partially and fitfully lit, and in one of them a great catastrophe, the Norman Conquest, befell England and the law of England. However, we never quite lose the thread of the story. Along one path or another we can trace back the footprints, which have their starting-place in some settlement of wild Germans who are invading the soil of Roman provinces, and coming in contact with the civilisation of the old world. Here the trail stops, the dim twilight becomes darkness; we pass from an age in which men seldom write their laws to one in which they cannot write at all. Beyond lies the realm of guess-work.

The
First
English
Code.

About the year 600, Ethelbert, king of the Kentish-men, by the counsel of his wise-men, caused the laws of his people to be set down in writing. He had just received the Christian faith at the hands of Roman missionaries, and it was in imitation of the Romans that he and his folk desired to have written laws. His reign overlaps the reign of Justinian, and perhaps he had heard how in the Far East the Roman Emperor had been legislating on a magnificent scale. English law begins to speak just when Roman law has spoken what will, in a certain sense, be its final words. On the continent of Europe the same thing had been happening. No sooner did the barbarian tribe feel the influence of Rome than it wished for a written code of laws. Ethelbert and his Jutes in Kent

1066]

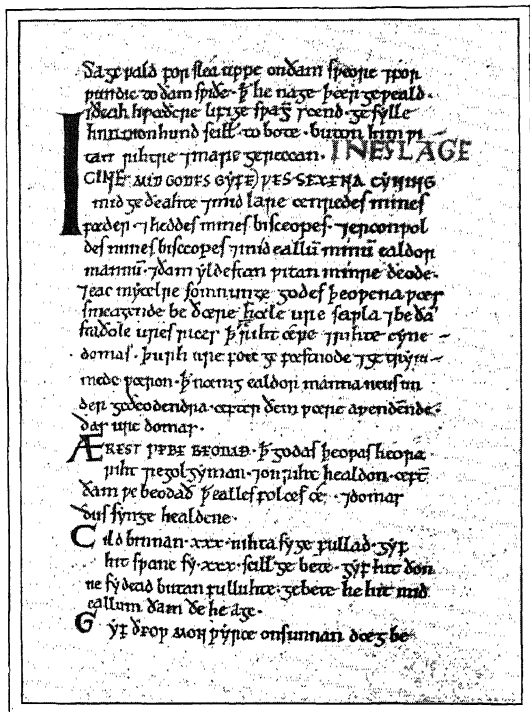
are doing what the Salian Franks did a century earlier when they wrote down their famous *Lex Salica*; but while on the Continent the laws of the conquering Germans are written in the Latin language of the conquered, in England the barbarians from the first write down their law in the language that they speak, the language which is to become English.

Ethelbert's laws have come down to us, though only in a copy made after the Norman Conquest. They may seem to us primitive enough. The emperor at Byzantium, could he have seen them, would assuredly have denied that they had any points in common with the Roman law-books, save that they were laws, and were in writing. Nevertheless, we cannot call them primitive in any absolute sense of that term. They are Christian. Let us look at the first sentence, the first recorded utterance of English law:—"God's fee [property] and the church's, twelve-fold; bishop's fee, eleven-fold; priest's fee, nine-fold; deacon's fee, six-fold; clerk's fee, three-fold." Churches, bishops, priests, deacons, clerks—these are no archaic German institutions; they are Latin, they have Latin names which must be taken up bodily into the Teutonic speech of the new converts. Unfortunately (so we may now think), Germanic law has no written memorials of the days of its heathenry. Every trace but the very faintest of the old religion has been carefully expurgated from all that is written, for all that is written passes under ecclesiastical hands. Thus we may guess that a new force is already beginning to transfigure the whole sum and substance of barbaric law, before that law speaks the first words that we can hear. It is a wild plant that has already been torn from its native soil and set to grow in a garden. The change of faith, and the substitution of one order of religious rites for another, would in any case mean much, for we have reason to believe that the old law had in it a strong sacral element; but as it is, they mean the influence of the old civilised world upon the new barbarian world.

Christian
Influence.

Ethelbert's laws consist of ninety brief sentences. Two will serve as samples:—"If one *man* strike another with the fist on the nose—three shillings." "If the eye be struck out let boot [*i.e.* amends] be made with fifty shillings."

To call this brief tariff a code may seem strange, but there are not wanting signs that the wise-men of Kent are committing to writing as much of their traditional law as they can remember in the form of abstract propositions. No doubt much more law—in particular, a law of procedure—is known to them implicitly. If a concrete case were to occur, they



PAGE FROM INE'S LAWS.
(Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

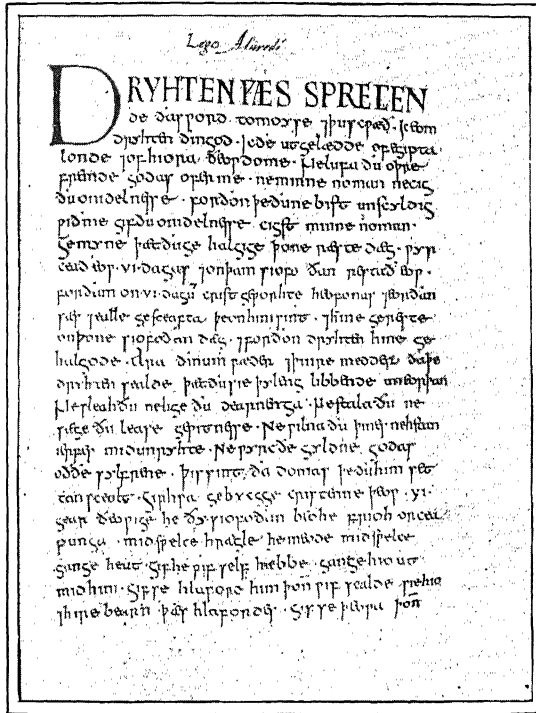
would be ready with a doom;¹ but when asked for general rules, these ninety are all that they can call to mind. Thus we may say that our legal history starts with an act of codification. This code became the basis of Kentish law. Subsequent kings in the course of the seventh century, Lothair, Eadric, Wihtred,² with the counsel of the wise, add

[¹ Judgment; the reader may compare the "Themistes" of the Homeric Kings, and Maine, "Ancient Law," c. i.] [² More correctly, Hlothar, Eadric. Wihtred.]

some fifty new dooms to the written law of the men of Kent.

Then the scene changes to Wessex. In the middle of the seventh century the West Saxons received Christianity; before its end they had written laws, the laws of Ine. By the advice of his bishops and of the oldest and wisest men,

The Laws
of Ine.



PAGE FROM ALFRED'S LAWS.

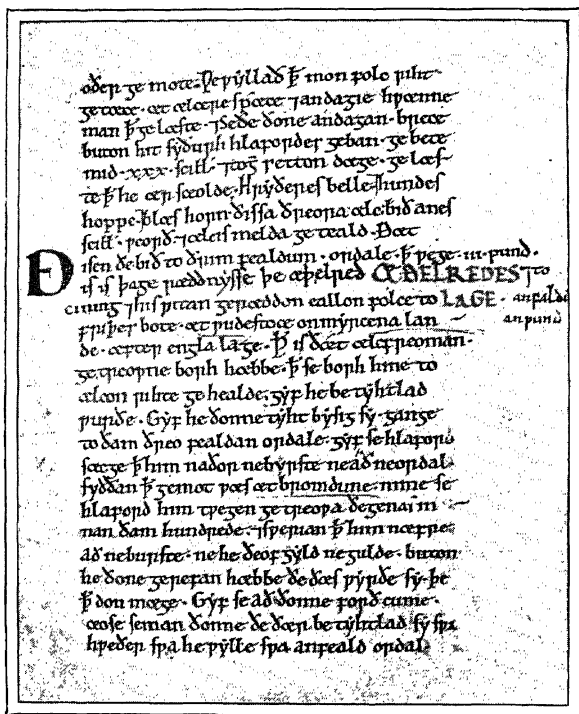
(Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

Ine published a set of laws which tell us a good deal more than we can learn from the Kentish series.

The next legislator whose work has come down to us is the great Alfred. His laws are divided from those of his ancestor Ine by a period of two centuries or thereabouts. This is the one great gap in our continuous legal history. In the history of religion and learning and letters these

The Law
of Alfred.

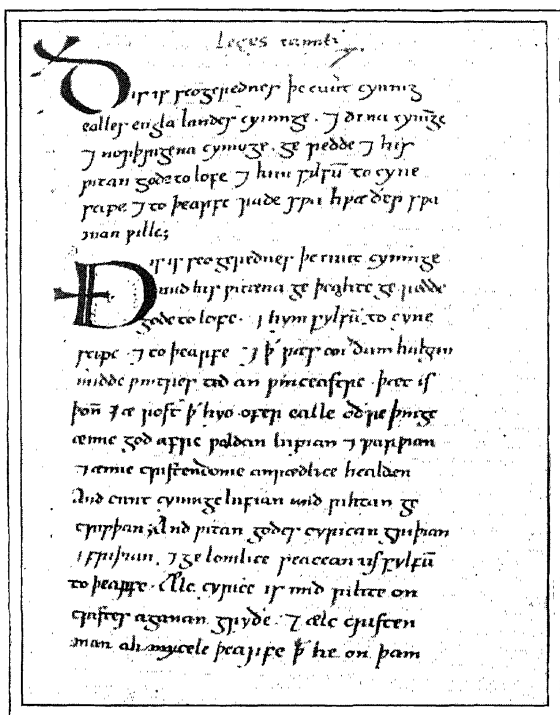
centuries are far from being the darkest. They cover the time when Northumbria was for a while a centre of light—not for England only, but for the world at large. It may be that we have lost some things. It is fairly certain that Offa of Mercia, in the days of Mercia's greatness, issued written laws. When Alfred is king, when all England is



PAGE FROM ÆTHELRED'S LAWS.
 (Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

becoming united under the vigorous princes of the West Saxon house, the three legislators whose names are still remembered are Ethelbert of Kent, Ine of Wessex, and Offa of Mercia. From the manner in which Alfred speaks of them and of their laws we may gather that, heavy though our losses may have been, we have lost no document that testified to any revolutionary change in the law. Though

nearly three hundred years have gone by since Ethelbert's death, his dooms are still in force among the Kentish people. Alfred tells us that he dared to add but little of his own to the work of his three great forerunners; and though we can see that during the last two centuries some new legal ideas have emerged, still the core of the law is what it was. What can



PAGE FROM CANUTE'S LAWS.
(Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

be put in writing is for the more part a tariff of the sums that must be paid when deeds of violence are done.

The Alfred of sober truth is not the Alfred of legal legend—for the history of law has its legends—the inventive architect of a British Constitution; but his laws are the first member of a grand series—the capitularies, we might call them, of the English kings of the West Saxon house.

Edward the Elder, Ethelstan, Edmund, and Edgar, with the counsel of their wise-men, legislate in a bold, masterful fashion. For the better maintenance of the peace, they sharpen the old rules and they make new rules. Written law accumulates somewhat rapidly; it is expected by this time that the doomsmen will be able to find in the "doom-book," the book of written law, judgments apt for most of the cases which come before them. This series extends from the beginning to the end of the tenth century. The laws of Ethelred continue it into the eleventh century. His laws were many, for he had to say the same thing over and over again; we can see on their face that they were ineffectual. He begs and prays men to keep the peace and desist from crime; he must beg and pray, for he cannot command and punish. The Danes were ravaging and conquering; the State tottered; the house of Cerdic fell. It was left for the mighty Canute to bring to a noble close the first great period in the history of English law, the period during which laws were written in the English language, the period which it is convenient to call Anglo-Saxon. Canute's code we must, if we have regard to the age in which it was issued, call a long and a comprehensive code. It repeats, with improvements, things that have been said before; the great Dane was able to enforce as laws rules which in the mouth of his predecessor had been little better than pious wishes; but it also contained many things that had not been said before. The whole economic and political structure of society was undergoing a great change. If by any two words we could indicate the nature of this elaborate process, we might say that tribalism was giving place to feudalism. Had Canute's successors been his equals in vigour and wisdom, perhaps the change might have been consummated peacefully, and by means of written laws which we now might be reading. As it was, there came to the throne the holy but imbecile Edward. In after days he won not only the halo of the saint, to which he may have been entitled, but the fame, to which he certainly was not entitled, of having been a great legislator. In the minster that he reared, king after king made oath to observe the laws of the Confessor. So far as we know, he never

Canute

The Laws
of the
Confessor

1066]

made a law. Had he made laws, had he even made good use of those that were already made, there might have been no Norman Conquest of England. But then had there been no Norman Conquest of England, Edward would never have gained his fictitious glories. As it was, men looked back to him as the last of the English kings of the English—for of Harold, who had become the perjured usurper, there could be no talk—and galled by the yoke of their French masters, they sighed for St. Edward's law, meaning thereby the law that had prevailed in a yet unvanquished England.

Now these enacted and written laws of our forefathers, representing as they do some four centuries and a half, representing as long a period as that which divides us from the Wars of the Roses, will seem a small thing to the first glance of a modern eye. They might all be handsomely printed on a hundred pages such as that which is now before the reader. A session of Parliament which produced no larger mass of matter we should nowadays regard as a sterile session. In the Georgian age many more words than are contained in the whole code of Canute would have been devoted to the modest purpose of paving and lighting the borough of Little Pedlington. It is but fair to our ancient kings and their wise-men to say that when they spoke, they spoke briefly and pointedly. They had no fear that ingenious lawyers would turn their words inside out. "God's fee and the Church's, twelve-fold"—they feel that they need say no more than this about one very important matter. Also, we have to remember that life was simple; men could do, men could wish to do, but few things. Our increasing mastery over the physical world is always amplifying the province of law, for it is always complicating the relationships which exist between human beings. Many a modern Act of Parliament is the product of the steam-engine, and there is no great need for a law of copyright until long after the printing-press has begun its work. For all this, however, it is true that these old written and enacted dooms contain but a part of the law which was enforced in England.

Contrast
of Ancient
and
Modern
Statutes.

If we say that law serves three great purposes, that it punishes crime, redresses wrong, and decides disputes—and

perhaps we need not go into the matter more deeply than this—then we may go on to say that in ancient days the two first of these three purposes are indistinguishably blended, while with the third the legislator seldom troubles himself. If he can maintain the peace, suppress violence and theft, keep vengeance within moderate bounds, he is well satisfied: he will not be at pains to enact a law of contract or of inheritance, a law of husband and wife, a law of landlord and tenant. All this can safely be left to unwritten tradition. He has no care to satisfy the curiosity of a remote posterity which will come prying into these affairs and wish to write books about them. Thus, to take one example, the courts must have been ready to decide disputes about the property of dead men; there must have been a general law, or various tribal or local laws, of inheritance. But the lawgivers tell us nothing about this. If we would recover the old rules, we must make the best that we may of stray hints and chance stories, and of those archaisms which we find embedded in the law of later days.

Folk-
Right.

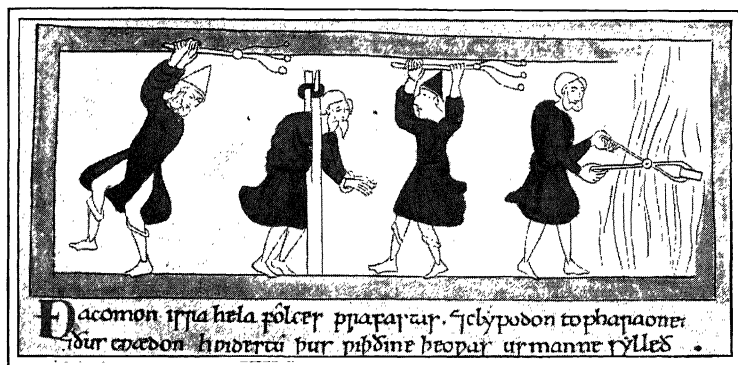
The laws of the folk, the "folk-right"—"law" is one of those words which the Danes bring with them—is known to the men of the folk, but more especially to the old and wise. The freemen, or the free landowners, of the hundred are in duty bound to frequent the "moot," or court, of the hundred, to declare the law and to make the dooms. The presiding alderman or sheriff turns to them when a statement of the law is wanted. As yet there is no class of professional lawyers, but the work of attending the courts is discharged chiefly by men of substance, men of the gentry rank; the small folk are glad to stay at home.

Charac-
teristics
of Early
Law.

Also, some men acquire a great reputation for legal learning, and there was much to be learnt, though no one thought of setting it in writing. We should assuredly make a great mistake were we to picture to ourselves these old hundred-courts as courts of equity, where "the natural man" administered an informal "law of Nature." For one thing, as will be said elsewhere, the law of the natural man is supernatural law, a law which deals in miracles and portents. But then, again, it is exceedingly formal. It is a law of procedure. The right words must be said without slip or trip, the due ceremonial acts must be punctiliously performed, or the whole transaction will go for naught. This is the main theme of the wise-man's juris-

prudence. One suspects that sometimes the man who, in the estimate of his neighbours, has become very wise indeed, has it in his power to amplify tradition by devices of his own. We hear from Iceland a wonderful tale of a man so uniquely wise that though he had made himself liable to an action of a particular kind, no one could bring that action

against him, for he and only he knew the appropriate words of summons: to trick him into a disclosure of this precious formula is a feat worthy of a hero. But formalism has its admirable as well as its ludicrous side. So long as law is unwritten, it must be dramatised and acted. Justice must



WHIPPING AND BRANDING (MS. Claud. B. iv.).

assume a picturesque garb, or she will not be seen. And even of chicane we may say a good word, for it is the homage which lawlessness pays to law.

We have called the written laws "tariffs." They prescribe in great detail the various sums of money which must be paid by wrong-doers. There are payments to be made to the injured

**Fine and
Composition.**

person or the kinsfolk of the slain man ; there are also payments to be made to the king, or to some other representative of the tribe or nation. The growth of this system of pecuniary mulcts gradually restricts the sphere of self-help and vengeance. The tie of blood-relationship has been the straitest of all bonds of union. If a man of one family was slain by the man of another, there would be a blood-feud, a private war. The State steps in and compels the injured family to accept the dead man's "wer-gild"—the dead man's price or worth, if it be duly tendered. King Edmund goes so far as to insist that the vengeance of the dead man's kinsfolk is not to comprise the guiltless members of the slayer's clan. The law's last weapon against lawlessness is outlawry. The contumacious offender is put outside the peace ; he becomes the foe of all law-abiding men. It is their duty to waste his land and burn his house, to pursue him and knock him on the head as though he were a beast of prey, for "he bears the wolf's head." As the State grows stronger, less clumsy modes of punishment become possible ; the criminal can be brought to trial, and definitely sentenced to death or mutilation. We can watch a system of true punishments—corporeal and capital punishments—growing at the expense of the old system of pecuniary mulcts, blood-feud, and outlawry ; but on the eve of the Norman Conquest mere homicide can still be atoned for by the payment of the dead man's price or "wergild," and if that be not paid, it is rather for the injured family than for the State to slay the slayer. Men of different ranks had different prices : the thegn was worth six ceorls, and it seems very plain that if a ceorl killed a thegn, he had to die for it, or was sold into slavery, for a thegnly wergild was quite beyond the reach of his modest means. In the twelfth century the old system perished of over-elaboration. The bill that a man-slayer ran up became in the days of feudalism too complex to be summed, too heavy to be paid ; for the dead man's lord, the lord of the place where the blood was shed, and it may be many other lords, would claim fines and forfeitures. He had to pay with his eyes or with his life a debt that he could not otherwise discharge.

The
influence
of Rome.

As yet our Germanic law had not been exposed to the assaults of Roman jurisprudence, but still it had been slowly assuming and assimilating the civilisation of the old world. This distinction we must draw. On the one hand, there has been no borrowing

* IN OMNIBUS RE SALVATE RIM HUA IN EOO HI O
 HA RIUERSX CANTUARIORUM URO ROMEDIMU
 ANIMAE MEAE DONO TERRAM INTENTIO QUE AP
 PELLATUR UUESTANX ETIRI BENICUALN TUOQUE
 MONASTERIO CUM OMNIBUS ADSE PERTINENTIBUS
 CAMPIS PASCUIS MERISCIS SILUIS MODICIS TOM
 NIS PISCARIIS OMNIBUS URO DICTUM EST ADSE AN
 OM TERRADI PERTINENTIA SICUTI NUNC USQ
 POSSESSA EST IUSTA NOTISSIMOS TERMINUS
 AME OGOTON STRATUS ET PROACURATORIBUS
 MEIS GODEMONDOTIS TUOQUE MONASTERII
 CONFERIUNT TENOAS POSSEUEASTU PISTE
 RIQUERIT IN PERPETUUM DEPENDANT ANO
 LO CONTRADICITUR CUM CONSENSU ARCH
 EPISCOPI THEODORI UTEONICO FILIUM FRA
 TRIS MEI NECNON ETUOMIUM PRINCIPUM
 SICUTI IBI DONATUM EST RATUM ET POSTE
 RITUM QUISQUE CONTRA HANC DONATIONE
 UENIRE TENTATA UERIT SIT AROMNIA DIAM
 TATA SEPARATIM ET ACORDIRE ET TRANQUIL
 ONI NOSTRI IBIUAPI SUH DENSUS MANENT OM
 DAN DONATIONIS CHARTULAM IN SUA NIBI
 UMINUS FIRMITATE ET PRO CON FIRMATIONE
 GIUS MANU PROPRIA SIGNUM SCE CRUCIS
 EXPRESSE ET TRISTE SUI P S O B SCRIBERE
 NT NOGLA ACTUM INCIPITATE RECULIF
 INOMENECOM IO IN O B P T I O I A : IN IPSA ANTE
 MEMORATIONE ADIUNXIT ALIAM TERRADI
 STURIA IUSTA NOTISSIMOS TERMINOS
 ADSE DEMONSTRATUS ET PROACURATORIBUS
 BUCEMEIS CUM CAMPIS ET SILUIS ET PRA
 TIS SICUTI ANTEBUS MORABIDUS SUPRA
 DICTAM TERRADI ITA ISTA SIT AME DONATA
 GODEMONDO CUM OMNIBUS ADSE PERTI
 NENTIA IN PTESTATE AB HIR IN PERCE
 TITUM ADU DONATA ANULO CONTRADICITUR
 QUODAMIT NEQUE AME NEQUE APARENTIBUS
 MEIS NEQUE AB ALIS SIALIQUIS ALITER FECERIT
 ADU SED AMNUTUM SCIT UTINDE IUDICI RATIO
 NEM REDDET OM MANIMASUA :

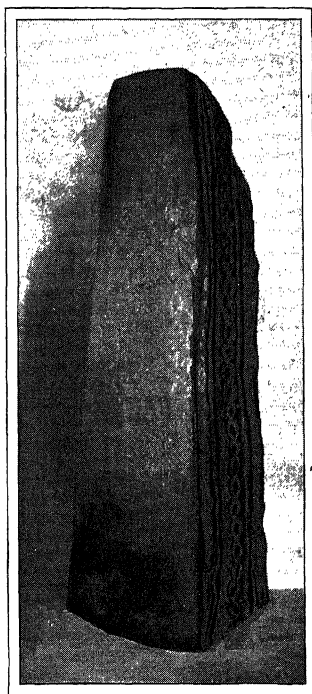
* SIGNUM MANUS HLOTHAR REGIS DONATORIS
 + SIGNUM MANUS GUMBERCTI + SIGNUM MANUS
 GEORED + SIGNUM MANUS OSEFRIDI
 + SIGNUM MANUS IATINREDI + SIGNUM MANUS
 AEDILWARI + SIGNUM MANUS HAC ANI
 + SIGNUM MANUS AELOREDI + SIGNUM MANUS
 ALDHODI + SIGNUM MANUS GUDHARDI
 + SIGNUM MANUS BERNHARDI + SIGNUM MANUS
 UELHISCI

from the Roman legal texts. We have no proof whatever that during the five centuries which preceded the Norman Conquest any one copy of a Roman law-book existed in England. We hear faint and vague tidings of law being taught in some of the schools, but may safely believe that very little is meant thereby. The written dooms of our kings have been searched over and over again by men skilled in detecting the least shred of Roman law under the most barbaric disguise, and they have found nothing worthy of mention. That these dooms are the purest specimens of pure Germanic law has been the verdict of one scholar after another. Even the English Church, though its independence may often have been exaggerated, became very English. On the other hand, as already said, to become Christian was in a certain sense to become Roman. Whether, had an impassable wall been raised round England in the last quarter of the sixth century, England would not be a barbarous country at this day—that is a question which cannot be answered. As a matter of fact, we had not to work out our own civilisation; we could adopt results already attained in the ancient world. For example, we did not invent the art of writing, we adopted it; we did not invent our alphabet, we took the Roman. And so again—to come nearer to our law—we borrowed or inherited from the Old World the written legal document, the written conveyance, the will. The written conveyance was introduced along with Christianity; to all seeming, Ethelbert himself began the practice of “booking” lands to the churches. We have a few genuine “land-books” from the seventh and eighth, many from the later centuries. For the more part they are written in Latin, and they were fashioned after Italian models; but at the same time we can see that those models have been barbarised and misunderstood; the English scribes pervert the neat devices of Roman lawyers. Any phrase which draws a contrast between a nation’s law and its civilisation is of course open to objection. But let us suppose that at the present day a party of English missionaries is setting forth to convert a savage tribe: perhaps no one of them would know enough of English law to carry him through the easiest examination, and yet they would take with them many ideas that are in a certain sort the ideas of English law. Without being able to define murder, they would know that in this country murderers are condemned to death; they

would think that a written expression of a man's last will should be respected, though they might well doubt whether a will is revoked by the testator's marriage. So it was in the seventh century. From the days of Ethelbert onwards English law was under the influence of so much of Roman law as had worked itself into the tradition of the Catholic Church.

PESTILENCE on the great scale played a part in the social life of the Middle Ages which we cannot easily realise. The medieval period may be said to begin with the great plague which arose in Lower Egypt in the reign of Justinian (542), and spread over the whole empire of the East and West. The writers of the time say that nothing checked its progress; it made havoc in cities and in the open country, ascended to the highest inhabited spots on the mountains, and penetrated to the regions of the barbarians. Along with war and famine, says Gibbon, it caused "a visible decrease of the human species, which has never been repaired in some of the fairest countries of the globe." It was the same disease as the Black Death; and, like that great invasion of the fourteenth century, the plague of the sixth century broke out time after time ("alternately languished and revived," says Gibbon), at intervals of ten or more years, being heard of in one province or another as late as the year A.D. 600. The question arises whether it came at length to Britain, which had lost its Roman civilisation, and but for its Celtic Christianity would have counted among the countries of the barbarians. Undoubtedly a great plague, called the Yellow Plague, arrived in the South of England in 664, overran the

C.
CREIGHTON.
Public
Health.



ST. SAMPSON'S CROSS,
LLANTWIT MAJOR.

whole country, spread to Ireland, and continued at intervals until 685, if not longer. But it is probable that the seeds of the plague of Justinian's reign had been wafted to Britain at an earlier date or before the succession of plagues, from 542 onwards, is lost on the mainland of Europe. The same name of Yellow Plague is given to a pestilence which destroyed the common people of Wales "in troops," at the time when St. Sampson held the See of St. David's, in the latter part of the sixth century. St. Sampson was a holy man, says the legend preserved by Giraldus, and not afraid to die; but, like so many other ecclesiastics in all time, he allowed his own spirit of self-sacrifice to be overruled by the advice of those about him, and took ship for Brittany, where he was at once made Archbishop of Dol. He carried with him to Dol the pallium of St. David, so that the Welsh See lost its archiepiscopal rank; and it is owing to that incident in ecclesiastical history that we have the fact of a great pestilence recorded. More than two generations pass before we hear again of plague in Britain and Ireland, on the trustworthy testimony of Bede. It entered English soil in 664, on the south coast, as the Black Death did long after, and, like the latter, traversed the country to Northumbria, and crossed to Ireland. It destroyed many of all ranks—of the Irish it is said two out of three died—and for the monasteries the details are so particular down to 685 that there can be no doubt of its having been a pestilence of the greater kind, comparable to the Black Death itself, but of course in a sparser population and in a more uncivilised community. Bede himself could recall from his early recollections how it thinned the monks of Jarrow, so that his own boyish treble was all the help that the abbot had in the antiphones and responses; and he has recorded stories of its ravages in the monasteries from Selsey to Lindisfarne, as well as in Ireland, where so many of the English were then leading the monastic life. It left its mark in the traditions of Britain, and was fabled long afterwards as the great plague of Cadwallader's time.

Historians, from Thucydides to Niebuhr, have remarked on the demoralising effects of a great pestilence such as that had been. Bede himself says that it caused the lately

converted East Saxons to relapse into heathenism; and it can hardly be doubted that the devastation of Britain by pestilence in the seventh century (and all of Europe shortly before), little as it bulks in the annals, was one chief reason why the centuries following were emphatically the Dark Ages. Those effects, such as they were, had not been produced by anything that the natives had done or left undone; the calamity was an invasion of Britain from a source which can be found at length as far away as the Delta of the Nile, just as the next great invasion of Europe by the same plague in the fourteenth century can be traced to the river-basins of China. The pestilences of native origin, which occur at longer or shorter intervals in the centuries following, were due to famines from failure of the crops and loss of cattle in bad seasons, and they took the less mortal forms of fever and flux. They thinned the population no doubt, but not more than the natural fecundity of the race would make up for in a few years; whereas the great foreign invasions of plague proper made a reduction of numbers which took centuries to replace. Of these famine-pestilences, usually accompanied or preceded by murrain of cattle, there are only a few recorded in the Anglo-Saxon period. They were, indeed, less frequent in England than abroad, and one special form of epidemic, St. Anthony's fire, or ergotism,¹ arising from the use of rye bread (or "black bread") containing a poison, was common in France all through the Middle Ages, but is hardly mentioned at all in the English Chronicles. One of the greatest of these pestilential periods, during which many of the chief thegns died, was the three years about 897, when King Alfred was carrying on his long but victorious struggle against the invading Danes. Some six or eight famine-pestilences are mentioned from that time to the Conquest, which were mostly connected with Danish invasions, and were caused as much by the ruthless devastation of war and by consequent neglect of agriculture as by inclement seasons. For one of the epidemics, in the year 962, the Chronicle records briefly that "the great fever was in London." In the year 1005, the Danes having been in the country for some time, such was the extremity

[¹ Ergot is a disease affecting rye and other cereals.]

of famine that Sweyn found it prudent to take his men home to Denmark for a short space—until the next harvest doubtless. From that time, to the landing of William of Normandy, the entries of famine and pestilence are more frequent than usual; and the result of the Domesday survey indicates that much land had gone out of cultivation.

C. W. C.
OMAN.
The Old
English
Army.

THE bands of the Angles and Saxons who, in the fifth and



WARRIORS RIDING TO BATTLE (MS. Cleop. C. viii.).

sixth centuries, overran and settled in Eastern Britain, were, in their military customs and organisation, much like the other Teutonic tribes who, at a somewhat earlier date, threw themselves upon the more southern provinces of the Roman Empire, there to build up the Frankish and Gothic kingdoms. But the Angles and Saxons were a stage nearer the primitive barbarism that we read of in the "Germania" of Tacitus than were their southern neighbours. The Goth and Frank had dwelt for generations along the frontier of the Roman Empire, and had learnt somewhat of the art of war while contending with the legions, and more while serving—as they habitually did—in the ranks of the Roman

1066]

auxiliaries. Among the Goths especially we find the use of armour and the employment of large bodies of cavalry well established in the fifth century, while the Angles and Saxons were still a nation of foot-soldiery, and rarely provided with any defensive arms save a light shield. Living by the Elbe and the Eider, at the back of Germany, with numerous tribes placed between themselves and the Roman frontier, the Angle



A BATTLE SCENE SHOWING MILITARY WEAPONS (MS. Claud. B. iv.).

and Saxon had very little contact with the Empire, and preserved the ancient Teutonic habits of war almost unchanged. It was rare for them to see more of the Roman than could be gathered in a short pirate-raid to the British or Belgic coast. Unlike their brethren to the west and south, they seem very rarely to have taken service in the Roman armies.¹

But in the second half of the fifth century the Saxons and their kinsmen, the Angles and Jutes, began to come to Britain not merely for transient piratical excursions, but with the object of securing a permanent settlement among the harassed Celtic tribes who now disputed with each other, and with the Picts and Scots, the possession of the once-prosperous province which the legions had abandoned.

¹ A single "ala" [troop] only of Saxons is found mentioned in the "Notitia Dignitatum" which contains the muster-roll of the Roman army of about A.D. 415 (p. 102).

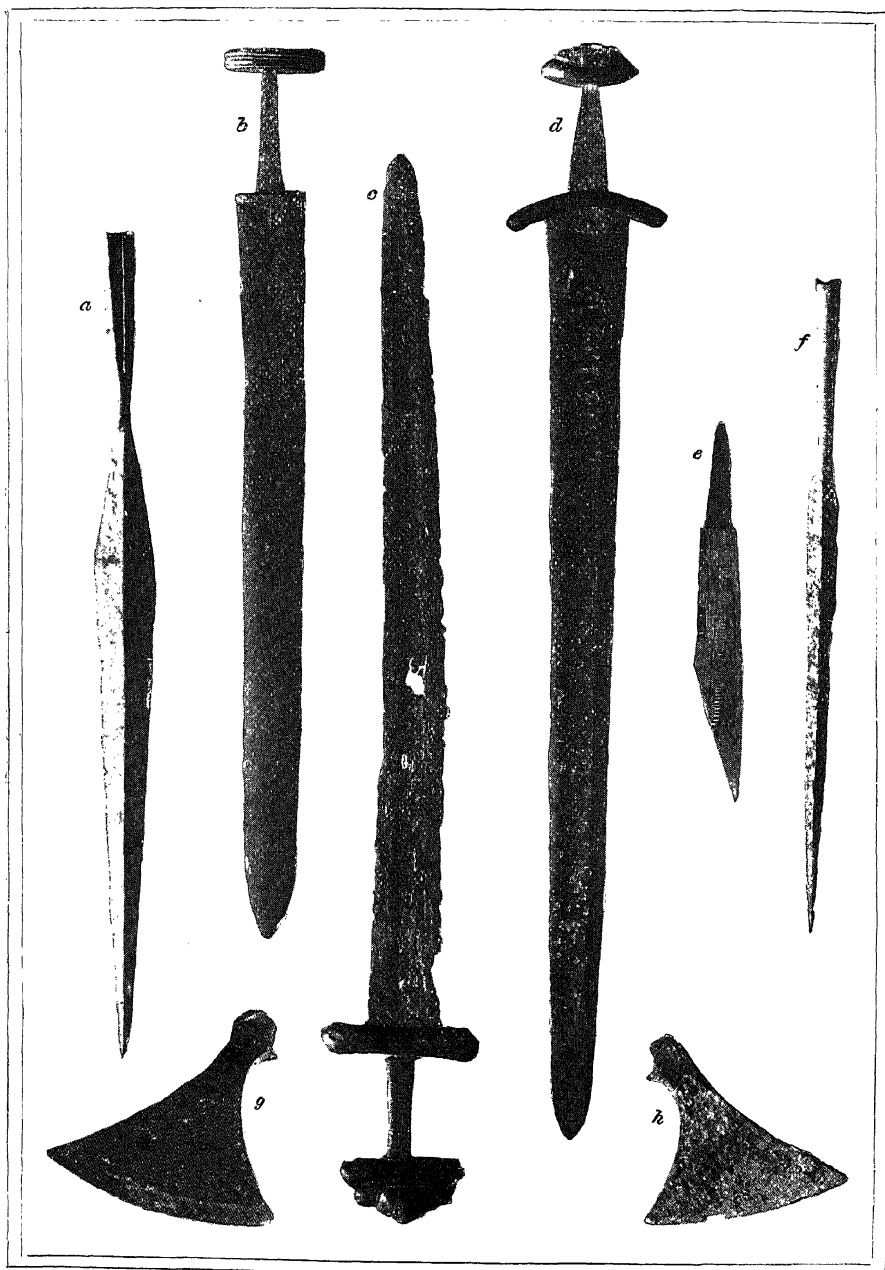
Organis-
ation.

What the Saxon war-band was like we know well enough from the description of the Roman Tacitus, as well as from the archaic English epic of Beowulf. The chief who had made himself a great name in war, gathered around him a swarm of companions—*comites* as Tacitus called them, *gesiths* as the early English laws style them. To them he delivered sword and shield; they dwelt around his hearth and shared his feasts and drinking bouts. All had sworn to be his “men,” to follow him to the field and obey his lightest word in peace and war. They had put their freedom and their future in his hands; in return he was bound to deal nobly with them, to part among them the proceeds of his conquests and forays, to deck them with rings of gold and costly raiment, and share among them the corn-lands and pastures that their swords might win him.

Equip-
ment and
Weapons.

What were the arms and appearance of the war-band of *gesiths* that followed a Hengest or a Cerdic to win themselves a home on British soil, we know well enough from the tangible evidence of countless Anglo-Saxon graves, as well as from the descriptions of writers. They fought on foot, though great men used horses to ride to the battlefield. The chiefs and their more honoured followers wore shirts of chain-mail reaching down to the thighs, and iron helmets, often adorned with the figure of a boar for crest. But the majority of the host went forth in their tunics, without any defensive armour save the shield. This was a round, convex target of wood, generally of the lime-tree, strengthened in the centre with a large projecting iron boss, and protected round its edge with an iron rim. Sometimes leather was stretched across the wood for extra strength, and devices were often painted upon it.

Such were the defensive arms of the Old English. Of weapons of offence, the spear seems to have been the most universal, as it had been among the Germans, whom Tacitus described four hundred years earlier. In Anglo-Saxon cemeteries it is the weapon found buried with every warrior, while the sword is by no means so universal. Barbed and triangular spear-heads are occasionally found, but the usual type has a lozenge-shaped head, which varies from ten to fifteen inches in length. The length of the whole weapon was, on the average, about six feet. The oldest English sword was straight, double-edged, and acutely pointed. It was not as yet fitted with a cross-



WEAPONS OF THE ANGLO-SAXON PERIOD.
(British Museum.)

piece or guard, the handle merely curving in for the grasp. But ere long the invaluable addition of the guard was made, and the sword assumed the ordinary cross-handled, medieval shape. The axe was not a common weapon. When found, it is not of the large-headed, long-staved type introduced by the Danes at a later date, but is of a light shape, resembling the ancient Frankish "francisca," showing a tomahawk-like blade and constructed to be thrown, no less than to be used for hewing. The large two-edged dagger, of a broad leaf shape, fifteen or sixteen inches long, seems to have been the *seax* which is always associated with the name of the Saxons, but it is not so frequently found as might have been expected from its celebrity.

Among missile weapons, the javelin, of various sizes and shapes, was the favourite. The bow, though not uncommon, was never a typical nor a very effective weapon with the Old English; still less was the sling employed—though it, too, was not unknown.

Unmolested for several centuries in their new island home, and only engaged in wars with their weaker Celtic neighbours, or with each other, the old English kept up the ancient Teutonic war-customs long after they had become modified among Continental nations. The wars of Edwin, or Offa, or Egbert were fought out by the king and his *gesiths* backed by the hasty levies of the shires headed by their *ealdormen* and *reeves*. Hence came the spasmodic and inconsequent nature of the wars of the seventh, eighth, and ninth centuries. No great organiser arose to create a new military power, and the ancient type, efficient enough in the days of the first conquest of Britain, was unsuited to the new conditions of the English monarchies. The strength of a kingdom could be mustered for a single battle or a short campaign, but there was no permanent military organisation such as was needed if one kingdom was to thoroughly subdue and hold down another. Hence came the want of continuity in the Old English history; all the victories and conquests of an Oswald or an Offa were of no avail, because the subject kingdoms—held down by no permanent garrison or standing army—kept revolting till they chanced to shake off the yoke of their neighbours, or at least became free when death removed the great warrior who had subdued them.

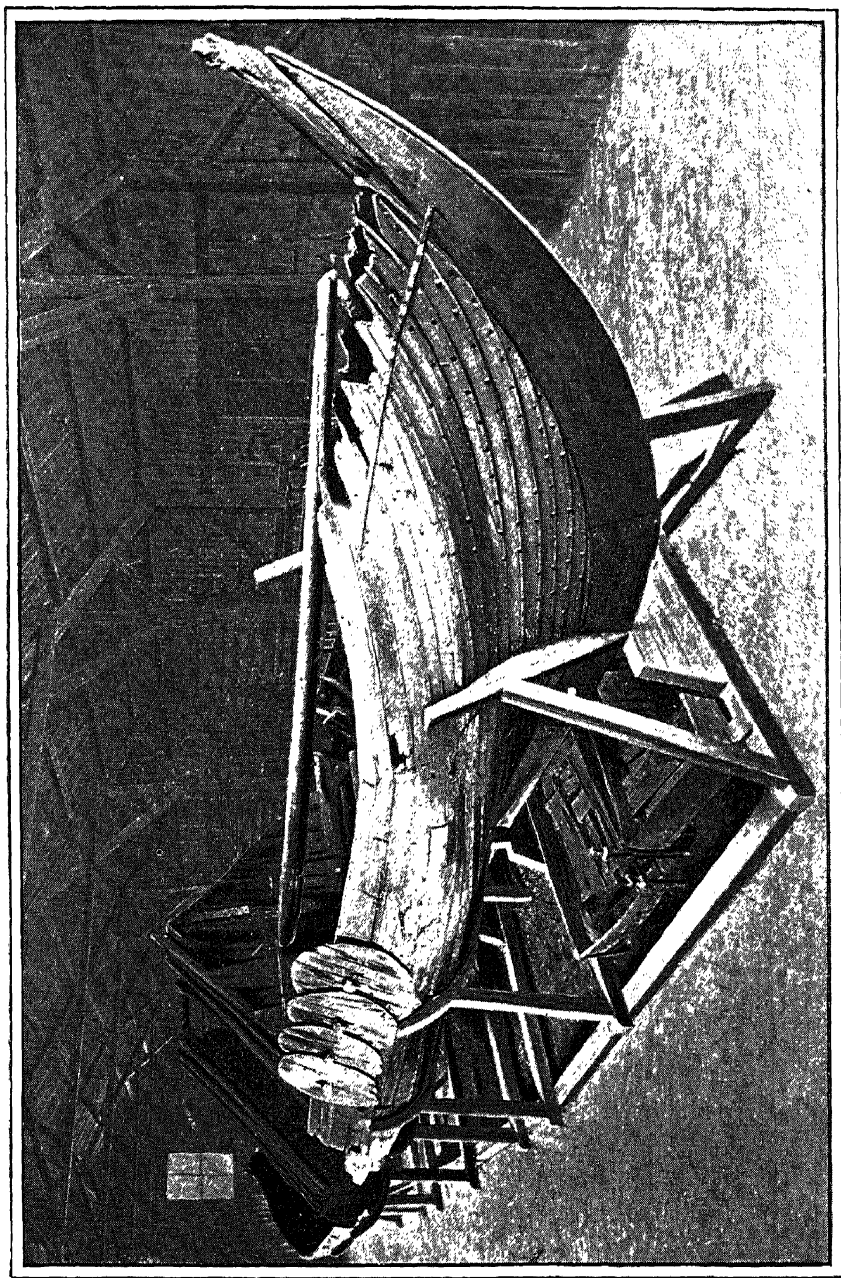


Photo: O. Vuerling, Christiania.
"VIKING SHIP" FOUND AT GOKSTAD, SOUTH NORWAY.

The
Armies
of the
Danes.

THE aimless strife between the Old English kingdoms might have been protracted indefinitely if a new power had not intervened to bring about the union of England. This power was that of the Danish Wickings,¹ who swooped down on the island in the ninth century, and seemed about to deal with the English much as the English had dealt with the Welsh five hundred years before. The Wickings were in a state of society almost exactly resembling that of their predecessors in the conquest of Britain, consisting of war-bands of adventurers who had elected to follow the banner of some noted leader, and expected to win plunder and land while fighting his battles. From the first moment of their arrival the Danes showed, by the fearful success of their raids, that they had obtained a complete military ascendancy over the English. The latter, now settled for centuries on the land, scattered in small communities over a large space, and taught by Christianity to abstain, to a certain extent, from the wars which had been the delight of their ancestors, had lost the constant practice in arms which once made the strength of their military organisation. Personally the Dane was a member of an old war-band contending with a farmer fresh from the plough, a veteran soldier pitted against a raw militiaman. He was far better provided with arms than his adversaries, for the iron cap and mail-shirt seem to have been universal among the Wickings, and not exceptional, as was the case among the English. The levy of an English kingdom came out against them with only a small proportion of mailed men, backed by a half-armed crowd of rustics bearing weapons of all kinds, from spear and sword to scythe and stone-hammer.

Tactics.

With anything like equal numbers in the field the Wicking was easily able to hold his own; but when the whole countryside had been raised, and the levy of three or four shires was swarming up against him, the invader would have been overwhelmed by the force of numbers if he had waited to be attacked in the open. Fighting, however, was not so much his end as plunder; and when the angry country folk turned out

¹ Popularly called "Vikings": see p. 210, *ante*.

against him in overwhelming strength, the Wicking took to his boats again, or saved himself by a rapid march into a new and unharried district. The English army arrived,



WICKINGS WITH WEAPONS.
(National Museum, Stockholm.)

as a rule, at the spot where the ravager had last been seen, to find only blazing cottages and pillaged churches, but no trace of an enemy. Ere long it became a favourite habit of the Wickings, as soon as they had landed, to lay hands on all the horses of the neighbourhood, and provide themselves with the means of rapid motion the moment they had got ashore. "There the army was a-horsed"

is a frequent phrase in the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle when the doings of one of the Wicking hosts are being detailed. Once in the saddle, the Danish horse-marine, if so we may call him, rode away from the English forces as long as he listed. They toiled after him in vain, till he chose to return to his ships and take his departure. When intercepted, and driven to bay—as was sometimes the case in spite of all their skill and swiftness—the Danes habitually took to surrounding themselves with entrenchments, a custom which the English had never adopted. Girt by a ditch and palisade on some convenient hill or cape, they waited behind their defences till the English levies had melted home again. Assaults on the Danish entrenchments were seldom successful; the local levies could seldom break



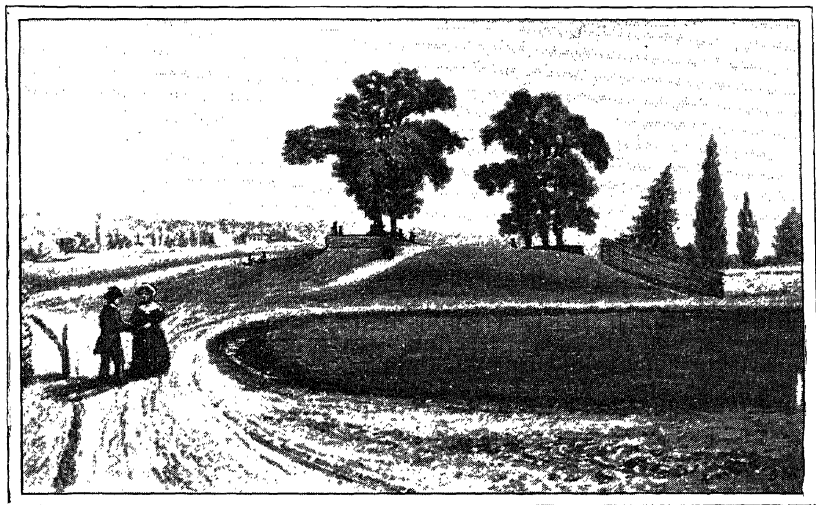
"THERE THE ARMY WAS A-HORSED."
(National Museum, Stockholm.)

through stakes and fosse manned by the heavily-armed line of axemen.

If we trace out a typical campaign of Englishman against Dane, such as Ethelred and Alfred's great struggle against the hosts of Halfdan and Bagsaeg in 871, we find that when, after winning a considerable victory in the open field, the English king thrust the invaders into their fortified camp at Reading, he was quite unable to storm it, and ended a successful campaign by a dismal failure and a retreat from before the impregnable palisades. The disasters of the last quarter of the ninth century caused the re-organisation of the Old English military system. It was obvious that something more than a hasty muster of the English levies was necessary to keep away the Danes. By the hands of the great Alfred a considerable improvement in the military strength of England was accomplished. He built a fleet, which did something to dispute the complete control of the sea which the Danes had hitherto possessed, and made their easy retreats by water more dangerous. On land his work was even more notable. It was directed towards strengthening the more efficient elements in the national host, by increasing the proportion of heavily-armed warriors which it contained. This was done by taking into the strict military dependence on the king as war-lord, after the fashion of the companions of an earlier age, all the landed men of the kingdom. Every holder of five hides of land was subjected to "thegn-service," as the military dependence on the king had now grown to be called. The thegns had to follow their lord whenever he took the field, arrayed in full equipment of helm and mail-shirt, and formed the core and permanent basis of the royal army. Such were the "bands of chosen ones" at whose head Alfred, and his son Edward, faced the Danish axemen and turned the balance of war in favour of England. The great national levy, though it still retained its miscellaneous armament and comparative inefficiency, was made a more permanent military force by being divided into two halves, each of which was to take the field in turn, while the other tilled the fields. It served but as the shaft of the weapon of which the thegnhood formed the iron barb.

Thus reorganised, and led by the gallant princes of the house of Egbert, the English host asserted an equality with, and

then an ascendancy over, the Wicking bands. It is to be noted, however, that the invaders had sunk in military efficiency from the moment that they began to "give hostages to fortune." The predominance of the first Wickings came from the fact that they were professional soldiers devoted to war alone, and that they had no homes or treasures to defend, like their adversaries, but



REMAINS OF THE DANISH CAMP NEAR READING.

(From a Water-colour Painting in the Possession of Mr. Victor White, Reading.)

were always free to take the offensive. Their sons, who had acquired farms and houses in England and settled down into landholders, were neither so constantly practised in arms nor so free of responsibilities of defence. A Dane of the "Dane-Law" (Danelagh), when at war with Edward or Athelstan, had to protect his own Yorkshire or Lincolnshire homestead, as well as to endeavour to harry Wessex. An enemy who has towns to be burnt and cattle to be lifted is much more easily dealt with than a mere marauder who has nothing to lose, and whose basis of operations is the sea. In the tenth century the tables had been completely turned between Englishman and Dane—it was the former who generally took the offensive, and it is noteworthy that they worked on the very lines that their adversaries had

used thirty years before—making a similar use of fortified positions with ditch and palisade for the purpose of holding the enemy at bay. Edward the Elder worked against the Dane-Law with a regular succession of forts of attack,¹ building up a “burh” opposite every Danish town, and keeping a permanent garrison there to contain the sallies of the inhabitants and hold down the neighbourhood. The decisive battle of Brunanburh, where the English defeated a great confederacy of English Danes, Wickings from Ireland, and Scots, marks the final end of the period of danger from the invaders from the north.

Danish
Weapons.

The influence of the Danes had marked itself on English warfare, not merely by the changes that it caused in organisation, but by certain novelties of equipment for which the English were indebted to their adversaries. These were the introduction of the long, kite-shaped shield, which seems to have almost superseded the earlier round shield by the end of the tenth century, and the adoption of the great Danish axe as a national weapon. This was something very different from the old Saxon axe, being no missile, but a massive head, a foot long in the blade, fitted to a five-feet handle, and wielded by both hands. By the time of Edward the Confessor it had superseded the sword as the typical weapon of the English thegnhood. Every authority agrees as to the fearful wounds which it could inflict when wielded by strong arms. It could cleave helm and skull to the very shoulders, lop off a thigh, and even sweep off the head of a horse.

The Dis-
integra-
tion of
England.

The wars of the unhappy reign of Ethelred the Redeless, when the power of the kingdom of united England suddenly collapsed before the attacks of Sweyn and Canute, bring out one or two new facts. From the military point of view, the land fell a victim to the danger of feudal decentralisation, due to the mistaken policy of King Edgar in cutting up his realm into great ealdormanies, whose rulers grew too independent and failed to help each other in the hour of peril. Instead of the king heading the united thegnhood of the whole kingdom, backed by the national levy, we find the great Ealdormen at the head of separate provincial levies, maintaining a spasmodic warfare without lending each other assistance. The fall of the Saxon house was finally accomplished in 1013, when the Ealdormen

¹ Ἐπιτεῖχισματα, as a Greek would have called them.

of Northumbria and East Anglia took Sweyn to lord and master, and repudiated their allegiance to Ethelred. When such action by provincial magnates had become possible, the rule of the king had obviously become a mere fiction, and feudal independence had practically replaced it.

The rule of Canute was notable in England, not merely for his temporary suppression of the danger of disintegration, by the rough method of the summary murder of the great earls of Mercia and Northumbria, Uchtred and Edric, but for the introduction of a new military element into the kingdom. Canute retained with him, when he sent the rest of his army home to Denmark, a small standing army of picked mercenaries—his “house-carles,” or military household. They were not a comparatively small body like the *gesiths* of an ancient Saxon king, nor were they rewarded with lands and allowed to dwell apart from their lord. But, to the number of several thousands, they constantly followed the king, and formed the nucleus of any force that he had occasion to raise.

This institution survived after the death of Canute. Both his sons, and their successors, Edward the Confessor and Harold Godwinson, maintained under arms this body of picked men. The royal house-carles were the core of the armies with which Earl Siward smote Macbeth’s Scots and Earl Harold hunted down the Welsh of King Griffith.

THE first things which strike us about the earliest English literature which has survived till to-day are its extreme antiquity, and, in spite of its very fragmentary state, its bulk when compared with the early literary monuments of other Germanic races. The Gothic translation of the New Testament by Ulfilas and his disciples is, of course, considerably older than the earliest Old English remains which deserve the name of literature, but neither Gothic nor any other Continental tongue can show any original work to compare in antiquity with “Beowulf,” and whilst the oldest German poem surviving, the “Hildebrandslied” (about the end of the eighth century), is but a small fragment, the “Beowulf” is a complete work. The next point to be noticed is the fact that the earliest English literature is poetry, prose coming into prominence when the poetic age was past. In this

H. FRANK
HEATH.
Old
English
Litera-
ture.

Epic
Poetry

the English follow the same course of development as the Greeks, the Romans, and, indeed, all the Aryans.

If we are called upon to label this Old English poetry, and place it in one of the recognised pigeon-holes which critics have made for the classification of poetic productions, we shall see that the bulk of it is best to be described as "epic." The popular idea of the meaning of the word "epic" is largely determined by a long literary tradition coming down from Homer to the time of Addison and Johnson, who furnished people with neat recipes for the manufacture of this kind of poem; but this, at any rate, is clear—that what we understand as national in opposition to literary epic belongs to that stage of social development which we call "heroic." In the heroic age the individual counts for a great deal; and his deeds, if he be a strong man, are of much greater comparative value to his people than in later times when organisation has allotted a share of the general work to each man, and evils of all sorts are warded off by systematic co-operation under the guidance of appointed leaders. As a result, the strong man (be he Theseus, who slays the Minotaur; or Hercules, who cleanses the Augean stables; or Beowulf, who kills the dragon or the marsh-fiends) wins much gratitude for himself and a large amount of attention for his deeds. His exploits are felt to be of deep national importance, and to express in a very real way national aspirations and the national life. And when around the hearths of the rich and powerful the valorous deeds of such a man are sung by the native bard,¹ whether it be in ancient Greece or in early England, it is an epic lay or ballad which the audience listens to. If some shaping hand should bring together several such lays, all dealing with various adventures of one hero, and imparts unity to the whole, we have such an epos as "The Wrath of Achilles"—the "Odyssey"—or "Beowulf." It must be evident from this that the character of the hero, as distinguished from the situations in which he is placed, is the important thing in epic poetry, whilst in romantic just the reverse is the case. At the same time there was a tendency to raise the hero above the human level; the very fact that he was felt to embody the national genius aided this, whilst a decline of the popular belief in the

¹ "Scop" has a more special meaning, being applied to a poet attached to some princely court.

Y.

A PAGE FROM "BEOWULF" (MS. Vitell. A. xv.).

truth of their mythology prevented any feeling that sacrilege had been committed. We find, therefore, so soon as the myths began to be treated artistically and put into literary form, that the gods tended to become more human in character, whilst the favourite heroes rose in the scale and were conceived of as demigods. Parallel to this change of mental attitude, a development of style had taken place in the expression of thought. The old religious hymns, which were intended for choral song, and had therefore been composed in strophic form, gave place to a less excited kind of verse, better suited to the recounting of a series of important events, in which, with the same end in view, the lines were no longer arranged into stanzas. And as civilisation grew, and attention came to be given to the details of life, so the poets, who at first had been content with a curt and pointed style which told the main facts and no more, such as we see in the Old German "Song of Hildebrand," introduced more and more detail into their treatment, adding in this way to the vividness of the character, actions, and life of the persons they represented. So English poetry in the sixth century had gained for itself that union of richness and vividness of handling which is characteristic of the epic style. At the same time it must not be supposed that English poetry ever reached the perfection of technique found in the Homeric epos. Many causes, and chief amongst them the introduction of Christianity at the end of the sixth century, nipped this form of art just as it was commencing to open out into flower, and favoured forms of thought on the one hand, and offered false models of style on the other, which were fatal to its further growth. For instance, the Old English poet had a great love for descriptive appellatives which call attention to some one aspect of the person or object thought of. These phrases¹ are most often used in apposition to the noun or pronoun they refer to—*e.g.* "Therefore thanks be to the Holy One That He has deemed us worthy, *the prince of glory, The eternal Lord*, for all time."² Often, however, these paraphrases are used instead of the noun. In the later

¹ Technically called Kenningar (*i.e.* "tokens"), the term used for them in old Norse poetry.

² "Seafarer," l. 122 ff. This quotation is also an example of another characteristic of the Old English poetic style, viz. disjointed apposition, the separation of the words in apposition from the word which they qualify.

Old English poetry, under the influence of Cynewulf and his school, they are much more frequent and far more artificial; indeed, this particular kind of "conceit" becomes almost as pronounced as, in the seventeenth century, in the work of Cowley or amongst the clique of "Précieuses" ridiculed by Molière, who spoke of a glass of water as *un bain intérieur*.

Whilst, however, Old English poetry is so rich in the use of appellatives, it is surprisingly sparing in its use of descriptive epithets; and so seldom does it make use of a complete simile that this figure of speech may be said to be non-existent.¹ In both these latter beauties the Homeric epic, on the contrary, is particularly rich. Old English poetry is highly metaphorical, and fond of periphrastic nouns and phrases, but very poor in adjectives and carefully-elaborated similes; the Homeric poems are poor in "tokens" of the kind described above, but very rich in suitable epithets and in similes full of highly-wrought and elaborate detail. The passionate restlessness of the Germanic genius did not allow time for lengthened pauses in the story, but hurried on to the main issue, caring as little for reflection or illustrative examples as it did for subjective analysis.

If we remember, finally, that Old English poetry was much addicted to the repetition, not merely of individual words and phrases, but also of whole thoughts, expressing the same fact from a different point of view twice or even three times—a repetition which makes the story halt—we shall have some idea of its chief characteristics and limitations. Other peculiarities, chiefly syntactical, would lead us too far afield.²

¹ There are only four similes in the whole of "Beowulf"—viz. ll. 218⁷ 727, 985, and 1608—all of the simplest description. The last and longest describes Beowulf's sword as melting like the ice when God, who has power over times and seasons, loosens the frost-fetters of winter, but it is a late interpolation by a Christian scribe.

² A word must be said here upon the form of verse which the English, in common with the other Germanic tribes, made use of. This is controversial ground, but the main facts are clear. Old English versification is based upon rhythm, not upon metre, and also upon the law that verse-accent must fall together with the natural word-stress. As it was intended to be sung, the important thing was that there should be a fixed number of beats in the line, not that there should be a definite number of syllables. Each normal line accordingly has two *chief* accents in each half, the whole being divided into two by a very marked pause in the middle of the verse. [It has also two sub-accents in each hemistich, though this is denied by the followers of Sievers.] In the best period, that previous to Cynewulf, little or no use is

Beowulf.

The greatest of the Old English poems is the epic of "Beowulf," which has come down to us almost entire in a MS. now in the Cottonian Library at the British Museum.¹ The poem has a partly mythical and partly historical basis. The mythical saga of the conquest over Grendel, and the slaughter of the dragon by Beowa, represents the constant struggle of the Germanic coast tribes with the storms of the North Sea. This legendary element was attributed soon after the English colonisation of Britain to an historical hero, Beowulf, the sister's son of Hygelac or Chocilaicus, king of the Jutes [Géats], who between 512 and 520 had led a plundering expedition to the lower reaches of the Rhine, and who lost his life in battle with the victorious Theodobert, the Frankish king's son. In this battle, Beowulf, the son of Ecgtheow, a man of gigantic build and strength, greatly distinguished himself, and after his death this Danish hero and his deeds gradually became merged in the person and heroic actions of the demi-god Beowa. But though the hero of the poem is a Jute, the poem itself is of pure English origin, and first sprang into poetic form in Northumbria. One lay from Bernicia, and another from Deira, each dealt with distinct incidents in the hero's career. Thence the ballads spread southwards to Mercia, where they were added to, elaborated, woven together into an epic poem, and written down, with the introduction here and there of Christian colouring. This

made of rime, but three out of the four syllables which bear the chief accents in each line are marked by alliteration. In the first half-line both syllables bearing a chief accent alliterate, in the second half only the first of the two alliterates with those of the previous half-line. In this way stress is laid upon the most important words, and the unity of the two half-lines is made apparent. In the case of consonantal alliteration, the combinations *sc*, *sp*, and *st* count as single sounds. When the alliteration consists of *spiritus lenis*, or smooth breathing, the rule requires that each of the three syllables in the line should commence with a different vowel. The following examples will illustrate what has been said :—

"Gōð mid Gēatum,	Grendles dæda "	("Beow.," l. 195).
"on stefn stigon ;	streamas wundon "	("Beow.," l. 212).
"efer ðren-heard,	æþeling manig "	("Beow.," l. 1112).

English poets, however, allowed themselves considerable freedom in the treatment of this scheme, and not only are the unaccented syllables which should occur between the accented ones often wanting, but some lines lack one of the sub-accents, others contain more than the allotted number of both —this latter especially in the later or sacred epic.

¹ Vitellius A. xv.

happened in the course of the eighth century. In the following century copies spread to Kent, and thence in the second half of the tenth century to the West Saxon who wrote the MS. which served as basis for the unique MS. we now possess. The poem tells how Beowulf, the thane of Hygelac, sails from Sweden to rid Heorot, the hall of Hrothgar, king in Jutland, from the scourge of the mere-fiend Grendel, who for twelve years has carried off and devoured the thanes of Hrothgar, rendering his mead-hall uninhabitable. Beowulf wrestles with the monster, who leaves his arm in the hero's vice-like grip, and flees to his mother's cave at the bottom of the mere to die. Next night his mother avenges her son's death, and Beowulf then attacks her in her haunt and slays her also. The hero is richly rewarded, and returns laden with honour to Sweden, where, after the death of Hygelac and his son Heardred, he comes to the throne, and finally, as an old man, dies in the service of his country, after victorious combat with a fire-breathing dragon who has come to burn and ravage the land in revenge for being robbed of a treasure which he guards. The poem ends with the account of the hero's body being burnt upon the top of a lofty cairn on the promontory of Hronesnaes.

Besides "Beowulf," we possess fragments of two other heroic poems belonging to the classical period of Old English. One, the "Battle of Finnsburg," deals with a war between the Danish Scyldings led by Hengist and the Jutes under Finn, who are besieged in his royal city called Finnsburg.¹ Of the other epic, "King Waldere's Lay," two short fragments survive. The story is the same as that in Ekkehard's Latin poem of the tenth century, "Waltharius," and tells how Walther of Aquitaine fled with his beloved Hildegund and overcame the Burgundian King Gunther and his men, who were in pursuit, in the passes of the Vosges. Other
Epics.

Another heroic fragment, "The Battle of Maldon," though written at the end of the Old English period (A.D. 991), deserves to be classified with the old epic poetry, because, in a period of national decline and of meretricious style in verse and prose, it stands as an almost miraculous example of fidelity to the old epic manner and the old heroic tone of thought. It is a description by an eye-witness of the last stand made by the East

¹ The saga is referred to in "Beowulf," ll. 1068-1159.

Lyric
Poetry.

Saxon ealdorman, Byrhtnoth, against a band of invading Northmen on the banks of the Blackwater in Essex.

The tendency to melancholy, apt sometimes to become morbid and complaining, has often been noticed as a trait of the English character traceable from the earliest times, and it is one which seems curiously contradictory to the fearless courage, delight in sword-play, and resigned fatalism so characteristic of the old epic style. Still the trait, which seems to be more or less common to the Germanic peoples, undoubtedly exists, and is occasionally to be traced in the heroic poems. It is, however, in another group of poems, which are lyrical in form, that this strand in the woof of the national character is most plainly seen. The oldest of these, "Widsith," or "The Traveller's Song," is less sentimental than later poems such as "The Wanderer," "The Seafarer," and "The Wife's Complaint." This is natural, for the introduction of Christianity caused a softening of character: and the pathos, though not greater than in the earlier work, is conscious instead of being unconscious and finding its expression in irony.

Cædmon

Round the name of Cædmon¹, who lived near the monastery of what was afterwards Whitby² in the latter part of the seventh century (d. 680), a number of important religious poems have been grouped. The romantic story told by Bede³ of Cædmon's inspiration in a dream is too well known to need repeating. King Alfred, in his translation of Bede, quotes what purports to be the hymn of praise composed by the poet on awaking, the sense of which is also given by the learned monk of Jarrow. There is no reason to doubt that this short Northumbrian poem is by Cædmon. Possibly also the older and less poetic portions of the metrical paraphrase of Genesis are based on his work, but a long passage in the middle (ll. 231-851) is evidently from the hand of another poet who had the Old Saxon "Heliand"⁴ before him as he wrote. Not a single line of the metrical Exodus, Daniel, or Judith is by him, nor is any part of the "Crist and Satan," or "The Vision of the Cross"—all of them

¹ [Anglo-Saxon C is always hard—"Kadmon."]

² The old English name is Streoneshalh.

³ Historia Eccl. Gentis Anglorum, lib. iv., c. 24.

⁴ The "Heliand" (Saviour) is a metrical version of the story of the New Testament written in Old Saxon.

hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt
hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt
hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt
hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt hƿær nūn hƿær gōt

CÆDMON'S HYMN OF PRAISE.
(University Library, Cambridge.)

works formerly ascribed to this poet. The three poems last mentioned belong to the school of Cynewulf, Judith being much the finest of the whole group, and that which best preserves the old epic style. The Exodus and Daniel differ markedly in style, and the treatment of their originals, both from each other and from the Genesis.

Cynewulf (born between 720 and 730; died about 800) was a Northumbrian, like Cædmon, but, unlike him, was a wandering bard by profession, who late in life passed through a religious

Cynewulf.

Oft mē fæste bilanc fædlicu mæpfe idg onfara
hƿilum up ætæh folmum fnum ffeatan fætlæ hæl
dum fæone ffeahio hærth fæf ffeðhan mē onhæpne
hæpfo ffeacæd mofan up ffeapone onnfæp ffeas
gæfæf on ffeagan ellan dæhte ffeamit ffeat ffeone
ffeallan ffealæd ffeapf næc hæt ffeæd hæt ic mæte;
IC ffeom hæro ffeatfup ffeagongf ffeagong.
ffeod ffeif ffeom ffeatan unfon cūd ffeas unfon ffeam
be ffeime ffeas ffealæd ffeone ffeam ffeam ffeam

CYNEWULF'S RIDDLES.
(The Cathedral Library, Exeter.)

crisis, and devoted his last years to religious poetry. A series of ninety-four riddles,¹ if Cynewulf's, is an early work. This form

¹ The so-called "First Riddle" is really a dramatic monologue, a companion poem to "Deor's Complaint."

of ingenuity is one of the effects of Latin influence, which worked so detrimentally upon the style of Old English literature as a whole, and which show us that we are already in the period of decline. The century of riddles which went under the name of *Symphosius*, a Latin poet of the fourth century, was imitated in England by *Aldhelm* (Bishop of Sherborne, d. 709) and *Tatwine* (Archbishop of Canterbury, 731), and were taken in turn as model by *Cynewulf*, who also used the collection of *Eusebius*. Besides the riddles, the "*Crist*" (dealing with the three advents of Christ), the *Lives of St. Juliana and St. Elene*, and the *Fates of the Apostles*,¹ are undoubtedly by *Cynewulf*. In all four poems the author has inserted his name in runic letters. The "*Descent into Hell*," "*Phoenix*," and the *Lives of St. Andreas and St. Guthlac* are almost certainly his, and very possibly "*The Vision of the Cross*." Certain scholars have ascribed to *Cynewulf* all the poems in the *Exeter* and *Vercelli* codices; but some of these, such as *Judith* (c. 915), are certainly by later poets, who wrote under *Cynewulf's* influence—and one, the "*Rhyming Poem*," was written under Scandinavian influence in the second half of the tenth century.

Prose
Litera-
ture.

A few words must now suffice for the prose literature. It is in the Old English [or "Anglo-Saxon"] *Chronicle*, first written at Winchester, that a prose style slowly developed itself after the middle of the seventh century. The contemporary entries were at first very short and bald, but in the second quarter of the ninth century the chronicler, whoever he may have been, had already gained some sense of a vivid direct style, and under *Alfred's* influence great advances were made. This king did much literary work. He had *Gregory's "Pastoral Care"* translated for the use of his clergy, as well as *Bede's "Ecclesiastical History"*, *Orosius's "History of the World"*, and *Boethius's "De Consolatione Philosophiæ"*. He also kept a note-book (in which he jotted down things seeming worthy of record), unfortunately lost; and the translations of *Boethius's "Metra"* and of the "*Psalms*" are by some thought to be his. It would have been well for Old English prose had it continued to develop along the lines of clear and straightforward strength laid

¹ There is reason to believe that "*The Fates of the Apostles*" is the epilogue to "*Andreas*," and not a separate work. Cf. Gollancz, Appendix to *Cynewulf's "Crist"*, London, 1892.

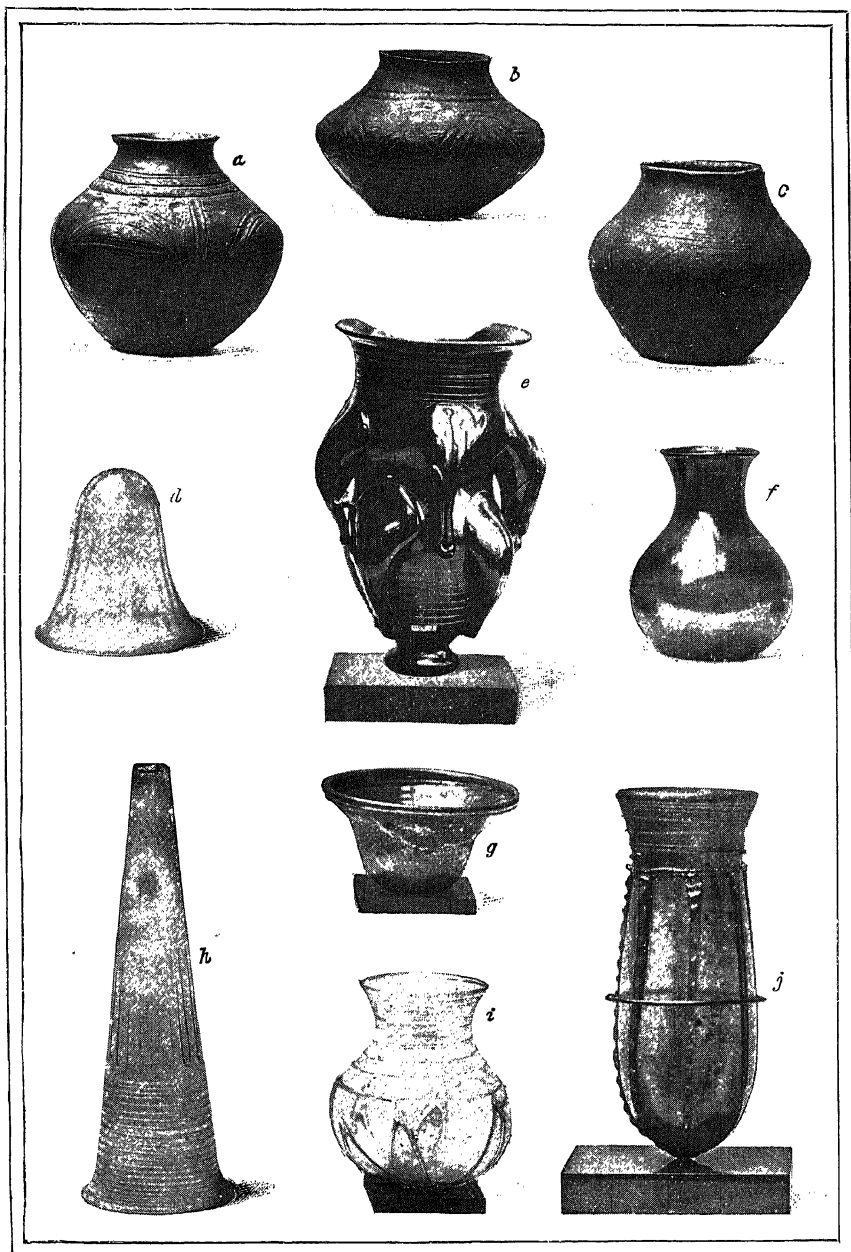
down by Alfred; but the religious prose of Ælfric [Ælfric] and Wulfstan at the end of the tenth and beginning of the eleventh centuries, like the later verse, shows everywhere the evil effects of the late Latin models alone known to them. A highly ornamented, involved, and semi-metrical style was accompanied by the allegorical treatment of the subject-matter so characteristic of literature throughout Europe after 1100, and the development of an English prose style was put back for nearly five hundred years.



OLD ENGLISH BRONZE VESSEL FOUND AT TAPLOW, BUCKS.
(*British Museum.*)

**REGINALD
HUGHES.**
Art and
Archi-
tecture.

THE heathen invaders who at home were best known as English, and abroad as Saxons, brought with them from their homes in and around Sleswick little that can properly be termed art. They were excellent carpenters, and made tolerable boats. They certainly had some skill in the manufacture of bronze and iron, and possibly some knowledge of glass-making and gold-work. As regards their work in gold, however, it is significant that they had no special law to protect the goldsmith; and that while among the Franks the price (*wergild*) set on a slave who was a skilled worker in gold was actually higher than that set on a freeman, the English in no way discriminated in his favour. As



OLD ENGLISH POTTERY AND GLASS-WARE.
 (British Museum and Canterbury Museum).

regards glass, too, we have the express testimony of Bede to the effect that when Abbot Benedict, of Monkwearmouth, began the work of church-building in the north, he sent not only for masons to France, but for workmen skilled in glass-making; and that these taught the English, not only to make window-glass, but glass cups, lamps, and drinking-vessels. This was in the last quarter of the seventh century; and fifty years later a pupil of Bede himself, writing to a French bishop, implores him to send somebody over capable of making glass, as the English did not possess the art. This is the more remarkable in view of the fact that the Saxon tombs explored in Kent and elsewhere (in which the interment has been of a non-Christian character, and which must belong either to the days before Augustine or to the pagan reaction in the following century) abound with fine work both in gold and in glass. They contain very curious cups adorned with pendulous ears—chiefly in olive-tinted glass—having the characteristic Saxon peculiarity that they will not stand up, and cinerary urns (sometimes in glass, sometimes in pottery), frequently decorated with raised patterns in scallops. Nor does Anglo-Saxon pottery, so far as we know it, ever rise higher than in these early and rude examples of pagan work. Of more importance is the sepulchral jewellery, which includes necklaces, clasps, and brooches of great beauty and variety. These brooches, both of the round and long variety, if somewhat barren in design, are beautifully executed; and the polished garnets and vitrified pastes, mostly of crimson colour, and the rare turquoises with which they are ornamented, are often set with delicate gold braids, recalling the fineness and neatness of Etruscan work. Occasionally the Greek cross is met with, and later, Christian symbols become frequent. Most of this was at first, no doubt, of Frankish origin; but after the importation by Alfred of skilled foreign artificers in gold, it is probable that the English craftsmen acquired high skill, so that the “King Alfred jewel” found in the Isle of Athelney may just possibly be a native work. How far the goldsmith’s art advanced in the centuries which preceded the Danish wars it is impossible to say, but the references to gold and precious stones, to bracelets and rings, in Bede and elsewhere, and detailed description of such geegaws as a golden fly adorned with gems, and of gold “vermiculated” necklaces, suggest considerable skill in this minor art.

But whatever proficiency may have been reached in the eighth century or before, we have the fact that at the end of the ninth, Alfred had to send for men skilled in gold work from abroad ; nor can we safely claim for the English goldsmith the crown four pounds in weight, and the two basons (all "of purest gold"), and the silver dishes which Alfred sent as a present to the Pope.

Two arts, however, seem to have taken strong root in England, and never to have fallen into decay—the art of illu- Weaving
and Embroidery.

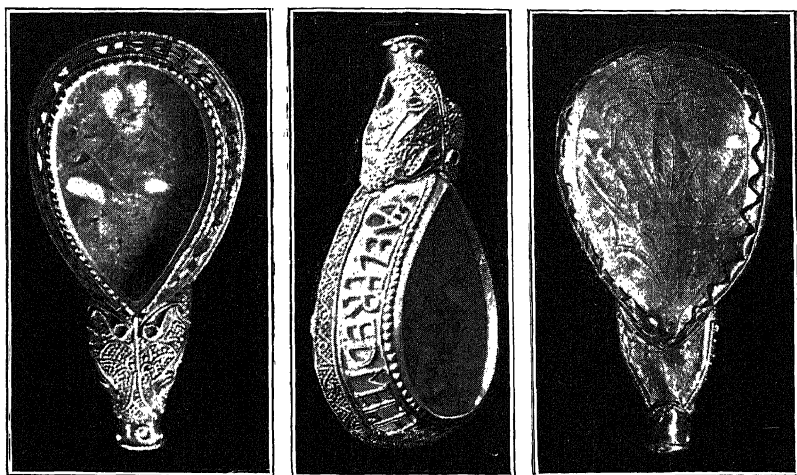


Photo : Taunt, Oxford.

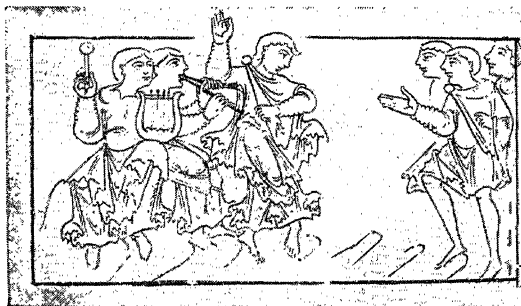
KING ALFRED'S JEWEL.
(Ashmolean Museum, Oxford.)

mination, and the art of gold embroidery. The native poet and chronicler is loud in the praise of the English skill in the art of the weaver, and relates with enthusiasm how the shuttle, "filled not only with purple, but with all other colours, flies now this way, now that, among the close-spread threads," and how the embroiderer's art "glorified the wool-work with groups of pictures." For this they achieved something like European fame. The Germans, who excelled in this manufacture, came over to England to learn the trade, and the "English work" was famous even in Italy. We hear of silk garments woven with golden eagles, with golden flowers, with gold and gems ; and the ecclesiastical robes, especially the official pallium of the arch-

Illumina-
tion.

bishop, were frequently thus adorned. Two silken pallia excited the admiration of Bede himself, and two more are included in the list of Alfred's offerings to Rome. The passion for gay colours not only comes out in the effusive admiration of the native writers, but monks and nuns are warned, in frequent pastorals, not to give way to the besetting sin of acquiring and wearing many-coloured dresses. In the illuminated manuscripts we have abundant evidence of the prevailing passion, and in the well-known MS. of the Saxon Gospels the evangelists wear undergowns of purple, of light blue striped with red, of lilac, and of pea-green, and their robes are of all the colours of the rainbow. Time has softened many of these violent hues to an even and delightful harmony, but it would seem that the gift of a delicate colour-sense was not conspicuous among our ancestors. The pictures they had to study were few, and probably of Byzantine character—such as those of the Virgin and Twelve Apostles, and the illustration of the Old and New Testaments imported from Rome by the energetic Abbot Benedict. The recipes for gold painting which have come down to us are numerous, and explain how, for their embossed gold letters, a foundation was carefully laid (in some preparation of chalk apparently), and the gilding elaborately burnished. We see a preference for symmetrically knotted forms, but perhaps the illuminator was at his best in dealing with conventional flowers and leaves, while as an animal painter he leaves much to be desired. If the pictures in these religious books are not of the highest value as works of art, the testimony which they bear to the state of civilisation is frequently precious. As witnesses, however, they cannot be implicitly relied on, for they frequently represent architectural features—such as the acanthus foliage on a capital—which could neither have been seen nor evolved in England. Their testimony, however, to the existence of many sorts of musical instruments—as where (in one of the Cotton MSS.) David and his musicians are seen playing on an eleven-stringed harp, a viol, a trumpet, and a horn—is indisputable. When we add to this such incidents as Alfred or Anlaf going with his harp into the enemy's camp, we are not left in doubt that at least by the ninth century the art of playing and perhaps of making musical instruments must have been quite common. Even as far back as Bede and Aldhelm we have reference to the organ with its

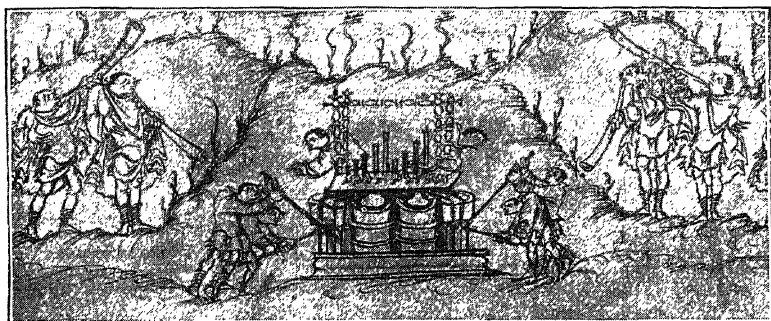
Music.



Lyre and Flute (MS. Cleop. C. viii.).



Trombones (MS. Cleop. C. viii.).



Organ and other Instruments (Utrecht Psalter).



Harp and Horns (MS. Tib. C. vi.).



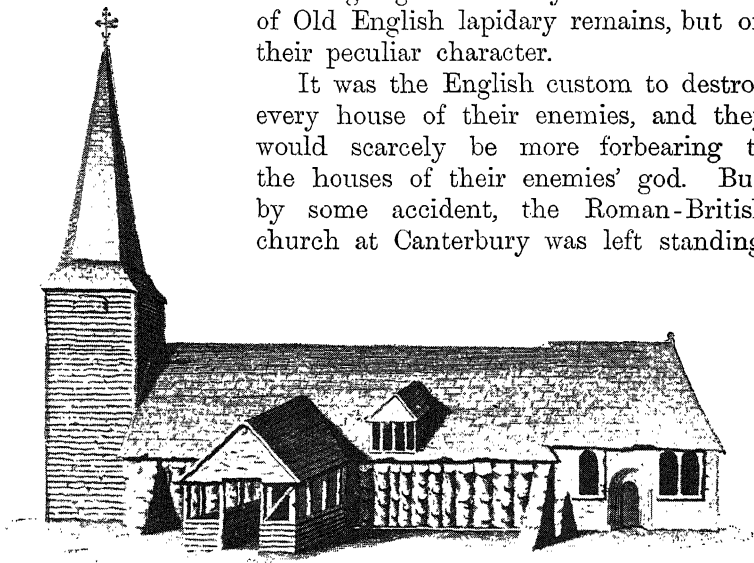
Musicians (MS. Vesp. A. i.).

Archi-
tecture :
Ecclesi-
astical.

thousand pipes, and the *ventosi folles*, or bellows, with which it was blown.

Towards architecture the part played by the conquering tribes was simply that of ruthless destroyers; nor was there, to men engaged in carrying fire and sword over the abandoned province, any inducement to constructive work. Stockades or palisaded entrenchments were always their favourite “places of arms,” and slight wooden halls and sheds were enough to shelter the war-king and his men. In the new country, as in the old, their idols and their altars were of wood, and even so late as the time of Charles the Great the great temple of the Irmensul (the idol of the inland Saxons) at Merseburg was of the same material. The description of this idol—which Charlemagne destroyed—with the rose in one hand and the scales in the other, the cock-crested helmet and the shield, leaves no doubt that it was carved in wood, the decorations being probably of gilt bronze, such as are found in English tombs of the pagan period. The ordinary Anglo-Saxon word for “build” was “getimbrian”—to construct of wood; and this plain fact of philology throws a strong light not only on the fewness of Old English lapidary remains, but on their peculiar character.

It was the English custom to destroy every house of their enemies, and they would scarcely be more forbearing to the houses of their enemies’ god. But, by some accident, the Roman-British church at Canterbury was left standing,



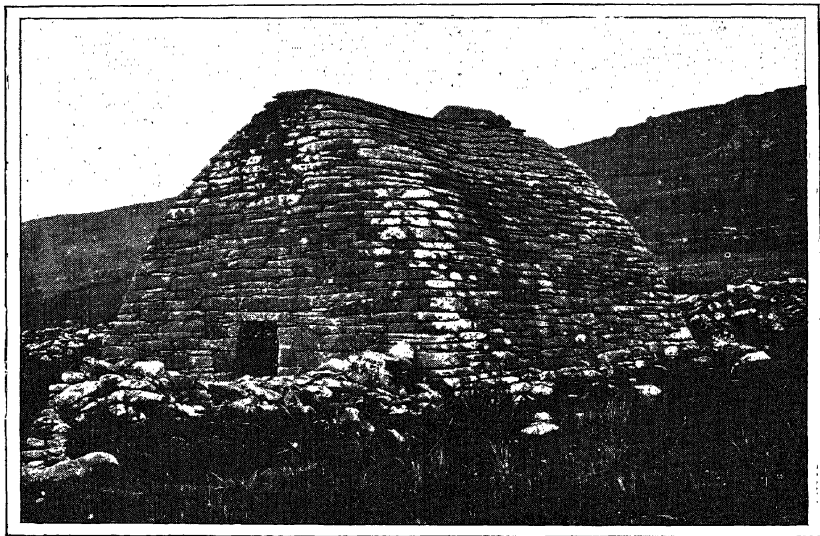
THE WOODEN CHURCH AT GREENSTEAD, ESSEX.
(From a Print of 1748.)

and Augustine, with the assistance of King Ethelbert, recovered and apparently restored it. The beginnings of Latin Christianity were thus the beginnings of an architecture in England. The church as restored by Augustine has been ingeniously reconstructed for us by Professor Willis, who shows grounds for supposing that in shape it was the oblong, or double square, affected by the Italian architects, that it had an apse at each end, the high altar of the presbytery at the east, that of the lady chapel at the western extremity—the eastern half being devoted to the use of the clergy, the western to that of the laity. A hundred and fifty-three years after the conversion of Ethelbert, Archbishop Cuthbert added a baptistery; in 950 Archbishop Odo raised the stone walls and rebuilt the roof. Unfortunately, a year after Senlac it was totally destroyed by fire. It never, however, seems to have been taken as a model by the English builders, who were essentially workers in wood and profoundly ignorant of masonry. The importance which they attribute to the building of a church in the Roman manner—that is, of stone—is by itself some evidence of this prevailing ignorance; and there can be no doubt that the churches which sprang up all over England after the conversion of the country to Christianity were made of the more common and perishable material. Even in the ninth and tenth centuries we hear of the worm-eaten walls of cathedrals, and the miraculous preservation of wooden pillars which a saint had leaned against. We can only guess what they were like from the portions of interiors depicted in illuminated MSS., which show us as a rule small buildings in form perhaps more like the wooden churches of Norway than any other existing buildings. They were decorated internally with paintings in various bright colours, but no authentic specimen of Anglo-Saxon mural decoration has been preserved.

St. Augustine's cathedral was, no doubt, the first place of worship of the Christianised Englishman, but it was hardly an English church. To find that, we must go to Monkwearmouth and Jarrow, built, as Bede tells us, by Benedict, who crossed the sea into Gaul, and carried back with him masons to build him a stone church. This was about A.D. 680, and by the beginning of the next century the fame of the stone churches built by Benedict and Wilfrid in the north of England had reached the Pictish king, who sent for architects to Ceolfred, abbot of Jarrow, that

Stone
Churches
in the
North.

he might have a church in Scotland built "in the Roman manner." Probably it is to a slightly earlier period that we may refer the unmortared stone hermitages, while the stone-roofed churches and round towers belong to a somewhat later date ; but, of course, all of these are anything rather than English. Certain portions of the work of these early saints (Benedict



GALLARUS ORATORY, NEAR DINGLE, W. IRELAND.

(From "*Notes on Irish Architecture*," by the Earl of Dunraven.)

and Wilfrid) fortunately still exist, and the fragments of Roman mouldings built into their walls show that they already knew where to go for their materials. The best preserved remains seem to have been cells or shrines for relics, with steps on each side, so that the faithful might pass down, see the body of the saint, and pass up on the other side. Benedict's doorway at Monkwearmouth is probably the most authentic specimen of Early Anglo-Saxon work that remains to us. The arch is very low and heavy. The pillars that support it are grooved in imitation of wood turned in a lathe, and the bottom stone of the right doorpost is decorated with twined beaked serpents resembling the kind of decoration which survives in Anglo-Saxon illuminations. The church at Bradford-on-Avon may be perhaps a later

restoration, though originally built by Aldhelm of Sherborne, who received a charter from Ine of Wessex in A.D. 705. In form it is a simple, rude, arched structure, but it contains small figures of angels with scrolls, which resemble drawings in the Benedictional of St. Æthelwold (p. 265) more than a century and a half later. To make the riddle harder, a Norman window has been cut in the old wall, a shallow incised arcade forms part of the exterior decoration, and the close-jointed stones are puzzlingly suggestive not only of Norman work, but Norman work of the twelfth century.

The coming of the Danes, no doubt, did much to put a stop to building in England in the ninth century; and the approach of the millennial year (A.D. 1000), accompanied by the apprehension that the end of the world was at hand, further

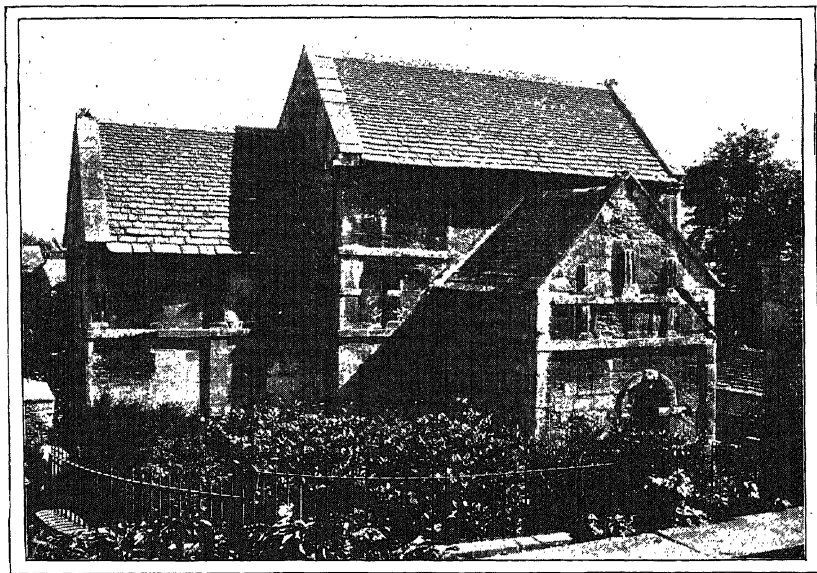


Photo: R. Wilkinson, Trowbridge.

BRADFORD-ON-AVON CHURCH.

discouraged architecture during the tenth. As a result, though a few fragments of higher antiquity may be pointed out, the greater number of the Saxon churches of which a substantial part remains above ground only date from the eleventh century.

Many of them were no doubt due to the filial piety of Canute, who raised anew the churches which his father had burned, and

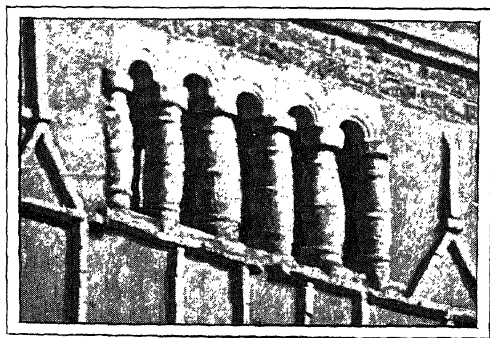


SPLAYED EMBRASURE, CAVERSFIELD CHURCH, OXON.

whose order to rebuild Assandune¹ is preserved in the Old English Chronicle. The complete establishment of Christianity among the Danes was probably accompanied by an outburst of pious interest in church-building; and last, and not least, there was the impulse derived from contact with the Normans. This eleventh-century work is distinguished by the alternate "long and short" quoins at the angles of the walls, such as are seen at Earls-Barton in Northamptonshire and Cos-

hampton in Hampshire. Still

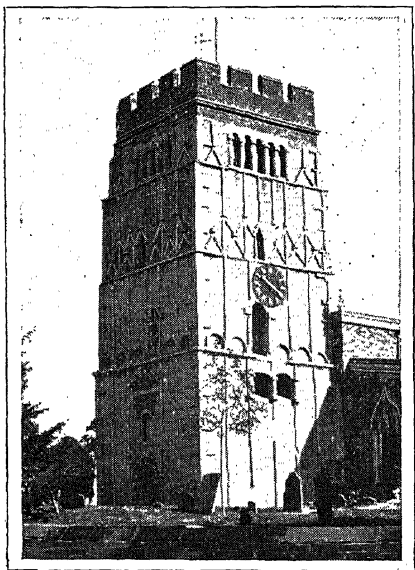
more characteristic are the long, narrow, lath- or pilaster-like strips of stone joined by arches and straight braces, with which the walls are decorated, which are unmistakably taken from wooden originals. The apertures of the windows, too, are generally small, so that eye-holes (the Anglo-Saxon word for them) seems not inappropriate. Not unfrequently they are formed with what Mr. Fergusson calls "gouty balustrades," and the embrasures disproportionately splayed (sometimes on both sides), while the window arch is not seldom replaced by an actual triangle. But the influence which began with the Norman Emma, Queen of Ethel-



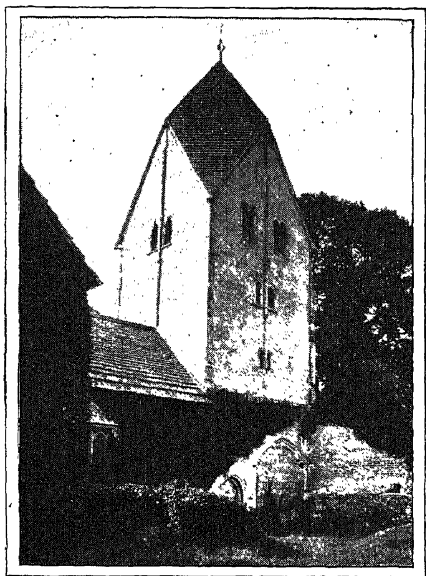
GOUTY BALUSTRADES, EARLS-BARTON CHURCH, NORTHANTS.

red and of Canute, became predominant with the Confessor, whose reign was, of course, a great building

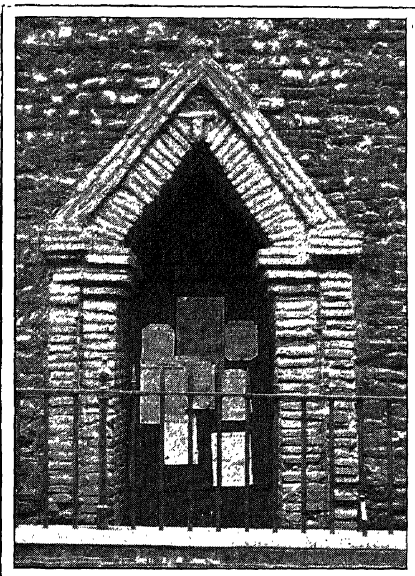
[¹ Probably Ashington in Essex, on the south of the River Crouch.]



EARLS-BARTON TOWER.



SOMPTING TOWER.



DOORWAY, COLCHESTER.

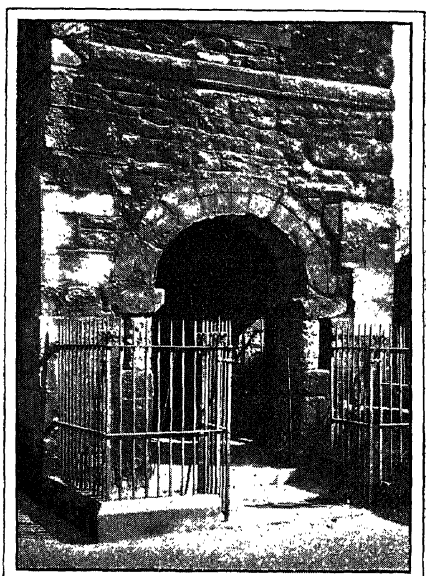


Photo: Gibson, Hexham.
ST. BENEDICT'S DOORWAY, MONKWEAR-
MOUTH CHURCH.

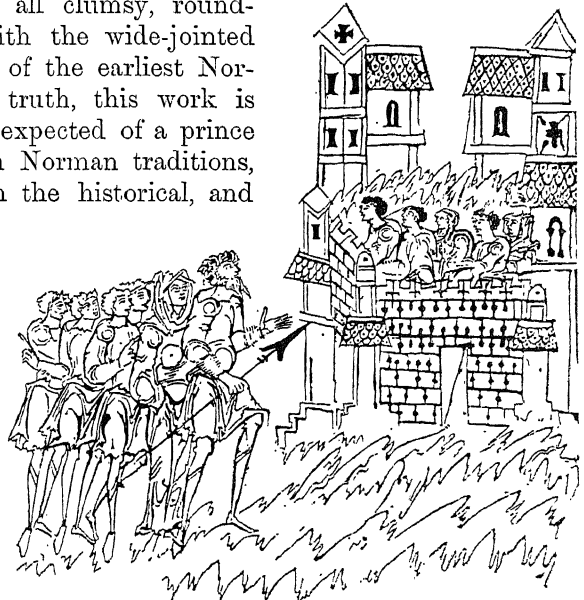


BUILDING A HOUSE IN THE ELEVENTH CENTURY (MS. Harl. 603).

era. Of the choir and transepts at Westminster built by that pious monarch and consecrated a few days before his death, little remains but the substructure of the monks' dormitory and the lowest part of the walls of the refectory. It is all clumsy, round-arched work, with the wide-jointed masonry typical of the earliest Norman work. In truth, this work is what might be expected of a prince bred and born in Norman traditions, and it is only in the historical, and not at all in the architectural, sense that it can be called Anglo-Saxon.

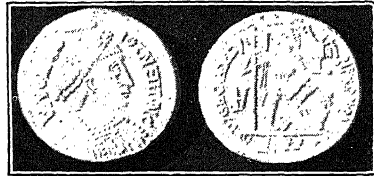
Domestic
Architec-
ture.

As regards the domestic architecture of the Saxons we have to guess what it was like. Poets, as in

DOMESTIC ARCHITECTURE (MS. Jun. xi.).
(Bodleian Library, Oxford.)

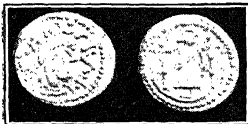
[1066]

the epic of "Beowulf," talk of pinnacled halls, and the illuminations show us crenellated roofs. But it is probable that wood never ceased to be the material for lay buildings, though when churches were being built "in the Roman manner" a king's thegn here and there may have occasionally replaced his wooden door-posts with stone pillars. The castle was not a Saxon institution, and their burghs were probably shingle-roofed houses surrounded by a stockaded moat. It is significant that of all the castles enumerated in Domesday only Arundel is mentioned as having existed in the Confessor's time.



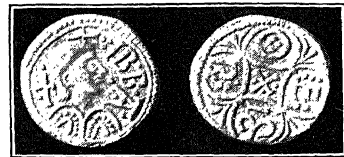
THE EARLIEST ENGLISH GOLD COIN.

If we except the reigns of the first Norman and Angevin Coins.

COIN WITH LATIN
LETTERING.

lowest ebb under the Anglo-Saxon monarchy. This is the more remarkable because an indigenous coinage came into existence as far back as the seventh century. Copper stycas or mites and sceattas which approached the penny in value, in base metal, in silver, and even in gold, were struck thus early in North-

umbria. Nor do they seem to have gone entirely out of use until the Danish conquest under Halfdene in the ninth century. They are rude imitations of the coins of the usurper Maximus, and sometimes bear a Runic, sometimes a Latin, lettering; sometimes neither one nor the other, but with marks that might be copied from either by a person wholly ignorant of both. Next in point of date come a few Kentish coins, but it is not until the reign of the Mercian Offa (765-791) that genuine English coinage can be said to have existed. It is uncertain whether Offa actually



COIN OF OFFA.

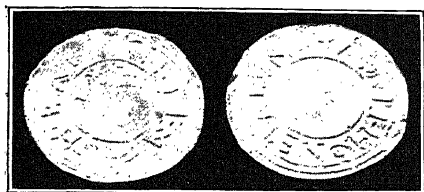
visited Rome, but his comparatively elegant coinage was undoubtedly the fruit of his intercourse with the Eternal City, and

not unconnected with the annual tribute of 365 mancuses paid to the Pope. This was a considerable sum, for the mancus was equal to thirty pennies. It apparently had to be paid in coin, for such a necessity can alone explain the undoubted existence of an Arabian dinar with "Oña Rex" on it, turned the wrong way, so as to be upside down to the genuine Koranic legend. The Anglo-Saxon gold coins are few in number. There are the sceattas of Northumbria, copied from the Romans; a few specimens of the triens, copied from the Franks; this Arabic dinar; and some doubtful pieces, one of which shows the head of Edward the Confessor, and which seems to have been a gold imitation of a real silver coin, made to serve as a pendant to a necklace. The silver coins are numerous, not only of the separate Old English kingdoms, but of the monarchy from

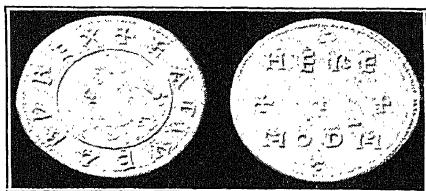


AN OLD ENGLISH HALFPENNY.

Athelstan downwards, and of divers bishoprics and abbacies. They are chiefly pennies, but from about the end of the ninth century halfpennies occur, though these were not struck in all reigns—change for a penny being obtained by halving or quartering it with the knife. The coins are valuable, not so much as pieces of art, as pieces of history; and not only for the portraits they preserve of kings and saints, but for the light they throw on the sayings of chroniclers—as, for instance, when the alleged increase of intercourse with the Court of Aachen is corroborated by the appearance of the Carlovingian temple-front on the mintage of an English king. The series of portraits, too, rough though they are, is far from being without interest. It is evident that the Byzantine coins afforded models for dress, and probably in some cases for features, though in other cases an exact likeness was evidently intended. Even in these earliest times, and in the not specially English art of coin-striking, the English native talent is strong in the portraiture of character; and technically feeble as its delineations are, they leave us in no doubt as to the vicious weakness of Edwy's countenance, or the coarse strength of that of Harold II.



Edwy, 955-959.



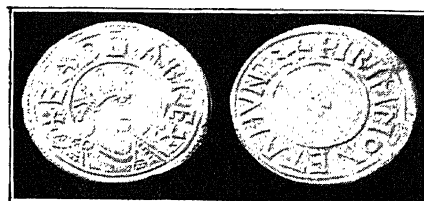
Edward the Elder, 901-925.



Alfred, 871-901.



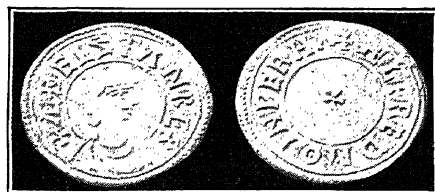
Ethelred, 979-1016.



Edgar, 959-975.



Edred, 946-955.



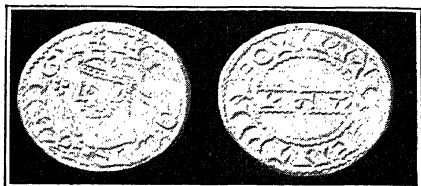
Athelstan, 925-941



Edward the Confessor, 1042-1066.



Edmund, 941-946.



Harold II., 1066.

COINS WITH PORTRAITS OF KINGS.

A. L.
SMITH.
Trade and
Industry.

ENGLAND seems of all countries the best fitted by climate, situation, configuration, and products for maritime trade. The earlier accounts of the Saxons in their old home represent them as daring seafarers. In their flat-bottomed "keels," with skins stretched over wickerwork for the sides, they carried their piracies into the German Ocean and the Bay of Biscay; and "welcomed the storm as concealing their approach or dispersing their enemies." Yet when these Saxons and Angles, after generations of predatory assaults, finally, in the fifth century, invaded Britain, and—whatever admixture of Celtic blood may have resulted in reality (pp. 183, 194 *seq.*)—transformed outwardly the Romanised and Christian country into a veritable Engle-land, heathen and uncivilised, they seem at once to have dropped their use of the sea. They built no more ships; they made no more adventurous voyages for traffic or for spoil.

The early history of England in regard to commerce and to industrial development is almost a blank. Save for a few scattered allusions, it might be supposed to have no commerce at all till after the Norman Conquest; and no exports, save of raw products, till much later still. It is significant that the "chapman" occurs only three times in the whole body of Old English laws. The fact also that so many of the coast names, even outside the Danish districts, are Scandinavian in form (*-ness*, *-vick* and *-by*) points to the external traffic being mainly in the hands of northern traders. In the letter, however, of Charles the Great to Offa of Mercia we hear of English traders who joined the companies of pilgrims to pass safely through foreign territories, but also to smuggle the wares on which they should have paid customs dues. These wares were probably articles of gold and silver work.

Alfred's
Enter-
prises.

King Alfred's embassies to the Patriarch of Jerusalem and to the Christians in India seem to indicate some commercial as well as religious purpose. In his translation of Orosius he inserted the accounts which he got from Othere the Norseman and from Wulfstan. The latter describes the Eastland tribes (of Prussia) reached by the Baltic. Othere describes the reindeer and the whale fishery of his own home in

Halgoland—where he dwelt “northmost of all the Northmen”—and the marten, deer, otter, and bear skins, the eiderdown and whalebone, the ropes made from whale and seal skins, which the Fins brought in as tribute, and which northern chapmen no doubt brought on to England. Othere had doubled the North Cape, penetrated through the White Sea to the site of Archangel, and brought back walrus ivory to “his lord, King Alfred.” When Alfred built his new ships to confront the Danish “ashes,” and built them “full nigh twice as large, swifter and stauncher and higher, some with sixty oars and some with more,” he was able in a few years to defeat the fleet of the East Anglian Danes, but he had to get “pirates” from Friesland to man them. His son Edward could collect a hundred ships to hold the Channel; and there is no reason to doubt William of Malmesbury’s account of Edgar’s yearly progress with a fleet round the coasts. Such a navy must have had some commercial marine to feed it. Indeed, a law—probably of Athelstan’s time—aims at such encouragement by declaring “every merchant who fared thrice across the wide sea at his own cost to be of thegn-right worthy.” It is probable, too, that the law, which we find in force under Edgar and Ethelred, to the effect that every three hundreds (of the coast-line doubtless) should furnish a ship, had been enacted much earlier with the same object. From the time of Athelstan, English fleets are frequently mentioned, and the table of the port dues laid down by Ethelred for London shows a brisk trade with Normandy, France, Ponthieu, Flanders, and other places. These and “the men of the Emperor,” who were to be deemed “worthy of good laws even as ourselves,” brought wine, fish, clothes, pepper, gloves, vinegar. The goods bought by the merchant of Elfric’s Dialogues have already been mentioned (p. 190). These goods would for the most part come from Constantinople to Venice, thence overland to Flanders, and so by sea to England. In various Anglo-Saxon documents we find that silks, though highly valued, are not uncommon; “wine is drunk by the elders and the wise,” and was allowed to monks on days of festivity. From the north and east came furs, skins, ropes, masts, weapons, and ironwork. The exports which paid for all this were chiefly of raw produce. Cornish tin and lead from the Peak District

Alfred’s
Ship-
building.

Imports
and
Exports.

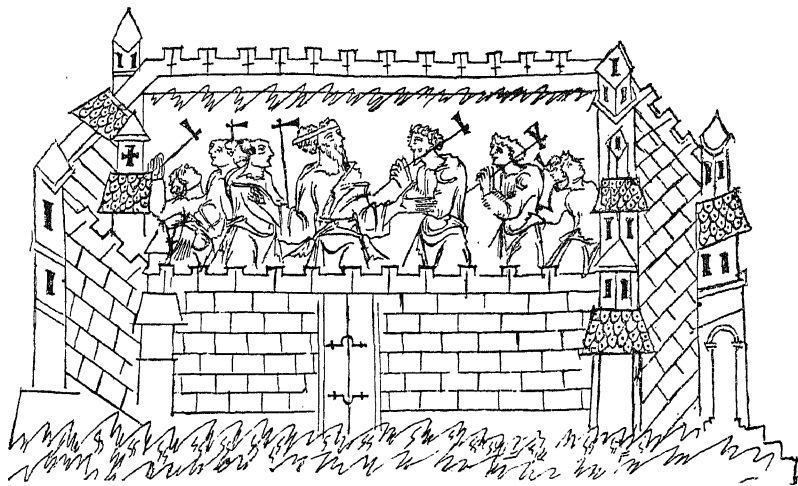
The Slave
Trade.

were staple products, as in Roman times. There is reason to believe that other mines yielded silver and even gold. Silver and gold trinkets of English make are heard of as early as the seventh century. The high price of wool and the value of the fleece as compared with the price of sheep suggests that English wool was already, as it continued to be for many centuries, the main source which fed the clothing towns of Flanders. The export of horses is mentioned and restricted by a law of Athelstan. But the chief trade of all, to judge by the documentary evidence, was the trade in slaves. The story of the Northumbrian boys, whose fairness moved the pity of Gregory in the market-place of Rome, and made him vow that their land should be taught the true faith, carries back this traffic well into the sixth century. Warfare, debt, crime are the modes by which, in the early German laws, men became slaves. The English invaders of Britain brought their bondservants with them, and the long gradual progress of the invaders westward must have produced a constant supply of slaves from the conquered Welsh. But medieval Christianity, though it may have acquiesced too easily in serfdom, did at least set its face firmly against slavery. The prohibitions began in Ine's Law, and are repeated down to Ethelred's, "that Christian men and uncondemned be not sold out of the country, especially into a heathen nation; and be it jealously guarded against that those souls perish not that Christ bought with His own life." They are more fully expressed in the canons and penitentials of the Church. Above all, the contemporary biographer of Wulfstan describes in a curious passage the good bishop's efforts to turn from their evil ways the traders of Bristol, who had in the eleventh century the same character in this respect as in the eighteenth. "The people of Bristol had an odious and inveterate custom of buying men and women in all parts of England, and exporting them to Ireland for gain. The young women they carried to market in their pregnancy, that they might get a better price . . . nor were these men ashamed to sell into slavery their nearest relatives—nay, even their own children." William of Malmesbury, writing a century later, states that a similar practice was still not unknown in the north of England.

The
Towns.

The development of an inland trade may to some extent be measured by the development of a town population. It is clear

that before the thirty or forty boroughs walled and fortified by Alfred in the southern shires, and by his sister Ethelfleda of Mercia in the midlands and the north, and afterwards by Alfred's successors, England was almost without towns. The Teutonic spirit still, in Tacitus's phrase, regarded walled cities as the strongholds of slavery. It is difficult to believe that there was ever a time when the Roman walls and basilicas and forums of



THE ENGLISH BURGH (MS. Jun. xi.).
(Bodleian Library, Oxford.)

cities like London and York stood utterly untenanted; but yet we know such was actually the case with Chester, Silchester and other Roman sites. In all but a few of the old cities, at any rate, town-life only sprang up afresh after an interval of desolation. The English burgh ("burh") or walled enclosure was in organisation and in character, as in origin, no other than a more populous hamlet. Where a Roman street forded the river, or where a shrine (like St. Frideswide's at Oxford) attracted pilgrims, or hard by an ancient site where the Roman remains could be used as a quarry, or up the estuary of a river like the Yare or the Exe, these were the conditions under which the township came to be a "port" or borough.

This slow and broken growth is well illustrated by the facts **London.** of the early history of London. When Mellitus came to preach

there in 601 it is clear that he found but a scanty and a heathen population. The old line of the Watling Street was lost; the space about St. Paul's was apparently deserted. A century later it had become "the mart of many traders"—Frisians and Easterlings, French and Picards, probably. It had a separate chief magistrate.¹ Its increase to the east and south is traceable in the churches founded there. When Alfred re-conquered it from the Danes and rebuilt its walls, it was already an important place. London Bridge, which stood so many a fierce Danish assault afterwards, probably existed already. Under Athelstan there were eight mints at work in it; and the ordinances of its gild, by which its citizens grouped themselves in their tens and hundreds, and met monthly to settle the gild accounts, were confirmed by him and the Witan. To all this progress the Church influence had greatly contributed. The folk-moot met in St. Paul's precincts at the sound of the great bell; the armed levy marched under St. Paul's banner. The bishop saw to it that weights and measures were true. The city grew fast in population; of the total Danegeld of £72,000 paid to Canute from all England, London's share was £10,500. It had practically displaced Winchester as the capital.

But the influx of Danish settlers early in the eleventh century had the compensating disadvantage, of which one chronicler tells, that it made the city "half barbarian." Certainly London till perhaps the Tudor time retained a strong foreign character; it was the purse, often the brain, it has been well observed, but perhaps never the heart of mediæval England.

River
Traffic and
Town Life.

London seems to have been the only town on the Thames till the tenth century. The latest authority puts the foundation of Oxford not before 890. Yet the rivers would be the natural channels of trade; and Oxford must have had some form of market and chepe-place, even when it was no more than an open village. We find an abbot of Abingdon cutting a new barge channel in return for a toll of herrings. In the same manner the Trent was a highway of trade, and tolls were taken on it by the men of Nottingham. Similarly with other rivers. Gloucester had a nunnery from 681, a mint

[¹ The *wic-reeve* (*wic-reaf*): he seems to have been either appointed or approved by the king.]

1066]

from Alfred's day, and must always have been a meeting-place of Welsh and English. Bristol probably sprang up long before Canute's day, when is found the first mention of it. It seems to date back to the time of Mercian greatness, which ended with Offa. Chester had its local trade in cattle, sheep, and dairy produce with the pasture lands across the Ribble, and its Irish trade with the Ostmen of Dublin and Waterford. The importance of Exeter, which appears markedly at the Norman Conquest, was due to the Exe, which was then navigable up to the city. Of the Cinque Ports and such coast towns, Sandwich may be taken as typical. It had a great herring fishery. Ethelred made it the meeting-place for his fleet; Tostig manned his ships with its "butsecarls."¹ The Codex Diplomaticus shows that the tolls there and rights of "wreck" and "strand," granted by charter from Canute to Christ Church, Canterbury, were valued at more than £30 a year; and that jealousy of this valuable grant roused the rival abbey of St. Augustine's to hard work, though vainly, at a scheme for supplanting Sandwich by a new port at a little distance. Judging by the number of mints in each, the other towns of chief importance in the south, besides Winchester, Canterbury, and Rochester, were Southampton, Lewes, Shaftesbury, Wareham, Hastings, and Chichester. In the eastern shires Norwich, Dunwich, and Ipswich appear most prominent, all depending largely on their fisheries. Further north, York and Lincoln were conspicuous, not yet displaced by Hull and Boston. Yet even York had a population of less than 10,000; and all the eighty towns that can be collected from Domesday Book would not furnish together a population of 200,000.

An Old English borough was little more than a collection of wooden thatched huts with two or three small churches, some having towers built for refuge and defence—the whole borough included within a wall strengthened by buttresses and by a stockade, and perhaps further protected by a moat or ditches. They were for the most part market centres rather than manufacturing, and a great part of their activity was simply agricultural. The borough was only an enlarged

The Old
English
Town.

[¹ Boatmen, sailors; the first part of the word is said by Prof. Earle to be preserved in the "busses," or herring boats, of Yarmouth.]

township. Like other townships, it had its arable fields and pasture and common woodland; its men were serfs of a neighbouring lord, and bound to plough, mow, and reap for him, or to pay in commutation their plough-penny and reaping-money (rep-silver), their wood-money and servile tribute (gafol). If their lord was the king, their burdens took a more public character; *e.g.* at Romney fifty burgesses bound to do service at sea were freed from all other payments except fines; in Oxford twenty for the whole town went out for war service at the king's call. Often these commutations to the king or other lord take the form of local produce as well as money. Thus Chester paid £45 and three bundles of martens' skins; Oxford, £20 and six measures of honey; Dunwich, £50 and sixty thousand herrings. Often a rent is paid in eels, of which there appears to have been an enormous production. The vast fen-lands and meres, the undrained rivers and undisturbed estuaries, account for this, as for the great number of salmon fisheries—thirty-three on the Dec, worked by lessees, sixty-five on the Severn, and so on. Fish entered into the national dietary far more than it does now, not merely for fast-days, but because the only winter meat, except game, was salted. In Elfric's Dialogues, besides the ordinary river fish, salt-water fish and shell-fish, "sea-swine" or porpoises and sturgeons are also named; but to the question, "Why do you not fish in the sea?" the Fisher answers, "Sometimes I do; but rarely, for it needs a big ship . . . many take whales and get a great price, but I dare not from the fearfulness of my mind."

Indus-
tries.

Perhaps the chief industry next to agriculture and fishing was that of salt-making; in six shires 727 salt-works are named, paying rents to their lords. There are about 5,000 mills mentioned in Domesday; these were water-mills for the grinding of corn. Barley-meal appears to have been the usual food; and among the poor, mixtures of rye, oats, and beans. Wheaten bread was for the well-to-do or for feast-days. One of the first handicrafts must have been that of the forge; iron-smiths and coppersmiths are often named: Domesday notices six forges in the town of Hereford. Glasswork—used for lamps and vessels, as Bede shows, and more rarely for windows—was introduced with the foreign workmen brought in by

Abbot Benedict in the seventh century. The shoemaker describes himself as making shoes and gaiters, bottles and harness, and all manner of leathern articles. Other trades described are the carpenter, baker, cook. The arts of embroidery and weaving seem to have been far advanced, and their products were famous on the Continent. But no doubt many necessities were supplied by home industry, and craftsmen who worked for sale were relatively few. The larger monasteries were great industrial centres; an abbey like St. Edmund's or Glastonbury would have its own smiths, carpenters, millers, masons, its fishers, huntsmen, and tillers. Edgar's law laid down that every priest should learn some handicraft. The state of some of these arts is indicated in the account of such a church as



FORGE (MS. Harl 603).

that which Wilfrid built at Hexham, "of polished stones with many columns and porticoes, with great height and length of walls. It had many windings, both above and below, carried round in spirals; and a stone pavement inside. It was superior to any building this side of the Alps." Or, again, to take the list of Dunstan's accomplishments—he knew masonry, carpentry, and smith's work; could draw, and paint, and design; was a musician and composer, and a maker of musical instruments. There was much wealth stored up in rich hangings, gold and silver vessels, and jewellery. We read of tables and cups, crucifixes, and dishes, all of gold; and Alfred's father took to Rome a crown of pure gold four pounds in weight. The laws to protect property and put down theft and robbery were numerous and savagely severe.

Markets were frequent and productive; *e.g.* that of Taunton was worth £2 10s. a year in fees; Bedford, £7. The great fairs like Winchester, Stourbridge, and Abingdon brought a

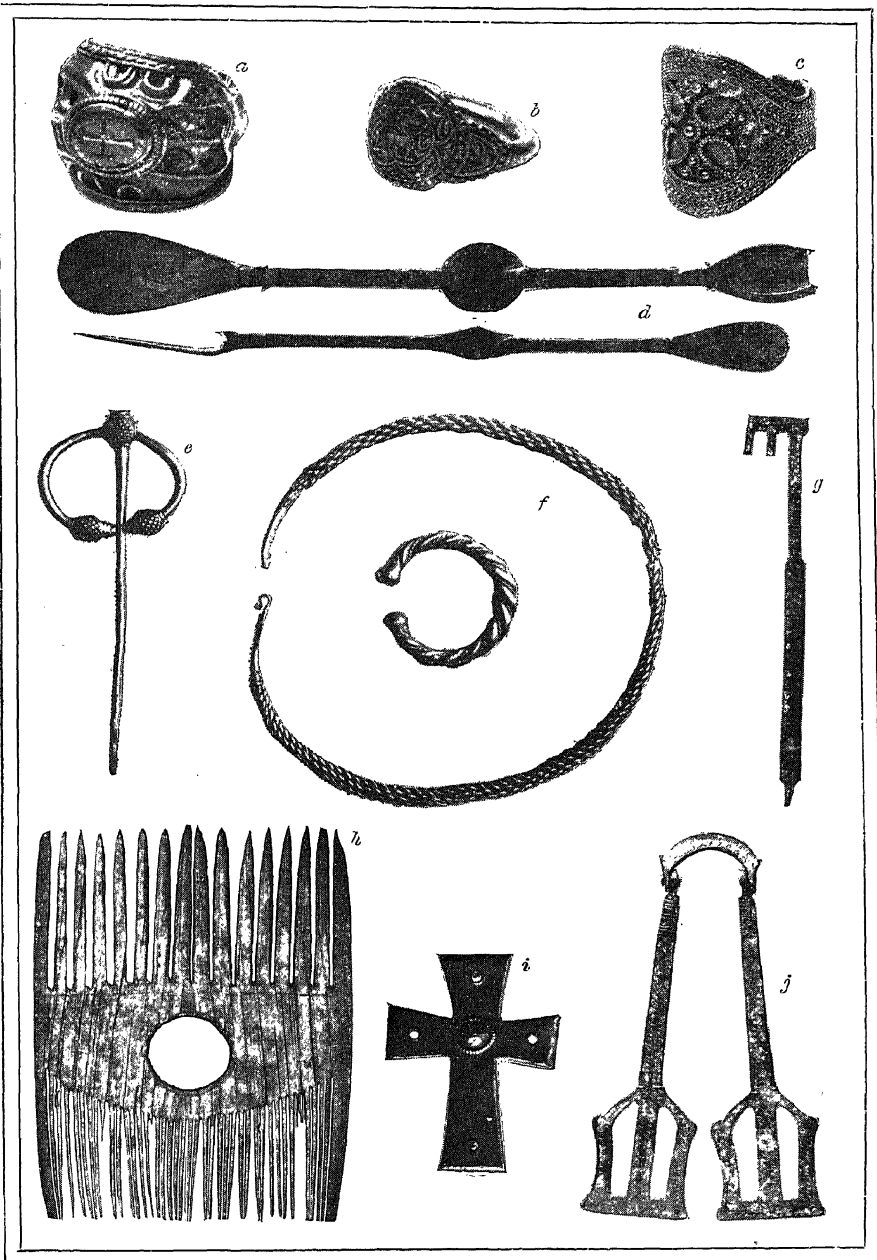
**Markets
and Fairs.**

large concourse from all parts. And yet it is clear that trade had to struggle against manifold and almost overwhelming difficulties. Every road, river, and harbour was hampered with heavy tolls, and seignorial rights of "wreck" and "strand," of "team" and "infangthief."¹ Every transaction "over twenty pence" was to take place in a borough town "before unlying witnesses." All property must have its warrantor ready to identify and trace it. Every town's trade was coming more under the jealous control of an exclusive gild.

Agri-
culture.

The great problem of Old English agricultural history—the origin of the manor—has received conflicting interpretations. I. The so-called "mark-system" (p. 183), if it ever existed at all, never existed in its complete form on English soil. The tribes who followed Hengist and Cerdic still grouped themselves in villages according to ties of kindred; and still kept the pasture ground and the waste land of the village common and undistributed; and still, for the tradition of equality, made each man's share of the arable to consist of many separate and scattered "acres" in each of the open arable fields. The whole cultivation was done in common by a common plough-team of eight or twelve oxen, to which each villager would bring his single ox or yoke of oxen. The arable consisted generally of three fields—one sown with corn, one sown with a spring crop, and one lying fallow for the year. But the English tribes had in several respects passed out of the ruder stage of a "mark" community. Property in land had become individual, and permanent inequality, too, had come in. Above all, from the very earliest days of the new settlers we can discern that tendency to dependence of the weaker landowners upon the greater which was at work to produce what we call feudalism. If we pass at once to the close of the Old English period, as portrayed for us in Domesday Book, what we see there is the almost universal prevalence of the manor, or village community no longer of free allodial landowners, but of dependent holders under a lord. The free "ceorl" of older days has become the "villein" as known to Norman lawyers. II. Thus, some recent writers

[¹ The rights of "wreck" and "strand" explain themselves. "Team" are the descendants of former serfs of the lord, over whom he claimed jurisdiction, as well as over thieves taken in the locality (infangthief).]



OLD ENGLISH ARTICLES OF PERSONAL AND DOMESTIC USE.
(British Museum and Mayer Museum, Liverpool.)

argue that our social history begins with a population not of freemen but of serfs; that in no other way can we account for the uniformity of the services exacted from village communities all over England even before the Norman period. But there is a considerable weight of political and literary evidence on the other side; and the older view, which sees in serfdom a slow and late result of the causes which were for centuries at work to depress the small free landowners, has the results of some recent research in its favour. Among these causes were the insecurity which prevailed through the long period of Danish wars; the constant growth of a thegn class of landholders enriched by royal grants from crown land with the jurisdiction thereon, and the pressure of laws such as that of Athelstan, that every man should have a lord to produce him at the folk-moot when required.

The whole social development of the Old English period seems at first sight meagre and disappointing. In some respects it seems even reactionary, as in the decay of the old freedom into feudal servitude. But that freedom was little better than chaos and anarchy. Six hundred years may be deemed a long period, but it counts as no more than an episode in the age-long making and progress of the English nation. It was none too long to turn war into peace, heathendom into Christianity, and petty jealous tribes into a united people; to draw the outlines of centralised government, and to lay the foundations of a vigorous town-life, and a commerce cramped and timid as yet, but ready in a moment to break into luxuriant growth.

A. H.
MANN.
Old
English
Social
Life:
Elements.

THE basis of Old English social life must be sought in the primitive institutions common to the whole Teutonic race. The state of society described by Tacitus cannot have undergone any great change at the time of the immigration; later developments were due to the circumstances of the Conquest, and the subsequent course of history. The general impression derived from the "Germania" is that of a community of freemen loosely bound together for common enterprises on a large scale, such as warlike expeditions, but otherwise united only by the tie of kindred. The authority of the chief elected in

the central council to administer justice in the several districts and villages¹ was strictly limited by immemorial usage. It is in the inner life of these local communities—of the village, with its joint tillage and separate homesteads, of the larger district, with its hundred assessors who sat with the chief in the local assembly, and its hundred footmen who joined the vanguard of the host—that we must look for the true germs of later social organisation. There was, however, another feature of social life which produced important results, although its exact influence and the manner in which it worked have been very differently estimated. This was the *Comitatus* or body of retainers previously described (p. 198). It is presented to us in “*Beowulf*” (p. 189), and, as that poem was recast under Christian influences, the ideas it expresses must have been familiar and acceptable in English courts a considerable time after the settlement. To their influence must, in some measure, be attributed the constant tendency towards a type of society in which the royal power forms the basis of the whole structure, and every man owes obedience to a superior who, in theory, is his protector as well as his lord. With the growth of social cohesion the romantic element disappears, giving place to a series of more definite relations, which now embraces the lower as well as the upper grades in the community.

But the connection between the different orders is still mainly personal, affording a contrast in this respect to Continental feudalism. In England it was not till after the Norman Conquest that land became the dominant factor in the division of ranks, determining with the utmost precision the place which each man should hold in a nicely graduated social scale. The grants of bookland and *lænland* to *gesiths* and *thegns* were merely incidents in the consolidation of the royal power and the general organisation of the community; they did not imply the growth of a feudal aristocracy. In the absence of any single formative principle the constitution of society remained vague and fluctuating, especially as there were other forces which worked in a totally different direction. The primitive institutions which regulated the life of the freeman retained their vitality, becoming so essential a part of the national existence that they outlived the superimposed feudalism, and formed the

¹ The Latin terms are *princeps*, *concilium*, *pagus*, *vicus*.

foundation of modern English liberty. Ancient folkright was still attested by the suitors in the hundredmoot, and the village was now represented by the four ceorls who, even in Canute's days, accompanied the reeve to the shiremoot from every township. We cannot believe that the freeman ever became a nonentity in the Old English commonwealth—that he ever came to look upon himself as one whose social value was merged in that of the lord to whom he owed suit and service. The family tie remained strong; blood revenge was superseded by compensation to the dead man's kindred; in all offences where the injured person was free, the system of compensation (*bot*) existed side by side with the payment of fines. The fact that he had a price (*wer*), however low, was enough to remind a man that his personality had some meaning for the society to which he belonged. At the same time the numerous guilds tended to promote friendly relations amongst those who occupied the same neighbourhood. They were all social and religious; for the so-called "frith-guilds" seem to have been compulsory associations, responsible in their corporate capacity for the good conduct of each member, and the trade-guilds had not yet come into being. Each guild-brother contributed a fixed amount to the common fund, which was expended partly on their feasts, partly in paying their fines, singing masses for their souls, furnishing the sums due to the Church for burial, assisting a brother in time of need, and other similar purposes. The members were also bound to give their personal aid in avenging an injury done to one of their number, and in carrying out the various special purposes which each guild had in view. Fines for breaches of courtesy are a common feature.

Social and
Moral
Progress.

Before entering more fully into the details of social and domestic life, it will be well to notice some of the more important influences which affected the moral tone of the people, and tended to modify the national character. First in time, as well as importance, was the introduction of Christianity, at the close of the sixth century (p. 224). With Christianity came also the first elements of culture and genuine civilisation. But it must have been long before the teaching of the Gospel effected any vital change in the lives of those who crowded to the riverside to receive baptism at the hands of the strange priests from an unknown land. Religious worship

was a matter of perfunctory routine, the rules of which were laid down by those who understood the rites whereby the gods were appeased. In such matters the masses were willing to follow the guidance of the king, and the wise men from whom he sought counsel. And some of the rulers who accepted the Christian faith certainly had some insight into its



ALDHELM PRESENTING "DE VIRGINITATE" TO THE ABBESS OF BARKING.

(Lambeth Palace Library.)

doctrines, and eagerly seconded the missionaries in their efforts to bring home their meaning to the ruder inhabitants. King Oswald was well-nigh as devout a servant of the Cross as St. Aidan himself. In Northumbria, indeed, there was a genuine outburst of enthusiasm, which spread with the Scottish missionaries into the Midlands, there to meet another current which had its source in Rome. The Abbess Hilda, herself a lady of noble birth, was succeeded at Whitby by Oswy's daughter, Elfleda. Princesses and high-born maidens flocked from East Anglia to monasteries in France. Ethelred and Coenred, of Mercia; Ceolwulf and Edbert, of Northumbria, abandoned their thrones for a cloister. Perhaps the motives of these noble devotees were not always purely religious: the

discipline in the English monasteries was not very strict, and they afforded a peaceful refuge from the strife and confusion of secular life. We may, indeed, suspect that the type of Christianity depicted by Bede exercised a somewhat enervating influence on the national character. The melancholy vein which runs through Old English poetry, deeply moving us still in the pathetic verses of Cynewulf (p. 275), shows that even before the Danish incursions the ancient vigour of the race had greatly declined. This was, however, mainly due to the absence of any strong national life; local administration gave little scope for patriotic energy, the life of the common man was grossly sensual, and the only ideal left open to higher minds was that of personal sanctity. The vigorous policy of the West Saxon kings averted for a time the social and moral collapse which threatened a nation weakened by political discord, and exposed to the uncertain movements of cruel and hostile neighbours. But under the feeble Ethelred the full force of the demoralisation caused by the Danish inroads soon became manifest. It is depicted in truly awful colours in the address of Archbishop Wulfstan. Society, however, cannot have been quite so corrupt as Wulfstan's account would lead us to believe. In a state of chaos such as he describes no order could ever have been restored. As it was, it required centuries of stern discipline under a foreign yoke to show that the core of the national life still remained sound.

**Social
Order**

In our review of the general tenor of social life we saw that there was no sharp distinction between class and class—that development proceeded on uncertain lines, without the aid of any fundamental idea, capable of giving a precise outline to the whole structure. The minute estimation of each man's price (*wergild*) does not imply a permanent division of ranks on any firm principle. From first to last the free population seems to have been roughly divided into two classes, one of which became gradually depressed as the other increased in wealth, power, and influence. The members of the lower class are uniformly termed *ceorls*, whereas the *eorl* gave place to the *gesith* (presumably the ancient comes) and the *gesith* to the *thegn*. The later titles implied a relation between their holder and the king, or some powerful noble, of a more direct character than that which bound the *ceorl* to his sovereign. The

1066]

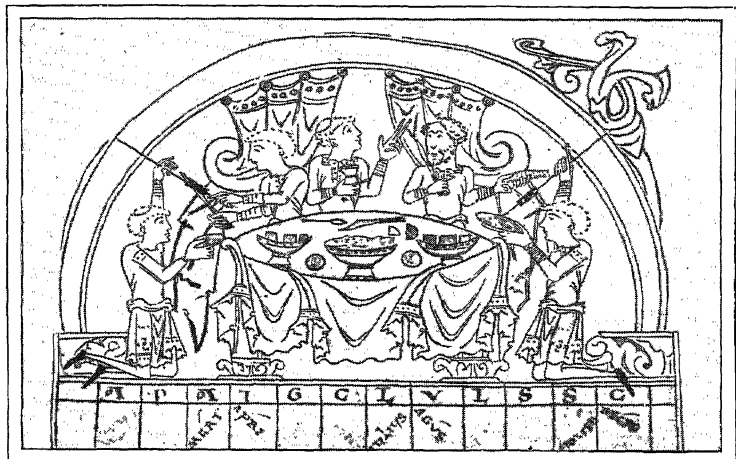
niht, who first appears in the ninth century, was probably a lesser kind of thegn, perhaps a personal follower of some thegn of high dignity, or great territorial eorl. Any man might, by industry or good fortune, rise from one rank to that above it although the representative of the family thus elevated was not known by the new title till the third generation. The laws of Athelstan tell us "that if a ceorl throve, so that he had fully five hides of his own land, church and kitchen, bell-house and burh-gate-seat, and special duty in the king's hall, then was he thenceforth of thegn-right worthy . . . and if a thegn throve so that he became an eorl, then was he thenceforth of eorl-right worthy; and if a merchant throve so that he fared thrice over the wide sea by his own means, then was he thenceforth of thegn-right worthy." Eorl seems at this time to have been a title of office, not of rank; the meaning here probably is that a thegn might become the owner of forty acres of land, and thus be qualified for the position of ealdorman. Affluence was more regarded than noble birth, and excepting in the case of the athelings (*aethelingas*), who belonged to the blood royal, and were alone eligible for the kingship, high descent did not bring with it any valuable privileges. The domain of the gesith or thegn who obtained a grant of bookland, or formed an estate by acquiring the lots of his poorer neighbours, was cultivated partly by free, partly by servile, tenants. A wide gap separated them, for the freeman was under the king's protection, and no injury could be done to his person, whereas the serf was simply his lord's chattel. The domestic servants, male and female, were thralls, and they do not seem to have been well treated, for we read of several servant-girls who were cruelly beaten and placed in iron fetters. There was a special class of slaves¹ who had lost their liberty by breaking the laws, and a father when pressed by poverty was permitted to sell his son into slavery for a period of seven years. On the other hand, the Church used its influence in persuading owners of slaves to manumit them in their wills, and many were bought and then released from charitable motives. The most pleasing feature of Old English life is, perhaps, the dignified position of women, who have ever been held in the highest regard by races of pure

¹ Called *wite theowas*.

Teutonic blood. Bede and the Chronicle tell us of honourable women not a few. Hilda and Ethelfleda are types which would do honour to any age. Among the other privileges enjoyed by Saxon ladies, they could make wills and devise property during their husbands' lifetime. On the other hand, there was as yet none of that romantic sentiment which during the later Middle Ages created an ideal of feminine beauty and virtue. Anglo-Saxon youths did not, like Chaucer's Squire, go forth on chivalrous quests in the hope of winning their ladies' favour. A marriage was a commercial transaction, the future husband promising his father-in-law immediately after the betrothal that he would provide his wife with certain lands, money, and other possessions during his lifetime, and others which she was to retain after his death. These, perhaps, constituted the morning gift (*morgen gifu*), so called because it was handed over on the morning after the wedding. Children during their early years remained under the mother's care, and were brought up in the women's apartments. The only provision made for their education was that furnished by the monasteries, and most of those sent thither were probably destined for a clerical life. Bede, indeed, tells us that Sigebert, king of the East Anglians, on his return from banishment in or about 631, desiring to imitate the good institutions which he had seen in France, established a school in which boys might be instructed in literature, and was assisted therein by Bishop Felix. But as writing seems to have been quite a rare accomplishment amongst kings and nobles in the ninth century we cannot suppose that schools of this class were very widely established.

**Domestic
Life.**

English life has always centred in the home, the *ham* or *tun* of our early forefathers. Dwellings of the better class stood in a court, which was surrounded by an embankment of earth, or, more rarely, by a stone wall crowned by a stockade, and sometimes rendered more secure by a moat on the outside. The MSS. show us a lofty hall with spacious doorway in the centre, and lower rooms built close against it on either side. The whole structure was, probably, in most cases wooden, although in illuminations the lower part of the walls is often constructed of stone. The description of Hrothgar's hall in "Beowulf" applies, with a few changes in detail, to those in



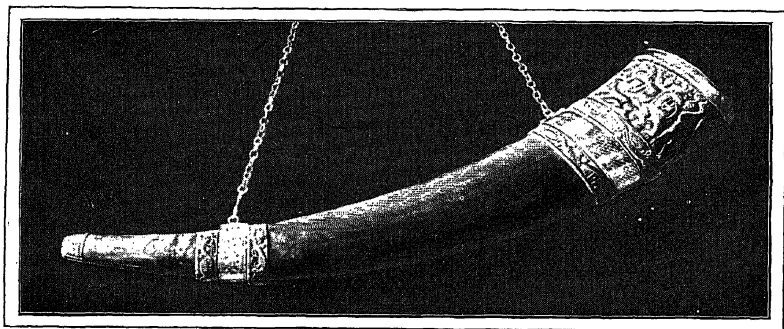
DINNER PARTY AT A ROUND TABLE (MS. Tib. C. vi.).

Old English mansions of a much later period. Along the side walls were ranged the cushioned benches at which the warriors sat during the carousal. The practice of converting these benches into couches at night-time may have been continued in those cases where the lord's retainers still formed part of



DINNER PARTY AT A LONG TABLE (MS. Claud. B. v.).

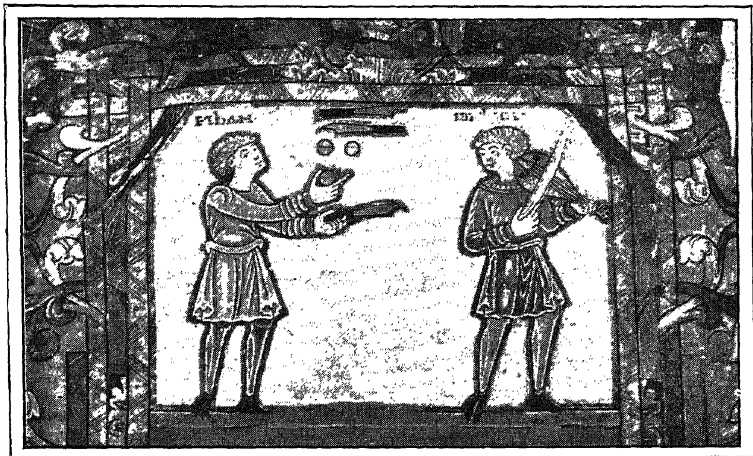
his household. The lord and lady and a few honoured guests occupied the "high seat," which, we may suppose, was placed on a raised platform at the upper end of the chamber. On the walls hung coloured curtains, adorned with the embroidered work for which English matrons were famous. They were also provided with pegs, on which the inmates and guests suspended their arms and armour. The fire in the middle of the hall furnished both warmth and light, and candles may have been used here as well as in the bower. Instead of the long, square-edged tables placed in front of the benches, the MSS. sometimes show us circular tables, round each of which is seated a mixed company of men and women. They consisted of plain boards, which were removed from their tressels when the ladies retired to the bower, and the hall was cleared for the drinking-bout, which



DRINKING HORN OF ULPHUS.

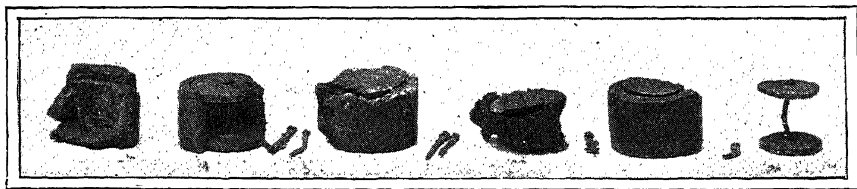
(York Minster.)

occupied the remainder of the day. The board is often covered with a tablecloth, on which the round, flat cakes which formed the Old English loaves, dishes containing fish and meat, drinking vessels of various shapes and sizes, and a scanty supply of spoons and razor-like knives, are spread in somewhat promiscuous fashion. Dinner took place either at mid-day or at three o'clock, and we read also of a morning meal and occasionally of a supper. The feast was enlivened with the songs of gleemen, wandering minstrels who played on the harp, the fiddle, and the pipe, dancing, leaping, and throwing themselves into strange antics, or exhibiting the feats of the bears and other



GLEEMAN AND FIDDLER (MS. Tib. C. vi.).

animals which they led about with them in their rounds. Sometimes the harp was handed round the table, each of the party contributing in turn to the general mirth. Tales of personal prowess, jests, and amusing stories helped to fill up the time, and dice-playing was a constant resource, for the Old English shared to the full in the ancient Teutonic love of gambling. The sport called *taefel* (from the Latin *tabulæ*) is thought to have been a kind of backgammon, or it may have corresponded to primitive forms of draughts and chess which we know existed in Iceland.¹ The bower (*bur*)—an apartment on the ground



DRAUGHTSMEN FOUND IN A BARROW AT TAPLOW, BUCKS.

(British Museum.)

floor (for upper storeys were rare), probably entered usually from the court—was used mainly by the women and children. It was a sleeping as well as a dwelling room, but the beds

¹ The Icelandic names are "töfl" and "hnefatafl."



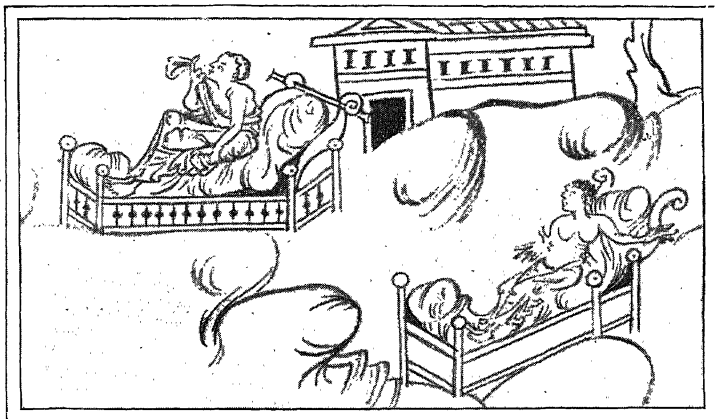
ON THE JUDGMENT SEAT (MS. Tib. C. vi.).

were sometimes formed in recesses in the wall, and hidden from view by a curtain in front. They were furnished with pillow, bolster, coverlets, and sheets, which seem to have been wrapped round the naked body. There was usually a round table in the bower, also a footstool carved with the heads of animals; but chairs in the strict sense were not common. A large house would, of course, contain several such chambers, and in addition to this there were the store-rooms, cellars, and other offices. The rest of the enclosure was mainly occupied by farm buildings. The appreciation of the beauty of flowers shown in Old English poetry has tempted some antiquaries to think that the court included a pleasure-garden, but of this there is no direct proof.

On the other hand, the great variety of herbs used for medicinal purposes can hardly be explained unless we suppose that the herb-garden was a common appendage of houses.

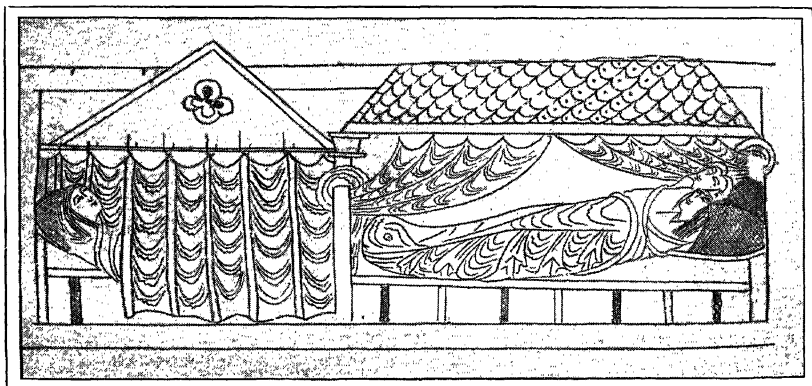
Dress.

The civil costume, which bears a striking resemblance to that of the ancient Romans, continued to be very simple down to the eleventh century, when it became fashionable to imitate the more courtly Normans. Linen was the usual material, but woollen apparel was also common. The men's undergarment was a close-fitting tunic reaching to the knees, sometimes ornamented at the edge with a border of plain circles or squares, or a simple pattern of flowers. Over the tunic was worn a short cloak, fastened with a brooch either at the right shoulder or in the middle of the breast. The long mantle, which hung in ample folds over the left shoulder or arm, betokened the age or dignity of the wearer. Tight breeches occasionally



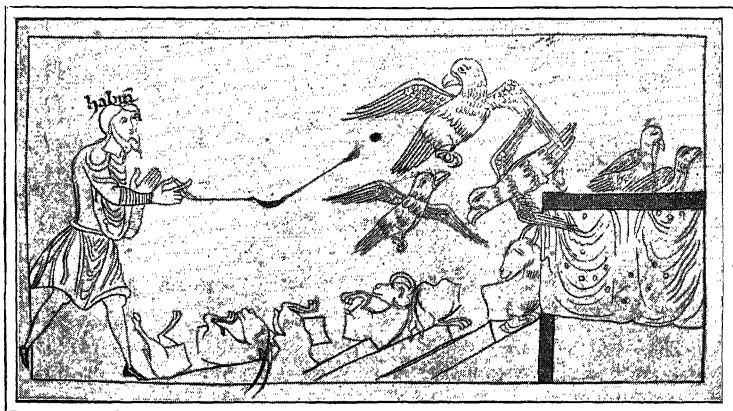
BEDS (MS. Harl. 603).

covered the leg to the middle of the calf. Bandages were wound round the leg above the long leather stockings, either encircling it in successive folds or passing diagonally one above the other in the fashion afterwards called "cross-gartering." Long, black, pointed shoes, and hats usually of the Phrygian shape, completed the male attire. Women of all ranks wore a long gown, and above it a tunic with wide hanging sleeves, which sometimes reached only to the elbow or midway between the elbow and the wrist. Over this was a mantle, encircling the upper part of the body and falling nearly to the



BEDS WITH CURTAINS (MS. Claud. B. iv.).

ground behind. The most characteristic part of the female costume was the hood which surrounded the head, and in front sometimes reached as low as the knees. The hair was usually worn in short curls, contrasting with that of the men, which was parted in the middle and gathered in long locks behind the ears. Although their taste in dress was so simple,



SLINGING (MS. Claud. B. iv.).

the Old English were extremely fond of personal ornaments formed of gold, silver, and precious stones. Richly ornamented brooches have been found in great quantities in the Kentish and other barrows which date from the Pagan period, and both sexes were wont to adorn their persons with a profusion of rings, bracelets, and other jewels (pp. 190, 303).

Amuse-
ments.

The Old English were keen lovers of the chase, and hawking was also a favourite pastime. Practice with the bow and arrow and the sling afforded amusement to the young, besides training them in warlike pursuits. Boys were also encouraged to run, leap, wrestle, and join in other exercises requiring agility and strength. Pope Gregory, in one of his letters to Augustine, tells him that the people "may build themselves huts of the boughs of trees about the churches which have been turned to that use from temples on the day of the dedication or the festival of the holy martyrs, and celebrate the solemnity with religious feasting." In these primitive festivals Strutt discovered the origin of the Village Wake. The "religious feasting" gave

place to coarse merriment, and a canon of Edgar enjoins those who resort to wakes to "pray devoutly and not betake themselves to drunkenness and debauchery." Old English life involved a good deal of travelling even in the earlier period, for the king was constantly moving from one royal manor to another to see that his peace was properly kept, and we know from Bede how zealous the bishops were in visiting all parts of their dioceses. Those who attended the folkmoot, too, must sometimes have come from a considerable distance. The Roman roads were doubtless kept up to some extent, and the repair of bridges was one of the three services imposed on all occupiers of land. A journey in one of the clumsy waggons depicted in MSS. cannot, however, have been a very pleasant experience. Inns must have been common, for the maintenance of a house of call available for the king's servants and messengers was frequently associated with the tenure of *loenland*. It has been suggested that the name *Coldharbour*—a common designation of Roman sites—originated in the conversion of ruined fortresses and villas into rude shelters for travellers.

THE ninth century saw Gaul attacked by the Northmen. One series of invasions affected the lands round the Elbe, the Scheldt, and the Rhine; a second the districts round the Loire and the Garonne; while a third resulted in settlements near the Seine, the Somme, and the Oise. So dangerous had the incursions up the Seine become that in 861 Charles the Bold made Paris and the surrounding district into a "march" against the Northmen and placed it in the hands of Robert the Strong. In 876 Rollo—then a celebrated Viking, and son of Rögnwald-Jarl of Mori, in Norway—sailed up the Seine and devastated the surrounding country. In 888 he failed to take Paris, and in 912 Charles the Simple made with him the treaty of Clair-sur-Epte. Rollo accepted Christianity, married the daughter of the French king, and obtained the overlordship of Brittany and the land from the Epte to the sea. Normandy was thus occupied by the Northmen, and Rollo settled at Rouen. To France the treaty of Clair-sur-Epte was advantageous, and Charles the Simple was loyally supported during the rest of his reign by Rollo and his successor, William Longsword. The latter

**A. HAS-
SALL.**
The
Normans
in Nor-
mandy.

**Rollo's
Settle-
ment.**

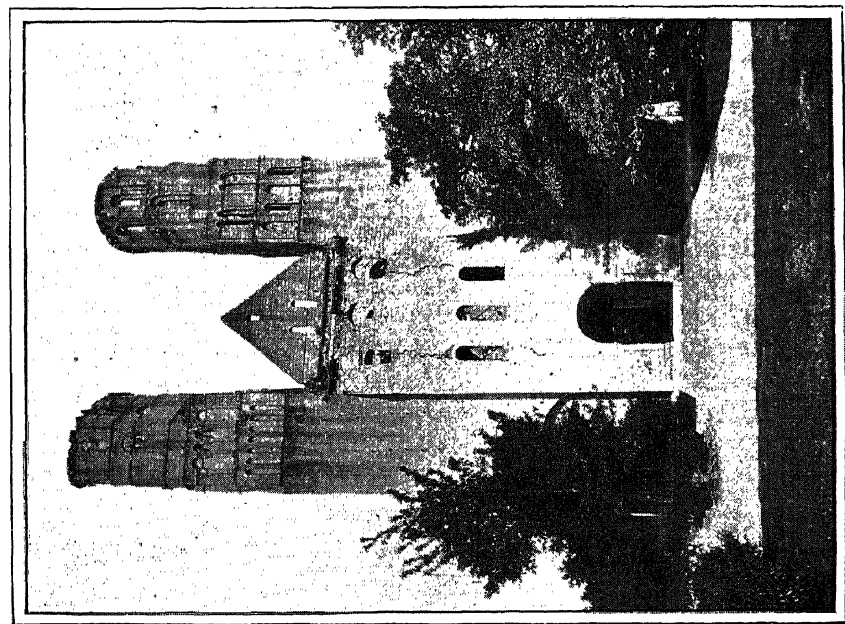
strengthened the position of his house by conquering the Channel Islands and by securing a formal acknowledgment of the claims of the Norman dukes over Brittany. According to Palgrave, William was an absolute ruler, acting without the advice of any of the baronage: "His was the law, his was the State, his was the Church." "He spake the law, he gave the law, he made the law, he executed the law."

During his lifetime the process of amalgamation and assimilation with the Franks, begun under Rollo, went on apace. The language and manners of Frenchmen were assumed, intermarriages between the two races became of frequent occurrence, a close connection with the Church was established, a formidable rebellion was put down, and by the time of his death, in 942, William had not only made a great step towards the adoption of French institutions, but had extended the geographical limits of his duchy. Roman civilisation had triumphed, and William Longsword must be reckoned among Christian and French princes. Henceforward Europe had to deal with a race which was characterised by a highly strung activity and a keen political instinct. They added force to any system with which they became identified. They threw themselves into every important European movement.

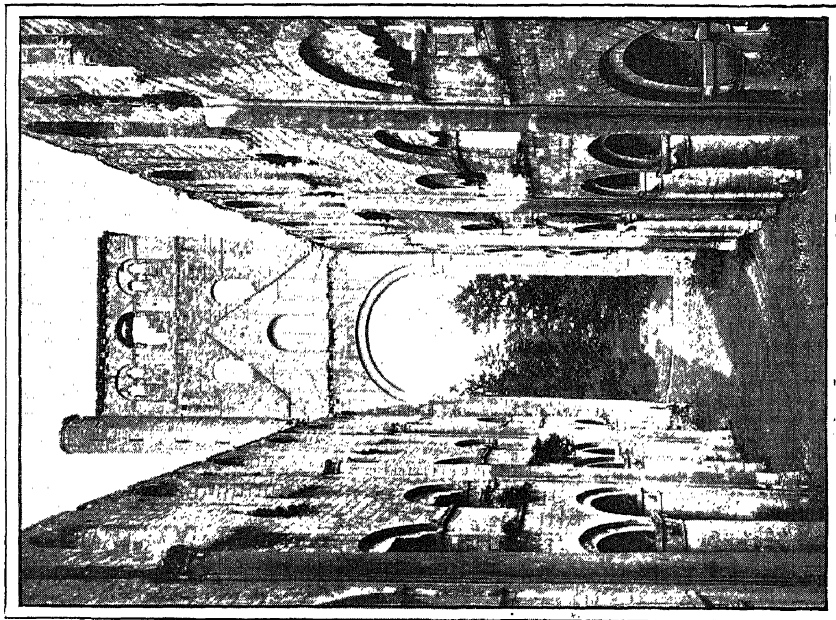
Triumph
of French
Influence.

In 946 Richard the Fearless, the son of William Longsword, commended himself to Hugh the Great, Count of Paris. The commendation was an important event in the history of Normandy as well as in that of France. It was now definitely decided that the Normans were to be Frenchmen, not Scandinavians, and that Romance or Gallic influences were to be supreme in Normandy. Before many years had passed France was to become itself the starting-place of a fresh series of incursions led by men of Scandinavian descent, who, known as Normans, had adopted the French customs and the French language.

The vassalage of the Duke of Normandy to the Duke of Paris brought with it a close alliance between Richard and Hugh, and when Paris became the chief opponent of Laon, and King Louis made a close league with Otto of Germany, it was the Normans who consistently opposed the Karolings, and, eventually, in 987, aided Hugh to acquire the French throne. In 996 Richard the Fearless died—the last of the Danish, the first of the French Norman dukes, the second founder of the



JUMIÈGES ABBEY—FACADE.



JUMIÈGES ABBEY—INTERIOR.
Photo: Lévy et ses Fils, Paris.

Norman dukedom. He had taken a very prominent part in the Capetian revolution, while within his own duchy he had seen the beginning of a revolution which though gradual was none the less thorough.

The triumph of the Romance influences in Normandy was clearly seen during the reign of Richard II., or Richard the Good, between the years 996 and 1026. The Norman nobility began to arise, and while the duke was recognised as a French prince, his court was modelled in French fashion, with its seneschal, its cupbearer, and other great officers. The feudalising process rapidly advanced and acquired definite shape, and the Norman nobility, whose lineage can for the most part be traced to the period, was formed of those houses who were connected by legitimate or illegitimate relationship with the reigning house. At the same time the middle classes, taking readily to trade, secured a firm position in the land. Close relations were established with the Flemings, annual fairs were held, and Falaise was already celebrated for its woollen manufactures and tanneries. Richard the Fearless had, moreover, issued the first coinage of the Norman mint, and had restored many monasteries, including Fécamp, which had suffered during the rebellious times which preceded his reign.

Richard
the Good

All these tendencies were encouraged and developed by Richard the Good. He had been brought up a Frenchman; he had fully imbibed the feudal and aristocratic sentiments then in vogue at the French court. He refused to give the offices of his household to any but "gentlemen," and by granting lands taken from his ducal domain to the numerous illegitimate children of his father he increased the number of noble families who were closely connected to the ducal house by affinity, and consequently the number of petty lords. The number of landlords grew, the rise of baronial castles went on apace, and one immediate result of this increase in the number of noble families was to bring them into close relations with the peasantry.

The
Peasants'
Griev-
ances.

The grants of vast tracts of land simultaneously with the introduction of French feudalism resulted in social changes which practically amounted to a revolution. A new relationship had sprung up between the lord and the cultivator of the soil; and the landlords, anxious to secure profits from the peasants, vigorously enforced their fines and rights, their claims

to services, and their tolls. As this system became legalised, Norman oppression grew and was supported by the processes of the law. The population of cultivators had no peace.

In Normandy the peasants were formed mainly from the old Romance population, Romanised Celts, "Frank in law and



COINS OF RICHARD THE FEARLESS.

custom," who by this time had acquired small plots of land, for which they were expected to pay service to their superior lords. The growth of aristocratic privilege, the advance in the theory



COINS OF VARIOUS NORMAN DUKES.

of lordship, and the multiplication of landlords was peculiarly obnoxious to these natives of the land, who had ideas of local self-government, retained probably from Roman times, and who preserved a distinct remembrance of the freedom enjoyed under the Frank Empire. At this crisis in their history the peasants began to gather together and discuss their grievances. Each district elected two representatives to attend a general assembly, and, in the words of the author of the *Roman de Rou*, "they made a commune." The same writer thus sums up their complaints:—

"The nobles do us nought but ill, and we gain no profit from our labours. Our days are spent in toil and fatigue, our beasts are seized for dues and services, our goods wasted by continued suits. We have no safety against our lords, and no oath is binding on them. Why should we not shake off all the evil? Are we not men as they? Dare we to do and dare; a good heart is all we want. Let us then unite, and if they should make war upon us, have we not thirty or forty hardy peasants ready to fight with club and flail to each knight's? Let us learn to resist, and we shall be free to cut our own firewood, to fish and hunt, to do our will in river, field, and wood."

**Their
Revolt
and its
Repression.**

The movement was thus no mere savage rebellion against order, but was apparently conducted by men who had some political insight. The peasants, however, were quickly overthrown by the feudal nobility. Before they had completed their preparations Richard put down the rebellion with merciless severity, and inflicted terrible punishment on the peasantry as a warning against the recurrence of such movements. Though no more peasant revolts take place, villeinage became lighter in Normandy than elsewhere, and personal servitude did not exist.

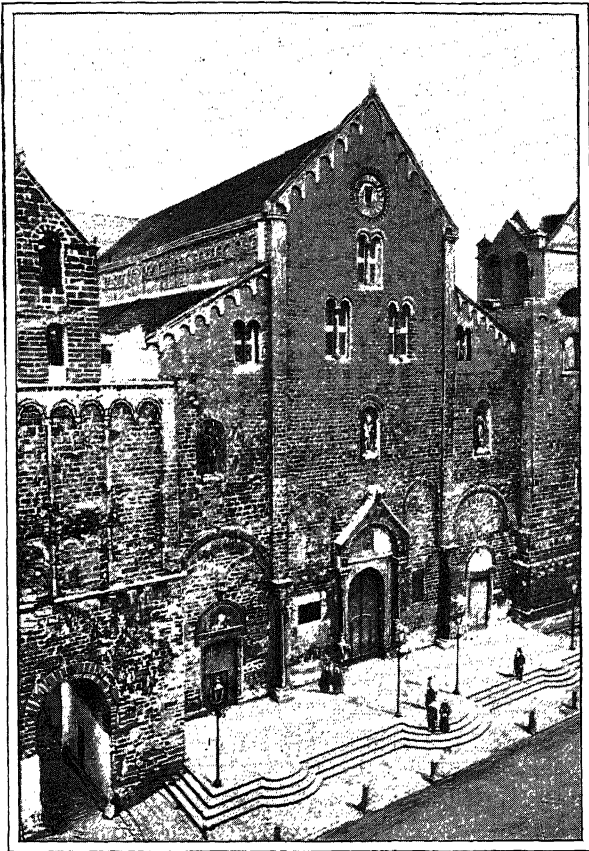
Freed from all danger of internal risings, Richard the Good was enabled to establish, on a firm basis, his position as Norman duke, while among the nobles the old love of adventure revived. Closely allied with the French king, and thoroughly French in ideas and interests, Richard aided King Robert in his wars against the Duke of Burgundy (1003-15) and against Eudes of Blois. Later he made alliances with Eudes himself, and with Brittany, Burgundy, Flanders, and England. Ethelred II., it is true, embarked in a short war with Normandy, but in 1002 he married Emma, sister of Richard, and with this marriage the connection between England and Normandy definitely began. These alliances clearly attest the real importance of the Normans abroad, while the renewal of Norman adventure brought the fame of the duchy into the farthest limits of Europe.

The growth of the number of noble houses, together with the rapidly increasing population and the consolidation of Normandy, led many men to seek out new principalities for themselves. Normandy was too small for their energies, and their position being established in France, the old desire for distant conquests was aroused. Ralf de Toesny warred against the Moors in Spain, though his efforts to found a kingdom for himself had no

1066]

permanent results. In Italy, however, the efforts of the Normans were more important. In 1029 they formed a settlement in Aversa, in 1038 they aided the Greeks to regain Sicily, and between 1040 and 1043, having quarrelled with their new allies,

The
Normans
in Spain,
Italy, and
Sicily.



CHURCH OF S. NICOLA, BARI, APULIA.

they conquered Apulia for themselves and organised an aristocratic republic under William of Hauteville. In 1049 they defeated a league, which included the Emperors of the East and West and the Pope, at Civitella and took Leo IX. prisoner. Henceforward they held Apulia as a fief of the Holy See, and secured a recognised position in Italy. To Robert Guiscard,

one of the sons of Tancred of Hauteville, was in great measure due the success and greatness of the Normans in Southern Europe. But while the Normans were winning a principality in the South, William, Duke of Normandy, was making ready to add England to his possessions.

Richard II., who died in 1026, was succeeded by his son Richard III., who only lived till 1028, and was followed, as duke, by his brother, Robert the Magnificent. Chiefly illustrious as being the father of William the Conqueror, Robert crushed several revolts at home, reduced Brittany to submission, and restored Baldwin of Flanders to his dominions and Henry, King of France, to his throne, from which he had been driven by Fulk of Anjou and Eudes II. of Blois. In return for his services Robert obtained from the King of France the overlordship of the Vexin, a piece of land lying between France and Normandy. With England his relations varied. He married Estrith, sister of Canute, but supported the cause of the Ethelings, and at one time attempted an invasion of England. Thus Robert not only secured his position at home, but from his reign the Norman dukes began to exercise a considerable influence on the affairs of Europe.

William
the Con-
queror.
His Wars:

In 1035 William, son of Robert and Harlotta, or Herleva, the daughter of the tanner of Falaise, succeeded to the dukedom. His history previous to the battle of Hastings falls into three divisions:—(1) 1035–47, (2) 1047–58, and (3) 1058–66, each division ending with a battle—Val-ès-dunes, Varaville, and Hastings.

(1)
1035–1047.

His accession was followed by disorder. The Norman nobles, indignant at the humble lineage of their young duke—then only seven years old—and permeated with ideas of feudal independence, built castles, acted as independent princes, and defied all authority. After the space of twelve years, William, who hitherto had been harassed by a series of isolated rebellions, found himself confronted by an organised opposition headed by Guy of Burgundy, who claimed the dukedom. It was, in fact, a return to the ancient rivalry between the West and the East, between Teutonic and Romance Normandy, no less than an attempt on the part of the nobles to achieve independence. In his extremity, William appealed to the French king, and Henry for the last time supported the Norman duke. At Val-ès-dunes

1066]

the rebellion was crushed, and William re-established his authority over the whole of Normandy.

In 1053 William married Matilda of Flanders, and secured the alliance of Count Baldwin. Such an alliance was peculiarly

(2)
1057-1058.

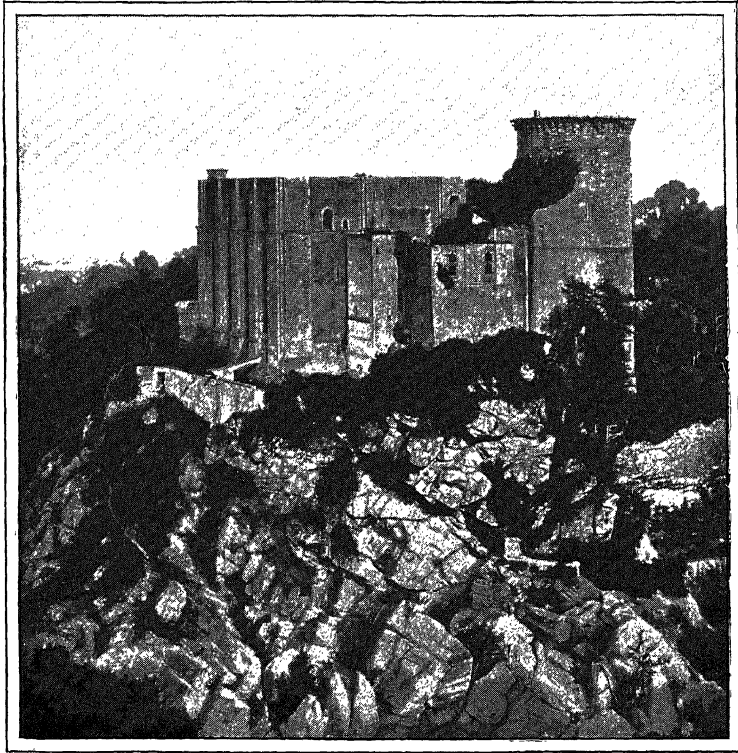


Photo : Neurdein, Paris.

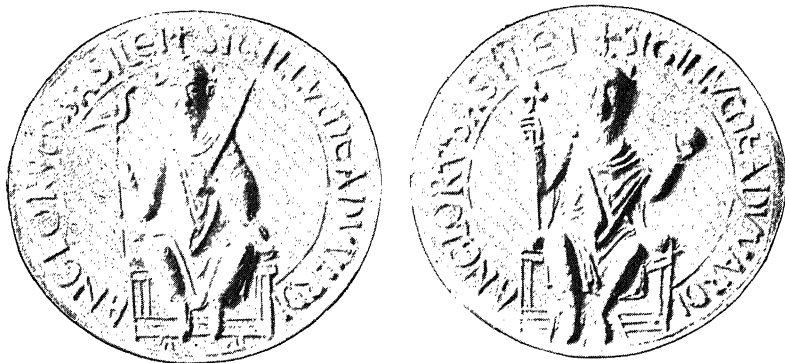
FALAISE CASTLE.

important at that epoch in the history of Normandy, for a serious change was coming over the relations of William with the King of France. The Capetian monarchs were no longer dependent on Norman support, and as the French monarchy developed and became strong and consolidated, a powerful province like Normandy was a hindrance to the advance of the larger kingdom. Normandy shut France from the sea, and if the royal power was to increase the Duke of Normandy must be

humbled. From this time, therefore, Henry and the Count of Anjou supported rebellions against William. In 1054 a coalition, headed by the king himself, invaded Normandy and was overthrown at the battle of Mortemer, and in 1058, at the battle of Varaville, Geoffrey of Anjou and Henry were decisively beaten.

(3)
1058-1066.

After Varaville William enjoyed a respite of three years from war, during which period he restored order in Normandy. In 1063 he conquered Maine, and in 1064 he defeated Conan, the Count of Brittany. Owing to these successes he was enabled a few years later to collect without difficulty an enormous army for the invasion of England. His own duchy was reduced to

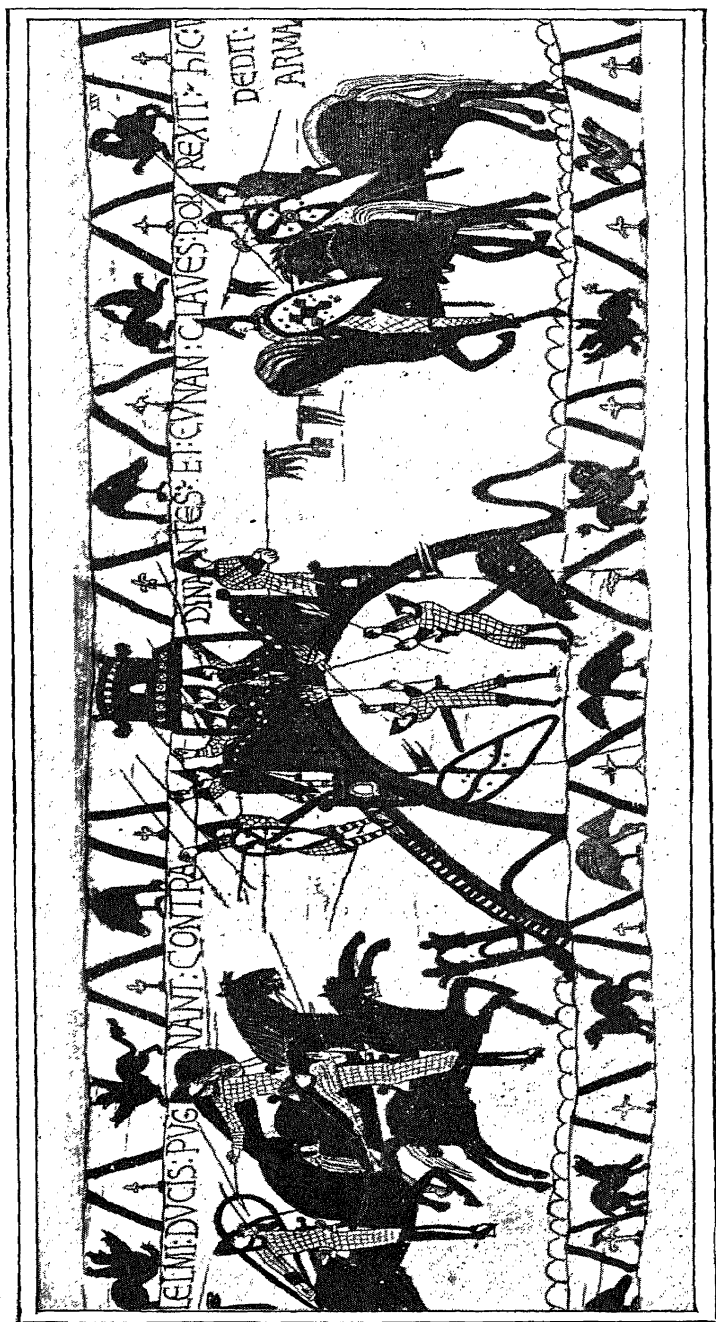


SEAL OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR.

obedience, he had developed military talents of a high order—he was, in a word, the mightiest prince in France. Moreover, Henry of France and Geoffrey of Anjou were dead (1060); Normandy was practically independent of Paris, and its government was well organised. William thus became supreme in the North-West, and was more powerful than the King of France.

The Pre-
parations
for the
Conquest.

The events of the reign of Edward the Confessor (p. 217) had opened the way for William's expedition of 1066. The foreign-reared English king had filled the highest posts in the Church with Normans or Flemings: the administration passed mainly into the hands of Earl Godwine, who became his father-in-law, and (after 1045) of Godwine's sons, together the embodiment of English ideas. The conflict of foreign and English forces reached its climax in 1051, when the men of Dover resisted the insolences of Eustace of Boulogne and his followers,



DUKE WILLIAM'S EXPEDITION AGAINST CONAN OF BRITTANY.

(*Bayeux Tapestry.*)

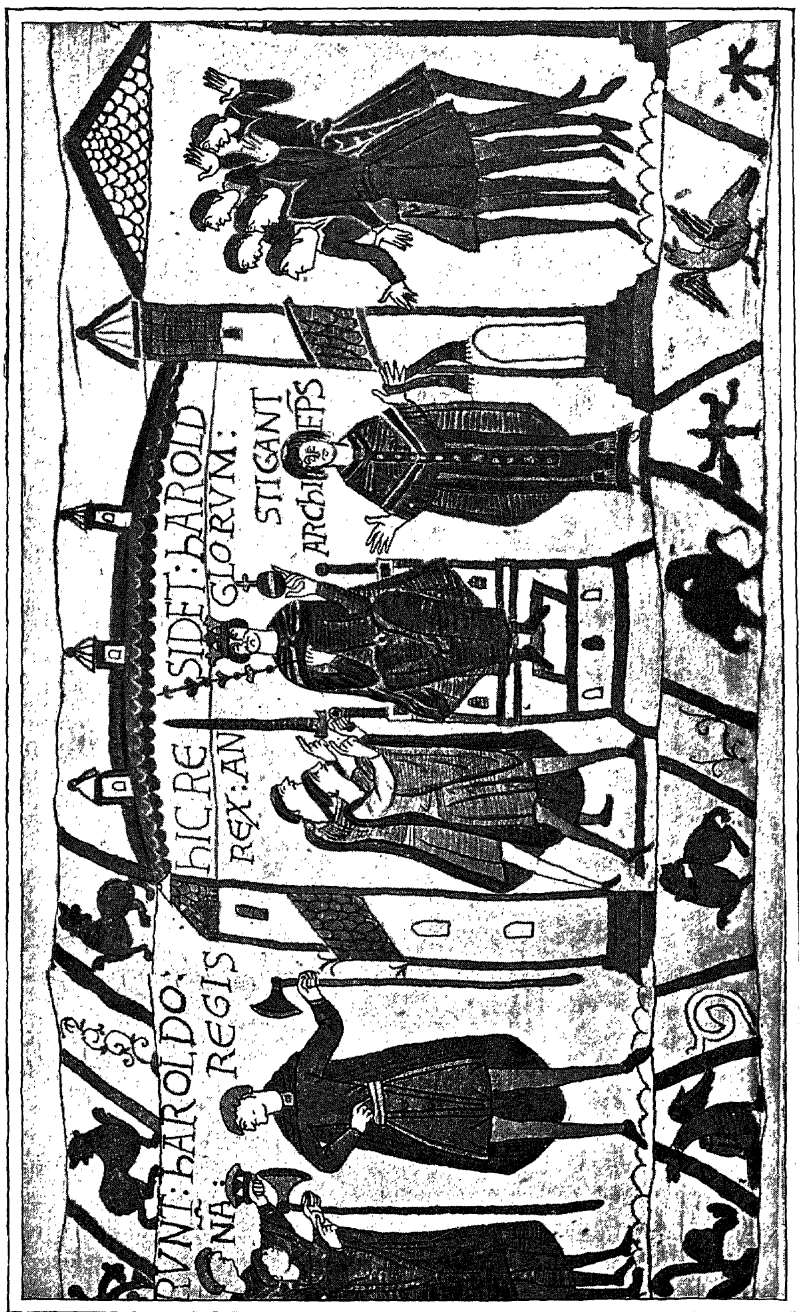
and Earl Godwine refused to meet the wishes of the king and punish the townsmen without trial. The outlawry of Godwine and his sons was reversed by a reaction of popular feeling, and was followed by their return unopposed from their exile. But meanwhile William of Normandy had taken the opportunity of visiting England and obtaining from Edward some kind of promise to support his claim to acceptance as his successor.

On the death of the great Earl, in 1053, his son Harold succeeded him in his Earldom of Wessex. After the bestowal of the Earldom of Northumbria on Harold's brother Tostig, and of the eastern and southern earldoms on other brothers, the influence of the house of Godwine reached its highest point. By his headship of that house, and by his victories over Gruffydd (Griffith) of Wales, Harold was naturally marked out as Edward's successor in the kingdom. But at some time during the later years of the reign, having probably been driven by stress of weather, when voyaging in the Channel, to land near the mouth of the river Somme, he was captured by Guy of Ponthieu and held to ransom. William procured his release, and took him on an expedition against Conan of Brittany, having first extorted from him, according to the Norman account, an oath to act as his viceroy in England when the throne should become vacant, and to promote by every means his election as Edward's successor.

Accession
of Harold.

On the death of Edward, Harold succeeded him in virtue of bequest and popular election. But the misgovernment of Tostig in Northumbria had led Harold to obtain the king's consent to his deprivation of his earldom (1065). His attempts to win his way back, with aid from Scotland and by the help of Harold Haarfagr of Norway, were finally checked by Harold at Stamford Bridge three weeks before he fell at Senlac. But they had served to weaken and divide the English forces, and had gravely injured the national power to resist the invader.

Various circumstances had thus contributed to encourage William to prepare his expedition against England in 1066. Normandy had been reduced to obedience, and order had, under the strong rule of its duke, taken the place of anarchy. The nobles, unable to carry out their centrifugal policy in Normandy, were fit instruments to take part in fresh conquests. Fostered by feudalism, the love of excitement and adventure was as ever



HAROLD CROWNED KING.

(Bayeux Tapestry.)

a predominant factor among the Normans. Side by side with this love of plunder and conquest was a strong religious enthusiasm, which showed itself in the renewed activity of the Church in France.

**The
Religious
Revival.**

The monastic spirit had lately, under the German popes, experienced a remarkable revival. The Benedictine rule had entered upon a new lease of life, pilgrimages to the Holy Land had become frequent. In Normandy the religious enthusiasm had already found full expression. "The Truce of God," as published there, had limited private war to half the week, monasteries had increased in number, church architecture had received a powerful impetus. "It seemed as if the world were awakening, and, casting off its ancient rags, were clothing itself anew in a white robe of churches." William Longsword had restored the house of Jumièges, Richard the Fearless had built Fécamp and Mont St. Michel. During the reign of Richard the Good the nobles had thrown themselves into the work with characteristic energy. Every great lord built a monastery on his domain, or became a patron of some ecclesiastical foundation. In 1034 Herluin, a simple knight, had founded Bec, which, under Lanfranc's rule, became the foremost of Norman monasteries.

William the Conqueror himself approved of and supported this religious movement. A munificent patron of monastic foundations, he built two abbeys at Caen (p. 357), and did all in his power to select fit men for bishoprics, thus checking that tendency visible earlier in the century to regard bishoprics as a provision for the younger branches of the ducal family, and as a species of property to which only Normans had a claim. The influence of the Hildebrandine ideas resulted in the introduction into Normandy of monks of every nation. As in warfare, so in Church discipline and in culture, Southern influences became supreme. The Normans had already assimilated the language, the law, and the religion of the people whom they had conquered; under William the Conqueror they readily absorbed the military and ecclesiastical ideas which, originating in Southern Europe, were spreading northwards. Normandy was thus, in 1066, ready for fresh conquests and new developments. The two conflicting principles—the love of adventure often degenerating into the support of anarchy and violence, and the strong religious enthusiasm—

were gradually harmonising under the rule of William the Conqueror.

The nobles had indeed, as has been pointed out, made several attempts to secure a feudal independence which was synonymous with anarchy, and the history of Normandy had consequently been to some extent a history of chronic warfare. Nothing but the personal character of the successive dukes had saved Normandy from dismemberment. Though the feudal tenure of land, according to which the king was the original lord, was recognised, William, by his strong hand, had prevented the introduction of feudalism into the system of government. By the year 1066 the nobles had found that their interest lay in submitting to the rule of their duke, who claimed the right to enforce his own peace and to garrison the castles of all the great Norman feudatories. At the time of the Conquest the Norman counts were, for the most part, connected with the ducal houses. Count Odo of Aunâle was the brother-in-law of the Emperor, Count Robert of Mortain was his half-brother, the Counts of Evreux, Brienne, and Eu were descendants of the sons of Richard I.; the Beaumonts were descended from the wife of Richard I.; while her sisters were the ancestresses of the houses of Montgomery, Giffard, and Warenne, and her brother the ancestor of the house of Breteuil.

**Feudalism
in Nor-
mandy.**

In the relations between the duke himself and the King of France we find the feudal idea, but the dependence of Normandy on Paris was very slight. William commanded the mouth of the Seine; he was overlord of Brittany; he was closely connected with Flanders and Ponthieu. Over his own people he ruled as a personal sovereign. Though he professed to act with the advice of a council of great men, the "*Curia Ducis*," he seems to have been practically absolute. In wealth and importance Normandy was foremost of all the French provinces.

At the time of the invasion of England it required no little statesmanship on the part of William to avert an alliance between the French king and Harold and to prevent an attack on Normandy. As it was, William secured not only the support of the Pope, Alexander II., but the alliance or neutrality of most of the Powers of Northern Europe. He appealed to the religious feelings of the day against the perjured Harold; he roused the indignation of the Normans by

reminding them of the insults they had to avenge by an invasion of England. The citizens of Dover had attacked Eustace of Boulogne; Robert of Jumièges had been deposed from his archbishopric; the House of Godwine had systematically opposed the Normans. His appeals to Christendom and Normandy were successful. Reinforced by men from Brittany, Burgundy, and Flanders the Normans overthrew Harold at Senlac in 1066, and introduced into England order, unity, and organisation.

Normans
and
English.

Though the invigorating effects of the Norman Conquest on England are obvious, the Normans had by no means conquered

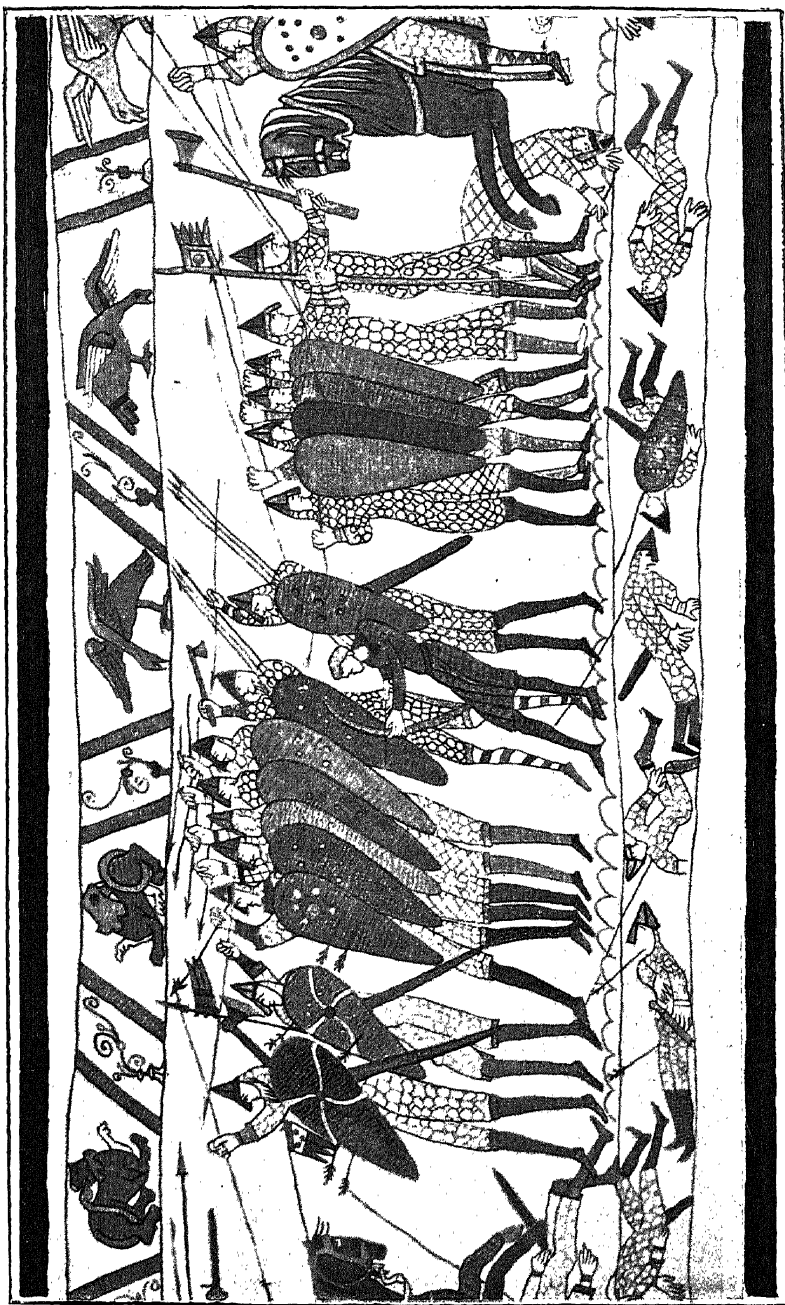


A CRISIS IN THE BATTLE OF SENLAC.

(Bayeux Tapestry.)

a barbarous country. If the Englishman was behind in political development, he had a national literature of his own, and he had evolved a domestic civilisation remarkable in many ways. Medicine, natural science, embroidery, illumination of manuscripts, with other kindred arts, all flourished in England during the later Anglo-Saxon period. The Norman, says Bishop Stubbs,¹ brought little in comparison with what he destroyed, and little that he brought was his own. But the Anglo-Saxons needed discipline, and it was necessary that England should be thrown into "the general network of the spiritual and temporal politics of the world." For these tasks the Norman was

¹ "Constitutional History of England," i., p. 216.



THE BEGINNING OF THE BATTLE OF SENLAC (BAYEUX TAPESTRY).

[70 faces p. 352.

admirably qualified, and before many years were over the invigorating and formative effects of the conquest of England were clearly seen in the growth of freedom and the sense of unity, and in the vigour and vitality imparted to every branch of the administration.

AUTHORITIES.

(a) GENERAL HISTORY.

Ammianus Marcellinus, a Greek soldier in the Roman forces, writing in the fourth century, continued the histories of Tacitus from Nerva to Valens. Ausonius and Claudian, Latin poets, also of the fourth century, allude to Britain. Prosper of Aquitaine in the fifth century continued the *Annals of St. Jerome* to A.D. 445; Sidonius Apollinaris, Bishop of Clermont, describes the Saxon pirates; Zosimos, the historian, notices the events of his time in Britain. Merobaudes, a Frank, wrote a poem on Aëtius's third consulship. In the sixth century the princely Saint Gildas wrote his *Epistle to the Kings and Priests of Britain*. In the eighth century Nennius wrote a history of the Britons from tradition, to which Marcus added in the ninth, and Bede, a priest of Jarrow, wrote a history of the Christian Church in England. This was put into English by the order of King Alfred, who also probably had the Anglo-Saxon or Old English Chronicle compiled and placed at Winchester. Henry of Huntingdon, Florence of Worcester, Simeon of Durham, and other Latin chroniclers after the Conquest, French chroniclers Wace and Gaimar, and our Layamon, also deal with these times, sometimes adding matter drawn from poems and traditions to the facts obtained from the English Chronicle. In the eleventh century Ethelward, an English nobleman, epitomised the original Chronicle for his cousin, a German princess. The Irish and Welsh Chronicles (sometimes contemporary) give a better chronology than the English Chronicle. The lives of various saints (British, Irish, and English) add much to our knowledge of the life and beliefs of these early times. The best editions of Bede's History and of the Chronicle are those of Plummer. *Modern Books*.—Sharon Turner's *History of the Anglo-Saxons* (contains the best life yet written of Alfred); Stubbs's *Constitutional History*, Vol. I.; Freeman's *Old English History and Norman Conquest*, Vol. I. For Scottish history the works of Skene and Robertson are all-important. The *Annals of England* (Oxford, Parker) contain a useful chronology. Grant Allen's *Anglo-Saxon Britain* (S.P.C.K.) is a valuable popular sketch.

(b) SPECIAL SUBJECTS.

Religion: Paganism.—Grimm, *Deutsche Mythologie*, translated by J. S. Stallybrass, 4 vols., London, 1880 88; Rydberg, *Teutonic Mythology*, translated by R. B. Anderson, London, 1889; Kemble, *The Saxons in England*, Vol. I. (new edition), London, 1876; and for the etymology of local names, Isaac Taylor, *Words and Places*, cap. xiii., compressed edition, London, 1873.

English Church History to Norman Conquest.—A. *Original Authorities*.—To 730 the primary authority is Bede; next in value, though four centuries later, is William of Malmesbury, *de Gestis Pontificum* (Rolls Series), for the whole period. The laws, canons, penitentials, and other documents in the great collection of Haddan and Stubbs, Vol. III., are most important. Among biographies the lives of Wilfrid by Eddius (Migne), of Cuthbert by Bede, of Aldhelm by Faricius (Migne), of Alfred by Asser, two of Dunstan (Rolls Series), one of Edward the Confessor (Rolls Series) are of considerable value. The letters of Aldhelm and Alcuin are important. The authorities for the history of the Celtic Churches are scanty and difficult. The contemporary documents are in Haddan and Stubbs. For the life of St. Patrick see the edition of the *Vita Tripartita*, edited by Whitley Stokes (Rolls Series). Reeves's edition of

Adamnan's Life of St. Columba is a storehouse of learning. B. *Modern Writers*.—Bright's *Early English Church History* is for the period covered by Bede only. Chapter viii. in Stubbs's *Constitutional History*, the same author's introduction to the lives of St. Dunstan (Rolls Series), and some articles in the *Dictionary of Christian Biography* are invaluable. For the Celtic Churches, Todd's *Life of St. Patrick*, and Vol. II. of Skene's *Celtic Scotland* are excellent. (See also Hunt, *History of the English Church*.)

Law.—The best edition of the Old English laws is Schmid, *Gesetze der Angelsachsen*. The land-books were edited by Kemble in his *Codex Diplomaticus*, and more recently by Mr. Birch. The best modern work on Old English law is contained in articles by Konrad Maurer in the early volumes of the *Kritische Ueberschau* (Munich), and the *Essays in Anglo-Saxon Law*, by four American writers (Little, Brown & Co., Boston; and Macmillan). Many general histories of Germanic law, especially those by Brunner and Schröder, contain much about the Old English law that is of high value.

Trade and Industry.—The social and industrial life of the Anglo-Saxon period must be gleaned from scattered references in Bede (*Ecclesiastical History* and *Life of St. Cuthbert*) and the Lives of the saints—especially of Wilfrid, Dunstan, and Wulfstan—or from the *Codex Diplomaticus*, the Anglo-Saxon laws and Domesday Book, and the *Dialogue* of Ælfric. Much may be gathered also from the illustrations preserved in contemporary MSS. Of modern English works the most useful are Kemble's *Saxons in England*, Sharon Turner (see above), Stubbs's *Constitutional History* (I. c. iv.-ix.), Green's *Conquest of England*, Ashley's *Introduction to Economic History*, Cunningham's *British Industry and Commerce*, Macpherson's *Annals of Commerce*.

Public Health.—There are a few meagre references to pestilences, murrains, etc. in the Old English Chronicle. The Great Plague of 664 and following years is several times mentioned in Bede's *Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum*, in the lives of St. Adda and St. Cuthbert, and in the history of the abbots of Jarrow (Bede's works, edited for the English Historical Society).

Literature.—Ten Brink, *Geschichte der englischen Literatur*, I. Wülker, *Grundriss zur Geschichte der angelsächsischen Literatur*. Leipzig, 1885. Ten Brink, *Beowulf-Untersuchungen: Quellen und Forschungen*, etc. Heft 62, Strassburg, 1888. Müller, *Das altenglische Volksepos in der ursprünglichen strophischen Form*. Kiel, 1883. Heinzel, *Ueber den Stil der altgermanischen Poesie: Quellen und Forschungen*. Heft 10. Strassburg, 1874. Bode, *Die Kenningar in der angelsächsischen Dichtung*. Bugge, *Studien über die Entstehung der nordischen Götter und Heldensagen*. Wülker, *Ueber den Dichter Cynewulf*: Anglia, Bd. I., S. 483-507. 1878. Ten Brink, *Besprechung von Zupitza's Ausgabe der Elene in Haupt's Zeitschrift*. Bd. 24 (N. Folge 11), Anzeige S. 53-70. 1879. Ten Brink, *Early English Literature*. Appendices. Max Rieger, *Ueber Cynewulf*: *Zacher's Zeitschrift für deutsche Philologie*. Bd. I., S. 215-226 und 313-334. Eduard Sievers, *Der Heliand und die angelsächsische Genesis*. T. Gregory Foster, *Judith: Studies in Metre, Language, etc. Quellen und Forschungen*. Heft 91. Gollancz, *Cynewulf's Christ*, edited with a modern rendering.

Architecture, Art, Numismatics, etc.—C. Roach Smith's *Collectanea Antiqua*, also ed. by Plummer; Sharon Turner's *History of England*; Kemble's *Saxons in England*; Willis's *Canterbury* (coins); Ruding's *Annals of the Coinage of Great Britain*; Akerman's *Manual*; Hawkins's *Silver Coins of England*.

Social Life.—*Encomium Emmae*, ed. Pertz; *Life of Dunstan* (ed. Stubbs); *Lives of Edward the Confessor* (ed. Ward), both in Rolls Series; Wright, *Vocabularies* (contains Ælfric's Dialogue); Wright-Wülker, *Vocabularies* (some of these are illustrative of the social life); *The Exeter Book*, ed. Gollancz, Early English Text Society; *Beowulf*, ed. Holder (a cheap, good edition of text); Asser, *Vita Ælfredi* (a translation in Bohn's series); Earle and Plummer, *Saxonic Charters*. The poetry is full of suggestive detail. Also Earle's or Plummer's editions of the Old English Chronicle, *supra*.

CHAPTER III.

FROM THE CONQUEST TO THE CHARTER. 1066-1216.

THE most striking feature in the history of the land which William of Normandy claimed and won had been the disunion between its rival tribes. This fact, while it decided the immediate victory for him, yet cost him a five years' struggle against rebellions before his conquest was final and complete.

A. L.
SMITH.
The
Norman
Conquest.

The north had hardly stirred to succour the West Saxon king on his hurried march from Stamford Bridge to Hastings; but the north was slow to bow to a rule that was more than ever a rule by Wessex over Anglian and Danish districts. England, indeed, which had seemed won at a blow, required to be subdued piecemeal. At one time it appeared as if the great battle had overthrown the champion of Southern England at the hand of the Norman Duke, only that the Norman might in turn fall at the hand of the Dane.

But Senlac was more than a great military victory; it was a social and moral victory too. Not merely did the English axe and javelin there go down before the Norman sword and bow, the too scanty house-carles and the untrained churls of Harold's following before the disciplined knights and heavy-armed footmen of Northern France, but on that field English kingship and English institutions had no spell to withstand the finer temper of the Norman spirit. The fates of two races hung in the balance; Anglo-Saxon civilisation had been tried, and found wanting. It was well in the end for England that the victory lay with the race which brought with it the very qualities that England yet lacked—the power of organisation, the sense of law and method, the genius for enterprise. The order and discipline of the Norman host, the story of their devout preparations on the eve of battle, their superior arms and equipment, their skilful stratagems and obedience to one commanding will, are typical of the new forces that were to create a new England.

The slaughter at Senlac made it impossible for the south-eastern shires to prolong resistance. Dover, Canterbury, and

Winchester fell into William's hands ; but London was prepared to make a bold stand, till it was left helpless by the selfish desertion of Edwin and Morkere, the incapacity of Edgar the Atheling, and William's march across the Thames at Wallingford to Berkhamstead—a position from which he could bar the way of any reinforcements that might be coming to the city. Hither came many leading men of Wessex, and did him homage ; and at last the Witan and the Londoners agreed to accept William, as forty-nine years before they had accepted Canute. On Christmas Day, 1066, only three months from his landing at Pevensey, William was crowned King of England at Westminster. Edgar, chosen king but never crowned, had submitted ; the homage of Edwin and Morkere after the coronation seemed to guarantee Mid-England and the north ; and if William's authority was but nominal in these districts, at any rate in the eastern and south-eastern shires he was able to begin at once his policy of confiscation and re-grant of lands. That his crown now appeared to him fairly secure seems to be proved by his re-crossing the sea at Easter, 1077, to revisit his Duchy. But he left England in strong hands ; for Kent was held by Bishop Odo to ward off any attacks from the Continent, and Herefordshire by Fitzosbern to repel the Welsh ; and both Odo and Fitzosbern had Palatine powers in these their earldoms. Moreover, he took with him, for hostages and trophies, Edgar and Waltheof, Edwin and Morkere, and Archbishop Stigand.

Norman
Rule.

During William's eight months' absence in Normandy the harsher side of Norman rule showed itself in England. Under the oppression of Bishop Odo and Fitzosbern the men of Kent and of Herefordshire broke into revolt. But such isolated risings were futile. In vain did Kent call over Eustace of Boulogne to its aid, and Edric the Wild summon his Welsh allies to the plunder of Normans in Herefordshire. The revolts were put down, even before William could return.

The nation, which had never taught itself to act in unison, even in the fearful days of Danish ravages, was slow to learn its lesson now. Nothing less than the heavy resistless pressure of the Norman rule, continued for more than a century, could effect this. Thus, the south-west, never yet subdued by William, was in open defiance by the winter of 1067, at the same time as Yorkshire and the north, but acted in no concert with them.

Exeter, where Harold's mother and sons were, offered to yield and pay taxes if it might in all other respects be independent. But the fall of Exeter and the ravaging of Dorsetshire carried the submission of Somerset, Devon and Cornwall, Worcestershire and Gloucestershire. It also put into the king's hand a fresh group of forfeited estates, wherewith to reward his kinsmen and followers. Not till the west was thus subdued did the north rise openly. By recalling the Atheling from Scotland, the Northerners made an attempt, by a confederation with Edwin and Morkere and Edric, and aid promised from Welsh, Scots and Danes, to set up a separate northern kingdom, and to revive a division which, alike in the days of Edwy and Edgar, of



SEAL OF WILLIAM I.

Edmund and Canute, and of Godwin and Leofric, had been a fact either avowed or latent in Anglo-Saxon policy. But no crisis could make the Mercian earls loyal allies; they made their peace once more, the revolt collapsed, and William entered York in triumph. He was now actual ruler of West Saxon, East Anglian, and most of Mercian England, with the old Deira. But even over these lands his hold was far from secure; and beyond the Tees, the Bernician districts, Durham, Northumberland, and the Lothians were his by the tie of homage only; and Cheshire, Shropshire, Staffordshire still held out, and were still under the influence of Edric.

Yet William appears now to have imagined the hardest part of his task to be done. He allowed many of his Norman soldiery to depart; he appointed a follower of his own to be

The
Reaction
of the
Conquered.

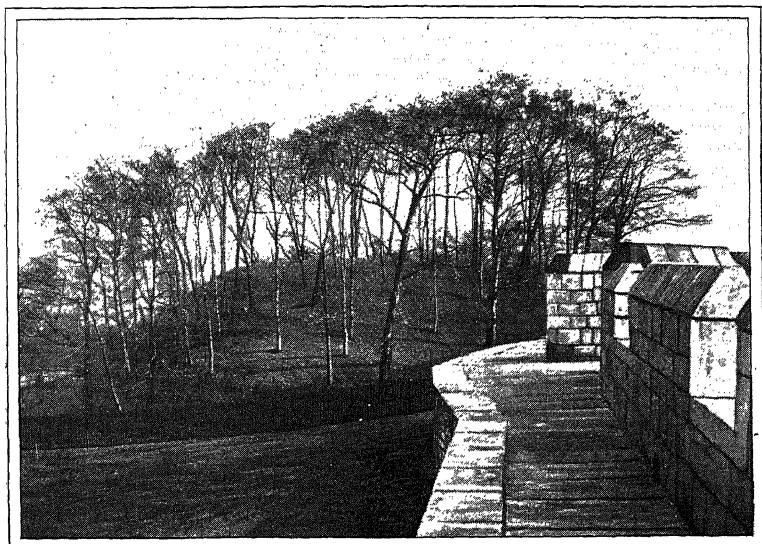
Earl of Northumberland; the long delays of Sweyn seemed to show that the danger from the Danes had passed away. The year 1069 was to bring him a rude awakening. The burghers of Durham massacred the new earl and his men; the burghers of York slew the Norman commandant of the castle; Harold's sons were attacking Devonshire, Edric laying siege to Shrewsbury; the Danish fleet appeared on the south and on the east coasts, finally entering the Humber, and garrisoning York. William had been called away from his vengeance on York to put down another general rising in the south-west. Now, by a hasty return march, he drove the Danes out of Lincolnshire, and again mastered York. Here, by a second coronation, on Christmas Day, 1069, he made a concession to the stubborn sense of independence in the land north of Humber. But he had also been engaged meanwhile in a measure at once of vengeance and of policy which should reduce that independence to a vain memory, and for ever put a stop to the invitation of Danish fleets. This measure was the famous "Wasting of the North," the ruin and almost the depopulation of the whole of Yorkshire, a crime which shocked even that age, and one which Englishmen looked on as the chiefest of those three great sins that were to weigh heavy against his soul at the Last Judgment. From York William marched to Durham, and received Waltheof's submission. In February, 1070, he made his winter march from York to Chester, though the wasted land could hardly feed an army, and his starving troops mutinied on the way. With the subjugation of North-Western Mercia his conquest of England was now practically complete. The Danish fleet was bought off by bribes; the resistance of the Fen country, centring about the Isle of Ely and the person of Hereward, was overcome in 1071, after eighteen months of toilsome siege. Edric had before this made his submission; Edwin was dead, and Morkere was now a captive. The five years of gallant but disorganised fighting was over; the verdict of Hastings was ratified; a new race had become the rulers of the land, and not till the bloodless victory of Runnymede in 1215 was it clear that Norman barons had merged into the mass of the English nation. The history of these five years brings into prominence the immense superiority of the Norman mercenaries, not merely in fighting power, but in rapidity of movement and in unity of purpose; in all those

The
Wasting
of the
North.

1216]

points, in fact, which followed from the vigilant and resolute character of their commander. Everywhere his methods are the same—to strike terror by ruthless devastation; to secure the towns by strong Norman garrisons and stone castles; to appoint Norman earls whom he could trust; but to win over the English by pardons and by recognition of native customs

**Features
of the
Norman
Rule.**



THE BAILE HILL, YORK.

The site of William I.'s second castle.

and ideas. He was anxious from the first to take up the position of a lawful English king. As early as 1070 he had dismissed most of his mercenaries; and as early as 1074 the three rebel earls found that the English had begun to look to the king as their champion against the barons. In him, too, was found, as a later writer puts it, that strong man armed who guards his own house. The Welsh border from this time steadily recedes; the cruel Scottish invasions are punished by William's attack on Scotland in 1072, when Malcolm "bowed to him and became his man." Had William lived two years more, says the English Chronicle, he would have won all Ireland by his wisdom, without any fighting. The long series of Danish ravages and wars, which had hardly known ten years' cessation since

787, ended in the great preparations made by King Canute of Denmark in 1085, but rendered abortive by his murder in 1086.

Nor was the change a less marked one in England's internal condition. "The good order that King William made must not be forgotten," as the contemporary writer of the Peterborough version of the Chronicle admits; "it was such that any man who was himself aught might travel from end to end of the land unharmed; and no man durst kill another, however great the injury which he had received."

The Norman kingship was, indeed, that which the later Anglo-Saxon kingship had come not to be—a real organising power. Nowhere was the effect of the Conquest more immediately apparent than in the military system. The Bayeux tapestry shows us that to the Normans we owe both the mounted knight and the bowman, who displaced the peculiar English fashion of the two-handed axe, and the "shield-wall" of footmen. Already in Domesday Book are signs of that organisation of the feudal levy which is bound up with the definition of knight-service and the development of "knights'-fees." From the policy of William dates that increase of castles which the Crown, though only after a long struggle, kept in its own control, and the survival of that Old English array which did such yeoman service in the conflict against feudalism. Lastly, the connection between England and Normandy kept up the importance of the south coast towns, and produced those French wars which led to the revival of an English navy.

F. YORK
POWELL.
Domesday
Book

THE great inquest survey, or "Description of all England," which we call Domesday Book, is one of the most precious documents that any nation possesses. It is not so old nor so minute as the wonderful French *Polypstyques*; nor is it so curious and primitive in manner and matter as the Icelandic *Landnámabók*; but for variety of information, for excellence of plan, for the breadth of land and the space of time it covers, it is probably unrivalled. It is at once a terrier,¹ a rent roll, an assessment register, as well as a book of settlements and a legal record. It is important alike to economist, lawyer, historian,

[¹ The roll of a manor, specifying the names, holdings, and obligations of the tenants.]

ethnologist, and philologist. Moreover, it was composed at a period of transition and change, and enables us, better than any other writing could, to understand the manner and effects of the Norman Conquest.

The Peterborough Chronicle, written by one who knew the Conqueror, gives the best contemporary account of the place, and meaning of the survey, under the year 1083—

“After midwinter, the King let levy a great geld [*or tax*] and heavy over all England that was on each hide two and seventy pence.”

[In 1085 King Canute of Denmark, who had to wife Earl Robert's daughter of Flanders, threatened to invade the land.] “When King William of England, who was then sitting in Normandy, for he owned both England and Normandy, got news of this, he fared into England with so great an host of horsemen and footmen out of France and Brittany as never sought this land before, so that men wondered how this land might feed all that host. But the King let divide up this host over all this land among his men, and they fed the host each according to his land. . . . But when the King got news for truth that his foes were hindered, and might not carry out their journey, then he let some of his host fare to their own land, and some he held in this land the winter over. Then at midwinter the King was at Gloucester with his wise men, and held his court there five days, and afterwards the archbishop and clergy held a three days' synod. . . . After this the King took much thought and held deep speech with his Wise Men over the land, how it was settled or established, and with what kind of men. Then he sent over all England into each shire and had it made out how many hundred hides there were in the shire, and what the King himself had in lands, and of live-stock on the land, and what rights he ought to have every twelve months off the shire. Also, he had written how much land his archbishops had, and his suffragan bishops, and his abbots and earls, and, though I tell it at length, what or how much each man that owned land in England had in land and live-stock, and how much money it might be worth. So very narrowly he had it inquired into that there was not one single hide nor one yard of land, nor even—it is shame to be telling of, but he did not think it shame to be doing it—one ox nor one cow nor one swine was left out that was not set down in his record, and all the records were afterwards brought to him.” [The instructions for taking the survey ran thus:—

“The King's barons [the Commissioners] enquire by oath of the sheriff of the shire and of all the barons [free tenants] and of the French-born of them and of the whole hundred, of the priest, the reeve, and six villeins [copyholders] from each manor” . . . “the name of the manor, who held it T.R.E. [*tempore Regis Edwardi*, in the time of King Edward Confessor] and who held it now [1086], how many hides there were in each manor, how many ploughs on the domain, how many men, how many villeins, how many cottars, how many bondsmen, how many freemen, how many socmen,¹ how

[¹ Freeholders, but liable to pay fixed rent or service to the lord.]

much wood, how much meadow, how much pasture; what mills, what fish-ponds; what had been added or taken away, what it was worth T.R.E. and how much it was worth now [1086]; how much each freeholder held; and whether more could be got out of it than now."

Rights and claims were registered, as well as holdings and premiums. There were several sets of Commissioners, each with a separate circuit—*e.g.* Bishop Remigius of Fécamp, Henry of Ferrieres (Lord of Tutbury), Walter Giffard (afterwards Earl of Buckingham), and Adam Fitz Hubert took the circuit in which Worcester lay; the south-western counties formed a circuit, and Oxford, Warwick, and Stafford shires were grouped together. Northumberland and Durham were not surveyed, probably because much of the north was wasted and empty Cumberland, Westmorland, and North Lancashire were not yet parts of England. Rutland was surveyed under parts of Northants and Lincolnshire, South Lancashire under parts of Yorkshire and Cheshire. We have in the Exon Domesday and in Vol. II. of the great Domesday Book examples of the draft returns for the five south-western and three eastern counties (Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex) respectively. A transcript of the original Cambridgeshire returns also exists. In the rest of the surveyed districts the draft returns were not only arranged, but abridged, as in the first volume of the great Domesday.

The record being on oath was a regular verdict, and could not be disregarded, contradicted, or disallowed as evidence.

How the
Survey
was taken.

In compiling the draft returns each county was taken hundred by hundred, each hundred manor by manor, and a numbered index of the tenants-in-chief (immediate crown-tenants) was affixed to each county; the king coming first, the rest following according to rank.

The Commissioners, in putting down the returns of their local inquests, did not attempt to alter the local reckoning; hence in different parts of the country we find, as Mr. Round has lately shown—

The English reckoning:—1 hide = 4 virgates or yard-lands.

The Kentish reckoning:—1 suling = 4 yokes.

The Dano-Norman reckoning:—1 ploughland or carucate = 8 ox-gangs or bovates.

In each case this reckoning applied only to the arable, and to land which was geldable (liable for the King's land-tax), at so

much per unit; the unit, whether called *suling*, *hide*, or *carucate*, being always an ideal of 120 acres, whether the manor was worked on a two- or three-field system. After stating the geldable area, the non-geldable area is put down: this is sometimes land fresh tilled since the days of *Ethelred* when this land-tax or geld was first taken (probably on a local county assessment). For in the year 991 on a proposal (borrowed from Frankish and Roman expedients) of Archbishop *Sigric*, the first great payment of £10,000 was made by the nation as tribute to the Danes; but whether this first *Danegeld* was raised, as later payments in this reign probably were, by taxation on the *hide*, we do not know. Sometimes the non-geldable land is land that has received for some reason exception from this tax by the king's favour. After the return as to *hidage* and acres come the other returns called for by the king. The following specimen of a rural manor will show the way the returns were finally registered:—

“THE LAND OF WILLIAM OF BRAIOSE. In REDINGES hundred.

“William of Braiose holdeth of the king *SUDCOTE*. *Brietward* held it of *K. Edward*. [William the Norman has displaced *Brietward* the Englishman as royal tenant.]

“The land defended itself for two hides, now for one hide. [The old assessment for land tax on this manor was for two hides, but for some satisfactory reason it is now assessed for one hide.]

“The land is of three ploughs. [The whole extent of arable is three ploughlands, though it was only assessed at two hides.]

“There is one in the domain [William manages one ploughland himself] and five villeins [copyhold tenants] and bordars [cottiers] with two ploughs [there are two teams in the domain].

“There is a mill of 18 shillings-worth and a fishery of 50 pence-worth.

“It [the estate] was worth £4; now [it is worth] 100 shillings.”

A notable bit of record is that touching *Oxford*, a new town come into note as the resting-place of a saint, a place of coinage under *Alfred*, a stronghold against the Danes under *Edward*, and a convenient meeting-place for great moots under *Egar* and *Ethelred*. It embraces, as will be seen, not only taxation but amercements and rents and other dues.



COIN OF ALFRED, STRUCK AT OXFORD.

"In the time of King Edward OXFORD used to pay for toll and gafol and all other customs yearly to the king £20 and 6 sestiers [apparently pints] of honey. To Earl Elfgar £10, besides a mill which he had inside the city. When the king went to war 20 burgesses used to go with him in place of all the others, or they used to give £20 to the king that all might be free. Now Oxford pays £60 by tale [not by weight, which would be unfavourable to the payer] of 20d. to the *ora* [a Danish money of account, twelve to the £]. In this said town, both within the wall and without; there are 243 houses paying geld, and beside these there are 500, less 22, so waste and destroyed that they cannot pay geld. . . . All the mansions which are called mural, T.R.E., were free from all custom save going to war and wall repair. . . . And if the wall, when there be need, be not restored by him who ought so to do, he shall either pay 40s. to the king or lose his mansion. All the burgesses of Oxford have in common outside the town a meadow paying 6s. 8d." They still have it, and it is called Port-Meadow.

Among Oxfordshire customs are these:—"If any man break the king's peace given by hand or seal, so that he slay the man to whom the peace was given, both his life and lands shall be in the king's power if he be taken, and if he cannot be taken he shall be held an outlaw by all, and if anyone shall be able to slay him he shall have his spoils by law. If any stranger wishing to stay in Oxford and having a house without kin shall finish his life there, the king shall have what he leaves. If anyone by force break or enter any man's court or house to slay or wound or assault a man, he shall pay 100s. to the king as fine. Likewise he that is warned to go on service and goeth not shall give 100s. to the king. If anyone slay a man within his court or his house, himself and all his substance are at the king's will, save the dower of his wife if he have endowed her."

The general results of the survey may be summed up thus: There were about 5,000,000 acres tilled each year, and about 300,000 families, *i.e.* about 2,000,000 souls. This population was thus divided as to tenure:—

(a)	{ 1,400 tenants-in-chief }	gentry and clergy.	
	{ 7,900 under-tenants }		
(b)	{ 12,000 liberi homines }	freeholders	N. of Watling St.
	{ 23,000 soemen }	yeomen	S. of Yorks.
	{ 109,000 villeins }	copyholders	{ W. of Lincoln and Essex.
(c)	{ 90,000 cottars and bordars }	small copyholders	{ E. of Cheshire. S. of Thames mostly.
(d)	25,000 bondsmen	landless labourers	{ S. of Midlands and S.W.

The burgesses and many of the clergy are not reckoned, so that any estimate of their number must be drawn from other sources.

Rex tunc de septuaginta libris sterlingum. viii. hids. tunc. xxi. car. p.
 u. car. 7 viii. serui. 7 xxviij. uilli cum. v. bord. hinc. vii. car.
 lib. xxxvi. de p. Valuit. x. lib. Modo. p. lib.
 h. ii. in tenent herale. Modo. lli de teneant de
In Decorne. Staunorde. Wodestock. Cornetorie. hinc
 dnice foreste regis. hinc. x. leri. lq. 7 roat. lq.
 Ad has foreste p. u. vii. hids. 7 dimid. 7 lib. vi.
 bord. hinc. vii. car. 7 dimid. De his 7 omib. ad fore
 redd. h. annu. x. lib. p. annu. regis. Judas. b. tunc.
In Waverels. hinc. rex. d. n. h. uasta. heru. habu. p. annu.

Comitat. oxenford. reddat. firmā. quā. nocu. hoc.
 De augmento. xxi. lib. ad pond. De Burgo. x. lib. ad pond.
 De moneta. x. lib. denar. de. x. in ora. Ad ap. p. annu.
 De garsuna regine. c. sol. ad num. 7 accipere. x. lib.
 Sumario. x. solid. p. camb. x. iii. lib. denar. de. x. iii.
 7 vi. sextas. mellis. 7 x. denar. de. s. uetudine.
 De ora. Edm. comitat. in Oxenford. 7 in Waverels.
 hinc. rex. c. lib. 7 c. solid.

Pax regis. manu. sigillo. data. siq. in fregit. sit. homine. cu.
 pax. ipsa. data. fuerit. occidat. 7 mētra. 7 uraci. mar. b. n. r.
 erunt. si. cap. fuerit. Et. si. cap. n. potuerit. ab. omib. ex. d.
 bebūt. 7 siq. eū. occide. p. aluerit. spolia. ei. li. annu.
 Siq. ex. tunc. in. oxenford. manere. d. n. r. in. m. n.
 sine. p. t. r. ab. s. u. t. a. finierit. rex. habet. quicquid. reliquit.
 Siq. alicui. curia. ut. domū. uolenter. effugerit. tunc. n. r.
 ut. homine. occidat. uel. uulneret. l. assaliat. c. sol. rex. annu.
 Similit. q. monte. ire. in. expeditione. n. uadit. c. sol. rex. annu.
 Siq. aliquē. interfecerit. intra. curia. l. domū. sua. cap. ei.
 7 q. n. s. substantia. sunt. in. potestate. regis. p. t. r. d. n. r. p. annu.
 ei. si. d. n. r. habuerit.

Change of
Owner-
ship.

Of the tenants-in-chief the greater part were "Frenchmen"—soldiers who had come over to fight with William, or churchmen who had come over to pray for him; and the greater part of the under-tenants of good estate were "Frenchmen" too. Thus in Oxfordshire only a few thanes (such as Lefwine, Osmund, Sawold, Siward the huntsman) and the ecclesiastical foundations and priests remained as before the Conquest. The king, besides the royal manors, had got the forfeited lands of Earls Harold and Edwin; Queen Edith's land had been parted among Norman barons; the Norman bishops of Bayeux and Lisieux, the transmarine Abbey des Preaux, and William's new foundation of Battle got possessions in the country at the expense of English owners. Earls Hugh of Chester, Alberic of Northumberland, Robert of Mortain, William of Hereford, Eustace of Boulogne, William of Evreux, and barons of the houses of Ivri, Toden, Gifard, Pevrel, Hesding, and Ansculf became the king's tenants, while English landowners such as Archbishop Stigand, Earl Tosti, Turgot, Alfric, Hacon, Godric, and their heirs were ousted. Robert d'Oily married Ealdgyth, the daughter of a great English landowner, Wigod of Wallingford, and got about half of his father-in-law's estates in the shire. In fact, one may sum up the change in England by saying that some 20,000 foreigners replaced some 20,000 Englishmen; and that these newcomers got the throne, the earldoms, the bishoprics, the abbacies, and far the greater portion of the big estates, mediate and immediate, and many of the burgess holdings in the chief towns. The English owners had either fallen in battle or fled into exile, or, if they remained, they had forfeited their estates by armed or avowed resistance to the new and crowned king. In some cases the new landowner married the former landowner's daughter, as in the instance given above, or his widow, but this was not by any means the usual case; and the accounts we have of English nobles and barons flying to Scotland and to East Europe show that the newcomers mostly ousted the former owners and their heirs. William had to pay his fellow-conquerors and to keep up an army. This could only be done in a regular way by endowing them; and, both to reward men who had risked much in his quarrel and to enable him to hold what he had, he had to parcel out the forfeited lands

bit by bit, as he won them. We need not suppose any settled policy of dividing the great barons' estates (a policy for which we have not any good ancient authority). The fact of the Conquest occurring piecemeal will account for the fact of many great Norman landowners holding lands in many counties. Thus Hugh of Chester seems to have held lands in Stafford, which were afterwards exchanged for possessions elsewhere; but he retained land in twenty-one several counties, Robert of Mortain in twenty, Odo of Bayeux in seventeen, Eustace of Boulogne in twelve. There were forty-one great vassals with estates in more than six counties—laymen all. Nor was William afraid of handsomely rewarding his fellow-venturers, especially those of his own blood. Thus, Robert of Mortain, his brother, got 793 manors; Odo of Bayeux, another brother, 439; Alan of Brittany, a kinsman, 442. Some of William's shrievalties became hereditary, some of his earldoms were palatine, but he took care not to make many new earls; and the condition of regular military service—so many armed knights to be supplied for so much land (as Mr. Round has shown)—whereby the irregular and varied thegn-services were replaced by more regular requirements, told probably in favour of the Crown.

The new landowners, though they might have made a little different bargain with the king than their forerunners, yet had not a whit more power or less over their tenants by law or custom; and the old folk-moots, courts of hundred, and hall-moots, subsisted as before with the old fines, fees, and forfeitures. Every free unlanded man still had to find a responsible patron, and every free landed man to be in a local peace-pledge society; every freeman had to take oath of allegiance to the king as before. The king's rents were still largely paid in kind, and the first scale of commutation (remembered a century later) was an ox 1s., sheep 4d., fodder for twenty horses 4d., bread for 100 men 1s. The statutes of William the Conqueror are mostly re-enactments of former kings' laws, and his chief innovations are his substitution, out of piety, of mutilation for capital punishment; his arrangements to prevent the murder of the Frenchmen that came with him by strengthening the police regulations as to fines, etc.; and his ordinance separating the temporal

and spiritual pleas, confining the latter to the bishops' jurisdiction.

The New-comers.

It is well here to remember (as Bishop Stubbs points out) that the new aristocracy was largely akin to the Norman duke. Thus, of the ducal house came the Earls of Brionne, Evreux, Eu, Mortain, Kent; while from marriage-kinship there was a close connection with the Beaumonts of Mellent, and the houses of Montgomery, Warenne, Giffard, and Breteuil. The other three great Norman families came from Yves of Belesme, Bernard the Dane, and Osmond of Coutville, also allies of the ducal house, as the Court legends sufficiently attest. The old list of ships, though by no means authoritative or complete, shows the kind of help given by Norman barons to the king:—

	Ships.	Knights.		Ships.	Knights.
William FitzOsbern ...	...	60	—	Remi, Bishop of Lincoln	1 20
Hugh, Earl of Chester ...	...	60	—	Nicholas, Abbot of St.	
Robert, Earl of Eu ...	...	60	—	Owen ...	20 100
Robert, Earl of Mortain ...	120	—		Hugh of Montfort Con-	
Roger of Beaumont ...	...	60	—	stable ...	50 —
Roger of Montgomery ...	...	60	—	Gerald the Steward ...	40 —
Walter Giffard ...	...	30	100	Fulk the Lame ...	40 —
Odo, Bishop of Bayeux ...	100	—		William, Earl of Evreux	80 —

Other Normans that brought good help were Ralf of Conches, William of Warenne, Hugh of Grantmesnil, Roger of Mowbray, Baldwin and Richard of Brionne, Hugh the Butler, and Aimery of Thouars. William's allies "his good neighbours¹ Bretons, Mancelis [men of Maine], Angevins, men of Ponthieu and Boulogne"² and French, "to whom he promised land if he could conquer England, rich pay and good bounties" (though neither the King of France nor the Earl of Flanders would aid his enterprise), saw to it that his promises were carried out. Only one knight and one churchman out of the great host that sailed in "three thousand ships and three" to maintain William's claim to the Crown are recorded to have refused to take other men's goods and estates. Even the cooks, the huntsmen, and other body-servants of

¹ Alan of Brittany, William's son-in-law, and Ralf Guader, Earl of Norfolk, were the chief among the Bretons, a very powerful contingent.

² Eustace III, Earl of Boulogne, a kinsman of Edward the Confessor, led these.

[216]

the king got their share of the land, though he took care to settle no mercenaries after the first conquest, and preferred to raise a heavy tax rather than make unjust confiscations. William I., like Edward I., was a law-abiding king, and in face of even great temptations he seldom broke his own rules, and never violated the oath he had sworn and the promise he had made to rule as his predecessor had ruled, according to the laws and customs of the land, putting down evil and maintaining mercy and righteousness.

The Conquest meant, indeed, that the executive, the central administration and the local government, temporal and spiritual, had been taken over by a new set of men—better managers, keener, more unscrupulous, less drunken and less quarrelsome, better trained, harder, thriftier, more in sympathy with the general European movements, more adventurous, more temperate. The result was, inevitably, better organisation, quicker progress, great exactions and oppressions in Church and State; for the under-tenants were not in sympathy with their new lords, and both sides stood on the letter of the law (which necessarily favoured the lord); a new and vigorous foreign policy, and extension of the English king's domains and claims within and without these islands. But (contrary to a venerable belief) the English tongue and the English law held their own throughout this realm, and within a century the French baron had become an English lord.

The Effects
of the
Conquest.

Outwardly the greatest changes were the building of many great keeps and baileys by the king and his richest barons, and the continuance of the movement that had already begun of raising churches and large minsters in stone. Agriculture must have been rather checked by the exactions of the lords (who seem to have set up their courts *or* hall-moots wherever they could), by the heavy taxes, and by the devastations of civil war. But though the towns suffered grievously by war and by the clearances of sites for castles, commerce grew and flourished. Besides the questionable benefit of the arrival of the Jews who followed the Conquest, as they had followed the Northmen in Gaul two centuries earlier, many Norman merchants settled in London and other market towns and seaports.

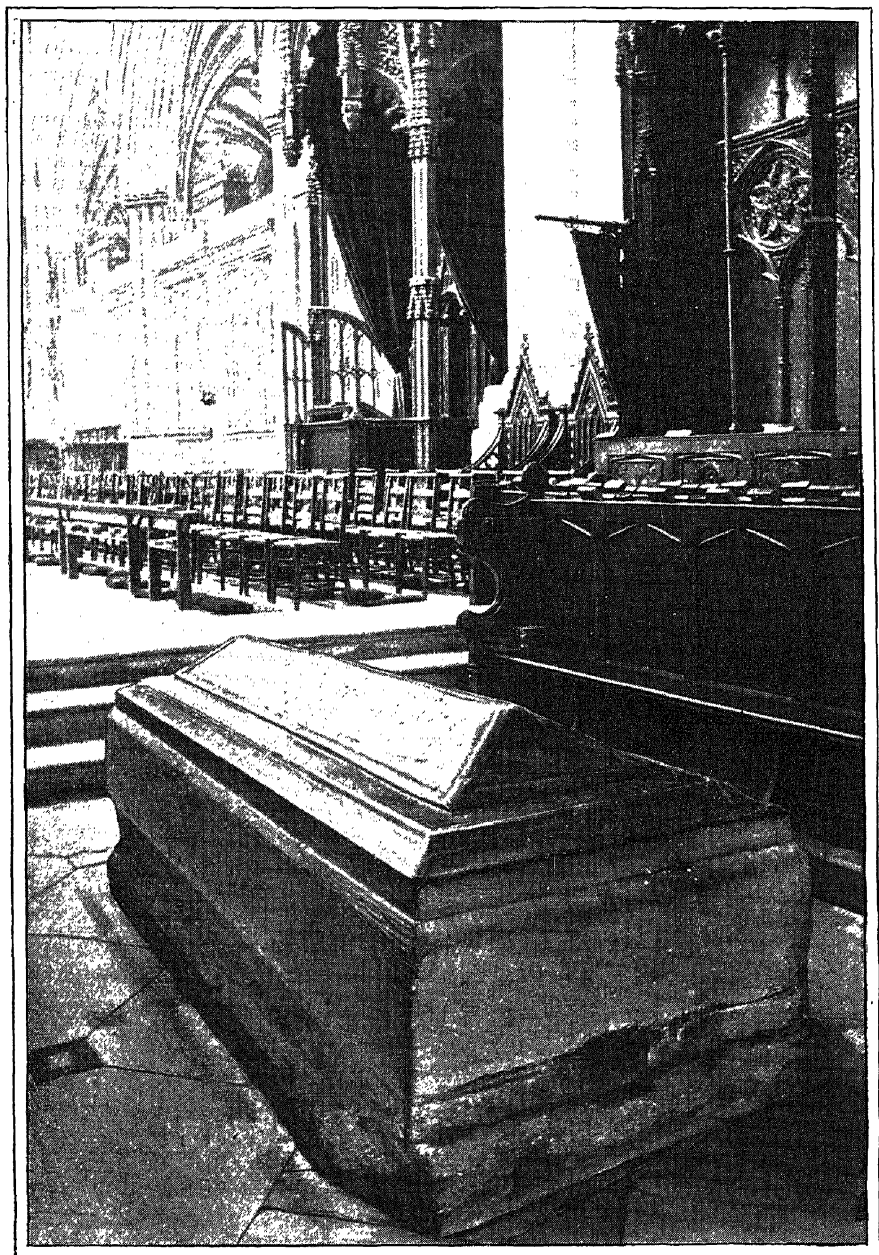
A. L.
SMITH.
The Reign
of William
Rufus.
1087-1100.

THE accession of William Rufus against the support given to Robert by the Norman barons was a victory for the English people. It was to the people that he promised good government and their own old customs, to win their aid and that of the Church, already beginning to act as the people's champion. It was the levy of the people that enabled him to drive off Duke Robert's fleet at Pevensey, and to take Rochester Castle and with it his uncle, Bishop Odo, the head of the Norman revolt. It was the same levy that he summoned in 1094 to Hastings to the number of 20,000 to repel a threatened



SEAL OF WILLIAM II.

invasion from France. His very tyranny and greed fell less on the mass of the people than on the great feudatories. It is true he was merciless in his fines and savagely jealous of his forest rights, and he used the local courts as mere engines of extortion, while his shameless life and blasphemous sayings deeply shocked the best feelings of his age. But at least he allowed no tyranny in England but his own. He crushed another feudal rising in 1095, and confiscated the lands of Mowbray of Northumberland and others for taking part in it. He repulsed an invasion of Malcolm, King of Scots, in 1091, forced him to renew his homage, wrested from him the district of Carlisle, and colonised it with English settlers. By his grants—as, for instance, to Montgomery and Lacy—the English border advanced rapidly westwards at the expense of the Welsh, despite the check caused by a raid upon Anglesey



TOMB OF WILLIAM II., WINCHESTER CATHEDRAL.

by Magnus of Norway, who defeated Hugh, Earl of Chester, there. His reign, almost in spite of himself, fostered that alliance between Crown and people which, begun almost at the Norman Conquest in their common interest against feudal anarchy, has ever since been so characteristic of English history. In the wars, too, against Scots and Welsh, and even against the French, the English took up their Norman rulers' quarrel as their own. Only when he set himself against the new Archbishop Anselm did he take up a position in which the nation would be against him (p. 364). And the popular demonstrations



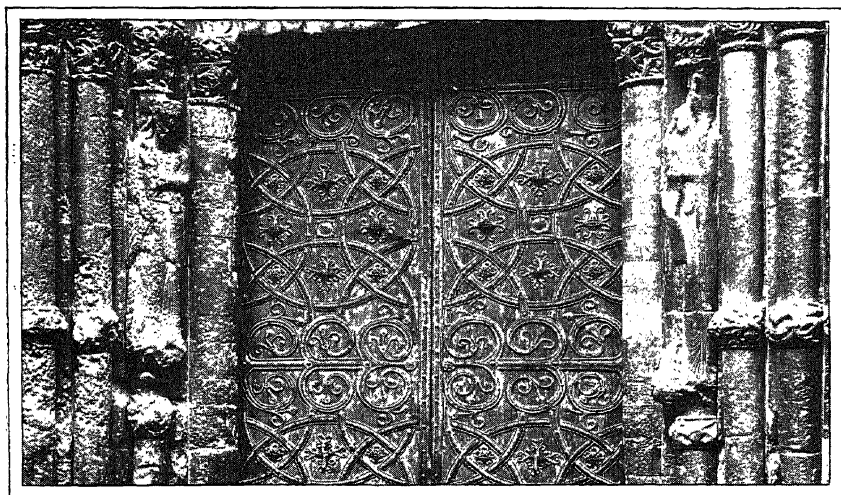
SEAL OF HENRY I.

in favour of the prelate both during the contest and upon his victory were an omen of the course of those future struggles in which the kings were to find that the nation, loyal as it was to the Crown, owned a higher loyalty still to the Church.

Alliance between Crown and people had been the mark of William II.'s reign; but in a much more intimate sense it becomes the guiding principle of Henry I.'s policy. His accession he owed to his being an Atheling, the English-born son of a king; to his own promptitude and use of his treasures; to his immediate recall of Anselm; but above all to the Charter which he published. This promised not merely a relaxation of the feudal rules which his brother had strained to the uttermost against his tenants-in-chief, but also ordered that the barons should in their turn give the same relaxation in dealing with their vassals. The Charter promised also that "the laws of Edward"—that is, the Old English offices and institutions—

Henry I.
1100 1135

should be preserved. When he married Edith, daughter of Malcolm, and niece of Edgar Atheling, the people felt they had again an English king; he was identified with "the Lion of Justice" of Merlin's prophecies. When the leading barons joined Robert of Normandy in his claim of the English throne, the English people so heartily aided their king that he was able to attack and reduce in succession the four castles of Robert of Belesme, who, as representative of the great house of Montgomery, and lord of two earldoms in England and two in Normandy,



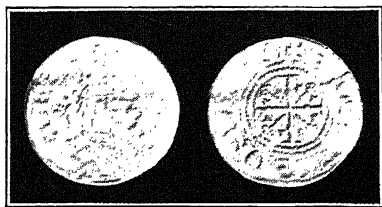
EFFIGIES OF HENRY I. AND EDITH ("QUEEN MAUD"), ROCHESTER CATHEDRAL.

was the acknowledged head of the feudal party. This man was of the worse type of feudal lord, and with his overthrow, said the exulting English, the king had now become a king indeed. From 1104 Henry's chief activity was in France. Indeed, the long struggle of the royal power against the baronage was fought out in these fields from 1104 to 1118. The battle of Tenchebrai, 1106, made him master of Normandy, and consigned Duke Robert to a life-long captivity. With Anjou and Brittany he formed alliances, and married his daughter Matilda to the Emperor Henry V. But he was harassed by intrigues in favour of Duke Robert's son, William Clito, till the latter's death in

1126. Meanwhile the strength of Henry's position in England had been shown by the reception of his own son William in 1115 as future king; and he was even able, after his son's tragical death at the wreck of the White Ship in 1120, to have the same oaths taken to his daughter Matilda in 1126. The process of the subjugation of Wales, despite frequent Welsh revolts, was continued by the energy of Earl Strongbow, the building of castles in the country, and the planting of colonies of Flemings in Pembrokeshire.

**Internal
Reform.**

The internal history of the reign is a history of steady advance in good government. The local courts of hundred and shire were revived; the local customs of the towns were recognised and recorded in charters; the Central Exchequer system was being steadily developed; itinerant justices (p. 402) were sent



COIN OF HENRY I.

on circuits; the coinage was amended, the abuses of purveyance were restrained, the old payments in kind were replaced by money taxes. A new nobility was raised up from Englishmen and from Normans of lesser rank. These men served the king

as ministers in Exchequer and in the Council, and were rewarded with the confiscated lands of the older baronage of the north. The line of great Justiciars, the king's lieutenants in military and judicial powers, begins 1107 with Roger the Poor, Bishop of Salisbury, and his family (p. 367). The feudal Council begins to show a division into greater and lesser barons, the line of division destined to grow into the deeper demarcation between House of Lords and House of Commons. The native chronicles are full, indeed, of lamentations over plague, and famine, and murrain, and "the heavy taxes which never slackened." But the same chroniclers are emphatic in their acknowledgment of the prompt and stern justice which began to make England, after the incorrigible anarchy and violence of Anglo-Saxon times, a land of unwonted order and peace. "A good man he was, and all men stood in awe of him. No man durst misdo against another in his time. He made peace for man and beast." Men came to

speak of the laws of King Henry's days as they had hitherto spoken of the laws of King Edward, and with much better reason; for Henry I. laid the foundations on which his greater grandson built up the enduring fabric of the English Constitution—a Norman superstructure upon an English basis. Even the greatest of all the medieval problems, the relation of Church and State, was brought at least to a temporary solution by the mingled firmness and moderation of the king. A compromise was made (1107) which would be sure to work well for the Crown. The bishop-elect was to do homage to the king, and only then receive his spiritual insignia—the ring and pastoral staff—from spiritual hands. This settlement emphasised better the spiritual character of the episcopate; but the bishops were also great barons, and over them, as over other barons, the Crown kept its hold by the ceremony of homage. The best tribute to the work and character of Henry I. is the outburst of feudalism in its most hateful form which followed as soon as the strong hand of the last real Norman ruler was removed.

THE Conquest had a great and immediate effect on the English Church. The invasion itself had been from the first made to bear something of the character of a religious work. It was at once a mission, the claiming of a lawful heritage filched by a perjured usurper, and a Crusade before the Crusaders. The invaders, coming to a conquest that was blessed by the Pope, were pledged of necessity to change in Church as in State. We have seen that the condition of the Church warranted, if it did not necessitate, a change. It was one of the great aims of the Conqueror to carry it through.

W. H.
HUTTON.
The
Church
and the
Conquest.

The first four years of the reign were fully occupied with material and physical contest. The ecclesiastical reformation had perforce to wait till the land was fully conquered by the sword. When that was done, in 1070 William turned to work which he had had in mind from the first. In the Easter feast at Winchester, with Papal legates by his side, he began to provide for the governance of the English Church.

Ealdred of York, who had anointed him king, was dead. Stigand of Canterbury, who had received his pallium from the anti-Pope, Benedict X., was with ease deposed as uncanonical.

Lanfranc.

England
and the
Papacy.

With him fell his brother Ethelmer, Bishop of the East Angles, a married man. Bishops and abbots fled or were deprived. Their places were filled generally, but not always, by men of foreign race. The great prize of all, the Primacy of all England, was conferred on one than whom there was no man in Europe worthier to fill it. Lanfranc, the law-student of Pavia, then Prior of Bec, now abbot of William's own great Church of St. Stephen at Caen, the scholar, statesman, administrator, friend of the stern Conqueror, was consecrated in the metropolitan church to be what the Worcester annalist of the time calls "the English Pope." There is in this phrase—a phrase repeated when Pope Urban greeted Anselm as Apostolic or "Pope of a second world"—a real meaning. Just as the old English kings, when the Welsh and Scots had submitted to their sway, began to take to themselves Imperial titles and the badges of Imperial authority—thus claiming to be apart from the great Roman Empire, and to rule a little empire of their own—so the English Primates, who had exercised spiritual supremacy over many kingdoms before England yet was one, had felt themselves, and were recognised to be, patriarchs of the nations beyond the sea. That William was determined such should be the position of those who ruled the English Church we see clearly enough from the letters that passed between him and that greatest of medieval Popes, the Hildebrand of Clugny and Canossa, Pope Gregory VII. Nothing so clearly brings back the life of those times as the letters—now cautious, now familiar—which passed between the clear-sighted statesmen who ruled over peoples so different and lands so far separate, each with a clear, keen purpose and a stern unbending will. To Gregory, William is the "dearest king," the "unique and precious son of the holy Roman Church," whom he has ever in his prayers; but whom he must at times admonish, lest he fall into great condemnation. To William, Gregory was his Father and Pontiff, whose prayers he craved, and whose "Romescot"¹ he would pay. But when it came to a question between them that the English king should profess himself the Pope's man—and this the Pope asked—then the answer was clear and brief. No fealty had William ever promised; none had his predecessors paid. As they did, so

¹ Annual gift to the Papal see.

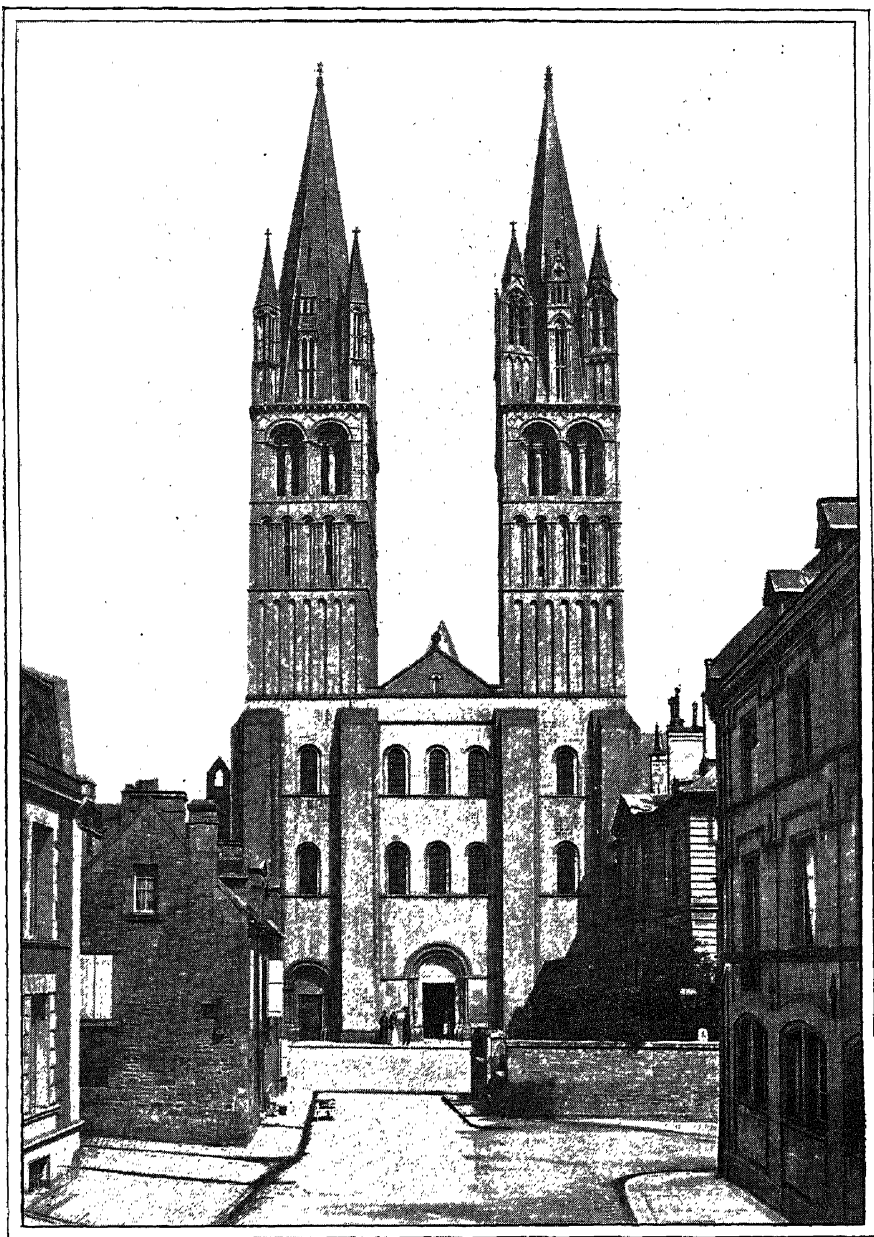


Photo : Neurdein, Paris.

CHURCH OF ST. STEPHEN (ABBAYE AUX HOMMES), CAEN.

would he: he was the rightful successor of the good King Edward.

Such relation between king and Pope could not be maintained if the first man in England after the Sovereign, the chief bishop of the English Church, were himself in league with the Roman Pontiff. It seems certain that no question ever arose between William and Lanfranc; their agreement had been confirmed, we may be sure, years before it was carried out on English soil. But though no division arose between king and archbishop, it was clear to all men what were the rules of the king's dealings with Rome. These rules seemed to the historian a novelty; but the circumstances and the men were also new. "He would not suffer," says Eadmer, "that anyone in all his dominions should receive the Pontiff of the City of Rome as apostolic Pope"—there were then many contests on vacancies in the Holy See—"except at his command, or should on any condition receive his letters if they had not been first shown to himself. He did not suffer the primate of his kingdom, the Archbishop of Canterbury, if he had called together under his primacy an assembly of bishops, to enact or prohibit anything but what was agreeable to his will and had been first ordained by him. He did not allow any of his bishops publicly to implead, excommunicate, or constrain by penalty of ecclesiastical rigour any of his barons or servants who was informed against for adultery or any capital crime, except by his own command." And, further, he exercised—so Henry I. claimed—a control upon the reception of Papal legates by the English Church.

These customs, though it does not appear that it ever came to a question of enforcing them, formed a precedent for later sovereigns, and often a battle-ground between the rulers in Church and State. But they created at least as many difficulties as they solved. It might be necessary to limit the power of Church assemblies, and to restrain the exercise of spiritual power by which the king in consorting with his own men might become, as it were by a by-blow, excommunicate. When so much of the foreign policy of the country was conducted through the Papal Curia, where the strings of all international relations were held, it was undoubtedly wise to control such recognition of a Supreme Pontiff, when two opponents claimed the Chair of St. Peter, as might commit the English king, against his will, to

a warfare with the emperor and the emperor's nominee. But no concordat on the lines of the historic maxim "*Cujus regio ejus religio*"¹ has ever been wholly satisfactory or successful. It may work well where Church and State, as under Lanfranc and William, are agreed; but a bad king, or an archbishop with a policy of his own, must soon upset the arrangement.

It might seem that by these rules William intended to tie the hands of the Church; but if he fettered her action in one direction, he enlarged her freedom in another. The Church courts, under the old English kings, though they retained jurisdiction over moral questions and the doctrine and discipline of the clergy, had become assimilated in procedure, in time of session, and even in the persons attending them, to the local courts of hundred and shire. The bishop sat in the shire-moot, and there, without adjourning to his own court, he would hear suits which to the strict lawyers and canonists of Normandy seemed wholly apart from lay jurisdiction. William and Lanfranc, though they were no obedient vassals of the Pope, were thoroughly imbued with the spirit of order and love of distinction and definition which animated the legal mind of Gregory VII. It was intolerable to them, as it would have been to him, that any branch of law should be carried on, as it were, at haphazard. Thus, an edict was issued by the king with the object of putting an end to confusion, and making Church and lay courts separate in action as they were in idea. No longer were bishops and archdeacons to hear ecclesiastical cases in the hundred-courts. They were to try their causes in their own courts, and "*secundum episcopales leges et sanctorum canonum precepta*,"² not by customary law. They were to allow no spiritual questions to come before lay judges. Laymen, too, were forbidden to intrude themselves into ecclesiastical causes. The king would, through the sheriff, enforce the sentence of excommunication when issued by the bishop. While William thus placed the Church courts in a position of considerable freedom and independence, he gave to the clergy also an important part in the ordinary criminal jurisdiction. The last resort in criminal cases was the ordeal, the solemn appeal to the

The
Church
and the
State.

[¹ "*Whose is the land, his is the religion*": *i.e.* the sovereign controls the faith of his subjects.]

[² "*According to the episcopal laws and the precepts of the holy canons.*"]

judgment of God. This was now definitely placed under the control of the bishops, and was to be held only in their cathedral cities or in other places chosen by them.

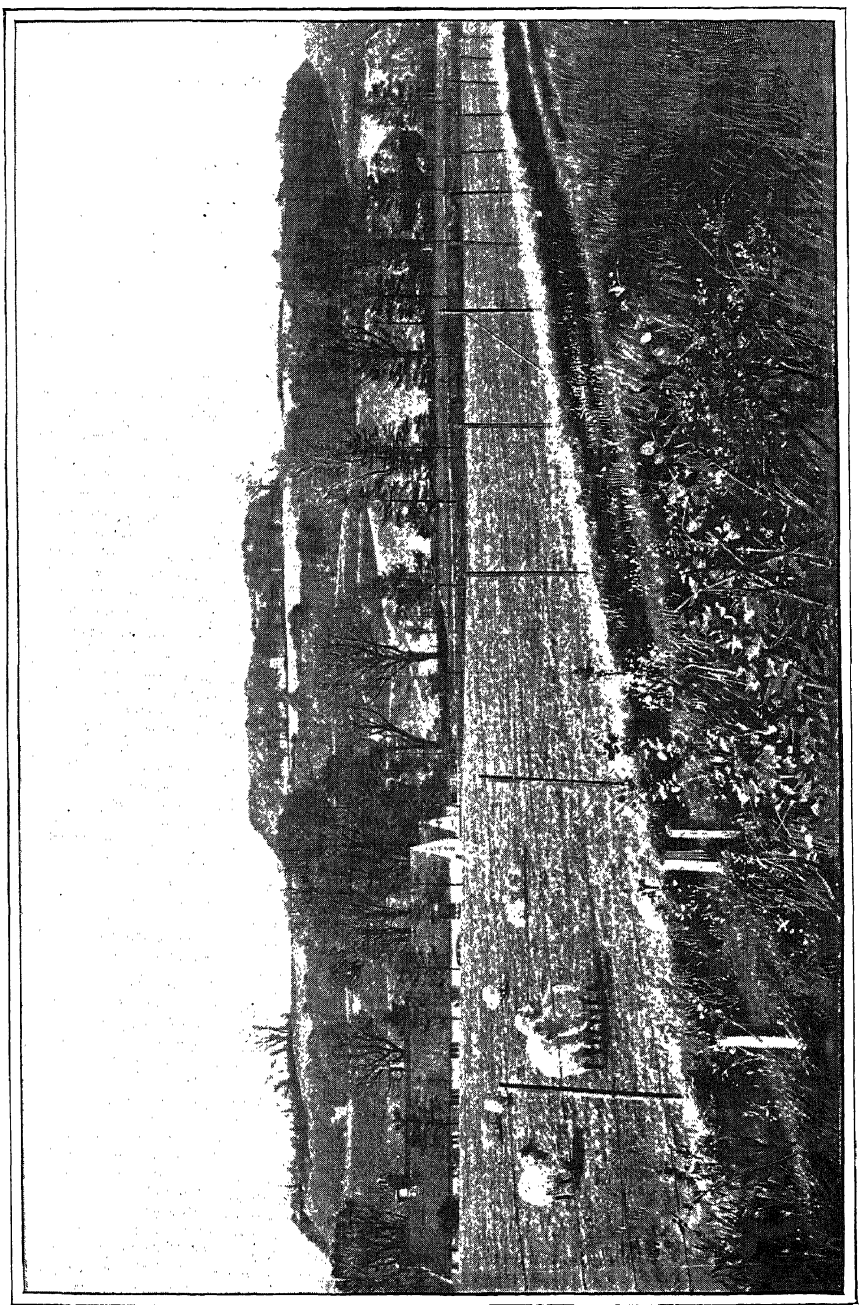
The importance of these changes of the Conqueror can hardly be overrated. The clergy, placed under a government which became more centralised every year, found themselves in possession of new powers and expected to show a class interest separate and independent of the rest of their countrymen. This interest was contended for hotly during the next two centuries, and the contest was a means of securing national freedom through the assertion of class privilege. But the growth of canon law, combined with the action of the Church courts and the revived study of the civil law, had a very natural result in the recognition of the Papal Court as a tribunal of appeal.

**Church
Reform.**

These measures of William and of Lanfranc cannot be taken by themselves; they were part of a general scheme for the purification and elevation of the Church. Not only were the bishoprics now filled by foreigners, but the sees themselves were removed from the country villages or small towns to cities. Thus Sherborne was deserted for the hill fortress of Old Sarum, Dorchester¹ for Lincoln, Thetford for Norwich, Wells for Bath, Selsey² for Chichester, Lichfield for Chester; and the bishops found themselves in the society of the warrior and the burgher rather than the monk and the hind. Great efforts, too, were made to check the marriage of the clergy and the growth of a hereditary ecclesiastical caste. Social evils were combated with zeal. Lanfranc and the good English bishop Wulfstan, whom no envy or avarice was strong enough to dislodge from the see of Worcester, which he served with such sagacity and holiness, made crusade against the kidnapping and slave-trade in the port of Bristol. All through we can see that the king's aim was to bring peace to the land and to the Church. He was not always successful. At St. Albans the tombs of the English abbots were destroyed by their Norman successor. At Glastonbury, Thurstan, in his unwisdom, called in his archers against the monks who loved their old Gregorian chants more than the new singing of

[¹ The Oxfordshire Dorchester, situated on the Thames, near Wallingford.]

[² In the extreme south-west of Sussex.]



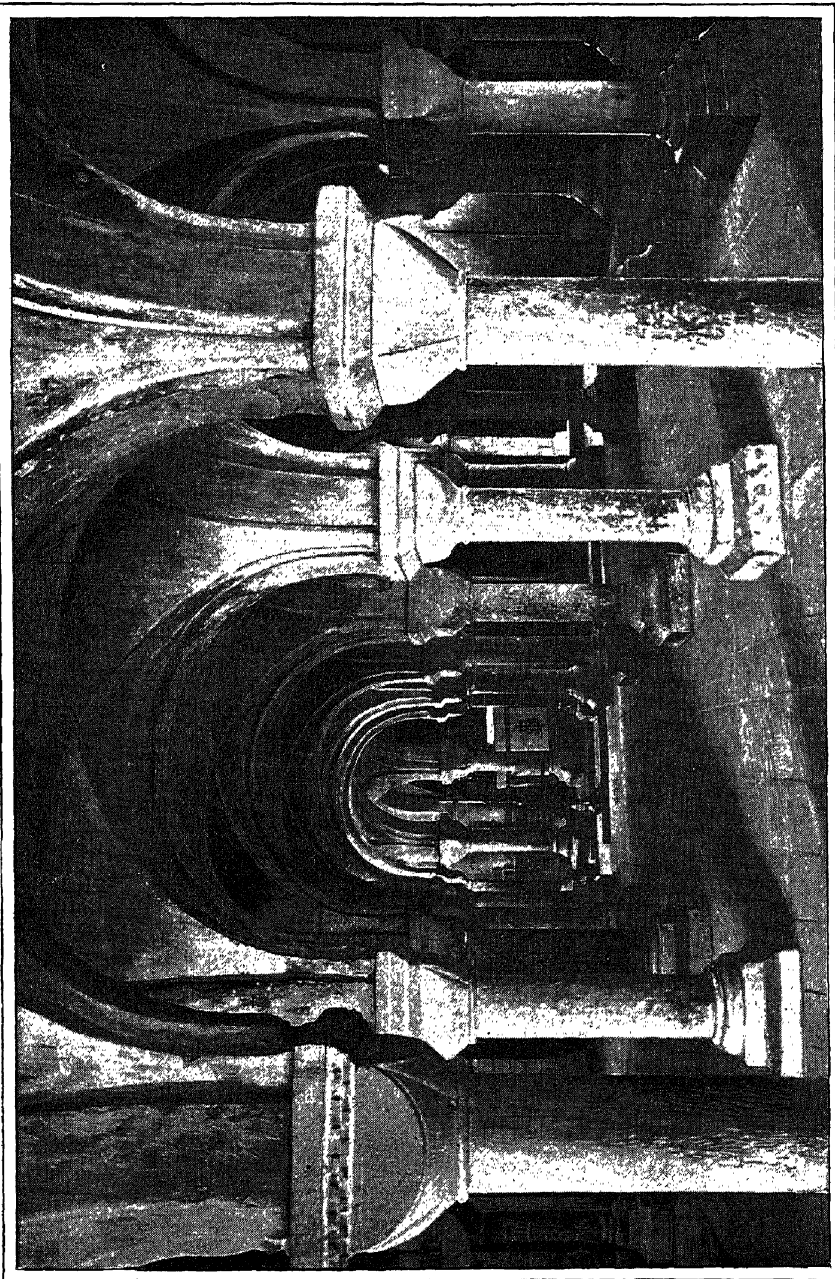
THE HILL FORTRESS OF OLD SALEM.

William of Fécamp. "Then were the monks sore afeard of them, and wist not what to do, and fled hither and thither. . . . And a rueful thing there happened that day, for the Frenchmen brake into the choir, and shot towards the altar where the monks were, and some of the knights went up to the up-floor (the triforium) and shot downwards towards the halidom (sanctuary), so that on the rood that stood above the altar stuck on many arrows. And the wretched monks lay about the altar, and some crept under it, and cried with yearning to God, craving his mildness for that they could get no mildness from men. What may we say but that they shot sorely, and that others brake down the doors there and went in and slew some of the monks to death, and many wounded therein, so that the blood came from the altar upon the graden (steps), and from the graden upon the floor."¹ But such strife was rare, and this was sternly punished. In most parts French and English were soon knit together by the bonds of the Church. Seven monasteries under St. Wulfstan joined themselves together—humble monks of English birth and rulers of the conquering race—as one heart and one soul. A pleasant illustration of the good-fellowship into which the two peoples soon entered comes to us from St. Albans. There even the insolent abbot Paul, who swept away the tombs of his predecessors, received from the English Ligulf and his wife two bells for the minster. "How sweetly bleat my goats and my sheep," said the worthy Englishman when he heard the new bells ring.

The
Church
under
William
Rufus.

Such in the main was the result of the Conqueror's reign: the bells of peace sounded above the chance local frays. So long as Lanfranc lived the peace continued; even the wild Rufus held his hand for fear of the wise man whom his father had loved. But when he died there began the carrying out of what seems to have been a deliberate policy of despiritualising the Church. The sees were kept vacant and their revenues appropriated. The appointments that were made were a matter of sale and barter; and men were placed in the most sacred offices whose merit was only their assistance to the king in his tyranny and vice. Ranulf Flambard, who "drave the gemots throughout all England," was given the bishopric of

[¹ Old English Chronicle, under the year 1083.]



ST. WULFSTAN'S CRYPT, WORCESTER CATHEDRAL.

Anselm.

Durham, a palatine see like those of the great German prince-bishops, which made its possessor a petty sovereign. At length, in 1093, a seemingly mortal illness brought the Red King to a fit of superstitious remorse, in which he filled up the see of Canterbury by the appointment of Anselm. No better choice could have been made. Spiritual where Lanfranc was only statesmanlike, Anselm combined in rare perfection the virtues of the philosopher and the saint. A Burgundian of Aosta, he had ruled the famous abbey of Bec with a gentle reasonableness more effective than severity. He was tender-hearted but resolute, high-minded yet childlike, and about the absolute purity of his devotion no slightest breath of doubt could cling. In the simple cell at Bec he thought out the remarkable books, the "Monologion"¹ and the "Proslogion,"² which show the Christian Platonism of the Middle Ages in one of its most fascinating aspects, and in the "Cur Deus Homo"³ he elaborated an argument which has profoundly influenced theology down to our own time.

Anselm accepted the archbishopric only on compulsion, but when at last he did so he had no intention of placing his conduct under the direction of any temporal prince. He was not to be terrified by the ferocity of the king, or entrapped into concession by the guile of treacherous bishops. From the moment of the king's recovery difficulties arose. There was the question of English acknowledgment of a Pope; and Anselm finally induced William to recognise Urban II. There was the question about the pallium, the badge of the primacy, made from the white wool of the lambs of St. Agnes and sent by the Pope to the archbishop; and Anselm stoutly resisted the claim of the king to place it on his shoulders, and at last, by one of those prudent compromises to which his wise humility inclined him, took it himself from the altar at Canterbury, on which it was laid. There was the accusation of supplying for the Welsh war a contingent insufficient

[¹ "Solitary discourse," a treatise "meant to represent a person discoursing secretly with himself on the ground of his belief in God" (Dean Church).]

[² "Address" (*i.e.* to God); an appeal to God to enable us to understand the reason of our faith. This work anticipates Descartes' attempt to prove the existence of God from the idea we have of a most perfect Being, by the argument that existence is part of such an idea.]

[³ "Why God is Man:" a treatise on the Incarnation.]

1216]

for his feudal obligations. There were the ceaseless exactions of the king and distresses of the Church; and these at last led to Anselm's departure, in 1097, to seek the counsel of the Pope.

Three years later the new king, Henry I., called the archbishop back again with expressions of reverence:—"Myself and the people of the whole land I commit to your counsel and that of those who ought with you to counsel me." Anselm returned as the first constitutional adviser of the Crown, and became in 1101 the means of uniting clergy and people in support of the king against the invasion of his brother Robert and the faithless barons. For a time it seemed as though the days of the Conqueror were returned. Church and State were in firm alliance. But it was impossible for England to keep out of the European contest. Henry claimed, as did the monarchs of the Continent, that it was his to appoint

The
Church
under
Henry I.

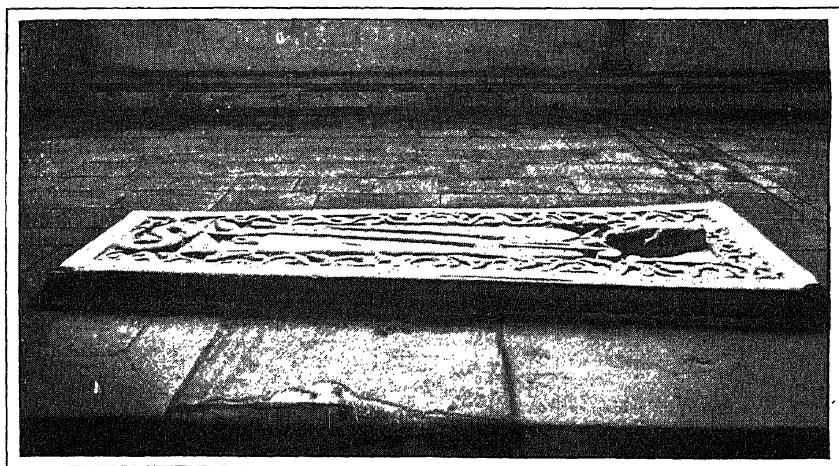
bishops and abbots, and to invest them with the ring and pastoral staff, the symbols of the prelacy. Before the significance of this had been seen the claim had been tacitly assented to; Anselm himself had received investiture at the hands of Rufus. But the Church, in a Lateran Council, at which Anselm was himself present, had now decided that it must be a question of principle to preserve the spiritual character of the appointments, and to protest against "the shame and mischief of allowing great Church offices to be disposed of by the kings and

princes of the time without an effort to assert their meaning and sacredness." This was a point at which there could be no concession. Appeals for the guidance of the Pope only



SEAL OF ANSELM.

confirmed Anselm in his steadfastness. Henry persisted in his demands, Anselm in his refusals; and at length the archbishop set out for Rome "in the king's peace, invested with all that belonged to him," to win a settlement at the



EFFIGY OF ROGER THE POOR, SALISBURY CATHEDRAL.

Papal Court. This settlement, due largely to his own tact and tolerance, and an anticipation by sixteen years of the Concordat of Worms, which ended the investiture dispute abroad, gave to the king the right of bestowing the temporalities alone, and of receiving the homage and fealty of the bishop-elect before consecration, while "the king granted and decreed that from that time forth for ever no one should be invested in England with bishopric or abbey, by staff or ring, either by the king or by any lay hand."

So the chief point of dispute was ended, and, as it seemed, in favour of the Church. But Henry still treated the ecclesiastical offices as a means of rewarding his ministers, and during his reign the character of the episcopate underwent a complete change. William the Conqueror, though he had appointed foreigners to the sees which he had made vacant for them, had preferred men who would serve the Church. Henry sought and rewarded those who were already ministers of the State. That the chapters had a right to elect their superiors he

[216]

allowed; but the election must be held in his court, and his candidates, without compulsion, must be chosen. With such canonical election was Roger, a poor priest, who had first attracted the king's attention by the rapidity with which he could say mass "fitly for hunting men," and had proved himself as steward and as chancellor to be *magnus in secularibus*,¹ chosen Bishop of Salisbury. He became justiciar, and the offices of State were in time filled by his kinsfolk as they were organised by his hand. Under him grew up the great system of financial centralisation depending on the Exchequer, of which his great-nephew² has left a curious account.

THE nineteen years which are known as the reign of Stephen are more truly to be regarded as an interval of mere anarchy between the reigns of two great rulers and organisers. But this brief period, given over, as it seems to be, to blank confusion, to utter turmoil and misery, is yet a period which in

A. L.
SMITH.
The
Anarchy.
1135-1154.



SEAL OF STEPHEN.

several ways has a unique place and interest in the story of the English race. These nineteen years determined how and where the two component elements of that race should be blended into one. They taught to the stubborn English spirit

[¹ "Great in the affairs of this world."]

[² Richard Fitzneale, in the "Dialogue on the Exchequer" (*Dialogus de Scaccario*).]

of local independence that essential lesson, the need of submission to centralisation, which even the dreadful years of Danish invasions and the dark hour of Norman conquest had failed effectually to teach. By allowing for once a real reign of feudalism, they made it for ever afterwards impossible in England. Finally, in these years of chaos, the two centres of hope and progress in the medieval world—that is, the Church and the town—made a decided advance in power and in claims.

On the death of Henry I. the feudal party refused to abide by the oaths which the late king had made them swear to his daughter Matilda. Their Norman pride could not endure to be ruled by the wife of a Count of Anjou. Stephen, son of William the Conqueror's daughter, already endowed with English estates and allied by marriage to one of the baronial families, and himself a man of gallant and generous spirit, was regarded by them as one of themselves. London supported him, to avoid what seemed a foreign rule; the aid of his brother, the Bishop of Winchester, and his own absolute submission to clerical demands, won the Church to his side.



SEAL OF MATILDA.

But the inherent weakness of his position forced him to call in mercenaries from abroad, and to lavish on his partisans titles and pensions and, above all, the fatal permission to raise new castles. In three years the new king had quarrelled with Robert, Earl of Gloucester, Matilda's half-brother; had been attacked by David, King of Scotland, her uncle; and had even thrown his own brother the bishop into the ranks of his foes by quarrelling with the powerful family group of ecclesiastics who had held the chief State offices since 1101. The landing of Matilda in 1139 was the signal for the open outbreak of civil war. In the course of this war Stephen was

captured at Lincoln and imprisoned, but exchanged for Earl Robert; Henry of Winchester, now Papal Legate, changed sides once more; London revolted again; and Matilda, who owed to her rival's unpopularity a brief success, owed its loss to her own imperious folly.



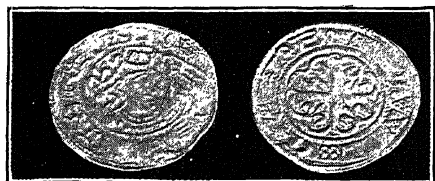
COIN OF ROBERT, EARL OF GLOUCESTER.

With her withdrawal to Normandy in 1146, and the death of her half-brother Robert, her cause languished till 1148. In that year her son Henry, now aged fifteen, arrived in Scotland, and began to attack England from that side. In 1150 he was made Duke of Normandy, and soon succeeded to Maine and Anjou. But after his marriage in 1152 to Eleanor of Aquitaine had made him lord of two-thirds of modern France, his mere advent in England was enough to force his rival to the compromise called the Treaty of Wallingford. Stephen was to retain the crown for life; and Henry was to be adopted as his son and to succeed him.



COIN OF ELEANOR OF AQUITAINE.

During this long conflict the nobles had made hardly a pretence of even party loyalty; it was a greedy scramble for power, and that of the worst feudal kind. "In olden days" (says the chronicler, William of Newburgh) "there was no king in Israel, and everyone did that which was right in his own eyes; but in England now it was worse; for there was a king, but impotent,

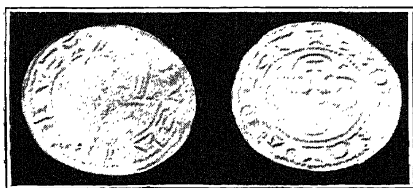


COIN OF STEPHEN.

and every man did what was wrong in his own eyes." The Peterborough continuation of the English Chronicle¹ sums

[¹ Under the year 1137.]

up all in words with which in their pregnant simplicity no modern description can possibly vie :—" They filled the land full of castles, and filled the castles with devils. . They took all those that they deemed had any goods, men and women, and tortured them with tortures unspeakable ; never were martyrs so tortured as they were. . . . Many thousand they slew with hunger . . . they robbed and burned all the villages, so that thou mightest fare a day's journey nor ever find a man dwelling in a village nor land tilled. Corn, meat, and cheese, there was none in the land. The bishops were ever cursing them, but they cared nought therefor, for they were all forcursed and forsworn and forlorn. . . . Men said openly that Christ slept and His saints. Such and more than we can say we suffered nineteen winters for our sins."



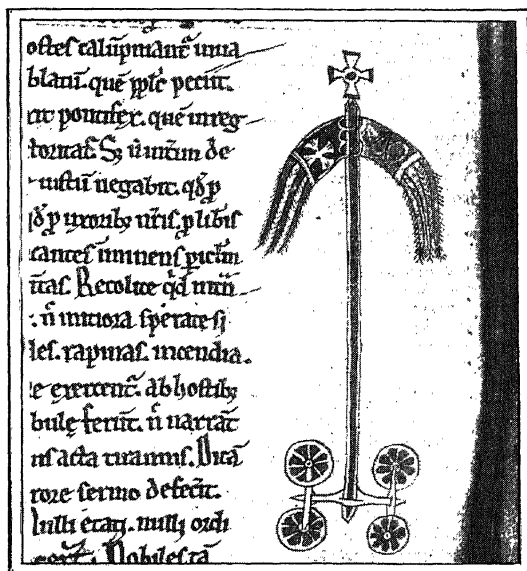
COIN OF EUSTACE.

Without such grim experience of what feudalism unmastered would be, the education of the English race would have been incomplete. Unlicensed castles, private

wars, private coinage, seigniorial jurisdiction, these outward signs of the feudal spirit are written at large on this page alone of our history. But meanwhile the silent unwritten processes of growth were working all for good. The boroughs—as a comparison shows of their charters under Henry I. with those won under Henry II.—were advancing steadily, and no doubt served as havens from the disorders outside. The Church itself was as a strong city of refuge. As Becket reminded Henry II., it was the Church that transferred the crown from Stephen to him. It was the Church that at the crisis of Henry I.'s death claimed the right "to elect and to ordain the king," that rejected the succession of Stephen's son Eustace, "the child of a perjured man" ; that declared that the God of Battles had decided the ordeal against Stephen ; and that, when at length peace was made, blessed it with the blessing of Isaiah's prophecies.

In that other important but almost hidden process, the fusion of Norman with English blood, the Church again plays its part ; for the best evidence of this fusion lies in two events which are both under clerical direction. These are the Crusading

expedition of 1138, which took Lisbon from the Moors; and the Battle of the Standard, a defeat of the Scots at Northallerton, 1138, by the militia of the northern shires, accompanied by their parish priests, bearing as standard a crucifix. On each of these occasions English yeomen obey Norman leaders; English and Normans are called "the sons of one mother"; English and Norman traditions are alike invoked. We are prepared for the



THE STANDARD.
(Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

official testimony a few years later that owing to intermarriages it had become impossible to distinguish English from Norman, except in the case of serfs.

The wheel had come round; the evil of the day of Senlac was worked out; its good effects—the vivifying and widening of Anglo-Saxon life and character by the keener, loftier Norman temper, the defining and concentrating of Anglo-Saxon institutions by the Norman genius for organisation, the stimulating and awakening of Anglo-Saxon patriotism by the Norman tyranny—were by this time incorporated and absorbed. From this period of fierce trial there emerges as from a furnace a new

product—the English national character; and to its fusion of Norman fire with Saxon earnestness we owe the noblest scenes in our “rough island story” and the most imaginative creations of our unrivalled literature.

A. L.
SMITH.
The Early
Plantage-
nets:
Henry II.

THE Plantagenet family, who began with Henry II. — an occupation of the throne that was to last for more than three hundred years—were a family of characters so remarkable that contemporaries accounted for them by tracing their descent back to a demon ancestress. Of them all, perhaps Henry II.



SEAL OF HENRY II.

was the most remarkable. Strong man as he was, all his capacities of mind and body, all his organising genius and clearness of purpose, his fiery energy and harsh, stubborn will were needed for the task before him. That was, to build up a lasting fabric of centralised power. This meant that he must finally crush feudalism, call in the conquered race to co-operate in political work, and weld together English local institutions with Norman principles of centralisation.

His first measures were drastic enough, but were facilitated by the exhaustion of the land after the civil wars and the withdrawal of many barons to the Holy Land for the Crusade of 1147. “Those ravening wolves, the Flemish hirelings, were driven forth; the new castles razed; the Crown demesnes and revenues recovered; and justice set to work again.” Here and

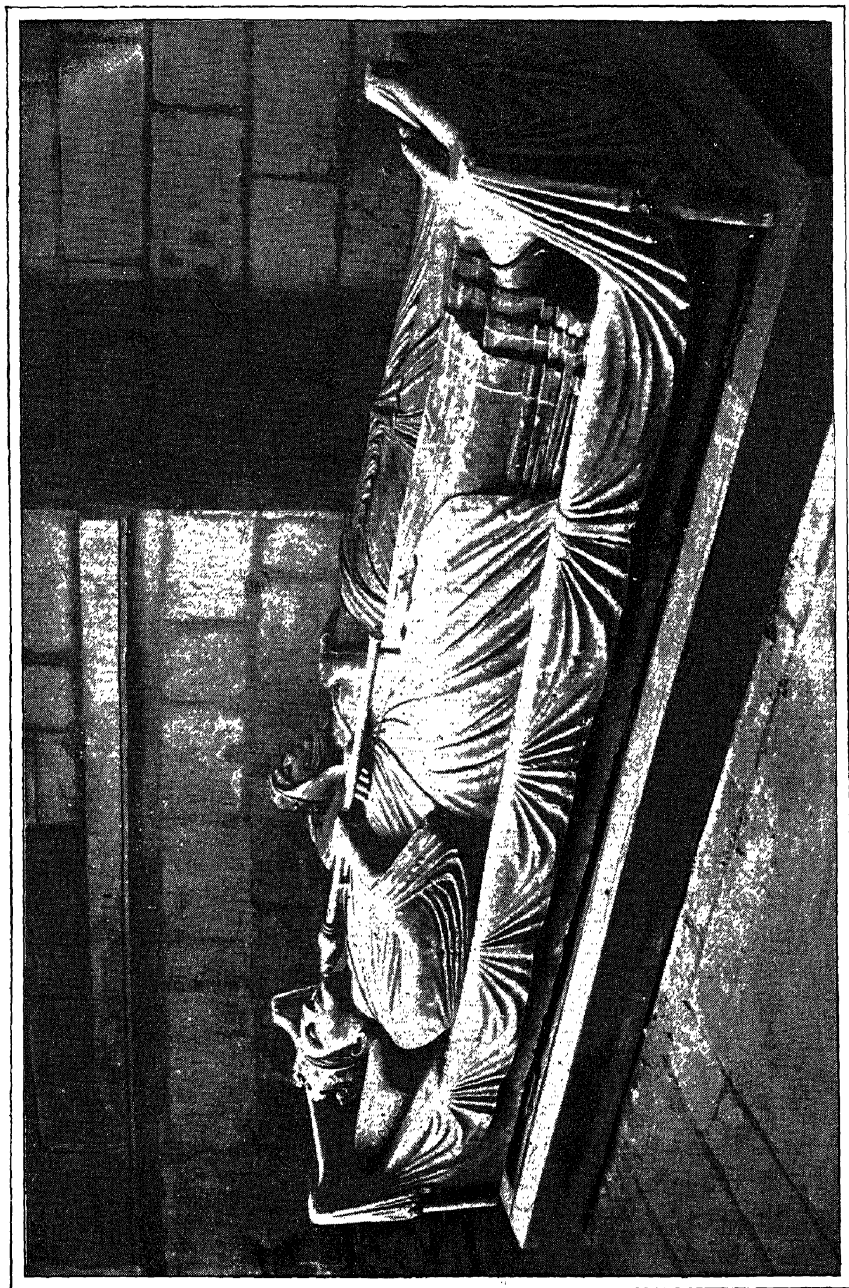


Photo: Dutton, Rouen.

EFFIGIES OF HENRY II. AND ISABELLA, WIFE OF KING JOHN, FONTEVRAULT.

there a Mortimer or a Bigod showed fight for a brief while, but as a whole the feudal party looked on and made no sign while for nineteen years the unresting king was founding deep and strong his administrative and judicial system, on which, when at last the barons awoke, their forces dashed themselves in vain.

This result, demonstrated thus in 1173, was already a foregone conclusion when in 1159 the barons accepted the king's offer to commute for a money payment the military service due for their fiefs. By this institution of scutage¹ the king at one stroke destroyed the military strength of feudalism and supplied himself with a far more convenient mercenary force for his war abroad.

For Henry II., though wise enough to feel that England was the real key of his dominions, yet, being lord in his own and his wife's right of two-thirds of France, was more often abroad than not, and was rarely free from war with his neighbour the King of France. In 1158 he had betrothed his son Geoffrey to the heiress of Brittany, and himself became guardian of the Duchy on the Duke's death in 1165. In 1159 he laid claim to the county of Toulouse, and was embroiled in constant, if rather uneventful, warfare with King Louis VII. This became an important fact when Louis offered shelter to Thomas Becket in 1167. The conflict between Henry and Becket will be dealt with on a later page (p. 390). But Becket's murder in Canterbury Cathedral was the fatal blunder of Henry II.'s life, and the dividing-point of the prosperous from the disastrous period of his reign. Its first effect was to raise such an outburst of religious feeling that he had to escape from it by an expedition to Ireland. A Bull of Adrian IV. in 1156 had already assumed to annex Ireland to the English crown, and in 1170 Richard de Clare (Strongbow) had taken Dublin, married the heiress of Dermot, King of Leinster, and succeeded to that province. Henry now marched through Ireland, receiving homage from all the native chiefs, and left Strongbow as his deputy to govern the whole island. Thus a step was taken in the great design of a union of all the British Isles under one crown; for Wales now contained but two small independent kingdoms, Gwynedd and Debenborth (p. 353).

Relations
with
Ireland
and Wales.

[¹ Literally "shield-money."]

Though Henry II. thrice attacked the former with little success, yet until Stephen's reign the other Welsh princes appear at the English Court as vassals. The connection of Wales with England



MURDER OF THOMAS BECKET (MS. Jul. A. xl.).

had hitherto been slight. There were two brief invasions by Harold, in 1055 and 1063, a long series of piecemeal annexations by the Norman Marcher barons, and the settlement by Henry I. of a colony of Flemings in Pembrokeshire.

Scotland in 1157 had been forced to relinquish that hold on

Relations
with
Scotland.

the three northern counties of England which, despite the Battle of the Standard, had been maintained throughout Stephen's reign. Now in 1173 the Scottish king eagerly seconded the powerful league against Henry II. which was headed by Henry's own sons and joined by the King of France, the Count of Flanders, and the barons of Normandy, England, Brittany, Gascony. The connection of all this with the murder of Becket was shown by Henry when, as he saw the disasters thickening

around him, he hastened to the tomb of "the blessed martyr," and was scourged in penance before the shrine. That very day, men noted with awe, the invading host of William the Lion was utterly routed at Alnwick and the King of Scots captured. Even before Henry's arrival in England the Justiciar had defeated the rebel Earls of Norfolk, Leicester, and Derby.

By the Treaty of Falaise the King of Scots surrendered castles to Henry, did him homage at York, and acknowledged the English overlordship.



PENANCE OF HENRY II. AT BECKET'S SHRINE,
FROM A PAINTING ON GLASS.

The crisis had shown the precariousness of the accidental tie which bound together dominions reaching from the Cheviots to the Pyrenees, and embracing so many different races. But it had also shown the complete confidence of the English nation in the Crown; it had revealed the existence of a strong group of loyal northern barons, descendants of Henry I.'s ministers and ancestors of the men who were forty years later to take the initiative in the movement of Magna Charta; and it had tested and approved the strength of that administrative

[1216]

system which this great king had been putting together with rare insight since his very accession.

"Henceforth," proudly writes the royal treasurer, "let any one, however great a lord, learn that it is no light task to wrest the club from the hands of Hercules."

There was one cause which besides the sacrilege of 1170 opened the way for the peril of 1173. This was the king's relations with his own sons. He intended, doubtless, to divide out territories which he must have felt it hopeless to keep together. To secure the succession in England, Normandy, and Anjou to his eldest son Henry, he had the coronation performed by the Archbishop of York in 1170. Geoffrey would be Duke of Brittany. Richard was to rule Poitou and Aquitaine. John was appointed lord of Ireland in 1177. But the sons were not content to wait for their father's death. The three eldest joined the rebellion of 1173 against him; and when, during Richard's successful revolt against him in 1188, the old king

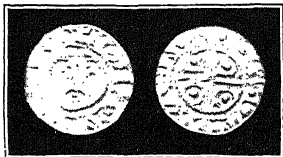
Henry II.
and his
Sons.



SEAL OF HENRY, SON OF HENRY II.

discovered that John, his youngest and best-loved child, had long been intriguing against him, the shock of this news, coming close upon the seizure of Anjou and Touraine by his despised and hated rival, Philip of France, and his humiliation before that rival and his own unnatural son, killed him in two days. The domestic history of his later days is a tragical one. A treacherous and revengeful wife; sons who made war on each other and on him, and brought the darkest accusations against him; the death of his eldest and third sons—in all this men traced a divine vengeance for "the saint martyr of Canterbury," for Henry's own illicit amours, and for his ungovernable and

blaspheming temper. But despite the failure of his foreign policy, the years from 1173 to 1189 continued the great series of measures by which the fabric of our Constitution was being built up. The "Assizes" united



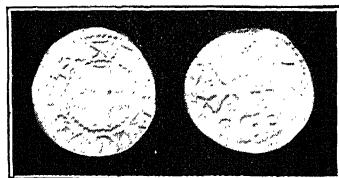
IRISH HALFPENNY OF JOHN.

indissolubly the royal and the popular elements of justice, replaced judicial combat by something not far from our trial by jury, encouraged the principle of elective representation, revived and reorganised the national militia. In 1170 a clean

sweep was made of the corrupt local sheriffs, and royal officials were substituted. In 1178 we begin to discern the appellate jurisdiction of the King's Council, the germ of our Chancery courts. In 1188 two important advances are made in taxation, whereby the clergy are put under contribution, and personal property henceforth shares the burden with land. Few have been the kings whose career and experience were more varied; very few who could show such many-sided abilities and so strong and remarkable a personality; perhaps none who did more lasting good to their people, than Henry Plantagenet.

Richard I.

Under Richard I., a king who could hardly speak a word of English, whose whole stay in the country amounted only to a few months, who treated all English offices and royal possessions as so much saleable property, it would seem as if there must come a check to the constitutional progress which had been the direct fruit of alliance between the people



AQUITANIAN COIN OF RICHARD I.



COIN OF HENRY II.

and the Crown. But the royal ministers carried on the great work as thoroughly as before; they enlarged the self-governing powers of the local courts of hundreds and shires; they had the grand

juries for the assizes elected; they made assessment by elected representatives the regular rule for taxation both of personalty and of land, and thus left but one step to be taken towards the creation of representative Parliaments; they augmented the rights given in charters to boroughs; and when they let London organise itself under an elective mayor, they were permitting an advance in municipal independence such as (says Richard of Devizes) "neither Richard himself nor his father, Henry, would have allowed for a thousand times a thousand marks."



SEAL OF RICHARD I.

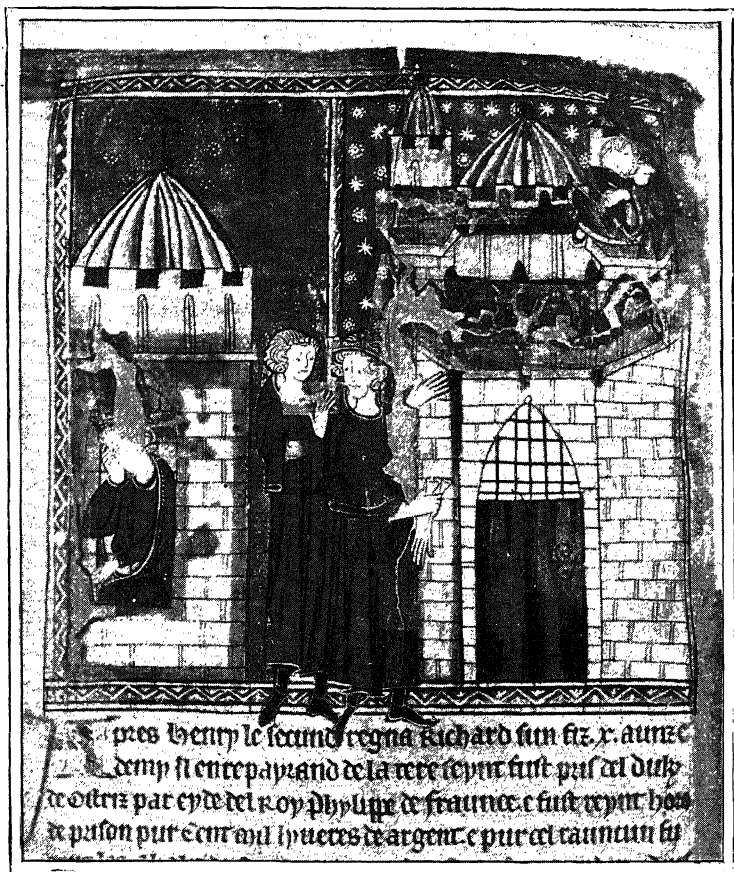
Most of this wise policy, however, came after the downfall of William Longchamp, the Bishop of Ely. This man, a Norman by birth, and insolently contemptuous of the English, was left by Richard in 1189 to govern the kingdom. As Justiciar and Chancellor and Papal Legate his power was so great that only the most foolish arrogance in exercising it can explain his failure. He had bitterly offended not only his colleagues, but also the prelates, the barons, the Londoners, the mass of the nation, when in 1191 John, released from the oath of three years' residence abroad that Richard had imposed upon him, headed the movement against the "upstart" which ended in his dismissal and exile. Thus for the first time in our history had expression, however imperfect, been given to that most fruitful of all constitutional ideas—the responsibility of the king's ministers, not to the king alone, but to the nation also. But bully and braggart as Longchamp had been, he was at

least loyal to his absent master. John—who in position, if not in official title, held the first place in England through 1192 to 1193—spent all his energies in plotting to wrest the crown from his brother, who was now, to the scandal of Christendom, held a captive on German soil. When the passionate remonstrances of Queen Eleanor, his mother, and the loyal generosity of the whole English nation in raising the enormous ransom, freed Richard in the spring of 1194, John was warned by his accomplice, Philip of France, with the significant notice, "Take care of yourself; the devil is loose." John, who was at the time openly warring against the Justiciar, was treated better than his deserts. In a brief stay of two months Richard settled the kingdom to his mind, and handed it over to Hubert Walter, Archbishop of Canterbury, Papal Legate, who now became Justiciar as well. He was nephew of Ranulf Glanvil, who had succeeded in 1180 to the Justiciarship after Richard de Luci, and who had spent his life in Henry II.'s service. Nor was he unworthy to stand in this great line. It is true that, pressed himself by Richard's insatiable demands for money, he had to press hard upon the people; but to him was due most of the constitutional progress of the reign. His position of taskmaster encouraged at once the growth of ministerial responsibility and ministerial freedom of action. In 1198 the Great Council, led by St. Hugh, Bishop of Lincoln, flatly refused a royal demand for money: the sole precedent for such refusal was Becket's action in 1163. The Justiciar took the opportunity to resign, and Geoffrey FitzPeter, a great baron, succeeded him. During these last four and a half years of his career Richard was frittering away, in a petty warfare of vengeance against Philip, the powers of organisation and the fiery energy that, when exerted in Palestine, had almost availed to achieve the impossible, and restore life to the dead bones of the Frankish Settlement in the East.

It is characteristic of the man that he received his death wound in trying to wrest treasure-trove from a recalcitrant vassal, and that on his death-bed he displayed a noble generosity and a sincere penitence. He was hardly in any sense an Englishman, but he had done much for England, by his exploits, by his choice of ministers, and indirectly by his absences and his very extortions.

Richard had at one time intended to make Arthur of Brittany his heir; but in the end he accepted John, whose election shows that the feudal rule of descent had not yet superseded the Old English practice of choosing for king

The Reign
of John.
1199-1216.



IMPRISONMENT AND WOUNDING OF RICHARD I. (MS. Vitell. A. xlii.)

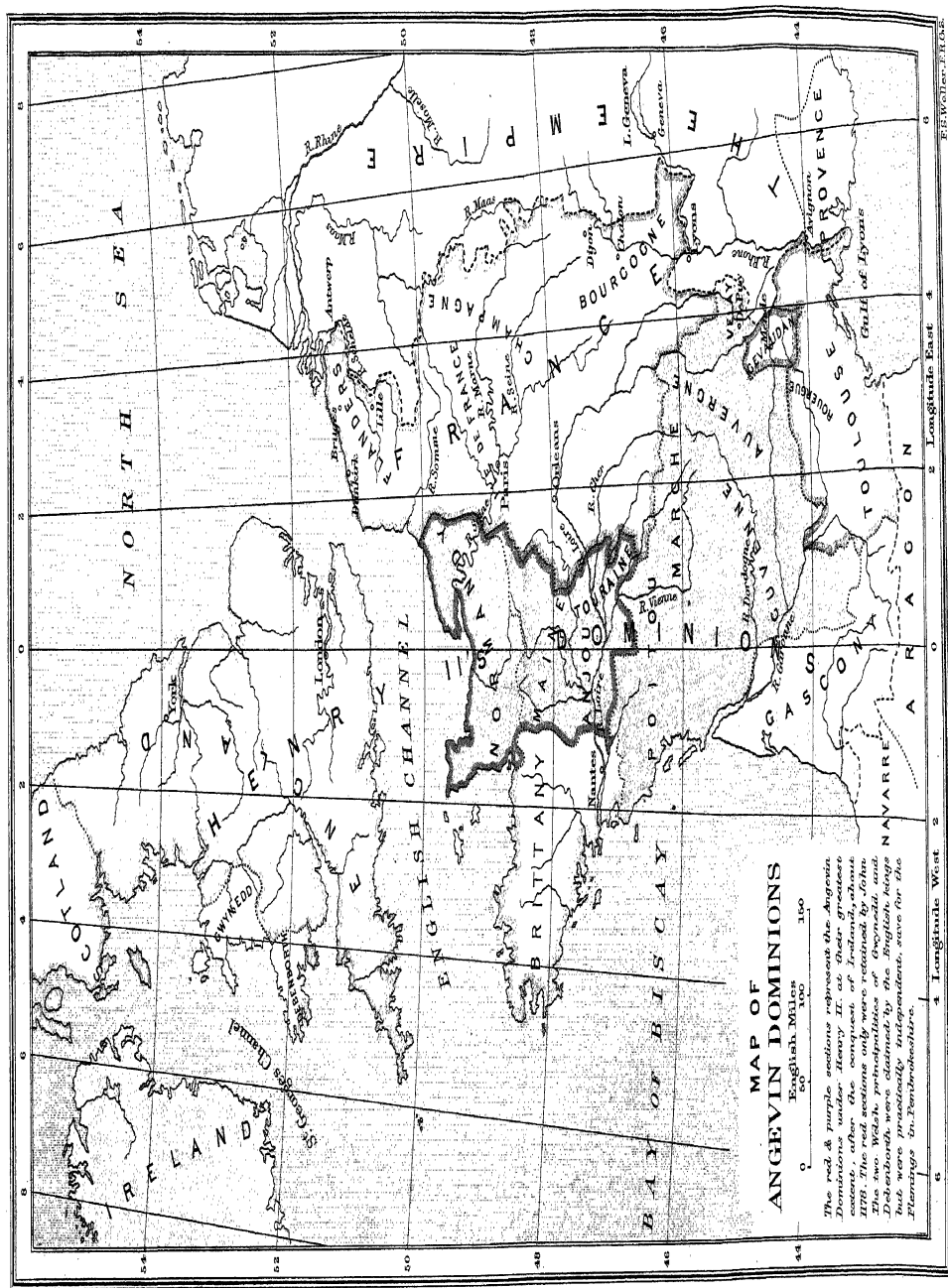
whoever of the royal house seemed most suitable. Arthur, for whom no single voice was raised in England, had a strong party abroad, and, besides Brittany, held for a while Anjou, Maine, and Touraine. But he was used as a cat's-paw by Philip, was taken prisoner by John, and disappeared—

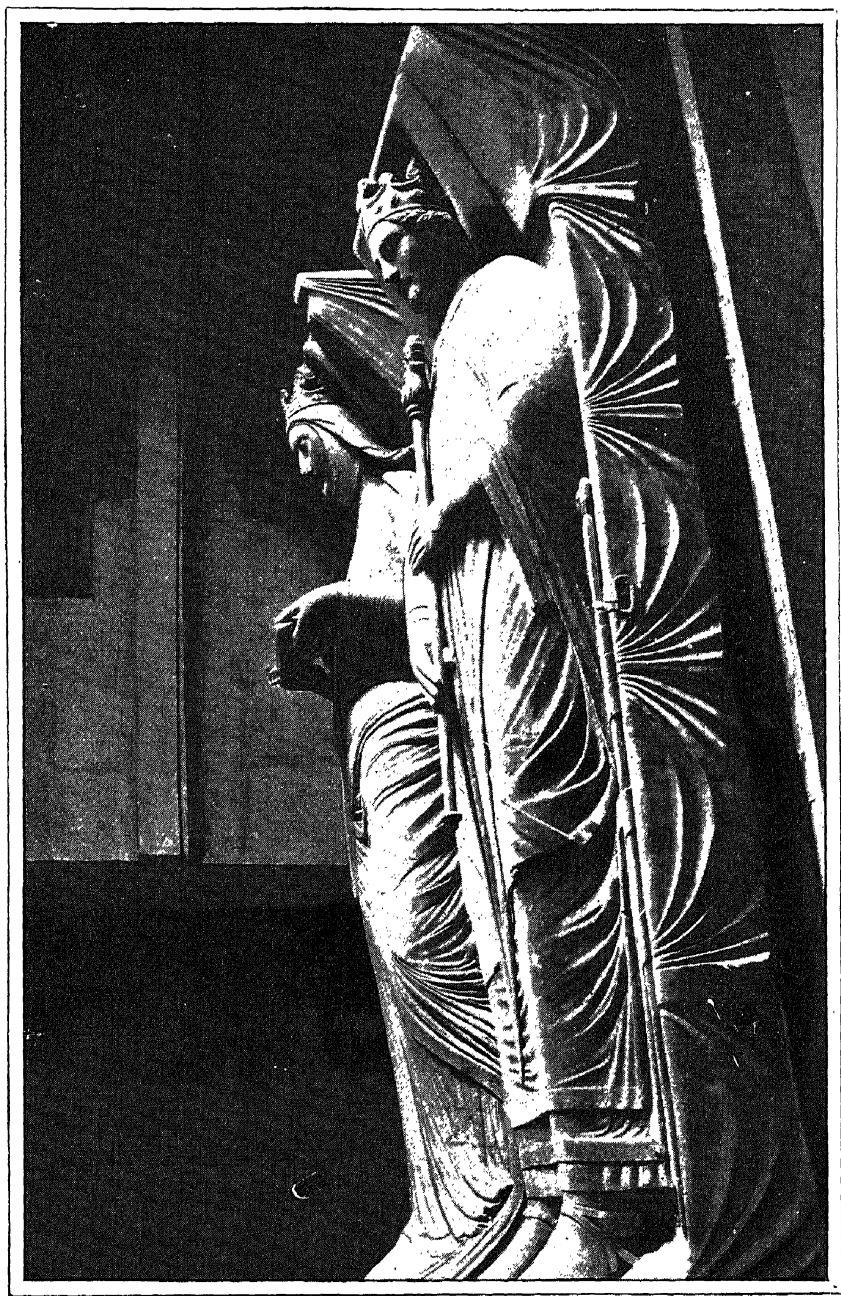
Loss of
Nor-
mandy

being no doubt murdered—in 1203. Upon this, Philip renewed the sentence of forfeiture which he had passed against John in the Court of Peers of France. By the end of 1204 the vast domains of Henry II., comprising three-fifths of modern France, were all lost, with the exception of Gascony and part of Guienne. Thus was England severed from Normandy; the tie, which had lasted 140 years, was broken. By it England had suffered much, but had gained even more—had gained a wider horizon, a European interest, and a breath of the daring, life-giving Norman spirit. Now that England had got all it could get, a continuance of the connection would have become a misalliance, a Mezentian union of the dead and the living. That this was so is shown by the striking fact that when the two countries now parted, only a handful of families were found who had lands in both. That is, the baronage on the two sides of the Channel had already become distinct. In fact, Henry I. had repeatedly confiscated the English estates of the most turbulent Norman barons. The feudal element had learned its lesson in 1174, and had now been drilled by fifty years of strict order; Henry II.'s scutage turned military feudatories into country gentlemen; families like the Beaumonts and the Montforts divided up their estates, the Norman to the elder branch, the English to the younger. From all these causes the baronage had become genuinely English. That this was so is proved above all by the confidence which the people began to repose in them, a confidence which makes the chief feature in constitutional history for the next two hundred and fifty years, and which is nobly displayed and nobly justified on the page of Magna Charta.

King,
Barons,
and Pope.

The barons had felt a keen humiliation at the loss of the French provinces—less, perhaps, at the actual loss than at the contemptible manner of it. When first the danger arose, John had insolently demanded their feudal service, though he had carried out none of the solemn promises made at his coronation, but had seized their castles, and in several cases dishonoured their families in the foulest way. When the forces did assemble, thrice he plundered and dismissed them; or only took them across the sea to look on idly while the Norman fortresses fell. The conduct that was really due to





EFFIGIES OF RICHARD I. AND QUEEN ELEANOR, FONTEVRAULT.

Photo : Dureau, Rouen.

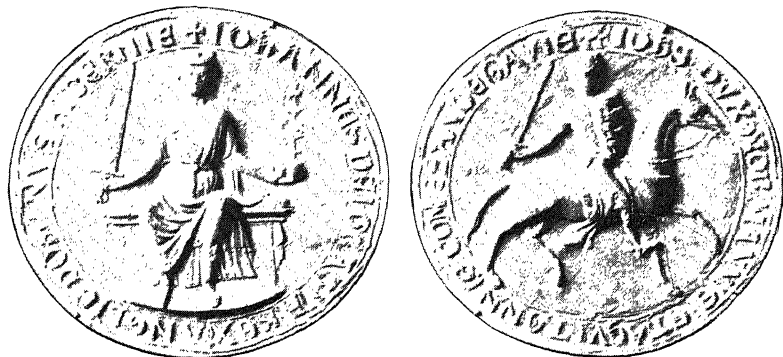
suspicion and consciousness of inadequate means could in the barons' eyes show only as cowardice and imbecility. In 1213 they flatly refused to send a force abroad at all; now that Normandy was gone, Poitou was nothing to them. But the decisive factor in the sum of the events which issued in Magna Charta was John's quarrel with the Church. On the very day of Hubert Walter's death in 1205, the younger monks of Christ Church, Canterbury, elected their sub-prior, and sent him off at once to Rome for Papal confirmation. But the king got wind of it, and promptly installed his own candidate in the estates of the see; and at the same time the bishops insisted that the right to elect an Archbishop of Canterbury was theirs. The Pope, the great Innocent III., saw his chance. He overrode the claims of all three parties, and appointed a member of his own Court, an English Cardinal resident at Rome, Stephen Langton. No better man could have been chosen. It was natural, therefore, that John should refuse to receive him, and, when punished by an Interdict in 1208 being laid on the kingdom, should retaliate by outlawing the bishops and confiscating Church property. The next step was the solemn excommunication of the king; and the final one, a Bull of deposition. The closing of the churches, the hushing of the bells and services, the cessation of the sacraments, the severance of himself from the Church like a leper, the absolving of his subjects from their allegiance, the commission to King Philip to invade England and wrest the kingdom from "a son of perdition"—against all these John only hardened his heart. But when a crazy fanatic prophesied that on Ascension Day, 1213, John would have lost the crown, the king showed all the cowardice of a tyrant and the superstitiousness of a blasphemer, and grovelled in abject submission before Pandulf, the very Papal Legate who, in 1208, had been met only with a threat that "he should dance upon air" if he entered the royal presence again. John now gave up his kingdom to the Pope, to receive it back as a tributary and a vassal, and accepted Langton as archbishop. Langton entered England, and the key to the whole situation was found. John had outraged the barons, had desecrated the Church, had despoiled and oppressed the people. But the barons had looked on while the Church had suffered;

Stephen
Langton.

1216]

and the barons had based their own resistance upon technicalities of feudal tenure, not on broad and national grounds. To bring out a mutual confidence between the three classes, and to fix this on a constitutional basis, was the mission of the new archbishop. At a Council in St. Paul's, 25th of August, 1213, he produced the Charter of Henry I., of which the Great Charter itself is but an expanded copy.

Under this banner the rebellion was organised while John



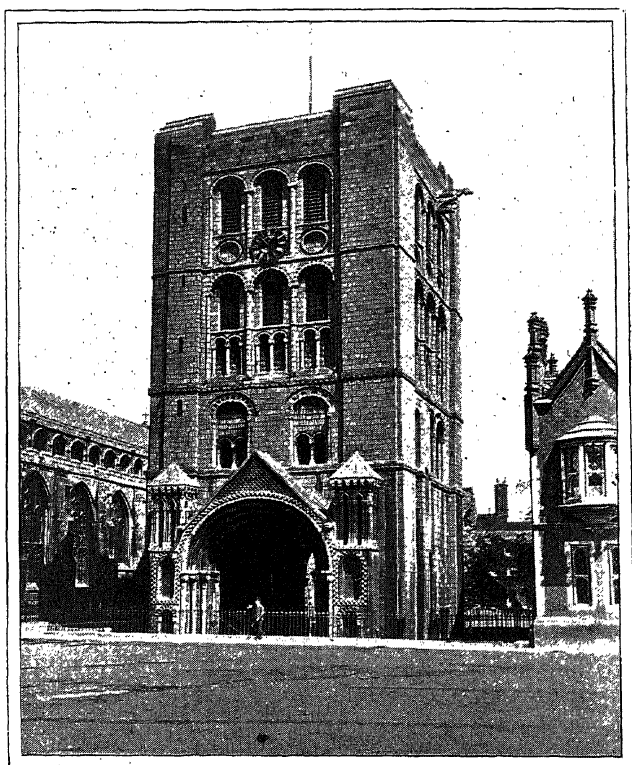
SEAL OF JOHN.

was abroad in Poitou, and in November, 1214, a month after he returned, the baronage had met at St. Edmunds and taken a solemn oath to exact from him a Charter on such a model. In vain John struggled to break up their party, to buy over the Church, to invoke the protection of the Pope. The toils closed around him. At the following Easter an armed host of some 10,000 men met at Stamford; on 24th May they entered London amid rejoicings. Hereupon the few barons who still adhered to the king—mostly members of the old feudal group, men like Earl Warenne and Ranulf, Earl of Chester—deserted him; and John, with rage and treachery in his heart, had to yield at last. The Great Charter was sealed at Runnymede, 15th June, 1215. It is a misunderstanding to regard the Charter either as containing new principles or as terminating a struggle. On the contrary, its character is eminently conservative, setting up "the laws of Henry I." as its standard. At the same time "confirmation of the Charter"

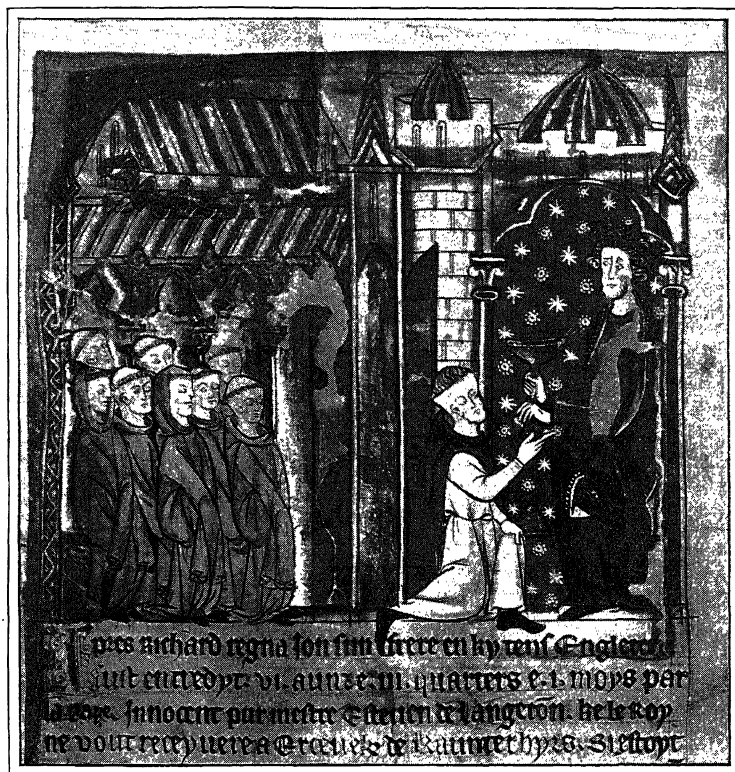
Magna
Charta.

becomes the rallying-cry of the next three generations, and the constitutional progress up to 1340 is little more than the working out of the Charter's main clauses.

John survived by sixteen months this day of his humiliation. In that brief space were crowded events well worthy to form the last scenes of Shakespeare's play—the fiery energy of the king, his victories over his enemies in detail, the Pope's excommunication of the rebels and suspension of the archbishop, the barons' desperate transfer of the Crown to Prince Louis of France, the blind and savage vengeance exercised by John's foreign soldiers, who swept to and fro through the land, and whose marches were a track of flames and blood, till the sands of the Wash ruined John's army, and



BURY ST. EDMUNDS—NORMAN TOWER.



THE MONK OF SWINESHEAD OFFERING JOHN THE POISONED CUP.
 (MS. Vitell. A. xiii.)

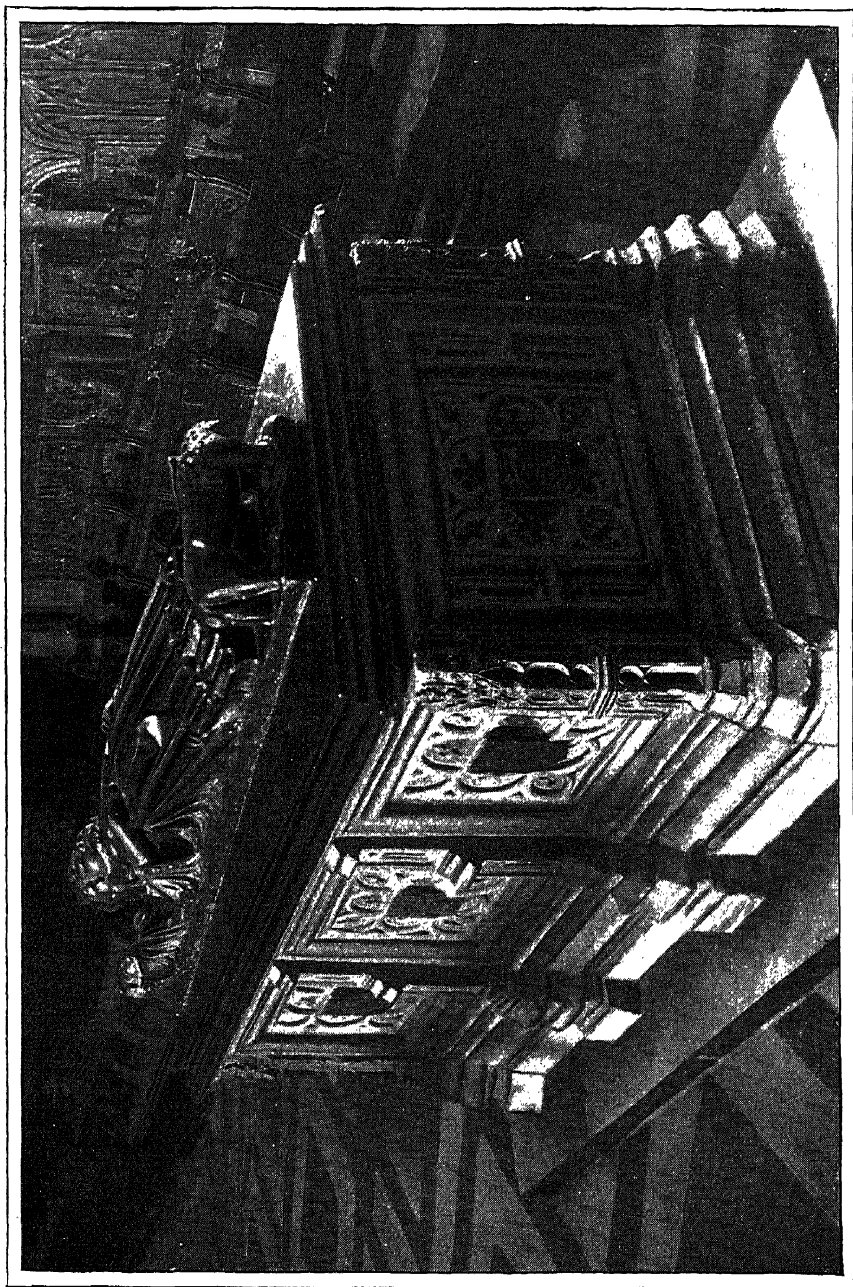
the monk of Swineshead—so ran the popular account—sacrificed himself to become the instrument of God's wrath upon the tyrant.

At the accession of Stephen the Church presented the appearance of a great secular corporation. Roger of Salisbury was still justiciar, his son Roger chancellor, his nephew Nigel treasurer and Bishop of Ely, and another nephew, Alexander, was Bishop of Lincoln. It was to Roger that Stephen chiefly owed his crown, and the support of the clergy was acknowledged in the new king's early charters. When the

W. H.
HUTTON.
The Con-
flicts of
Church
and
Crown.

civil war broke out, it was the foolish arrest of the great prelates that threw the country into confusion, suspended all legal and constitutional administration, and gave Matilda her little day of triumph. The Church held the balance between parties, and the pendulum swung as she directed. Individual churchmen stood out among the chaos of those "nineteen winters" as directors and guides, though often blind leaders of the blind. Henry of Blois, Stephen's brother and Bishop of Winchester, a stern Cistercian of unbending fidelity to the independent interests of the Church, endeavoured to be an arbitrator, but was little more than a changeable partisan. Theobald, Archbishop of Canterbury, was a consistent supporter of Matilda, but his influence was overshadowed by the great Bishop of Winchester. He gathered round him, nevertheless, a circle of students and thinkers who gave England fame in Europe, even in the midst of her darkest gloom at home. And the reign of Stephen witnessed an extraordinary extension of monasticism which was to change the whole features of Northern England. The northern shires had not recovered from their harrying by the Conqueror; even to 1130 the land lay waste round York for a breadth of sixty miles. It was the monks, and chiefly the Cistercians, who turned the wilderness into a fruitful field. "In the short time Stephen bore the title of king," says William, the Augustinian Canon of Newburgh, "there arose in England many more dwellings of the servants and handmaids of God than had risen in the whole century past." Twenty religious houses in Yorkshire, nineteen in Lincolnshire, many more in other shires, were founded in the midst of the anarchy—"God's castles," says the chronicler, "in which the servants of the true anointed King do keep watch, and His young are exercised in war against spiritual wickedness." At the same time, too, the one distinctively English order was created. Gilbert of Sempringham, a Lincolnshire man, established a society to which both men and women were admitted, and which spread over England with great rapidity. His work was educational as well as spiritual, and William of Newburgh says "he bears away the palm from all who have applied their religious labours to the teaching and training of women."

Growth of
Monasti-
cism.

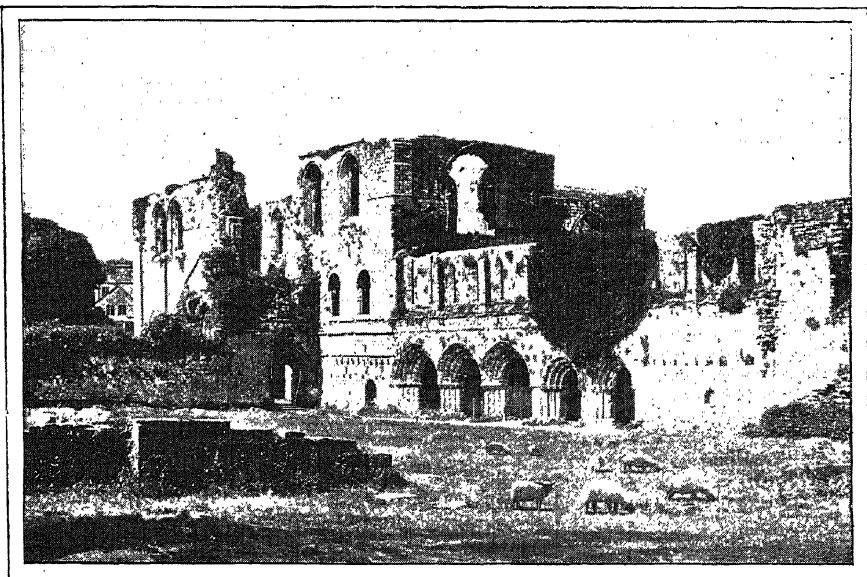


EFFIGY OF KING JOHN, WORCESTER CATHEDRAL.

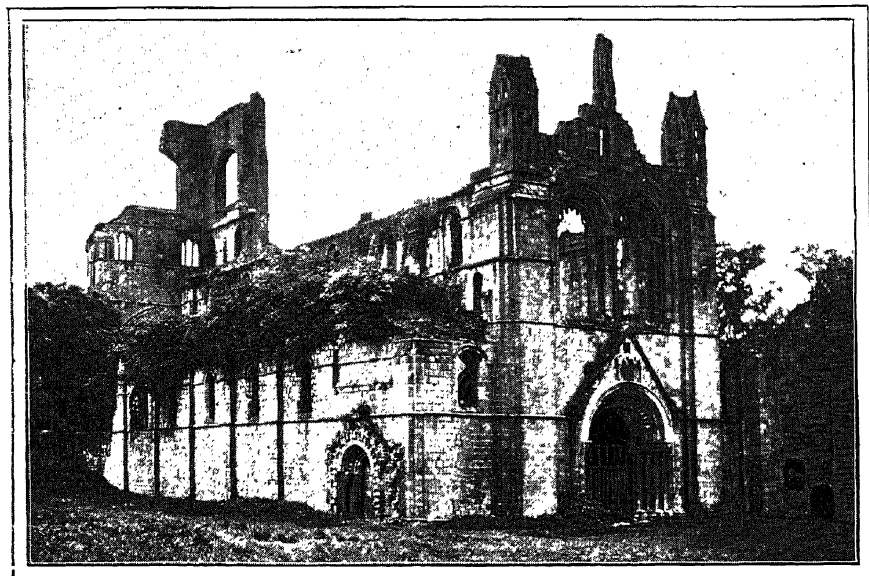
Extension
of Eccle-
siastical
Jurisdic-
tion.

Thomas
Becket.

While the work of the Church was thus progressing, and the terror and confusion of the times had suspended the sessions of the ordinary courts of the realm, it was natural that the Church courts, administered by men more and more trained in canonical and civil law, should encroach upon the province of the secular jurisdiction. Suits between clerk and layman concerning land, matters of criminal issue in which a clerk was interested as criminal or as injured, debts in which there was a pledging by oath, and the like, fell wholly into the hands of the ecclesiastical courts. Thus, when the land was again at peace, and Henry the Angevin sat on the throne of his grandfather with a settled aim to make all men equal before one system of law and government, a conflict between Church and State was inevitable. Foremost among the scholars of Archbishop Theobald had been one Thomas of London, the son of Gilbert surnamed Becket, a merchant of Rouen who had settled in London and become sheriff. A bright lad, of keen wit and pure life, he had risen to be Archdeacon of Canterbury several years before Stephen died, and he was commended to his successor as "companion of his counsels," and became chancellor in 1154. The two young men became fast friends; "when business was over they would play together like boys of an age; in hall, in church, they sat together, or rode out. . . . Sometimes the king rode on horseback into the hall where the chancellor sat at meat; sometimes, bow in hand, returning from hunting or on his way to the chase; sometimes he would drink and depart when he had seen the chancellor. Sometimes, jumping over the table, he would sit down and eat with him. Never in Christian times were there two men more of a mind or better friends." So writes the friend and biographer of Thomas, William Fitzstephen, who was with him to the end of his chequered life. Thomas aided, if he did not guide, the great law reforms by which Henry inaugurated his reign; he went on embassies, he heard causes, he led knights in the field. But when Theobald died, and the king insisted that the man he knew and loved best should sit on the throne of Augustine, he "put off the deacon," and became, at a step, the champion of the rights and the claims of the Church. In October, 1163, at a council at Westminster, the king demanded that clerks accused of great crimes should be tried in his courts. He was not without the support of canonists



CISTERCIAN ABBEY, FURNESS. *Photo: Green Bros., Grasmere.*



CISTERCIAN ABBEY, KIRKSTALL. *Photo: Hudson.*

and civilians, and before long he won to his side the majority of the timid and time-serving bishops. In the Constitutions of Clarendon, January, 1164, he set out the claim at length, with added restraints on appeals to Rome, and on the trial of civil suits concerning lands and debts. The archbishop stood firm.

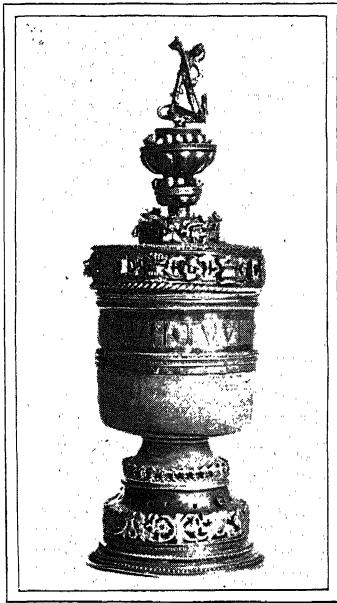
He was already engaged in a purification of the Church; in his own diocese "he plucked up, pulled down, scattered, and rooted out whatever he found planted amiss in the garden of the Lord." He was anxious, like the king, to purge the Church of abuses; but it was an internal reformation that he designed, and he would not call in the secular arm. Nine months passed, and there was no prospect of agreement. The king then caused Becket to be tried in a council of Northampton on charges bearing only indirectly on the questions in dispute. After a stormy scene the archbishop appealed to Rome, and in a few days left England. For the next six years he resided in France, and one attempt after another to make peace between Church and State failed. Henry persecuted and banished Becket's kinsfolk and supporters. Becket



Photo: Paul Robert, Paris.

THOMAS BECKET'S VESTMENTS, SENS.

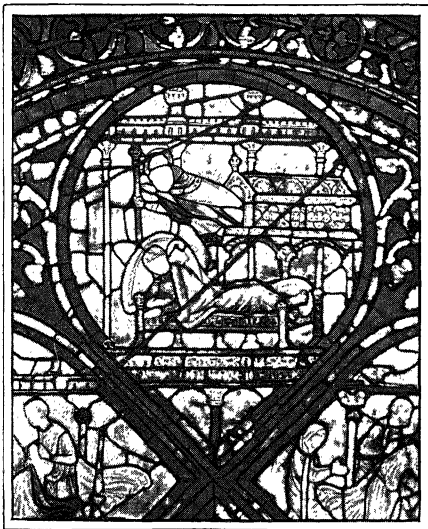
excommunicated those who invaded and plundered his see. Pope and Antipope bid for the English king's support, and Alexander III. now censured and now praised the vehemence of the Church's champion. As the years went on Becket, at Pontigny and at Sens, gathered round him a circle like that of an exiled monarch: the learned men of Europe corresponded with him, and the Church in all lands



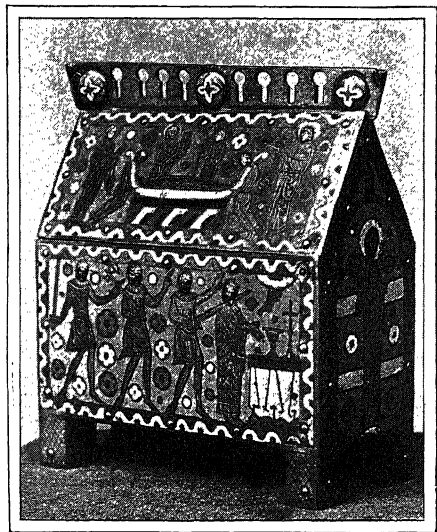
Thomas Becket's Grace Cup.
(By permission of the Duke of Norfolk.)



Painting of Becket's Murder.
(By permission of the Dean of Canterbury.)



Glass Medallion showing Shrine.
(By permission of the Warden of Radley College.)



Enamelled Reliquary of St. Thomas.
(By permission of the Dean of Hereford.)

both in obstinacy and emptiness." Thus in 1176, when a Papal Legate held council in London, "The Archbishop of York, being arrived the earlier, took possession of the chief seat, claiming the same as his own. The Archbishop of Canterbury, however, like a man who has sustained an injury, refused to take the lower room, and solemnly proclaimed his grievance in the matter of the seat that had been taken ; but his attendants, being more fiercely jealous of his dignity, proceeded from a simple strife of words to a brawl. The Archbishop of York (for the contrary party was the stronger) was driven with shame from the place he had so prematurely taken, and showed to the Legate his torn cope as a mark of the violence used towards him ; and he declared that he would summon the Archbishop of Canterbury with his gang before the Holy See. Thus, while the metropolitans battled, all business was thrown athwart, and the council was not celebrated, but dispersed ; and all those who had been summoned, and had come together to hold council, returned to

their own homes."

The Church under Richard and John was at once contentious and secularised. Hubert Walter, Archbishop of Canterbury, was a shrewd financier and an honourable conscientious statesman, but as a prelate he is noted chiefly for his quarrels with his chapter. Quarrels such as his, and those of Hugh of Nunant at Coventry, Savaric of Wells,



ST. HUGH AND THE LEPERS.
(Chapter House, Lincoln.)

and Geoffrey of York are, however, not always proof of the secular arrogance of bishops. They show, more often, the claims of the great monastic houses to be exempt from all

[¹ William of Newburgh, Book III., c. i.]

[216]

episcopal governance, and to be subject only to the Roman Curia. These claims, striven for with varying success during the next century, were slowly but surely won, and the greatest difficulty of the Church in England came to be, before the House of Anjou had ceased to rule, that independence of monasteries which made firm governance impossible, and arrayed monks and bishops in opposite camps, till the bishops themselves yielded to the tide, and handed themselves over, in the fifteenth century, as subservient vassals of the Papacy.



THE FUNERAL OF ST. HUGH.
(Chapter House, Lincoln.)

But it is easy to paint too dark a picture. There is light here, as elsewhere, if we will look for it. It may be that the crusades are fruitless; but the preaching of them at least held up before men a high standard of sacrifice and devotion. And few prelates but at one time or another gave their substance, if not their hearts, to the Holy War. Nor is there anything more touching in the history of the Middle Ages than the fervour with which bishop and priest, clerk and layman, threw away their lives to succour their brethren in the East. And at home men like St. Hugh stand out as models of sagacity, clear-sightedness, genuine piety. The man who could dare such kings as Henry II. and Richard I., and beat them with their own weapons, could shock the dignitaries of the Church by fixing his teeth in a precious relic. Yet no man more gentle or more reverend ever breathed. Later, when England fell under the rule of the vilest of her kings, an Englishman and an English Primate could lead the barons and the people to the freedom that was won for all time.

True
Church Re-
formers.

Of the struggle between John and the Church (p. 384) the most significant result was the way in which the Church was now brought forward as the champion of the people. When king and barons plunged again into war, it was Stephen Langton, patriot as well as prelate, who produced to the constitutionalists the Charter of Henry I., on which their demands should be based, and from which Magna Charta sprang. "*Quod Ecclesia Anglicana libera sit*"¹ is the first article of the Great Charter, and the freedom which allowed the chapters to choose their own bishops was the type and pattern of the liberty asserted for the whole land.

F.W.MAIT-
LAND.
English
Law under
Norman
and
Angevin.

THE Normans when they invaded England were in one important particular a less civilised race than were those English whom they came to subjugate. We may say with some certainty that they had no written laws. A century and a half ago a king of the Franks had been compelled to cede a large province to a horde of Scandinavian pirates. The pirates had settled down as lords of a conquered people; they had gradually adopted the religion, the language, and the civilisation (such as it was) of the vanquished; they had become Frenchmen. They may have paid some reverence to the written laws of the Frankish race, to the very ancient *Lex Salica* and the capitularies² of Merovingian and Carolingian kings. But these were fast becoming obsolete, and neither the dukes of the Normans nor their nominal overlords, the kings of the Franks or French, could issue written dooms such as those which Canute was publishing in England. Some excellent traditions of a far-off past, of the rule of Charles the Great, the invaders could bring with them to England; and these transplanted into the soil of a subject kingdom, could burst into new life and bear new fruit—the great record that we call "*Domesday Book*" is a splendid firstfruit—but written laws they had none.

To all seeming, the Conqueror meant that his English subjects should keep their own old laws. Merely duke of the Normans, he was going to be king in England, and he was

[¹ "*That the Church of England is free.*"]

[² Collections of ordinances.]

affirmer. qd infra e. qd angli. Nulla regi fidelis
 de nobili. nisi qd honore alius omni fidelitate in eo ser-
 uare. qd an cu omni munitione defende. Volo an ut omni
 hoies qd mecu adduci. aut p me in iudicio in pace
 mea. qd. Et si qd de illi occisus fuerit. tunc ei hat
 infra ang. dies homicida ei si potuerit. Cum an capi-
 re soluerit in. p. l. p. m. a. r. e. n. t. i. s. q. d. u. m. s. u. b.
 flamma illi dñi p. d. u. r. a. n. t. Ubi n. sub flamma defuerit
 ut homicidul in q. occisio facia. e. o. m. n. i. s. p. u. n. t. e.
 qd remanet. Et omni francigena q. tunc regis equum
 di. p. p. n. q. m. e. i. t. u. c. i. n. a. n. g. l. i. a. p. a. r. t. i. c. i. p. i. t. c. o. l. l. e. c. t. u. d. i. n. i.
 anglor. qd ipi dñe on hore q. dñe p. l. o. u. a. r. u. t.
 tunc legem anglor. Hoc dñe dñe dñe e. i. n. a. n. t. a.
 claudia.
 Hec dñe e. n. a. u. t. n. u. l. l. a. n. u. n. a. p. e. c. u. n. i. a. n. e. d. a. t. a. n. g.
 e. m. a. t. i. n. i. n. f. r. a. c. u. r. a. t. e. s. i. a. n. t. u. e. l. f. i. d. e. l. e. s. t. e. s. t. e. l. l. i.
 aliquid de iudicio. sine fidelitate. q. d. a. n. t. o. q. d. s. i.
 alio fecerit. soluat. q. p. l. o. u. a. t. s. e. a. f. o. u. s. f. a. c. i. a. m.
 Dñe e. e. n. a. s. i. n. i. f. r. a. n. c. i. g. e. n. a. a. p. p. e. l. l. a. t. u. r. a. n. g. l. i. a.
 de p. u. n. i. o. a. u. t. m. o. r. t. i. o. f. u. r. t. o. h. o. m. i. c. i. d. i. o. r. a. n. q. d. a. n.
 qd dñe a. p. p. a. r. t. i. c. i. p. i. t. a. q. n. e. g. a. r. i. n. i. p. a. n. g. l. i. s. t. e. d. e.
 f. e. n. d. a. t. p. o. t. e. s. t. n. o. l. u. e. r. i. t. a. u. t. m. a. r. t. i. f. i. c. i. u. m. a. n. g.
 dñe. i. n. a. n. a. n. g. l. i. s. i. n. f. i. r. m. i. t. u. r. s. i. n. e. m. u. n. i. c. i. a. l. i. u. q.
 p. o. t. e. s. t. a. n. t. S. i. q. d. e. o. m. n. i. s. dñe. a. n. d. e. o. l. s. o. l. u. t. r. e. g. i.
 i. n. a. n. g. l. i. s. f. r. a. n. c. i. g. e. n. e. a. p. p. e. l. l. a. t. u. r. q. p. l. a. r. e. n. o. l. u. e. r. i. t.
 n. u. d. i. a. s. a. n. t. dñe. n. o. l. o. e. n. f. r. a. n. c. i. g. e. n. a. p. u. r. g. a. r. e. t. e.
 f. a. c. i. n. m. a. n. t. i. s. f. r. a. n. c. i. a.
 Hoc qd p. a. p. i. o. n. o. l. o. i. n. o. m. n. i. s. h. a. n. t. q. t. e. n. e. n. t. l. e. g. e. e.
 a. n. u. a. r. d. i. r. e. g. i. s. i. n. e. n. t. i. n. o. m. n. i. b. r. e. b. a. d. a. n. t. u. l. q.
 o. l. i. t. u. r. a. d. m. u. l. t. i. t. u. r. p. o. p. l. i. a. n. g. l. o. r.
 O. m. n. i. s. h. o. dñe. t. e. c. e. n. t. i. s. i. n. p. l. e. g. i. o. n. i. s.

not dissatisfied with those royal rights which, according to his version of the story, had descended to him from King Edward. About a few points he legislated. For example, the lives of his followers were to be protected by the famous murder-fine. If a Frenchman was found slain, and the slayer was not produced, a heavy sum was to be exacted from the district in which the crime was done. The establishment of a presumption that every murdered man is a Frenchman until the contrary is proved—a presumption highly advantageous to the king's exchequer—gave rise in later days to the curious process known as "the presentment of Englishry." The hundred had to pay the fine unless the kinsfolk of the dead man would testify to his English birth. But this by the way. William had also to regulate the scope of that trial by battle which the Normans brought with them, and in so doing he tried to deal equitably with both Normans and English. Also it was necessary that he who had come hither as in some sort the champion of Roman orthodoxy should mark off the sphere of spiritual from that of temporal law by stricter lines than had yet been drawn in England. Much, again—though by no general law—he altered in the old military system, which had lately shown itself to be miserably ineffectual. Dealing out the forfeited lands amongst his barons, he could stipulate for a force of armoured and mounted knights. Some other changes he would make; but in the main he was content that the English should live under their old law, the law that now bore the blessed Edward's name.

**Law under
Henry I.**

And so again when on the death of Rufus—from Rufus himself we get and we expect no laws—Henry seized the crown, and was compelled to purchase adherents by granting a charter full of all manner of promises, made to all manner of people—the promise by which he hoped to win the hearts of Englishmen was that he would restore them to Edward's law with those amendments that the Conqueror had made in it. Henry himself, great as a governor, was no great legislator. A powerful central tribunal, which is also an exacting financial bureau, an "exchequer," began to take definite shape under the management of his expert ministers; but very few new laws were published. The most characteristic legal exploits of the Norman period are the attempts made by various

private persons to reconstruct "the law of St. Edward." They translate some of the old English dooms into Latin as best they can—a difficult task, for the English language is rapidly taking a new shape. They modify the old dooms to suit a new age. They borrow from foreign sources—from the canon law of the Catholic Church, from Frankish capitularies, now and again from the Roman law-books. But in Henry I.'s reign they still regarded the Old English dooms, the law of King Edward, as the core of the law that prevails in England. They leave us wondering how much practical truth there is in what they say; whether the ancient criminal tariffs that they transcribe are really observed; whether the Frenchmen who preside in court pay much attention to the words of Canute, even when those words have been turned into Latin or into French. Still, their efforts assure us that there has been rather a dislocation than a complete break in the legal history of England; also that the Frenchmen have not introduced much new law of a sufficiently definite kind to be set down in writing.

As yet the great bulk of all the justice that was done, was done by local courts, by those shire-moots and hundred-moots which the Conqueror and Henry I. had maintained as part of the ancient order, and by the newer seigniorial courts which were springing up in every village. The king's own court was but a court for the protection of royal rights, a court for the causes of the king's barons, and an ultimate tribunal at which a persistent litigant might perhaps arrive when justice had failed him everywhere else. Had it continued to be no more than this, the old English law, slowly adapting itself to changed circumstances, might have cast off its archaisms and become the law for after-times, law to be written and spoken in English words. Far more probably "St. Edward's law" would have split into a myriad local customs, and then at some future time Englishmen must have found relief from intolerable confusion in the eternal law of Rome. Neither of these two things happened, because under Henry II. the king's own court flung open its doors to all manner of people, ceased to be for judicial purposes an occasional assembly of warlike barons, became a bench of professional justices, appeared periodically in all the counties of England under the

guise of the Justices in Eyre.¹ Then begins the process which makes the custom of the king's court the common law of England. Ever since the Conquest the king's court had been in a very true sense a French court. It had been a French-speaking court, a court whose members had been of French race, and had but slowly been learning to think of themselves as Englishmen. Its hands had been very free. It could not, if it would, have administered the Old English written laws in their native purity: for one thing they were unintelligible; for another thing in the twelfth century they had become barbarous—they dealt with crime in a hopelessly old-fashioned way. On the other part, there was, happily, no written Norman code, and the king did not mean to be in England the mere duke he had been in Normandy. And so the hands of his court were very free; it could be a law unto itself! Many old English institutions it preserved, in particular those institutions of public law which were advantageous to the king—the king, for instance, could insist that the sheriffs were sheriffs, and not hereditary *vicomtes*—but the private law, law of land tenure, law of possession, of contract, of procedure, which the court develops in the course of the twelfth century, is exceedingly like a *coutume* from Northern France. Hundreds of years will elapse before anyone tries to write about it in English; and when at length this is done, the English will be an English in which every important noun, every accurate term, is of French origin.

Legal
language.

We may say a little more about the language of our law, for it is not an uninteresting topic. From the Conquest onwards until the year 1731 the solemnest language of our law was neither French nor English, but Latin. Even in the Anglo-Saxon time, though English was the language in which laws were published and causes were pleaded, Latin was the language in which the kings, with Italian models before them, made grants of land to the churches and the thegns. In 1066 the learned men of both races could write and speak to each other in Latin. We shall be pretty safe in saying that anyone who could read and write at all could read and write Latin.

[¹ Eyre is from Lat. *iter*, a journey. These were travelling members of, or delegates from, the king's high court, sent on circuit under the Act 22 Hen. II., 1186, and the forerunners of the present circuit system.]

As to French, it was as yet little better than a vulgar dialect of Latin, a language in which men might speak, but not a language in which they would write anything except perhaps a few songs. The two tongues which the Conqueror used for laws, charters and writs were Latin and English. But Latin soon gets the upper hand, and becomes for a while the one written language of the law. In the king's Chancery they write nothing but Latin, and it is in Latin that the judgments of the king's courts are recorded. This, as already said, is so until the year 1731; to substitute English for Latin as the language in which the king's writs and patents and charters shall be expressed, and the doings of the law-courts shall be preserved, requires a statute of George II.'s day.

Meanwhile there had been many and great changes. Late in the twelfth or early in the thirteenth century French was beginning to make itself a language in which not only songs and stories but legal documents could be written. About the middle of the thirteenth century ordinances and statutes that are written in French began to appear. Just for one moment England puts in a claim to equality. Henry III. "*þurȝ Godes fultume king on Engleneloande*,"¹ issued one proclamation in English. But this claim was either belated or premature. Under Edward I. French, though it cannot expel Latin from the records of litigation, becomes the language in which laws are published and law-books are written. It continues to be the language of the statute-book until the end of the Middle Ages. Under Henry VII. English at length becomes the speech in which English lawgivers address their subjects, though some two hundred and fifty years must yet pass away before it will win that field in which Latin is securely entrenched.

As the oral speech of litigants and their advisers, French has won a splendid victory. In the king's own court it must prevail from the Conquest onwards, but in the local courts a great deal of English must long have been spoken. Then, however, under Henry II. began that centralising movement which we have already noticed. The jurisprudence of a French-speaking court became the common law, the measure of all rights and duties, and it was carried throughout the land by

[¹ Through God's support king in England," the opening words of the proclamation in question.]

the journeying justices. In the thirteenth century men when they plead or when they talk about law, speak French; the professional lawyer writes in French and thinks in French. Some power of speaking a decent French seems to have been common among all classes of men, save the very poorest; men spoke it who had few, if any, drops of foreign blood in their veins. Then in 1362, when the prolonged wars between England and France had begun, a patriotic statute endeavoured to make English instead of French the spoken tongue of the law-courts. But this came too late; we have good reason for thinking that it was but tardily obeyed, and at any rate, lawyers went on writing about law in French. Gradually in the sixteenth century their French went to the bad, and they began to write in English; for a long time past they had been thinking and speaking in English. But it was an English in which almost all the technical terms were of French origin. And so it is at the present day. How shall one write a single sentence about law without using some such word as "debt," "contract," "heir," "trespass," "pay," "money," "court," "judge," "jury"? But all these words have come to us from the French. In all the world-wide lands where English law prevails, homage is done daily to William of Normandy and Henry of Anjou.

Henry II.'s
Legal
Reforms.

What Henry did in the middle of the twelfth century was of the utmost importance, though we might find ourselves in the midst of obsolete technicalities were we to endeavour to describe it at length. Speaking briefly, we may say that he concentrated the whole system of English justice round a court of judges professionally expert in the law. He could thus win money—in the Middle Ages no one did justice for nothing—and he could thus win power; he could control, and he could starve, the courts of the feudatories. In offering the nation his royal justice, he offered a strong and sound commodity. Very soon we find very small people—yeomen, peasants—giving the go-by to the old local courts and making their way to Westminster Hall, to plead there about their petty affairs. We may allow that in course of time this concentrating process went much too far. In Edward I.'s day the competence of the local courts in civil causes was hemmed within a limit of forty shillings, a limit which at first was fairly

wide, but became ever narrower as the value of money fell, until in the last century no one could exact any debt that was not of trifling amount without bringing a costly action in one of the courts at Westminster. But the first stages of the process did unmixed good—they gave us a common law.

King Henry and his able ministers came just in time—a little later would have been too late: English law would have been unified, but it would have been Romanised. We have been wont to boast, perhaps too loudly, of the pure “Englishry” of our common law. This has not been all pure gain. Had we “received” the Roman jurisprudence as our neighbours received it, we should have kept out of many a bad mess through which we have plunged. But to say nothing of the political side of the matter, of the absolute monarchy which Roman law has been apt to bring in its train, it is probably well for us and for the world at large that we have stumbled forwards in our empirical fashion, blundering into wisdom. The moral glow known to the virtuous schoolboy who has not used the “crib” that was ready to his hand, we may allow ourselves to feel; and we may hope for the blessing which awaits all those who have honestly taught themselves anything.

In a few words we must try to tell a long story. On the continent of Europe Roman law had never perished. After the barbarian invasions it was still the “personal law” of the conquered provincials. The Franks, Lombards, and other victorious tribes lived under their old Germanic customs, while the vanquished lived under the Roman law. In course of time the personal law of the bulk of the inhabitants became the territorial law of the country where they lived. The Roman law became once more the general law of Italy and of Southern France; but in so doing it lost its purity, it became a debased and vulgarised Roman law, to be found rather in traditional custom than in the classical texts, of which very little was known. Then, at the beginning of the twelfth century, came a great change. A law-school at Bologna began to study and to teach that Digest in which Justinian had preserved the wisdom of the great jurists of the golden age. A new science spread outwards from Bologna. At least wherever the power of the emperor extended, Roman law

**Roman
Law in
Mediæval
Europe.**

had—so men thought—a claim to rule. The emperors, though now of German race, were still the Roman emperors, and the laws of their ancestors were to be found in Justinian's books. But further, the newly discovered system—for we may without much untruth say that it was newly discovered—seemed so reasonable that it could not but affect the development of law in countries such as France and England, which paid no obedience to the emperors.

Canon
Law.

And just at this time a second great system of cosmopolitan jurisprudence was taking shape. For centuries past the Catholic Church had been slowly acquiring a field of jurisdiction that was to be all her own, and for the use of the ecclesiastical tribunals a large body of law had come into being, consisting of the canons published by Church Councils and the decretal¹ epistles—genuine and forged—of the Popes. Various collections of these were current, but in the middle of the twelfth century they were superseded by the work of Gratian, a monk of Bologna. He called it "*The Concordance of Discordant Canons*," but it soon became known everywhere as the *Decretum*. And by this time the Popes were ever busy in pouring out decretal letters, sending them into all corners of the western world. Authoritative collections of these "*decretals*" were published, and the ecclesiastical lawyer (the "*canonist*" or "*decretist*") soon had at his command a large mass of written law comparable to that which the Roman lawyer (the "*civilian*" or "*legist*") was studying. A *Corpus Juris Canonici* begins to take its place beside the *Corpus Juris Civilis*. Very often the same man had studied both; he was a "*doctor of both laws*"; and, indeed, the newer system had borrowed largely from the older; it had borrowed its form, its spirit, and a good deal of its matter also.

The canonical jurisprudence of the Italian doctors became the ecclesiastical law of the western world. From all local courts, wherever they might be, there was an appeal to the ultimate tribunal at Rome. But the temporal law of every country felt the influence of the new learning. Apparently we might lay down some such rule as this—that where the attack is longest postponed, it is most severe. In the thirteenth century the Parliament of Paris began the work of harmonising

[¹ *i.e.* containing decrees, or having the force of law. Part of the canon law is known as "*Decretals*," having been codified from such epistles.]

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

Intra illud et confinium
comitatus noster de-
terminatum est qualiter con-
tineat imperium suum
in istis partibus quia melius
possunt ibidem comitari
agnoscere quantum ad iura
nra et alios pariter
et archiepiscopo.

Significasti reges et reges
in maiores. ad iura
concepimur quod palle
tibi. ab apertis uis et
hanc uide obliuiscens

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

q1 q2 q3 q4 q5 q6 q7 q8 q9 q10 q11 q12 q13 q14 q15 q16 q17 q18 q19 q20 q21 q22 q23 q24 q25 q26 q27 q28 q29 q30 q31 q32 q33 q34 q35 q36 q37 q38 q39 q40 q41 q42 q43 q44 q45 q46 q47 q48 q49 q50 q51 q52 q53 q54 q55 q56 q57 q58 q59 q60 q61 q62 q63 q64 q65 q66 q67 q68 q69 q70 q71 q72 q73 q74 q75 q76 q77 q78 q79 q80 q81 q82 q83 q84 q85 q86 q87 q88 q89 q90 q91 q92 q93 q94 q95 q96 q97 q98 q99 q100 q101 q102 q103 q104 q105 q106 q107 q108 q109 q110 q111 q112 q113 q114 q115 q116 q117 q118 q119 q120 q121 q122 q123 q124 q125 q126 q127 q128 q129 q130 q131 q132 q133 q134 q135 q136 q137 q138 q139 q140 q141 q142 q143 q144 q145 q146 q147 q148 q149 q150 q151 q152 q153 q154 q155 q156 q157 q158 q159 q160 q161 q162 q163 q164 q165 q166 q167 q168 q169 q170 q171 q172 q173 q174 q175 q176 q177 q178 q179 q180 q181 q182 q183 q184 q185 q186 q187 q188 q189 q190 q191 q192 q193 q194 q195 q196 q197 q198 q199 q200 q201 q202 q203 q204 q205 q206 q207 q208 q209 q210 q211 q212 q213 q214 q215 q216 q217 q218 q219 q220 q221 q222 q223 q224 q225 q226 q227 q228 q229 q230 q231 q232 q233 q234 q235 q236 q237 q238 q239 q240 q241 q242 q243 q244 q245 q246 q247 q248 q249 q250 q251 q252 q253 q254 q255 q256 q257 q258 q259 q260 q261 q262 q263 q264 q265 q266 q267 q268 q269 q270 q271 q272 q273 q274 q275 q276 q277 q278 q279 q280 q281 q282 q283 q284 q285 q286 q287 q288 q289 q290 q291 q292 q293 q294 q295 q296 q297 q298 q299 q300 q301 q302 q303 q304 q305 q306 q307 q308 q309 q310 q311 q312 q313 q314 q315 q316 q317 q318 q319 q320 q321 q322 q323 q324 q325 q326 q327 q328 q329 q330 q331 q332 q333 q334 q335 q336 q337 q338 q339 q340 q341 q342 q343 q344 q345 q346 q347 q348 q349 q350 q351 q352 q353 q354 q355 q356 q357 q358 q359 q360 q361 q362 q363 q364 q365 q366 q367 q368 q369 q370 q371 q372 q373 q374 q375 q376 q377 q378 q379 q380 q381 q382 q383 q384 q385 q386 q387 q388 q389 q390 q391 q392 q393 q394 q395 q396 q397 q398 q399 q400 q401 q402 q403 q404 q405 q406 q407 q408 q409 q410 q411 q412 q413 q414 q415 q416 q417 q418 q419 q420 q421 q422 q423 q424 q425 q426 q427 q428 q429 q430 q431 q432 q433 q434 q435 q436 q437 q438 q439 q440 q441 q442 q443 q444 q445 q446 q447 q448 q449 q450 q451 q452 q453 q454 q455 q456 q457 q458 q459 q460 q461 q462 q463 q464 q465 q466 q467 q468 q469 q470 q471 q472 q473 q474 q475 q476 q477 q478 q479 q480 q481 q482 q483 q484 q485 q486 q487 q488 q489 q490 q491 q492 q493 q494 q495 q496 q497 q498 q499 q500 q501 q502 q503 q504 q505 q506 q507 q508 q509 q510 q511 q512 q513 q514 q515 q516 q517 q518 q519 q520 q521 q522 q523 q524 q525 q526 q527 q528 q529 q530 q531 q532 q533 q534 q535 q536 q537 q538 q539 q540 q541 q542 q543 q544 q545 q546 q547 q548 q549 q550 q551 q552 q553 q554 q555 q556 q557 q558 q559 q560 q561 q562 q563 q564 q565 q566 q567 q568 q569 q570 q571 q572 q573 q574 q575 q576 q577 q578 q579 q580 q581 q582 q583 q584 q585 q586 q587 q588 q589 q590 q591 q592 q593 q594 q595 q596 q597 q598 q599 q600 q601 q602 q603 q604 q605 q606 q607 q608 q609 q610 q611 q612 q613 q614 q615 q616 q617 q618 q619 q620 q621 q622 q623 q624 q625 q626 q627 q628 q629 q630 q631 q632 q633 q634 q635 q636 q637 q638 q639 q640 q641 q642 q643 q644 q645 q646 q647 q648 q649 q650 q651 q652 q653 q654 q655 q656 q657 q658 q659 q660 q661 q662 q663 q664 q665 q666 q667 q668 q669 q670 q671 q672 q673 q674 q675 q676 q677 q678 q679 q680 q681 q682 q683 q684 q685 q686 q687 q688 q689 q690 q691 q692 q693 q694 q695 q696 q697 q698 q699 q700 q701 q702 q703 q704 q705 q706 q707 q708 q709 q710 q711 q712 q713 q714 q715 q716 q717 q718 q719 q720 q721 q722 q723 q724 q725 q726 q727 q728 q729 q730 q731 q732 q733 q734 q735 q736 q737 q738 q739 q740 q741 q742 q743 q744 q745 q746 q747 q748 q749 q750 q751 q752 q753 q754 q755 q756 q757 q758 q759 q760 q761 q762 q763 q764 q765 q766 q767 q768 q769 q770 q771 q772 q773 q774 q775 q776 q777 q778 q779 q780 q781 q782 q783 q784 q785 q786 q787 q788 q789 q790 q791 q792 q793 q794 q795 q796 q797 q798 q799 q800 q801 q802 q803 q804 q805 q806 q807 q808 q809 q810 q811 q812 q813 q814 q815 q816 q817 q818 q819 q820 q821 q822 q823 q824 q825 q826 q827 q828 q829 q830 q831 q832 q833 q834 q835 q836 q837 q838 q839 q840 q841 q842 q843 q844 q845 q846 q847 q848 q849 q850 q851 q852 q853 q854 q855 q856 q857 q858 q859 q860 q861 q862 q863 q864 q865 q866 q867 q868 q869 q870 q871 q872 q873 q874 q875 q876 q877 q878 q879 q880 q881 q882 q883 q884 q885 q886 q887 q888 q889 q890 q891 q892 q893 q894 q895 q896 q897 q898 q899 q900 q901 q902 q903 q904 q905 q906 q907 q908 q909 q910 q911 q912 q913 q914 q915 q916 q917 q918 q919 q920 q921 q922 q923 q924 q925 q926 q927 q928 q929 q930 q931 q932 q933 q934 q935 q936 q937 q938 q939 q940 q941 q942 q943 q944 q945 q946 q947 q948 q949 q950 q951 q952 q953 q954 q955 q956 q957 q958 q959 q960 q961 q962 q963 q964 q965 q966 q967 q968 q969 q970 q971 q972 q973 q974 q975 q976 q977 q978 q979 q980 q981 q982 q983 q984 q985 q986 q987 q988 q989 q990 q991 q992 q993 q994 q995 q996 q997 q998 q999

and rationalising the provincial customs of Northern France, and this it did by Romanising them. In the sixteenth century, after "the revival of letters," the Italian jurisprudence took hold of Germany, and swept large portions of the old national law before it. Wherever it finds a weak, because an uncentralised, system of justice, it wins an easy triumph. To Scotland it came late; but it came to stay.

Roman
Law in
England.

To England it came early. Very few are the universities which can boast of a school of Roman law so old as that of Oxford. In the troubled days of our King Stephen, when the Church was urging new claims against the feeble State, Archbishop Theobald imported from Italy one Vacarius, a Lombard lawyer, who lectured here on Roman law, and wrote a big book that may still be read. Very soon after this Oxford had a flourishing school of civil and canon law. Ever since William the Conqueror had solemnly sanctioned the institution of special ecclesiastical courts, it had been plain that in those courts the law of a Catholic Church, not of a merely English Church, must prevail; also that this law would be in the main Italian law. In the next century, as all know, Henry and Becket fell out as to the definition of the province that was to be left to the ecclesiastical courts. The battle was drawn; neither combatant had gained all that he wanted. Thenceforward until the Protestant Reformation, and indeed until later than that, a border warfare between the two sets of courts was always simmering. Victory naturally inclined to those tribunals which had an immediate control of physical force, but still the sphere that was left to the canonists will seem to our eyes very ample. It comprehended not only the enforcement of ecclesiastical discipline, and the punishment—by spiritual censure, and, in the last resort, by excommunication—of sins left unpunished by temporal law, but also the whole topic of marriage and divorce, those last dying wills and testaments which were closely connected with dying confessions, and the administration of the goods of intestates. Why to this day do we couple "Probate" with "Divorce"? Because in the Middle Ages both of these matters belonged to "the courts Christian." Why to "Probate" and "Divorce" do we add "Admiralty"? Because the civilians—and in England the same man was usually both canonist and civilian—succeeded, though at a comparatively late time, in taking to themselves the

litigation that concerned things done on the high seas, those high seas whence no jury could be summoned. So for the canonist there was plenty of room in England; and there was some room for the civilian: he was very useful as a diplomatist.

But we were speaking of our English common law, the law of our ordinary temporal courts, and of the influence upon it of the new Italian but cosmopolitan jurisprudence; and we must confess that for a short while, from the middle of the twelfth to the middle of the thirteenth century, this influence was powerful. The amount of foreign law that was actually borrowed has been underrated and overrated; we could not estimate it without descending to details. Some great maxims and a few more concrete rules were appropriated, but on the whole what was taken was logic, method, spirit rather than matter. We may see the effect of this influence very plainly in a treatise on the Laws of England which comes to us from the last years of Henry II. It has been ascribed to Henry's Chief Justiciar—Viceroy, we may say—Ranulf Glanvill; and whether or no it comes from his pen (he was a layman and a warrior), it describes the practice of the court over which he presided. There are very few sentences in it which we can trace to any Roman book, and yet in a sense the whole book is Roman. We look back from it to a law-book written in Henry I.'s time, and we can hardly believe that only some seventy years divide the two. The one can at this moment be read and understood by anyone who knows a little of mediæval Latin and a little of English law; the other will always be dark to the most learned scholars. The gulf between them looks like that between logic and caprice, between reason and unreason. And then from the middle of the thirteenth century we have a much greater and better book than Glanvill's. Its author we know as Bracton, though his name really was Henry of Bratton. He was an ecclesiastic, an archdeacon, but for many years he was one of the king's justices. He had read a great deal of the Italian jurisprudence, chiefly in the works of that famous doctor, Azo of Bologna. Thence he had obtained his idea of what a law-book should be, of how law should be arranged and stated; thence also he borrowed maxims and some concrete rules; with these he can fill up the gaps in our English system. But he lets us see that not much more can now be done in the way of Romanisation. Ever since Henry II.'s time the king's court has

Glanvill.

Bracton.

[illegible]

p[ro]p[ri]um in vocat[ur] m[er]it[ur] d[icitur] co[m]p[ar]at[ur] & exor[di]at[ur]
 ut co[m]m[un]it[ur] & alie p[er]f[ec]t[ur] & exor[di]at[ur] in vocat[ur]
 & a[m] m[u]lt[is] p[ar]t[ib]us d[icitur] p[er]f[ec]t[ur] & exor[di]at[ur] .ll.
 Vocat[ur] p[er]f[ec]t[ur] d[icitur] in alie p[ar]t[ib]us & exor[di]at[ur]
 necesse q[uod] a[m] m[u]lt[is] p[ar]t[ib]us d[icitur] p[er]f[ec]t[ur] & exor[di]at[ur]

been hard at work amassing precedents, devising writs, and commenting upon them. Bracton himself has laboriously collected five hundred decisions from the mile-long Rolls of the Court and uses them as his authorities. For him English law is already "case law"; a judgment is a precedent. While as yet the science of the civilians was a somewhat unpractical science, while as yet they had not succeeded in bringing the old classical texts into close contact with the facts of mediæval life, the king's court of professional justices—the like of which was hardly to be found in any foreign land, in any unconquered land—had been rapidly evolving a common law for England, establishing a strict and formal routine of procedure, and tying the hands of all subsequent judges. From Bracton's day onwards Roman law exercises but the slightest influence on the English common law, and such influence as it exercises is rather by way of repulsion than by way of attraction. English law at this early period had absorbed so much Romanism that it could withstand all future attacks, and pass scathless even through the critical sixteenth century.

It may be convenient, however, to pause at this point in the development of our judicial institutions, in order to trace the history of our legal procedure.

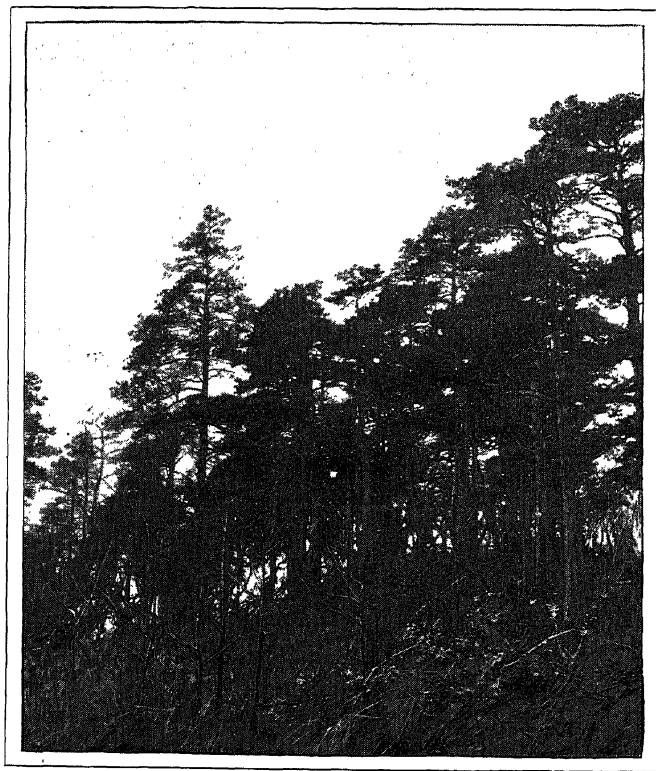
For a long time past Englishmen have been proud of their trial by jury, and proud to see the nations of Europe imitating as best they might this "palladium of English liberties," this "bulwark of the British Constitution." Their pride, if in other respects it be reasonable, need not be diminished by any modern discoveries of ancient facts, even though they may have to learn that in its origin trial by jury was rather French than English, rather royal than popular, rather the livery of conquest than a badge of freedom. They have made it what it is; and what it is is very different from what it was. The story is a long and a curious one.

**Trial by
Jury.**

Let us try to put before our eyes a court of the twelfth century; it may be a county court or a hundred-court, or a court held by some great baron for his tenants. It is held in the open air—perhaps upon some ancient moot-hill, which ever since the times of heathenry has been the scene of justice. An officer presides over it—the sheriff, the sheriff's bailiff, the lord's steward. But all or many of the free landowners

**Legal
Forms in
the
Twelfth
Century.**

of the district are bound to attend it; they owe "suit" to it, they are its suitors, they are its doomsmen; it is for them, and not for the president, "to find the dooms." He controls the procedure, he issues the mandates, he pronounces the sentence; but when the question is what the judgment shall



SITE OF THE FOLK-MOOT, PENNENDEN HEATH.

(By permission of J. Arcoll, Esq., Foley House, near Maidstone.)

be, he bids the suitors find the doom. All this is very ancient, and look where we will in Western Europe we may find it. But as yet we have not found the germ of trial by jury. These doomsmen are not "judges of fact." There is no room for any judges of fact. If of two litigants the one contradicts the other flatly, if the plain "You did" of the

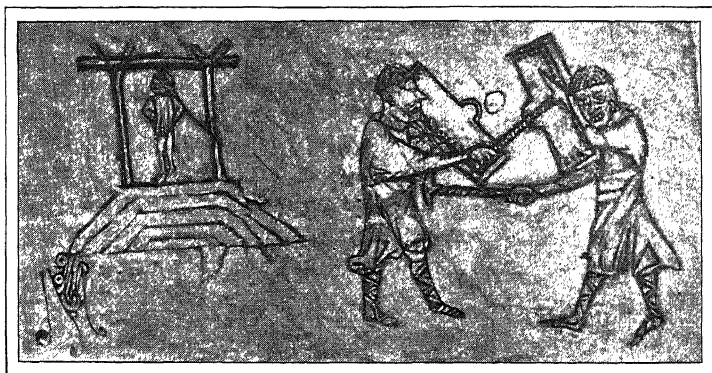
one is met by the straightforward "You lie" of the other. here is a problem that man cannot solve. He is unable as yet to weigh testimony against testimony, to cross-examine witnesses, to piece together the truth out of little bits of evidence. He has recourse to the supernatural. He adjudges that one or other of the two parties is to prove his case by an appeal to God.

The judgment precedes the proof. The proof consists, The Oath. not in a successful attempt to convince your judges of the truth of your assertion, but in the performance of a task that they have imposed upon you: if you perform it, God is on your side. The modes of proof are two, oaths and ordeals. In some cases we may see a defendant allowed to swear away a charge by his own oath. More frequently he will have to bring with him oath-helpers—in later days they are called "compurgators"¹—and when he has sworn successfully, each of these oath-helpers in turn will swear "By God that oath is clean and true." The doomsmen have decreed how many oath-helpers, and of what quality, he must bring. A great deal of their traditional legal lore consists in rules about this matter; queer arithmetical rules will teach how the oath of one thegn is as weighty as the oath of six ceorls, and the like. Sometimes they require that the oath-helpers shall be kinsmen of the chief swearer, and so warn us against any rationalism which would turn these oath-helpers into "witnesses to character," and probably tell us of the time when the bond of blood was so strong that a man's kinsfolk were answerable for his misdeeds. A very easy task this oath with oath-helpers may seem in our eyes. It is not so easy as it looks. Ceremonial rules must be strictly observed; a set form of words must be pronounced; a slip, a stammer, will spoil all, and the adversary will win his cause. Besides, it is common knowledge that those who perjure themselves are often struck dead, or reduced to the stature of dwarfs, or find that they cannot remove their hands from the relics they have profaned.

But when crime is laid to a man's charge he will not always be allowed to escape with oaths. Very likely he will be sent to the ordeal. The ordeal is conceived as "the The Ordeal.

[¹ "Co-purgers," helping him to cleanse himself from the charge.]

judgment of God." Of heathen origin it well may be, but long ago the Christian Church has made it her own, has prescribed a solemn ritual for the consecration of those instruments—the fire, the water—which will reveal the truth. The water in the pit is adjured to receive the innocent and to reject the guilty. He who sinks is safe, he who floats is lost. The red-hot iron one pound in weight must be lifted and carried three paces. The hand that held it is then sealed up in a cloth. Three days afterwards the seal is broken. Is the hand clean or is it foul? that is the dread question. A



THE JUDICIAL COMBAT (Curia Regis Roll No. 216).

(Record Office)

blister "as large as half a walnut" is fatal. How these tests worked in practice we do not know. We seldom get stories about them save when, as now and again will happen, the local saint interferes and performs a miracle. We cannot but guess that it was well to be good friends with the priest when one went to the ordeal.

**Trial by
Battle.**

Then the Norman conquerors brought with them another ordeal—the judicial combat. An ordeal it is, for though the Church has looked askance at it, it is no appeal to mere brute force; it is an appeal to the God of Battles. Very solemnly does each combatant swear to the truth of his cause; very solemnly does he swear that he has eaten nothing, drunk nothing "whereby the law of God may be debased or the devil's law exalted." When a criminal charge is made

1216]

—"an appeal of felony"—the accuser and the accused, if they be not maimed, nor too young, nor too old, will have to fight in person. When a claim for land is made, the plaintiff has to offer battle, not in his own person, but in the person of one of his men. This man is in theory a witness who will swear to the justice of his lord's cause. In theory he ought not to be, but in practice he often is, a hired champion who makes a profession of fighting other people's battles. If the hireling be exposed, he may have his hand struck off; but as a matter of fact there were champions in a large way of business. At least in some cases the arms that are used are very curious; they are made of wood and horn, and look (for we have pictures of them) like short pickaxes. Possibly they have been in use for this sacral purpose—a sacral purpose it is—ever since an age which knew not iron. Also we know that the champion's head is shaved, but are left to guess why this is done. The battle may



BISHOP WYVILLE AND HIS CHAMPION.
(From a brass rubbing by E. Doran Webb, Esq.)

last the livelong day until the stars appear. The accuser has undertaken that in the course of a day he will "prove by his body" the truth of his charge; and if he cannot do this before the twilight falls, he has failed and is a perjurer. The object of each party in the fight is not so much to kill his adversary — this perhaps he is hardly likely to do with the archaic weapon that he wields—but to make him pronounce "the loathsome word," to make him cry "craven." In a criminal case the accused, if vanquished, was forthwith hanged or mutilated; but in any case the craven had to pay a fine of sixty shillings, the old "king's ban" of the Frankish laws, and, having in effect confessed himself a perjurer, he was thenceforth infamous.

Growth of
the King's
Courts.

But long ago the Frankish kings had placed themselves outside the sphere of this ancient formal and sacral procedure. They were standing in the shoes of Roman governors, even of Roman emperors. For themselves and their own affairs they had a prerogative procedure. If their rights were in question, they would direct their officers to call together the best and oldest men of the neighbourhood to swear about the relevant facts. The royal officers would make an inquisition, hold an inquest, force men to swear that they would return true answers to whatever questions might be addressed to them in the king's name. They may be asked whether or no this piece of land belongs to the king; they may be asked in a general way what lands the king has in their district; they may be asked (for the king is beginning to see that he has a great interest in the suppression of violent crime) to tell tales of their neighbours, to report the names of all who are suspected of murder or robbery, and then these men can be sent to the ordeal. This privilege that the king has he can concede to others; he can grant to his favourite churches that their lands shall stand outside the scope of the clumsy and hazardous procedure of the common courts; if their title to those lands be challenged, a royal officer will call upon the neighbours to declare the truth—in other words, to give a verdict. It is here that we see the germ of the jury.

The
Inquest.

The Norman duke in his conquered kingdom was able to use the inquest with a free hand and on a grand scale.

Domesday Book was compiled out of the verdicts returned by the men of the various hundreds and townships of England in answer to a string of questions put to them by royal commissioners. We have read how the stern king thought it no shame to do what the English monk thought it shame to write, how he numbered every ox, every cow, every pig in England (p. 341). Thenceforward the inquest was part of the machinery of government; it could be employed for many different purposes whenever the king desired information. He could use it in his own litigation, he could place it at the service of other litigants who were fortunate enough or rich enough to obtain this favour from him. But throughout the reigns of our Norman kings it keeps its prerogative character.

Then Henry II., bent upon making his justice supreme throughout his realm, put this royal remedy at the disposal of all his subjects. This he did not by one general law, but piecemeal, by a series of ordinances known as "assizes,"¹ some of which we may yet read, while others have perished. For example, when there was litigation about the ownership of land, the defendant, instead of accepting the plaintiff's challenge to fight, was allowed to "put himself upon the king's grand assize." Thereupon the action, which had been begun in some feudal court, was removed into the king's court; and twelve knights, chosen from the district in which the land lay, gave a verdict as to whether the plaintiff or the defendant had the better right. In other cases—for example, when the dispute was about the possession, not the ownership, of land—less solemn forms of the inquest were employed; twelve free and lawful men, not necessarily knights, were charged to say whether the defendant had ejected the plaintiff. Before the twelfth century was at an end, the inquest in one form or another—sometimes it was called an assize, sometimes a jury—had become part of the normal procedure in almost every kind of civil action. Still there long remained many cases in which a defendant could, if he chose, reject the new-fangled mode of trial, and claim the ancient right of purging himself with oath-helpers, or of picking up the glove that the plaintiff had thrown down as a gage of battle. Even a prelate of the Church would sometimes rely rather upon the

**The King's
Assizes.**

[¹ From the "assises" or "sittings" of the council which passed them.]

strong arm of a professional pugilist than upon the testimony of his neighbours. Within the walls of the chartered boroughs men were conservative of all that would favour the free burgher at the cost of the despised outsider. The Londoners thought that trial by jury was good enough for those who were not citizens, but the citizen must be allowed to swear away charges of debt or trespass by the oaths of his friends. In the old communal courts, too, the county and hundred courts, where the landowners of the district sat as doomsmen, trial by jury never struck root, for only by virtue of a royal writ could a jury be summoned: this is one of the reasons why those old courts languished, decayed, and became useless. However, before the Middle Ages were over, trial by jury had become the only form of trial for civil actions that had any vitality. So late as 1824 a lucky litigant, taking advantage of his adversary's slip, presented himself at the bar of the King's Bench, prepared to swear away a debt—"to make his law" was the technical phrase—with the aid of eleven oath-helpers, and not until 1833 was this world-old procedure abolished by statute; but long before this, if the plaintiff was well advised, he could always prevent his opponent from escaping in this easy fashion.

The
Earliest
Jury Trial.

We have spoken of "trial by jury." That term naturally calls up before our minds a set of twelve men called into court in order that they may listen to the testimony of witnesses, give a true verdict "according to the evidence," and, in short, act as judges of those questions of fact that are in dispute. But it is very long after Henry II.'s day before trial by jury takes this form. Originally the jurors are called in, not in order that they may hear, but in order that they may give evidence. They are witnesses. They are neighbours of the parties; they are presumed to know before they come into court the facts about which they are to testify. They are chosen by the sheriff to represent the neighbourhood—indeed, they are spoken of as being "the neighbourhood," "the country"—and the neighbourhood, the country, will know the facts. In the twelfth century population was sparse, and men really knew far more of the doings of their neighbours than we know nowadays. It was expected that all legal transactions would take place in public; the conveyance of land was made in open court, the wife was endowed at the church-door, the man who bought cattle in

secret ran a great but just risk of being treated as a thief; every three weeks a court was held in the village, and all the affairs of every villager were discussed. The verdict, then, was the sworn testimony of the countryside; and if the twelve jurors perjured themselves, the verdict of another jury of twenty-four might send them to prison and render them infamous for ever. In course of time, and by slow degrees—degrees so slow that we can hardly detect them—the jury put off its old and acquired a new character. Sometimes, when the jurors knew nothing of the facts, witnesses who did know the facts would be called in to supply the requisite information. As human affairs grew more complex, the neighbours whom the sheriff summoned became less and less able to perform their original duty, more and more dependent upon the evidence given in their presence by those witnesses who were summoned by the parties. In the fifteenth century the change had taken place, though in yet later days a man who had been summoned as a juror, and who sought to escape on the ground that he already knew something of the facts in question, would be told that he had given a very good reason for his being placed in the jury-box. We may well say, therefore, that trial by jury, though it has its roots in the Frankish inquest, grew up on English soil; and until recent times it was distinctive of England and Scotland, for on the continent of Europe all other forms of legal procedure had been gradually supplanted by that which canonists and civilians had constructed out of ancient Roman elements.

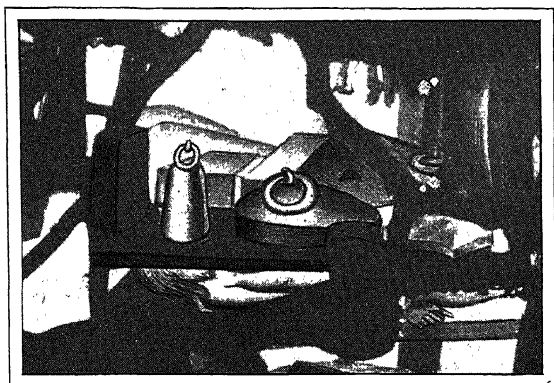
We have yet to speak of the employment of the inquest in criminal cases. The Frankish kings had employed it for the purpose of detecting crime. Do you suspect any of murder, robbery, larceny, or the like? This question was addressed by royal officers to selected representatives of every neighbourhood, and answered upon oath, and the suspected persons were sent to “the judgment of God.” The Church borrowed this procedure; the bishop could detect ecclesiastical offences as the king detected crimes. It is not impossible that this particular form of the inquest had made its way into England some half-century before the Norman Conquest; but we hear very little about it until the days of Henry II. He ordained that it should be used upon a very large scale and as a matter of ordinary practice, both by the justices whom he sent to visit the counties and by

**Criminal
Procedure.**

the sheriffs. From his time onward a statement made upon oath by a set of jurors representing a hundred, to the effect that such an one is suspected of such a crime, is sufficient to put a man upon his trial. It is known as an indictment. It takes its place beside the old accusation, or "appeal," urged by the person who has been wronged, by the man whose goods have been stolen or the nearest kinsman of the murdered man. It is but an accusation, however, and in Henry's days the indicted person takes his chance at the hot iron or the cold water; God may be for him, though man be against him. But already some suspicion is shown of the so-called judgment of God; for though he comes clean from the ordeal, he has to leave the country, swearing never to return. At last, in 1215, the Fourth Lateran Council forbade the clergy to take part in this superstitious rite. After this we hear no more in England of the ordeal as a legal process, though in much later days the popular belief that witches will swim died hard, and many an old woman was put in the pond. The judges of the thirteenth century had no substitute ready to take the place of that supernatural test of which an enlightened Pope had deprived them. Of course, if the indicted person will agree to accept the verdict of his neighbours, will "put himself upon his country"—that is, upon the neighbourhood—for good and ill, all is easy. Those who have indicted him as a suspicious character can now be asked whether he is guilty or no; and if they say that he is guilty, there will be no harm in hanging him, for he consented to the trial, and he must abide the consequences. To make the trial yet fairer, one may call in a second jury different from that which indicted him. Here is the origin of those two juries which we see employed in our own days—the grand jury that indicts, and the petty jury that tries. But suppose that he will not give his consent; it is by no means obvious that the testimony of his neighbours ought to be treated as conclusive. Hitherto he has been able to invoke the judgment of God, and can we now deprive him of this ancient, this natural right? No, no one can be tried by jury who does not consent to be so tried. But what we can do is this—we can compel him to give his consent, we can starve him into giving his consent, and, again, we can quicken the slow action of starvation by laying him out naked on the floor of the dungeon and heaping weights upon his chest until he says that

he will abide by the verdict of his fellows. And so we are brought to the pedantic cruelty of the "peine forte et dure." Even in the seventeenth century there were men who would endure the agony of being pressed to death rather than utter the few words which would have subjected them to a trial by jury. They had a reason for their fortitude. Had they been hanged as felons their property would have been confiscated, their children would have been penniless; while, as it was, they left

"Peine
Forte et
Dure."



PRESSING TO DEATH.

(From a painted glass medallion in the Election Hall, Eton College.

By permission of the Provost of Eton College.)

the world obstinate, indeed, but unconvicted. All this—and until 1772 men might still be pressed to death—takes us back to a time when the ordeal seems the fair and natural mode of ascertaining guilt and innocence, when the jury is still a new-fangled institution.

The indictment, we have said, took its place beside the "appeal"—the old private accusation. The owner of the stolen goods, the kinsman of the murdered man, might still prosecute his suit in the old manner, and offer to prove his assertions by his body. The Church had not abolished, and could not abolish, the judicial combat, for though in truth it was an ordeal, no priestly benediction of the instruments that were to be used was necessary. By slow degrees in the thirteenth century the accused acquired the right of refusing his accuser's challenge and of putting himself upon a jury. What is more, the judges

began to favour the "indictment" and to discourage the "appeal" by all possible means. They required of the accuser a punctilious observance of ancient formalities, and would quash his accusation if he were guilty of the smallest blunder. Still, throughout the Middle Ages we occasionally hear of battles being fought over criminal cases. In particular a convicted felon would sometimes turn "approver"—that is to say, he would obtain a pardon conditional on his ridding the world, by means of his appeals, of some three or four other felons. If he failed in his endeavour, he was forthwith hanged. But those who were not antiquarians must have long ago ceased to believe that such a barbarism as trial by battle was possible, when in 1818 a case arose which showed them that they had inadequately gauged the dense conservatism of the laws of their country. One Mary Ashford was found drowned; one Abraham Thornton was indicted for murdering her; a jury acquitted him. But the verdict did not satisfy the public mind, and the brother of the dead girl had recourse to an "appeal": to this accusation the previous acquittal was no answer. Thornton declared himself ready to defend his innocence by his body, and threw down, in Westminster Hall, as his gage of battle, an antique gauntlet, "without either fingers or thumb, made of white tanned skin, ornamented with sewn tracery and silk fringes, crossed by a narrow band of red leather, with leathern tags and thongs for fastening." The judges did their best to discover some slip in his procedure; but he had been careful and well advised; even his glove was of the true medieval pattern. So there was nothing for it but to declare that he was within his rights, and could not be compelled to submit to a jury if he preferred to fight. His adversary had no mind to fight, and so let the glove alone. After this crowning scandal Parliament at last bestirred itself, and in the year of grace 1819 completed the work of Pope Innocent III. by abolishing the last of the ordeals.

A Sur-
vival:
Abraham
Thornton's Case,
1818.

The Work-
ing of
Trial by
Jury.

If we regard it as an engine for the discovery of truth and for the punishment of malefactors, the medieval jury was a clumsy thing. Too often its verdicts must have represented guess-work and the tittle-tattle of the countryside. Sometimes a man must have gone to the gallows, not because

anyone had seen him commit a crime, not because guilt had been brought home to him by a carefully tested chain of proved facts, but because it was notorious that he was just the man from whom a murder or a robbery might be expected. Only by slow degrees did the judges insist that the jurors ought to listen to evidence given by witnesses in open court, and rely only upon the evidence that was there given. Even when this step had been taken, it was long before our modern law of evidence took shape, long before the judges laid down such rules as that "hearsay is not evidence," and that testimony which might show that the prisoner had committed other crimes was not relevant to the question whether he had perpetrated the particular offence of which he stood indicted.

But whatever may have been the case in the days of the ordeal—and about this we know very little—we may be fairly certain that in the later Middle Ages the escape of the guilty was far commoner than the punishment of the guiltless. After some hesitation our law had adopted its well-known rule that a jury can give no verdict unless the twelve men are all of one mind. To obtain a condemnatory unanimity was not easy if the accused was a man of good family; one out of every twelve of his neighbours that might be taken at random would stand out loyally for his innocence. Bribery could do much; seigniorial influence could do more; the sheriff, who was not incorruptible, and had his own likes and dislikes, could do all, since it was for him to find the jury. It is easy for us to denounce as unconstitutional the practice which prevailed under Tudors and Stuarts of making jurors answer for their verdicts before the King's Council; it is not so easy for us to make certain that the jury system would have lived through the sixteenth century had it not been for the action of this somewhat irregular check. For the rest, we may notice that the jury of the Middle Ages, if it is to be called a democratic institution, can be called so only in a medieval sense. The jurors were freeholders. The great mass of Englishmen were not freeholders. The peasant who was charged with a crime was acquitted or convicted by the word of his neighbours, but by the word of neighbours who considered themselves very much his superiors.

Maraud-
ers.

If, however, we look back to those old days, we shall find ourselves deploring not so much that some men of whose guilt we are by no means satisfied are sent to the gallows, as that many men whose guilt is but too obvious escape scot-free. We take up a roll upon which the presentments of the jurors are recorded. Everywhere the same tale meets our eye. "Malefactors came by night to the house of such an one at such a place; they slew him and his wife and his sons and his daughters, and robbed his house; we do not know who they were; we suspect no one." Such organisation as there was for the pursuit of these marauders was utterly inefficient. Every good and lawful man is bound to follow the hue and cry when it is raised, and the village reeve, or in later days the village constable, ought to put himself at the head of this improvised and unprofessional police force. But it was improvised and unprofessional. Outside the walls of the boroughs there was no regular plan of watch and ward, no one whose business it was to keep an eye on men of suspicious habits, or to weave the stray threads of evidence into a halter. The neighbours who had followed the trail of the stolen cattle to the county boundary were apt to turn back, every man to his plough. "Let Gloucestershire folk mind Gloucestershire rogues." They would be fined, when the justices came round, for neglect of their duties—for the sheriff, or the coroner, or someone else, would tell tales of them—but meanwhile their hay was about, and the weather was rainy. Even when the jurors know the criminal's name, the chances seem to be quite ten to one that he has not been captured. Nothing could then be done but outlaw him. At four successive county courts—the county court was held month by month—a proclamation calling upon him to present himself, "to come in to the king's peace," would be made, and at the fifth court he would be declared an outlaw. If after this he were caught, then, unless he could obtain some favour from the king, he would be condemned to death without any investigation being made of his guilt or innocence; the mere fact of his outlawry being proved, sentence followed as a matter of course. But the old law had been severer than this: to slay the outlaw wherever he may be found was not only the right but the duty of every true man, and even in the middle of the thirteenth century this was still the

customary law of the Welsh marches. The outlaw of real life was not the picturesque figure that we have seen upon the stage; if he and his men were really "merry" in the greenwood, they were merry in creditable circumstances. Still, it is not to be denied that he attracted at times a good deal of romantic sympathy, even in the ages which really knew him. This probably had its origin in the brutal stringency of the forest laws, which must be charged with the stupid blunder of punishing small offences with a rigour which should have been reserved for the worst crimes.

The worst crimes were common enough. Every now and then the king and the nation would be alarmed, nor needlessly alarmed, by the prevalence of murder and highway robbery. A new ordinance would be issued, new instructions would be given to the judges, sheriffs would be active, and jurors would be eager to convict; a good deal of hanging would be done, perhaps too indiscriminately. But so soon as the panic was over, Justice would settle down into her old sluggish habits. Throughout the Middle Ages life was very insecure; there was a great deal of nocturnal marauding, and the knife that every Englishman wore was apt to stab upon slight provocation.

The Church had not mended matters by sanctifying places and persons. In very old days when the blood-feud raged, when punishment and vengeance were very much one, it was a good thing that there should be holy places to which a man might flee when the avenger of blood was behind—places where no drop of blood might be spilt without sacrilege. They afforded an opportunity for the peacemaker. The bishop or priest would not yield up the fugitive who lay panting at the foot of the altar until terms had been made between him and his pursuers. But at a later time when the State was endeavouring to punish criminals, and there would be no punishment until after trial, the sanctuary was a public nuisance. The law was this:—If a criminal entered a church he was safe from pursuit; the neighbours who were pursuing him were bound to beset the church, prevent his escape, and send for the coroner. Sometimes they would remain encamped round the church for many days. At last the coroner would come, and parley with the fugitive. If he confessed his crime, then he

might "abjure the realm"—that is, swear to leave England within a certain number of days (he was allowed days enough to enable him to reach the nearest seaport), and never to return. If he strayed from the straight road which led to the haven, or if he came back to the realm, then he could at once be sentenced to death. For a man to take sanctuary, confess his crime and abjure the realm, was an everyday event, and we must have thus shipped off many a malefactor to plunder our neighbours in France and Flanders. If the man who had taken sanctuary would neither confess to a crime, nor submit to a trial, the State could do no more against him. It tried to teach the clergy that their duty was to starve him into submission; but the clergy resented this interference with holy things. A bad element of caprice was introduced into the administration of justice. The strong, the swift, the premeditating murderer cheated the gallows. Especially in the towns he might fairly complain of bad luck if he could not slip into one of the numerous churches before he was caught. On the other hand, the man who had not plotted his crime would get hanged.

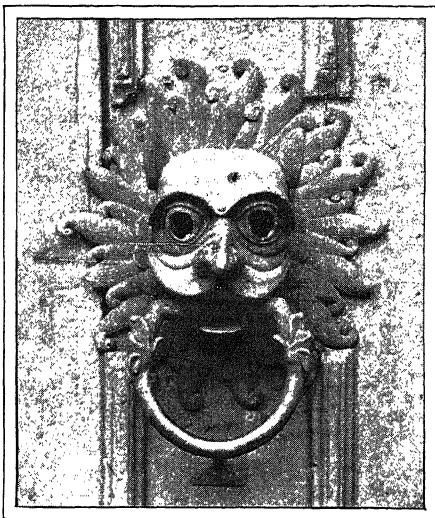
Benefit of
Clergy.

And then the clergy stood outside the criminal law. If a clerk in holy orders committed a crime—this was the law of the thirteenth century—he could not be tried for it in a lay court. He could be accused there, and the judges might ask a jury whether he was guilty or no; but even though they found him guilty, this was no trial. At the request of his bishop—and the bishops made such requests as a matter of course—he was handed over for trial in an ecclesiastical court. Such a court had power to inflict very heavy punishments. It might draw no drop of blood, but it could imprison for life, besides being able to degrade the clerk from his orders. As a matter of fact, however, we hear very little of any punishment save that of degradation. What is more, the criminal procedure of the ecclesiastical courts in England was of an absurdly old-fashioned and clumsy kind. They held by compurgation. If the accused clerk could but get some eleven or twelve friends of his own profession to swear that they believed him innocent, he was acquitted; he might resume his criminal career. Church and State are both to blame for this sad story. The Church would yield no jot of the claims that

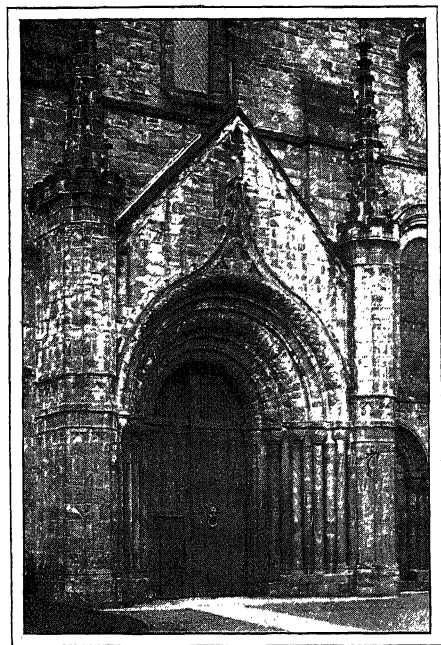


Photo: W. M. Dodson, Bettus-y-Cord.

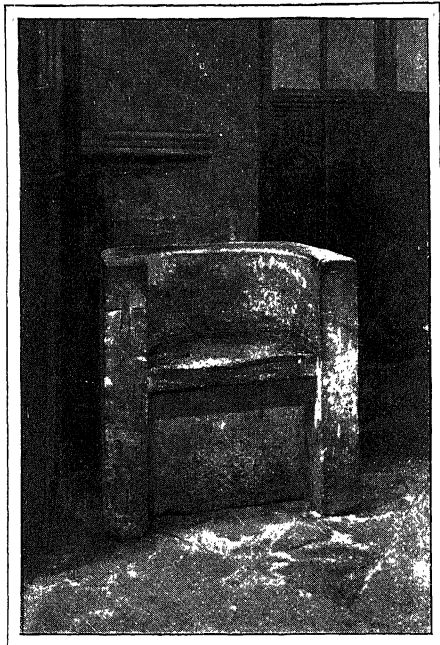
Knocker on St. Nicholas' Church, Gloucester.



Knocker on Sanctuary Door, Durham Cathedral.



The Sanctuary Entrance, Durham Cathedral.



The Frydstool, Beverley Minster.

RELICS OF SANCTUARIES.

were sanctified by the blood of St. Thomas; the lay courts would not suffer the bishops to do criminal justice in a really serious fashion. There can be no doubt that many of the worst criminals—men who had been found guilty by a jury of brutal murders and rapes—escaped scot-free, because they had about them some slight savour of professional holiness. It should be understood that this immunity was shared with the bishops, priests, and deacons by a vast multitude of men who were in “minor orders.” They might have no ecclesiastical duties to perform; they might be married; they might be living the same life which laymen lived; but they stood outside the ordinary criminal law. One of the worst evils of the later Middle Ages was this “benefit of clergy.” The king’s justices, who never loved it, at length reduced it to an illogical absurdity. They would not be at pains to require any real proof of a prisoner’s sacred character. If he could read a line in a book, this would do; indeed, it is even said that the same verse of the Psalms was set before the eyes of every prisoner, so that even the illiterate might escape if he could repeat by heart those saving words. Criminal law had been rough and rude, and sometimes cruel; it had used the gallows too readily; it had punished with death thefts which, owing to a great fall in the value of money, were becoming petty thefts. Still, cruelty in such matters is better than caprice, and the “benefit of clergy” had made the law capricious without making it less cruel.

C. W. C.
OMAN.
The Art of
War.

It was at Hastings that the last trial of the old military system of the English was made. There the house-carles of King Harold, backed by the thegns of all Southern England and the disorderly masses of the levy of the home counties, drew themselves out on the hillside of Senlac to face an enemy of a different sort from any that had yet been seen north of the Channel. When Dane had fought Englishman, the battle had generally been between serried bodies of foot-soldiery, meeting fairly face to face in dense masses, each with its shield-wall of warriors standing elbow to elbow, and hewing at each other over the “wall of war-lindens” till one side or other had the mastery.

But the Normans of Duke William had learnt from their



NOEMAN HORSE AND BOWMEN.
(*Bayeux Tapestry.*)

Frankish neighbours the new method of fighting, which in the tenth century had superseded on the Continent the array of the ancient tribal hosts. While the Anglo-Danes of Harold stood on foot, behind their wattled palisades, forming a compact shield-wall like their ancestors who had fought under Alfred and Guthrum, the Normans and mercenary French of William came out in a triple line armed in three divers manners. First stood the archery, then the heavy-armed foot, who still represented the ancient method of armament, then the great bodies of mailed horsemen, to whom the English had nothing to oppose. A few years before, Earl Ralph of Hereford had tried to teach the English thegnhood the art of fighting on horseback; but they did not take kindly to it. When he led them against the Welsh, disaster had followed, and the disaster had been universally ascribed to the fact that "*Anglos contra morem in equos pugnare jussit*."¹ If only the experiment had been successful, Hastings might have seen a very different end to its battle.

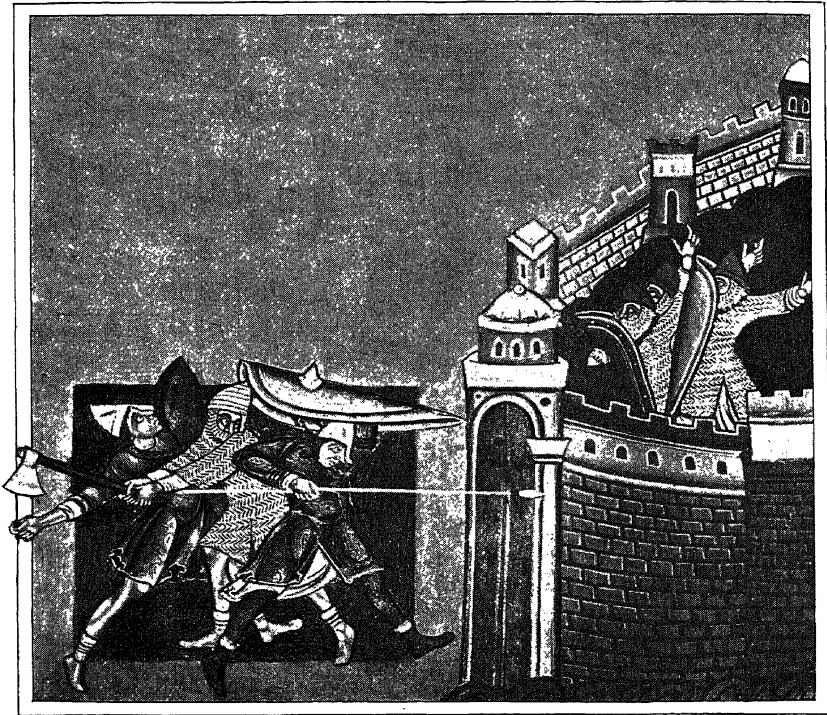
Cavalry.

William the Bastard knew only too well how to deal with the antiquated array of the English army. His archers, if unsupported by cavalry, might have been driven off the field by a single charge; his cavalry, if unsupported by archers, might have surged for ever against the formidable shield-wall of the English. But by combining the two armies, with perfect skill, he won his crowning victory. The English could not stand for ever unmoved under the deadly hail of the Norman arrows. After long endurance the undisciplined masses of the "*fyrð*" sprang out from behind their defences and burst down from the heights to sweep away the archery that galled them so. Then, when the compact shield-wall was broken, William thrust his horsemen into the gaps, and the steadfast house-carles of Harold, though they stood their ground to the last man, were slowly hewn down.

"So Harold Godwinson was laid
Across his broken banner cold
Upon the blood-soaked Sussex mould,
And o'er the wrack of Senlac field
Full-fed the grey-nebbed raven wheeled."

[¹ "He ordered the English to fight on horseback, contrary to their custom."]

The Norman Conquest produced a complete change in the military organisation of England—the system of raising the armed force, the tactics that it employed, and the weapons that it used, being all alike new. For the next two hundred and fifty years the mailed feudal horseman was to be the main



STORMING A STRONGHOLD (from a MS. Bible).
(Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

power in war. The Anglo-Norman kings continued to call out the Old English "fyrd" on occasion, but never trusted to it as their chief strength; infantry had become of secondary importance in the field. It was the mounted followers of the Norman knights and earls, among whom William had distributed the lands of the English on the tenure of military service, that were the really important element in his army. Clad in the long mail shirt and peaked helmet with nasal,

bearing the kite-shaped Danish shield, and using the lance as their chief weapon, the Norman horse were the flower of the chivalry of Europe, as they showed not only on English soil, but in far-off fights like Civitella, Durazzo, or Antioch.

Castles.

Besides introducing the supremacy of cavalry, the Normans developed to a hitherto unexampled importance the building of castles and fortresses. Saxon and Dane had been contented to surround themselves with a moat and palisade, except when (as at London or Chester) they could patch up and utilise an old Roman town wall. The Normans commenced a new era in military building, just as they did in ecclesiastical building. Conquered England was held down by dozens of castles, square keeps with walls of enormous thickness built of solid stone, and often relying solely on their own strength without being surrounded by any outworks. The English, in their revolts, could never storm one of the new castles, and the Norman kings themselves had always the greatest difficulty in reducing the stronghold of a revolted vassal. In the eleventh century the art of defence had quite outgrown the art of attack; siege engines were few and primitive; to undermine a corner of the castle, or strive to set it on fire, was the most that a besieger could do. Starvation was the only sure and certain way of reducing it, and unless the castellan had been caught unawares and unprovisioned, the process of starvation took many months.

The two centuries during which feudal cavalry was supreme in England were more notable for their sieges than for their great battles in the open field. To take the defensive behind strong walls was so far more profitable a policy for the weaker party than to try the fortune of war in the pitched battle, that campaigns were generally nothing more than a series of successful or unsuccessful sieges. William Rufus's war with his revolted vassals, Henry I.'s struggle with Robert de Belesme, the long duel between Stephen and Queen Maud, produced sieges by the dozen; but only two really important battles, that of the Standard, in 1138, and Lincoln, in 1141. Tenchebrai and Bremûle, the two Continental fights of Henry I., were mere cavalry skirmishes. The details of the fight of Lincoln show the all-importance of cavalry. The king had his infantry

massed in the centre, and his horse on the flanks ; the Earls of Chester and Gloucester, his adversaries, had three bodies of horse as their main line, flanked by some Welsh light infantry on the wings. The battle was settled by the king's horse being driven off the field by that of the barons, when the mass of infantry in the centre, where Stephen himself stood, was surrounded and gradually broken up by charges of the victorious cavalry of the two earls.



ATTACK ON A STRONGHOLD, SHOWING USE OF CROSS-BOW.

(Trinity College, Cambridge.)

The Battle of the Standard (1138 ; p. 371) differed from the other engagements of the time in being mainly fought between infantry. The army of David of Scotland was composed of wild tribal levies of Highland and Galwegian footmen, with only two hundred mailed knights who served about the king's person. The English army which opposed him was the levy of Yorkshire, with a comparatively small body of fully armed knights to back it. Hence the fighting consisted of a series of dashes made by the undisciplined Scots against the level front of spears and axes which the Yorkshiremen opposed to them. Archery mainly

**The Battle
of the
Standard.**

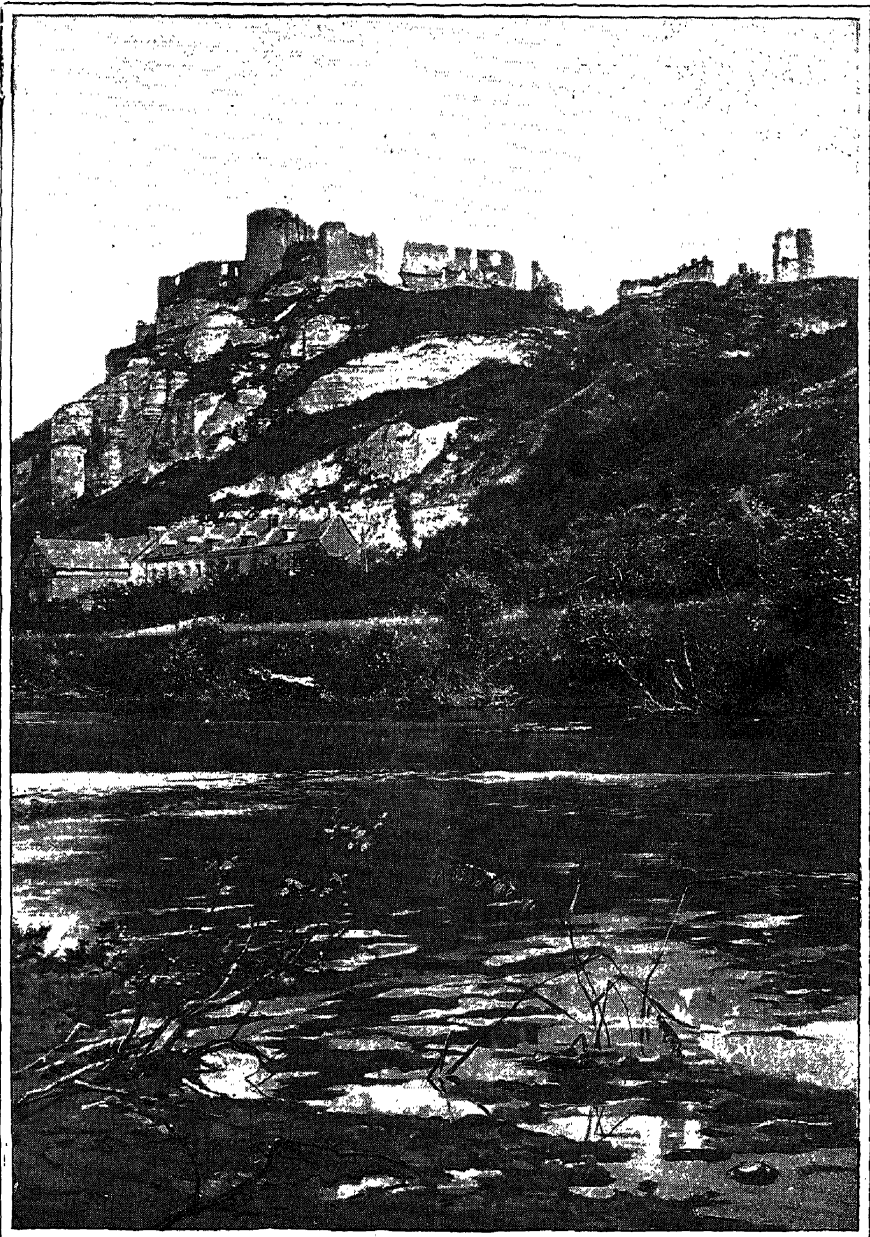
settled the day ; for the English—for the first time on record—had brought many bowmen into the field, to whom the Scots had nothing to oppose. The only cavalry charge of the day occurred when Prince Henry of Scotland broke for a moment the English left wing by a desperate onslaught at the head of his little squadron of two hundred knights. But this success was not followed up: they were scattered and hewn down, and finally only “eight took their harness safely back to Scotland.”

The Cross
Bow.

From the days of Stephen to those of Edward I. there is not much to record in the way of change in the tactics of English armies. The cavalry still remained the greater power, while infantry was only treated as an auxiliary. Richard I., the greatest soldier of his day, whose tactics in Palestine were the admiration of all his contemporaries, only leaves his mark on our military annals in virtue of his introduction of the cross-bow, and his systematic castle-building. That the cross-bow passed as a decisive and important weapon shows how little the archery of England had yet developed ; the long-bow was still in its infancy, and in the assize of arms of Henry II. (1181), no class of subjects of the realm is required to come to war with bow and arrows ; the yeomen, who in after generations formed the invincible archery of England, were bidden to equip themselves with hauberk and spear. The cross-bow was mainly in the hands of foreign mercenaries : Richard and John both kept bands of Continental cross-bowmen in pay, and the second battle of Lincoln (1216) was mainly won by the strong shooting of the mercenary cross-bowmen of Fawkes de Bréauté, John's French captain of adventurers.

The Pro-
fessional
Soldier.

The second half of the twelfth century has one point of interest which must be noted—the supplementing of the feudal levies by the hiring of professional soldiers of fortune. Kings who, like Henry II. and Richard I., waged long wars far from home, felt the gravest inconvenience from the character of the armies which they led. A feudal host could only be kept in the field for a short time ; it was untrained, undisciplined, and disorderly. Long service away from home it would not brook. So the kings were driven to the expedient of employing large bodies of mercenaries, who would keep the field for any space of time, and would serve as long as they were paid. Henry II. made habitual the institution of scutage,



CHÂTEAU GAILLARD.

an invention of his grandfather Henry I., by which every one was allowed to compound for personal service with the king, by paying a fixed sum for every shield that he was feudally bound to bring to the host. The device was accepted with content, and for distant expeditions the king in future raised large bodies of mercenaries, paid with the funds which the scutage brought him in. For expeditions nearer home, against Welsh, or Scots, or native rebels, both the feudal levy and the national "fyrd" were still employed. It was, for example, mainly the native levy-en-masse which routed the Earl of Leicester's mercenaries at Fornham in 1174, and took Bedford from the rebellious Fawkes de Bréauté in 1224.

**The Art of
Defence.**

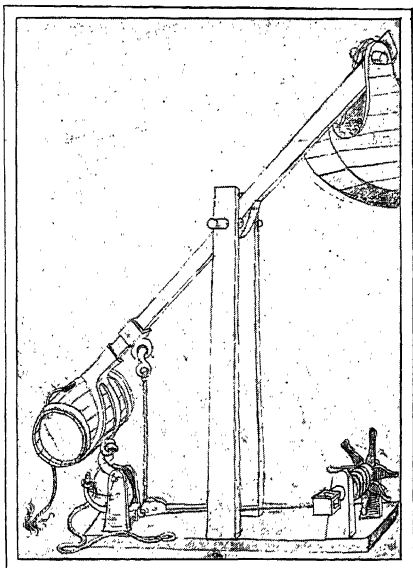
While the art of war still remained almost stationary as to war in the open field, the improvements in the art of fortification never ceased to progress. The old Norman castle, with its square and massive keep, was, in the twelfth century, surrounded by outer defences, which grew more and more complicated. First outer walls were added to the towers, then these outer walls were strengthened with gate-towers, and other towers were inserted in the *enceinte* to provide a cross-fire from the flank against any attacks made on the long stretches of "curtain." Machicolation¹ and projecting brattices (galleries standing out from the face of the wall) were added to enable the garrison to command the ditch and the foot of the walls better than could be done from the rampart itself. At last a well-built castle, like Richard I.'s great masterpiece the Château Gaillard, became a complicated mass of fortification, with concentric lines of defence, which could be held one after another in succession even when the besiegers had forced the outer wall. Meanwhile in the art of attack, though siege engines—catapults, mangonels, and perriers of all sorts—were increased in number and efficiency, they were still quite unable to cope with the new obstacles which the improved fortification threw in their way. Sieges lasted for month after month, and starvation was still the only absolutely certain method of attack. A persevering general would build a line of circumvallation round the enemy's walls, and leave hunger to do its work. The only

[¹ Openings in the floor of a projecting gallery, through which missiles could be discharged on an enemy underneath.]

way of hastening a protracted but hopeless defence was to threaten to hang the garrison if they resisted after all chance of succour was gone—a threat occasionally carried into execution—as, for example, by Hubert de Burgh at Bedford, in 1224.

It is with the second half of the thirteenth century that we find the military art begin to show signs of rapid develop-
ment in England, and that the tactics which made the English name so great in war in the fourteenth century begin to appear. The habitual use of the long-bow, a weapon in every respect superior to the cross-bow, first appears as established in the Assize of Arms of 1252, when all holders of forty shillings in land or nine marks in chattels are desired to provide themselves with “a sword, dagger, bow and arrows.” Whence the English got their long-bow is not quite easy to decide; the Normans at Hastings—as the Bayeux Tapestry clearly shows—still used the short four-foot bow, not the great six-foot weapon with its cloth-yard arrow. It was the short-bow, too, that won the Battle of the Standard. Probably the Anglo-Norman learnt to use the long-bow from the south Welsh, whose enormous bows and heavy arrows are celebrated by Giraldus Cambrensis in the last quarter of the twelfth century. Giraldus had seen the archers of Gwent send a shaft into a four-inch door so that the point stood out on the farther side. At any rate, the long-bow was well known by the second half of the thirteenth century though it was reserved for Edward I. to exalt it as the great national weapon. But in the French wars of

Warfare
under the
Angevin
Kings.



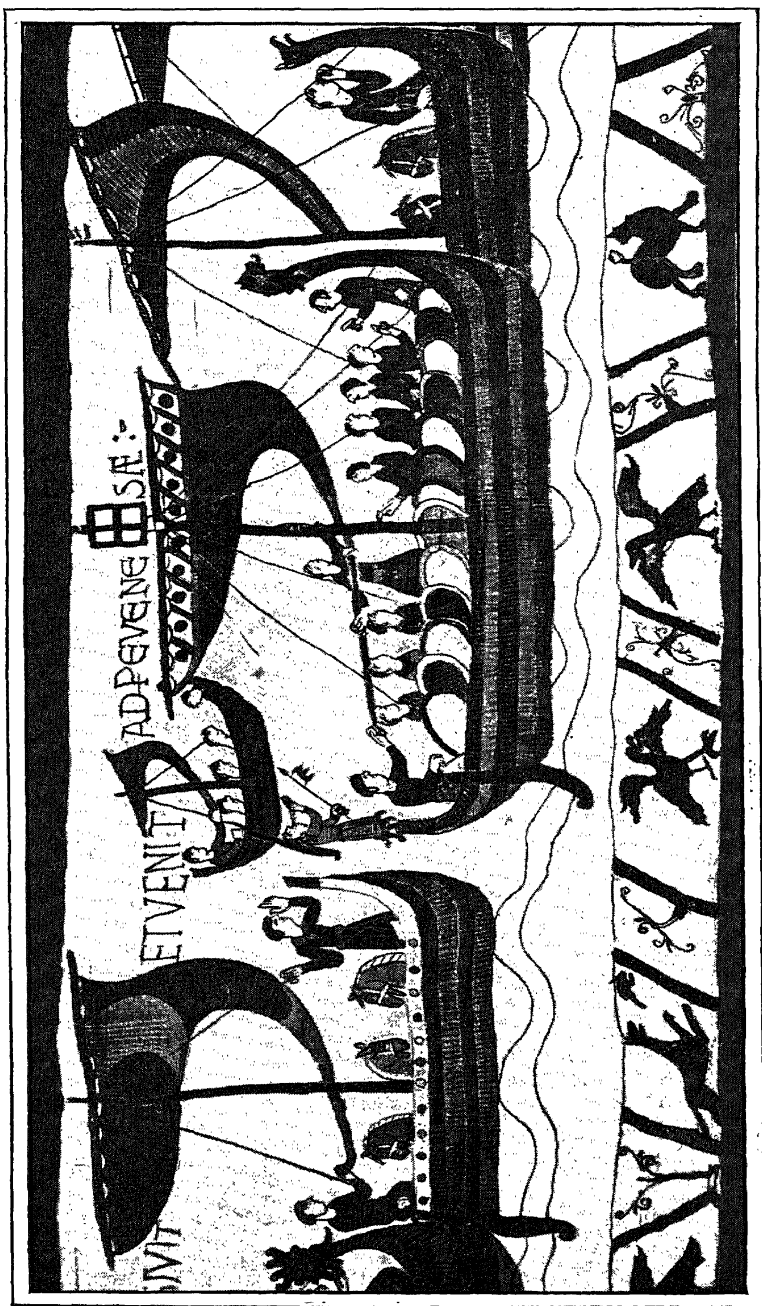
MEDIEVAL SIEGE ENGINE (MS. Harl. 2281).

Henry III., and even as late as the Welsh war of 1281, we find the cross-bow still held in high esteem, perhaps even in higher esteem than the rival that was ere long to supersede it.

W. LAIRD
CLOWES
Maritime
Warfare
and Com-
merce.

VERY little is known concerning the fleet which carried William and his army to England. The contemporary chroniclers were not men possessed of special naval knowledge, and the accounts given by them differ considerably one from another. One historian gives the number of vessels as four hundred ships, each with a large mast and sail, and more than a thousand transport boats; another tells us that there were three thousand craft carrying sails; a third speaks of nine hundred and seven great ships; and William of Poitiers says that, although Agamemnon conquered Troy with a thousand vessels, William needed more to conquer England. Nor can we be certain as to the sizes and types of ships engaged. The chief source of information upon these points is the Bayeux Tapestry. There is some doubt as to the exact destination and intent of this tapestry, though its age is certainly not remote from the date of the events it depicts; it has even been conjectured to be the work of English ladies at the Norman Court. In no age have women, especially those of gentle birth, had more than a very imperfect acquaintance with ships and ship-life. They cannot, moreover, be expected to appreciate the importance of a block, the significance of a rope or stay, or the force of the laws which govern a ship's stability and seaworthiness. It cannot, therefore, be supposed that the workers of the Bayeux Tapestry have left us an exact and trustworthy representation of the details of such vessels as they may have seen and voyaged in. Indeed, there is specific as well as presumptive evidence that the needlework disdains accuracy, and aims only at general effects. In the Tapestry, for example, William's own ship is shown, with its stern decorated with the effigy of a boy blowing a horn and holding in his left hand a gonfalon,¹ and with its bow bearing a lion's head as a figurehead, but a contemporary MS. in the Bodleian Library says that on the bow of William's ship, the *Mora*, Matilda, who had ordered

[¹ A pennon with several streamers, on either a lance or a revolving frame.]



THE "MORA" AND OTHER NORMAN SHIPS.
(*Bayeux Tapestry.*)

the vessel to be built, caused to be placed a golden boy, with his right index finger pointing to England, and with his left hand pressing an ivory horn to his lips; and Wace corroborates this account of the position of the boy.

**Norman
Ships.**

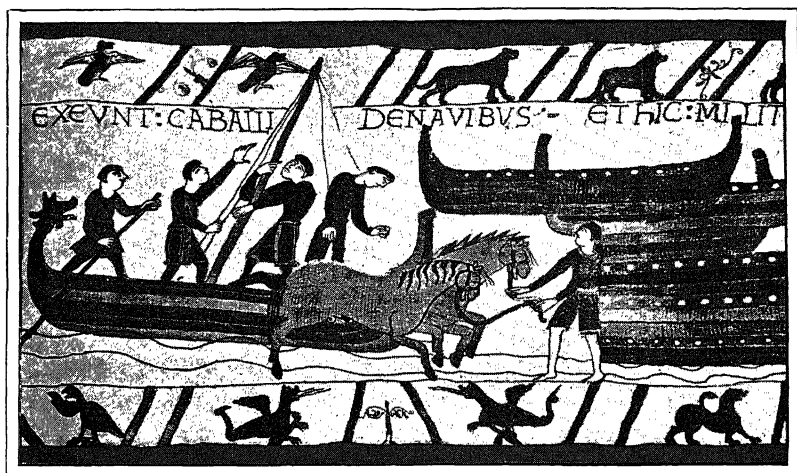
None of the ships of the period were large; and it seems probable that few, if any, of them were of more than about thirty tons burthen. They were clincher-built, or, in other words, their planks were laid on so that each one overlapped the upper edge of the one immediately below it, and they were constructed on the beach and launched bows foremost. Both bow and stern were raised, and, in the case of the larger vessels, both bore some kind of ornament. There was never more than one mast, which was stepped amidships, and which could be struck by being lowered down forward. It carried a single yard, and a lug-sail which was often parti-coloured, and which was sometimes covered with a decorative design. At the mast-head there was neither truck nor vane, except in the chief vessel of a squadron or fleet. The Tapestry represents the *Mora* to have carried, at the masthead, a sort of square white banner charged with a gold upright cross within a blue border, the whole surmounted by a gold cross. Wace describes the mast-head as having borne a lantern and a gilt brass vane. The steersman sat in the stern, holding in his left hand the sheet, and in his right the steering-paddle, or *clavus*. It is not likely that the largest ships carried more than forty or fifty men. The freeboard of all the vessels was low, and it was no doubt with the object of heightening it, and so keeping out a certain amount of spray, that the soldiers who were on board disposed their shields around the gunwale. There is no evidence that any of William's ships were decked, and it may be safely assumed that in bad weather they were exceedingly unsafe and terribly uncomfortable. Before the expedition started, and while it was lying off Saint-Valery-en-Caux, several of the vessels foundered at their anchors; and, seeing how long the fleet was delayed, it is only surprising that there were not many more losses of this kind. The vessels, it is interesting to note, appear to have been always carefully painted, generally with horizontal stripes of different colours. They were not, it must be supposed, very costly to build, for William, after landing at

1216]

Pevensey, destroyed the whole of his flotilla; and this, had it been difficult to replace them, he would scarcely have done merely in order to impress his followers with the fact that there was for them no retreat.

The only fittings of the Norman vessels consisted, apparently, of the mast and its stays, the sail, the oars, the steering-paddle, a cable, and an anchor, which was carried in-board, and dropped, as now, over the bows. Some of William's

The
Fittings.



LANDING THE CONQUEROR'S HORSES.

(Bayeux Tapestry)

ships carried horses—to the number of from three to eight—as well as men; but there are no signs that any special provision was made for the comfort of the animals; and the Tapestry represents them as being landed by the simple expedient of being driven overboard and allowed to walk or swim ashore. How the yard was connected with the mast we do not know, nor is it possible to say whether or not blocks were used. The Normans, were, however, acquainted with blocks, for they employed them in launching, if not in rigging and working, their vessels.

The crews that manned the war-fleets in those days were made up of several elements. There were a few professional seamen, there were large numbers of soldiers, and there were

The
Crews.

a great many adventurers, scoundrels, and cut-throats. The discipline both in England and in Normandy was lax. Harold, immediately before the invasion, found himself unable, owing to the withdrawal of his men, to keep his ships in commission, and his commanders were, in consequence, deprived of the power of meeting William at sea. William, for his part, experienced great difficulty, first in collecting, and then in keeping together, his forces. He bribed his great nobles and the clergy to assist him, promising them money, land, or slaves. As an inducement to Remi, priest of Fécamp, he held out an English bishopric in exchange for a ship and a score of men-at-arms; and, when his followers became depressed and apprehensive, William revived their spirits not only by reminding them of the high favour with which the Church regarded the undertaking, but also by keeping them well supplied with strong drink. The professional seamen were probably not numerous enough to leaven the whole mass of the fleet. It had never been the policy of the Normans to foster a commercial navy; and where there is no commercial navy there cannot be many seamen. But even among the Normans there seems to have been already a small class of men who followed the sea as a calling, and who made their descendants seamen also. Stephen Fitz-Erard, captain of the *Mora*, apparently belonged to this class; and it was Thomas, his son, or grandson, who, in 1120, was captain of the *Blanche* or "White Ship" upon the unhappy occasion when William, son of Henry I., and many of his noble relatives and friends, were drowned among the rocks in the Race of Catteville.

**Harold's
Navy.**

In England, on the other hand, trade had been encouraged and had flourished amazingly. The River Thames was always full of shipping, English and foreign; and the tolls must have amounted to large sums. There can be no question that the merchant navy, under Edward the Confessor and Harold, was very considerable; neither is there any doubt that there was also a regular war-navy. There had, indeed, been one ever since the days of Ethelred. It had, moreover, been called out for exercise every year immediately after Easter. We do not know exactly how it was raised and paid; but it is certain that at least part of it was furnished and manned by the leading maritime ports. Dover and Sandwich, if not all the

places which later became known as the Cinque Ports, and many other havens, were, long before the Conquest, severally obliged to furnish the king with twenty ships for fifteen days, once in every year, each vessel having a crew of twenty-one persons. And some of the inland towns contributed in men, in money, or in kind. There were also, from time to time, special levies for ships, and there was the permanent tax called Danegeld, which developed into a fund for national defence. There was thus, in England, a school of seamen of old standing and a respectable navy, when William started upon his expedition, and everything points to the conclusion that if Harold's men had not been allowed too literally to interpret the law which permitted them, after their annual service, to go to their homes on the Feast of the Nativity of St. Mary, William, who sailed three weeks later, might have been easily defeated at sea. The men would probably have been willing to remain had the danger of the kingdom been properly represented to them; for many of them seem to have spontaneously rejoined immediately after William had landed. They rejoined too late, however, to be of any practical use. Godwine and Edmund, the sons of Harold, put themselves at the head of the fleet and carried it to Ireland, whence for several years they conducted a series of semi-piratical depredations on the coast of the West of England; but these operations were no more effective than were the very similar operations of Prince Rupert against the Commonwealth nearly six hundred years afterwards; and the ships of the princes were, one by one, fruitlessly expended. Thus England was, for a time, left without a war-navy; and so absolutely unable was she, three or four years after William had destroyed his fleet, to make her power felt upon the sea, that, in 1070, the Conqueror found himself obliged to buy off the Danes, who for four months had lain unmolested in the Humber, and had used their ships as a centre whence to ravage and plunder from York to Ely. But William recreated an English fleet ere he had been long upon the throne. As early as 1071 he was able to operate by sea against the rebellious Earl Morkere; and in 1072 he despatched a force of ships against Scotland. These ships were obtained in part from the coast towns under the

stipulations of their tenures; in part from the Danegeld; and in part from private owners, who exchanged their ships for grants of land.

Maritime
Affairs,
1087-1100.

It would be idle to deny that the maritime population of England was at this period wild and lawless in the extreme; and that the coasts, even in times of nominal peace, were generally unsafe for honest people. The king was supposed to protect the narrow seas from the depredations of pirates and robbers, and in part return he received certain dues and tolls, and all the fish known as "great," or "royal," that were caught or stranded within his dominions. "Of sturgeon caught on our lands," runs the ordinance as quoted by Nicolas from Bracton, "we will that it shall be ours, saving to the finder his costs and expenses. And of whales so found we will that the head shall be ours, and the tail our consort's, agreeable to ancient usage." Whether the early Norman sovereigns also arrogated to themselves the dominion of the seas is doubtful. It was the object of Selden, Prynne, and the learned jurists of their day to make it appear that our kings had done so almost from time immemorial; but it is more than suspected that some of these lawyers strained, if they did not invent, facts to substantiate their conclusions; and there is little ground for belief that the dominion of the seas was ever formally claimed for this country before the days of John. It is certain, in any case, that the seas and coasts were very badly policed, and that, if pretensions to maritime sovereignty were cherished, the kings did little or nothing towards the practical assertion of them. The narrow seas swarmed with freebooters of several nationalities; and the shores, unlighted and unbuoyed, were rendered the more dangerous by the fact that those who lived upon them were pirates and wreckers. Only in a few of the larger ports were the laws observed. Elsewhere might was right.

The expedition which, in 1098, was fitted out by the Earls of Chester and Shrewsbury against Anglesey provides illustration of the state of affairs in the reign of William II. Like the buccaneers of the Spanish Main in a later age, they landed, plundered and massacred the inhabitants, and had collected, ready for shipment, an enormous booty, when Magnus,

King of Norway, descended upon them from the sea, defeated them, killed the Earl of Shrewsbury, and carried off all the spoils (pp. 4, 351).

The lack of system and subordination that had rendered the fleet of Harold useless against the invasion of William the Conqueror did not disappear in the immediately succeeding reigns; and to ill discipline and insubordination there was added, in the reign of Henry I., disloyalty. In 1101, when Robert, Duke of Normandy, was threatening invasion, Henry had little difficulty in collecting a large squadron; but he

Henry I.'s
Navy,
1100-1134.



SEAL OF PEVENSEY.

could not retain it. No sooner had it sailed than great part of it deserted to the enemy; and, had not a timely peace been arranged between the royal brothers, Henry would have probably lost his crown, for, in the history of England, the dominion of the soil has usually lain with him who has enjoyed command of the sea. The disloyalty of the seamen and coast population wore away, however, as the reign grew older, and as Henry won opportunity for making his true nature known to them. His modification of the law of wreck was no doubt a measure that gained him much popularity as well with the maritime as with the great commercial classes. Up to his day, upon the loss of a vessel, any cargo that was cast ashore belonged to the king; but Henry ordained that if any person escaped alive from a lost vessel,

the ship should not be treated as a wreck, and property in her and her contents should not be held to have passed away from the original owner.

Maritime
Adven-
ture.

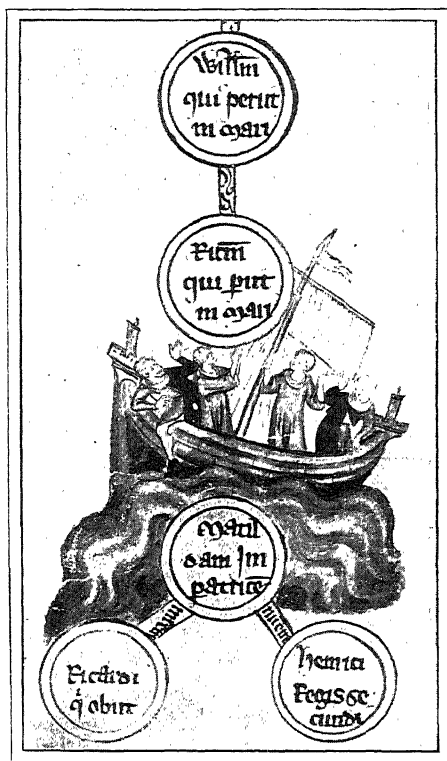
It was in this reign that the peculiar genius of the English for maritime adventure first began to show itself. In 1102 Edgar, grandson of Edmund Ironside, undertook a crusading expedition to the Holy Land, and, five years later, one "Hardinge of England" appeared with the Christian fleet at Joppa during the siege of Jerusalem. This genius for adventure seems to have been aroused by the Continental Normans, who were already acquiring great influence in the Mediterranean and who soon found formidable rivals in their island kinsmen. It is an old maxim that trade follows the flag; and although, owing to the long continuance of the wars of the Crusades, the earliest adventures of the English in the Levant did not lead to the immediate opening of commercial relations with the East, they certainly paved the way for it, and enabled such relations to be entered into as soon as the establishment of peace permitted. English participation in distant adventure had another result equally important and more speedy. It brought about considerable improvements in naval architecture, a science which for several centuries had made very little progress. Men were not slow in discovering that the vessels which would serve well enough for a fine weather passage across the Channel were scarcely fit to brave the huge rollers of the Bay of Biscay, and to face the varying conditions of a long voyage. Whether many improvements had been made by the year 1120 is uncertain; but it is recorded that the *Blanche*—the "nef" commonly called the White Ship (p. 354)—had fifty oars, and that when she went to pieces there were lost with her about three hundred souls. Even if we admit that the number of passengers may have been exaggerated, we cannot easily avoid the conclusion that the *Blanche* was a much larger craft than any which belonged to William the Conqueror's fleet of 1066. William, Henry I.'s son, left the sinking ship in a boat, and might have saved himself had he refrained from attempting to rescue his half-sister, Mary; and we find no evidence that any of the Conqueror's ships had boats belonging to or accompanying them.

[216]

Another noteworthy circumstance connected with this period is the rise of Portsmouth as a place of naval importance. Robert, Duke of Normandy, when intending to invade England, landed at Portsmouth in 1101. Henry I. more than once made Portsmouth his point of departure for Normandy, and in 1141, when the Empress Maud came to England to assert her son's right to the crown, she disembarked at Portsmouth.

Henry II. is praised by Bromton, William of Newburgh, and Gervase of Canterbury for having commanded that shipwrecked persons should be treated with kindness, and for having forbidden, under heavy penalties, anyone to take their merchandise or goods from them. He protected the rising commerce of his kingdom more directly by enacting some of the earliest Navigation Laws. In 1181 he ordered the justices to declare in each county that no one should buy or sell any ship to be carried away from England, and that no one should induce any seamen to take service out of the country.

In his reign London and Bristol became conspicuously the chief commercial ports of the kingdom, the former trading with Germany and the central parts of the Continent, and the latter with the Scandinavian countries and with Ireland.



WRECK OF THE WHITE SHIP (MS. Claud. D. II.).

Maritime
Commerce
under
Henry II.

During the early part of Henry's sovereignty, Ireland was still unconquered; but first by the efforts of private adventurers, who were little better than pirates, and finally by the exertions of the king himself, who invaded Ireland with four hundred large ships in 1171, the sister island was brought under some kind of subjection. This had the effect of greatly increasing the trade of Bristol, the merchants of which soon acquired the reputation of being even richer than those of the capital.

Once more we find evidence of the increasing size of English vessels. The foundering of a single ship in the Channel in 1170 is said to have involved the loss of four hundred persons. Many commentators, who pin great faith to the contemporary representations of ships upon coins and in MSS., affect to believe that the statements of the chroniclers concerning the complements of the vessels of the period are exaggerated, but there seems to be little reason for this incredulity. The evidence of the coins especially has little or no value. Indeed, if we accepted all of it, we should be driven to the absurd conclusion that as late as the thirteenth century masted ships were often less than six feet long, and were so built that only by miraculous intervention could they be kept upright in the water. It is much more probable that all the representations of ships that have come down to us from the eleventh and twelfth centuries are purely and frankly conventional. It is tolerably clear, however, that ships still had never more than one mast, and they were still, for the most part, very small and indifferently seaworthy.

Maritime
Affairs
under
Richard I.

The reign of Richard I. is, from a naval point of view, memorable in many ways. It witnessed the first distant maritime expedition that was ever undertaken by the forces of the realm, and the promulgation of the first laws for the government of the English fleet and merchant navy.

It was at Chinon, in 1190, that Richard issued the ordinances which have been very fairly described as the basis of our modern Articles of War. These ordinances directed that if any man slew another on board a ship, he was to be fastened to the dead body and thrown with it into the sea. If the murder was committed on shore, the murderer was to be bound to the corpse and buried with it. If anyone were

1216]

convicted by legal testimony of drawing his knife upon another, or of drawing blood in any manner, he was to lose his hand. For giving a blow with the hand, without producing blood, the offender was to be plunged three times into the sea. If anyone reviled or insulted another, he was on every occasion to pay to the offended party an ounce of



TYPICAL MS. SHIP (Harley Roll Y, 6).
(*St. Guthlac's Voyage to Croyland.*)

silver. A thief was to have his head shaven, to have boiling pitch poured upon it, and feathers shaken over him, as a mark by which he might be known, and to be turned ashore at the first land at which the ship might touch. Another ordinance strictly required every person to be obedient to the commanders or justices of the fleet; and, as they regarded themselves and their return to their own country, they were enjoined faithfully to observe these regulations.

Allied to these ordinances was the code known as The Laws of Oleron. It is generally ascribed to Richard, or to his mother, Queen Eleanor, but the greater part of it is probably of older date, and was merely confirmed by Cœur

The Law
of the Sea.

de Lion. The code did for the merchant service of the day what the ordinances above quoted did for the navy; but it went much farther. It consists of forty-seven articles, and its most interesting provisions are as follow:—If a vessel were wind or weather-bound, the master, when a change occurred, was to consult his crew, saying to them, “Gentlemen, what think you of this wind?” and to be guided as to whether he should put to sea by the opinion of the majority. If he did not do this, and any misfortune happened, he was to make good the damage. If a seaman sustained any hurt through drunkenness or quarrelling, the master was not bound to provide for his cure, and might turn him out of his ship; but if the injury occurred in the service of the ship, the man was to be cured at the vessel’s cost. A sick sailor was to be sent on shore, and a lodging, candles, and one of the ship’s boys, or a nurse, provided to attend him, with the same allowance of food as he would have received on board. In case of danger in a storm, the master might, with the consent of the merchants on board, lighten the vessel by throwing part of the cargo overboard; and if they objected to his doing so, he was to act as he thought proper; but, on arrival in port, he and a third of his crew were to make oath that what had been done had been for the preservation of the ship; and the loss was then to be borne equally by the merchants. Before goods were shipped, the master was to satisfy the merchants as to the strength of his ropes and slings; but if he did not do so, or if he had been requested to make repairs, and damage resulted, the master was to make it good. In cases of difference between a master and one of his crew, the latter was to be thrice deprived of his mess allowance before he could be lawfully discharged; and if the man, in presence of the crew, offered reasonable satisfaction, and the master still persisted in discharging him, the sailor might follow the vessel to her destination, and there claim wages as if he had not been sent ashore. In case of collision by a ship under sail running on board one at anchor owing to bad steering, if the former were damaged, the cost was to be equally divided, the master and crew of the latter making oath that the collision was accidental. This law was aimed at dishonest owners who put old and decayed craft in the way of better ones. All

anchors were to be indicated by buoys or anchor-marks. If a pilot, from ignorance or otherwise, failed to conduct a ship in safety, and if the merchants sustained damage, he was, if he had the means, to make full satisfaction, and if not, to lose his head; and if the master or any one of the mariners cut off his head, the executioner was not to be held answerable; but before recourse were had to this fatal measure, it must be ascertained that the pilot had not wherewith to make satisfaction. This rule was aimed at a class of rascally pilots who purposely ran vessels ashore in places where by custom a third or a fourth part of wrecked ships belonged to the lord, with whom the pilots had, of course, an understanding. Nor were the wrecking lords themselves forgotten. A plunderer of wrecks was to be tied to a post in the middle of his own dwelling, and his house was then to be burnt over his head, its walls were to be demolished, its site was to be converted into a pig-market, and the man's goods were to be confiscated for the benefit of those whom he had robbed. People who, "more barbarous, cruel, and inhuman than mad dogs," murdered shipwrecked persons, were to be ducked in the sea and then stoned to death. Goods floating ashore were to be kept for a year or more, and, if not then claimed, to be sold by the lord, and the profits distributed as marriage portions to poor maids, and in other charitable ways.

The ships with which Richard carried on his distant operations were of several types. The largest were galleys, sometimes, if of great burden, called "dromonds," although the name dromond was also applied loosely to any large vessel. The "buss" was a bluff-bowed capacious craft, chiefly used as a transport or store-ship. The "galion," or "galliass," was a swifter and smaller galley. The "visser," or "urser," was a flat horse-boat. The barge was probably a small vessel used for carrying goods. Snakes, or "esnecca," seem to have been light and swift passenger boats. And the "cog" was apparently a large ship, either naval or mercantile. The galleys were long and low, with seldom more than two banks of oars, and with a mast and an above-water spur. The largest of Richard's galleys in the Mediterranean in 1190 had thirty oars. The rudder had not yet been introduced, and steering was still effected by means of the paddle, worked on the ship's

Warships
under
Richard I.

starboard quarter. This paddle was, however, often attached in some way to the hull, and was provided with a cross-head or yoke, very similar to that of a modern boat's rudder. The larger warships carried not only engines for the projection



SHIP, SHOWING METHOD OF STEERING.
(Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

of darts and stones, but also Greek fire, and certain squib-like explosives called "serpents." They seem to have fought under the banner of St. George, which from that time became the flag of England, although it was more than once temporarily supplanted.

In this reign there was added to England the first of her distant foreign possessions by the conquest of Cyprus in 1191, but Richard speedily sold his acquisition to the Knights Templars and, when they insisted upon his taking it back again, gave it to Guy de Lusignan. After he left the island for Palestine, the king

became the hero of a naval action, which, as it was the first since the days of Alfred in which an English monarch bore part, and as, moreover, it illustrates the naval methods of the period, should be mentioned here. Nicolas has compiled the following graphic account of it:—

"On the 7th of June, when near Beirut, an immense ship was discovered ahead. This vessel, which was the largest the English had ever seen, excited their wonder and admiration. Some chroniclers call her a dromon, and others a buss; while one of them exclaims, 'A marvellous ship! A ship than which, except Noah's ship, none greater was ever read of;' and which he afterwards calls the 'Queen of Ships.' This vessel was, they say, very stoutly built, had three tall tapering masts, and her sides were painted, in some places

green and in others yellow, so elegantly that nothing could exceed her beauty. She was full of men to the incredible number of fifteen hundred; among whom were seven emirs and eighty chosen Turks for the defence of Acre: and was laden with bows, arrows, and other weapons, an abundance of Greek fire in jars, and two hundred most deadly serpents prepared for the destruction of Christians. Richard directed a galley, commanded by Peter de Barris, to approach and examine the stranger; and was told that the vessel was going from Antioch to the siege of Acre, and belonged to the King of France, but that the crew could neither speak French nor show a French or other Christian banner. Being further interrogated, they varied from their story, and pretended to be Genoese bound for Tyre. Meanwhile an English galleyman had recognised the ship as having been fitted out at Beirut while he was in that port; and in reply to the King's question, he said, 'I will give my head to be cut off, or myself to be hanged, if I do not prove that this is a Saarcen ship. Let a galley be sent after them, and give them no salutation: their intention and trustworthiness will then be discovered.' The suggestion was adopted; and, the moment the galley came alongside of the ship, the Saracens threw arrows and Greek fire into her. Richard instantly ordered the enemy to be attacked, saying, 'Follow and take them, for, if they escape, ye lose my love for ever; and if ye capture them, all their goods shall be yours.' Himself foremost in the fight, and summoning his galleys to the royal vessel, he animated all around by his characteristic valour. Showers of missiles flew on both sides, and the Turkish ship slackened her way; but, though the galleys rowed round and about her in all directions, her great height and the number of her crew, whose arrows fell with deadly effect from her decks, rendered it extremely difficult to board her. The English consequently became discouraged if not dismayed, when the king cried out, 'Will ye now suffer that ship to get off untouched and uninjured? Oh shame! after so many triumphs, do ye now give way to sloth and fear? Know that, if this ship escape, every one of you shall be hung on the cross or put to extreme torture.' The galley-men, 'making,' says the candid historian, 'a virtue of necessity,' jumped overboard,

and, diving under the enemy's vessel, fastened ropes to her rudder, steering her as they pleased; and then, catching hold of ropes and climbing up her sides, they succeeded at last in boarding her." [The use of the word "rudder" here is surely a mistranslation.] "A desperate conflict ensued: the Turks were forced forward; but, being joined by those from below, they rallied and drove their assailants back to their galleys. Only one resource remained; and it instantly presented itself to the king's mind. He ordered his galleys to pierce the sides of the enemy with the iron spurs affixed to their prows. These directions were executed with great skill and success. The galleys, receding a little, formed a line; and then, giving full effect to their oars, struck the Turkish ship with such violence that her sides were stove in in many places, and, the sea immediately rushing in, she soon foundered. All her gallant crew, except fifty-five, who were spared from no worthier motive than that they would be useful in the construction of military engines, were either drowned, or slain by the inhuman victors. So much importance was attached to the destruction of this ship that it was said that, if she had arrived in safety, Acre would never have been taken."

King John
and the
Navy.

King John has been called the Founder of the Royal Navy of England. He does not deserve the title, which could only be given with justice to a monarch who had created a navy where none had been before; and it is impossible to mention any year in which, or any document or act by which, the navy was established. But John merits the credit of having very greatly improved the service, and of having devoted very careful attention to it, throughout his reign. He seems, moreover, to have been the first English sovereign to retain seamen in permanent pay and to pension officers for wounds, and the first seriously to assert the dominion of the Narrow Seas. The pay of his galley-men was sixpence and of his mariners threepence a day; and he found the crews of his ships in provisions, including herrings and bacon, and in wine. Moreover, he introduced the practice of paying men a certain portion of their wages in advance, previous to sailing. He had a number of ships of his own, in addition to the vessels which were supplied,

according to the provisions of their tenures, by the Cinque Ports and by other maritime towns; and some of them must have been of considerable size, for crews of seventy men were not uncommon, and there are records of vessels, described as "small ships," which were, nevertheless, capable of carrying as many as fifteen horses. Upon occasion both ships and men were impressed, but there was also a system of hire of vessels and of voluntary enlistment of seamen, and



THE USE OF THE RAM.
(Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

a regular roll was kept of vessels which were permanently liable to be called upon for service. The reserve of ships thus constituted was administered by districts, each district embracing four or five ports, and being under the superintendence of an officer of rank. In 1205 the king's and the reserve ships made up a force of over one hundred sail. The general efficiency of the service was encouraged by a custom which had the effect of giving to the seamen one moiety of all prizes captured from the enemy. The prizes really became the property of the king, and were either sold or added to the navy; but the royal bounty always awarded prize-money, and, dating from John's reign, there are many records of its payment.

William de Wrotham, Archdeacon of Taunton, was, in

these matters, the king's right hand. He is variously designated as Keeper of the King's Gallies, Keeper of the King's Ships, and Keeper of the Seaports; and he carried out many of the functions of a modern First Lord of the Admiralty, Controller of the Navy, and Admiral Superintendent, as well as those of a Master of the Ordnance. He had something to do with the original establishment of Portsmouth as a dockyard and arsenal. In May, 1212, the Sheriff of Southampton was ordered to cause the basins at Portsmouth to be surrounded with a strong wall, as the Archdeacon of Taunton would direct, for the preservation of the king's ships and gallies: and he was also ordered to cause pent-houses to be erected for the stores and tackle of the vessels.

The Sovereignty of the Seas.

Selden is the authority for the statement that John claimed the sovereignty of the seas. Selden quotes a folio MS. "Commentary on Affairs Concerning the Admiral." But Selden is not the only authority. Sir John Borough and Prynne refer to it or to other MSS. to the same effect; and although nothing is known of the originals, that fact is not, in itself, suspicious; for many very important naval documents of as late as the first half of the seventeenth century have long since mysteriously disappeared, and nothing at all would now be known of them had not their contents happened to be promptly committed to print. The ordinance, which Selden printed, was translated by him, as follows:—"If the governor or commander of the king's navy, in his naval expeditions, shall meet on the sea any ships whatsoever, either laden or empty, that shall refuse to strike their sails at the command of the king's governor or admiral, or his lieutenant, but make resistance against them which belong to his fleet, that they are to be reputed enemies if they may be taken; yea, and their ships and goods be confiscated as the goods of enemies; and that though the masters or owners of the ships shall allege afterwards that the same ships and goods do belong to the friends and allies of our lord the king; but that the persons which shall be found in this kind of ships are to be punished with imprisonment at discretion for their rebellion." Whether the document may have been genuine or not, it is intensely interesting as purporting to be the earliest evidence of a claim which was afterwards proudly

[216]

and gloriously enforced by the English Navy during several centuries. There is no doubt that in the first half of John's reign the Narrow Seas were policed as they had never been before. To claim the dominion of them, therefore, would not have been unnatural on the part of the Power that spared no pains to keep them safe and open to the commerce of all nations.

IN no department of life was the Norman's policy of "thorough" better carried out than in the matter of architecture. This was the work of William's spiritual mercenaries, who in intelligence, in discipline, in everything save numbers, were immensely superior to his lay soldiery. Nor were they numerically an insignificant body, for during the whole reign of the Conqueror (and under many of his successors) Norman and French and Italian priests were pouring into England. It was part of William's general scheme for the Normanisation of the country, everywhere to plant the foreign ecclesiastic by the side of the foreign soldier. Nor were the details beneath his personal supervision. As he had fixed on the larger towns as his principal places of arms, so he determined that these should also be the principal places of religion; and it was for the more effectual carrying-out of the principle of the double garrison that he promoted the transfer of the bishops' seats from the small to the larger cities of their dioceses (p. 360).

R. HUGHES.
Art and
Architecture.

Wherever the imported ecclesiastic came from—whether he was an Italian, like Lanfranc; a Piedmontese, like Anselm; or a Norman, like Ralph the Torch—he had invariably a passion for building. The first thing, in fact, that we usually hear of the foreigners who supplanted Englishmen in English sees and abbacies is, that they set about rebuilding their cathedral or abbey churches. For this purpose the entire English fabric was usually pulled down; sometimes, if the new church was built on the site of the old, the crypt was spared; more often a Norman crypt was begun. It may have been effected later or earlier, but later or earlier every one of the English cathedrals disappeared. They were, of course, buildings of various merit; a few, like Winchester, being considerable structures of stone, while more were only partly of stone, some wholly of wood.

Some dated from the time of Wilfrid and Benedict, others belonged to the revival under Dunstan, most were of the time of Canute or the Confessor. But the contempt for the rude and primitive Romanesque of the Saxon seems to have been universal, and whether the work was of the time of the recent Edward, or of the ancient Ethelfrith, it was equally English, and as such swept away. In country districts, of course, the architectural extermination was not so rapid: there was no such clean sweep of the English parish churches. This was due partly to the want of funds at the disposal of the local priesthood, partly to their want of architectural skill. In some few cases the Norman was even fain to rebuild in the Saxon manner, or only to add a Norman story, as at Deerhurst, or a Norman tower, as at Monkwearmouth. As a result, during the early days of William we have some buildings in the new style, some in the old, and some of a mixed character.

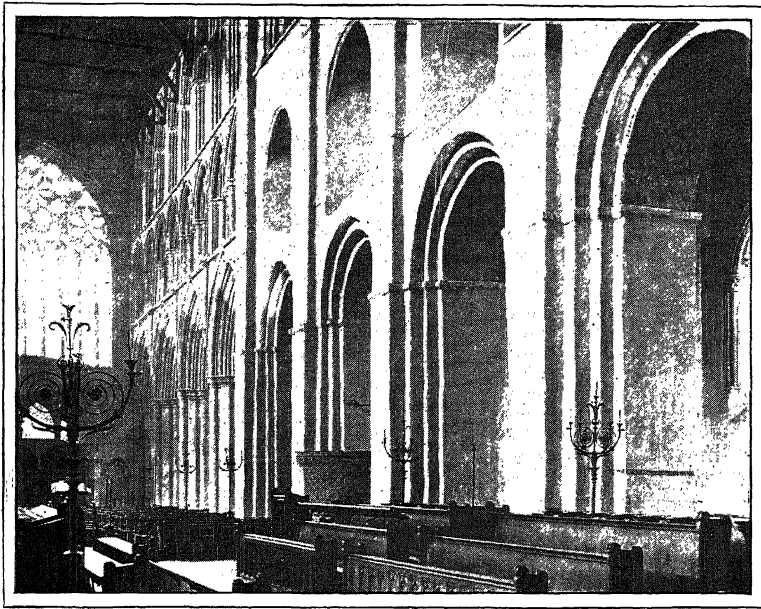
A very few new churches were also built at this time in the Saxon manner. At Lincoln, for instance—where William and Bishop Remi took, practically, the whole of the old town on the top of the hill, for the new castle and the new minster and monastery—the Saxon inhabitants were driven to the marshy land that lay in the valley. Here, while aloft the cathedral and castle were rising, they erected St. Peter's and St. Mary le Wigford—churches which resemble in general character, and indeed long passed as, typical Saxon. At Lincoln, therefore, we find genuine fragments of Saxon style built wholly in the time of the Norman, as at Westminster we have a genuine fragment of Norman style built wholly in the time of the Saxon. Both are Roman in origin, though the Norman style was, perhaps, the noblest form of Romanesque, as the English or Saxon was, perhaps, its meanest manifestation. Both, as we have said, are Roman, but the Norman shows its lineage most perfectly. The Norman round arch, supported on piers, is seen in the great aqueducts which the Romans built in France, in Spain, and in Italy. The round-headed apse is simply the ending of the Roman basilica. The Norman triforium (or first story) and the Norman clerestory (or second) are but developments of the architecture of the amphitheatre. In the matter of the central tower there is perhaps more originality, though here we have timidly applied hints taken from the architects of

1216]

St. Sophia and San Vitale, and the Frankish Cæsar's copy of San Vitale at Aachen.

In plan the Norman church was invariably a Latin cross. At the beginning the nave was supported by vast square or oblong piers, sometimes rounded into stumpy columns. Plain vaults without ribs for the narrower spaces, wooden roofs for the wider ones, were universal. The arch was either not

Norman
Churches.



NORMAN PIERS, ST. ALBANS CATHEDRAL.

recessed at all, or only once recessed, or with the plainest round mouldings along the edge. The decoration did not get beyond simple arcades, with a sparse decoration of shallow zigzag or lozenge fretwork; and all this worked with the axe the use of the chisel being unknown. The capitals are also very plain—the upper stone square, the lower stone a hemisphere with the top of the sides chopped straight (or, from the mason's point of view, a square with the bottom rounded), so as to produce the familiar cushion shape, and occasionally—as in the White Tower in London—with a feeble volute at the corners, or in the middle

a cross shaped like the Greek letter Tau (Τ). The windows are round-headed, without shafts or mouldings, and rather long and small in aperture, and the doors square-headed under a round arch. The central towers are exceedingly low and heavy, the buttresses quite plain, and the porches shallow, the doorways being recessed in the thickness of the wall.

**Norman
Masonry.**

Simple indeed in every feature this Early Norman work is,

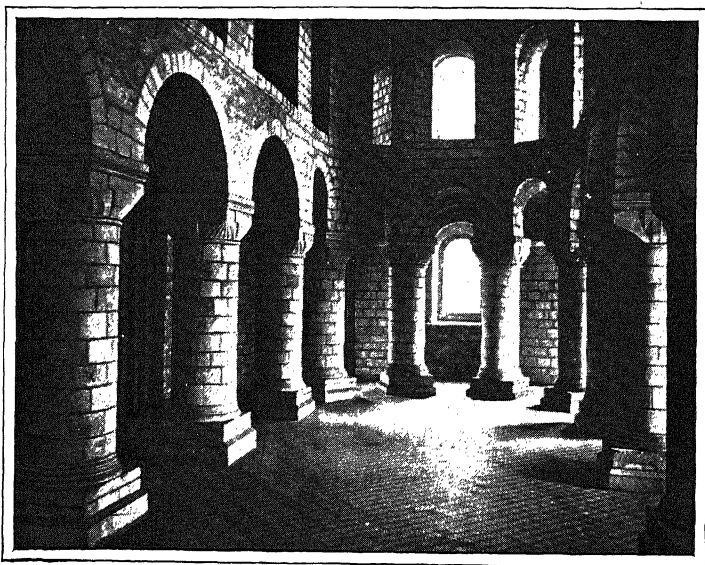
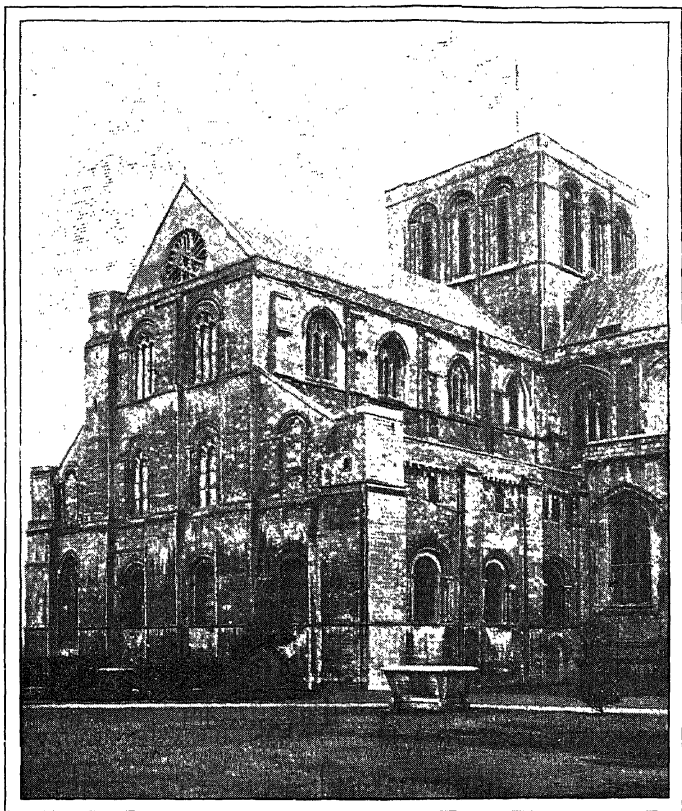


Photo : York & Son, Notting Hill, W.

NORMAN WORK IN THE WHITE TOWER, LONDON.

but the low round arches, the enormous thickness of the piers or columns, the sternness and austerity of the decoration, are, it must be confessed, extraordinarily impressive. They look, as has been said of the work of Rome and Egypt, as if the builders meant to build for eternity, as if they meant to stamp on every stone the Norman pride in Norman strength. It is to be feared that the builders' motive was really less poetical. It was simply that, in imitating the wide-jointed Roman work, they were unable to make the adamantine Roman mortar, and recognising the untrustworthy character of their material, they gave to pier

and column and arch a bigness that looks disproportionate to the weight it has to carry. The most distinguishing note of all in Early Norman work is the bad, wide-jointed masonry. The first Norman architects were, indeed, quite right; and when they laid aside this modest mistrust and attempted anything



THE TOWER AND NORTH TRANSEPT, WINCHESTER CATHEDRAL.

ambitious they usually had reason to regret it. The fall of Early Norman structures was, in fact, exceptionally frequent. Thus the tower of Ely, the south arches at St. Albans, and the tower of Winchester, all fell. This last cathedral had been fourteen years building; and the tower, finished in 1093, fell in 1107, nearly seven years after the wicked Red King had been

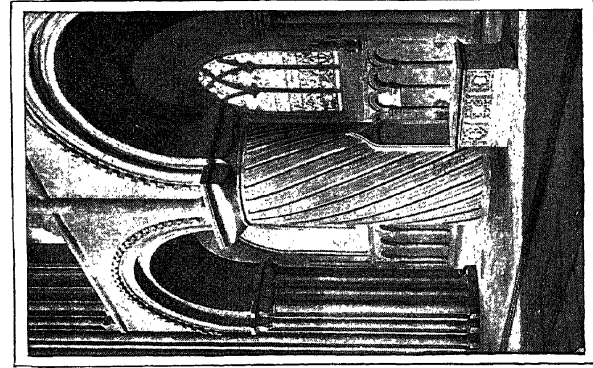
laid beneath it. It is, of course, impossible to disprove the popular belief that the vicinity of the body of the impious Rufus accelerated the fall of the tower of Winchester; but William of Malmesbury himself suspected that it was due to human clumsiness, rather than to Divine anger. Some years later, probably about 1115 (the exact date is uncertain), the tower was raised again. It is very low, but the piers on which it rests are enormous, and if they are as strong as they look, are capable of supporting three times the weight.

Effect of
the
Crusades.

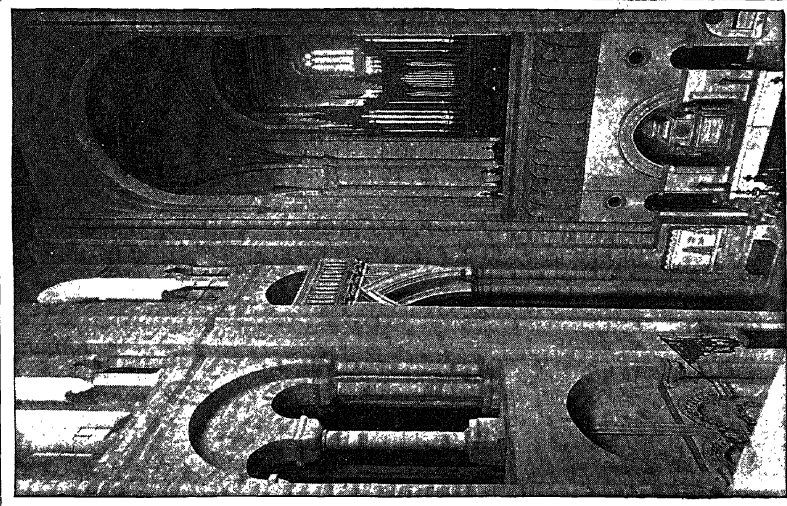
The Anglo-Norman tradition of the thick column, which we so much admire, was, in fact, a tradition of timidity, inherited from the time when the masonry was bad, and persisting when, to use the words of William of Malmesbury, "the courses of stone were so correctly laid that the joint baffles the eye, and makes it fancy that the whole wall is composed of a single block"; for the bad stone-laying does not extend beyond the half-century that followed the Conquest. By the end of that time the Crusaders were home again, having seen many men and the architecture of many cities, and their return is marked by a striking change not only in the masonry, but in the character and feeling of Norman work. We have seen how the chronicler is impressed by the improvement in the new masonry; still more striking is the change from plainness to profusion of ornament, from the most simple to the most elaborate forms of decoration.

The
Pointed
Arch

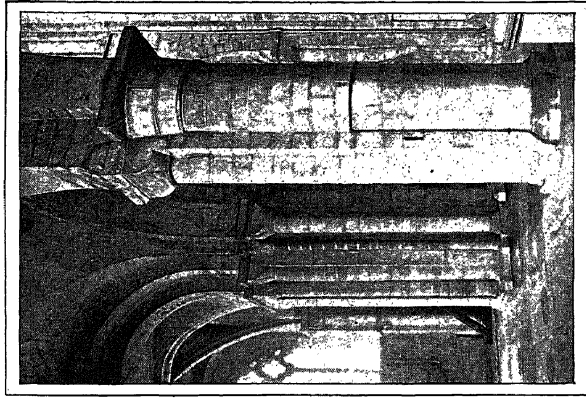
Our earliest pointed arch was probably formed by the intersection of two round-headed arches, an intersection which gives the perfect lancet form. It first appears as a decorative feature only, as in the ornamental arcade at Canterbury, built about 1110, when Ernulf was prior, and repeated by him a few years later at Rochester, when he had been elevated to that see. But as an element of construction, even of the most simple kind, the pointed arch does not appear until the second period of the Norman architecture—that is, until the end of the first quarter of the twelfth century. In this respect the Norman architects were a long way behind some of their Continental brethren. Pointed arches had been in use in the South of France—a country through which many Crusaders passed—for more than a century, and they are found in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, built by them after the taking of Jerusalem in 1100.



Norman Pier, Norwich Cathedral.
Photo: Geo. Norwich.



Piers supporting Tower, Winchester Cathedral.
MASSIVE NORMAN MASONRY.



Wide-jointed Masonry, Winchester Cathedral.

It therefore becomes probable, though not strictly provable, that the constructive pointed arch was also brought to England by the warriors of the Cross. It was, apparently, first used here about 1125 by Bishop Roger of Salisbury (p. 367), who rebuilt the cathedral of Old Sarum. Not a stone of that edifice remains *in situ*, but there are pointed arches of his in the Abbey of Malmesbury, where they stand on massive Norman piers, and where the work is in other respects of the plainest Norman character. They appear a little later at St. Cross's Hospital,

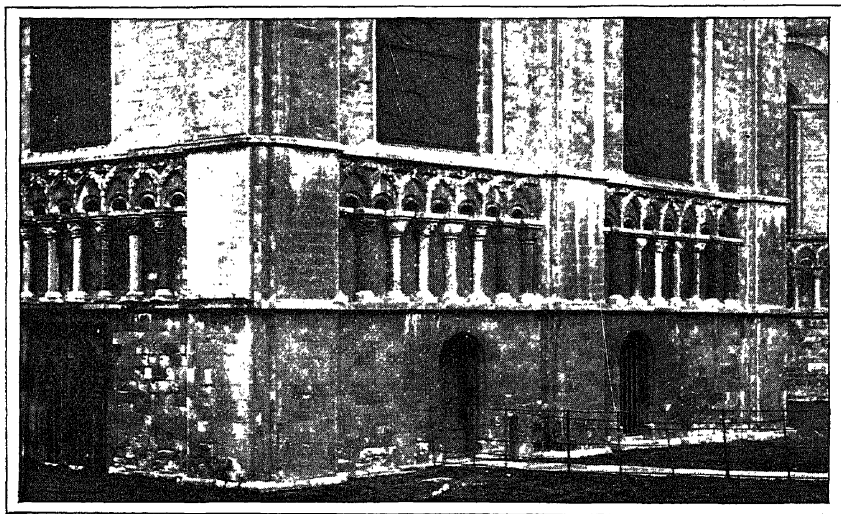
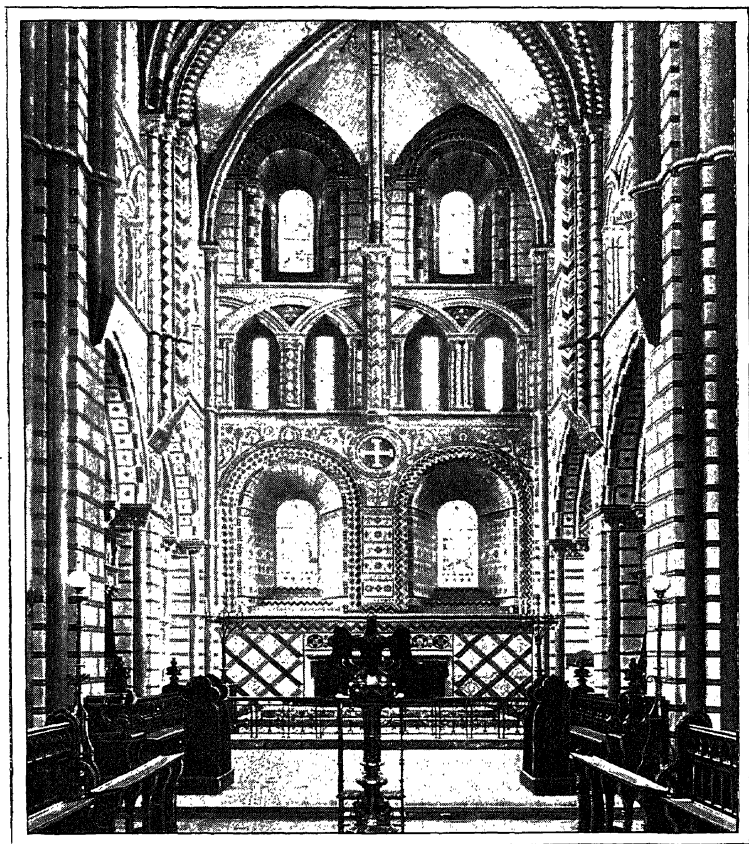


Photo: A. F. Calborne. Canterbury.

THE ORNAMENTAL ARCADE, CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL.

built by Henry of Blois, the brother of King Stephen, where, too, the intersecting round arcades form lancet windows in the triforium. Henceforth, to the end of the century, the round arch and the pointed arch are used indiscriminately, until, in the last days of the transition from Norman to Early English, the round arch is definitely abandoned for construction, and when retained, retained only as decoration. The richest Norman work coincides with this time of indiscriminate use, though it must be borne in mind that the presence of the pointed arch is not necessarily—nor, indeed, at all—associated with any special richness.

Of this period, perhaps the most beautiful and most characteristic features which remain to us are the doorways and arches, both lay, as at Bristol, and ecclesiastical, as at Iffley. They are generally very deeply recessed through the whole thickness of



THE EAST END, SHOWING TRIFORIUM, ST. CROSS, WINCHESTER.

the wall, strand after strand of moulding running round the head, and being carried down on each side, and in many cases there is not a square inch of stonework which is not overlaid with ornament. The sculpture is also very deep and clean, and executed with the chisel, the use of the axe having been now

definitely abandoned. The crane's-bill or beakhead, the cat's-head, the bead course, the medallions with figures, conventional foliage, or flowers, and the rosette—all are lavished in inexhaustible variety, and in combination with the old forms of the lozenge, the zigzag, the sunk star, and the round roll or billet.

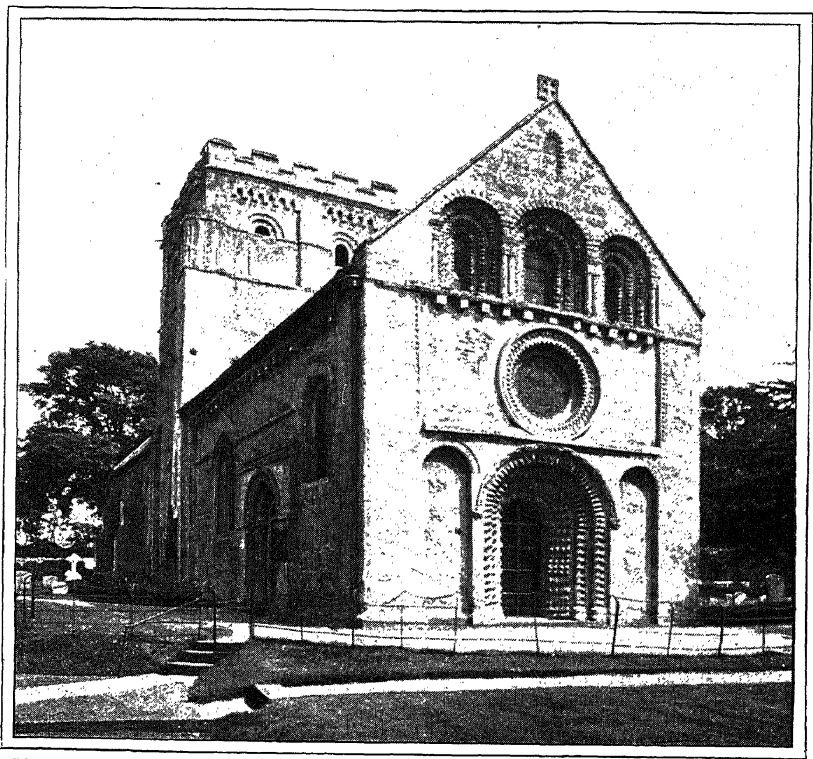


Photo: Gillman & Co., Oxford.

IFFLEY CHURCH, NEAR OXFORD.

The piers now cease to be plain, and the columns grow taller, and twisted and banded shafts make their appearance. The windows come in for a share of the decoration. They are divided, and in some cases of the true lancet form, though the intersecting arches are still present. Round lights also appear; at first, mere circular holes, but later the wheel-like beginnings which in time will develop into the perfect rose. The plain

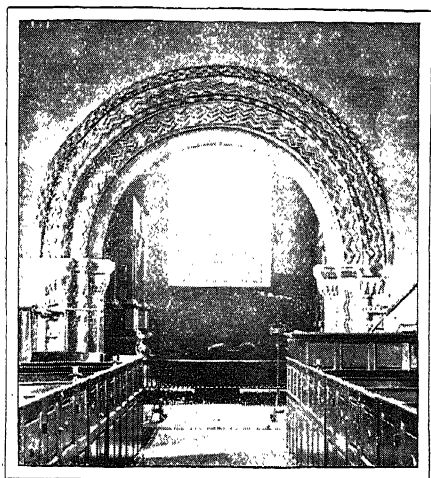


Photo: W. F. Kimberley, Kenilworth.
Chancel Arch, Stoneleigh Church.

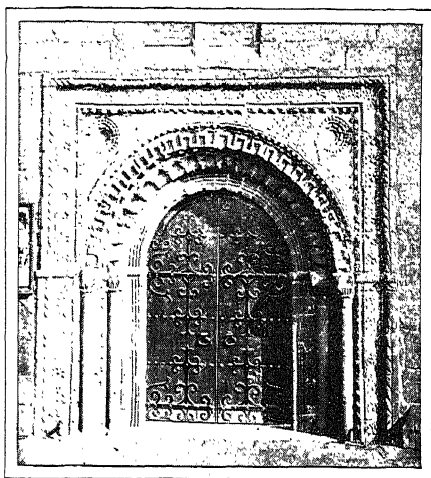
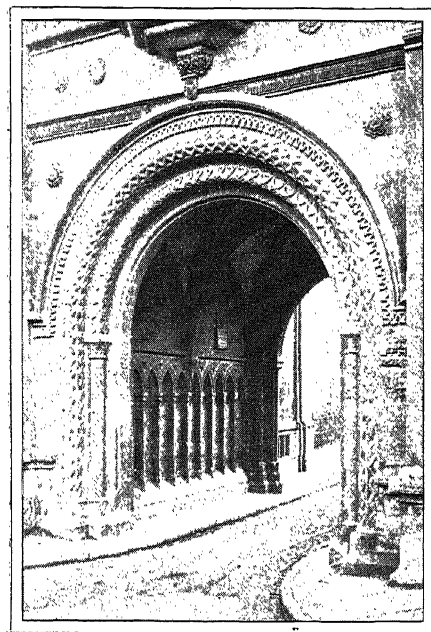
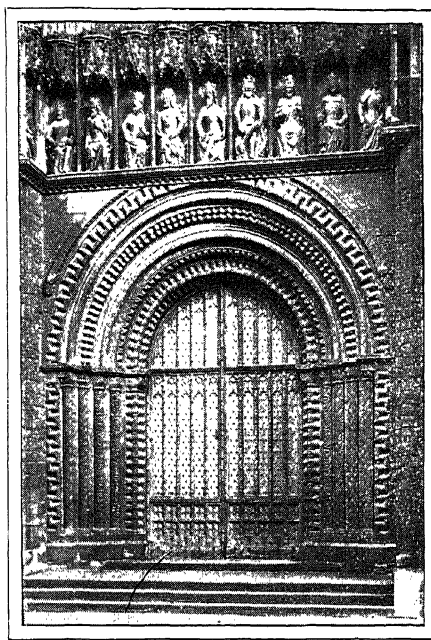


Photo: W. F. Kimberley, Kenilworth.
Doorway, Kenilworth Church.



College Gateway, Bristol.



West Doorway, Lincoln Cathedral.

NORMAN MOULDINGS.

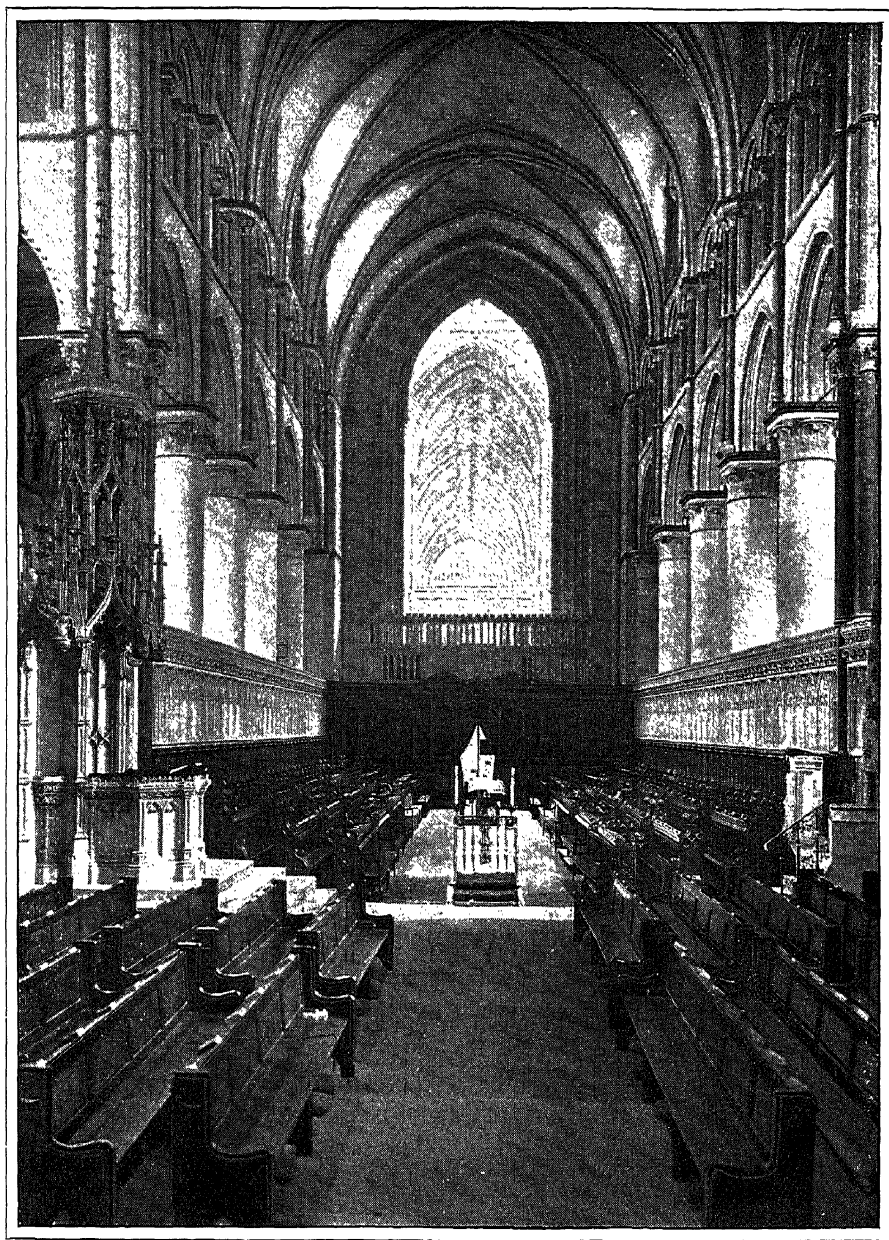
cushion of the capitals, which early took the scalloped form, become, with the advance in style, laden with ornament. The volutes are more openly copied, and a sort of feeble Etruscan filigree pattern often runs over their square faces. Such are the main characteristics of the later Norman. It is not, of course, possible to date accurately the beginning or ending of any form of architecture; but dividing Norman into two periods of "early" and "late," we may approximately close the early period in 1120 (or fifty-four years after Hastings), allotting to the later period the next space of fifty-four years. This brings us to 1174, which is the date of the great fire at Canterbury, a disaster to which English architecture is immensely indebted.



BANDED PILLAR, CANTERBURY CRYPT.

Transition
to Early
English.

which belongs both to Norman and to Early English. It is not by the presence of the pointed arch alone that it is distinguished; that, we have seen, was common forty years before; but in the work at Canterbury we have not alone the free use of the pointed arch, but the budding of the pointed style, and we see that style in almost full bloom before the work is finished. By a fortunate accident the progress of the building has been recorded almost from year to year by a contemporary. The work of the first year is almost pure Norman in its detail, but it gradually changes, particularly after the death of the French architect, until at length every accessory, every moulding, every ornament seems Early English. The Romanesque column, however, remains, and a debased Corinthian or composite capital, borrowed probably from French examples. The builders of Canterbury were, in fact, pioneers, and the success which they achieved in the Metropolitan Church gave a great impetus to pointed work throughout England. Moreover, the superiority of the pointed to the



THE CHOIR, CANTERBURY CATHEDRAL, LOOKING WEST.

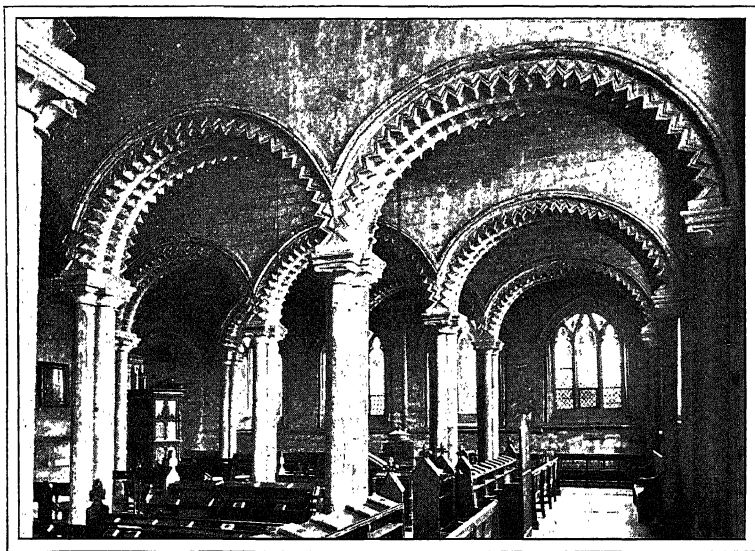
round arch, as a means of vaulting over large and unequal spaces, was undeniable, and helped to drive out the Norman style. Soon the pointed arches began to be preferred for their own sake, and we find them adopted in places where the round arch would have served as well or better. Another indication of the transition is to be found in the form of the windows, which now are frequently pointed without and round within, as at Oakham Castle, and with shafts at the sides, and with the *violette*, or dog-tooth, ornament, the typical decoration of Early English. So, too, we now find round arcades enclosing pointed lights, as at St. Hilda's above Whitby, and clustered pillars approaching the Early English form, as at Byland Abbey.

**The Rival
Arches.**

But besides examples such as these, in which the pointed method is generally triumphant, though the round arch holds out in decorative features, there are others where the exact converse occurs. Of these the *Galilee*, or west porch, at Durham is an instance, and, indeed, the most notable instance, where, so to speak, the body remains perfect Norman, while the soul of the building is perfect Early English. Bishop Hugh of Pusey, its builder, who was only appointed in 1180, died in 1197, and this very fine and expensive work must be attributed to the early days of King Richard, or the very last of King Henry. It was built in the interests of female worshippers, that they might have a place whence they should have the comfort of contemplating the holy places, which the stringency of the monastic rules did not permit them to enter. Certainly they are beautifully housed. The Norman round arch is used throughout, and the *chevron* ornamentation is also strictly Norman. Each of the arches springs, or sprang, from a tall and slender pier, though, perhaps, pier is hardly the right word to describe the two elegant shafts of Purbeck marble, of which alone each pier originally consisted. These have been altered for the worse; but the small forest of tapering stems, carrying the lightest of all stone arcades, remains, and is as graceful as any work of the later Gothic, and as far removed from the clumsy strength of the Early Norman. Mr. Freeman speaks of its Saracenic grace, and it is impossible not to feel the justness of the epithet. It was the very last word of the Norman style, and it must be owned that it was inimitably spoken.

The extraordinary architectural energy which had marked

the twelfth century showed, perhaps, some abatement at the very beginning of the thirteenth. This may well have been due to the phenomenal rapacity of Richard and John, which, falling heavily on all owners of property, seriously affected the religious houses, and made the Jews, who financed their building operations, unwilling to give evidence of wealth which might exasperate the royal extortioners. But the reign of John, which



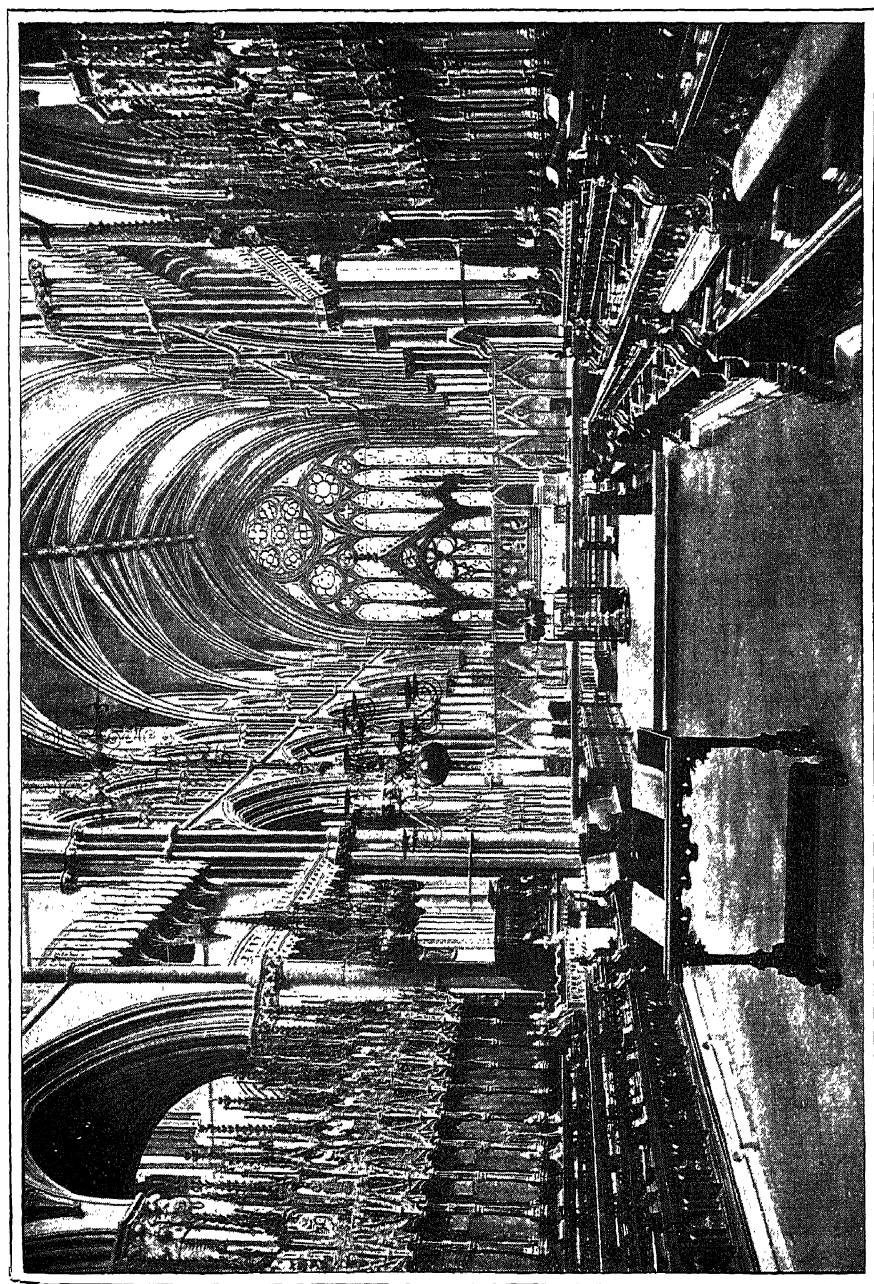
THE GALILEE, DURHAM CATHEDRAL.

saw the birth of the chartered liberties of the nation, was also destined to see our first purely national architecture attain its majority. This, which we know as "the Early English style," actually came into being a little earlier, namely, in the reign of John's brother Richard, and is the one good thing that accrued to England under that most execrable of all our monarchs. Its birth was presided over by Hugh of Avalon (p. 395), Bishop of Lincoln, commonly called St. Hugh of Burgundy. He died in 1200, and was buried behind the high altar in his unfinished church. His work is remarkable in two ways: first, because it is the first example of pure pointed Gothic (of Gothic, that is, without the least tincture of Romanesque) to be found in

**The Early
English
Style.**

England, and not in England alone, but in all Europe; and secondly, because though there is a youthful, we might say a girlish, delicacy about it, it is neither tentative nor immature. All the true characteristics are present. We have the clustered shafts, the elegant crockets (conventional out-curved leaves), the pointed trefoil arch, the narrow lancet-shaped windows, the stalked foliage of the capitals. The history of the transition, of course, makes it certain that it was, in fact, a case of evolution, and not of a sudden separate creation; but the casual looker-on would certainly be justified in thinking that the Early English style, like Pallas from the head of Zeus, sprang full-grown and full-armed from the brain of the architects at Lincoln and Ely. This is true of St. Hugh's choir at Lincoln, built in the last ten years of the twelfth century; it is emphatically true of the Galilee at Ely, built in the first fifteen years of the thirteenth century, than which no more perfect example is to be found in the world.

The greatest and most important works in this noblest form of Gothic, such as Salisbury, belong indeed to the next generation—to the reign, not of John, but of his son. But the smaller structures to which we have referred do not yield to them in beauty, and show how completely the style of the Transition, no less than the style of the Norman, had, at this early date, become extinct. In twenty years, or thereabouts, there has been more than a change; there has been a complete and final transfiguration. Instead of heavy arches and solid piers, imposing chiefly by their mass, light clusters of delicate shafts charm us by their airy grace. Pointed arches carry, and pointed arcades decorate, the walls, and possibly some of the high wide roofs have exchanged their flat boarding for springing vaults of stone. Instead of the minute and laborious, almost missal-like, ornament of the Norman carver, we have the free, almost naturalistic, rendering of flower and foliage. Instead of the Norman beads, we have the *violette*. The shallow square and chamfer of the Norman mouldings is abandoned for boldly cut rolls and fillets, and deep shadowy hollows in infinite variety. The eye is no longer kept down to earth along the horizontal Norman lines; on the contrary, everything points heavenward; verticality is the law of the new order. The round arch has gone, not to reappear for centuries.



THE CHOIR, LINCOLN CATHEDRAL.

Norman
Castles.

Great as was the change effected by the substitution of the Norman cathedral for the English church, it probably excited less wonder in English eyes than the substitution of the Norman castle for the English "burh." It does not appear that prior to the Conquest anything in the nature of a real stone fortress existed in England, and the famous French antiquary, M. de Caumont, by an exhaustive examination of the sites of the Norman castles whose owners fought at Senlac, ascertained that the same holds true of Normandy also. Like the English, they trusted to wooden walls and earthworks, fortified by stockades and defended by a deep ditch or moat. But these defences, however strong against assault, easily fell a prey to fire, and it was doubtless this consideration that induced the Conqueror not only to erect stone castles himself, but to encourage his great tenants to imitate his example. There is, indeed, evidence that some even of his earliest fortresses were of wood, for we read in Domesday of places like Stafford, where "the King has had a castle made which has lately been destroyed," and this could hardly have taken place by any other agency than fire, a means of destruction obviously inapplicable to such a building as the Tower of London. We hear, too, later, of immense numbers of unauthorised fortresses (*castella adulterina*) rising in troublous reigns like that of Stephen, and being destroyed, literally by the hundred, when law and order were restored. These also must have been of wood; but that William and his great barons generally built in stone is attested by the remains that are with us to this day. Some of these, like Winchester and Lincoln and London, were royal from the first; others were the work of tenants in chief, and also were held to be possessions of the Crown; while the few to which the royal claims were more doubtful were gradually, by escheat and otherwise, reduced into the king's possession.

The architecture of the Norman castle was simple. In form it was by preference a rectangular keep, the sides varying from twenty-five to a hundred feet in length, and varying equally in height. At the corners the walls come forward so as to form square towers, the faces being usually relieved by a flat pilaster-like buttress. The walls at the base are sometimes as much as thirty feet, and at the top as much as ten feet, thick. Below

was the store-room; higher up, to which access was given by narrow staircases made in the thickness of the walls, were the rooms for the garrison and for the owners, floors and roof being of wood. In every case a well was dug, some of these being of prodigious depth. Where practicable this keep was surrounded by a moat filled with water; and though, of course, this was not always practicable, a deep ditch of some sort was almost invariably a defensive feature. The doorway, which was small,

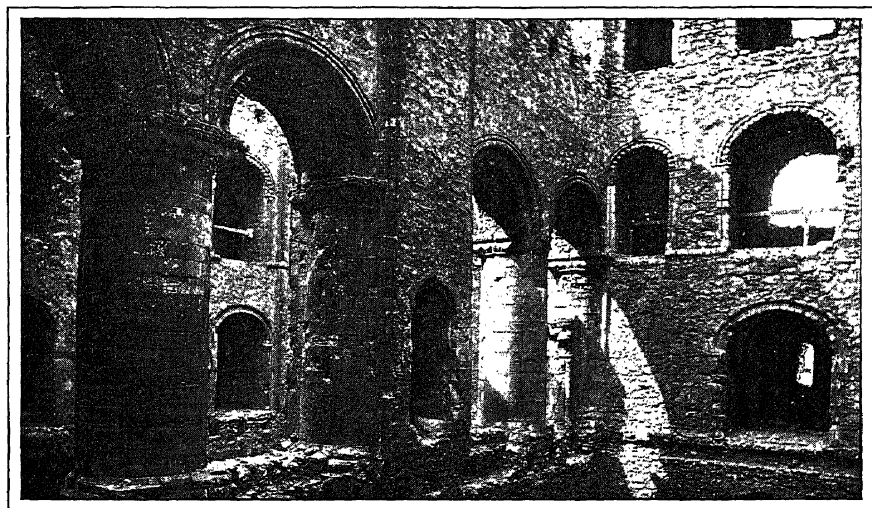


Photo: Chester Vaughan, Acton, W.

INTERIOR OF ROCHESTER CASTLE.

and gave access only to a small portion of the interior, was defended by a drawbridge and portcullis, or some similar mechanism. But one peculiarity ever distinguishes these early castles from the more elaborate constructions of later times. They depend for their impregnability on the thickness of their walls, not on any series of fortifications or ingeniously constructed *enceinte*.

The sites were selected with an eye solely to the subjection of the country, though, of course, the old strong places (natural and artificial) which had sheltered the Briton and the Saxon were not neglected by the Norman. The use of these older sites led, however, to a modification of the type of fortress. The

formation of the natural rock, or the weakness of the artificial mound, frequently obliged the Norman builder to abandon his favourite plan, and erect his keep as best he could, so as to form a shell round the highest and most defensible ground. This is the obvious origin of the kind known as the "shell," as distinguished from the "rectangular," keep. But that the Norman used the "shell" form unwillingly—from compulsion, not from choice—is proved by the fact that while the rectangular form is found sometimes on an old, and sometimes on a new, site, there is no single instance of the adoption of the "shell" where the castle was erected altogether on new ground. This is true even of the small pele¹ towers, the remains of which stud the northern Marches, and which are nothing but smaller editions of the great fortresses of Colchester and London. Of all specimens of military architecture, these rectangular stone castles are the grandest in outline. Most that survive are of the date of Henry I., a reign most prolific of castles; but very fine fragments remain of earlier masonry—such as the tower of Malling, built by Gundulf of Rochester, and considerable portions of London, Guildford, Bramber, Carlisle, Goderich, Walden, Wolvesey, and Colchester. There is but little difference between the earlier and later work, though at the end of the period under review the *enceinte* begins to play a more important part, and the round donjon, or Juliette, occasionally takes the place of the square Norman keep. But it was always something of a foreign fashion, and we have no early work in this style by English masons that compares in grandeur with the impregnable towers of Coucy.

Other
Norman
Buildings

We know little of the other lay structures erected by the Norman architects of the twelfth century. Most that have survived formed part of the monastic buildings, and, indeed, amongst them it is not improper to class the chapter-houses of existing cathedrals. The Norman, and, indeed, the very early English, form of these was rectangular, and the few that remain show, as might be expected, that they conform to all the rules of the style in vogue. No doubt that wonder in its time, "the great Hall of Rufus," which has practically disappeared, was a characteristic round-arched basilican structure, with a boarded

[¹ Or pele towers: small square towers of masonry with three floors, used as a dwelling and a refuge from raiders.]

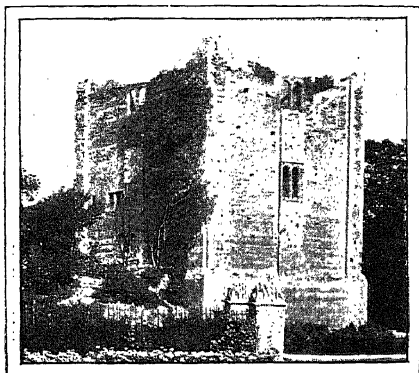
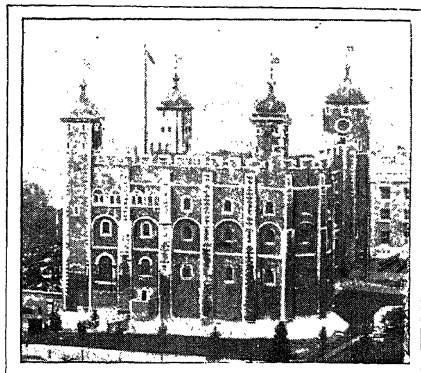


Photo: Chester Vaughan.

Guildford Castle.



The White Tower.

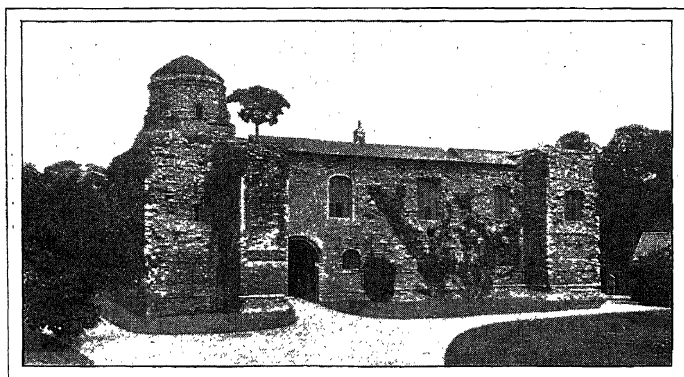


Photo: Graphotone Co.

Colchester Castle.

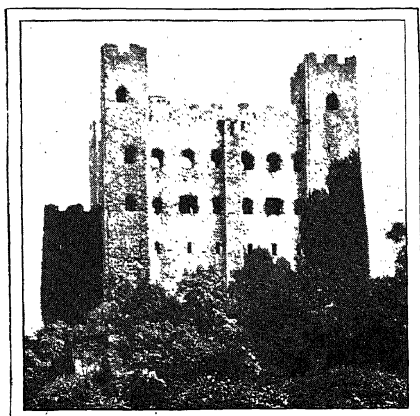


Photo: Chester Vaughan.

Rochester Castle.



St. Leonard's Castle, Malling.

NORMAN CASTLES.

roof and the cushion-capitalled cylindrical piers of the earliest days of the Norman style, just as Oakham Castle, with its

richly sculptured capitals which remain, was an equally characteristic example of its latest development. But great kings like Rufus, and great nobles like Ferrers, were exceptions, and it would seem probable that the architectural energy of the Churchmen was not, except in regard to castle-building, at all emulated by the laity. Portions of a few manor-houses and one or two buildings which tradition ascribes to Jews, like "Moyses Hall" at Bury (p. 671) and "the Jew's House" at Lincoln, survive, but they hardly exhibit any distinctive features. Probably



ILLUMINATED INITIAL.
(Trinity College, Cambridge.)

the mass of well-to-do people continued to be content with wooden houses, and even the workers in stone seem to have been inclined to borrow wooden forms, as may be guessed from the exquisite external staircase at Canterbury, with its Norman balusters and arcades.

Illumination and Decoration.

Of other arts there is not much to be said. The illuminators continue their delicate and laborious work, but though some of the specially English

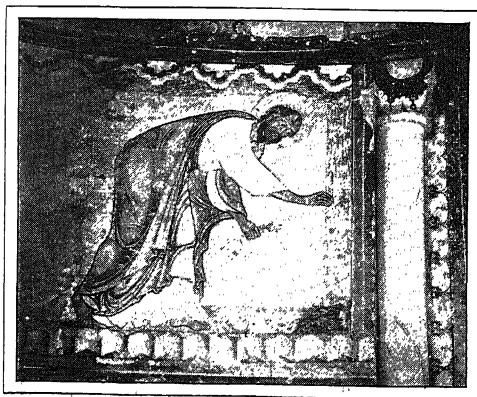
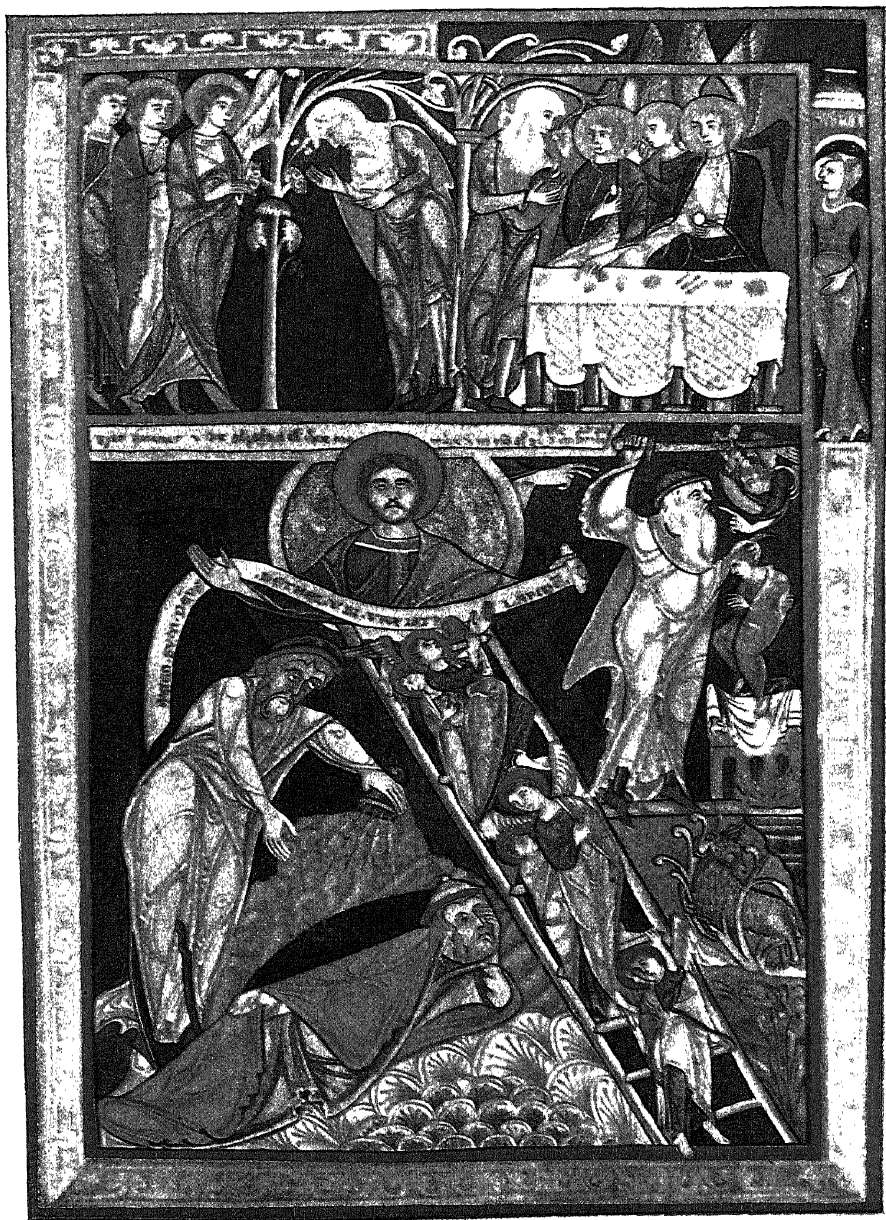


Photo: A. F. Colborne.
FRESCO OF ST. PAUL AND THE VIPER.
(St. Anselm's Chapel, Canterbury Cathedral.)



MS. ILLUMINATION SHOWING THE VISION OF JACOB
(LAMBETH PALACE LIBRARY).

forms of decoration are abandoned, there is no real advance. Nor, indeed, could we expect any so long as the illuminations continued to be executed by monks, in the scriptorium of the monastery, instead of being, as at a later date they were, the work of the artist in his studio. We have already



ILLUMINATION TO PSALM I. IN THE CANTERBURY PSALTER.

(Trinity College, Cambridge.)

called attention to the missal-like character of the Norman sculpture. With the Transition greater freedom arrives, and in the Early English work we see flowers and foliage dealt with in a spirit that shows fine feeling, and the promise of still higher qualities. At the same time it remains the mere drudge of architecture, and almost the same is true of the decoration in polychrome and fresco, which were used—though exactly how, and to what extent, we do not know—from the tenth century onwards.



COIN OF WILLIAM I.



COIN OF RICHARD I., STRUCK IN POITOU.

Coins.

During the reigns of William and of his six successors the only English coins were silver pennies, and these were issued in the most casual fashion. In some reigns no money at all was struck with the name of the sovereign upon it, Richard and John being satisfied to use, in England, the dies that bore the name and effigy of their father, although Irish coins of John, and Aquitanian coins of Richard, have been found. They are all exceedingly rude, nor is there anything to choose in point of art between the earliest mintage that bears the head of the Conqueror and the latest that bears that of his great-grandson. The Conqueror's coins resemble in style those of Harold and of the Confessor, being, in fact, bad imitations of bad originals. On the pennies of the two Williams, evidence of their desire to pose as legitimate kings is supposed to be found in the presence of the Saxon *p* in place of *W*. This letter in the hands of the Norman moneyer becomes transmuted into a *P*, so that both the Conqueror and Rufus appear as *Pillem* or *Pilhelm*. Throughout the whole period there is what seems meant for a portrait on the obverse, which, in the case of the two Williams, is usually of the most conical ferocity. They have very strange headgear, but the smooth face and moustache are well enough shown. There is usually, too, the sceptre and one or more stars, and on the back an ornamented cross with letters. The coins vary a good deal in shape, some of the earliest being



COIN OF WILLIAM II.



COIN, PROBABLY OF STEPHEN AND HIS QUEEN

[1216]

perfectly round, while, later, some are so irregular as to appear to have been clipped with shears. The most interesting series belongs to Stephen's reign (pp. 369, 370), when they were coined, not only by the king, but by great lords like Robert of Gloucester, by great Churchmen like Henry of Winchester, by the king's sons William and Eustace, and by the Empress Matilda. The most interesting of these metal documents is one on which we read Stephen's name, and which shows two figures holding between them a lance topped by a fleur-de-lis. These personages were for a long time identified with Stephen and Henry Plantagenet, and the piece was supposed to have commemorated the Treaty of Wallingford. It is probably of slightly earlier date, and represents the king and his queen, Matilda, and may have been struck by that energetic lady while fighting for her imprisoned lord. Unfortunately, there is not a single coin of these princes which exhibits the least knowledge of the medallist's art, or possesses the limited element of beauty attained, four centuries earlier, under the Mercian Offa.

THE religious reformation of the eleventh century, which set the Latin Church once more on a career of victory, was accompanied by an intellectual movement not less penetrating in its results upon the history of education and the formation of human thought. The awakened interest in religious matters led at once to inquiry into the meaning of theological doctrines. It was from religious scruples that Berengar of Tours, towards the middle of the century, came to analyse the grounds on which the accepted doctrine of the Holy Communion was believed; and though in his attack upon the doctrine of Transubstantiation he left but few followers, still by virtue of the resistance he aroused, and the stimulus which was thus given to intellectual activity, he is rightly reckoned among the first of the pioneers of the scholastic philosophy. For the issue, on the one hand, broadened into a contest touching the claims of reason and authority, and on the other was diverted into a discussion as to the nature of the subject-matter of logic. In the controversy concerning the Holy Communion Berengar was opposed by Lanfranc, afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury. The logical dispute was brought into prominence some years

R. L.
POOLE.
*Learning
and
Science;
Theology
and
Philosophy.*

later by Roscelin of Compiègne, who applied his conclusions to the explanation of the doctrine of the Trinity, and was answered by Anselm, likewise afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury. In his old age Roscelin was resisted by his own pupil, Peter Abelard,¹ who sought to occupy a middle ground between the two schools of logic. But Abelard, when he entered on the study of theology, though he always accepted the traditional doctrine of the subordination of reason to authority, yet admitted explanations and illustrations of the received dogma, which were taken to imply that dogma needed the interpretation of reason; and thus through his teaching and influence he roused the strenuous opposition of St. Bernard. The whole controversy, logical and theological, is included in the century that elapsed between the first teaching of Berengar and the last condemnation of Abelard by the Council of Sens in 1141. Whichever side had the better of it in argument, the opinion of the time adjudged the prize to the supporters of orthodox methods—to Lanfranc and St. Anselm unhesitatingly, to St. Bernard with some wavering. On the logical question of dispute, though St. Bernard did not permanently succeed in resisting Abelard's new dialectical method of treating theological discussion, still for the moment the battle was won; and the conquerors were the Realist advocates of authority, the beaten were the Nominalist or partly Nominalist asserters of the place of reason in theological inquiry. To understand these terms we must glance for a moment at the method of teaching in practice at the time.

The
Trivium
and
Quadri-
vium

The elements of education were embraced under two heads: grammar, which dealt with words and their combination into sentences; and logic, which was concerned with the combination of sentences in discourse and reasoning, and thus fell into the two branches of rhetoric and dialectic. The three Arts of grammar, rhetoric, and dialectic were ranked side by side, and formed the Trivium, or first course of training in the schools, and the name logic was commonly appropriated by dialectic. The second or more advanced course was the Quadrivium, which comprehended arithmetic, geometry, astronomy, and music; and the three and the four together made up the

[¹ Strictly, the name is Abaelardus or Abaëlardus, the first syllable being the Breton and Welsh Ab or Ap, "son." But the *ae*, mistaken for *e* diphthong, was corrupted into *e*, and the accent then shifted to the first syllable.]

Seven Liberal Arts, so designated not because they were deemed to cover the whole field of human knowledge, but because they were regarded as the most proper studies for every educated man—in contradistinction to the professional faculties of divinity, law, and medicine.

Nominal-
ism and
Realism.

Such a scheme of education gave no place for the study of philosophy, except so far as it could be embraced in logic, and consequently a branch of training requiring the most matured powers of the mind was thrust in among the rudimentary arts of the Trivium. For logic, it was clear, involved metaphysics, and it was on the metaphysical basis of logic that the whole scholastic problem turned. The main subject of controversy was the nature of universals. On the one side it was urged that logic was in fact concerned not with mere words but with things. The exponents of this, the accepted doctrine—the Realists—maintained that when we use terms denoting a class, *e.g.* white things, the whiteness which we attribute to all of them is a real thing or substance. The Nominalists held, on the contrary, that the particular thing only is real, and that the universal is a mere name, the creation of our own minds to express that which we have inferred from the comparison of observed facts. The one school proceeded from the highest and broadest conceptions of which the mind is capable—from the ideal, which to it was the only reality. The other held fast by experience, which declared only the individual. The difficulty of the Realist was to reach the individual. Could the individual be said really to exist? Was it not rather a bundle of attributes? This school had, however, the advantage in the readiness with which its principles could be brought into accord with the doctrines of the Christian Church—above all, with those of the Trinity, and of the change of substance in the Sacramental elements. The Nominalist, on the contrary, grounding himself on the dictates of reason, was inclined to arrogate for this a far higher rank than his opponents would allow; and logic, as the method which controlled the exercise of his faculties, became for him, not the mere “handmaid of theology,” but itself “the science of sciences.” Although by the middle of the twelfth century the Nominalists had been practically beaten out of the field, yet the Realism which remained supreme was profoundly modified in the course of

the long debate; and through the fact that this debate had been necessarily conducted by means of logic, the importance which the Nominalists had claimed for the method was silently accepted by their opponents, and logic continued throughout the Middle Ages the dominant study of the schools.

It has already been said that logic from the first was applied to the examination of theological truths, and it was doubtless the result of the discrepancy of the conclusions at which Berengar, Roscelin, and Abelard arrived, with the accredited statement of those truths, that the school which opposed them won so unmistakably the upper hand. But as the Nominalist view of logic affected that of their rivals, so too did the logical treatment of theology acquire a currency which powerfully influenced its subsequent study. It was nothing new to compare and balance dogmatic passages from the Bible and the Fathers of the Church which at first sight might seem to contradict one another; but when Abelard in his "*Sic et Non*" ("Yes and No") arranged such passages side by side, classified under the proper heads, men felt at once that this was to expose the weak points of traditionary theology to the obvious attacks of the untrained or malicious. As a matter of fact, the systematic ordering of the discordant "*sentences*" was merely designed for the convenience of disputants; the logical method had become the method of theological discussion; and though Abelard's book was condemned, its plan was taken up, and became the model for the leading text-books of the schools. The "*Sentences*" of the Englishman Robert Pullan, and of Abelard's disciple Roland (afterwards Pope Alexander III.), are types of the appropriation of the dangerous method by the most orthodox divines. They contain theses or questions briefly stated, with arguments from the Bible and the Fathers, and conveniently arranged for use in a syllogistic form. But these and others of the same date were soon superseded by the "*Sentences*" of Peter Lombard, afterwards Bishop of Paris, which remained for more than three centuries the standard text-book of the European schools, the work upon which every candidate for a theological degree was obliged to lecture, and from whose classification the whole systematic theology of the later Middle Ages took both its form and its colour.

The earlier text-books of the medieval schools were almost

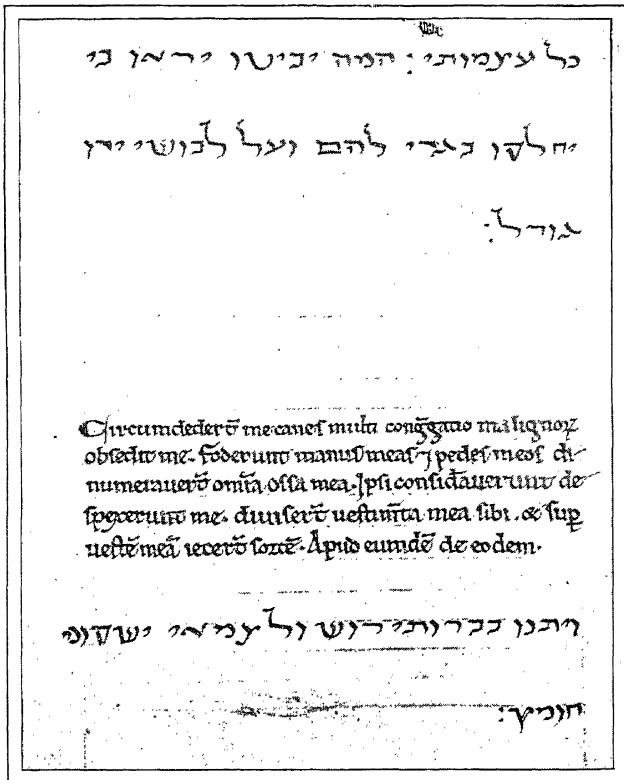
Classical
Literature
in the
Twelfth
Century.

all the productions of the later Roman Empire. Priscian and Donatus supplied the grammar; logic was learned from Aristotle, mainly through the versions and paraphrases of Boëthius, and, most of all, from a meagre compend attributed to St. Augustine; and the whole circle of the liberal arts was studied in the obscure rhetorical allegory "On the Marriage of Philology and Mercury," by Martianus Capella, the treatise "On the Arts and Disciplines of Liberal Learning," by Cassiodorus, and the "Origins" of St. Isidore of Seville. This last work provided also a summary of historical knowledge, but the popular school history was that of Orosius; and to some extent the other text-books of the silver age had become superseded by the brazen epitomes of Alcuin, the English counsellor of Charles the Great. The minor works of the Venerable Bede, especially those on rhetoric, metre, chronology, and cosmography, were widely used by more advanced students. Models of style were found in the Church Fathers, above all in SS. Augustine, Jerome, and Gregory the Great, and in the Vulgate or Latin Bible of St. Jerome.

Of any knowledge of the Greek language beyond the ninth century, to which by a singular fortune it had survived in the tradition of the Irish schools and of their descendants on the Continent of Europe, there is in the West no certain trace; for all supposed vestiges of it prove to be derived from glossaries copied from older texts. But the better classical literature of Rome was by no means forgotten; or, if forgotten, was rapidly recovered in the ages which followed the revival of the Roman Empire by Otto the Great in the tenth century. In the twelfth, to judge by its most brilliant exemplar, there was not much of that literature which lay altogether beyond the range of knowledge. John of Salisbury, indeed, seems to have been ignorant of Plautus, Lucretius, and perhaps Catullus; but he was familiar with Terence, Virgil, Horace (not, however, his "Odes"), Ovid, Lucan, Statius, Juvenal, Martial, Persius, and a number of later poets. If he had read little of Cicero's "Orations," he knew his philosophical works intimately; and he was well acquainted with Seneca, Quintilian, and the two Plinies. With historians he was more poorly supplied. Cæsar and Tacitus were names to him, and Livy he cites but once; but Sallust, Suetonius, Justin, and, more than all, Valerius Maximus were constantly at his hand. No doubt his resources made him dependent to a great

1216]

extent upon the later classical writers—Gellius, Macrobius, Apuleius, etc.—but the range of his reading was certainly superior to that of most professed Latinists of the present day. Such learning was, without question, unique in the twelfth century; but the fact that it was possible is proof that the



PAGE SHOWING LATIN AND HEBREW.

(Trinity College, Cambridge.)

mass of Latin literature in attainable manuscripts was far greater than is commonly supposed. It need hardly be added that for educational purposes a very small selection of it was asked for.

Yet the variety, the elasticity, of educational methods was probably greater in the twelfth century than it became when

The
Genesis of
University
Teaching.

teaching was more highly systematised in Universities. It was often enough the teacher who made the school, not the school the teacher. A single man might, by his own personal attraction, create, as it were in a moment, a new centre of teaching. The material wants of the medieval student were few; he could move easily from place to place, with little baggage; and he asked only for house-room. We read of multitudes being drawn together by the lessons of Abelard, and building for themselves wattled huts round the place where the master taught. Sometimes a band of scholars, excited by some grievance, or moved merely by the spirit of novelty, would quit their school in a body, and from such a migration might spring a permanent new school, or even a University. But in order to understand the distinctive meaning of the word "University" we must glance for a moment at the educational arrangements which preceded the more complete organisation known by this name.

The cathedral churches and monasteries commonly had schools attached to them, and these supplied to the children of the neighbourhood at least the rudiments of education, though in practice probably only those intended for the clerical profession were sent to them. Where no school existed, the parish priest might undertake the duty, just as John of Salisbury, in Henry I.'s time, was handed over to a clergyman's charge "to learn his Psalms"; but in regularly established schools the teaching was entrusted to a particular member of the cathedral or collegiate body, who was called the *scholasticus*. In England commonly the place of the *scholasticus* was taken by the cathedral chancellor or the archdeacon; and this officer came in time to regard himself as too important a dignitary to devote himself personally to the work of giving daily instruction. He therefore employed a deputy, and it is in his official authorisation of teachers to do his work that we find the origin of the academical degree; for as the schools grew in popularity and in the numbers of students attending them, the need arose for several or many masters, all of whom required the recognition of their official chief. He gave them the "licence to teach," and this *licentia docendi* continues to the present day the essential element in the degrees in Arts conferred in the English Universities.

At the first the grant of this licence was a matter of favour, but the Lateran Council of 1179 made it obligatory to confer it upon all properly qualified scholars. Everyone now who desired to rank as a man of learning found himself compelled by usage to seek the licence, and the ambitious rivalry of the eager students of the twelfth century made its possession not merely a privilege but a necessity; for the licences of the most famous schools gradually acquired a European prestige, and became a passport to the master who wished to support himself by teaching. The stages by which the acceptance of the qualification became universal are obscure; but so soon as a licence held good everywhere, we have reached a condition of things in substance exactly identical with that in which the evidence of an academical degree is considered a sufficient warrant of a liberal education; and the degrees conferred at the present day by others than Universities—by the Pope, for instance, or by the Archbishop of Canterbury—are practically a continuation of the ancient licence modified by the analogy of academical graduation.

After the licence was granted, the new master at once proceeded to enter upon office. This he did—first, by the delivery of a lecture, and secondly by taking his seat (*cathedra*) among the established teachers of the place. A feast, given to them at his expense, concluded the ceremony. We have here the second main element in the formation of a University—namely, the existence of a society of masters who claim to have their say on the admission of a new member to their body. At first, no doubt, the society was of an informal character, but gradually it acquired an organisation. It became necessary for the masters to protect themselves against the possible competition of unqualified teachers, who might by some means have obtained the licence, and to secure the observance of an accredited system of study against wanton innovation. In this way there arose at Paris, not long after the middle of the twelfth century, a brotherhood or guild, or *universitas*, of masters, who by degrees succeeded in securing to themselves control over the method of teaching in the city, and over the reception into their body of other licensed masters.

A University, so far as the name is concerned, connotes no pretension, as has been supposed, of universal, encyclopædic

"University" as
Corporation.

study; it might busy itself with arts and theology (as at Paris) or with law (as at Bologna). The word means simply a corporation or organisation of any sort. The phrase *Noverit universitas vestra* in a medieval deed is nothing but the forerunner of the modern "Know all of you"; it might be addressed equally to the chapter of a cathedral church or to a body of merchants in a town. The special meaning only came with time. At Paris it was the teachers, at Bologna the students, who organised themselves for their own protection; and they were spoken of in the aggregate as the *universitas magistrorum* or *scholarium*. By an easy transition the *universitas* was used by itself to designate the organisation, but the proper name for the University, considered as a seat of study, was not *universitas*, but *studium*.

The University of
Oxford.

The migratory habits of medieval students have already been referred to. They were hardly checked by the formation of more and more permanent places of education. It was possible for students to leave their country, or to quit their school and remove to another land, for the universal use of the Latin language made any famous school of the Middle Ages international in a sense in which no modern school or university can be; and it is likely that the University of Oxford itself took its rise from a migration of a large body of English scholars at Paris about 1167. There is no evidence to connect the University of Oxford with any conventual school, or the students of that University with the disciples of any of the previous teachers whose work is recorded in that place. Theologians like Theobald of Étampes and Robert Pullan, and the lawyer Vacarius left, so far as is known, no tradition either of teachers or learners. It is of a sudden, about 1170, that we find at Oxford the beginnings of a population of students, and tradesmen whose dealings imply such a population; and from these students grew up the University. About 1186 Gerald of Wales asserted that he read his "Topography of Ireland" "before a vast concourse at Oxford, where the clergy in England chiefly flourished and excelled in clerkly lore." Still, until past the end of the twelfth century, Paris remained the school to which Englishmen preferred to go for the higher ranges of their education.

Among the earlier English scholars on the Continent after

Omnipotens lib. Adelardi Barro. uenit ad
 nepotem suum de solitudine questionum naturalium
 von in angliam nup. redierit henricus willielm
 anglis impante qui a patre causa studii dū me
 excepam. occurrit amicorū & iocund' in huiusmodi. Cū
 itaq. in conuentu mō. pmo m. fuit multa de mī & amicorū
 salute questio ēto. id q. ammo meo ssequere inuocare. ut
 gentis mīe mores agnoscerē. Id q. querent uolentes pū
 cipes. uolentes pūfles. mīemarios indices. pūfles in
 llantes pūatos. adulatores. mendaces pūfiores. inuidiosos
 amicos. ambrosios fere omī. accepim. nich inq. in in
 accessi ēē. q. hūc mīseric. mea intentione suble. Tu illi
 Quid aut inquit agendū ē. censet cū hanc pūate
 morale nec uelis agē. nec possis. autē. hic ego. Oblinonm
 inq. cō. Vincatū malorū irrefragabiliū medicina est. obli
 uio. Quid q. odia rēctio. quodā in pūte qd' n. amao.
 hīc itaq. ubi hūc mīde habros. cū ad hūc dīa non parua
 pūte restante dicendi aliqd' spaciū n. dēēt. mī cōe
 ros qui aduentat ciuit uēpos quidā in mīrerū causis
 mag. implicans q. explicans. aliqd' arabicorū studiū
 nouum me pponere exhortatē. Cū cū assentire uocē.
 ego tractatū subscipai recepi. Quidē quidē auditorib'
 fuit uale fore scio. iocundum nescio. hō cū h. genera
 tio in gentū utrum. ut nich qd' a modernis repūto pu
 te. ēē. recipiendū. Un fūo ut siq. inuentū pūm publi
 care uolueri. psonē id aliene imponem inq. Quidā
 dixit non ego. Itaq. ne pū n. audiat. of mīal. senten
 tias. dū qdā inuente n. ego. S. h. hacten. Nō n. qm me
 rogati amicorū aliquid dicē. uenit. ut n. id rēle

English
Scholars
Abroad:
Adelard.

the Conquest, Adelard of Bath claims the first place (p. 500). He belongs to the beginning of the twelfth century, before the Paris schools had attained their undisputed supremacy, and his studies in France are said to have been carried on at Tours and Laon. He is one of the earliest English travellers, and made acquaintance not merely with Spain, Sicily, and Greece, but also with the remoter regions of the Mohammedan world. That he learned the Greek language is doubtful, but it is certain that he drew from Arab sources a knowledge of physical science, to which the scholars of his time were strangers. In this Arabic learning he stands almost alone, but his studies in philosophy and dialectic do not seem to have profited by it, though in his day the works of Aristotle in their entirety were accessible only in Arabic translations. It was not until a later generation that they passed from the Arabic into common currency among Latin scholars.

John of
Salisbury.

John of Salisbury was, perhaps, fifty years Adelard's junior. Like him, he went to France, to gain admittance to a tradition of learning which had no counterpart in England. His first master, on the hill of Sainte Geneviève, in the southern suburb of Paris, was Peter Abelard. From him, in 1136, he took his first lessons in dialectics. Later he removed to Chartres, where he entered into a field of humanistic scholarship which had been planted there by Bernard Silvester, and had grown up under his successors at the cathedral school, Gilbert de la Porrée and William of Conches. The philosophy of Chartres was Realist, but it was not in its philosophy that its chief distinction lay, but in its philology in the old and large sense of the word. "We are," said Bernard, "as dwarfs mounted on the shoulders of giants, so that we can see more and further than they; yet not by virtue of the keenness of our eyesight, nor through the tallness of our stature, but because we are raised and borne aloft upon that giant mass." The study of classical antiquity was to him the indispensable basis of all true education. The Latin authors were to be read, not merely for their language, but for their sense. The style of different authors was compared in order that the pupil might find out for himself the qualities which make style. Nor was the value of the classics exhausted by their literary interest. Bernard was wont to use every art of illustration to bring out their hidden

meaning and make their study an ethical as well as an intellectual discipline.

The noble influence of the School of Chartres was soon lost in the restless competition of the dialectical movement, but it held its power through life over the mind of John of Salisbury, who, after once more plunging into the dialectic stream at Paris, decided that logic, helpful as it was as an aid to other studies, by itself remained feeble and barren, and incapable of yielding the fruit of true wisdom. On his return to England he became secretary to Archbishop Theobald and his successor St. Thomas, whose exile for six years he shared. A theologian and ecclesiastic beyond reproach, John was also by far the most learned man of his time, and his writings reflect admirably the spirit he had caught from the humanists of Chartres, in which city as bishop he ended his years in 1180. Through a career of unceasing activity he maintained the scholar's tastes and habits and quick curiosity. The disciple of Abelard, he divined a middle course between the accepted tenets of Realism and the theological perils which underlay the qualified Nominalism of his master. With his mature and all-embracing learning he was able to assimilate the best elements of the philosophical discussions of his day, and reject their eccentricities and excesses. He has the virtues of the humanists of the fifteenth century, but he is free from their vices. Imbued as he is with the classical spirit, no man was ever less disposed to revive the intellectual or moral code of paganism. He would choose to be judged before all things as a divine, and his theology was unquestionably based upon an extensive Patristic learning. Sound as it was, its rigour was tempered not only by his devotion to the Platonic tradition, which he took as he received it, filtered through the teaching of many, but also by that calm moderation of judgment which marked alike his public life and the books into which he poured the abundance of his thought. Nevertheless later generations must be forgiven for judging him first as a scholar, for it is his scholarship which distinguishes him from others to whom his theology was common. His classical reading surpassed in depth and range that of any writer of the Middle Ages. He was always on the search for new manuscripts of his favourite

authors, having transcripts made, and even translations from the Greek. It is likely that to his energy we owe the first introduction to mediæval students of the later books of Aristotle's "Organon." His correspondence is full of questions and points of classical interest. He was the literary adviser of all scholars, the central figure of the learning of his day.

Other
Scholars
of the
Twelfth
Century

Between John of Salisbury and even the most cultivated of his contemporaries there is a wide interval. Yet the record of English teachers and writers is a distinguished one, and their number daily increasing. Three of those whom John had known in his student years at Paris were of English birth—his masters, Robert of Melun and Robert Pullan (both authors of methodical compends of theology), and his friend, Adam of Petitpont. The second became a cardinal, the other two were rewarded by bishoprics at home. Later, among many more, Walter Map the satirist, afterwards Archdeacon of Oxford, and Gerald of Wales (p. 508), the cleverest and most unscrupulous critic of the life of his time, may be mentioned as English students at Paris. Those who proposed to study law, particularly archdeacons, thronged the schools of Bologna. King Henry II. himself was a pupil of the Chartres master, William of Conches, and all through his life was fond of reading and scholarly discussion; but it did not need his patronage to bring learning into favour. The Court of Canterbury, under Archbishop Theobald, formed a rallying-point for scholars as well as a nursery of prominent churchmen. It was Theobald who brought over the Italian Vacarius to give lectures in his house on Roman law, and these continued until they were forbidden by King Stephen. Here were trained the future Archbishops Thomas and Roger of Pont l'Evêque; John, Bishop of Poitiers and Archbishop of Lyons; Ralph of Sarr, Dean of Rheims. John of Salisbury himself was for many years an honoured member and guide of the society.

The
Influence
of Canter-
bury

Nor did the Court of Canterbury stand alone. Every great man had his household and his chapel, and at least the houses of prelates were rarely without their circle of scholarly life and activity. Bishop Stubbs has sketched an imaginary tour of a foreigner on a visit to England in the latter years of King Henry II. He describes the learned men whom he might meet, and the historical, legal, philosophical works, the verses and

satires, on which they were or had been engaged. The list is an astonishing one. "So far as books were concerned, there was such a supply of writers and readers as would be found nowhere else in Europe, except in the University of Paris itself."¹ The familiar names of John of Salisbury, Peter of Blois, Walter Map, Gerald of Wales, and the whole series of historians whose writings make the record of the second half of the twelfth century perhaps the best-known period of English history in the Middle Ages, are but samples of a type of culture that was universal in England; when in literary matters men talked and thought in Latin; when they read and studied widely and not without criticism, and wrote (unless they wished to be obscure) excellent Latin prose; and when their verses were only disappointing if they challenged comparison by the adoption of classical metres, their rhythmical poems having a vigour and fresh originality altogether their own.

Such, in outline, was the condition of learning in England at the time of the birth of the University of Oxford. In the next century it was profoundly modified by the growth of that University, by the extended knowledge of the works of Aristotle maturing the philosophy of the schools, and by the energy thrown into intellectual work by the newly founded and rival orders of friars.

In the long chain of events which makes up the history of a people, no one link is, in strict truth, more essential to the final result than any other; and yet from time to time events do occur which seem to sum up in themselves the character and tendencies of much that has gone before, and which, because they easily attract popular attention, are convenient termini for the historian. Such links are spoken of as critical. A crisis of this nature is marked in our history by the 14th of October, 1066, when the battle of Senlac was fought, and the old heroic thegnhood of England—which had been celebrated by many a bard, from the singers of the deeds of Beowulf down to him who sang the death of Byrhtnoth—fell before the knightly chivalry of Normandy. Harold and his trusty men, falling one by one upon the hill above Hastings, slowly but inevitably

H. FRANK
HEATH.
Litera-
ture.

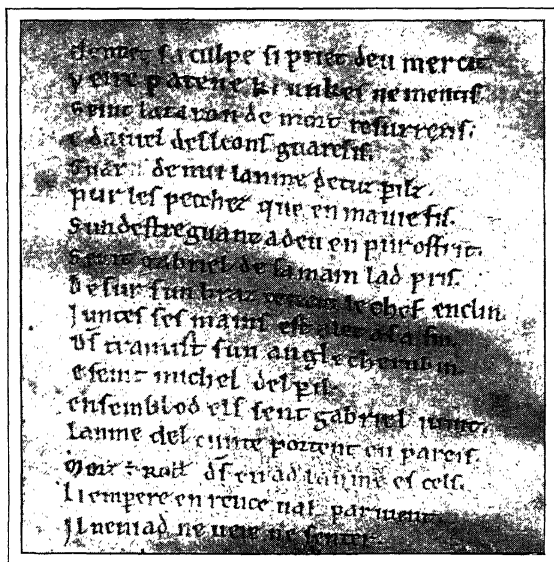
¹ Stubbs: "Seventeen Lectures," pp. 145-154.

crushed by the better method and equipment of their Norman foe, are as clearly typical of the inevitable fall of Germanic civilisation before the Romance in the eleventh and twelfth centuries as the victories of Crécy and Poitiers mark its rally in the fourteenth. The Norman Conquest was no cataclasm in our history, for it was a sure outcome of the weakened national life under Edward the Confessor and his immediate forerunners; yet it introduced so much that was new into England, and so largely changed the direction of development in the old, that at first sight we seem confronted by a break in continuity. This is, however, more apparent than real, and we shall find the old methods in literature living on, though modified in form and no longer on the surface of the stream, but almost submerged by the flow of the new current. We must remember, too, that the substitution of a Norman for an English nobility, and the expulsion of the English from the higher ranks of the priesthood—the chief patrons, connoisseurs, and producers of the national literature—resulted in a very marked reduction in the amount of work produced and in a growing carelessness about the preservation of the old MSS., which the new abbots and bishops could not read and therefore despised.

At the same time the English priests and monks who were left in office after the change of dynasty remained the chief defenders of the English element against the Crown; and as their secular patrons had disappeared, we find that the bulk of the vernacular literature in this period consists of religious works on Latin models. It is not till after the middle of the thirteenth century that the English made any attempt to rival the Normans in manner of life, for up to that time their whole energies were absorbed in the struggle for national existence, and in consequence it is not till after that date that we find any serious attempt to follow them in such a detail as literary excellence. Leaving, then, for the present any nearer view of works written during this time in the mother tongue, we shall first consider what the new elements were which the Normans introduced.

It is to be remembered that these people were Germanic in origin, Danes or Scandinavians, like those who had harried and settled in England since the eighth century. They had settled

in the North of France, had rapidly won recognition for themselves from the French king, and with more startling rapidity had adopted the language and culture of their new country.¹ They were a people of extraordinary earnestness and intensity, with a power seldom equalled of assimilating and making their own what was best in their surroundings. Withal, they were intensely practical; their motto was "Deeds not Words," and they had none of the emotional excitability which we have



A PASSAGE FROM THE CHANSON DE ROLAND (MS. Digby, 23).
(Bodleian Library, Oxford.)

learnt to associate with the modern French character. It is, then, only to be expected that the art and literature of such a people should reflect the national character. And so, in truth, it does. When the victory of Senlac came to be sung, it was not by an Englishman, in the long alliterative line which had told of the struggle against the Danes at Maldon, but by a man of Jersey named Wace, who, in syllabic measure, as was that of

¹ The grandchildren of the warriors who had conquered Rouen under Rollo in 912 had forgotten the language of their forbears.

the "Chanson de Roland,"¹ told how, as the Norman lines moved up the hill to the attack—

"Taillefer, qui mult bien chantout
 Sor un cheval qui tost alout
 Devant le duc alout chantant
 De Karlemaigne e de Rollant²
 E d'Oliver e des vassals
 Qui morurent en Rencevals."

Roman de Rou, ll. 8035-40.

These few lines can teach us much about the changes which that battle inaugurated. They show us that Norman-French, the Court language, became, at least to some extent, a literary language—the medium used by poets who appealed to the barons and the princes of the Church as their public. They show us that the French national epic verse was a measure of short rhymed couplets—not based on a rhythmical system, like the Old English, but with lines of eight syllables, four of which were accented—a form of verse which was adopted in English in the thirteenth century. And, still more significantly, they show us how different was the Norman poet's method from that of his Old English predecessor. In this poem of the "Roman de Rou," and even more markedly in the earlier "Chanson de Roland," we see all the severe simplicity characteristic of the Norman race. The narrative is simple and straightforward, leading the reader on from point to point, with none of that tendency to shift the point of view and to repetition which makes it difficult for the Old English poet to advance in his story. The epithets may sometimes seem wanting in power and originality, but at least they are never far-fetched, as those of the Old English poet too often were. His simplicity and somewhat narrow horizon save the French poet from all "conceits," and restrict him to an even sparer use of metaphor and simile than the English poet allowed himself. What the French epic lost in variety of treatment, it gained in unity of composition and firmness of outline, whilst passages like that describing the death of Roland³ are unsurpassed for power of conception and

¹ The oldest surviving MS. of this great French epic is one written by a Norman settled in England, in a Norman dialect.

² This must refer to some old ballad of Roland, for the "Chanson de Roland" was not written in a form adapted for singing.

³ "Song of Roland," ll. 2375-96.

heroic passion, and scarcely excelled in the grim earnestness of the battle-scenes by anything in the whole range of Old English poetry. Of the Norman-French poets in England Wace is the typical representative. Without the depth of thought or heights of passion to be seen in the "*Chanson de Roland*," his laconic logical method, his smooth verses, and clear, temperate, and not ungraceful diction, reflect the practical, serious, and cultured nature of the Norman race. His work, however, is no longer national epic, which the "*Chanson de Roland*," in spite of romantic contaminations (such as Saracens, reliques, etc.), undoubtedly is. The "*Roman de Rou*" is Romance, which name implies less earnestness, less characterisation, more sentiment, and more room given to the trappings and mere machinery of the story. All this it will be necessary to remember when we come to deal with English work produced under Norman-French influences.

It was, however, the practical side of the Norman character which was naturally most prominent at first, and the bulk of the literature produced after the battle of Senlac dealt with either religious or scientific or historical subjects. These books, being intended for instruction, were written in the universal language of scholarship—Latin—and the large majority dealt with the third of the three branches of learning mentioned.

Among the religious works of this time were Archbishop Lanfranc's "*Liber Scintillarum*"¹ (c. 1080), dealing with the doctrine of Transubstantiation; Anselm's "*De Incarnatione Verbi*," "*De Voluntate*," and "*De Concordia Præscientiæ et Prædestinationis*," etc.—a work of great depth.² A large number of Lives of the Saints were also written, one of which, the "*St. Malchus*" (c. 1120) of Reginald of Canterbury, is interesting because it is written in leonine hexameters.³ Laurence of

Religious
Litera-
ture.

[¹ "*Book of Sparks*."]

[² "*Of the Incarnation of the Word*," "*Of Will*," and "*Of the Harmony of (Divine) Foreknowledge with Predestination*."]

[³ "*Leonine*" verses (hexameters or elegiacs) are those in which the last word rhymes with the word just preceding what is technically called the "*cæsura*," or division of a metrical foot between two words, at the middle of the line: *c.g.* :

"*Hæc sunt in fossa | Bædæ venerabilis ossa.*"

The invention is attributed to one Leo, or Leonius, a canon of the Benedictine order in the 12th century.]

Durham wrote a Bible history called "*Hypognosticon*"¹ (c. 1150) in graceful Latin distichs; and the historian, Henry of Huntingdon, who also wrote lyric and didactic verse, produced eight books of Epigrams.² In this last kind of writing Godfrey of Winchester (died 1107) was the most skilled stylist at that time.

Science.

The most famous man of science of the day was Adelard³ (p. 492) of Bath, a keen and bold thinker, deeply read in the science of the Arabians. He translated Euclid, and wrote a number of treatises, among which were "*Quæstiones Naturales*," a book of physical science, and "*De Eodem et Diverso*,"⁴ an allegorical argument for reason instead of authority as the final appeal.

History.

When we turn to the historical works, it is not so easy to obtain a clear general view in any moderate space. We shall find, on the one hand, that under this head we must take into view productions both in Norman-French and in English, besides those in Latin, which, it is true, form the large majority. On the other hand, there are at least five different kinds of historical writing to be distinguished, and in dealing with the last of these we shall find ourselves in a domain where the books have far more interest and worth as literature than as science.

The various kinds of historical writing which should be distinguished are (1) biography, (2) history proper, (3) chronicles, (4) annals, and (5) pseudo-history. To which of these classes any particular work rightly belongs, the title used by the author is often little guide—and, indeed, the same work may be in one part little more than biographical, in another a chronicle, in a third no better than annals, and in a fourth mere pseudo-history. Under history proper must be understood a work of art which attempts to set forth events in their deeper relations of cause and effect. The only two writers who did work worthy of this name in the period were William of Malmesbury and his follower and disciple, William of Newburgh. Chronicles made

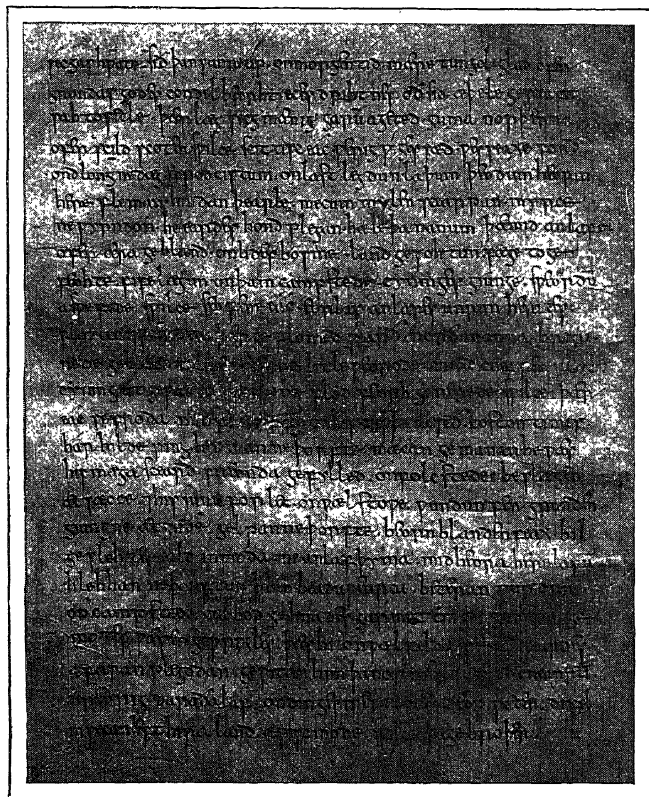
[¹ He seems to have coined the word in the sense of "reminder," or "compendium;" it is a paraphrase of the Old and New Testament history.]

² According to Leland, "*De Scriptoribus Britannicis*," p. 198.

³ The English form, which is seldom used, is Æthelward.

[⁴ "*Of Identity and Difference*."]]

no attempt at selection or artistic arrangement, but gave a careful account of acts and an orderly arrangement of dates. "Imagines¹ Historiarum" they are called by Ralph de Diceto, quoting Cassiodorus. The English Chronicles and the "Gesta Regis Henrici II. et Ricardi I.," ascribed to Benedict of Peter-

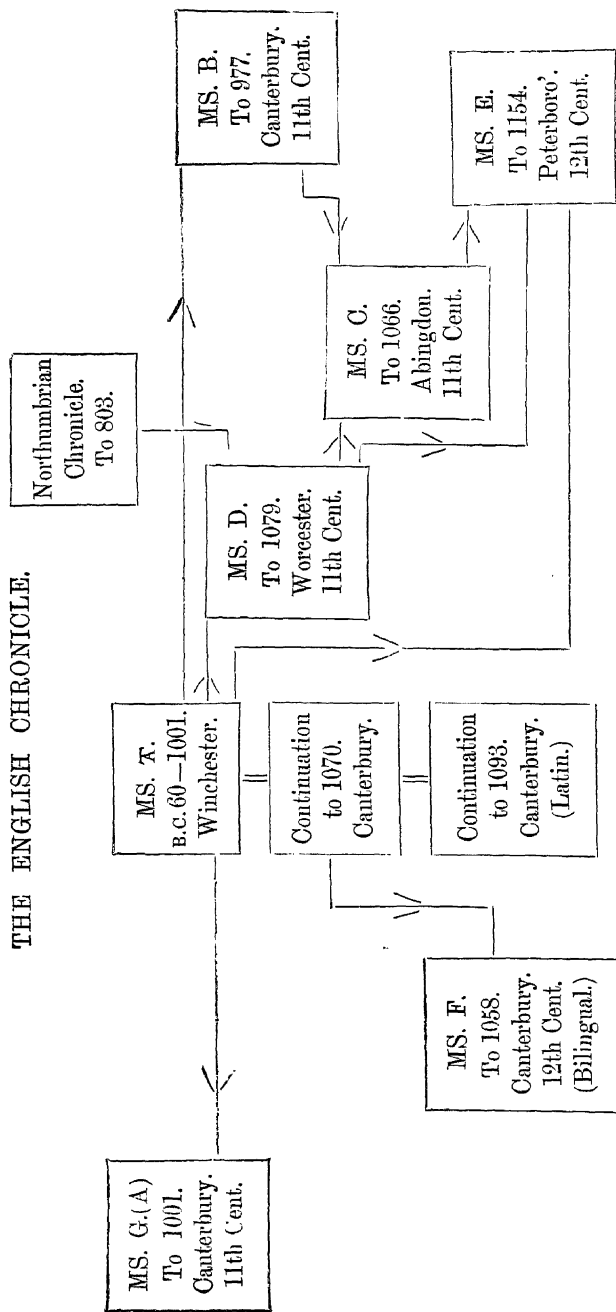


PAGE OF THE OLD ENGLISH CHRONICLE.
(Corpus Christi College, Cambridge)

borough, are good examples. Another most important distinction between the chronicles or the annals, and history proper, lies in the fact that the author of the latter really used his authorities, throwing the whole work into his own literary form and diction,

[¹ "Representations": he adopts the title for the most important of his own works.]

THE ENGLISH CHRONICLE.



In this table double vertical lines show a continuation. The other lines show that the older MS. or MSS. served as basis (through direct or indirect copies) for the younger one to which the lines are drawn. In each square stand the name of the MS. according to Prof. Earle's nomenclature, the date of the last entry, and the place and time at which it was written. If nothing is said about the language, it is in English. MS. E, the last to be discontinued, is important from 1066 to 1154, the date of the last entry. MS. A, now in CCC. Camb. (No. CLXXIII.), is the original of MS. G.(A), copied at Canterbury, and the basis of MSS. B, D, and E. MS. G.(A) is in the Cotton Library (Otho B. xi.), and was destroyed in the fire of 1731, except the entries for 837-71. Cf. Earle, "Two of the Anglo-Saxon Chronicles Parallel," 1865. His notation has been used for this table.

whilst the chroniclers and annalists were never original, except in describing contemporary events, copying for the earlier periods passages wholesale and word for word from the various books at their disposal. Sometimes they would compress, at other times enlarge, and often adopt as a whole, but with no claim to originality, except, as said, for contemporary events. It will be easily seen that the history, being an artistic work, produced in accordance with some theory of events, and dealing with them from this point of view, is not of such permanent value to the future historian as the chronicle, which only recorded facts in an orderly way. As literature, however, the history ranks higher than the chronicle, and its value is as permanent as that of any work of art. Annals are imperfect chronicles, mere jottings of events without any attempt at connecting them. Such are the two continuations written at Canterbury of the Winchester Chronicle. (*Cf.* Table on opposite page.)

By pseudo-history must be understood the skilful romancing under the guise of history introduced by Geoffrey of Monmouth, and continued by his translators and adapters down to Robert of Gloucester (in the earlier part of his chronicle) towards the end of the thirteenth century. There was, of course, a good deal of pseudo-history—in the form of legends, miracles, pure invention, etc.—incorporated into the historical works of writers before Monmouth. The pseudo-Nennius, his chief source, so far as he had any, is a good example. In the same way Monmouth's history of the Britons was afterwards accepted as historical material by uncritical writers like Henry of Huntingdon and the writer whose MS. Walter of Coventry used; but these are not, therefore, pseudo-historians. The proportion of truth can alone decide under which category any particular work falls.

**Pseudo-
History.**

It will be impossible here to do more than mention in detail the most important historical works of this time.

At the very outset we see in the continuations of the Old English Chronicle of Winchester¹—which were made in the abbeys of Canterbury, Abingdon, Worcester, and Peterborough—an evidence of the continuity of prose-literature in the mother-tongue, at any rate down to 1154;² for, with the exception of

**The Old
English
Chronicle.**

¹ Commonly called the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.

² The Peterborough, the longest continuation, ends at this date. Each of

the bilingual version made at Canterbury (MS. F) and the second continuation of MS. A, they are all written in English alone.

**Other
Histories.**

One of these continuations (that of Worcester), together with the "*Chronicon Universale*"¹ of Marianus Scotus, a monk of Fulda in Germany, Asser's "*Life of Alfred*," and Bede's "*Ecclesiastical History*" were the chief sources of information for Florence of Worcester's "*Chronicon ex Chronicis*," extending to the year 1117, which afterwards received two continuations of much less value, bringing it down to 1295. Of more value is Simeon of Durham's "*Historia de Gestis Regum Anglorum*" (to 1129). Eadmer of Canterbury, besides his "*Historia Novorum*" (1062-1122), wrote a valuable *Life of Anselm* in Latin; and ecclesiastical history found another exponent rather later in Ordericus Vitalis (1075-1143), author of the "*Historia Ecclesiastica*," in thirteen books, extending down to 1143.

Henry of Huntingdon (c. 1083-1155), poet, chronicler, and historian, was Archdeacon of Huntingdon, as his father, who was probably of Norman blood, had been before him. His "*Historia Anglorum*"² is not so valuable a work as that of his great contemporary, William of Malmesbury. The part of highest value is that dealing with the time in which he lived, and that immediately preceding it, of which he could learn through witnesses whom his position gave him many opportunities of questioning; but he cared more for attractive gossip than for accurate research, more for drawing a moral than for giving facts. He had ambition, literary taste, and intellectual quickness, but little perseverance, and less accuracy or judgment. If he wanders less from the subject than his contemporaries, it is because the material he used was scanty, and there was less temptation to stray. It used to be thought that he made use of many Old English popular songs; for in his description of battles in the fifth and sixth centuries he always adds picturesque details to the accounts in the English Chronicles, but

these abbeys had of course made direct or indirect copies of the old Winchester Chronicle, which they continued. For the relations of the various continuations to each other, and to the original source, with date of ending, time of writing, etc., cf. Table on p. 502.

¹ Not to be confused with the "*Chronica Mariani Scoti*," a later work.

² There were five editions of this work, the last of which brought the account down to the death of Stephen.

question—a bad precedent.¹ The epigrams occurring in the history are probably from his hand, and the eleventh and twelfth books are wholly poetical.

William of Malmesbury (1095 to about 1143) was a south-country man, monk and librarian at Malmesbury, and, like William of Huntingdon, of mixed race. He was the first writer in England since Bede who made any attempt to digest the mass of material at hand, and to produce, by connecting cause and effect, a symmetrical work of wide view and ripe conclusions. The writers before him were mere chroniclers, with no conception of an articulated history. He was a man of sound judgment and cultured taste, and in consequence shows great love for delineation of character. He has considerable power of tracing the tendencies of important events and the development of political institutions. He is wonderfully broad-minded and free from party-feeling, in sympathy with Normans and English alike, while his work is made bright by humour and sharply pointed remarks. His "*Gesta Regum Anglorum*" in its third edition brings the history down to 1128; but the fifth book, as well as his "*Historia Novella*" (to 1142), commenced in 1140 as a sequel to the "*Gesta Regum*," are little more than rough drafts, intended, had life lasted, to be re-written and re-arranged. He also wrote a *Life of Aldhelm*, and seventeen other works.

William of Newburgh (1136-1208), who emulated the methods of Malmesbury, wrote an "*Historia Rerum Anglicarum*" (from the Conquest to 1198), a trustworthy work. Except the first few pages, the whole is devoted to his own time, but it is not so completely original as was once thought. He clearly made use of Simeon of Durham, Henry of Huntingdon, the "*Itinerarium Regis Ricardi*" of Richard the Canon, and a lost work of Anselm the chaplain.

Giraldus Cambrensis or Gerald de Barri (1147-1223), surnamed *Silvester* (the Savage), a strong and passionate Welshman of Pembrokeshire, was many-sided, with great power of observation and clear thought, but not free from vanity or superstition. He wrote on theology, politics, topography, history, and on himself in his "*De Gestis Giraldi Laboriosis*." His other works

¹ He copied at Bec in 1139 an extract from Geoffrey of Monmouth, which formed the subject of his epistle to Warine, the second of three incorporated in the eighth book of his history.

quacaluit: ferrebat namq; graue
 se regnum er palatium nec copiam
 restendi habere: ut amica dignita
 te fueret: et se aut ego quid faceret
 principes gallic ad iur: duceam
 solimmo milibus: comitat: eumq;
 mactum suum singulari ostendit
 neq; auxilium ab ullo impetrare qu
 miss: uenit tandem ad saginam du
 am alio bagru: et ad eum honorific
 fuisse: et: apud aut apud ipm
 accitit in tanta familiaritate
 dunt ut nonate eec in curia qui
 sibi preteret: In omnib; namq;
 negotiis cum in pace cum i bello
 pbitare suam ostendebat: ita ut
 dux illum amore patri diligere
 fiat namq; pulcher aspectu: preta
 et gratia habent membris. In uenatu
 uenit ut cedebat: et i aucupatu edoc
 aut erat: sicut igitur in tanta am
 ficiam ducit incidit: statuit dux
 deo ut unicam qm habebat filiam
 sibi maritali lege copularet: se si
 masculino demerit sepi carere:
 concebat e ingenuis alio briguai
 post obitum suum cum filia sua pos
 siondu. Si autem filius ei superue
 niret: puerit et alius: ut
 in regnum ueniret: pmoueret: se
 non solum id a ducis etiam ad o
 mib; sibi subditis h eiois appreta
 cur: qm tantam eor amicitiam
 pueniret: et sec mora maritatur
 puella breuino principesq; uite
 subdunt: solum regni uenat: et se
 amur quo h facta sunt integre
 nentur fieri: cum suprema dux

ducit super uenit: ipm et hac tuta
 ingrat: fuit breuino pncip
 pntie quos pnt amicitia alit
 obnoxiol sibi facere non dissigat
 largient do et h eiaurum ducit q
 a tempore acta uoz sicut referat
 fuerat: se quod alio bngres p mari
 mo habebant: pntit filat in dan
 dit cior: nulli ianuam suam pntit
 Atmich etgo quib; q; m ditionem
 suam delibuit apud se qualis se re
 in tekum sicut suu uandicare: se
 cum populo sibi subdito uocasse:
 assensum fecerunt: quicq; ut cu
 nent ad quodcuq; regnu condue
 cere uellet: et sec mora: collecto gran
 di exercitu sedut cum gallis fuit
 ut per pueniat: cor: uicinuam adie
 re sicut: se in pinto in lutoz neu
 stentiu nauigio mare ingressus:
 sediq; uelit in insulam apliant: di
 uulgato igitur adu eam ipm: uel
 nnt fuit a cura acta regnu uuen
 ture obuiam periret: prelia cum
 illo comissat: cum pnt et interdu
 ture ad honores fere comissat: in cepit
 sent: a celeritate mat amboz: que ad
 hac uictoria p dposita: turmar
 incedent: fuit nomen eus conuue
 no estuatur: q; filium uidere: quem
 multo tempore non agerat: et
 igit tremulit gradib; letum tpo
 ipse statit p adu fuit: brachia q
 lo cur iecit: te fiam in oscula ige
 minant: et iudat quo: uenit
 illum i hunc modu affata: et sermo
 nem impedire singula: operto
 su memio uletu istoz: que fuit



PAGE FROM GEOFFREY OF MONMOUTH'S "HISTORY OF BRITAIN."
 (Clare College, Cambridge.)

are "*Expugnatio Hiberniæ*," an account of Henry II.'s conquest of Ireland, followed by a most valuable mine of information for historians called "*Topographia Hiberniæ*"; also a "*Topographia Cambriæ*," and a satire on the monks and the Papal authority with the title "*Speculum Ecclesiæ*." Such satire on the Church must not be taken as indicating any active desire for reform—the times were not yet ripe for a Wycliffe—it is but one aspect of the melancholy and complaining tone so characteristic of medieval literature. Similar in tone and tendency is the opening of the "*Polycraticus*" of John of Salisbury (b. c. 1120), who died in 1180 as Bishop of Chartres. This work, which was earlier than Gerald's, appeared between 1156 and 1159, and, after satirising the Court, proceeds to lay down a system of philosophy, learnedly reviewing those of the classical thinkers by the way, in a lively, well-written style (p. 492).

Younger than John of Salisbury, less refined and learned, but more outspoken, witty, and worldly, though of high moral purpose, was Walter Map (c. 1137 to c. 1196), the friend and countryman of Gerald de Barri. Under the influence of John of Salisbury, he gave a circumstantial account, full of the sharpest satire, of the Court and society in his day in his "*De Nugis Curialium*."¹ Several Latin satirical poems, such as the "*Apocalypsis Goliae*,"² "*Praedicatio*," and "*Confessio*," and a number of twelfth-century Latin and French romances,³ some of them dealing with the Graal and Arthurian legends, have been ascribed to him.

These legends were first collected in England by Geoffrey of Monmouth, Bishop of St. Asaph (d. 1154), who, in his serious-looking "*Historia Regum Britanniae*" (written 1132–1135), combined the Franco-Breton form of the Arthurian legend with the more historic Welsh version, connecting his hero, who was really of North British origin, with the Welsh saint Kentigern, the founder of Glastonbury. Merlin, the prophet of Vortigern's Court, was, in the same way, a compound of many traditions. To Geoffrey we owe the stories of Gorboduc, Cymbeline, King Lear, and Sabrina. The Welsh were flattered by

[¹ "*Of the Trivialities of Courtiers*." This was also the sub-title of the "*Polycraticus*."]

[² *i.e.* the vision of an unworthy bishop, Goliath (*goliard* = glutton).]

³ The "*Lancelot du Lac*" is generally supposed to be his.

[1216]

the Chauvinist spirit of the book, and the Normans were not displeased at a man who painted the English in no favourable light, whilst he gave to the whole all the local colour of Henry II.'s chivalric Court. So popular was it, in spite of the sneering attacks of William of Newburgh and Giraldus Cambrensis, that less than fifteen years after its issue Alfred of Beverley made an abridgment of it with a continuation to 1129, and about the same time Geoffrey Gaimar wrote an Anglo-Norman rimed version, the "*Estorie des Bretons*," now lost, as sequel to which came his "*Estorie des Engleis*" (to 1100). His version of Monmouth was soon cast into the shade by the more popular work of Wace (b. 1124), the "*Geste des Bretons*"—or "*Brut d'Engleterre*,"¹ as it is often called—written in 1155. The work, which is in rimed octosyllabic couplets, with the exception of a long section near the commencement, of later origin, in Alexandrines, introduces the theme of the "*Table Round*," an element found only in the Breton versions. Of Wace's other works the best known is the "*Gestes des Normans*" or "*Le Roman de Rou*," spoken of already. Slowly the enchanting "*lies*" won their way, and gained credence even with the English, until the attractive but insulting story was rendered into English for the first time by Layamon, the western priest, living by Sabrina's stream. The "*Brut*" (c 1205) of the Areley priest is more than twice as long as Wace's, on which it is based, with, however, only ninety words of Norman-French origin in the whole poem.

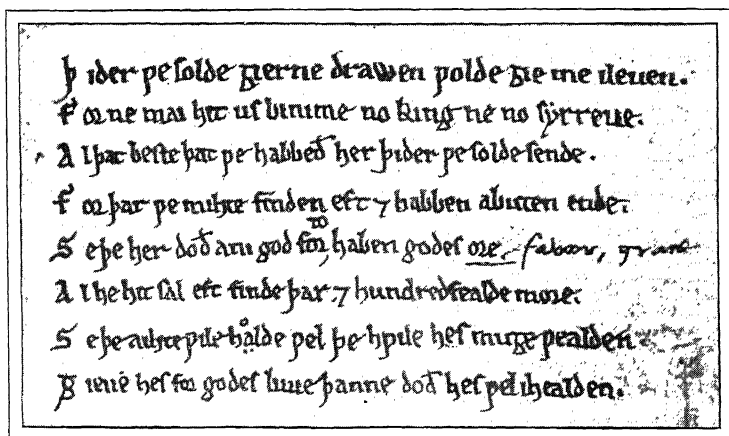
The Development of English.

This comparative purity of the mother-tongue leads us to notice that the influence of Norman-French upon it was rather of a negative than positive character. Some few sounds were modified, such as the gutturals, which were palatalised, and one or two new ones were introduced; but otherwise the result was only to hasten developments along lines which can be traced before the Conquest, but which were allowed free scope directly the old literary dialect of Wessex, with its controlling influence, was destroyed. After the Conquest an increasing centrifugal tendency is noticeable, which was not to be checked till Chaucer came. The verse of the *Brut* is only another proof of the continuity of the old tradition, especially in the west country; for it is but a popularised form of the Old English alliterative line,

¹ It was Wace's book which served as basis for the greatest literary creation of this cycclus, the "*Parzifal*" of Wolfram von Eschenbach.

English
Verse.

with much greater freedom in the laws of alliteration, and, when alliteration is absent, a use of middle and end rime. This latter adornment, which had been sparsely used even before the Conquest, caused the original long line to be thought of as a short rimed couplet of irregular form. The old verse in purer form is to be found in a group of Lives of the Saints written about the same time, of which the two best examples are "St. Margaret" and "St. Juliana." Like these, written in the south, but very different and much more important, was a sermon in verse called "A Moral Ode," which may date back in its earliest form



A PASSAGE FROM THE MORAL ODE.

(Trinity College, Cambridge.)

to the first half of the twelfth century. The poem is almost passionate in its depth of feeling, and is noble in tone, but the point of view is that of the Latin Church, not that of the old Germanic heroes. The simple, clear language shows Norman influence, and the verse is the iambic septenar (katalectic tetrameter) learnt from the Latin hymnology, and traceable to the measure of Terence and Aristophanes.¹ This metre, without

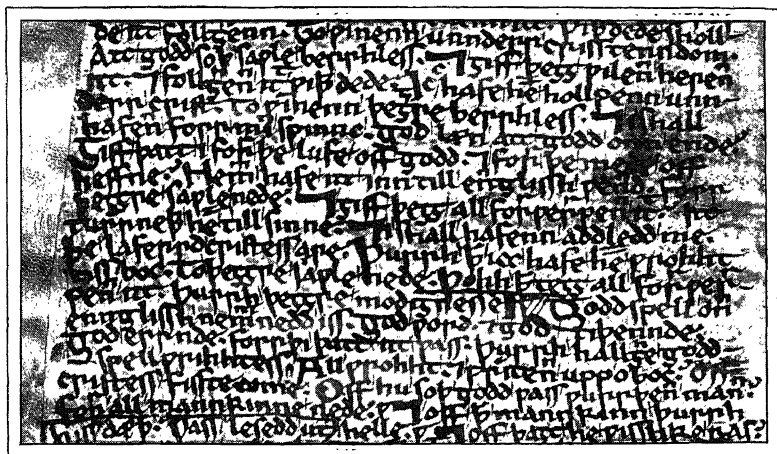
¹ A comparison of the following lines—respectively from Terence's "Andria," a famous mediæval drinking song, and the first line of the Moral Ode—will show the same *rhythm* in each:—

"Per omnes tibi adjuro deos nunquam eam me deserturum."

Andria, IV. 2, ii.

[1216]

the coupled rimes of the "Moral Ode," is found again in a Lincolnshire version of the Church homilies by an Austin friar named Orrm, who called his work the "Ormulum" (c. 1205). The book is quite without literary value, but the careful distinction made in the autograph MS. between long and short vowels (by doubling the consonant after a short vowel) and between the various pronunciations of the letter "g,"¹ makes it of great value to the philologist. The septenar found its way after the middle of the thirteenth century into lyrical verse, and was a favourite form for "Robin Hood" and other popular



A PASSAGE FROM THE ORMULUM.

(Bodleian Library, Oxford.)

ballads, influencing, together with the French Alexandrine, the old alliterative line in its popular developments.

The English prose-writing of this time is wholly religious, and the most important and interesting example is the "Ancren Riwle" ("Rules for Nuns"), written (about 1210) for three sisters in a nunnery at Tarente in Dorsetshire. Besides the actual rules of conduct, the book contains much allegory and a

English
Prose.

"Mihi est propositum · in taberna mori."

"Ich eom nu eldre thanne ich waes · a wintre and eac a lare."

Moral Ode, 4. 1.

There are seven beats in each line, and hence the name.

¹ Cf. Professor Napier, *Academy*, March 15th, 1890.

remarkable description of the mystical love of Christ for the soul, and of the soul for Him, in the manner of the chivalric romance. This erotic note¹ in the religious literature we shall trace in the lyrics of a rather later time. Meantime in the secular domain the French epic was making itself more and more felt, despite the warnings of good men like Thomas de Hales, who saw in their stories the world and the flesh, if not the devil.

A. L.
SMITH.
Trade and
Industry.

The Agri-
cultural
System.

THE agricultural system is portrayed for us in outline at the beginning of this period by Domesday Book (p. 340, *seq.*), and in full detail by the Hundred Rolls. The latter display its completed form at the close of the thirteenth century, just before the changes which began the transformation to the system of modern times. The nature of the Domesday evidence is best indicated in the instructions to the Commissioners as recorded in the Ely Book. Their inquiries and the answers to them show that England was already divided up into manors; each manor contained both demesne (the lord's own land) and villein holdings. Villeins made up the great bulk of the population. Free tenants were scarce, save in the eastern counties and the eastern midlands; and it is more natural to suppose that they represented a survival of the ancient freedom in these districts, invigorated by Danish settlements, than that they had only lately arisen (*cf.* p. 302), and that serfdom had been the normal state of Saxon England. The number of slaves returned is small—some 25,000; and those chiefly in the south-west. The villeins proper, with a normal holding of a yardland (thirty acres) or half a yardland, are distinguished from the lower villein class of cottiers, *bordarii* and *cotarii*, holding sometimes only a cottage and garden, sometimes a cottage and a few acres, not often more than five, in the common arable fields. The normal villein would contribute a pair of oxen to the common plough; the cottier had no oxen of his own. The lord's plough of eight oxen, which tilled the demesne, was worked by the services of the villeins; these, moreover, had often to do service with their own ploughs and oxen. This all implies a great number of cattle, for whom there was ample rough pasture.

¹ *Cf.* also "The Wohunge [wooing] of ure Louerd," "The Wohunge of ure Leudh," "A god Oreisun of oure Louerd," etc.

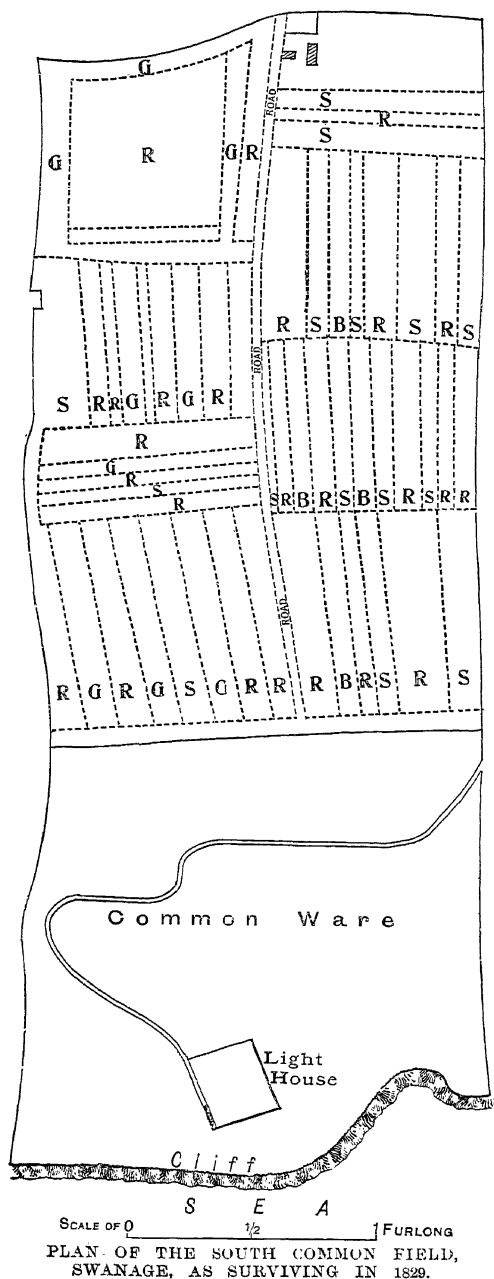
Hay meadows were comparatively rare and valuable. Woodland was plentiful, and was measured by the number of swine it could feed. It has been estimated that as much as 5,000,000 acres were under cultivation, about five-twelfths of the present cultivated area. This would tally with the population, which may be fairly estimated at about 2,000,000. It would also agree



THE ELY BOOK: ETHELWOLD AND KING EDGAR.
(Trinity College, Cambridge.)

with the calculation that nearly one-half of the cultivated area was devoted to wheat, and that the production of wheat averaged about one-quarter to the acre. Besides leguminous crops, a good deal of barley and oats and some rye was grown; while the absence of root-crops or any systematic manuring implies a great extent of fallow, perhaps nearly one-third of the total arable area.

It is not easy to realise how essentially this whole arrangement of rural life differed from that of modern times. The



great mass of the agricultural population are now landless; in the eleventh and twelfth, and, indeed, down to the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, they were landholders. The class of farmers, whether on leases or yearly agreements, was then very uncommon, except on some Church estates. The relation between gentry and peasantry is now a mainly economic relation; in that age it was first and foremost a social and political relation. The villen must sit in his lord's court of justice, and follow him to war, as well as till his lands. They were bound together by mutual obligations; the lord could no more dispossess him, whatever unreal maxims the contemporary law-books chose to enounce, than he could shake off his lord and escape from the manor. But perhaps the most striking feature of all to a modern mind is the universal prevalence of community in culti-

[1216]

vation, if not in ownership. A village was, indeed, one large common farm. To take the most typical case, each of the three arable fields was "open"; it was not enclosed or broken up into severalties, but only roughly marked off by turf baulks into acre strips, of which every fifth strip might be the lord's, every tenth the parson's, and so on. The whole field would be ploughed, harrowed, sowed, and reaped, by the joint labour of all the holders. Each contributed, according to customary rules, his share of the labour, the oxen, the cost of the plough. A villein's holding of thirty acres might thus consist of thirty or forty detached strips scattered over a whole parish. Such a system was of course grossly wasteful; but it had grown up under needs with which economics have nothing to do. It was the natural outcome of a still ruder method of annual re-allotment of the arable strips; it was the expression of the old sense of kinship in the village community, and its cumbrousness was a determined effort to secure the absolute equality of each share. It must have had an immeasurable influence in silently moulding English character, drilling men into local self-government.

Communal
Husbandry.

It is only within the last generation that Enclosure Acts have swept away almost the last of the "open" parishes. A few still remain. Fifty years ago they were still the majority. This singular tenacity perhaps implies that the system worked less badly than we should expect. No doubt, however, such a system helps to account for the low productivity of mediæval agriculture. This and the imperfect means of communication and conveyance explain the great variations in prices which prevailed in neighbouring markets. There was evidently frequent local scarcity, even when there was no general bad season. But no fewer than nine years of dearth are recorded in the contemporary Anglo-Saxon Chronicle between 1070 and 1100. The only operation we hear much of for permanent improvement of the land was marling. On the other hand, orchards were common; a considerable quantity of native wine was made, and thirty-eight vineyards are mentioned in Domesday. Bee-keeping was universal, from the use of honey before sugar was known as a general mode of preserving food. Perhaps one of the greatest impediments to good husbandry

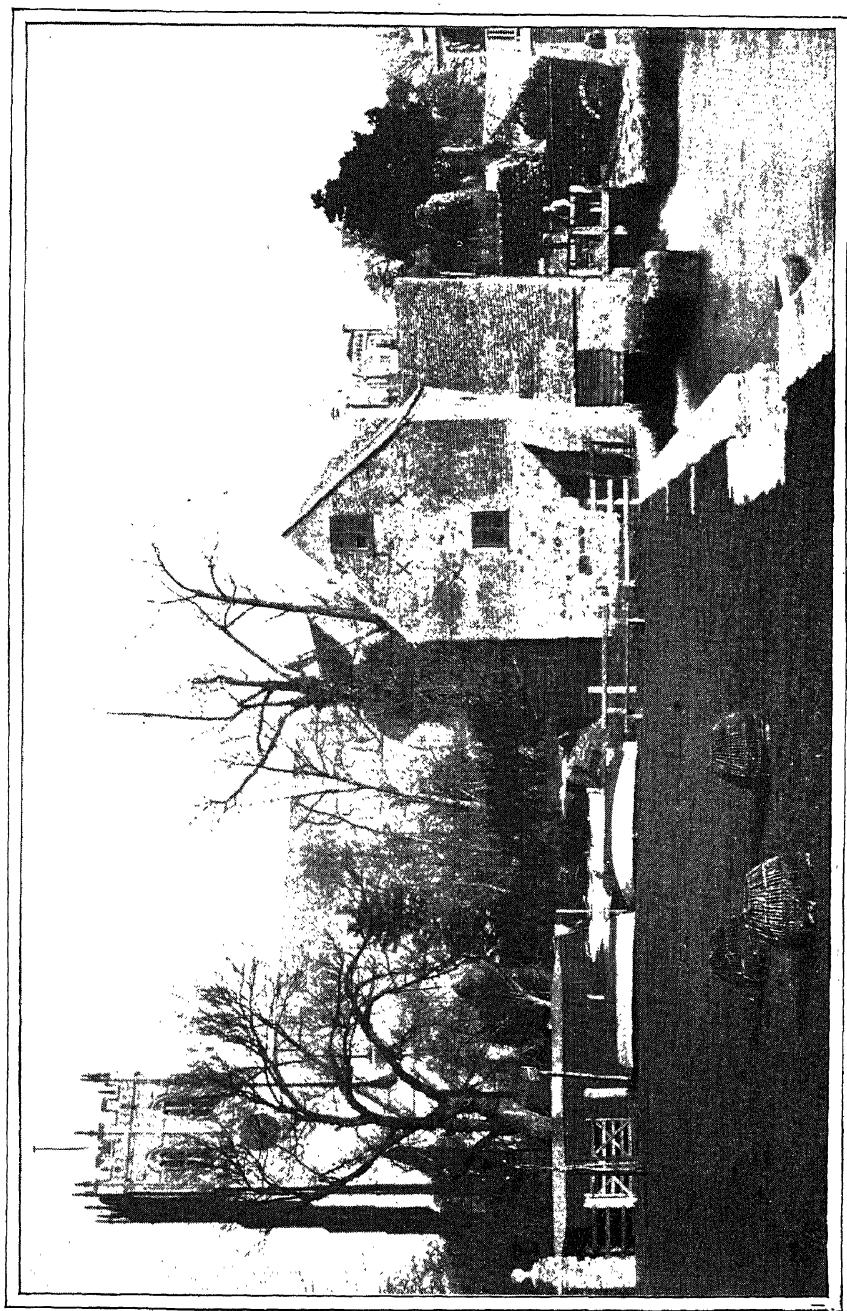
Production:
Prices
Expenses

was the great expense of iron. The cost of new irons to the plough is one of the chief items in bailiff's accounts in the thirteenth century; and to avoid this, wooden ploughs and harrows were often used, and the soil was in consequence scratched rather than ploughed up. In fact, there was little improvement in the art of agriculture till the Tudor period introduced a better rotation of crops, more thorough and varied use of manures, and the employment of horses instead of oxen. It must be remembered, however, that dairy produce and poultry were cheap and plentiful throughout the middle ages.

Changes
between
1085 and
1250.

The chief changes between Domesday Book and the middle of the thirteenth century can be best brought to view by selecting an instance from each of the chief documents which bridge over that interval.

In the Black Book of Peterborough 1125-8—to take the case of the first manor named in it—the normal holding of the villein was a virgate or “yardland” of thirty acres arable. Each villein has to plough in spring four acres for the lord. Each supplies two oxen to the plough-team, which was bound to be at the lord's call three days in winter, three in spring, one in summer. Moreover, each villein has to work for the lord three days a week, to pay a yearly toll of 2s. 1½d., a hen, and sixteen eggs. The cottagers, each holding five acres, render work of one day a week, besides twice a year making malt for the lord's use, and paying a 1d. for each goat using the pasture. On this manor there seem to have been 1,253 acres of arable held by forty-three villeins and eight cottagers; some 400 acres of arable farmed by the lord through a bailiff; a few dozen acres of valuable hay-meadow; a mill paying rent of 20s. a year; and an indeterminate but probably large area used for rough pasturage of the cattle, sheep, pigs, and goats, belonging both to the lord and to the villagers. The lord's demesne was tilled by the compulsory services of his men superintended by the bailiff. This one manor may be taken as typical of the twenty-five which are enumerated in the survey, and which constituted the estate of the abbey. In a few of the manors are found “socmen”—that is, freeholders, whose holdings might be no larger than those of the villeins, but who would generally, instead of heavy services, pay a fixed and not heavy rent.



THE PRIORY MILL, CHRISTCHURCH, HANTS (MENTIONED IN DOMESDAY BOOK).

In the Boldon Book, a survey made in 1183 of the manors of the Bishop of Durham, the chief differences from the above are that the services of carrying the crops, cutting wood, etc., are commuted for money payments, and that the cottagers' holdings are often as much as twelve acres each. Sometimes the whole mass of services was commuted for a fixed annual payment to the lord; *e.g.*, "The villeins of Southbydyke hold the township at a rent, paying £5 a year for it, and finding 160 men to reap in autumn and thirty-six carts to cart the corn."

The "Domesday of St. Paul's" (1222) shows that, besides the services, each villein paid in money and in kind a few shillings yearly to the lord, and that the number of free tenants had largely increased since the Norman Conquest.

The Register of St. Mary's Priory, Worcester, early in the thirteenth century, shows some further incidents of villein tenure. They could not, without the lord's leave, sell ox or horse, send their sons away or make them clerks, give out their daughters in marriage, or grind corn except at the lord's mill; and on a villein's death the lord could seize his best chattel, and impose upon the heir a "fine" at discretion. After this date there are innumerable similar documents—inquisitions, surveys, extents, cartularies,¹ and manor rolls.

The towns.

The period of Norman and Angevin rule initiated a great and almost sudden outburst of life and growth in the English towns. It is true that the immediate effect of the Norman Conquest was to bring disaster to the towns. The number of burgesses enumerated in 1086, as compared with that recorded for the reign of Edward, shows a falling-off of one half (8,000 as against 17,000). The advent of a new Norman lord and the building of a stone keep roused the desperate resistance of the townsmen. In the consequent struggles their poor dwellings were cleared away to make room for the castle outworks, or were fired and wasted by accident or for punishment: and the town pined under the labour and the dues exacted by the new lord. "In this town there are 478 houses so wasted and destroyed that they cannot pay any tax." This Oxford entry in Domesday Book might be paralleled

[¹ "Extents" are valuation lists for the purpose of taxation; "cartularies," collections of charters.]

1216]

from nearly every borough. But the Norman, almost from the first hour of his coming, gave more than he took. In his train came extension of trade-routes, intercourse with Norman and Breton, Poitevin, Gascon, and Spanish ports. Foreign merchants flocked to London and Winchester, to Ipswich and Boston and Lincoln. Foreign craftsmen settled everywhere, and all the trades of the mason, the carpenter, the glass-maker, the workers in metals, must have received an immense stimulus from the castles, cathedrals, and abbeys which began to arise everywhere in the new architecture. What we hear of Chester must have been true of many boroughs. It had suffered in the first years of the new rule, but by 1086 had recovered itself. "When Earl Hugh got it, there were 205 houses less than in King Edward's time; it had been grievously wasted. Now there are as many as he found when he came." At any rate, this was true of the towns as a whole long before the end of Henry I.'s reign. To the industrial classes, indeed, any exactions by their Norman sovereigns, if heavy in themselves, were but light compared with the relief from the insecurity and anarchy of Anglo-Saxon days, when even the stronger kings vainly bewailed "the manifold and unrighteous fightings that are daily amongst us" (p. 340). Nor was security of inland trade all that their new rulers could give. A charter from him who was Duke of Normandy and Maine as well as King of England; still more, a charter from Angevin kings, whose writs ran from Berwick to Bayonne, could lay open a range of free trade hitherto unexampled. To be "quit and free from all tolls, dues, and customs, at fairs or otherwise, in all harbours throughout all my dominions, both the hither side and the further side of the sea, by land and by strand," gave new life to the fettered and crippled commerce of the country. Commercial growth led to heightened constitutional claims; and constitutional progress itself stimulated commercial growth. The freedom of the English towns grew out of their prosperity, and the most critical phase of their history thus falls within the period whose beginning and end respectively are marked by William I.'s charter granted to London, and the Great Charter extorted from John. This stage of their history was critical, because it determined the form which the municipal self-government should take. Hitherto the English borough had hardly been

Royal
Charters.

The Guild System.

differentiated from the rural township. If it were too large to be treated as a single township, it ranked as a group of townships—that is, a “hundred.” “This borough in payment of dues quits itself as a hundred” is the Domesday formula. All townships, and even some hundreds, had fallen into the hands of a lord. The same feudalising process had affected the borough. Boroughs in the later Anglo-Saxon period either belonged to one or more lords or to the king. By the side of the old moot, perhaps often supplanting it, had arisen the lord’s court, in which the chief burgesses sat as the lord’s vassals. This feudal character was for a time accentuated by the new Norman lords, with their clear-cut theories of tenure, and their classification of townsmen with villein tenants. But the feudal aspect was soon to give way to the commercial. The “hanse” or guild began to appear in every considerable borough. These guilds were unions of the traders, for their own protection, for the regulation of trade, and, it must be added, for the exclusion of rivals. Without a royal charter they would be “adulterine” and liable to be broken up. But with a charter they could receive and enfranchise serfs, and impose their guild bye-laws on the whole borough. Thus Henry II. grants to the guild-merchant of Oxford that no one outside the guild shall do any trading in city or suburbs; to the Nottingham guild control of the cloth-dyeing trade is given for ten leagues around; to the Lincoln guild, general control of the whole body of traders in the county. Hitherto the boroughs had aimed at two privileges, and two only, beyond the general ratification of their old local customs. These two were: the right to try in their own borough courts all but a few excepted cases, and the right to arrive at a verdict by the ordeal instead of the foreign method of “wager of battle.” But now, strong in the rapid growth of trade and the success of the guilds, the boroughs set to work to commute their taxes for a fixed sum, and to collect and pay this themselves into the Exchequer. This would oust the hated tyranny of the sheriff, and this was generally accomplished under Henry II., and still more under Richard I., “in whose eyes all things were saleable.” This step was decisive as to the future town constitutions. It was necessarily the guild to whom the Crown sold this privilege, and not to the ancient borough-moot, nor



(1) CHARTER OF WILLIAM I. GRANTING FREEDOM TO THE CITIZENS OF THE CITY OF LONDON.

(2) CHARTER OF WILLIAM I. GRANTING LANDS TO DECEMAN; GUTHRIALL LIBRARY, LONDON.

(By permission of the Library Committee to the Corporation of the City of London)

to the court of vassals. These were now antiquated; the guild belonged to the new era. There is a curious illustration of the jealousy with which it was regarded in the language used by Richard of Devizes condemning the recognition in 1191 of the guild as the governing body of London: "What evils spring from these communes can be gathered from the saying about them, that they mean an upheaval of the rabble, a menace to the kingdom, and a lukewarmness in religion." The sign of this recognition was the allowing the borough to have its mayor. Thus the head officer of the guild became head of the town, the guild aldermen became his assistants, and the guildhall the headquarters of administration. This became common in John's reign; the other boroughs followed fast in the wake of London: *e.g.* Leicester got its "commune" in 1251. Fortunately, the boroughs still remained subject to the sheriff for certain purposes, such as "view of armour" and calling out of the militia, attendance before the royal judges on circuit, etc. Thus their position as part of the shire system was not lost — it was possible for them to sit in Parliament with the knights of the shire, instead of forming, as elsewhere in Europe, an estate apart; and to this was due the dual composition of our House of Commons and its unique indestructibility.

Craft-Guilds.

While the merchant guild was becoming the governing body, the natural division of labour was at work to produce craft-guilds or associations of craftsmen, below the higher body and somewhat in rivalry with it. This rivalry was, it is true, far less marked than on the Continent. But still, a rule is often found in existence by the thirteenth century, that no artisan can belong to the merchant-guild. We know that as early as 1130 there were weavers' guilds in several of the larger towns, we find the merchants bribing John to revoke the weavers' charter, and the weavers buying it back again. After this date the craft-guilds succeeded in breaking down gradually the trade monopoly of the merchant-guild, and often in securing an independent jurisdiction for themselves.

The guild system, with all its restrictions, must not be judged by too narrow an application of modern economic

canons. In an age when authority interfered everywhere, and when customers could do little to protect themselves, the guilds did much to inculcate a code of industrial morality; they came down severely upon short weights and measures, upon "shoddy" material and upon scamped workmanship. They also acted as benefit, insurance, and burial societies; and exercised social, educational, and even religious, functions, besides the regulation of hours of work, processes of manufacture, and wages and prices.

Much of the energy of English trading life was directed towards the exclusion of foreigners from the internal trade of the country. Till the thirteenth century the exports of England, still consisting almost wholly of raw materials, were in the hands largely of foreign traders. It was to the interest of the Crown to give, or rather to sell, wide privileges to these men. Early in Henry III.'s reign the Teutonic Hanse can be seen as a strong organisation resident in London within its own walled fortress—the Steelyard—on the Thames bank, with its common hall and refectory, its Masters, each with his suit of armour, and its gates closed at curfew. It had originated with the men of Cologne, but was amalgamated in the thirteenth century with the stronger Hanse identified chiefly with Lübeck and Bruges. A similar but rival organisation was the Hanse of the Netherlands. These bodies soon came to have branch establishments in the provincial centres. Even the less organised companies of merchants from Florence, Lucca, and Piacenza, when they appear in the twelfth century, making purchases of wool at Boston and Lynn, and doubtless bringing southern and eastern wares in exchange, have clearly some defined status and corporate rights.¹ A similar close connection with Genoa dates from the third Crusade. From Gascony, too, and from Lorraine came a large supply of wines. To meet the needs of this foreign trade, bills of exchange were introduced about 1200. But the great aim of English statesmanship was to secure a "balance of trade" for England in the form of silver. Henry of Huntingdon, in specifying the great cargoes of flesh and fish, wool, lead, and tin, that went to the Rhine, exults in the reflection that the Germans paid for these

Foreign
Traders
and Trade.

¹ A thirteenth-century list gives 177 monastic houses from which the Florentines drew their wool supplies.

in silver, and that in consequence the English currency was of pure silver. The same mistaken views led to prohibition of the export of corn. For contravening this, Richard I. burned some English ships caught at St. Valery, and the town itself, and hanged the shipmen.

Home
Trade.

The internal trade of England depended chiefly on the great seasonal fairs. There were four such fairs a year at Cambridge. In 1189 it is mentioned that the Husting Court at London was suspended during the days that the annual fairs at Boston and Winchester were being held. During the seven days of St. Frideswide's fair at Oxford, the prior of that house had jurisdiction over the whole city. A court of "pie-powder"¹ dealt out summary "merchant's law" in such assemblages. All other trading in the town or district was generally suspended while the fair lasted. The wooden booths were assigned certain spaces, and arranged in streets according to their calling—goldsmiths' row, furriers' row, etc. The greatest of all these fairs was Stourbridge, near Cambridge (September 18th to October 9th). Here merchants from Hamburg, Bruges, and Strasburg, from Rouen and Bordeaux, and from Florence and Genoa, all met. The farm bailiffs came hither to buy their annual stores of pepper, of iron goods, and of tar; and to dispose of wool and hides, cattle, corn, and hay. The manciples of Oxford colleges and distant abbeys came to buy the winter's provisions and stock of salt and spices, as well as Liège linen or Spanish wine, or furs from the Baltic, or Flemish cloth. A concourse like this, which covered a space half a mile square, shows that means of communication and routes of traffic were in very tolerable condition in the early Middle Ages. The dispersed character of the great lords' estates, and the flow of pilgrimage, helped to keep the roads good; and that they were good is shown by diaries of journeys and expenses (*e.g.* from Oxford to Newcastle); by the moderate cost of carriage, even for heavy goods; and, finally, by the frequency of inns. It was not unusual to have public or charitable funds set apart for maintenance of important bridges and roads; besides that the common law laid this obligation on the parishes.

The
Growth of
London.

The rapidity with which trade and wealth were growing in this period may be measured by the case of London. In

[¹ *Pieds poudrés*, "dusty feet," *i.e.* specially for visitors to the fair.]

Fitz-Stephen's contemporary description, written about 1174, its imports are gold and spices from Arabia, gems from Egypt, silks from India, furs from the northern lands, wines from France, and arms from Scythia. It had 139 churches. It had replaced Winchester as the capital: but its fighting force, given at 60,000 foot and 20,000 horse, must be reduced to perhaps one-tenth of those numbers. The citizens "ranked almost as nobles, for the greatness of their city." They elected their own sheriff and justices. They were, by royal charters, guaranteed their freedom of transit and of traffic, and their hunting rights in Chiltern, Middlesex, and Surrey. For the confirmation of these rights and the promise of the removal of weirs from the Thames and Medway they paid to King John £3,000 in 1199. It was the accession of London to the baronial side in May, 1215, that forced the king to sign the Great Charter. But London represented the high-water mark of municipal progress: few English towns of that age could have had a population above 10,000. The most prosperous were Exeter, Bristol, Winchester, and Southampton, in the south; Chester, in the north-west; Dunwich,¹ Norwich, and Lynn, in the eastern counties; Lincoln, Grimsby, York, Hull, and Newcastle, in the north. The coast towns were able to supply a fleet fairly numerous, though vessels of very small tonnage. Such a fleet was used by William I., in 1072 against Scotland, and by Henry I. in 1099 against his brother Robert. Henry II. had begun the creation of a royal navy, independent of forced levies of private shipping; so that though Richard I. was able to muster many galleys of his own, yet his large fleet was chiefly made of ships impressed or hired from his subjects. His reign supplies other evidence of the increasing wealth of the country; for his ransom was set at 150,000 marks, and Hoveden even declares that Hubert Walter informed the King that in two years there had been sent him from England 1,100,000 marks (about £750,000)—an incredible sum, being about twelve times the yearly revenue of Henry II. One thing is, however, clear—that England was already becoming, with the single exception of Italy, the wealthiest of European States, and without exception the best-ordered as well as the freest of all.

Other
Towns.

[¹ Till 956 a cathedral town: since the fourteenth century gradually ruined by the encroachments of the sea.]

As an index of the miserable conditions of medieval life much has been made of the disease of leprosy. A good index of social misery it undoubtedly is, both for present and former

C. CREIGHTON.
Public
Health.



LEPER HOSPITAL, ST. GILES.
(Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)

times; but it is easy to overrate its importance. England in the Middle Ages was by no means the unhappy land of lepers which we might suppose from the attention given to those sufferers. Henry, Archdeacon of Huntingdon in the reign of Henry I., calls his country "Merry England" (*Anglia plena jocis*). The English, he says, were a free people, with a free spirit and a free tongue, and a still more liberal hand, having abundance of good things for themselves, and something to spare for their neighbours across the sea. Precisely those boisterous animal spirits, that very love of sports and jests, of good-fellowship and the pleasures of life, which marked the "average sensual man" and were the dominant national character, served to bring out in strong contrast the humility, the abasement, the penances mortifications, and morbid fancies of the religious few. As the history comes nearly all from ecclesiastics, we hear a good deal of the religious and morbid side of the national life; and in that connection we hear much of lepers, who were the favourite objects of religious care. The lepers were "Christ's poor," being named lazars, after Lazarus—indifferently the Lazarus whom Jesus loved, or the Lazarus who was laid at the rich man's gate full of sores.



A LEPER.
(Trinity College, Cambridge.)

David, King of Scots, the son of St. Margaret and of Malcolm Canmore, was also Earl of Huntingdon, and founded a leper-hospital there. Accordingly his biographer says of him that he was received into Abraham's bosom beside Lazarus, "whom he cherished." His sister Matilda, queen of Henry I., who founded the leper-hospital of St. Giles's, washed the feet of lepers, believing that she was thereby washing the feet of Christ Himself. The religious sentiment of the medieval world has been contrasted with the joyous sentiment of paganism; but



A TWELFTH-CENTURY DISPENSARY

(Trinity College, Cambridge.)

it was in actual contrast with the boisterous workaday spirit of its own time. It cared for those who were stricken, for the helpless in the struggle; and it showered caresses upon them, and treated them with morbid consideration or exaggerated devotion, just because these exercises of charity afforded the relief and effusion that it needed in a hard and cruel age.

The English leper-hospitals began to be founded after the Conquest. Lanfranc, who held the see of Canterbury under William of Normandy, built two hospitals—one for lepers, and another for the sick poor in general. Several hospitals for lepers date from the reign of Henry I., others were endowed by Stephen, others under Henry II., and still others as late as the

reign of John, who, with all his odious qualities, was conspicuous among English monarchs as a patron of the lepers. The founders and benefactors were kings and queens, chivalrous nobles and pious ladies, bishops and abbots. The leper-houses were only a small fraction of all the charitable houses in England, perhaps a sixth or eighth part, and probably not more than fifty in all. One at Durham had accommodation for sixty lepers, men and women; Matilda's hospital in St. Giles's Fields, outside London, had a chapel and hall for forty lepers, who must have slept elsewhere; the hospital at Ripon, "for all the lepers of Richmondshire," had eighteen beds; that of Lincoln had ten beds; and the male leper-house of St. Albans Abbey had six beds. They were generally heavily staffed with ecclesiastics; some were for leprous and non-leprous patients side by side, three or four of the former to six or eight of the latter; others were for sick or "leprous" monks and priests, or for the same class when they "grew old, leprous, or diseased." As early as 1279 the leper-hospital of Stourbridge, near Cambridge, had been alienated from the leprous by the Bishop of Ely; inquisitions in the reign of Edward III. showed that the leper-hospitals at Ripon, Oxford, and elsewhere, contained no lepers; at St. Albans, for some years previous to 1349, only one, or two, or three of the six beds could find leprous occupants; and in 1434 new statutes had to be made for the great Durham leper-hospital, by which it was provided that two beds should be reserved for lepers "if they can be found in these parts," in order to preserve the memory of the original foundation. In fact, even the few hospitals that were clearly designed, in whole or in part, for lepers were gradually diverted to other uses, and this, too, in some cases within living memory of their being founded; and although that may have been owing in part to the avarice of the clergy, yet it must have been chiefly because there was no further use for them as leper-houses, or perhaps because there had been from the first something forced and unreal in the chivalrous movement which started them.

Not only did several of the leper-hospitals provide in their charters for a majority of non-leprous patients, but even those inmates that passed as leprous were a heterogeneous class of sufferers—from chronic or incurable sores, eruptions, tumours,

1216]

and deformities. It is clear that the medical writers about the beginning of the fourteenth century knew true leprosy when they saw it, and that they had described it from actual observation; but it is also clear that "lepers" were immured on the word of persons who had no skill in diagnosis, and that the terms *lepra*, *leprosus*, and *lazar-house* came to have very elastic meanings. But even with all that comprehensiveness of diagnosis, the extent of "leprosy" in medieval Britain cannot be called great: there might have been a leper in a village here and there, one or two in a market town, a dozen or more in a city, a score or so in a whole diocese. Thus, in the records of the city of Gloucester, under date of 20th October, 1273, three persons are mentioned by name—a man and two women—as being leprous and as dwelling within the town, to the great hurt and prejudice of the inhabitants. The leper-hospital at Ripon, "for all the lepers in Richmondshire," made provision for eighteen. At no time in England was there leprosy to so great an extent as to make its ancient name of "Merry England" even a paradox. Leprosy is commonly supposed to come from bad food—semi-putrid fish or flesh; and in medieval times, when fresh food (except game for the lord or the poacher) was not to be had during many months of the year, and the salted food was often badly cured owing to the dearness of salt or the badness of it (the rock-salt of Cheshire was not mined until long afterwards), it is easy to understand that individuals here and there among the English may have fallen into leprosy, especially if they had acquired a taste for flesh or fish in a semi-putrid state, a taste which is widely spread among many savage or half-civilised and leprous



PHYSICIAN AND PUPIL (MS. Harl. 1585).

tribes at the present day. But the English have always had a high standard in diet; they preferred to eat no bread

"That beans in come,
But of cocket or clerematyn, or else of clean whea
Nor no piece of bacon, but if it be fresh flesh,
Or fish fried or baked."¹

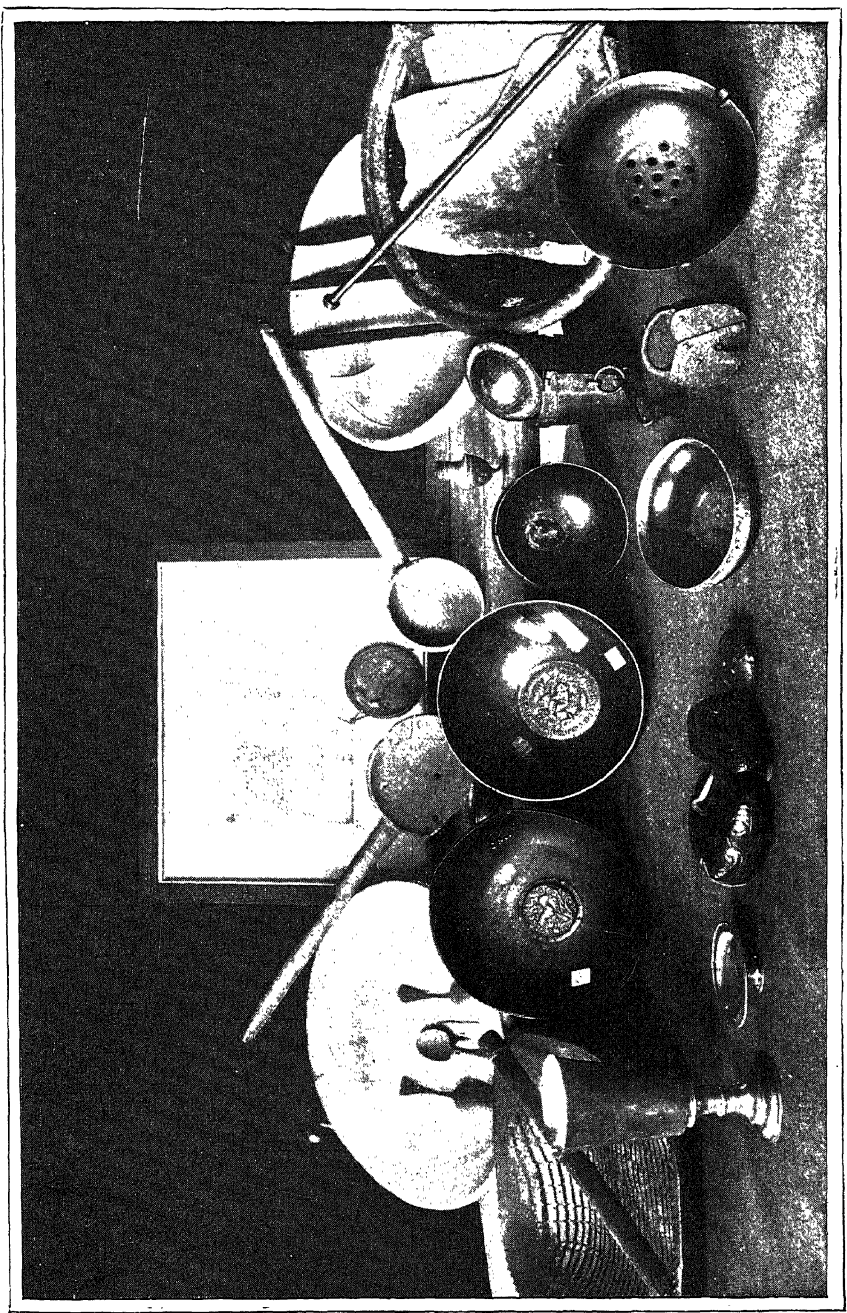
More particularly they avoided rye-bread ("black bread"), which was the staple food of the peasantry in France; and therewith they avoided perhaps the greatest of all the dietetic maladies of the Middle Ages—St. Anthony's fire or ergotism—from bread made of mouldy rye, a more destructive and painful disease even than leprosy, and one that figures even more than the latter, for all its Biblical vogue, in the French legends of the Saints.

Disease
and
Famine.

If we assume that leprosy is rightly called a *morbus miserie*,² and that it was due to corrupt food, one can readily believe that there was a certain amount of true leprosy in England at the time when the leper-houses were being founded; for the period was a troubled one, and it stands out in the annals as one of frequent famines and famine-pestilences. One great famine, attended or followed by universal sharp fever (typhus), occurred in the last year of the Conqueror's reign (1086-7); the chroniclers yield to the temptation of epigram when they say that the fever destroyed those whom the famine had spared, but they all speak of the mortality as enormous, and even William of Malmesbury for once descends from diplomacy and ecclesiastical history to make mention of it. There was again sharp famine and mortality under William Rufus, not, it would seem, from one or more bad seasons, but because the peasants actually struck work, seeing that the crops they raised were promptly confiscated as tribute to the king. The same groaning under excessive taxes continued under Henry I., whose reign is marked by numerous famine-pestilences and murrains. The anarchy and civil wars of Stephen's reign were attended by the same calamities; and it is only on the accession of Henry II. in 1154 that these entries in the annals cease for a time, and, with a single

[¹ Piers Plowman, A. vii. 292. The language is modernised. Cocket was the second best kind of white bread, only slightly inferior to "wastell," the best. Clerematyn was also apparently one of the better sorts of bread. The derivations of both names are unknown.]

[² A disease generated by poverty and bad conditions of life.]



LEPER RELICS, HOSPITAL OF ST. NICHOLAS, HARBLEDOWN, KENT.

exception, for the whole of his long reign. Good government could not absolutely prevent famine and epidemic sickness, for two bad harvests in succession almost certainly produced them in any country of medieval Europe. One great famine-pestilence of that kind occurred all over England, in the reign of Richard I., during six months of the year 1196; it is the pestilence vaguely referred to in a few words in "*Ivanhoe*." The harvests had been bad for several years before, not in England only, but all over Europe; the people had been dying of want, and at length a pestilential fever arose, "as if from the corpses of the famished," says the historian, which crept about everywhere, attacking those who had food as well as those who were in want. William of Newburgh saw it in Yorkshire, and Giraldus Cambrensis tells how the starving people besieged the doors and windows of the hospice in which he was then residing at Lincoln. The mortality must have been on the great scale, for ceremonial burials were omitted except in cases of the rich, and in populous places the dead were buried in trenches, as they were afterwards in the Black Death. Some part of that great mortality had not been due directly to famine. William of Newburgh, whose historical gifts inspire respect for his opinion, is explicit that those also who did not lack bread were infected, as if from the corpses of the famished; and he tells a strange story, related to him by an eye-witness, of how the village or small town of Annan, on the Solway, was desolated by a plague which was eventually traced to a particular corpse thrown naked into a shallow hole in the ground, and how certain wise men of the place stopped the epidemic by having the offensive body dug up and cremated.

D. J.
MEDLEY.
Social
Life.

POPULAR fallacies die hard. It is a familiar legend of our childhood that, at least well into the thirteenth century, Normans and Saxons dwelt side by side, but perfectly distinct. This view has been emphasised by Scott in "*Ivanhoe*"; it forms the basis of M. Augustin Thierry's *History of the Norman Conquest of England*, and is graphically sketched by Macaulay in his review of the reign of Richard I. Any account, therefore, however brief, of the social life after the Norman Conquest must be prefaced by an assertion of the rapidity with which Normans and English became one people. Our great modern

interpreters have conclusively shown, from the descriptions of contemporary writers and from the language of written documents that no such antagonism as that between Normans and Saxons ever held a prominent, much less a permanent, place in our history. In the first place, no one except a Scot or a Welshman ever described an Englishman as a Saxon. To himself, as well as to all other foreign nations, he was an Englishman and nothing else. In the second place, there is a contemporary contrast, but it is between French or Normans and English, not between Normans and Saxons. Under the term English very soon came to be included the Norman king's subjects of Norman birth and French speech, as well as those of English birth and speech. Thus when Anselm's biographer, the monk Eadmer, complains that Henry I. would give no high ecclesiastical office to Englishmen, he is alluding to the promotions of Normans and Frenchmen from over the sea, in preference to men, whether of Norman or of English birth, whose homes were on this side of the Channel. In fact, the lively Archdeacon Walter Map distinctly names the reign of Henry I. as the time when, largely through the action of the king himself, the division hitherto existing between the two peoples came to an end.

From the moment that the Conquest was completed influences are found at work which were bound to produce such amalgamation at no very distant date. William I. claimed to be, and tried to act as if he were, the lawful successor of Edward the Confessor. Hence he maintained the old English local courts, in which Norman and English alike came to mingle. And even though the circumstances of the Conquest caused the transference of great quantities of land, the Norman landowners were regarded by the king as stepping as nearly as possible into the position of their English predecessors; so that not infrequently their rights and duties were dependent on the testimony of native English. No doubt, the few innovations in the administrative system for which William was responsible were in effect out of all proportion to their number. But any breach which these might have made between the two peoples was merely temporary, and William and his successors did all they could to minimise the difference. The greatest, because the most fruitful, of these innovations—the method of

**Fusion of
Normans
and
English.**

inquest or collection of information by a sworn committee of neighbours—was a strong appeal to the co-operation of the native English. The two institutions that might have dug an impassable ditch between Normans and English were the *duellum*—the trial by battle (p. 414)—and the exaction of the *murdrum*. But the *duellum* is only offered by William to the Englishman as an alternative: whether accuser or accused the Englishman may choose between battle and ordeal, while, on the other hand, as accuser he can compel his adversary to fight. As to the *murdrum*—the fine that protects the life of a Norman from the vengeance of the native English—from the first it is not held to apply to men of French race who had settled in England before the Norman conquest; while at an early stage every man is treated as a Norman unless his Englishry can be presented—that is, his English birth can be definitely proved. But with the lapse of time such proof became exceedingly hard, if not impossible. Not that the pride of Norman descent grew less. But the original number of Norman settlers was probably not very great, while the separation of Normandy and England under William's immediate successors would cause those Normans settled in England to feel that their lot was definitely cast there and to intermarry with the native English. Hence the disappearance from England itself of the old triple division of Dane law and West Saxon and Mercian law. Hence, too, the explanation of Henry II.'s treasurer, Richard Fitzneal, that the English and Normans have so intermarried and the nations have become so intermingled that among the free classes it is impossible to distinguish between them. Indeed, even if it had ever been the case, there was no longer any slight attached to the name Englishman. Writing in the reign of Henry I., Ordericus Vitalis (p. 504), the son of a Norman and an Englishwoman, who spent all his life in a Norman monastery, nevertheless proclaims himself to the world as Orderic the Englishman. He and his contemporaries, whether in England or in Normandy, apply the terms *Angli* and *Normanni* almost indiscriminately to the troops of the English kings in their wars with France. The increase of Norman baptismal names would be due to the vulgar feeling of the superior social status they might imply: the surnames, so far as they yet exist and however they should be interpreted, are almost exclusively English.

Language.

The evidence of spoken language points in the same direction. French was, and for a long time remained, the habitual speech of the palace and the manor house, while English was the language of the people. With the coming of Normans English ceased to be the language of laws and charters, but its place was taken not by French, but by Latin, which would be a common possession to the learned of both races. When in the middle of the thirteenth century French is becoming the medium of communication between government and people, the fusion of the races is complete, and the change is due to other influences than the predominance of a French-speaking people. For, meanwhile, the stream of vernacular literature, which was momentarily checked by the Norman Conquest, had begun to flow again (p. 509), and it is a striking as well as an interesting fact that the Provisions of Oxford in 1258 were issued in Latin, French, and English. But it is probable that by the thirteenth century all educated people in the country were as bilingual as the modern Welsh. At any rate, from the middle of the twelfth century the chronicles are full of stories that show a knowledge of, if not considerable familiarity with, English speech among the upper classes. Henry II. is noted as certainly understanding, even if he did not speak, it. Giraldus Cambrensis, of mixed Norman and Welsh descent, was so familiar with it that he could compare the dialects of different parts of the country. There is no reason to labour the point. A cursory glance at selected passages from contemporary writers might incline us to agree with Scott and Thierry; but a more careful examination leaves no manner of doubt that after the middle of the twelfth century at the latest the use of the term Norman to denote an inhabitant of England meant no more than a similar use of the term Huguenot at the present day.

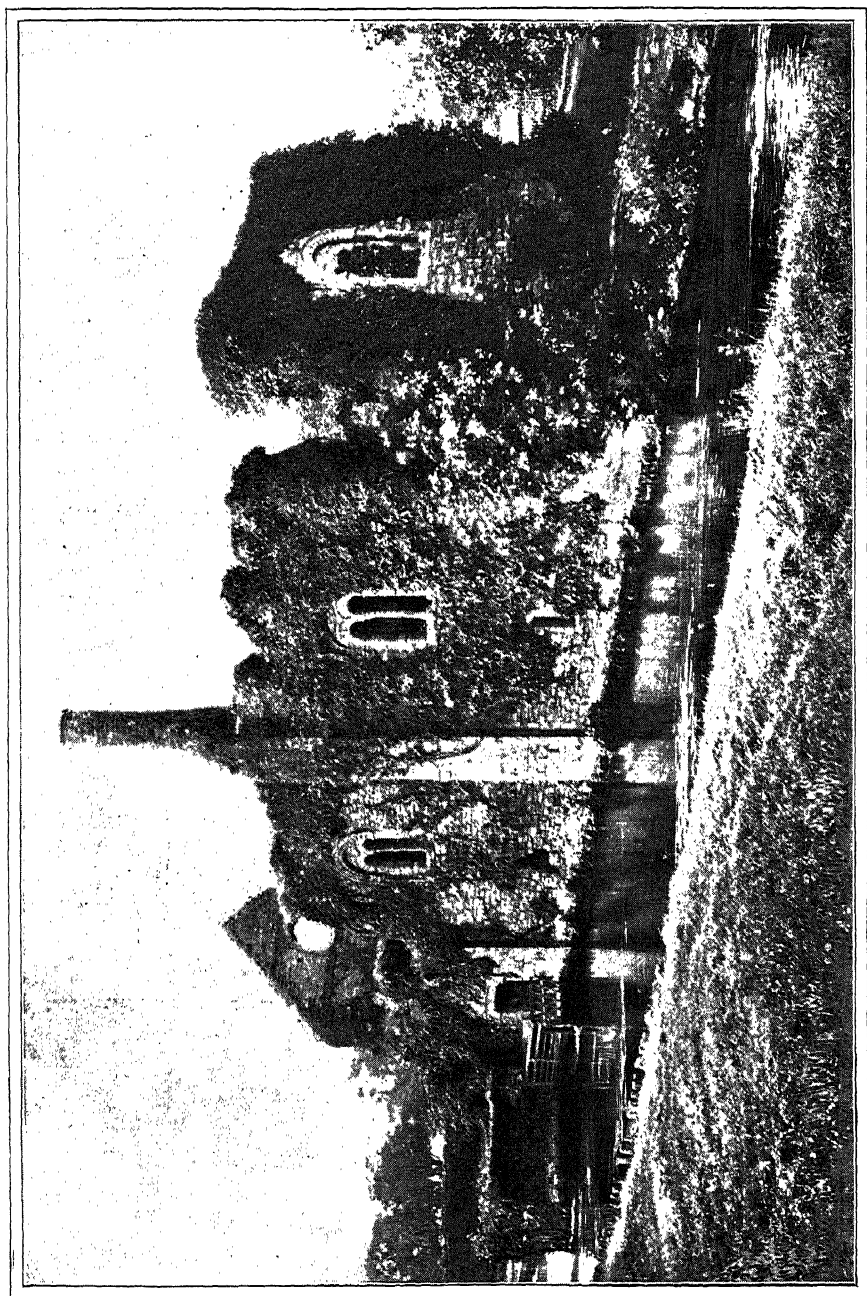
Social
Con-
ditions.

The social history of any age cannot be exhaustively described in a few pages. But all societies, however complex in structure, group themselves round a few common forms of social life. The more stationary the life the more will it tend to reproduce the same common forms. In the Middle Ages it will be seen that individuals were by no means so stationary as is ordinarily supposed. But in society generally there was a far larger stationary element than under modern

conditions; so that it is not altogether impossible to photograph the social circumstances of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. One broad division of life is common to all societies that have emerged from the purely pastoral stage; life in the town promotes needs and means of supplying them which develop a totally different kind of character from that fostered by the routine of the country; the quick-witted townsman and the acquiescent peasant soon part company. But these are types for all time and all places. There are, however, two forms of social life which, though not entirely confined to the Middle Ages, may justly be regarded as in a sense peculiar to them. Life in the manor house and life in the monastery are not unknown at the present day; but they are excrescences, or rather perhaps survivals; whereas the lord of the manor and the monk are the two most typical characters of medieval society. It will be convenient to confine ourselves to them, and by a detailed study in turn of the buildings, the organisation and the daily life of the manor house and the monastery, to try to get as near as possible to the life and thoughts of a remoter age.

**Life in the
Manor
House.**

The baronial castle is generally depicted as the centre of Norman life. But the Norman baron shut up with his family and his men-at-arms in the gloomy walls of a comfortless keep is a figure for romance. The earliest castles were mere fortresses, and every sensible king took care that, by whomsoever built, they should be garrisoned in the royal name. When at a later period castles became residences of the great nobility, the introduction of domestic comfort and ceremonial splendour placed the life of their inhabitants on a level with life in the largest manor houses. The noblemen of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, then, lived, like the knight or more substantial free tenant of the same period, in a manor house or, it might be, in several manor houses. For many land-owners would possess more than one manor, and the different manors might be at great distances from each other. The time of a great number of lords will be largely spent in passing at intervals from one Hall to another, and in their journey they would carry not only their families and servants, but all their household conveniences and comforts. All conveyance had to be done on horses and mules; and as the pace would



THE NORMAN HOUSE, CHRISTCHURCH.

be that of a led horse or mule, travelling was a tedious operation. Moreover, inns offered too poor an accommodation for a large company; and although a monastery might open its hospitable doors, one could not always be counted on; so that it was necessary for any party of travellers to add to their baggage the things necessary for spending a night in the open air.

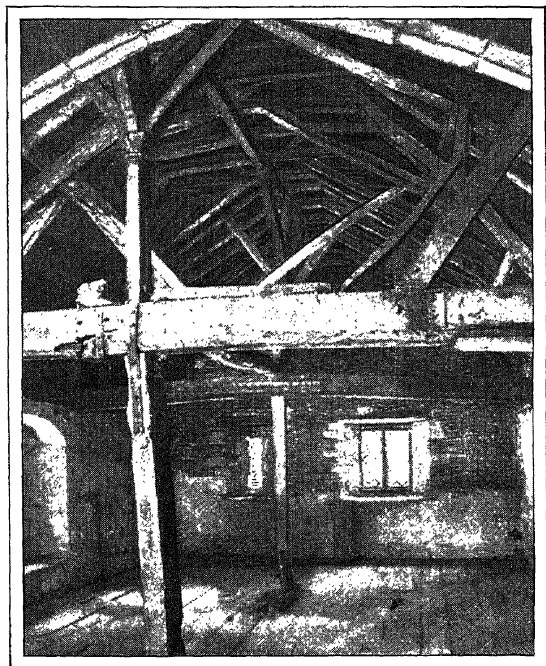
(1) Build-
ings.

It was almost a necessary part of such a life that the manor house should be a simple structure. Whether it belonged to the king or to a yeoman, it might differ in size, but for a long period the details of its arrangement were substantially the same. The central feature was a large hall on the ground floor, flanked at one end by a vaulted cellar above which stood the solar¹ or private room of the lord's family, and at the other end perhaps by the stables. The building would probably stand between two courts. Of one of these, part would be laid out as a garden for a lady, while the other would form a poultry yard. The whole would be enclosed by a quickset hedge, a palisade or a wall; while sometimes immediately round the house itself, cutting it off from the pleasure grounds, but more often outside the wall which enclosed the courts, would run a moat to secure the buildings from a too sudden hostile intrusion. The larger proportion of early medieval houses were of timber. In many cases the houses were "run up" with a celerity and a result emulative of the work of the modern builder. True, the halls were generally of stone, and all vaulted work such as the cellar would necessarily be of the same material; but the solar or even the kitchen, with all the attendant risks of fire, would as often as not be merely timber structures. Some of the timber work—often, for example, the kitchen—would be run up for the occasion; but the greater portion of it would be intended to remain until the owner could afford to build in stone. Thus, as wants increased, a number of extra buildings would gradually be dotted about the court—a bakery, a brewery, a laundry, and such like; and the whole would ultimately be drawn together by a corridor of wood or stone. This temporary nature of much medieval building shows how largely life in the Middle Ages was a life in the open

[¹ That is, the chamber where one can enjoy the sun.]

air. A study of medieval windows will make this clear. Even in the solar the windows were narrow, for they could only be protected by canvas or by wooden lattices or shutters. The expense of glass for a long time allowed only of the glazing of the upper lights in a window. The practical inconvenience of this is illustrated by an order of Henry III., which assigns as a reason for substituting glass for wood "that the chamber may not be so windy"; while the ineffectiveness of medieval carpentry comes out in a charge among the royal accounts of the same period, "for closing the windows better than usual."

A medieval manor house, then, ordinarily consisted of at least a hall, a cellar, and a solar; to these might be added a kitchen, a chapel, a lady's bower, a buttery, pantry, sewery, a brewery, bakery, laundry and, lastly, the stables and out-



THE SOLAR, CHARNEY BASSET, BERKS.

houses. The hall would be a square or oblong structure, generally of stone, covered in with a roof which was often supported on a double row of pillars so as to make the whole space into a nave and two side aisles. At the end opposite to the entrance would be a raised platform or daïs; and the rest of the hall was sometimes known as the marsh—a name which, when it stood on the ground floor, in the absence of boarding it only too often deserved. Contrary to our ordinary idea, medieval stone walls were almost invariably plastered

over and whitewashed or painted on. Fire-places are seldom found in mediæval halls; a fire was lit on a hearth in the centre and the smoke escaped through a louvre or lantern in the roof. The hall served many purposes. It was the scene of the lord's Court of Justice; it was the dining room of the lord and his household, and it was the bedroom of the household. The furniture was scanty and plain. Along the *daïs*, across the width of the hall, would run a fixed or "dormant" table for the lord, his family and honoured guests; while at the side would stand a cupboard or dresser which at meal-times would be furnished with a profusion of plate. Down the sides or aisles would be placed movable tables made of boards laid upon tressels. At night time these would be removed and all round the walls would be spread mattresses on the floor or on low wooden bedsteads, on which all the household, male and female indiscriminately, would lie down to sleep. Finally, the seats were mere benches, although the lord and lady might be provided with a settee furnished with arms and a back. Beyond the *daïs*-wall would be the solar. Ordinarily the entrance to this room would be not far from the hall, through which the lord could see and hear all that was going on. It was the private sitting room and bedroom of the family and of any distinguished strangers. Thus it would be more comfortably furnished than the hall. The walls would be wainscoted and tapestried all round; and whereas we hear of no covering for the floor of the hall other than rushes and boughs, in the thirteenth century carpets are mentioned in connection with the solar. The room would also contain a bed or beds somewhat luxuriously furnished and separated from each other by tapestry or hangings. The fire place and the chimney corner for the winter, the stone seat in the window for the summer, are invariable concomitants of the only livable room in a mediæval house. Below the solar, if not below the hall itself, would run the cellar—a large vaulted structure of stone—which might be storehouse, brewery, and stables all in one. Plenty of storage place was necessary, for the stores could only be laid in at great annual fairs, and room must be found not only for the supplies of winter food and for drink in barrels, but also for all spare necessities for the house and farm. In the houses of the king or of the great nobles there

would be also special rooms known as wardrobes, which were both storerooms for the clothes of other seasons and work-rooms for the tailors. The supplies of drink and food when given out from the cellar would be placed respectively in the buttery (*i.e.* butlery) and in the pantry or sewery preparatory to their transference to the tables in the hall. The last, but not the least important, room in a medieval house which calls for notice, is the kitchen. Much of the cooking might be

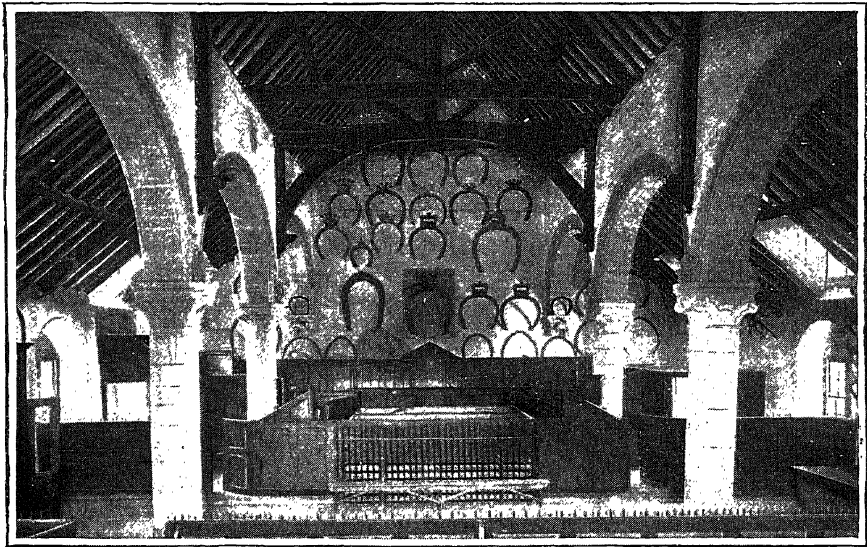


Photo: Chester Vaughan, Acton, W.

THE HALL, OAKHAM CASTLE.

done in the open air; the kitchens, as we have seen, were often temporary structures, and the kitchen utensils would be among the most important furniture that the travelling household carried in its train. Extant lists of such utensils show that the art of the cook was a much valued art. And yet to modern ideas the difficulties would be insuperable. In the ordinary kitchen built of timber the fire would of necessity be in the middle of the room. Roasting would be a laborious though not impossible process. But in any case the greater part of the meat was boiled; for the kitchen seems also to have been the slaughter-house, and the meat was either

eaten in summer perfectly fresh from the knife of the butcher, or formed part of the store which had been salted down for winter use.

(2) Inhabitants.

The manor house would be inhabited by the lord, his lady and their younger children, by pages and squires and maidens— young men and women of good birth who were learning their respective duties—and by the attendants and menials, both male and female, of the household. It was a source of pride to the lord and lady that their household should be composed of as many noble youths and maidens as they could gather round them or support. A child would be sent from home at seven years of age to serve as page in some noble family. His education would be superintended by the priest; at fourteen, with certain ceremonies he would be inducted as a squire. His business was to learn gentlemanly accomplishments, to accompany the lord on his journeys and outdoor amusements or to attend him to the field of battle, while amongst the most important duties of his daily life would be his service at table and especially the knowledge of how to carve the joints. The maidens would be not merely the personal attendants of the lady, but her active helpers in the spinning, weaving and needlework, both useful and ornamental, which under the conditions of life were supplied upon the spot. Social intercourse between them and the young squires was extraordinarily free and easy, and in a large measure accounts for the gross immorality which fills all the chronicles and romances of the time. The gallantry which we are accustomed to associate with the feudal age was only skin-deep, and the brutality of husbands to wives and of men to women quite disabuses us of our notions of medieval chivalry. For the rest, the household of a great lord would be composed of the heads of the various departments—the groom of the chamber to look after the hall, the butler, the steward, and many others, with their necessary attendants. When to these are added musicians and jesters it will be clear that even in a moderate-sized house the sum total of those who ministered to the needs and pleasures of the lord's family and friends must have reached no inconsiderable number.

(3) Daily Life.

Late hours are the privilege of civilisation. The modern rhyme which associates early hours with health and long life, wisely does not attempt to define the hours. The medieval

equivalent is not so reluctant, and may be accepted as a statement of the times actually kept. It tells us that—

Lever à cinq, diner à neuf,
Souper à cinq, coucher à neuf,
Fait vivre d'ans nonante et neuf.¹

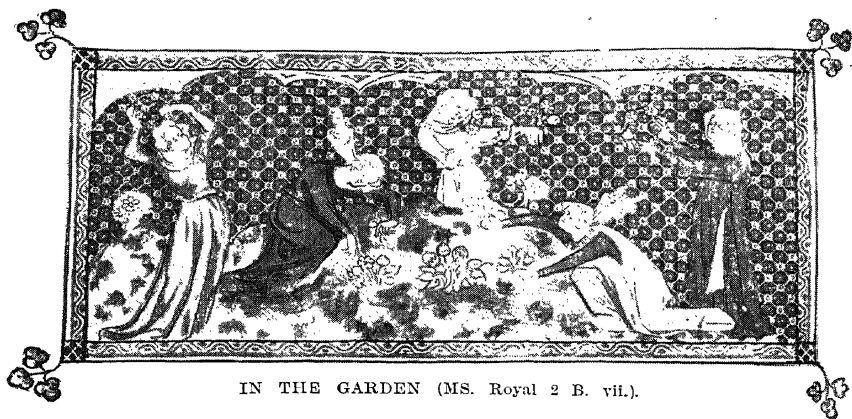
The day was begun by attendance at service at the private chapel attached to the manor house or at the neighbouring parish church; this would be followed by breakfast, which was not a very formidable meal. After this would doubtless come the business of the day; arrangements both within and without the house had to be made, the heads of the various departments to be interviewed, the stables and kennels to be visited. On days of special obligation perhaps a second service would summon those who could go to church or chapel. At some hour between nine and eleven the household assembled for dinner. Except in the halls of the very great, the whole household seems to have sat down together, the lord and his family and guests at the high table on the dais, the rest of the household at the tables in the aisles. Meanwhile the household had washed their hands at the lavatories, while to the high table was handed round a basin and towel. To each person would be supplied only a spoon, and between every two persons a silver or pewter cup, for glass in this connection was scarcely known. On great occasions the meat was brought in from the kitchen with much ceremony and even with an accompaniment of music. The large joints would be carved by one of the squires upon the table, but the smaller roast meats were apparently



MUSIC AND DANCING (MS. Royal 2 B. vii.).

[¹ To rise at five, to dine at nine,
To sup at five, to bed at nine,
Makes a man live to ninety and nine.]

handed round on the spits, often of silver, on which they had been roasted, and every gentleman of the company cut off enough for himself and his lady partner. Silver and metal plates were sometimes used, but ordinarily the meat would be placed on slices of bread called trenchers and, like the cup, shared between two neighbours; each man would produce his own knife, and though forks were not unknown, fingers were invariably used. The trenchers were eaten after the meat or were thrown into the alms-basket. Sweets and dessert would sometimes follow. When all was finished, the cloth and the



IN THE GARDEN (MS. Royal 2 B. vii.).

table itself were removed, a final draught of wine and spices was served round, and after a second washing of hands the members of the high table withdrew to the solar. But during the dinner the hall was filled with many occupants besides the diners. First came the cats and dogs which lay upon the ground devouring the bones and fragments thrown to them, and the hawks which ladies and men alike seem to have kept upon their wrists or upon the perches in the hall. In the case of a great nobleman the minstrels would be his own paid servants. But ordinarily there would be little to separate them from the chance tumblers, dancers, and wandering jongleurs of all kinds, or even from the beggars who could often only be kept out of the hall at meal-times by the use of actual force. After dinner the amusements of the day would begin. Out of doors there was a quiet though ceremonious walk in the garden; or there were the more exciting and exhausting pleasures of hunting and

hawking. If the weather was unpropitious, there was much with which both ladies and men could occupy themselves indoors—chess for the sober, or some of the many gambling games with dice; cards were the invention of a later age. More violent exercise would be afforded by dancing or by romping games, of which blindman's-buff, called hoodman blind, was a type; while those who were inclined to sit still, would hear or play music, or even sit and talk, or read to the ladies as they sat over their embroidery. So the time would pass away pleasantly enough until five o'clock, when the whole household would



HOODMAN BLIND (MS. 264 Misc.).
(Bodleian Library, Oxford.)

again meet for supper. This was an almost equally formal meal with dinner, though perhaps not so elaborate. The hall was ordinarily lighted with candles, which were stuck upon a spike whether on a candlestick or elsewhere. On great occasions torches were carried about by the attendants or placed in receivers on the wall. The means of artificial light were too precious to be needlessly dissipated. Consequently, although sometimes supper was followed by carousals, dancing or games, very often after supper the household retired to bed. Even with the publicity inseparable from the absence of special bedrooms, medieval modesty did not provide a night-dress. An amusing set of instructions for the management of a household tells the lady of the house to teach her servants "prudently to extinguish their candles, before they go into their bed, with the

mouth or with the hand and not with their shirt"—that is, they were not to get into bed half-undressed and then put out the candle by throwing their shirts upon it.

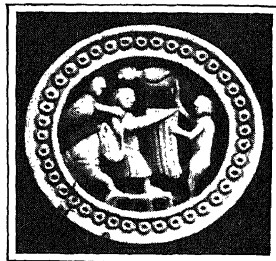
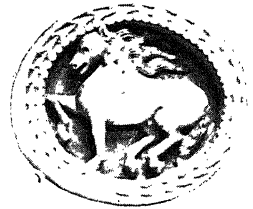
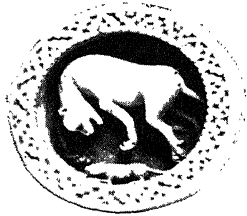
**Humble
Life.**

The inevitable lack of material makes it almost impossible to describe the life of the poorer classes in an early stage of social development. We have seen that even the houses of manorial lords were of the simplest construction. The socage tenants,¹ and the better class of burgesses—in fact, the free tenants—may have dwelt in comparative cleanliness and comfort; but judged from our standard, the arrangements of even a royal palace were sufficiently primitive, and were perhaps endurable only by reason of the size of the rooms and the plentiful draughts which swept unhindered through door and windows. The life of all classes alike was passed mainly in the open air; the houses were merely places of shelter in which to sleep and to feed. The larger part of even the most substantial manor houses was built of wood; carpenter and builder were synonymous terms. By the same standard, perhaps by any standard, the dwellings of the poorer classes must have been mere hovels, like the worst Irish cabins at the present day—four outside walls composed of wattles banked up with mud, and covered over with a roof of boughs or a thatch of straw. On the bare ground of the floor would stand a tressel-table and a bench or two; the bed would be a mere litter of straw, on which the inmates would lie in the same clothes that they wore by day; and the single room would possibly be divided by a rough partition into a sleeping space for the human inhabitants, and a shelter against inclement weather for the poultry and the pigs. The cooking would, no doubt, be done, when possible, out of doors; but when it was necessary to light a fire inside, the absence of a chimney enables us to understand Chaucer's description of the poor widow's cottage:

"Full sooty was her bower and eke her hall."

All this would not necessarily denote an unhappy life, though it would certainly preclude an easy one. Attached to the cottage would be a plot of ground at least two or three

[¹ The lower class of free tenants who did not hold their land on condition of military service.]



CHESSMEN AND DRAUGHTSMEN.
(British Museum and Ashmolean Museum, Oxford.)

acres in extent. On this a stock of vegetables would be grown. Fowls would be a necessary adjunct to every cottage—the poorer tenants frequently paid part of their rent by the gift of a hen or a specified number of eggs. Bees would supply the honey which filled the place of sugar in the diet of the time. The only scavenger was the pig, for which even the humblest peasant found a place. Ewe's milk was mixed with cow's milk to make the cheese which formed one of the staple articles of the peasant's food. Thus upon the table of the poorest cottager might be found meat of pig's flesh and of domestic fowls of various kinds, vegetables and fruit, eggs and cheese. The scantiest item of all seems to have been that one which we regard as the most necessary. A successful corn harvest would enable the cottager, who had no share in the common fields of the manor, to add a plentiful supply of bread and beer to his ordinary diet. But harvests were precarious, and free trade in corn was practically unknown. Hence meat seems to have been more plentiful than grain; and it is to the disproportionate consumption of meat, as much as to the filthy dwellings, that we must attribute the presence of those loathsome skin diseases which are somewhat gratuitously classed together as leprosy (p. 529). Thus in favourable years there must have been a rough plenty for all classes; but the constant liability to famine and its successor, pestilence, induced a recklessness of feeling and a cheapening of the value of human life which are the necessary counterparts of a precarious existence. The labours of the peasant on working days must have been as unremitting as those of the peasants to-day in many parts of continental Europe. What time he could spare from the lawful demands of his lord's bailiff, or his share, if he had any, in the cultivation of the common fields, would be given to his own little plot of garden ground. But the Church prescribed numerous holidays—more than were necessary to recreate the exhausted physical energies. Attendance at mass would consume a small part of the time of enforced idleness; most of the remainder seems to have been spent at the neighbouring ale-house. The English were notoriously hard drinkers. Men and women alike would sit for long hours drinking, gossiping, gambling, singing, or listening to the

coarse performances of the wandering musicians and mountebanks, who frequented as much the taverns of the poor as the manorial halls. Hence, when it was almost dark, would they reel home to their hovels, and creep candleless to their pallets of straw, there to lie until the morrow's sunrise summoned them to the monotonous round of their daily work. More wholesome recreation would be afforded by the



GLEANNING : THE STORY OF RUTH AND BOAZ.
(Lambeth Palace Library.)

May-day, harvest, and Christmas festivities, which with much feasting, combined dancing, singing and rough games of various kinds. But these were only at long intervals.

It is difficult to imagine a life less well equipped with the means of living. In summer, if the weather was propitious, existence must have been tolerable, even pleasant. But in winter, though the peasant might clothe himself more warmly in a coarse garment of rabbit skins, the materials for a fire might be hard to come by, and the choking smoke which arose from the peat or the damp wood and leaves inside the cottage was a doubtful alternative for the piercing cold against which the fire was kindled and maintained. And even where there were the means, there was little encouragement to thrift.

The boors must have escaped the royal tax-gatherer and the royal purveyors simply because there was nothing that could be taken from them; but the more substantial villeins and the free tenants were fair game; and the household goods, as well as the live stock on their holdings, were forced to contribute now to the general needs of the State, now to the personal wants of the King's Court or the royal officials on their wanderings through the country. That men did rise from lower, even the lowest, social grades to higher ranks, we know; but for the most part the life of the mere peasant was a life, not of despair which is born of a desire for better things, but of reckless living for the moment, which scarcely separated them from the birds and beasts sheltering with them in the hovels which we miscall their homes.

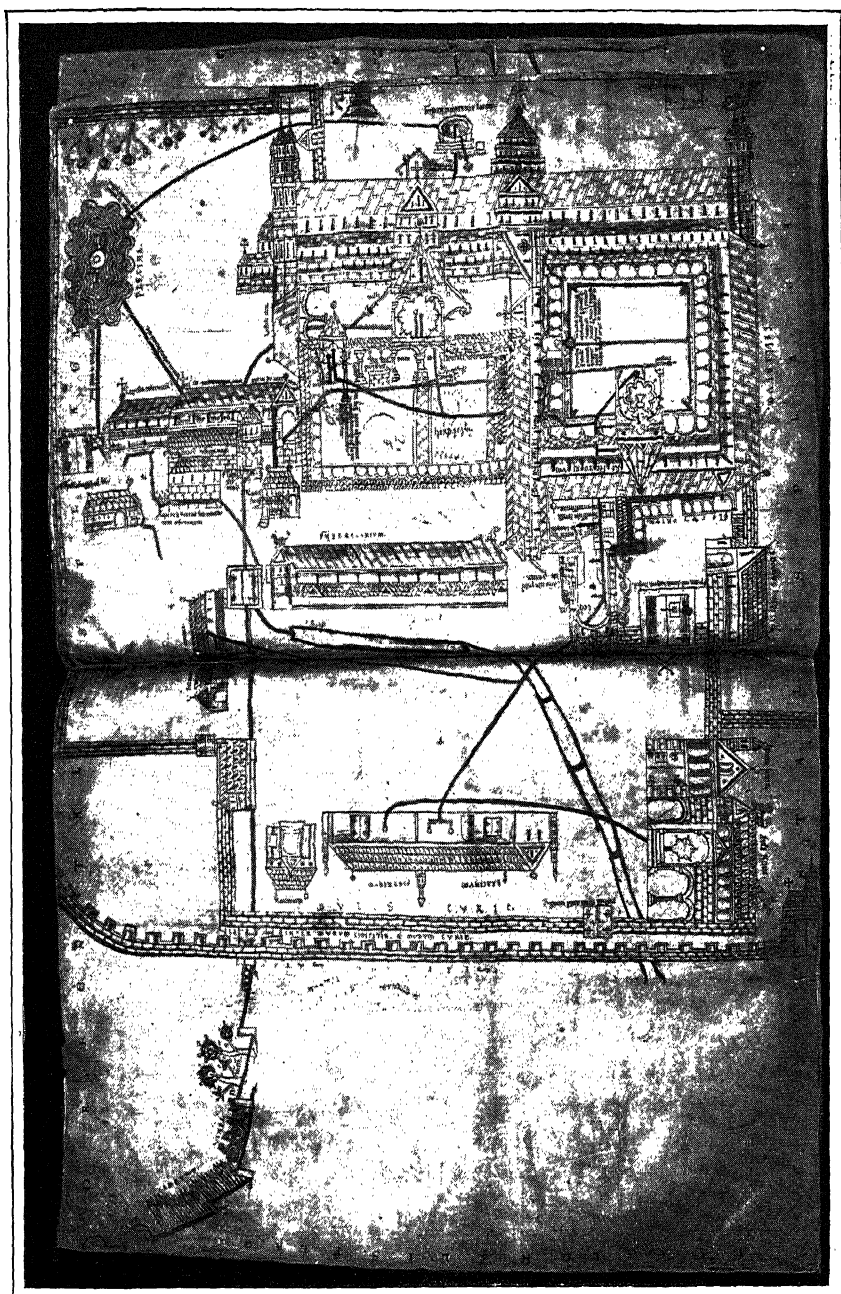
Life in the
Monas-
tery.

Our remaining time may be spent in a short examination of the buildings, the establishment, and the daily life of a monastic community. In common speech we distinguish between a monastery—a community of men, and a convent—a community of women. But no such distinction is admissible. The one is a Greek word describing the home of a solitary individual and applied by a misnomer to that of a separate community; the community, whether male or female, habitually describes itself in Latin as a convent. Now, there were communities of various kinds and degrees—canons secular, consisting of priests who lived in separate houses within a cathedral close, but owed obedience to some kind of common rule,¹ and were dependent on the bishop; canons regular, also priests living a collegiate life in obedience to some kind of common rule, but not bound by special vows; monks, strictly so called, living apart from the world like the canons regular, not necessarily in holy orders, but bound by special vows. To these should perhaps be added the friars, in their origin not living in communities at all, but before long by a kind of irresistible necessity gathered into common dwelling-places, which gave them all the advantages without any of the restraints of a common life.

Buildings.

Whatever the order, and whether composed of monks or canons regular, the buildings of the community would be modelled on a similar plan. They naturally centred round the church for whose sake it may be said that they existed. Hence

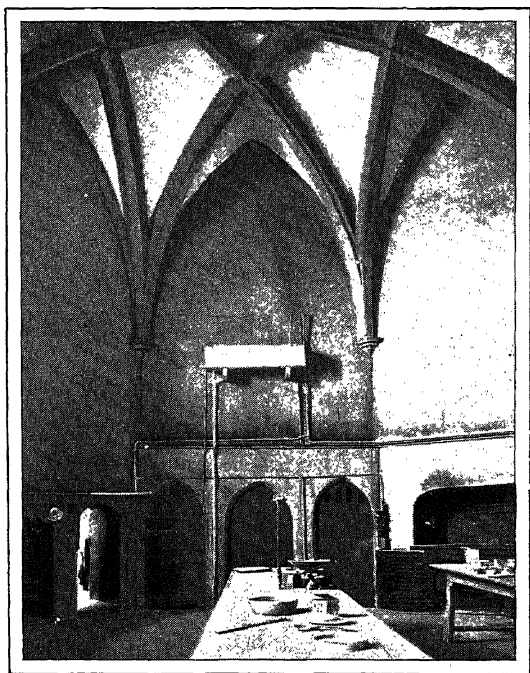
[¹ Greek *κανών*, whence the name.]



PLAN OF A CHURCH AND ITS MONASTIC COMMUNITY (CHRIST CHURCH, CANTERBURY).
(Trinity College, Cambridge.)

the care and wealth which were lavished on the church; for its fame as a place of rare beauty, or, more important, as the shrine of some specially sacred relic, reflected credit upon and so brought wealth to them. The church would be divided into two distinct parts by a screen, and the upper part or choir would be appropriated to the monks, while the dependents and visitors might occupy the nave. There are some remarkable exceptions, but to the south of the church, as an ordinary rule, would lie the cloisters—a covered arcade in the form of a quadrangle running round an open grass plot called the garth, which might be laid out as a garden with a fountain in the middle. The cloister was not merely the means of communication between different parts of the monastic buildings, it was the chief scene of the monks' daily life. In later times the open trellis work of the cloister was shut in by beautiful painted windows. But in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries there was no such shelter from the rays of the summer sun or the piercing winter blasts and the draughts which are peculiar to no season of the year. No less than in the case of the inhabitants of the manor house, the life of the monk, although largely confined to the cloister, was essentially a life in the open air. In one of the sides, alleys, or walks of the cloister would be held the monastic school. Another walk would be fitted up with carols—that is, screened enclosures for study; while a third would form an ambulatory where the monks might walk in meditation. The cloisters would be bounded by the monastic buildings, and the usual arrangement, dictated largely by convenience, placed the church upon the north with the refectory opposite, while to the right or eastern side lay the chapterhouse, and to the west the dormitory. The chapterhouse occupied the centre of the eastern side of the quadrangle, into which it opened by a long vestibule often furnished with benches as a waiting room. For here all the business of the monastery was transacted—novices were admitted, offenders were sentenced, all internal arrangements for the church services and the monastery were made. The building obtained its name from the fact that in conventual houses a chapter of the rule of the Order was daily read in it. For here the whole convent of monks or chapter of canon met in daily council after mass. The refectory lay invariably to the south, so that the smell and noise which accompanied

the meals should be as far as possible from the church. Usually, on the south-west side would stand the kitchen—a more substantial structure for the stationary monks than was needed by the migratory medieval lord. Sometimes the dormitory would lie on the same side as the chapterhouse; but in the larger monasteries where there was more than one dormitory that for novices or lay brethren would lie beyond the chapterhouse, while the fully professed monks would lodge on the western side of the quadrangle. In either case the dormitory would be upstairs, and the ground floor would consist sometimes of store-rooms, sometimes of an ambulatory or promenade, to which would be often added a calefactory, a room with a fire in it which the monks were allowed to frequent at certain times and on certain occasions. In either case also the dormitory would communicate immediately with the church, so that without leaving cover the monks could attend the nightly services. It would be furnished at one end with lavatories and would be divided, not into separate cells, which was a peculiarity of the strict Carthusian order, but into cubicles like the dormitory of a modern public school. Each cubicle would be lit from a small window and would be furnished with a wooden bedstead. In some monasteries the cubicles were fitted with desks for study, and must have formed an acceptable



THE ABBOT'S KITCHEN, DURHAM.

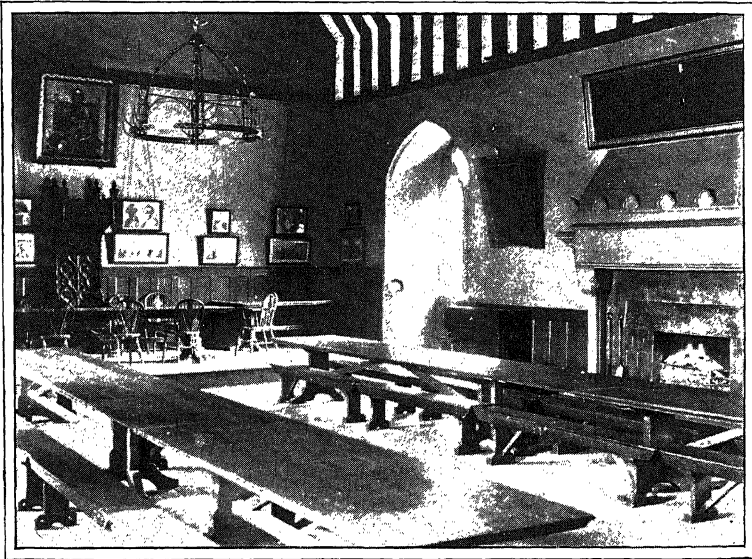
refuge from the heat of the sun in the cloister. The maintenance of discipline in the dormitory would rival that of a well-conducted school. The monks were shut in from the cloister at a particular hour, lights were kept burning all night, and the prior went round to see that each monk was in his cubicle.

The development of monastic buildings might be almost limitless, but a few more deserve a passing notice as common to a monastery of any size, and as playing an important part in its daily life. The Scriptorium or writing-room in a great monastery would present a busy scene. It would combine the work of a modern land agent's office and a printing press. Here would be drawn up the leases and other legal documents incidental to the conduct of a great estate; the books and music needful for school and church would be copied, and the chronicle of the abbey would be compiled. Equally characteristic of monastic work would be the Almonry lying often near the church, whence the daily dole would be administered to the poor. Sick and dying monks were treated in an Infirmary which often lay in a small cloister of its own with kitchen, bath-house, hall and chapel attached, in one range of buildings and so disposed that the sick monks in their beds could hear the services. Finally, the monasteries dispensed hospitality often on a gigantic scale. For this purpose they had guest houses, for frequently there was more than one. The guest house contained a hall, dormitory, and chapel of its own, and would be somewhat apart from the rest of the monastic buildings. The accommodation for guests and for horses must have been enormous, for we have seen that kings and barons travelled with large companies.

**Organ-
isation**

The organisation of a monastery was most elaborate; for the minute subdivision of functions, and the multiplication of official posts to which it led, must have been designed not only to give as many monks as possible a feeling that the monastery was their home, but with the even more important object of employing idle hands. At the head of every monastery was an abbot or prior. Whether abbot or prior he lived apart from the monks in a lodge which, with its hall, solar, and private chapel, was on the scale of a large manor house. He made all appointments, and the success of the house depended largely on his administrative powers. Abbot Hugh and Abbot Samson, whom

Carlyle has immortalised for us, were not, as types, peculiar to the great house of St. Edmundsbury. Where both existed, the relations between abbot and prior would be similar to those of the head of an Oxford college and its dean, to whom the prior has been aptly likened. For he was the executive officer of the monastery itself and would, if necessary, be assisted by one or more sub-priors. The heads of the various departments were



GUEST-HALL OF ST. AUGUSTINE'S MONASTERY, CANTERBURY.

(Now the Hall of St. Augustine's Missionary College.)

known as obedientiaries, and to each was assigned a definite and separate charge upon the abbey rents, out of which he could meet the expenses incurred in connection with his office. The chief of these were the Master of the Fabric, who looked after the monastic buildings; the Sacristan, who was responsible for everything connected with the services of the church; the Chamberlain, whose sphere of office was the dormitory; the Cellarer, who kept the stores; the Pitancier, who regulated all extra allowances; and the Almoner, who was the vehicle of the monastic charity.

The daily life of the monk was largely regulated by the number of services which he was bound to attend. Special

Daily Life.

officials, such as the cook, and those whom the business of the monastery carried to a distance from the church, might be exempted; but the ordinary monk would be required to attend the canonical "Hours" of the Breviary, which, indeed, had been originally developed through the conditions and needs of monastic life. Thus the monk rose and washed and was in his place at church by six o'clock, where he said lauds and prime and heard the matin mass. This would be followed by the holding of the Chapter. On ordinary days he would then break his fast with a light meal called the *mixtum*. On days of special obligation *terce*¹ at nine o'clock would be followed by high mass, at which all within and without the monastery would be bound to attend. Until dinner the monks would be occupied about their various duties—teaching, learning, copying, or looking after the concerns of the kitchen, the stables, or the farm. Those who were about the monastery assembled again in the church at midday for sexts, to which on ordinary days succeeded dinner. But on fast-days—Wednesdays and Fridays—there was no meal until after nones at three o'clock, while during Lent there was even a more prolonged fast until five or six. Dinner would usually be eaten in silence while one of the novices read passages from some edifying book. Then studies might be resumed in the cloister, or a few of the lighter-minded monks would indulge in a quiet chat or even play a game of chess. Supper at five and vespers at sunset would both claim the presence of all the inmates, and at six the gates of the monastery were closed. The day's round was ended by *compline*² in the church, after which the monks passed in procession to the dormitory. Nor were the hours of the night exempt from obligations. The whole night was divided into three nocturnes or watches, and a constant succession of Psalms was chanted by relays of monks, the whole Psalter being accomplished at varying degrees of speed.

It is often supposed that the life of a medieval monk was both hard and dull. But such was by no means the case. If the inmates of a monastery did not live as luxuriously as is

[¹ *Terce*, sexts, and nones are so called because they fall respectively at the third, sixth, and ninth hour of the day according to Roman reckoning.]

[² *Compline*, derived from the Latin *completus*, perhaps through an adjective *completinus*, is the last service of the day, at 9 p.m.]

commonly supposed, at any rate they fed plentifully, though with due observance of the ordinances of the church. To us the greatest hardship of their life would probably be the winter's cold and the continual draughts; but in these respects they were no worse off than the inmates of the manor house or the palace. The monotony of their life, too, so far as it was monotonous, was no greater than that in other classes of contemporary society. True, the whole community did not move about like many lords of manors; but individual monks, especially the obedientiaries, would have not only opportunities, but even a necessity, for travelling far afield on the business of the monastery. And for those who were not so fortunate,

if they did not go into the world, the world came in no small quantity to them. Among their own number might be found persons who had played a great part in affairs before they exchanged the sword for the cowl; while in their wanderings, visitors of all ranks from the king downwards only too willingly accepted the hospitality of the monks. The monastic chronicles testify to the amount of news from the outside world which from one source and another reached the monastery. Day by day the items of news were noted on slips of parchment, which were inserted between the leaves of the Chronicle ready to be entered thereon. If to such breaks in the monotony of the daily round as have been already suggested we add those which come from the opportunities of sport afforded to a large land-owning corporation, from the lawsuits with the bishop of the diocese or with some powerful layman, and, finally, from the



MONK TRAVELLING (MS. Nero D. vii.).

quarrels with their own tenants and the neighbouring townsmen, we shall perhaps be inclined to agree that the life of the quietest medieval monk in the most secluded monastery must have consisted of a succession of interesting episodes.

AUTHORITIES.—1066-1216.

Political History, 1066-1154.—The story of the Norman Conquest as it appeared immediately afterwards is told by William of Jumieges, by William of Poitiers (the Conqueror's chaplain) in the *Carmen de Bello Hastingensi*, and the Anglo-Saxon Chronicles, but best (for those who can read between the lines) in Domesday Book. For the reigns of William II. and Henry I. the Chronicle must be supplemented by Eadmer, and the monk Ordericus Vitalis. From this last writer, with the *Gesta Stephani*, William of Malmesbury (Rolls Series), the Hexham annalists, and the *Chronicle of Melrose*, we derive our account of Stephen's reign. The best modern account (to 1135) is Freeman's *Norman Conquest*, vols. iv. and v. (summed up in his *Short History of the Norman Conquest*). Stubbs's *Constitutional History*, from chap. ix., is invaluable. Dean Church's *Anselm* is an excellent biography. The facts and details are given fully in Franck Bright's *History of England*; Green's *Short History of the English People* supplies a brilliant sketch. The best summary is Stubbs' *Early Plantagenets*. In general, Round, *Feudal England*; Ramsay, *Foundations of England*.

1154-1216.—Of a crowd of contemporary writers on Henry II.'s reign, William of Newburgh, the so-called Benedict of Peterborough, and Roger Hoveden, give the best narratives. Ralph de Diceto may be added, while Giraldus Cambrensis, John of Salisbury, and the Rolls Series (collections of matters relating to Becket) are supplementary. For the reigns of Richard and John most of these writers are the primary authorities. These reigns are also illustrated by the memorials of Richard I. (Rolls Series), the various monastic annals, and the collection of Royal Rolls, and the selected documents in Stubbs' *Charters*. Modern writers as before.

Domesday Book.—The text of the *Survey* with that of the *Exon Domesday*, *Inquisitio Eliensis*, *Winton Domesday*, is in most public libraries. Facsimiles (obtainable separately for each county) are published by the Government. Sir H. Ellis's *Introduction to Domesday Book*, with indices (2 vols., 1833), is very useful; R. W. Eyton, *Domesday Studies* (analysis and digest of the Staffordshire survey), 1881; also *Dorset Survey and Key to Domesday*. Freeman, *Norman Conquest*, vol. v., is very useful and suggestive. [J. L. C. Mowat] *Notes on Oxfordshire Domesday*, 1892 (a good model for Domesday students). J. H. Round, *Domesday Studies* (in *Domesday Celebration* volumes), the best modern investigations on difficult points. The *Testa de Nevill* and *Hundred Rolls* and the *Domesday Book of St. Paul's* (published by the Dean and Chapter) are necessary for comparison of Domesday with later arrangements. Seebohm, *English Village Community*, excellent on open-field cultivation. See also Stubbs, *Const. Hist.*, i.; Maitland, *Domesday Book and Beyond*.

Religion.—The leading contemporary authorities besides those above cited are the works of Eadmer, Walter Map (Camden Society), Giraldus Cambrensis, Lanfranc, and Anselm (Migne, *Patrologia Latina*); the lives of St. Thomas of Canterbury, his letters, and those of Gilbert Foliot (Migne), and Walter of Coventry. When not otherwise specified, the above works are in the Rolls Series. A selection from the authorities as to Becket is given in English, in W. H. Hutton's *St. Thomas of Canterbury*.

Law.—Stubbs's *Select Charters* is indispensable, as also Bigelow's *Placita Anglo-Normannica*, and the various records published by the Record Commission and the Pipe Roll Society. The law books of the period are mostly printed in Schmidt, *Gesetze der Angelsachsen*. Dr. Liebermann is re-editing them, and has published the *Quadripartitus* and the *Conciliatio Cnuti*. Glanvill's text-book has often been published. The *Dialogus de Scaccario* is in Stubbs's *Select Charters*. Various scattered publications

1216]

tions of Dr. Heinrich Brunner (esp. *Die Entstehung der Schwurgerichte*) and of Dr. Liebermann are of great value. See also Pollock and Maitland, *History of English Law to Edward I.*

Warfare.—The evidence is scattered throughout the ancient chronicles, especially Froissart. Modern books—Hewitt, *Ancient Armour*, Oxford, 1860; G. T. Clarke, *Mediæval Military Architecture*, 1886; Oman, *Art of War in the Middle Ages*.

Naval Matters (1066-1330).—The *Black Book of the Admiralty*, the *Pipe Rolls*, *Close Rolls*, *Patent Rolls*, and *Rolls of Parliament*, the *Wardrobe Accounts*, the *Acta Regia*, the *Chronicle of Melrose* (Rolls Series), and the *Chronique de Normandie* may be mentioned, as also Selden's *Mare Clausum*, and Prynne's *Animadversions*, and Bracton. Modern: Jal, *Archéologie Navale*; Laird Clowes, *History of the British Navy*. Most of the above texts have been published by the Record Commission.

Trade and Industry.—Allusions in William of Malmesbury, Domesday Book, and the lesser Domesdays (e.g., St. Paul's), the *Boldon Book*, the *Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakeland*, and the town charters and other documents in Stubbs' *Select Charters*. The most useful modern books are: Freeman, *Norman Conquest*, vol. v.; Green, *Short History of the English People*; Gross, *Gild Merchant*; Ashley, *Economic History*; Cunningham, *British Industry and Commerce*; Maitland, *Township and Borough*.

Architecture.—Freeman, *History of the Norman Conquest*; Fergusson, *History of Architecture*; Rickman, *Gothic Architecture*; Parker, *Glossary and Introduction to Gothic Architecture*; Murray's *Cathedral Handbooks*; Scott, *Mediæval Architecture*; Turner and Parker, *Domestic Architecture of the Middle Ages*; Clark, *Mediæval Military Architecture in England*; Winston, *Inquiry into the Difference of Style in Ancient Glass Paintings*. Coins, same as for chap. ii.

Learning and Science.—Hampden, *Scholastic Philosophy in its Relation to Christian Theology* (1833); Milman, *History of Latin Christianity*; Church, *Anselm*; Bass Mullinger, *The University of Cambridge*; R. L. Poole, *Illustrations of the History of Mediæval Thought*, 1884; H. C. Maxwell-Lyte, *History of the University of Oxford*, 1886; Stubbs's *Literature and Learning at the Court of Henry II.* (in *Seventeen Lectures*, vi., vii.); Rashdall, *The Origins of the University of Paris* (*English Historical Review*, i., 1886); *Early History of Oxford* (*Church Quarterly*, xiii., 1887, and *Academy*, June, 1888); Prof. Holland, *Origin of the University of Oxford* (*English Historical Review*, vi., 1891); Poole, *John of Salisbury*, in *Dictionary of National Biography*, xxix.

Literature.—Freeman, *Norman Conquest*; H. Morley, *English Writers*, iii., etc.; Earle's and Plummer's editions of the Anglo-Saxon Chronicles; Gardiner and Mullinger, *Introduction to the Study of English History*, London, 1882; A. Chevalier, *Répertoire des Sources Historiques du Moyen Age* (Paris, 1877-1886); Nutt, *Studies on the Holy Grail* (Folk-lore Society, 1888); the publications in the Rolls Series, especially those edited by Dr. Stubbs. Of a specialist character are B. Ten Brink, *Geschichte der Englischen Litteratur*, i., Berlin, 1877; R. Wuelcker, *Grundriss zur Geschichte der Angelsächsischen Litteratur*, Leipzig, 1885; A. Ebert, *Allgemeine Geschichte der Litteratur des Mittelalters im Abendlande*, Leipzig, 1874-80; and A. Brandl, *Mittelenglische Litteratur* (in Paul's *Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie*, Strassburg, 1889, etc., ii. 1). The majority of the texts referred to in this and the following chapters have been edited by the Early English Text Society. A number have also been published by the Surtees and Camden Societies and the Roxburgh Club.

Social Life.—*Costume*:—Strutt, *Dresses and Habits of the English* (1842); Fairholt, *Costume in England* (1846; third edition, enlarged and revised, by the Hon. A. H. Dillon, in Bohn's Artists' Library, 1885); H. Shaw, *Dresses and Decorations of the Middle Ages*, 2 vols. (1843); Planché, *History of British Costume* (1847; third edition in Bohn's Illustrated Library, 1874); or, better still, the same author's *Cyclopædia of Costume*, 2 vols. (1876-9). Several of these contain a description of the military as well as the civil dress; for the former see Sir S. R. Meyrick's *A Critical Inquiry into Ancient Armour from the Norman Conquest to the Reign of Charles II.*, 3 vols. (1824), and Hewitt, *Ancient Armour*. On Furniture, etc., Viollet-le-Duc, *Dictionnaire de Mobilier Français*.

CHAPTER IV.

FROM CHARTER TO PARLIAMENT. 1216-1273.

A. L.
SMITH.
The Reign
of Henry
III., 1216-
1273.

SIXTEEN years of troubled and factious, but eventually successful, government; seventeen tedious years of attempted absolutism and abortive efforts at resistance to it; seven critical years of civil war, baronial triumphs, quarrels, and failures; finally, eight uneventful years of peace and comparative good government: such is the varied story of the long confused reign of Henry III. (1216-1273). John's death left the kingdom in an alarming condition. Two foreign bands were quartered on the country—John's mercenaries and Louis's troops; and to Louis's cause nearly all the barons were bound by oaths. Langton was absent in disgrace, and a Papal Legate held the English Church in his grasp. The Justiciar was Peter des Roches, Bishop of Winchester, a Poitevin, and thoroughly foreign in his views. There was a strong feudal party ready to seize any opportunity of disorder. But John's death had also removed the one exciting cause of all these troubles. A coalition was at once made between the English ministers and the foreign, the feudal party and the papal. Within three weeks the young king had been crowned (he was nine years old); the Charter had been reissued, and William the Marshall, Earl of Pembroke, made guardian and regent. In the spring of 1217 the barons were fast returning to their allegiance. On May 20th the battle called the Fair of Lincoln reduced Louis to take refuge in London; and the defeat of his fleet by Hubert de Burgh made him submit to the inevitable. By Michaelmas, 1217, England was at peace. But to restore order was a longer task. Barons like Ranulf of Chester had fought against a French prince chiefly to secure a monopoly of power to themselves. Foreign adventurers like Fawkes de Bréauté, the evil legacy of John, still held themselves entrenched in English offices; sheriff of six counties, captain of a band of ruffians, abductor of heiresses, and intimidator of justice, "he was more than a king in England," says the Dunstable annalist. But before the Marshall died in 1219 much

had been done. Much, too, was done after him by Hubert de Burgh, who as Justiciar was joined in power with Pandulf, the new Legate, and Peter des Roches, now guardian of the king's person, but to whose sole credit is due the work achieved between 1219 and 1227. This meant the extirpation of such pests as Fawkes de Bréauté, the vindication of royal authority over the feudal castles, and the restoration of Langton to the chief control of the English Church. In 1227 the king declared himself of age, but, fortunately for himself, not till 1232 was he strong enough to shake off Hubert, the great Justiciar, who

Hubert de
Burgh.



SEAL OF HENRY III.

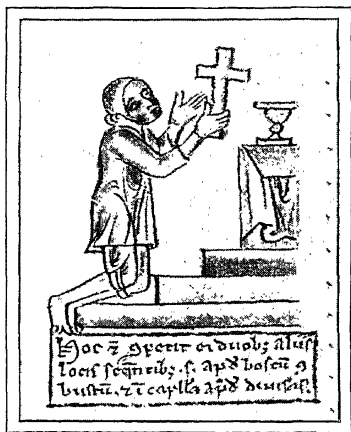
stood between the king and the contempt and resentment of his subjects, and who checked the king's foolish schemes of Welsh, Scotch, and French wars. Hubert fell by a combination of hostile forces—the feudal party's vengeance, the intrigues of rivals, the papal influence, and Henry's own vanity and self-will. But the gratitude which the country owed him is typified in the story of the blacksmith who refused to forge irons for the man who had saved England. With Peter des Roches' return to office and Henry's marriage to Eleanor of Provence, Hubert's policy of England for the English was reversed, and "swarms of hungry bandits, horsed and armed" (in the vigorous words of Matthew Paris), trooped down upon the land and displaced the English ministers and officials. The barons met and threatened to depose the king if he did not dismiss Bishop Peter. The bishop fell in 1234, but not before he had betrayed the baronial leader, Richard the Marshal, to his death, and initiated the king

Fall of
Bishop
Peter.

in a policy of personal government which caused the kingdom thirty-three years of misrule and strife, and nearly cost the king his throne. This policy, following on the memories of

John's mercenaries, generated that hatred of foreign influences which is a keynote of English feeling from this time to the Tudors.

The outcry against "aliens" sometimes seems exaggerated. But it must be remembered that besides supplanting the English nobles and impoverishing the Crown, they encouraged the kings to aim at absolutism. Their hold on castles and seaports was a great danger; they menaced the new-created unity of England, and were a part of that oppressive system by which the wealth and welfare of the English Church were drained



HUBERT DE BURGH IN SANCTUARY
(MS. Roy. 14, C. vii.)

away to support foreign prelates. The Primacy itself was held by Boniface of Savoy, the queen's uncle; her two brothers were earls. In 1252 Bishop Grosseteste of Lincoln, the foremost Churchman of his day, declared that papal nominees drew yearly from England moneys to thrice the amount of the royal revenues (p. 574). Henry's weak and impressionable mind was overawed by the masterful character of a Gregory IX. and an Innocent IV. When the Popes demanded tithe from the English clergy, "the king became a reed to lean on"; and such exactions became almost annual. But baronial and ecclesiastical discontent could effect nothing without a leader. First Richard of Cornwall, the king's brother, next Richard the Marshal, then Edmund Rich the Primate, and the famous Grosseteste, successively headed movements against Henry's wanton wastefulness, and his perpetual violations of the Charters, the anarchy due to continued abeyance of the offices of Chancellor, Justiciar, and Treasurer, and the repeated gross breaches of faith on the king's part. He had once sworn "as a man, a Christian, a knight, a crowned and anointed king"; but this, too, he broke as lightly as he did the rest.

1273]

The
Barons'
War.

Matters had seemed to be coming to a climax many times—in 1233, 1237, 1242, 1244. At this date Richard of Cornwall again stood forth to head the demands for reform, which became more urgent in 1248, 1253, and 1255. But it was a conjunction of peculiar incidents which produced at last the right man in Simon de Montfort. A foreigner by birth, but heir to the earldom of Leicester, he had won the king's favour and married his sister, and had served him well in the thankless lieutenancy of Gascony, only to experience Henry's ingratitude and suspicion. Simon had shown his sympathy with the reforming party as early as 1244, but not till 1254 was he much in England. The king had, in 1255, been lured into supporting the implacable papal war with the Hohenstaufen, though these princes were Henry's own kin by marriage. By conferring the title of "King of Sicily" on the vain king's second son Edmund, a mere child, the Pope gained the riches of England to draw upon, and had soon run up against Henry a bill of 140,000 marks. The king coolly asked the clergy for such a sum. "The ears of all tingled," says Matthew Paris, but they had to promise 52,000 marks. When next year the barons found that the king had pledged the country's honour for the whole debt, three times the annual revenue of England, they felt the cup was full. They had come armed to Oxford; the royalists called it the Mad Parliament.

But the Provisions of Oxford, though they banished the aliens, chose the ministers, and practically superseded the royal power by baronial committees, were temperate enough, if somewhat cumbrous, in their scheme of reform. The king could only govern through a council of fifteen, composed of royalists and barons alike; thrice a year this council was to meet twelve leading men elected from the whole baronage. This joint body was called a "Parliament"; and the twelve were said to "represent the whole community." Such an oligarchical scheme of reform was foredoomed



SEAL OF SIMON DE MONTFORT.

The Pro-
visions of
Oxford.

to failure. Perhaps Henry foresaw this when, to get his debt paid, he swore to the Provisions. If so, he was right; for, in a little more than a year, the excluded elements asserted themselves. Backed by Prince Edward, and probably encouraged by Simon de Montfort, "the body of the knighthood of England" attacked the baronial government for their self-seeking and exclusiveness, and extorted from them a further set of reforms. When the two great earls who had led the movement quarrelled, Simon represented the liberal, Gloucester the oligarchical party. The political advance of the former party, knights, freeholders, and burgesses, is what gives the chief meaning and interest to the turbulent, shifting, and seemingly futile story of these years of strife (1258-65). Twice over were the quarrelling barons frightened into reunion by their enemies' recovery of strength. For in 1261 Henry had got easy abso-



JUG SHOWING THE ARMS OF THE CLARES (*Guildhall Museum*).

(By permission of the Library Committee of the Corporation of the City of London.)

lution by Papal Bull from all his oaths; and in November, 1262, Prince Edward, probably suspicious of Earl Simon's designs, had rejoined his father's side. On the other hand, in 1262, the old Earl of Gloucester died, and his son was a firm reformer. At last, after incessant wranglings and intrigues, sheer weariness forced both sides to submit the whole situation to the arbitrament of King Louis of France. His award naturally was adverse to the insurgent cause. But Simon fell back on the Provisions of Magna Charta, and the Londoners refused to accept an arbitration to which they had been no parties. The balance of military strength was now against him. He was driven into alliance with the rebel Welsh, and when at last it came to a pitched battle at Lewes, he was so overmatched by the king's forces that his less disciplined troops must have been defeated but for Prince Edward's making just the same mistake as Prince Rupert did in 1645 at Naseby. For Simon's

The Battle
of Lewes.

1273]

party, the towns, the clergy, and the lower people, could not balance the fighting force of the barons, most of whom were now royalist. With vindictive fury Edward charged, broke, and scattered the Londoners, and pursued them for miles, to find on his return that all was over—his father, uncle, and cousin prisoners, and the Earl of Leicester the real ruler of England.

But victory gave Simon a position little less untenable. Under a thin veil of the king's name England was ruled for fourteen months by a council of nine, appointed by three men: and the three were Simon himself; his admirer, the young Clare, Earl of Gloucester; and his friend the Bishop of Chichester. But Simon's sons, with unpardonable folly, offended the Clares, allowed Prince Edward to escape by a very simple trick, were surprised by him, and so enabled him to outmanœuvre their father. "Sir Simon the righteous" fell at Evesham, and, with a ferocity rare in English warfare, his body was hideously mutilated. But his memory lived among the people; for generations he was worshipped as a saint; at

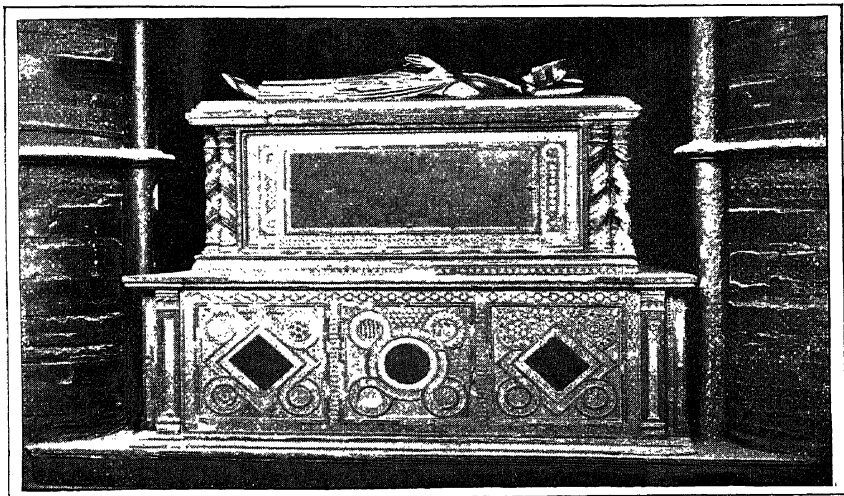


Photo: York & Son, Notting Hill, W.

TOMB OF HENRY III., WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

his tomb miraculous cures were effected. He was indeed a great man; and yet before he died the work which he could do was done, and that which was still to do remained for

his greater successor, his pupil, ally, and enemy, Edward I. With the royalist victory, and the final submission of the residue of the malcontents to the Award of Kenilworth fifteen months later, the interest of the reign closes. When most of the Provisions of Westminster were, in 1267, drawn up as statutes in the Marlborough Parliament, much of what the barons had fought for was achieved. In 1270 Prince Edward started on a crusade; and while he lay wounded by the fanatic's dagger at Acre, Henry III. had died, proclamation of the peace had been made in the name of Edward I. and the oaths of fealty to his person had been taken.

A. L.
SMITH.
The
Genesis
of Parlia-
ment.

THE origin of the English Parliament is to be traced back to the local institutions of the Germanic tribes. But the final stages of its growth are to be sought in the period between the accession of Henry II. and the close of Edward I.'s reign.

Up to the year 1213 its history is a history of the measures by which the royal power was drilling the local institutions to co-operate in carrying out locally the work of administration. From 1213 the scene changes, as it were, to Westminster: more and more definitely the localities are gathered together in one central assembly—a process completed by the formation of “the Model Parliament,” 1295. But, meantime, important subsidiary processes were going on. Representation was assuming the elective form. Tenure as a constituent principle was weakening. The boroughs were gaining political weight. The clergy were constituting themselves into complete representative convocations. Taxation was changing in form; and juries of “recognition” were becoming the regular mode of assessing the new taxes on personalty.

The
Elements
of Repre-
sentation.

It would be impossible to trace all these growths concurrently. It is necessary to distinguish essential principles and trace each separately. These principles, four in number, can be distinguished in the writ of 1295, the year of the Model Parliament. The writ then issued to the sheriffs orders them to send to Westminster two elected knights from each shire, and two elected burgesses from each borough, to

have full and sufficient power for themselves and the community of each shire and borough to do what shall then be by common counsel ordained. The essential points here were :—

- (A) The representation is of the shire. It was taken as consisting of all freeholders, whether of country or town, the former represented by knights and the latter by burgesses.
- (B) The representatives were elected; that is, they were to be real representatives.
- (C) The purpose was taxation. They were not called merely to discuss or to inform the Government, but to *do* something, *i.e.* to make a definite grant.
- (D) They meet the other estates (magnates and clergy).

The representatives are not merely the representatives of localities, but also all together represent one estate, *i.e.* a class with property and interests of its own; just as the lords had their separate standing, and the clergy, the spiritual estate, had theirs.

(A) When the Anglo-Norman kings looked round for an ally against their feudal baronage, or the Plantagenets for an ally against the aggressions of the Papal Church, they found this ally in the old shire system of England. The Shire.

The fact of this alliance is established by a series of evidences, chief of which are:—

(1) The order of Henry I. distinctly announcing his intention that the shire court and its lesser division, the court of the hundred, shall sit at the same time and place as in King Edward's day, and that all in the shire shall attend these courts.

(2) The use of shire and hundred courts by Henry II. as instruments for royal needs; *e.g.* to settle cases of fiefs¹ disputed between Crown and Church; to co-operate in keeping order and executing royal justice under the severe assizes of Clarendon and Northampton; to assess the personal property of individuals and their liability to taxation; and also as an approved instrument for litigants to settle cases relating to lands, instead of using the brutal judicial combat.

(3) The status of the shire court in the reign of Richard I.

[¹ Estates granted on condition of services to be rendered to the grantor.]

1194, when it had reached its fullest activity, and when its four leading knights would go round to arrange for a representative body of twelve knights or freeholders for each hundred, whose mere report could banish any notorious bad character from the realm, or put to the ordeal those suspected of crime; could decide what lands and feudal dues were the Crown's and what were not; could determine civil suits between subject and subject; and so on, down to the punishment of fraudulent weights and measures.

This was local "self-government" in the fullest and truest sense. To raise it to central self-government, there was only needed the calling of these local representatives to a central assembly, and the working out for that assembly the control of all government. To accomplish the former was the task of the thirteenth century (1194-1295), to accomplish the latter needed four more centuries and five revolutions.

As to the union of shires in a central assembly, the first step in this process was in 1213, the meeting at St. Albans of four men and the reeve from every township in the royal demesne, to assess the damage done to Church lands in the recent years of the Interdict. Later in the same year four knights from each shire were to meet at Oxford "to confer with the king on the affairs of the kingdom"; but this meeting never took place. In 1226, knights were called from eight shires to discuss some disputed articles in Magna Charta.

The early instances show that it was not till the struggle of the barons against the king's thirty years' misrule had forced men to reflect on the principles of government, that the calling of such a representative assembly came to be realised as important. The ministers had called the knights in 1254 as a last expedient to get a grant of money. In 1261 the barons having called knights to meet at St. Albans, the king was virtuously indignant at the idea of such an irregular meeting, and solemnly charged them to come "to Windsor and nowhere else"; and in the brief fifteen months of Simon de Montfort's actual power, he twice called a representative Parliament; one in June, 1264, and one more famous in January, 1265.

The fact was, that in the fierce political struggles of these years between the three groups of barons, who may be called

the Royalist, the Aristocratic, and the Nationalist, the great question suddenly emerged: What was to be the constitution of England? The form in which we should now put such a question would be, How is the central assembly to be organised? Is its constitutive principle to be baronage, or military tenure, or representation? And if the last, What are to be the constituencies, and who to be the representatives?

The
Commons.

In the thirteenth century all this is summed up in the question which meets us everywhere in the chroniclers, the constitutional documents, and the political songs of the time, What is the *communa*?

Now this word in its various forms—*communa*, *communitas*, *commun*—was a term which sometimes was as wide as our “nation,” *communa totius terrae*, but often, practically, was as narrow as baronial exclusiveness itself could wish; e.g. the committee of barons, elected in 1258 *per communitatem*, are really elected by a knot of less than twenty leading men. But in each and all of its meanings it has a certain sense of organisation; and thus if men must take tenure in chief to be the organising principle of the English realm, then the *communa* must be the barons, and the barons only. But it was too late for such a baronial monopoly. Could military service then be taken as the principle? If so, the assembly might be representative, but would represent only the lesser chief-tenants and the rest of the class of knights. But this would have been an anachronism, now that the military aspect of feudalism had become unreal, and the knights were no longer a fighting class, but stay-at-home English gentry. Should the *communa* then be taken to be all who dwelt on English land? This would be too wide and vague a use. What senses then remained? The sense in which it had been consistently used, to denote the old shire-moot, the gathering of all freeholders in the shire (*Communitas scirae*), whether rural or urban. The assembly should be the house of assembled shiremoots (*Domus communitatum*). This is the sense in which De Montfort’s Parliament of 1265 was the first House of Commons—the sense in which Edward I., in the first Parliament after his landing in England, announced his having got a grant from the “Commons of the realm.” It

was the final triumph of the shire as the unit of the English system. The union of Anglo-Saxon local institutions with Norman centralisation had at last been effected.

The union of the two classes, burgesses and knights, distinguishes our early Parliamentary growth from that of any other country. Nothing, then, can be a more important fact, yet it is not, for all that, an isolated one, but a simple consequence of the composition of the shire itself. From our earliest history the boroughs had been counted as parts of the shire; they sent their leading men to attend at the shire court before the king's judges. The representation of the boroughs was a necessary corollary of the representation of the *communitas scirae*. The older writers therefore exaggerated when they spoke of De Montfort as the founder of Parliaments; they failed, too, to notice that he treated the boroughs not as a part of the shire, but almost as a separate estate—viewing them, in fact, as Continental *municipia*, not as English boroughs.

(B) The representatives were elected.

The
Elective
Principle.

This was not so obvious and natural a thing as it now seems to us. Thus the feudal theory itself professed to supply a sort of representation; the lord grants an aid for himself and his vassals, even including the villeins.

In fact, the greater value of elected representatives over nominated was a financial discovery which was made during the latter part of the twelfth century, but was not distinctly applied to purposes of Parliament till 1254.

Again, it was quite possible that the expansion of the Great Council, which was seen to be inevitable, might be attempted by simply calling representatives of the lesser tenants-in-chief. This would have given an assembly of lesser nobles, whose class spirit would kill Parliament; and this was often in the fourteenth century declared, though erroneously, to be the proper theory of the Commons. Fortunately, tenure was already too effete by the middle of the thirteenth century to be relied on; and these lesser chief-tenants had sunk into the shire; the lesser nobles had become gentry.

(C) It was in this way that tenure was replaced by representation as the constituent principle of the legislative

[273]

assembly. The one decisive influence throughout all this process was the influence of taxation.

Its importance in our English history has been immense; the constitutional history might, in fact, be written, so to speak, in terms of taxation. The improvement of the judicial system in the twelfth century originated as a mode of gathering taxes; the royal administration was primarily a tax-collecting agency, and the growth of Parliament was necessitated by new forms of taxation. Thus the feudal aid, which was the earliest form of tax, being in theory a voluntary gift, - established the principle that taxation requires the subject's assent. When the new taxes on personalty came in, this assent was made a greater reality by the tax-payers' help being required for assessment and collection; gradually the separate negotiations with each shire were simplified by calling the representatives of each shire to meet all at once and settle the grant. This is best seen by examining closely the action of Edward I. in the year 1290. He had in May called a feudal council to pass an important land statute; this council also granted him a feudal aid. Such an aid would be worth about £18,000; but in view of his great needs, it occurred to him that he might do better to get a wider national grant which would include personalty as well as land, and would be worth at least £40,000. He therefore called, in July, knights from each shire, who made the desired grant.

**Taxation
as a Factor
in English
History,**

**and in the
Formation
of Parlia-
ment.**

Thus it is clear that as late as 1290, so great a man as Edward I. still regarded the old feudal council as adequate for all purposes of government except the new form of taxation; for this, and this alone, he deemed a representative assembly necessary. The same feeling is clear in his treatment of the clergy; he laid down the maxim that they must at least pay, since the laity both pay and fight; the clergy possessed spiritualities, and spiritualities must bear their share of national burdens; and therefore the clergy must also be formed into a representative estate. In this policy, after a hard struggle, he succeeded; only his weaker successors yielded to a compromise which saved for the clergy their cherished independence, with results fatal in the end to themselves.

The
Estates
Combined.

(D) The last step to complete a Parliament was to bring the three estates together. The estate of the magnates had by long tradition been settled in the form of a small assembly of greater tenants-in-chief; what Edward I. did here was to intensify its tendency to restriction, practically reducing the number of peers to about one-half of what it had been, and exercising a considerable freedom of selection as to the individuals composing it. The clergy had been rapidly forming themselves for their own purposes into a representative body, or rather, two bodies—the Convocations of Canterbury and York. These Edward united into one Parliamentary estate of clergy; and at last, not till 1295, called all three estates at the same place and time to treat of the same business. It is curious to see that even after De Montfort's Parliament, containing magnates, though few in number, a great body of clergy, and a Commons of knights and burgesses, it still required thirty years to work out into permanent form the Parliament of three estates. There were probably seven Parliaments called in this interval, but in each there was some incompleteness and imperfection, such as absence of the burgesses or absence of the clergy; and 1295 was the first date in which each estate was properly constituted and all three met at once. An "Estate" means a class capable of a separate taxation; the three estates were thus—lands, spiritualities, chattels. By this means a double character was given to the Parliament; it was a representation of the nation in its great classes, as well as a representation of the nation in its local communities. The former character it has now completely lost, there is no representation of classes as such; the latter is very much changed by the substitution of electoral districts for real *communitates*.

Parliaments,
Ancient
and
Modern.

Summary.

A review of the early period of Parliamentary history brings clearly before us:—

(1) The slowness of its growth. It may be said that our jury-system and our Parliament, the two most characteristic and most imitated of English institutions, have the same root; and this root goes far back into the old Germanic life. The first use of elected representatives to act for their shires is at least as old as Henry I.; and even the calling them to a central body took eighty-two years (1213-95) to

[273]

work out. This means that the system was well tried and tested on the smaller scale first; representation was applied to petty local affairs long before it was raised to a greater sphere the Parliament stood firm because its foundations were laid deep in national habit; and English self-government has lasted for centuries, because it had been itself the slow product of centuries.

(2) The political system is a reflection of the social system. Nothing is more fundamental in the modern view of politics than the determination of the question, Who shall have the franchise—who shall have political right? This question, we should say, must be the very first point determined before any representative system can be set up. Yet this point, in the early days of our Parliamentary history, was never determined at all, was never even touched on; the first actual legislation upon the point was not till 1430—more than a century afterwards, when the right was declared to belong to freeholders of forty shillings a year and upwards. The point was, in fact, never explicitly determined in the early period, because it was never consciously raised. The political framework was merely the framework of society as it stood. That society, framed upon feudal ideas, regarded only the freeholder as an integral part of itself. The freeholders constituted the shire-moot. The House of Commons meant the House of assembled Shire-moots. So the Commons were simply the freeholders.

(3) The foundation of Parliament was no new departure; it was not a revolution. It altered none of the old landmarks; it made no new divisions. It was no electoral system, suspended in the air, invisible except when it descends to earth at polling times, with electoral divisions arithmetically marked out, and electors who have no tie or bond, except that once in seven years they all drop a paper into the ballot-box on the same day.

UNDER John the history of the Church is the history of the State. Under Henry III. the scene is changed. The Popes preserved the throne for the young king, and when he was firmly seated on it, and grown to man's estate, they demanded

W. H.
HUTTON.
The
Church
under
Henry III.

the payment which their own designs made necessary. Demands for the Pope's wars multiplied, till the archbishop, Edmund Rich, left England in despair. Protest after protest was drawn up, the most famous being a letter of the rectors of Berkshire in 1240, in which they exclaimed against the scandal that had arisen throughout the world against the Roman Church on account of its exactions, and declared that the patrimony of other churches was in no wise liable to assessment by or tribute to the Roman Pontiff. Again the Church was flooded with foreign prelates. The king's half-brothers and the kinsmen of his wife poured into the land to fatten on the ecclesiastical revenues, and the Popes, by "provision," gave the best benefices to men of their own court (p. 562). The weakness of the king and the torpor of the bishops allowed these abuses to be multiplied, and the chronicles are full of cries of distress and appeals to the tradition of national independence. Two gleams of light alone relieve the darkness of the picture. One is the life of Grosseteste, Bishop of Lincoln, the other the coming of the Friars.

Alien
Ecclesi-
astics.

Grosse-
teste.

Robert Grosseteste was for eighteen years, 1235 to 1253, the foremost Churchman in the land; first in internal reform of the Church, first in the support of barons against king, first in resistance to papal aggression. He was the friend of Simon de Montfort, and the tutor of his son, and the keen supporter of all attempts at political reform. From him the bishops, such as Walter de Cantilupe, learnt to stand together for the freedom of the people. From him the clergy gained courage to withstand the corruption of the times and the exactions of the Popes. "Struck with amazement," says Matthew Paris, "at the avarice of the Romans, he caused his clerks carefully to reckon and estimate all the revenues of foreigners in England, and it was discovered and found for truth that the present Pope, Innocent IV., had pauperised the whole Church more than all his predecessors from the time of the primitive papacy. The revenue of the alien clerks, whom he had planted in England, and whom the Church had enriched, amounted to 70,000 marks, while the king's revenue could not be reckoned at more than a third of that sum."

1273]

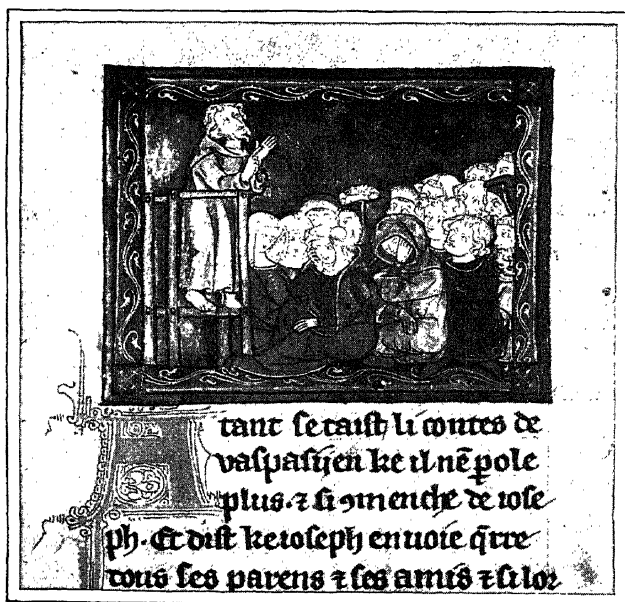
When the Pope required him to institute to a prebend in his own cathedral his nephew, a mere boy, though ordained, and who had no intention of even visiting England, he replied in a letter which is the most striking instance of English feeling against Rome that is to be found in the history of the Middle Ages; and almost with his last breath he appealed "to the nobles of England and the citizens of London and the community of the whole realm" against the injury which the English Church was receiving from foreign intruders, "who not only strive to tear off the fleece, but do not even know the features of their flock."

Such protests as those of Grosseteste might seem to have borne little fruit. But the Church was being more surely regenerated from within (p. 615). In 1220 Dominicans first landed in England; in 1224 the Franciscans. Scholars and preachers, the former found a ready welcome at Oxford. The latter soon followed, and before long made the theological faculty their own. Both were not only leaders in learning, but expressed for the people from whom they were sprung the needs of the day, and the views of the villeins as to the great issues and the great men. The Oxford Franciscans had Grosseteste in 1224 for their rector, and twelve years later numbered Adam of Marsh among their brethren. The two were lifelong friends. Adam was one of the most eminent men of his day; he was a familiar guest at Court, as well as an assiduous lecturer at Oxford; a counsellor of Simon de Montfort, too, no less than of the king; and all the time he strictly followed the rule of St. Francis, "serving the wretched and the vile, and performing the prime and essential duties of a friar." For the early friars were not only the leaders of a great spiritual revival and the inaugurators of an intellectual movement; they were, above all, the apostles of a social mission.

The
Friars.

The monastic orders had done their chief work in the country districts; the mendicants were the missionaries of the towns. During the twelfth and thirteenth centuries the cities had grown greatly, and outside the walls, in the crowded courts, or in the marshes by the river, there herded masses of men and women, neglected and outcast. Amid these multitudes the foul plagues confounded by the chroniclers

under the generic name leprosy (p. 528) found a ready prey; and there the friars from the first sought and found their work. All Franciscan novices were made to undergo a period of training in leper hospitals, and then the friars settled, where we may see the names of the friaries still remain, in



OPEN-AIR PREACHING (MS. Add. 10,202).

(British Museum.)

the most crowded parts of the towns. From their work came the first impulse of the Middle Ages towards the study of medicine, and the good that they did in the mitigation of some of the worst forms of human suffering is incalculable. The whole idea of the religious life was enlarged by their action; the gulf that had been fixed between it and the secular profession was bridged by their example. The enrolment among their numbers of men still engaged in their own callings and possessing their own property, but pledged to good works of charity and mercy under their guidance, must have enormously elevated the standard of social life. From

1273]

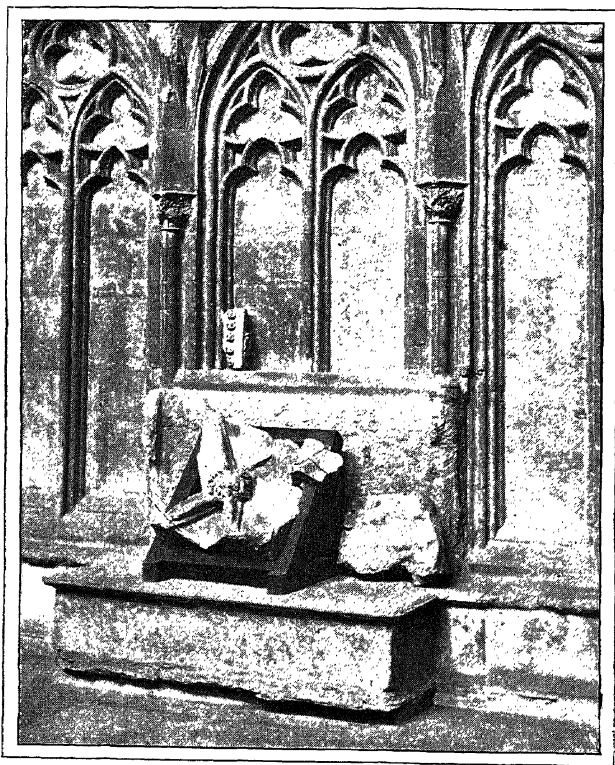
the time when they abandoned the restrictions which St. Francis had placed on learning, they became the leaders of English culture; and before the end of Henry III's reign they were as supreme in the sphere of education as they were in missionary and philanthropic work.

Robert Kilwardby became Archbishop of Canterbury in 1273, and before this Bonaventura had refused the Archbishopric of York. Both were Franciscans. Alexander Hales, Duns Scotus, and Roger Bacon were the English leaders of a revolution in the world of thought. Thus, by the accession of Edward I., through the wisdom of individual prelates and the great work of the friars, the Church in England had more than recovered from the severe blows it had undergone at the hands of John. The corporate life of the Church was organised and consolidated: the clerical estate had organisation and did not lack leaders. It remained to be seen how to meet the difficulties that might arise between a strong church and a strong king.

The history of mediæval England cannot be studied even cursorily without its being apparent that the Church exercised, politically and socially, as well as in religion, a profound influence on the national life. This influence was supreme in its own sphere, and unchallenged. During the period of which we have spoken there were practically no competing forces. There were no heretics and no dissenters. The foreign sect whose disciples reached England in Henry II's reign¹ made but one convert, and she was a wretched woman (*muliercula* says the chronicler) who recanted at the first sign of persecution. Within the church, theological warfare was at rest; outside, the Jews were the only non-Christian body of whom home-dwelling English folk had any knowledge. It is thus of great interest to know what was the attitude which the supreme religious society adopted towards the infidels within the area of its rule. The Church was not, as a body, harsh towards the Jews. There are many acts recorded of individual friendship and kindness. Jewish physicians were friendly and honoured by Christians; monastic societies held amicable relations with Jewish bodies; the

[¹ A band of thirty Albigenses from Gascony, whose fate is described by William of Newburgh, II. c. 13.]

chroniclers, all of them monks or ecclesiastics, rarely, if ever, speak approvingly of outrages on Jews. Still, as time went on, and Jews in England grew rich upon the profits of the usury which they alone might exercise, more bitter feelings sprang up (p. 669 *seqq.*). From 1144, the date of the first recorded charge of murder of a Christian boy, the Jews



REMAINS OF THE SHRINE OF LITTLE ST. HUGH OF LINCOLN.

suffered from time to time from accusations most often false and judgments generally hasty. The prominent cases of this kind created quite a new cult in England. The boy martyr's shrine became not seldom the most popular in the cathedral. St. William of Norwich in 1144, Harold of Gloucester in 1168, Robert of Edmundsbury in 1181, a nameless boy in London in 1244, buried with great pomp at

1273]

St. Paul's, and St. Hugh of Lincoln in 1255, are the most prominent instances. It is difficult to refuse all credit to stories so circumstantial and so frequent; but on the other hand it may be said that the tales are too many for them all to be true, and most of them may be dismissed as wholly fictitious. It is at least clear that even here the clergy were not pledged to persecutions. We learn from Matthew Paris and from the Burton Annals that the mendicant orders successfully pleaded for the pardon of Jews charged with a crime of this kind. The general attitude of the clerical order then was tolerant, and the toleration may be ascribed to the undisputed power of the Church.

What this power was in greater towns, and in the nation at large, the general history of the time abundantly illustrates. More obscurely hidden are the facts which tell of its influence in the country districts. Here the work of the monasteries in the twelfth and of the friars in the thirteenth century was a direct work of evangelising and civilisation. Churches rose in the thinly populated shires which still bear witness to the practical nature of the popular devotion. Round the parish church the village life centred, and in the smaller towns the guild-association, starting quite in the heart of the country, as at Burford, in the eleventh century worked in close connection with a common faith and a common worship. The parish priests were generally simple, if ignorant, men. Their standard of life was at least as high as that of their superiors in office and much higher than that of the society in which they lived. Superstition, it is undoubted, was almost universal; but it was a kindly superstition, lit up by many gleams of intelligence. When we read that in East Anglia there appeared one harvest-time, no man knew whence, two children, a boy and a girl, "completely green in their persons, and clad in garments of a strange colour and unknown materials," we learn also that these strange visitors were most kindly welcomed, baptised into the fellowship of the Church, and cherished "till at length they changed their original colour through the natural effect of our food." William of Newburgh tells also a story of country religion which is not without a beauty, as well as a quaintness, of its own. One Ketell, a villein, in

The
Church in
the Rural
Districts.

the service of a certain clerk named Ham, dwelling at Farneham in Yorkshire, had the strange gift of seeing the evil spirits who plagued mankind. Still he lived on simply as before, making no profession of superiority to his neighbours, only regarding not matrimony but embracing the single life, abstaining from the eating of flesh and the wearing of linen, and ever as his work allowed attending the daily offices in the village church, the first to enter and the last to depart. The spirit of devotion was kept alive by anchorites, living in caves and by unfrequented streams, to whom the people would make pilgrimage to learn from their simple faith, and wonder at their austere holiness. One of the most beautiful passages in the narrative of William, the prior of Newburgh, is his account of how he saw Godric, the hermit of Finchale on the Wear by Durham, a few days before his death—an old and ignorant man, but full of “a surprising dignity and grace.” It is indeed a relief to turn from the wars and wranglings of the great barons and great ecclesiastics to watch the progress of humanity and gentle deeds as the Church spread her hands over the by-paths and the secluded nooks of country life.

F. W.
MAIT-
LAND.
The
Growth of
Juris-
prudence.
1154-1273.

DURING the period which divides the coronation of Henry II. (1154) from the coronation of Edward I. (1272) definite legislation was still an uncommon thing. Great as were the changes due to Henry's watchful and restless activity, they were changes that were effected without the pomp of solemn law-making. A few written or even spoken words communicated to his justices, those justices whom he was constantly sending to perambulate the country, might do great things, might institute new methods of procedure, might bring new classes of men and of things within the cognisance of the royal court. Some of his ordinances—or “assizes,” as they were called—have come down to us; others we have lost. No one was at any great pains to preserve their text, because they were regarded, not as new laws, but as mere temporary instructions which might be easily altered. They soon sink into the mass of unenacted “common law.” Even in the next, the thirteenth, century

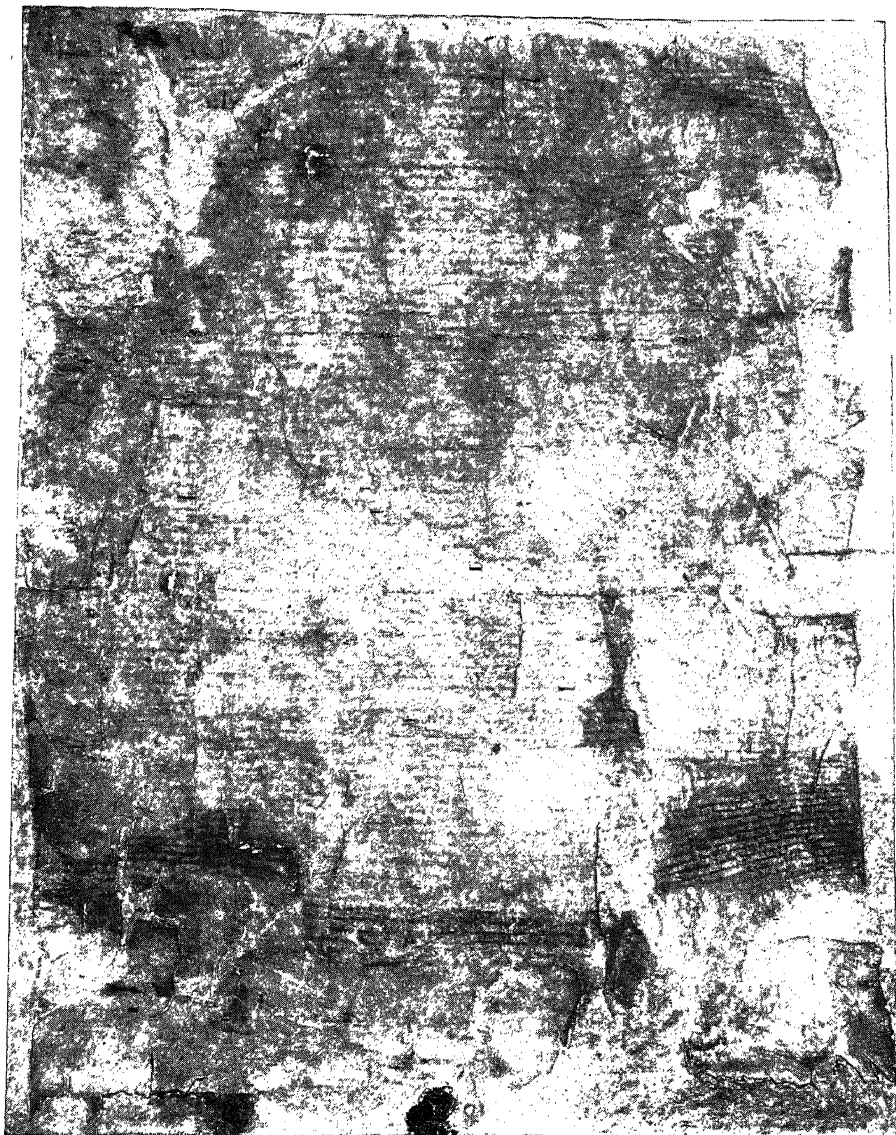


EVIL SPIRITS DEFEATED BY ST. GUTHLAC (Harley Roll Y. 6).

some of Henry's rules were regarded as traditional rules which had come down from a remote time, and which might be ascribed to the Conqueror, the Confessor, or any other king around whom a mist of fable had gathered.

Thus it came about that the lawyers of Edward I.'s day—and that was the day in which a professional class of temporal lawyers first became prominent in England—thought of *Magna Charta* as the oldest statute of the realm, the first chapter in the written law of the land, the earliest of those texts the very words of which are law. And what they did their successors do at the present day. The Great Charter stands in the forefront of our statute book, though of late years a great deal of it has been repealed. And certainly it is worthy of its place. It is worthy of its place just because it is no philosophical or oratorical declaration of the rights of man, nor even of the rights of Englishmen, but an intensely practical document, the fit prologue for those intensely practical statutes which English Parliaments will publish in age after age. What is more, it is a grand compromise, and a fit prologue for all those thousands of compromises in which the practical wisdom of the English race will always be expressing itself. Its very form is a compromise—in part that of a free grant of liberties made by the king, in part that of a treaty between him and his subjects, which is to be enforced against him if he breaks it. And then in its detailed clauses it must do something for all those sorts and conditions of men who have united to resist John's tyranny—for the bishop, the clerk, the baron, the knight, the burgess, the merchant—and there must be some give and take between these classes, for not all their interests are harmonious. But even in the Great Charter there is not much new law; indeed, its own theory of itself (if we may use such a phrase) is that the old law, which a lawless king has set at naught, is to be restored, defined, covenanted, and written.

The *Magna Charta* of our statute book is not exactly the charter that John sealed at Runnymede; it is a charter granted by his son and successor, Henry III., the text of the original document having been modified on more than one occasion. Only two other acts of Henry's long reign attained



REMAINS
OF THE

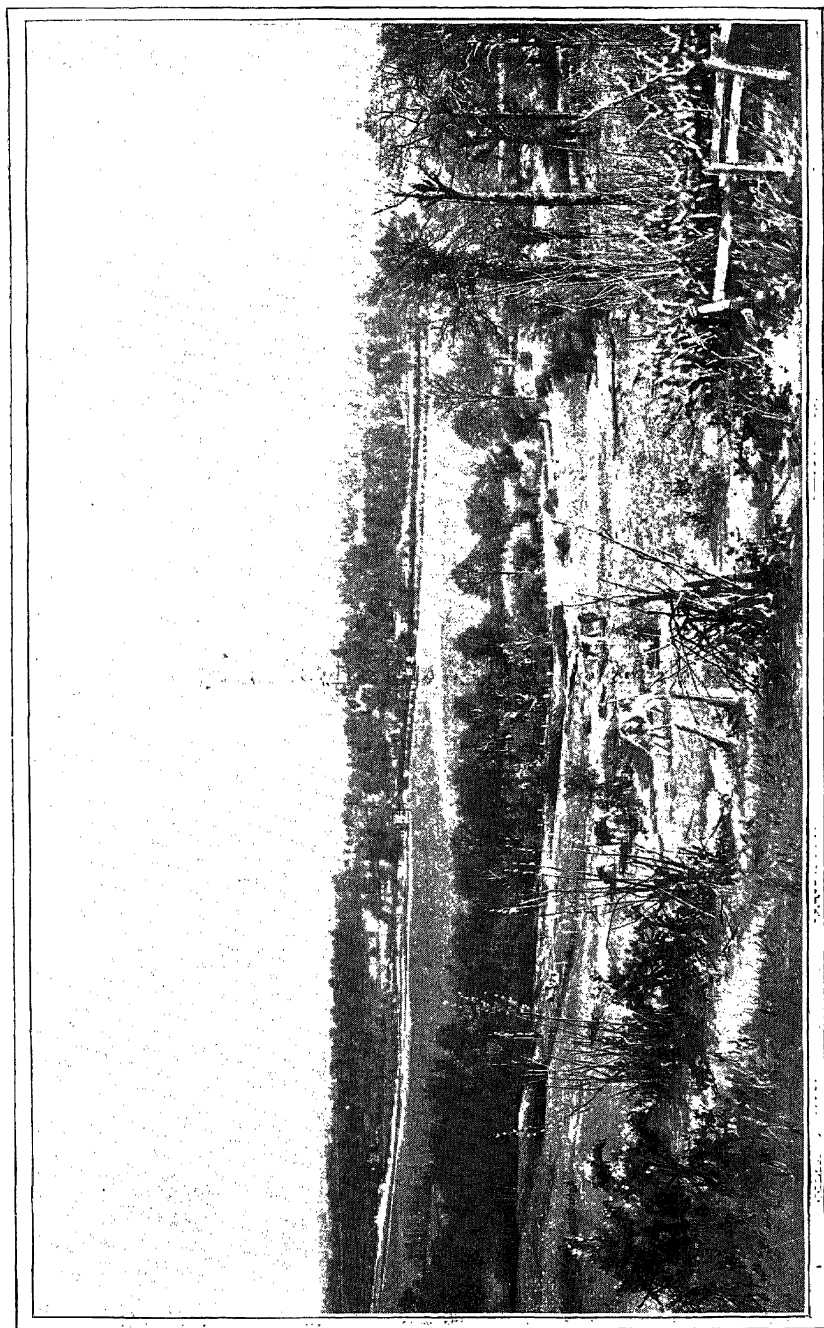


GREAT CHARTER
(Cott. Ch. xiii. 31).

the rank of statute law. The Provisions of Merton, enacted by a great assembly of prelates and nobles, introduced several novelties, and contain those famous words, "We will not have the laws of England changed," which were the reply of the barons to a request made by the bishops, who were desirous that our insular rule, "Once a bastard always a bastard," might yield to the law of the universal Church, and that marriage might have a retroactive effect. Among Englishmen there was no wish to change the laws of England. If only the king and his foreign favourites would observe those laws, then—such was the common opinion—all would be well. A change came; vague discontent crystallised in the form of definite grievances. After the Barons' War the king, though he had triumphed over his foes, and was enjoying his own again, was compelled to redress many of those grievances by the Provisions of Marlborough, or, as they have been commonly called, the Statute of Marlbridge. When, a few years afterwards, Henry died, the written, the enacted law of England consisted in the main of but four documents, which we can easily read through in half an hour—there was the Great Charter, there was the sister-charter which defined the forest law, there were the Statutes of Merton and of Marlbridge. To these we might add a few minor ordinances; but the old Anglo-Saxon dooms were by this time utterly forgotten, the law-books of the Norman age were already unintelligible, and even the assizes of Henry II., though but a century old, had become part and parcel of "the common law," not to be distinguished from the unenacted rules which had gathered round them. Englishmen might protest that they would not change the law of England, but as a matter of fact the law of England was being changed very rapidly by the incessant decisions of the powerful central court.

W. LAIRD
CLOWES.
The Navy.

So long as the navy of England was chiefly composed of semi-irregular forces that were summoned to the king's service only upon stated occasions, or when their help was urgently required, there was always much lawlessness in the narrow seas. This lawlessness was increased rather than diminished by the growth of the influence and importance of



RUNNYMEDE.

The
Cinque
Ports.

the Cinque Ports, which, although they had possessed charters and privileges from an early period, did not become a considerable power in the realm until the reign of Henry III. That monarch, in 1229, issued an "ordinance touching the service of shipping" to be furnished by them, and, since the ordinance well explains their position and duties, and may fairly be regarded as the beginning of their greatness, it is worth quoting.

"These," it runs, "are the ports of the King of England, having liberties which other ports have not, that is to say, as more fully appeareth in the charters thereof made: Hastings, to which pertaineth as members one town on the seashore, in Seaford, Pevensay, Bulvarhithe, Hydney, Iham, Beaksborne, Grench, and Northye. The services thereof due to our lord the king, twenty-one ships, and in every ship twenty-one men with one boy, which is called a gromet. Winchelsea and Rye as members, that is to say, Winchelsea ten ships, and Rye five ships, with men and boys as above; Romney, to which pertaineth Promhill, Lyd, Owardstone, Dengemarshe, and Old Romney, five ships, with men and boys as above; Hithe, to which pertaineth Westhithe, five ships, with men and boys as above; Dover, to which pertaineth Folkestone, Feversham, and Margate, not of soil but of chattels, twenty-one ships, as Hastings, with men and boys as above; Sandwich, to which pertaineth Fordwich, Reculver, Sarre, Storrey, and Deale, not of soil but of chattels, five ships, with men and boys as above; being fifty-seven ships, one thousand one hundred and forty men, and fifty-seven boys, in all one thousand one hundred and ninety-seven persons. The service which the Barons of the Cinque Ports acknowledge to do to the king at the summons of the service by forty days before the going out, viz. yearly, if it shall happen, for fifteen days at their own cost, so that the first day be reckoned from the day on which they shall hoist up the sails of the ships to sail to the parts to which they ought to go; and further, as long as the king will, to be kept by ordinance of the king."¹

[¹ Nicolas, "History of the Royal Navy," I. p. 261: quoting from Jeake, "Charters of the Cinque Ports" (pub. 1728), p. 25. In the total as above given, the contributions of Winchelsea and Rye are counted as part of that of Hastings, thus reducing the amount due from that town to six ships.

1273]

Besides the duty of furnishing ships and mariners, says Nicolas the barons of the Cinque Ports have, for many centuries, performed an honorary service at the coronation of the kings and queens of England; the earliest instance of which was the coronation of Eleanor of Provence, consort of Henry III., in 1236.

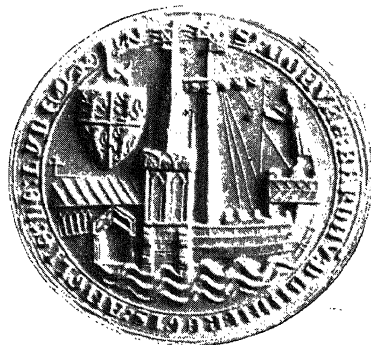


SEAL OF FAVERSHAM.

Already, in 1226, the Cinque Ports had been very useful against Savery de Maloleone, a powerful French piratical baron, and others, and had, in the interests of their Sovereign, "slain and plundered like pirates." Forty years later,

Piracy.

under Henry de Montfort, they began to presume upon their power, and no longer attacked merely those who might be supposed to be the enemies of their country. To such an extent was their audacity carried, that when, in 1264, the Pope sent a cardinal legate to reconcile the king and the barons, they prevented his landing. Indeed, their piratical depredations at about that time were reported to have enhanced the price of all foreign goods



SEAL OF LYDD.

in England. The institution, therefore, though in war-time it was occasionally valuable, was by no means an unmixed boon. To put it plainly, the Cinque Ports, in their early years, were

"Gromet," a *lad*, is connected with the English word *groom* (A.-S. *guma*, man). "Not of land but of chattels," is interpreted to mean that the cost was borne by the latter only. Of the places mentioned, Bulvarhithe and Iham are in the neighbourhood of Hastings, and the latter was part of the Parliamentary borough till the Reform Act of 1885. Hydney (now non-existent) was near Eastbourne; Bekesbourne is three miles S.E. of Canterbury; Grench, Greneche, or Grange, is two miles from Chatham; Dengemarsh is one of the subdivisions of Romney Marsh; Oswaldstone may be Orlestone; Fordwich is two miles N.E. of Canterbury; Storrey is presumably Sturry; Reculver (the Roman *Re-gulbium*, p. 103, note) is three miles E. of Herne Bay.]

little better than nests of chartered sea robbers. More than once Henry III. made compensation to people who had been plundered by those freebooters.

They were, unfortunately, by no means the only pirates on the coasts at the time. There was Sir William de Marish, a proscribed murderer, who seized Lundy, made of it a piratical stronghold, and even began to build a ship there. Lynn, Dartmouth and some of the small ports in Norfolk harboured pirates in plenty. And there was the celebrated Eustace the Monk, who, though he fought sometimes for England and sometimes for France, was always a pirate in

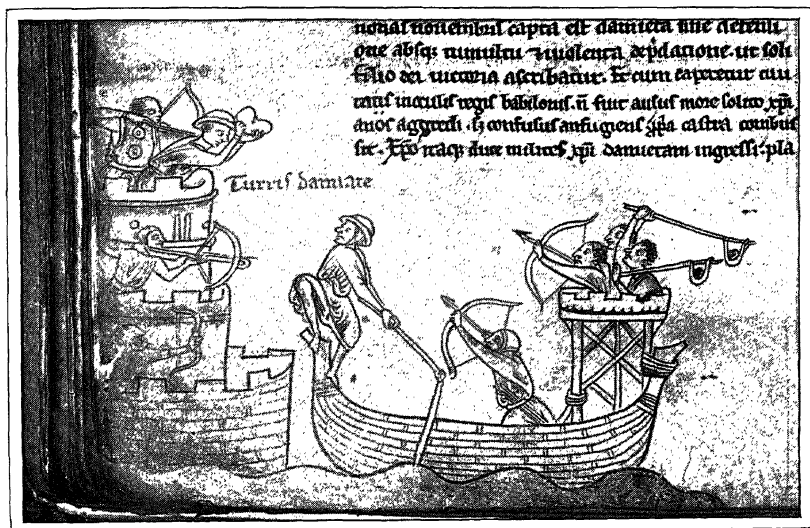


SEAL OF WINCHELSEA.

his methods. Akin to the pirates, and almost equally dangerous to peaceable persons, were the privateers, a class of irregulars which Henry III. was the first English king to license. He granted, in fact, what later would have been called formal letters of marque. "Know ye," declares one of these documents, dated 1243, "that we have granted and given licence to Adam Robernolt and William Le Sauvage and their companions whom they take with them, to annoy our enemies by sea or by land wheresoever they are able, so that they share with us the half of all their gain."

The increase in the dimensions of ships continued, and we read of vessels having decks and cabins, and more than one mast. When Eustace the Monk was captured after the sea-fight in 1217, he was found concealed in the hold of one of the prizes; and when, in 1228, a vessel was ordered to be

sent to Gascony with the king's effects, a small sum of money was paid "for making a chamber in the said ship to place the king's things in." In 1242 the cabins for the king and queen were directed to be wainscoted. We do not know exactly what were the dimensions of the largest English ships of the period, but they may well have been similar, if not superior, to those of the largest of Continental vessels. The particulars of the finest of a number of ships furnished by Venice to France in 1268 have been preserved. She was



SHIP ATTACKING A FORT.
(Corpus Christi College, Cambridge)

110 ft. long, 40 ft. broad, and $11\frac{1}{2}$ ft. deep in the hold, and the height between decks on the main deck was $6\frac{1}{2}$ ft. Her complement was one hundred and ten officers and men. A vessel of these dimensions must have been of between four and five hundred tons burthen—about as large, that is, as a twenty-gun ship of Nelson's days. As for English seaman-ship, it was already celebrated. In 1270, during a storm in the Mediterranean, the English squadron was the only part of the allied fleet that escaped without loss. On the coasts lights and beacons began to be regularly maintained, quays

part of the twelfth century, had obtained in certain favoured instances very necessary and advantageous privileges for the purpose, which were expressed in charters enabling them to render an account of their own farms or assessments payable at the Exchequer. In addition to this concession, which secured them in the enjoyment of the fruits of their enterprise, the citizens obtained at several times the virtual privilege of self-government and also a general exemption from vexatious suits and arbitrary tolls outside their own cities. For example, the citizens of London were free of toll at the fair of Winchester if they availed themselves of this privilege within a reasonable date. Still more important for the welfare of the civic community was the recognition of the status of the guild-merchant.

The
Merchant
Guilds.

In very early times societies had existed for social and religious intercourse, and for the ensurance of mutual responsibility in the police system of the country. These were gradually enlarged for the purposes of trade; and having thus obtained, perhaps, a kind of legal status on the strength of their conformity with the laws of Church and State, they collectively assumed the general control of trade as the Guild-Merchant. This body possessed a central establishment or guildhall, with officers and bye-laws, while outside the influence of the guild itself the machinery of municipal government was available for the common interests of the whole body of citizens. The trade of the country was, therefore, not only essentially municipal in character, but, more than this, it was inter-municipal—that is to say, the guild-brethren of one city were admitted on a common footing to the trade privileges of another city, and they were presumably responsible for the behaviour and liabilities of each other, as they certainly relieved the necessities of their poorer members. The inhabitants of the towns may thus be regarded somewhat in the light of a great family of traders with a common policy and objects; but as the family increased, the poor relations and strangers forming the great class of the artisans who had long enjoyed a more or less independent recognition in the craft-guilds, legalised by the Crown since the middle of the twelfth century, were induced at length to adopt a system of government amongst themselves with the object of regulating their own work—not necessarily with the intention of wresting

a monopoly of trade and government from the hands of an exclusive municipality, but merely that their interests might no longer be overlooked in the government of a greater city.

It is not very evident, however, that the industries even of the towns were very extensive or flourishing during this period. It is true that these townsmen were presumably the descendants of those who had flocked together at some convenient site for purposes of trade from a very early time; but of these some might be merchants, or even landed proprietors, and others were mere salesmen of imported wares, who lived chiefly by the custom of the Court or of the civic aristocracy. The most successful and

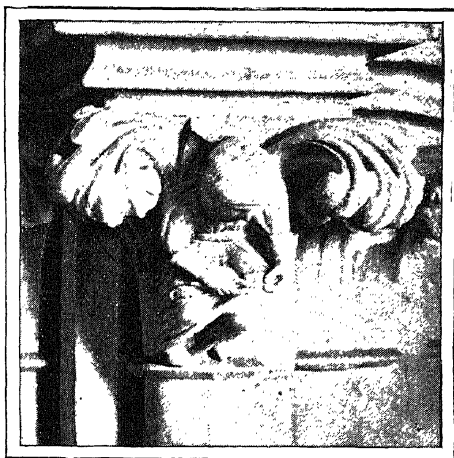


Photo: T. W. Phillips, Wells.

THE COBBLER, WELLS CATHEDRAL.

enterprising of any were the Jews, and the most skilful of the true artisans were of Flemish extraction. However, we do find here a considerable population of artisans representing every known trade, though only such craft-guilds as are returned in the Pipe Rolls need be considered as of much importance. These include the weavers, who were established in most of the principal towns, the fullers,¹ the bakers, with others—such as the loriners² and the cordwainers.³ The goldsmiths were in high repute, but artistic metal work like armour seems to have been usually imported. A very large provision of war-like gear, together with silks, trappings, pavilions, girdles, and fine cloths, was, however, made for the king's use every year by the sheriffs of London and Middlesex; and these at least may have been manufactured in the city, since they figure indiscriminately in the Pipe Rolls with undoubted native products. We certainly read of a shield-maker (at York) and of a saddler who were fined for selling arms to the king's

[¹ Cloth-finishers, who pressed and faced the cloth. ² Saddlers. ³ Bootmakers.]

enemies as early as the great rebellion of 1173-4; and slightly earlier, merchants of Gloucester were forbidden to equip the English adventurers for the conquest of Ireland. In the reign of John we have a list of nearly thirty towns in which a trade in dyed cloths had been carried on for half a century. Indeed, the very arrangements of the medieval shop were made with a view to manufacture on the premises, the dwelling-chamber being in the upper storey, over an apartment used as a workshop, the goods being exposed for sale on a bench beneath the overhanging porch. It was a feature of these urban industries that the respective crafts were brought together each in a distinct quarter of the city, just as we have seen them grouped in the temporary stalls of the great provincial fairs, and this arrangement much facilitated the close supervision that was exercised by the guild officers over the quality and workmanship of the wares.

Foreign
Inter-
course.

The Norman Conquest effected no more momentous change in the social condition of this country than by opening English ports to the commerce of the west and south of Europe. Hitherto English commerce had been of the north, piratical, until the civilisation of the Scandinavian kingdoms and the humanising influence of the Roman Church caused a temporary depression in barbarian enterprise. The beneficial effect of Continental influences was ultimately attained in the thirteenth century, when the intermunicipal trade of the great Free Cities of Europe had begun to have full play. Then the natural wealth of the land, formerly the tempting prey of northern freebooters and for long past the vaunt of native chroniclers, began to be gradually realised by the intelligent nations of the south. However, it was not between nations that the new conditions of commerce were established, but among cities. The Germans were merchants of Cologne or of Hamburg, and they were not only the Emperor's men but also members of the German guild, which had its Hanse-houses in several of the chief English cities. It was the same with the citizen merchants of the great Italian republics or the States of Flanders. Such a title as "merchant of France" was never heard of at the time, but there were merchants of Gascony, and a swarm of hardy fishermen from the Norman and Breton seaports, with whom the men of the

Cinque Ports waged deadly war for the sovereignty of the narrow seas, from the days of Hubert de Burgh to those of Stephen de Penchester. On the whole, however, the amenities of commercial intercourse were faithfully observed, Germans, Northmen, Gascons, and Lombards receiving valuable privileges in their English factories, and English citizens claiming equal protection for their own guild-brethren in foreign ports. In one aspect we observe the renovation of the earlier trade with northern lands which centred in the elaborate organisation of the Hanse towns; in another aspect intercourse with Rome and the Crusading movement brought England into commerce with the Mediterranean states. In both directions we benefited by inexhaustible markets for our wool and other exported products, and perhaps equally by the well-earned comfort afforded by soft raiment and fragrant spices. Again, there was another sort of commerce imparted to us from the Continent—namely, that which was invidiously conducted by the Jewish and Flemish residents.

From a period antecedent to the Conquest itself commerce had been—nominally, at least—under the control of the Crown. This we can gather from the Saxon laws, and this still continued to be no less necessary in the thirteenth century in the real or fancied interests of law and order and generally for the national welfare. Traders might be at this date, as they were invariably in later times, classified according to their respective status as natives, aliens, and denizens—all of whom were subject, in the first place, to certain exactions, and secondly to certain restraints imposed by the Crown. This may be regarded as the imperial side of the subject, as distinct from the municipal or local, which has hitherto engaged our attention. The origin of the royal prerogative herein may perhaps be traced from the tribal contributions in support of the kingly state, which took the later forms of purveyance, pre-emption, prisage and butlerage, dismes, and finally Customs.¹ But however this may be, we find that

Regulation of Trade.

[¹ Purveyance was the right to impress carriages and horses for the conveyance of the king's household or goods; pre-emption, the right to purchase provisions, etc., for his household at an appraised price. Dimes (*divièmes*, tenths) were an early form of customs. On prisage and butlerage see the text. Dowell, "History of Taxes and Taxation," gives much valuable information on these taxes.]

from the middle of the twelfth century onwards a regular scale of dues was levied at the outports. Similar dues were also exacted by seigniorial and municipal franchises, but these depended in turn upon a grant from the Crown. London, Sandwich, Southampton, and Boston were early centres for the collection of the king's Customs, which were usually accounted for by the Chamberlains until the appointment of collectors and controllers under Edward I. Wine was an especial subject of taxation, native merchants being liable to supply one or two tuns from before and behind the mast, according to the size of the vessel, at a low price to the king's purveyors. In the same way aliens paid a toll of two shillings on every tun, known as the butlerage; this and the above toll in kind—or prisage, as it was called—being collected by the King's Butler. As the average wholesale price of wine during this period was very low, the native trader was more favourably treated than the alien, who was often liable to arbitrary purveyance. But when the value of wine was trebled in the next century, the former was a loser by the composition which he obstinately clung to, while the latter benefited largely by the old rate of butlerage as finally settled in 1303. During three years of the middle of the thirteenth century we learn that 1,455 tuns of prise wines were taken at London and Sandwich alone. As each tun may be taken to represent an average cargo of twenty casks, the average annual importation to these linked ports was about 10,000 tuns.

The Customs or duties on other articles of merchandise usually took, at the close of the twelfth and beginning of the thirteenth centuries, the form of a tenth or fifteenth. In the reign of John we find a fifteenth regularly levied at all the outports of England, of which as many as from thirty to forty make returns, the total amounting to about £5,000. But considerable as is the revenue which is thus accounted for in the Exchequer Rolls of the period, it is possible that a still larger profit was realised by the exercise of the king's prerogative in the restraint of trade.

The nature of these exactions may be gathered from the Chancery Rolls, from which it appears that large fines were paid by divers merchants for licences to trade—namely, to

export woad, wool, and leather, as well as corn and other provisions from England, or for safe-conducts and protection for themselves and their merchandise throughout the king's dominions, free of arbitrary prises and tolls. These fines were naturally most frequently paid by foreign merchants, and they varied from a sum of four thousand marks to a present of a palfrey or hawk. In spite of the well-known article of Magna Charta, the restraint of trade and the exactions which accompanied it were continued with little intermission down to the reign of Edward I., when a fixed tariff at the outports, coupled with a vigorous foreign policy, gave a new stimulus to English commerce.

THERE are no signs of the continued residence of Jews in England before the Conquest. The only references to them in Anglo-Saxon literature are in the Church codes, in which they may have been inserted by mere process of copying from the Continental codes. If the Jews came here at all it was for purposes of the slave trade, of which they held the monopoly at the time. It is thus possible that England owes indirectly to these Gallo-Jewish visitors the re-introduction of Christianity, owing to the celebrated incident in the market-place of Rome. But apart from such visits there is no trace of any Jews in Anglo-Saxon England, and it is difficult to see what they could have done here, considering their position.

JOSEPH
JACOBS.
The Jews
in
England.

The position of the Jew in a medieval State was entirely determined by the position taken up by the Church towards the Jews on the one hand and towards all capitalism on the other. As soon as the Church began to influence the legislation of the State, it took efficient measures to exclude Jews, and indeed all heretics, from the exercise of any public office by associating the reception to office with oaths of a distinctly Christian, and indeed orthodox, character. The right of holding public office granted to Jews by the Pagan Empire was taken away by the Justinian code, and by the time of the formation of the Holy Roman Empire they had gradually been excluded from every reputable sphere of life. Industry was in the hands of the guilds, which were religious

Forced
into
Finance.

confraternities as well as trades-unions; agriculture was connected with the Feudal System, which involved making homage with Christian oaths on taking a farm, and the higher functions of the State in municipalities and governments were equally connected with Christian inauguration oaths. It would have been impossible for the Jews to exist in any Christian State except for the attitude of the Church towards capitalism.

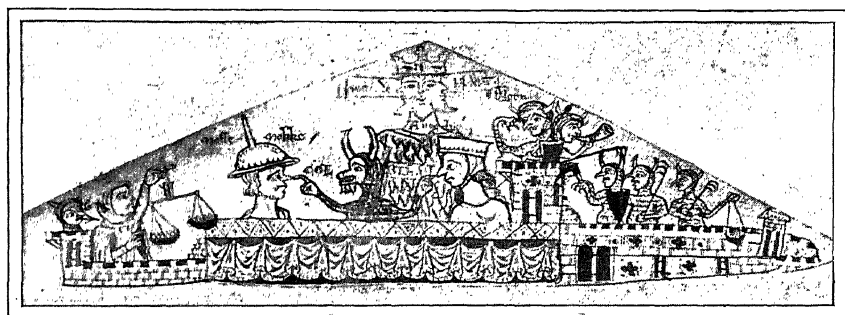
Usury.

Basing itself on the Vulgate mistranslation of Luke vi. 35, the Church regarded all addition of interest in the repayment of loans as directly prohibited by the Gospel, and therefore unworthy of a Christian. By this means all support of enterprise by capital was rendered disreputable. But the Jews were not affected by this view of the Church, and were thus enabled to perform an important function in the various medieval States of Christendom, as they emerged economically from the stage of barter. It is accordingly with the emergence of England from this stage that we first find certain evidence of the domicile of Jews in this country. William of Malmesbury states that Jews were brought over by the Conqueror from Rouen, and there is no reason to distrust his assertion. We have, however, only a few references to them before the country became settled under Henry II. A friendly disputation of a Jew from the Rhine Provinces with Gilbert Crispin, Abbot of Westminster, and the alleged martyrdom of St. William of Norwich in 1144, to which we shall refer later, are the chief events of interest of which we have any trace. But it is probable that the rulers of England had already begun to make use of their Jews as sponges to collect money for the Royal Treasury, since we find both Maud and Stephen squeezing financial support out of the Oxford Jews. It is also extremely improbable that the large building activity of the Norman nobles during the disturbed reign of Stephen, which is said to have resulted in the erection of over 1,100 castles, was effected without resort to Jewish "usury" (p. 474).

The Jews
and the
Crown.

But it was under Henry II. that the operations of the Jews first became extensive. His biographers noticed that he had "favoured more than was right a people treacherous and unfriendly to Christians, namely, the Jewish usurers, because of the great advantages which he saw were to be had from

their usuries." The advantages he was enabled to draw from the Jews were due to the adoption by the State of the Church doctrine of "usury." The personalty of every usurer as such reverted or "became escheat to" the king on his death. This principle was equally applied to such Christians as braved public opinion by lending money on interest. But with the Jews it was in perpetual application, for the reason that their property could only be acquired by usury. Hence arose a general presumption, which was even inserted into the so-called laws of Edward the Confessor, that "the Jews



CARICATURE OF ISAAC OF NORWICH, FROM AN EXCHEQUER ROLL.

(Record Office.)

themselves, and all theirs, belong to the king." And this seems justified by the fact that the king demanded money from the Jews on almost every possible occasion. Fines were claimed from the Jews for wardship or marriage, for law proceedings, for the right to recover debts, to have residence with the good-will of the king, to have partnership, or, indeed, for any act which involved contract or conflict with others. But in all these cases the king claimed fines from his Christian subjects, who might equally, therefore, be termed his "chattels" as much as the Jews. There was, indeed, a special reason why the king would be more chary in entering upon possession of a deceased Jew's goods than in the case of those of a deceased Christian usurer. While the capital was in the possession of the Jew, it could be multiplied indefinitely by being lent out on interest, whereas the king as a good Christian could not make this use of the

money. Hence it was customary for the king to allow a Jew's estate to pass to his heirs, merely exacting a fine for the privilege, amounting as a rule to a third of the estate.

Meanwhile Jews, with the favour of the king, had begun to organise themselves into what was substantially a great banking association. As soon as the country became settled after the disorders of Stephen's reign, we find them spreading into the eastern and southern counties, then the most populous parts of England. A few of the most prominent Jewish financiers in the centres of industry, as Jurnet of Norwich, Isaac of London, and especially Aaron of Lincoln, began to advance money to the king on the security of the firms (p. 646) of the different counties in which Jews lived, the sheriffs doubtless paying the amounts to the local Jews acting as the agents of the larger capitalists. At least we have evidence of such agencies being employed in the case of private debtors.



A JEW OF COLCHESTER, FROM A
FOREST ROLL.
(*Record Office.*)

Owing to this concentration of Jewish capital and its dissemination through the counties by means of agents, the higher clergy and the lesser barons—who were the only persons in the kingdom who made much use of actual cash—were enabled to obtain money for building operations or legal charges; but they had to pay a heavy price for the accommodation. The least that Richard of Anesty paid was 2d. a week in the pound—that is, about 43 per cent. per annum; while a groat in the pound per week—that is, about 86 per cent. per annum—was by no means uncommon. We can easily understand how oppressive even a small debt might become after a few years' accumulation at this enormous interest. Jocelyn of Bracelonde gives an interesting example of the process as it applied to the Abbey of St. Edmunds, though, curiously enough, the largest creditor of the Abbey was

1273]

a Christian, William Fitz Isabel, who does not, however, appear to have claimed interest; but Jocelyn explains how a debt of £26 13s. 4d. to Benedict the Jew, of Norwich, had grown in a few years to £880. Yet, to a certain extent, it was to the debtor's interest to let the debt mount up rather than to pay it off; for, if the Jew died, his estate as that of a usurer fell into the hands of the king, who might be induced to cancel the debt for a much smaller sum. From this point of view usury was in the nature of a bet on the Jew's life.

An interesting example of this occurs among the operations of Aaron of Lincoln, who seems to have been the chief financier among the English Jews of the twelfth century. He appears to have made a speciality of advancing moneys to abbeys; he boasted, for example, that but for him St. Alban would have had no roof over his head. When he died, in 1186, nine Cistercian monasteries of Yorkshire were indebted to him to the enormous extent of over 6,400 marks. But, though Aaron left several sons, the king seized the whole of his estate, both treasure and debts. The treasure was lost as it was being carried over to Dieppe, but the debts remained in the hands of the king, and were so extensive as to need a special branch of the Treasury called "Aaron's Exchequer" for many years to come. Sixteen years after his death the outstanding debts of Aaron's Exchequer amounted to £15,000, so that we may conjecture that his whole estate amounted to at least the king's annual income, which may be put down at about £35,000 at this period. Among the debts which fell into the king's hands was that of the Cistercian monasteries just mentioned, and the deed is still extant in which Richard I. releases them for a fine of only 1,000 marks, scarcely more than a seventh of the debt.

This windfall must have opened the eyes of the Treasury officials to the potentialities of Jewish usury as a reserve fund. The massacres which occurred on the accession of Richard I. showed them on what a precarious tenure the Jews held their wealth. These *émeutes* at London, Lynn, Bury, Stamford, and York were due to some extent to the rise of the Crusading spirit in England, which would naturally lead the crowd to attack the enemies of Christ at home before fighting them abroad. But at York we have evidence that the attack on

The
Persecu-
tions and
their
Grounds.

Royal
Control

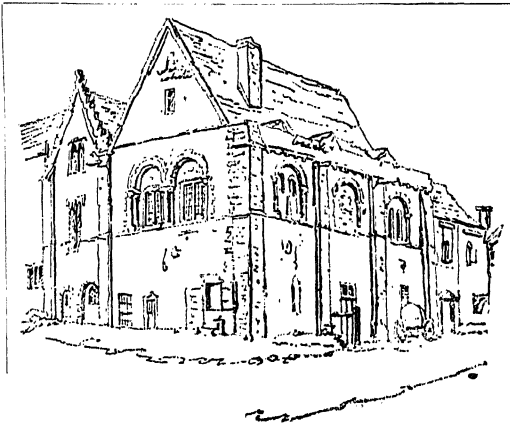
the Jews was organised by a set of nobles deeply in debt to the Jews, and the final act of the tragedy was to burn the proofs of their indebtedness in York Minster. As the holders of the debts had been slain, the debts themselves had become the property of the king, and to prevent any recurrence of such large losses Richard, on his return in 1194, organised the English Jewry in such a way as to keep a record of all its transactions. The Ordinances of the Jewry made arrangements by which all the property of the Jews, including their debts, should be registered, and provided that a transcript of all their transactions in future should be kept by royal officials. Further, two Wardens or Justiciars of the Jews were appointed, before whom all disputes about Jewish debts should be heard; while in the beginning of the thirteenth century the whole English Jewry was organised in its relation to the Crown in a special branch of the Treasury known as the Exchequer of the Jews. Henceforth they were entirely at the king's mercy, since he kept their business books for them.

Other circumstances besides this helped to make their condition quite different in the thirteenth century from what it had been in the twelfth. In the twelfth century they had formed part of the upper classes and spoke the same language, Norman French. Their transactions were mainly with the barons and the abbots, and only indirectly affected the common people, who lived almost entirely by barter, and had no reason to resort to Jews for money. During the reign of Henry II., London was the chief French-speaking city in West Europe, and was the capital of the extensive Angevin Empire. Jewish capital had, therefore, a very large field for its operations. Henry II. was, besides, no friend of the Church, the chief and inveterate enemy of the Jews, and their position under him was an exceptionally favourable one.

Jewish
Litera-
ture in
Mediæval
England.

We find this favourable condition of affairs reflected, strange to say, in the Hebrew literature of English Jews. Whereas in the thirteenth century we know only of an insignificant poet, Meir of Norwich; a codifier of Jewish ritual, Jacob ben Jehuda of London; and a legal authority, Moses of London; in the twelfth century, recent research has revealed the names of over twenty Jewish authors, some of considerable merit and importance. In particular, the study of the Massora, or text

of the Scriptures, was especially prevalent among the English Jews, and led to the compilation of an important Hebrew Grammar by Samuel of Bristol, which was followed by a still more extensive work on the subject, entitled "The Onyx Book," by Moses ben Isaac of London. The chief Anglo-Jewish writer of the twelfth century, however, was Berachyah Nakdan, known as Benedict le Puncteur of Oxford, whose "Fox Fables" resemble those of Marie de France, and were probably derived from the same source. He was also the translator into Hebrew



MOYSES HALL, BURY ST. EDMUNDS.
From an old Print.)

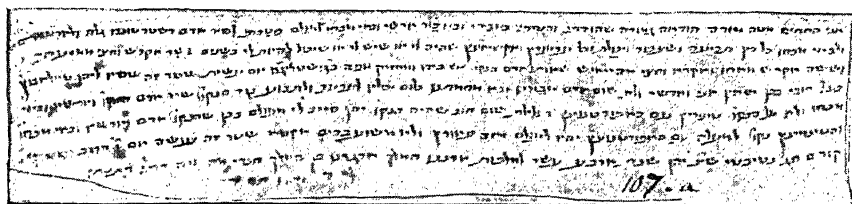
of Adelard's "Questiones Naturales" (p. 500), and a French work on Mineralogy, and a "Commentary on Job" by him is still extant in manuscript at Cambridge. Outside Spain no such important works were produced by any European Jews at this period, and it is, therefore, not to be wondered at that Abraham Ibn Ezra, the most distinguished author of his time and the original of Browning's *Rabbi Ben Ezra*, visited England in 1158.

But with the opening of the thirteenth century the condition of the Jews in England changed considerably for the worse. Throughout their history, Jews have always suffered the most where and when the central authority was weakest. John and Henry III. had less power to protect their Jews than Henry II., and more reason to squeeze them. John

**The Jews
in the
Thirteenth
Century.**

had himself been a debtor to the Jews, and was, perhaps, influenced by personal feelings in the harsh attitude he took towards them, while Henry III. added religious antipathy to his pressing need of money during the latter part of his reign. Both were enabled to work their will on English Jewry by means of the Exchequer of the Jews, which placed all Jewish transactions under the royal control, and practically made the English king the arch-usurer of his kingdom. This was recognised both by the barons, who inserted a clause in Magna Charta to restrict it, and by the Church dignitaries, who from time to time remonstrated with the king for his participation in the unholy gain.

The Exchequer of the Jews was the visible and constitu-



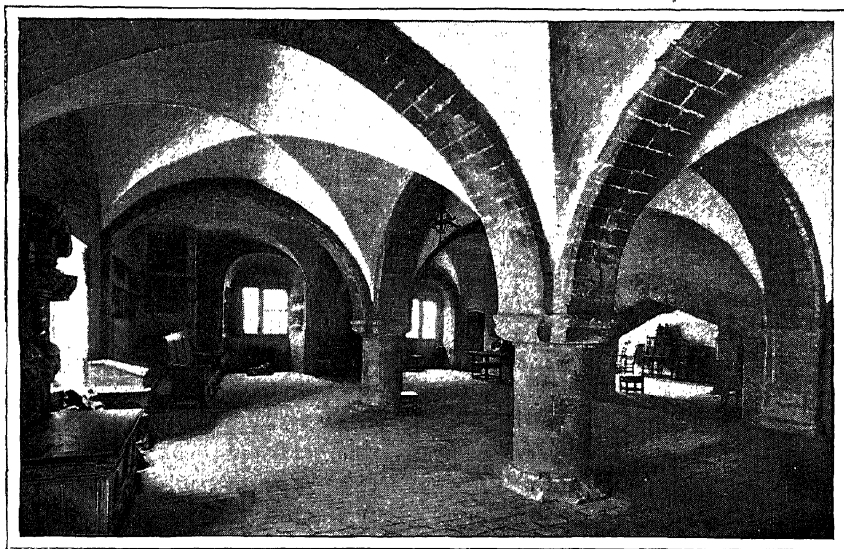
A JEWISH STARR (MS. Aug. II. 107A).

tional sign of this partnership of king and Jewry. This had its headquarters at Westminster, where were stored up the Jewish deeds or "Starrs," which are said to have given its name to the Star Chamber. The enrolment of Jewish indebtedness took place at certain specified towns throughout the southern and western counties, where "archae," or chests, were kept. These were guarded by two Jewish and two Christian secretaries,¹ who kept charge of a third copy of all the deeds of the Jews, the other two being kept by the Jewish creditor and the Christian debtor. No debt was recognised by the Law Courts the record of which was not kept in one of these chests. Whenever the king desired to obtain a tallage² from his Jews, a list of the contents of these

[¹ Technically called chirographers (writers), because they engrossed the requisite copies of the deeds on parchment.]

[² Tallage (French, *taille*, "cutting"), a tax or tribute, more especially imposed by the kings on their own tenants or dependants.]

chests was sent out from the twenty-six local depositaries, and at once he was enabled to estimate what resources the whole Jewry possessed to meet his demands. The amounts thus obtained were often very large: for the Saladin tribute, Henry II. obtained £60,000 as a quarter of Jewish chattels, against £70,000 yielded as a tenth by the rest of England. From this, it appears that at that time the Jews possessed no less than a quarter of the whole movable property of the



INTERIOR OF MOYSES HALL, BURY ST. EDMUNDS.

kingdom. In 1210, John imposed a tallage of no less than 60,000 marks, and imprisoned all the Jews of England until they had paid it. It was on this occasion that he used the novel torture of tooth-drawing to extract his quota from a recalcitrant Jew of Bristol. It has been calculated that, on the average, John and Henry III. obtained at least £5,000 per annum from tallages alone, not to mention the fines and escheats, which came from the Jews, as from the rest of his subjects, though, probably, in larger proportions. Altogether, it is probable the Royal Treasury obtained about one-tenth of its income from the Jews, or rather from their debtors,

who were, of course, mainly the barons and their retainers, since land was almost the only security which could be offered to the Jew. It was for this reason that the Jews had against them, throughout the thirteenth century, the whole power of the baronage. The barons claimed in 1244 the right to appoint one of the two Justiciars of the Jews, so that they might share with the king the control of the Jewry; and one of the complaints which led to the Barons' War was that the Jews handed over their bonds and the lands pledged for them to some of the greater barons, who thus initiated the king in becoming sleeping partners in the Jewish usury. During the Barons' War, the Jewries of London, Cambridge, Canterbury, Lincoln, Southampton, and Worcester were destroyed in order to get rid of the intolerable pressure of indebtedness. So, too, the towns, when obtaining their charters, endeavoured to minimise the royal influence by stipulating that no Jew could henceforth reside within their precincts, and in 1245 a general decree was issued confining the Jews to those towns in which "archae" were kept.

Owing to this strict supervision on the part of the Exchequer, and the restrictions on their business by the loss of free domicile in the cities, the Jews became rapidly impoverished towards the middle of the thirteenth century. In 1253, Elyas, their Presbyter, or Chief Rabbi, declared in impassioned terms that their life was no longer tolerable, and begged for permission for the whole Jewry to leave England and seek the protection of some prince who had bowels of compassion. He mentioned the fact that the king had now other resources from which he could extract money: he was referring to the important competitors in money-lending who existed in the Italian financiers, at that time extending their business in North Europe, with the connivance and often the protection of the Papal Court.

The Jews
and the
Church.

Meanwhile the Church had been doing everything in its power to embitter the relations of the Jews with the whole population. We can observe a distinct increase of bitterness in the tone of the Church towards the Jews throughout the twelfth century, which was due partly to despair of converting them, and partly to increasing signs of the attraction of Jewish rites for the common people. Several instances are on record

in which monks actually became converted to Judaism. The Church, accordingly, did everything in its power to prevent intercourse between Jew and Christian. Christians were not allowed to act as servants or nurses to Jews, under pain of excommunication, and the erection of new synagogues was forbidden. The anti-Jewish policy of the Church reached its culminating point at the Lateran Council of 1215, in which Innocent III. placed a permanent barrier between the Jewish and Christian populations of Europe, by ordering all Jews to wear a distinctive badge. This took the form in England of a patch of yellow taffety on the outer garment in the shape of the two Tables of the Law. When this was adopted in England, Stephen Langton even went so far as to forbid, under pain of excommunication, any intercourse with Jews, or the sale to them of the necessities of life.

But, above all, the Church had helped to embitter the peace of the Jews by encouraging the myth of the "blood accusation," or the suspicion that Jews sacrificed Christian children on their Passover, which took its origin in England in connection with the case of the disappearance of the boy William, at Norwich, in 1144 (p. 579). The evidence on which this was twisted into the accusation against the whole of Jewry has recently been discovered and published, and proves to be of the most flimsy character. But the myth was encouraged by the local churches, since it brought pilgrims to any cathedral or church which could lay claim to possess the remains of such martyrs. Already in the twelfth century the example of Norwich was followed by Gloucester and Edmondsbury, and in the next century the leading case of Hugh of Lincoln served to confirm the popular belief. No more ingenious means of setting Jew and Christian apart could have been devised than this accusation, which would by itself prevent natural links of common friendship from being formed in early youth. It is but fair to add that several Popes formally declared their disbelief in the myth; but, when once started, it lived on among the common people, among whom it still exists on the Continent to the present day.

It was thus mainly owing to the action of the Church that the Christian and the Jewish population of England were kept apart. It is usual to attribute this aloofness to the fact that

Jews were aliens, spoke a strange language, and so on. But they were not more so than the rest of the Normans and Italians that formed the majority of the upper classes at the time. To take a concrete example—it is absurd to call Jacob fil Mosse, an Oxford Jew, whose ancestors we can trace in London and Bristol for seven preceding generations, more of an alien or foreigner than Simon de Montfort, whose ancestors



MARTYRDOM OF ST. WILLIAM OF NORWICH.

(By permission of Rev. C. D. Mayhew.)

were, indeed, Earls of Leicester, but only visited England occasionally. But for the action of the Church there was every sign that the Jewish population was assimilating itself with the English commonalty. We find Jews joining with Christians in the chase of a doe outside Colchester, and a very instructive incident of *rapprochement* occurred at Hereford under Bishop Swinfield. A marriage was about to take place in the family of some rich Jews at Hereford, who invited

many of their Christian friends to attend the festivity, which was to be carried out on an unusual scale of magnificence. The bishop, on hearing this, threatened excommunication upon any Christian who would attend the Jewish ceremonies, and on his threats being disregarded carried them out in all their rigour. The incident is characteristic of the part played by the Church.

There is no doubt that the Jews themselves contributed to the enmity with which they were regarded by the Church by the open contempt they expressed for the more assailable sides of Catholicism—miracle-mongering and image-worship. A Jew at Oxford openly boasted that he could perform the same miracles as St. Frideswide. He pretended to become lame and then to walk straight again, contending that that was as good a miracle as the saint had done. Fanaticism was opposed by fanaticism, and another Oxford Jew is stated to have snatched a cross that was being carried in a procession and to have trampled it under foot. The Jews were only too ready to meet their theological opponents in private and public disputation, and on the evidence of Peter of Blois rarely got the worst of the encounter. All the chief heresies of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries were tinged with Judaic doctrine, and both Franciscans and Dominicans regarded it as one of their chief aims to counteract Judaic influences. It is necessary to insist upon this clerical influence, as without it it would be difficult to understand the action taken by Edward I. in the expulsion of the Jews.

Jewish
Offence
to Chris-
tians.

Of the internal organisation of the English Jewry during its stay in England something remains to be said. By a charter of Henry II., confirmed by his successors, they were allowed to have Jurisdiction among themselves, according to Rabbinic Law, in all cases except for the greater felonies. Such cases came before the *Beth Din*, consisting of three Dayanim, who seem to have been called "bishops," and the senior of the judges was termed Presbyter, and an Arch-presbyter for all the Jews of England was appointed for life by the king. He may be said to correspond to the Chief Rabbi of modern times; he seems to have had a semi-official connection with the Exchequer of the Jews, where his advice was doubtless taken on points of Jewish Law. Each congregation had a

Internal
Organisa-
tion of the
Jewry.

president (*Parnas*) and treasurer (*Gabbai*), among whose duties was, doubtless, that of collecting funds for the poor. Much attention was paid to education, at least to that of the boys. These were educated in local schools in the Bible and Talmud; and the most promising of them, who were willing to devote their life to the study of the Law, were sent up to the great school of the Jews in Ironmonger Lane. By this means all Jews knew, at any rate, enough Hebrew to write receipts in that language, hundreds of which are still extant, and have been recently published. In the twelfth century, at least, English Jews showed considerable activity as authors, and during the Expulsion of the French Jews, from 1182 to 1196, they received a large accession of learned French Jews. Their vernacular language remained French up to the Expulsion, as we know from letters written by them in that language, and from French glosses in their Hebrew commentaries. Except during periods of commotion, they lived on friendly terms with their neighbours, and even with clerics. Their deeds and valuables were often received for security in abbeys and monasteries. Their wealth enabled them to live in houses more solidly built than the rest of the population, possibly for purposes of protection; and the earliest private house of stone, still extant in England, is that of Aaron of Lincoln, already referred to as the chief Jewish financier of the twelfth century.

C. CREIGHTON.
Public
Health.

ONE great event of the reign of Henry III. was the famine with pestilence in the years 1257 to 1259. It appears to have helped, along with one or two other notorious famines, to give England a wholly undeserved repute among foreigners as being a country in which famine was habitual. But the famine and pestilence of 1257-9 was a solitary instance in a whole generation, and there was nothing like it again until 1315-16. Like other great famines in England, it was due to a succession of bad harvests, following either cold and backward springs or wet autumns; but the scarcity and dearth of corn would hardly have had so disastrous effects had it not been that the country was drained of its circulating coin, partly by levies for the Roman See, and partly by king's taxes, which somehow were in pawn to

the king's brother, the Earl of Cornwall, candidate for the crown of the Holy Roman Empire, and were used by him to pay his German troops and to buy the votes of the electoral princes. The scarcity began to be felt in the winter of 1256-7, and was followed by many deaths from hunger in 1257. There was little harvest that year, partly from neglect to till and sow the ground; and in May, 1258, a pestilence followed, which must have been one of the greater kind if the mortality in London had been only a fraction of the numbers alleged—namely, fifteen thousand, mostly of the poorer class. This is perhaps the earliest occasion on which large quantities of grain were imported to the Thames from Germany and Holland, the Earl of Cornwall having sent over sixty shiploads which were sold to his account to the starving Londoners. According to Matthew Paris, who was then living at St. Albans, the quantity of grain imported was more than three English counties had produced in the harvest before. But calamities did not come singly. Although the harvest of 1258 was an unusually rich one, the hopes of the husbandmen were blighted by cruel rains throughout the whole end of the year, which left the heavy crops rotting on the ground, so that the fields were like so many dung-heaps. Whatever corn was saved turned mouldy; the people struggled through the winter and spring (1259) with sacrifice of their cattle and with much sickness and mortality. This had been a characteristic English famine, due to a succession of bad seasons, and aggravated by economic or fiscal troubles. The first bad harvest had caused a smaller breadth to be sown for the year following, that had likewise turned out ill; the third harvest had been spoiled by incessant rain, and the whole calamitous episode had been made infinitely harder to bear by the heavy taxes and the consequent dearth of money. The English famines of that degree had not been many—one happened in the last year of the Conqueror's reign (1086-7), another in 1195-7, after the return of Richard I. from the Crusade; a third as above related; a fourth during the weak government of Edward II. in 1315-16; and, not to mention various local famines, one more in the fifteenth century (1439) as the climax of two

or more bad seasons, which were even more disastrous in Scotland and in France. The price of corn was far from steady in the intermediate years; two or three years of very low prices would be followed by years when corn was twice, thrice, or four times as dear. But great fluctuations were normal, if one may so speak, in the medieval period; it needed a rise of eight or ten times from the lowest price to produce the true effects of famine, probably because in an ordinary dear year the poorer classes fell back upon oats, barley, and beans, instead of wheat, which was the staple bread-corn of England. These great fluctuations enabled the rich to grow richer; thus it is on record that the Archbishop of York, in the rather sharp scarcity of 1234, had his granaries at Ripon stored with the corn of four harvests, two or three of which had been hard for the poor. Even in the sharp famine of London in the summer of 1258, when the Earl of Cornwall's sixty cargoes of grain arrived, the first thing that the king had to do was to issue an ordinance against the middlemen's greed.

D. J.
MEDLEY.
Social
Life.

AMONG the questions connected with the development of social life in any country none is more curious than the history of its people's dress. In modern times the costume of civil life would alone concern us; but at a period when every gentleman was perforce a soldier, no description of the costume of the upper classes at any rate would be complete unless it included an account of the military accoutrements. In treating of the costumes of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries in England, it will be well for clearness' sake to take from the head downwards the figures which we are to clothe. The first effect of the Norman Conquest seems to have been to develop extravagant if not vulgar tastes in the conquering race. Against this there was a slight reaction, at least in certain directions, under Henry II.; but the check was only momentary, and before the end of his reign the old love of outward magnificence had reasserted itself, though not perhaps to the same extravagant degree. The Anglo-Saxons, men as well as women, wore their hair long; the Normans, on the other hand, after an Aquitanian fashion, shaved the backs of their heads, so

that Harold's spies are said to have reported that the invaders were an army of priests. But the long hair of the English excited their admiration, and already under William II. a writer complains that the men let their hair grow like women, parted it in the middle to fall on each side, curled it with hot irons, and, instead of a cap, bound their heads with fillets. From time to time the protests of reforming clergy and other influences of a semi-religious character caused a slight compunction, as when, in 1104, Henry I. and all his Court



MEN'S HAIR AND BEARDS IN THE TWELFTH CENTURY (MS. Nero C. iv.).

submitted their long locks to the shears of a persuasive and practical bishop. Even long beards did not escape censure, and at the beginning of the twelfth century more than one writer stigmatises his contemporaries of his own sex as "filthy goats." To judge from the monumental effigies of the thirteenth century there was a reform in beards. It was not uncommon to wear none at all, and those that were worn were of comparatively modest proportions. On the other hand, the hair was, and for some time remained, as long as ever it had been, and the beaux of the period curled it with irons and only subjected their heads to the modest restraint of a fillet or a ribbon. The Norman ladies, on the other hand, wore their

hair in two long plaits, which were sometimes confined in embroidered silken cases. But in the middle of the thirteenth century these tails were unplaited; married ladies turned up their hair and confined it in a net or caul of golden thread, while unmarried girls and the women-folk in the humbler ranks let it flow down their backs. In the case of the men the more elaborate arrangements of the hair often did not permit of any head-dress. But for those who desired to shelter their heads from cold or heat the choice lay between hats and caps and hoods. The only hat of



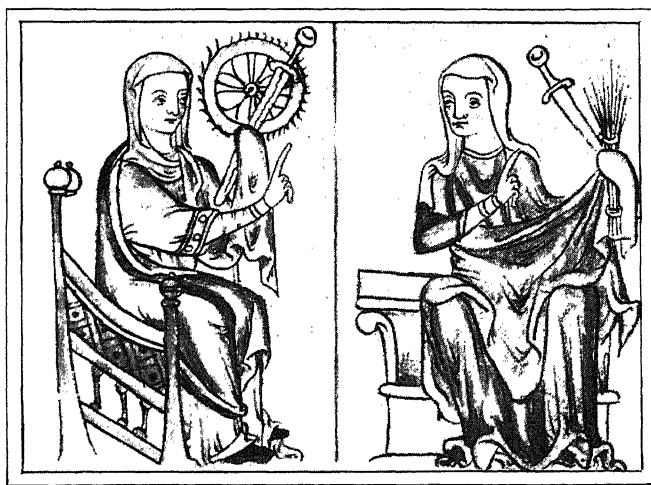
A NORMAN LADY'S HAIR
(Nero C. iv.).

which we have a record has been likened to the Greek petasus, and may find its modern descendant in the hard clerical hat of the present day. It was broad-brimmed and made of felt or of some substance covered with skin, and when not on the head could apparently be carried slung at the owner's back. The choice among caps was large; but they seem to have fallen into two classes, according as they resembled the peaked caps of Phrygian shape which had been worn before the Norman Conquest, or rested flat upon the head after the manner of a Scots blue bonnet or a modern

smoking-cap. Towards the middle of the thirteenth century, convenience seems to have popularised among all ranks and all professions the ugly fashion of a white linen coif, which was tied under the chin like a night-cap. Hoods, both attached to and apart from cloaks, were used by men and women travellers alike. Otherwise, the women wore a veil or headcloth, called a *couvrechef*, whence our word kerchief; and this was succeeded by a wimple, a close-fitting covering for the head and throat, and the gorget, which was a fuller wimple—in fact, a kind of copious neckcloth. But the plain wimple was not enough, and before long it came to be artificially raised off the head and adorned with horns and other fanciful shapes.

The rest of the costume went through fewer changes than the manipulation of the head and hair. The substratum of

the dress of a Norman was the same as that of the Englishman; a short tunic covered by a cloak, drawers and chausses—that is, long stockings or tights, over which would be worn bandages rolled round the leg, and shoes or short boots. Here, too, the extravagance of the Normans led to an early development of the tunic, and the sleeves were increased in both length and breadth. In fact, in State dresses the long linen undergarment and tunic over it were worn so long that they trailed upon the ground. Similarly, the cloaks or mantles



ANGLO-NORMAN LADIES' DRESS (MS. Roy. 2 B. vi.).

were made of the richest cloth and lined with the finest fur. Robert Bloet, Bishop of Lincoln, is said to have given Henry I. a mantle of sable which cost £100 in the money of the time. Henry II. owed his name Court Mantle to his supposed introduction of a shorter cloak. But this did not mean a simpler costume. The number and kind of garments remained the same, but the extravagance of their pattern increased, and an edict of the end of Henry's reign was aimed against the prevailing fashion of cutting the borders of both tunics and mantles into fancy shapes. In the thirteenth century we meet with two new garments—a cyclas or cointise, an upper tunic of fine material worked in a fanciful pattern, supposed to have

been invented in the Cyclades; while over their mantles travellers wore a more ample hooded garment with sleeves,



COSTUME, LATE THIRTEENTH CENTURY (MS. Roy. 2 B. vii.).

Women's Dress.

women as well as the men. The ordinary lady's dress consisted of a long tunic under a gown called a robe. Soon after the Conquest the sleeves and the veils became so long that they had to be tied up in knots to avoid treading upon them. At the same time the tight-lacing in which the ladies indulged caused so much scandal to on-lookers that a satirist did not hesitate even to depict the Devil tight-laced and otherwise attired as a fashionable lady of the period. The general appearance of a lady of the twelfth century has been described as Oriental, or at least Byzantine, and in it may be traced the connection of the Normans with Sicily and the Crusades. In the latter half of the twelfth century the long sleeves were discarded. Otherwise, the chief changes to the end of the thirteenth century consisted in the addition of two garments—the supertunic or surcoat, at first a shorter

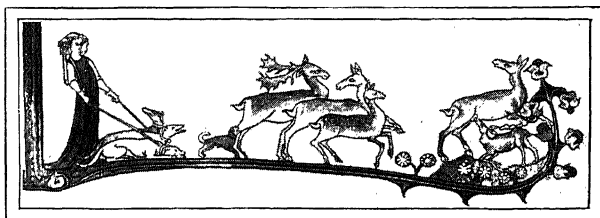
called a *supertotus* or overall, which in 1226, under the name of *balandrana*, is forbidden to the monks of St. Benedict. Meanwhile the shoes had been prolonged into peaks, and being stuffed with tow were twisted into all kinds of fanciful shapes; while the leg bandages, under the name of sandals, were unrolled, and were worn crossing each other all up the leg. The Norman desire to lengthen every part of the costume affected the



THE DEVIL TIGHT-LACED (MS. Nero C. iv.).

tunic of a fancy pattern, but ultimately lengthened until its skirt rivalled that of the robe itself; and the pelisse, a richly furred garment fitting close to the body and worn in winter under the mantle or cloak. Mention is also made of a bliaus, but it is probable that this only describes another form of supertunic.

But after all, except for the incidental light it may shed upon the manners of the people, there is no department of **Military Dress.**



A LADY HUNTING (MS. Add. 24,086).

history which passes so soon into pure antiquarianism as that which seeks to trace the changes of fashion in costume. Far otherwise is it with the development of military dress. The constant adaptation of means to ends in what for a long time was, and for an equally long time seems destined to remain, the most serious business in life of a large portion of the human race, is fraught with interest of a peculiar kind. However futile may be the result, and even in the most unworthy cause, the matching of wit against wit will always form a fascinating and even profitable study to thoughtful minds. Under modern conditions the weapons of offence have become so powerful that, as far as the individual human body is concerned, we have practically given over any attempt to protect it. But the invention of gunpowder was preceded by a long duel between the armour of defence and the weapons of offence, for every improvement in the latter necessitated modifications in the means of protecting the body of the warrior. It was not until these means became so cumbersome as to defeat their own purpose that their inventors acknowledged the failure of their aims, and that the prowess of the individual soldier gave place to the skilful ordering of battalions.

Armour.
1066-1300.

The body armour of the Normans was of the kind technically known as *single mail*. The foundation of it was a leathern tunic, called a hauberk, on which were fastened small iron rings or small plates of steel. The most common variant was composed of iron rings sewn flat upon the leather. The head was protected either with a capuchon or cowl which formed part of the tunic, or by a conical-shaped helmet with a nasal, or dependent piece of iron to protect the nose. In the reign of William II. the collar of the tunic was lengthened upwards so as to protect the chin and mouth, and not only was it joined on to the nasal, but steel cheek-pieces were introduced. The legs were protected by leathern chausses corresponding to the tunic, but despite the illustrations of the Bayeux tapestry, it seems improbable that they should have formed one piece with the tunic. The Crusades wrought many important changes in the mode of armament. Thus in Richard I.'s day the warrior wore a long tunic under his coat of mail, and an elaborately embroidered surcoat over it. This last garment served a twofold object; for it was a means by which the various leaders of the Christian host could be distinguished from each other, while it protected the iron armour from the scorching rays of the Eastern sun. Moreover, in addition to the ringed or plated hauberk, mention is now made of quilted tunics of various kinds, of which the gambeson is a type. These were of a simple kind for those who could not afford the hauberk, but were also worn highly ornamented as an additional means of defence. In the middle of the thirteenth century this quilted armour became common for both the body and the legs.

But the greatest revolution was the introduction from Asia of the shirt of *chain mail*. The old iron rings sewn flat on the leathern tunic had gradually been displaced by a tunic in which the rings were set up edgeways. Now, however, the leather foundation altogether disappeared, and the rings were so linked together as to form a complete garment of themselves. This would be worn loose over the gambeson, and was itself covered by a surcoat emblazoned with the warrior's coat of arms. Nor did the lines of defence stop here; for already to hauberk or gambeson had been added a *plastron de fer*, an iron plate to prevent the pressure of the tunic on the chest,



Brass from Stoke d'Abernoun,
Surrey, 1277.



Brass from Trumpington,
Cambridgeshire, 1289.

ARMOUR AT THE CLOSE OF THE THIRTEENTH CENTURY.

and better known under its later names of gorget or habergeon. More important, however, is it to notice that at the end of the thirteenth century small plates of steel were added to the defences of the shoulders, elbows and knees, thus beginning the "last great change which cased in complete steel the chivalry of Europe."

Finally, the protecting armour for the head had also changed its form. Stephen's capture at the battle of Lincoln (p. 369) was attributed to the hold which his captor had



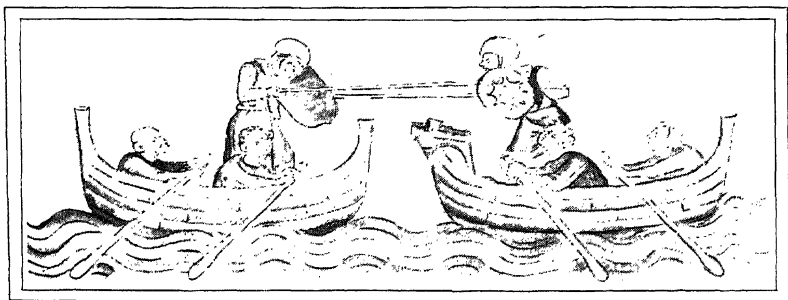
KNIGHT IN ARMOUR
(MS. Roy. 2 A. xxii.).

obtained upon the nasal of his helmet, and the advantage which such a piece of armour conferred upon an adversary at close quarters caused it to be abandoned. The helmet had become a flat-topped steel cap held by a hoop of iron under the chin. To this, in place of the nasal, was fitted a movable grating which could be unfastened from the side, so that it was only necessary to close it when in actual combat. But as the body armour became more elaborate this was not deemed sufficient protection for the head, and at the end of the thirteenth century the form of helmet is one

that covers the whole head, and rests upon the shoulders.

Military Exercises.

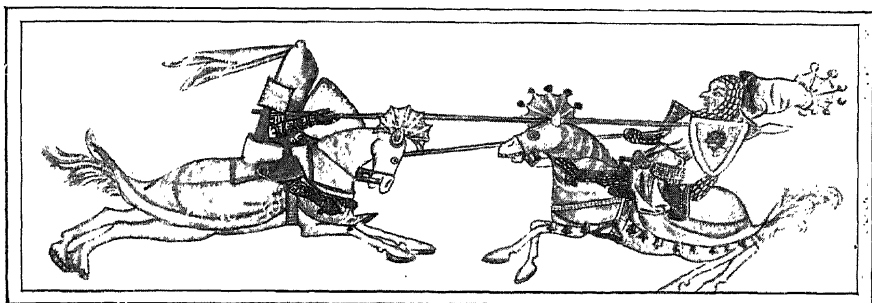
It must have been only by constant practice that a medieval knight could acquire sufficient familiarity with the weapons wielded in actual warfare under such disadvantageous circumstances. This practice was obtained in a variety of military exercises, which are all included under the comprehensive name of tournament. More strictly we may distinguish between four kinds of such pastimes—tilting at the quintain, running at the ring, tournaments and jousts. In its origin the quintain must have been merely a dummy adversary, the chief object being to teach the young warrior to strike straight and true. As a final development, upon



WATER TILTING (MS. Roy. 2 B. vii.).

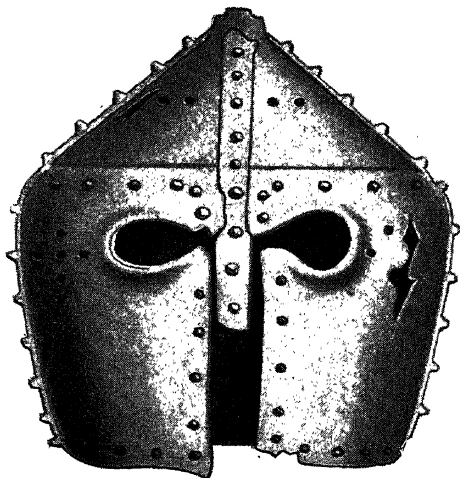


ARMOURED KNIGHTS (Harley Roll Y. 6).



TILTING.
(Luttrell Psalter.)

a post was hung a cross-arm turned on a pivot; at one end was placed the shield to be struck, at the other end a bag of sand or some offensive weapon which would swing round and hit the dilatory or awkward tilter on head or back. The quintain was a common means of diversion among all classes of society, and it took many curious forms both on land and water. But as a knightly exercise, demanding the highest skill in the performer, it reached its utmost development in tilting or running at the ring, in which a ring hung from a post had to be carried off on the end of the rider's lance. Tournaments and jousts were strictly military exercises: the tournament being a conflict of many knights divided into two parties; the joust the trial of strength and skill between two knights riding at each other with a lance in rest. Despite the outward trappings of the tournament, it was a cruel and a dangerous sport, and the kings were generally concerned to limit its occasions by insisting on the necessity of their licence. But the feudal instinct was too strong for the royal edicts, and after all it may be questioned whether the tournaments or jousts were more senseless or more fatal to life and limb than the duel of honour which took their place.



THE FAVERSHAM HELMET.

AUTHORITIES.—1216-1273.

GENERAL.

For the long reign of Henry III. there is a good supply of contemporary writers. The important St. Albans Chronicles, compiled successively by Wendover, Matthew Paris, and Rishanger, go down to 1306. The monastic annals of Waverley, Dunstable, Osney, etc., are full and important. A valuable series of royal letters, selected and edited in the Rolls Series, covers the reign. In the same series are Grosseteste's *Letters*, the *Monumenta Franciscana*, and Roger Bacon's works. Thomas Wykes gives the royalist view; the important *Carmen de Bello Lewensi* (ed. Kingsford) and the mass of contemporary political songs give the reformers' ideas. Constitutional documents are very fully given in Stubbs' *Charters*. Modern authorities as for chap. iii., also Blaauw, *Barons' War*, and Prothero's *Simon de Montfort*.

SPECIAL SUBJECTS.

Religion (see also above).—The Chronicles of Robert of Gloucester and Matthew Paris (Rolls Series); political songs of the period; and the works of Roger Bacon; *Monumenta Franciscana* (ed. J. S. Brewer); Eccleston's *Coming of the Friars*.

Law.—The best text of the statutes is in the edition issued by the Record Commission. Stubbs's select *Charters* and Bémont's *Chartes* are useful. Various judicial rolls have been published by the Selden Society and the Surtees Society. The best of the three editions of Bracton's *Law of England* is that of 1569. Bracton's *Note Book* (ed. Maitland) contains many of the cases on which he based his text. The best sketch of the material is given by Brunner in Holtzendorff's *Encyklopädie der Rechtswissenschaft*. Reeves's *History of English Law* begins to be useful in this period. See also J. F. Stephen's *History of Criminal Law*; Pike's *History of Crime*; and Blackstone's *Commentaries*.

Naval matters, as for chap. iii.

Agriculture (for period 1216-1348).—Thorold Rogers, *History of Agriculture and Prices and Six Centuries of Work and Wages*; Nasse, *Zur Geschichte der Mittelalterlichen Feldgemeinschaft in England*; Vinogradoff, *Villainage in England*; Maitland, *Select Pleas in Manorial Courts* (Selden Society); Seebohm, *English Village Community*; Gomae, *Village Community*.

Commerce, etc.—Cunningham, *History of Industry and Commerce*, i.; Ashley, *Economic History*; Thorold Rogers, *Agriculture and Prices*, i., ii.; Hall, *History of the Customs Revenue*, i., ii.; Madox, *History of the Exchequer*; Gross, *The Guild Merchant*; *Monumenta Gildhallae* (ed. Riley, Rolls Series); Jacobs, *Jews in Angevin England*.

Art and Architecture.—As for chap. iii., omitting Freeman's *History of the Norman Conquest*, and adding Kenyon, *Gold Coins of England*.

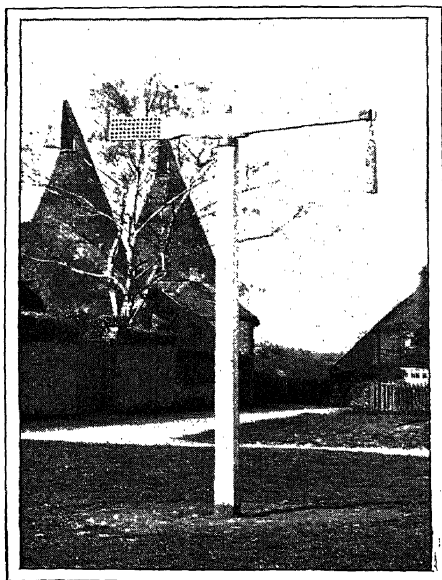
Learning and Science.—Besides the works of Hampden, Bass Mullinger, Maxwell Lyte, and Poole, referred to in chap. iii., mention may be made of J. S. Brewer's prefaces to his edition of *Monumenta Franciscana*, 1858, and of Roger Bacon's *Opera Inedita*, 1869; H. R. Luard, preface to *Roberti Grosseteste Epistole*, 1861; T. M. Lindsay, *Ocean* (*Encycl. Brit.*, 9th ed., xvii.); A. Seth, *Scholasticism* (*Encycl. Brit.*, 9th ed., xxi.); Rashdall, *Origin of the University of Oxford* (*Church Quarterly Review*, No. 46, Jan., 1887), and introduction to *The Friars Preachers v. the University, 1311-1313* (in Oxford Historical Society's *Collectanea*, 2nd series, 1890); A. G. Little, *The Grey Friars in Oxford*, 1892; Brodrick, *Memorials of Merton College*, 1885.

Language and Literature (see also list appended to chap. iii.).—Skeat, *Principles of English Etymology* (two series, Clarendon Press, 1887-91); Sweet, H., *New English Grammar*, part i. (Clarendon Press, 1892); B. Ten Brink, *Chaucer's Sprache und Verskunst*, Leipzig, 1884; Kluge, *Gesch. d. Englischen Sprache* (in Paul's *Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie*, i.); H. G. Hewlett, *Cronica Rogeri de Wendover, sive Flores Historiarum* (3 vols., 1886, etc., Rolls Series); Sir F. Madden, *Matthæi Parisiensis Historia Anglorum sive . . . Historia Minor* (3 vols., 1886-9, Rolls Series); H. R. Luard, *Matthæi Parisiensis Cronica Majora* (1872-82, 7 vols., Rolls Series).

Series), and the other chroniclers edited in the Rolls Series; *Encyclopædia Britannica*, Art. "Romance." H. Ward, *Introduction to Romance Catalogue*, British Museum.

The Jews in England.—Jacobs, *Jews in Angerin England* (up to 1206); Tovey, *Anglia Judaica* (mainly derived from Prynne's *Short Demurrer*); Madox, *History of the Exchequer*, chap. vi.); B. L. Abrahams, *Expulsion of the Jews from England*; Publications of the Anglo-Jewish Historical Exhibition, and of the Jewish Historical Society of England.

Social Life.—As in Chap. III. with the addition of Strutt, *Sports and Pastimes of the English People*.



THE QUINTAIN, OFFHAM, KENT.

INDEX.

- Aaron of Lincoln, 669, 678
 Abelard, or Abailard, Peter, 482
 Adelard (Æthelweard) of Bath, 492, 500;
 translation of, into Hebrew, 671
 Ælfric, colloquy of, 187, *note*
 Ælius, 172
 Agricola, Julius, 10
 Agricultural labour in 13th century, 642
 Agriculture in Celtic Britain, 16; Old Eng-
 lish, 198; in 11th and 12th cents., 512;
 in 13th cent., 640 *seqq.*, 643; monastic
 influence on, 645; works on, 645
 Aidan in Northumbria, 229
 Alamanni, or Alamans, 170
 Alban, St., martyr, 115
 Albert the Great (Albertus Magnus), 623
 Albigenes in England, 577
 Aldermen, 197, 203, 309
 Alexander, romance of, lxxv, 640
 Alfred, King, wars of, 206; laws of, 243 *seqq.*;
 works of, 276 *seqq.*; his jewel, 280; em-
 bassies to Jerusalem and India, 294
 Aliens, *see* Foreigners
 Allectus, 169; coins of, 144
 Ambrosius Aurelianus, 172
 "Amis and Amiloun," 638
 Amphitheatres in Roman Britain, 56
 Amusements, Old English, 315
 "Anarchy, the," in England, 368 *seqq.*
 Ancestor worship, 24
 "Anceren Riwe," title of book, 511
 Anglesey, expedition of Earls of Chester
 and Shrewsbury against, 1, 350, 351, 444
 Angli, or Angles, probable home of, 162;
 settlement in Britain, 166
 Animals, domestic, 30; wild, 30, 66, 68, 658
 Annals, monastic, in 13th cent., 636
Annals, 52, 67
 Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, 361;
 and Henry I., 364 *seqq.*; and William II.,
 352, 361; controversy with Roscelin,
 482
 Aquinas, St. Thomas, 622, 623
 Arabic land, in 11th cent., 513; in 13th cent.,
 643
 Archery, 431, 437
 Architecture, lxxxiii; Romano-British,
 144; Old English, 284, *seqq.*; Norman,
 465; Early English, 471 *seqq.*; under
 Henry III., 592 *seqq.*
 Aristotle, study of, at Oxford, 621
 Arles, Council of, 116
 Armorica, 170
 Armour in Middle Ages, 686-687
 Army, Roman, 45 *seq.*, 76 *seqq.*; Old Eng-
 lish, 203, 256 *seqq.*; Danish, 262; Norman,
 340 *seqq.*
 Art, prehistoric, 122 *seqq.*; Celtic, 126, 129,
 138 *seqq.*; Romano-British, 136-160;
 Old English, 278 *seqq.*; under Norman
 kings, 457-481; under Henry III., 592-613
 Arthur of Brittany, murder by John, 381
 Arthur, King, legends of, 195
 "Assizes" of Henry II., 417, 580, 584
 Athelings, 309
Augustales, 44
 Augustine, consecrates bishops, 228; re-
 builds Canterbury Cathedral, 285
 Authorities, for history of Roman Britain,
 84; to 287 A.D., 167, 168; for 287-1066,
 333-335; for 1066-1216, 560, 561; 1216-
 1273, 691 *seqq.*
 Avebury, stone circle at, 128
 Averroes, 622
 Avicenna, 622
 Aydon Hall, 610
 Bacon, Francis, lxx
 Bacon, Roger, lxxviii, 624
 Badonicus, Mons, 174
 Balliol College founded, 620
 Bamborough, fortifying of, 190
 Bards, 31, 111
 Barons' war, 561; Jews in, 674
 Barrows, "long," and "round," 124
 Bath (Aquæ Sulis), 45
 Bath, Roman baths at, 158
 "Battle of Finnsburg," poem, 273
 "Battle of Maldon," poem, 273
 Battles, of Evesham, 565; of Lewes, 564
 of Lincoln, 433; of the Standard, 433
 Bayeux tapestry, 437, 438
 Beacons, 414
 Beards, 33, 681
 Bec, Abbey of, 364
 Becket, early life, 390; dispute with Henry
 II., 392; murder, 374, 390, 393
 Bede, birth and early years, 224; eccle-
 siastical history, 224
 Beds, in early Britain, 6; Old English, 310,
 314; medieval, 540, 546
 Bee-keeping, 16, 515, 548
 Beer, 69, 182
 Benefit of clergy, 426
Beowulf, 272; and social life, 198
 Berengar of Tours, 482
 Beverley Minster, windows at, 607
 Bignor, mosaic pavement at, 56
 Bills of exchange introduced, 523
 Birinus, mission to England, 229
 Black Death, 255
 Boadicea, 33, 52
 "Boar's Head array," 204
 "Boot" in Old English law, 202
 Boots and shoes, 345, 683, 681
 Boston, Customs town, 664
 Brachycephalic race in Britain, 123
 Bracton on English law, 409
 Bradford-on-Avon church, 286
 Brading, mosaic pavement at, 61
 Bran, father of Caractacus, 113
 Bretache, 608
 Bretwalda, derivation of, 193
 Bricks in Roman Britain, 70
 Brigantes, 10
 Brigantia (Keridwen), 110
 Bristol, 299; slave trade, 360

- Britain, Celtic, 1-37: peoples of, 1 *seqq.*; agriculture, 16 *seqq.*; burials in, 37; imports and exports, 17, 18; industries, 15-16, 30-31; inland trade, 18, 19; dress in, 18, 33; furniture in, 32; marriage in, 34; medicine, 31, 32; position of women in, 33; social life in, 4 *seqq.*; 22-37; trade and industry from earliest times, 13-22; trees of, 18; conquered by Romans, 10 *seqq.*; conquered by Picts and Scots and Saxons, 171 *seqq.*
- Britain, Roman, 37 *seqq.*; its government, 41 *seqq.*; its political divisions, 39, 40; under Diocletian, 102; British grievances in, 53-55; Christianity in, 65, 66; products, 66, 67; its industry and trade, 67-70; metals in, *ibid.*; its military aspects, 76 *seqq.*; Roman influence in, 55-59; taxation in, 50-53; towns in, 42 *seqq.*; government after Romans leave, 105; overrun by Saxons, 74; becomes English, 175 *seqq.*
- Britannia, *Superior*, 40
- British, survival of, under English conquest, 194
- Brittany, *see* Armorica
- Bronze age, British, 123
- Brunanburh (Brunbury), battle at, 206, 210, 266
- Brythons, 2, 107
- Burhs, 214
- Burial, guilds and, 303, 523
- Busses (ships), 451
- Cædmon, poems of, 274 *seqq.*
- Cærlæon (Isca Silurum), 45
- Cæsar's invasion, 128, 134
- Cæwerent, lxiii
- CAMBER-WILLIAMS, R.: Heathen Britain, 106-113; Christian Britain, 113-122
- Cambridge University, rise of, 614; friars at, 617
- Camulodunum (now Colchester), 10, 44
- Camulus (Mars), 108
- Canabe, 45, 81
- Canon law, 406
- Canterbury, scholars at in 12th cent., 494
- Canterbury Cathedral, Augustine's building, 255; additions by Cuthbert and Odo, *ibid.*; burnt in 1067, *ibid.*; Ernulf's arcade at, 462; burnt in 1174, 468; restoration by William of Sens, *ibid.*; first English archbishop at, 231
- Canute (Cnut), 216; house-carles, 267; laws of, 450; church, building of, 238, 288
- Caractacus, son of Cymbeline, 10
- Carausius, 103, 169; coin of, 144
- Carlisle (Luguvallium), 46, 94
- Cartismandua, 33
- Cassivelaunus, king of Catuvelauni, 8
- Castles, Norman, 432, 436, 536; architecture and plan, 474 *seqq.*; under Henry III., 608
- Castor ware, 140
- Cathedrals rebuilt under Norman rule, 457
- Cats, in Wales, 30; in baronial walls, 544
- Cattle, wild, in Celtic Britain, 34; in medieval England, 612; profits from, 650
- Cavalry, Norman, 430
- Cave men, 123
- Celibacy, clerical, 238
- Celtic art, survival of, in Roman Britain, 159
- Celts, in Britain, lviii, 1 *seqq.*, 124; Gaelic and Brythonic, 2; gods of, 108 *seqq.*
- Celts, migration into Britain, 2, 124; survival after English conquest, 194
- Chad, St., 231
- Chain mail, 258, 262, 686
- Champions, 415
- Channel Islands conquered by Normans, 318
- Chapter Houses, Norman, 476
- Chariots, scythe-axled, 15
- Charter, the Great, sealed at Runnymede, 386, 398; foundation of English law, 582; renewed by Henry III., 582
- Charter of William I. to London, 522, 579
- Charters, Anglo-Saxon, 252
- Château Gaillard, 436
- Chaucer, lxxvii
- Cheese, introduced by Romans, 30; in medieval economy, 650
- Chess, 545
- Chester (Deva), 46; desolate, 297; in 11th cent., 519
- Chillingham Cattle, 134
- Chinon, Ordinances of, 448
- Christianity in Roman Britain, lx, 65, 113, 115 *seqq.*; Old English, lxi, 306. *See* Church
- Church and Jews, 674 *seqq.*
- Church and State, in Anglo-Saxon England, 236; secularisation, *ibid.*; under William I., 359
- Church, foundation of, 224, 231; English, lxi; controversies of, with Celtic Church, 225, 226; endowment of, in early Britain, 121; decadence, 234; revival under Alfred and Dunstan, 236 *seqq.*; under Canute, 238; after Norman conquest, lxii, 355 *seqq.*; reform under William I., 360 *seqq.*; promotes fusion of Norman with English, 370; under William II., 362
- Church under Henry I., conflict with Crown, 365; under John and the Interdict, 384, 398; under Stephen and during the Anarchy, 387-388; as factor in English politics, 370; position in rural districts, 579; influence of, in medieval England, 577 *seqq.*
- Churches, Roman and Celtic in Britain, 121; Old English, 284 *seqq.*; number (139) in London in 12th cent., 525
- Cinque Ports, 186, 299, 586 *seqq.*
- Cirencester (Durocornovium), 74, 97
- Civilisation in England, xcv. *seqq.*
- Clarendon, constitutions of, 392
- Classical literature, study of, in 12th cent., 486 *seqq.*
- Claudius, the Emperor, conquest of Britain by, 44; worshipped at Camulodunum, 42; institutes Channel fleet, 53
- Clemens Maximus, 170
- Clergy, influence of, in early British Church, 121 *seqq.*; in Old English Church, 236; taxation of, in 1188, 373; convocations, 572; protest against intervention of Rome under Henry III., 574
- Climate of Roman Britain, 63
- Cloth, made in early Britain, 18; in 13th cent., 657, 659
- Cloveshoo, Council of, 234
- CLOWES, W. LAURE: Maritime Warfare and Commerce 1066-1216, 438-457; Navy of Henry III., 584-592
- Cnith, 309
- Coal in Roman Britain, 69
- Cogs (ships), 451
- Cold, 222
- Coinage, under Henry III., 611 *seqq.*
- Coins of early Britain, 15, 132 *seqq.*
- Coins, Old English, 291, 292; of Norman dukes, 321; of William I. and II., 480
- Coins, Romano-British, 144
- Colet, Dean, lxxvii

- Colleges, monastic, in Wales, 122
 "Collegia" (guilds) of smiths in Roman Britain, 70
 Colman, Scottish bishop, 231
Coloni, 183
 Colonies, Roman, in Britain, 44, 83
 Columba, St., 228
Comes Britanniarum, 41, 102, 103
Comes Littoris Saxonici, 41, 102, 103
 Comitatus, 198, 305
 Common field system, 180, 514 *seqq.*
Communa, 569
 Communism in early Britain, 7
Communitas scirae, 569
 Compass, early history of the, 591
 Compurgation, 413, 426; *see* Oath-helpers.
Concilium Sapientium (Witan), 200
 Constantine the Great, 170
 Constantius Chlorus, forts of, in Britain, 103
 Constantius rescues Gaul and Spain from barbarism, 169
Consulares, 41
 Convocations of provinces of Canterbury and York, 572
 Cookery, Old English, 180; medieval, 541
 Copper, 68
 Coracles, 18-19
 CORBERT, W. J.: Agriculture under Henry III., 640-647
 Corn, export of, from Roman Britain, 67; export prohibited under Richard I., 524; price in famine of 1316, 641; produce of, in 13th cent., 642; imported into England (1258) from Germany and Holland, 679
 Cottiers or cottagers, Old English, 184 *seqq.*; in 11th cent., 512; holdings and services, 516
 Count of the Saxon Shore, 41, 103
 Courts, Old English, 248
 Covertina, 61
 Craft guilds, 522
 Craftsmen, among Old English, 183; immigration of, at Norman conquest, 519; in 13th cent., 657
 Crayford, battle of, 172
 CREIGHTON, C.: Public Health in Old English Period, 253-256; in Anglo-Norman England, 526-532; under Henry III., 678-680
 Crime, in early Britain, 6; punishment of, among Old English, 202
 Criminal procedure in Norman England, 420
 Crossbow, in 13th cent., introduced, 434; superseded by long-bow, 437
 Crusades, 397; effect on architecture, 462; on trade, 652
 "Cuckoo's song," 637
 Cunobelinus, 10
Curiales, 42
 Currency, Northumbrian, 208
 Customs duties in 13th cent., 663, 664
 Customals, 197
 Cwenethryth, Queen of Mercia, 200
 Cymbeline (Cunobelinus), 10
 Cynewulf, King, death of, 198; poetry of, 275 *seqq.*, 303
 Cyprus, conquest of, 452
 Danish invasion, 205 *seqq.*; its consequences, 206, 213
 Danish kings, 215 *seq.*
 Darwinism, lxxiii
 David King of Scotland attacks Stephen, 368
Deae Matres, 60, 110
Decuriones, 42
Defensor Civitatis, 42
 Deuseddit, first English Archbishop of Canterbury, 231
 Deva, *see* Chester
 Diaper in architecture, 596
 Dining in Middle Ages, 544
 Diocleian, reforms of, 100
Dite de Hosebondrie, 646
 Dockyards, 456, 597
 "Dog tooth" ornament, 607
 Dogs in early Britain, 17, 68
 Dolichocephalic race in early Britain, 123
 Domesday Book, 340 *seqq.*, 417; as evidence of state of agriculture, 512
 Domestic life in Celtic Britain, 5, 32 *seq.*; Old English, 309; medieval, 536 *seqq.*; occupations, 542 *seqq.*
Dominus, or *patronus*, 183, 184
 Dorchester, Dorset (Durnovaria), 45, 56
 Dorchester, Oxon, 360
 Dover (Dubrae), lighthouse, 49; station of Roman fleet, 53, 103 *note*; attack of citizens on Eustace of Boulogne, 332
 Downton, moot-place of Saxons, 191
 Dress, xciv; of Britons, 18, 33; Old English, 314 *seqq.*; in medieval England 680-685; of men, 683 *seqq.*; of women, 684 *seqq.*; of peasantry, 549
 Drinking habits, medieval, 548
 Dromonds, 451
 Dr, den, lxxix
 Druids in Roman Britain, 59, 111-113
 Dumnobellaunus, 11
 Duns Scotus, 622, 626
 Dunstan, his reforms in the Church, 236; retires from public life, 238; accomplishments of, 301
 Durham, Galilee at, 470
 Durnovaria (Dorchester), 45
 Durobrivum (Castor) and its ware, 140
Duumvir, 42
Dux Britanniarum, 11 *note*, 41, 102
 Dyes, early British, 18
 Dyrham, battle at, 191
 Ead, for names beginning with, *see also* Ed
 Eadmer of Canterbury, 504
 Eadred and the Scots, 145
 Ealdormen, or sheriff, presides at Shire-moot in absence of king, 203; *see* Aldermen
 Earldoms, Canute's four great, 216
 Earls, *see* Eorls
 Early English style, 592 *seqq.*
 Easter, origin of name, 220; controversy as to mode of calculating, 226, 228, 331
 Eboracum, *see* York
 Edgar Atheling, 336
 Edgar, grandson of Edmund Ironside, expedition to Holy Land, 446
 Edgar of West Saxons, Emperor of all Britain, 206; consolidates Church, 238
 Edmund Ironside, 216
 Edmund I. (the Elder) transfers Cumberland to King of Scots, 214
 Education, among Old English, 310; in early Middle Ages, 482 *seqq.*; of children in Middle Ages, 542

- Edward I. and Parliament, 571; an English trade, 665
 Edward the Confessor, laws of, 246; introduces foreign ecclesiastics, 238-239; builds Westminster Abbey, 290
 EDWARDS, O. M.: Celtic Britain, 1-37
 Edwin of Northumbria, his baptism, killed at Hatfield, 228
 Elfgifu, mother of Hardi-Canute, 216
 Ely, 278
 Ely book, the, 512
 Ely cathedral, 461, 470
 Embroidery, Old English, 281
 Emma, wife of Ethelred and Canute, 238
 Engines of war in 12th cent., 436
 Englas, *see* Angli
 English Church, *see* Church
 English conquests, stages, 190, 191; table of, 192
 English language, dialects in 13th cent., 630; works in, 1216-1273, 636 *seqq.*; and law, 401, 629
 English law, continuity of, 239
 English tribe, form of rule, 197 *seqq.*
 Eorls, 309
 Eostre, goddess of dawn, 220
 Epic poetry, Old English, 272
 Ergotism, 530
 Eric Bloodaxe, 207
 Estates, the three, 572
 Ethelbert, King of Kent, his baptism, 226; laws of, 240, 241
 Ethelfleda, Lady of the Marchmen or of Mercia, 297; visits the Danes, 212; war between her and S. Welsh, 214
 Ethelmer, Bishop of S. Angles, deposed, 356
 Ethelred, his inefficient resistance to Danes, 215; his recall, 216
 Ethelward, chronicle of, 196
 Ethnology of England, 1 *seqq.*, 122 *seqq.*, 161 *seqq.*, 192-194; 294, 311 *seqq.*
 Eustace of Boulogne at Dover, 326
 Evesham, Battle of, 555
 Exchequer, beginnings of, 400
 "Exchequer of the Jews," 670
 Exeter, 299

 Fabliaux, 640
 Fairs, Old English, 302; medieval, 524, 653, 654 *seqq.*
 Famines in England, 1086-1215, 515, 531 *seqq.*; of 1257-1259, 678 *seqq.*; in 1315 and 1316, 641; in medieval England, list of, 679
 Fardel, or farthing of land, 180
 Farmers in 11th cent., 514
 Feasting in Celtic Britain, 28
 Feas s, Anglo-Saxon, 179
 Feudalism, checked in Normandy, 331; evils of, under Stephen, 370; combated by Henry II., 372
 Fines in early law, 250
 Flag of England, 452
 Flanders, British trade with, 651
 Fleer, Roman, in English Channel, 53, 103; Old English, 294; Norman, 438 *seqq.*
 Flemings in Pembrokeshire, 354, 375
 Florence of Worcester, 504
 "Floris and Blancheflor," 638
 Folk-moot, 201
 Food in Celtic Britain, 30, 32; Old English, 300, 312; of English people, 530
 Foreigners in England after Conquest, 519, 523, 562, 574; in the 13th cent., 602, 674
 Foreign influence on English architecture, 457

 Forest law under Henry II., 584
 Fortifications, *see* Castles
 France, loss of English possessions in, under John, 382
 Franchise, Parliamentary, in Middle Ages, 572
 Frank-pledge system, 203
 Franks, 170
 Fraomarius, 170
 Frea, god of sunshine and rain, 220
 French, as language of law, 403; influence of, on English language, 630 *seqq.*
 Friars, Dominican and Franciscan, lxiv, 515; arrival of 615 *seqq.*; and university life, *ibid.*; plead for Jews, 579
 Frigge, wife of Woden, 220
 Frith-borrow system, 203
 Frith-guilds, 306
 Frontier defence, Roman, along coast, 103
 Furniture, British, 33; Old English, 311 *seqq.*; in Norman England, 540
 Fyrd, shire levies, 204

 Gaels (Goidels), lvii., 2, 107
 "Galilee" at Durham, 470; at Ely, 472
 Galleys, 451
 Games, Old English, 313; indoor, medieval, 545
 Gardens, 314, 538, 544
 Gchur, or tenant at will, right of, 183, 184
 Genat, or peasant, 183, 184
 Geoffrey Gaimar, 509 *seqq.*
 Geoffrey of Monmouth, 503, 508 *seqq.*
 Gerald of Wales, *see* Giraldus
 Germanus, Roman bishop, 171
 Gerontius, 171
 Gesiths, 204, 305
 Gilbert of Sempringham, 388
 Gildas, view of Roman rule, 105; prophecy of, 174; description of British Church, 225
 Giraldus Cambrensis (Gerald of Wales), 490, 494, 506 *seqq.*
 Glanvil, Ranulf, 380; treatise on English law, 409
 Glass, early British, 141; Old English, 280, *seqq.*; 300; use in medieval dwelling houses, 539; Roman, *ibid.*; painted, in 13th cent., 604
 Glastonbury, 115; monks of, under Abbot Thurstan, 298
 Gleomen, 312
 Gloucester (Glevum), 44; in Old English period, 298
 Gods, Roman, worshipped in Britain, 59 *seqq.*; Celtic, 107 *seqq.*; Anglo-Saxon, 217 *seqq.*
 Godwine, Earl, 216, 326, 328
 Goidels, *see* Gaels
 Gold in early Britain, 68; in coinage, 612
 Goldsmiths, Old English, 278, 279; in the 13th cent., 661
 Graham's Dyke, 39
 Gratian, Emperor, 170
 Gratian, King of Britain, 171
 Great Charter, *see* Magna Charta
 Greek, study of, lxx
 Greek fire, carried on warships, 452
 Green, J. R., xlviii, lx
 Gregory the Great, 224 *seqq.*; his scheme for organising hierarchy in England, 228
 Gregory VII., 386
 Grosseeste, Robert, and papal aggression, 562, 574, 575; rector of Oxford Franciscan, 645; at Oxford, 617, 624; book on agriculture, 645

- Guilds, or fellowships, 203, 520; effects of, on municipal government, 520; religious, 529; merchant, 660
- Guthrum the Old, 206
- Gwynedd, 353, 374
- Hadrian, Abbott of Canterbury, 234
- Hadden's Wall, 87 *seqq.*
- Hæstun (Hasting), 206
- Hair, wearing of, among Celtic Britons, 33; among Old English, 316; in Norman England, 680 *seqq.*
- Hales, Thomas de, his "Lure Ron," 636
- Halfdan, 206
- "Halleluia victory," the, 172
- HALL, HUBERT: Trade and Industry, 1216-1273, 617-665
- Hall-moots, 202 *seqq.*
- Hall of medieval manor house, 540
- Hanging, punishment of, 492
- Hanse leagues, 523, 651
- Harbours, 500
- Hardi-Canute, 216
- Hardi-Canute Godfred, 207
- Harold, and William of Normandy, 328; succeeds Edward the Confessor, *ibid.*; war with Tostig, *ibid.*
- Harold, distrusted by northern earls, 215; chosen king at Oxford, 216; Navy of, 412
- HASSALL, A.: Normans, the, in Normandy, 317-333
- Hastings, battle of, 332, 336, 428 *seqq.*; 495 *seqq.*; *see* Cinque Ports
- Hatfield, Battle of, 228
- Hats, medieval, 682
- "Havelok the Dane," 638
- HAVEKFIELD, F.: Roman Army, the, in Britain, 76-106; Art, the, of Roman Britain, 136-191; English, the, before England, 161-167
- Hawking, in Celtic Britain, 28; among Old English, 316; in medieval England, 514
- Hay, in 11th cent., 513
- Health, *see* Public Health
- Hearthpenny, 186
- HEATH, H. F.: Old English Literature, 267-278; Literature under Norman Rule, 495; Language and Literature, 1216-1273, 648-640
- Helmets, 258, 262, 688
- Hengist and Horsa, 172
- Hensley, Walter de, book on agriculture, 645
- Henry I., 352 *seqq.*; 353 *seqq.*; marries Edith, daughter of Malcolm, 353; his internal reform, 354; his quarrel with Anselm, 365 *seqq.*
- Henry II., reign of, 372 *seqq.*; succeeds, 377; constitution under, 378; legal reforms, 404; growth of law under, 580 *seqq.*; and commerce, 591
- Henry III., reign of, 560; and the Church, 593; reconstructs Westminster Abbey, 596; and the Jews, 673
- Henry of Huntingdon, 500, 504
- Heremod, type of retainer, 198
- Hereward, 338
- Hermits, 580
- Hertford, Council of, 232
- Historians, English, in 13th cent., 633 *seqq.*
- Holy Grail, the, 115
- Homes, original, of English, 162
- Homicide, punishment of, 250, 400; on high seas, 449; of shipwrecked persons, 451
- Honorius, 170, 171
- Hospitals, 527 *seqq.*
- House-carles, 200, 204, 267
- Houses, early British, 132, 137; of Anglo-Saxons in Britain, 176, 291, 310; of lower classes, 546
- Hoveden, Roger, 633
- Hubert de Burgh, 561
- Hubert, Walter, Archbishop of Canterbury, 396
- Hugh of Avalon, or St. Hugh of Burgundy, 395, 471
- HUGHES, R.: Architecture and Art, prehistoric, 122-136; Old English, 278-294; Anglo-Norman, 457-481; Early English, 592-613
- Human sacrifices in early Britain, 112
- Hundred Courts used by Henry II., 567
- Hundreds, 202, 212
- Hunting in Celtic Britain, 27-28; of Old English, 316
- HUTTON, W. II.: Church, the, and the Conquest, 355-367; Church and Crown, Conflicts of the, 387-398; Church, the, under Henry III., 573-580
- Iberians in early Britain, lvi. 1 *seqq.*; 12, 13; dolichocephalic, 107, 123
- Illumination of MSS., Old English, 281 *seqq.*; in Norman England, 478 *seqq.*
- Immigrations into Britain, dolichocephalic, 124; of Celts, checked by Rome, 3; of Teutons, 3, 105
- Imports in 13th cent., 650
- Industries, Old English, 301
- Industry, English, lxxxv *seqq.*; growth of, in 13th cent., 656
- Ine, laws of, 245
- Inquest, the royal, 417, 419
- Interdict, papal, under John, 381
- Invasion of Gaul by Vandals, Sueves, and Alans, 170 *seqq.*
- Investitures, contest as to, 365
- Iona, 228
- Ipswich, 299
- Ireland, never occupied by Romans, 39; conquest of, 374 *seqq.*
- Iron Age in early Britain, 126
- Iron, sword-blades made of, 15
- JACOBS, J.: Jews in England, 665-678
- Jet, 69
- Jewellery, Old English, 280
- Jews, arrival in England, 350; and Church, 577 *seqq.*; 669 *seqq.*; 674; story of human sacrifice by, 579, 675; immigration of, 666; as financiers, 666, 668; under Henry II., 667; claims by king on, 667; massacres of, under Richard I., 669; literature of English, 670 *seqq.*; in 13th cent., 671 *seqq.*; exchequer of, 672; offence to Christians, 677; organisation in England under Henry III., 677 *seqq.*
- "Jews' House," Lincoln, 468, 678
- John, reign of, as Prince, 377, 332; John and the Navy, 454; death of, at Swinhead, 386
- John, King, and Jews, 673
- John of Salisbury, 508; knowledge of Latin literature, 486; scholarship, 493
- Jousts, 692
- Judith, poem, 275
- Jury, trial by, 411 *seqq.*, 418
- Justices in Eyre, 402
- Justiciars, 354
- Jutes, settlement in Kent, 163; called in to aid against Picts and Scots, 172

- "Kenningar," 270 *note*
 Keridwen, 110
 Kilwardby, Robert, Archbishop of
 Canterbury, 406
 "King Horn," 637
 Kings' Courts, growth of, 416
 King's Hall, Winchester, 610
 Kings, method of election, 200
 Kitchens, medieval, 541
 Knights of shire, 567, 571
 Knights Templars, Cyprus sold to, 315

 Land, extent under cultivation in 11th
 cent., 513; mode of cultivation, 512
 Land system, xc; in Celtic Britain, 7: Old
 English, 166, 178, 184, 304; effects of
 Norman conquest on, 346; in 11th cent.,
 514
 Lanfranc made Archbishop of Canterbury,
 355; contest with Henry II. as to in-
 vestitures, *ibid.*; controversy with
 Berengar of Tours, 481; works, 499
 Langton, Stephen, appointed Archbishop
 of Canterbury by Pope, 384; patriotism,
 398; restoration to primacy, 561
 Language, lxxvi *seq.*; in Celtic Britain,
 2, 4; in Anglo-Saxon England, 194
 seqq.; of England after Norman
 conquest, 509, 535, 628 *seqq.*; English,
 under Henry III., 629; of laws, 402
 seqq.
 Latin, use of, in England, 629
 Laurence of Durham, 500
 Law, Canon, 406
 Law Courts, *see* Courts
 Law, Roman, in England, 405 *seqq.*; Old
 English, 197, 239 *seqq.*; in Norman
 period, 398 *seqq.*, 402; under Henry I.,
 400; growth of, under Henry II., 580
 seqq.
 Lawyers, 248, 582
 Layamon, "Brut" of, 509
 Lazar houses, 527 *seqq.*
 Lead, in Roman Britain, 67, 68; from Peak
 district, 295
 Learning and science, lxxvii *seq.*; in 11th
 cent., 481-495; in 13th cent., 621
 "Legatus Augusti pro prætoribus," 40
 "Legatus Legionis," 77
 Legends and stories, of the prince's vision
 of the old gods and heroes of his
 country, 7; of kings of Dyfed, 16;
 of swine first brought to Britain, 16;
 of Kulhwch and Olwen, 23, 24; of the
 meeting of the two kings hunting,
 27; of the wife of King Doged, and
 Kulhwch and Olwen, 36; of green
 children in East Anglia, 579; of Ketell
 of Farnham, 580
 Legions, Roman, 76 *seqq.*, 82; stations of
 in Britain, 94 *seqq.*
 Leonine verse, 499 *note*
 Leprosy in England, 526 *seqq.*; 548
 Lewes, battle of, 564; ballad on, 637
 Licences to trade in 13th cent., 665
 Lights, maritime, 589
 Lincoln, battle of, 432
 Lincoln Cathedral, "Dean's Eye" at, 607
 Lincoln (Lindum), 44, 299; Roman churches
 at, 458; in 13th cent., 525
 Literature, Old English, 267-278; in Eng-
 land after Norman conquest, in Latin,
 499; historical, 500 *seqq.*; in 13th cent.,
 633
 Liturgy, ancient British, 120
 Llanfihangel, churches bearing name, 116
 Logic, 482
 Lombard, Peter, 485

 Londinium, *see* London
 London, under Romans, 38, 41 *note*, 44;
 Roman name of, 44; Welsh name of,
 20; earthenware of, 70; in Old English
 period, 298; municipal organisation
 under Richard I., 379; as commercial
 port under Henry II., 447; charter of
 William I. to, 519; growth of, in the
 12th and 13th cents., 521 *seqq.*; customs
 town, 664; under Henry III., 670
 London Bridge, 298
 Long-bow, 437
 Longchamp, William, Bishop of Ely, 379
 Lower classes, medieval, life of, 546
 Lud, or Ludd, 109; his temple on banks of
 Severn, 20; London called after, 20;
 "of the Silver Hand," 26, 31
 Llugvallium, *see* Carlisle
 Lundy, piratical stronghold, 588
 Lupus, Gallic bishop, 171
 Lydney, remains of Romano-British tem-
 ple at, 20, 110, 158

 Mabinogion, 22-27
 Mabon (Apollo), 108
 "Mad Parliament," the, 563
 Magic in Roman Britain, 58
 Magna Charta, 385, 582
 MAITLAND, F. W.: Old English Law, 239-
 253; English Law under Norman and
 Angevin, 398; Growth of Jurisprudence
 under Henry III., 580-584
 Malcolm King of Scots, 214
 Maldon, battle of, 216
 MANN, A. H.: Old English Paganism, 217-
 224; Old English Social Life, 304-317
 Manners in England, xcii *seq.*
 Manor houses, Anglo-Norman, construc-
 tion of, 536, 538-542, 609
 Manorial records, 646
 Manor, origin of, 183, 302, 304
 Manufacture, English, in 13th cent., 660
 seqq.
 Map, Walter, 494, 495, 508
 Marcus, King of Britain, 171
 Marish, Sir William de, pirate, 588
 Maritime adventure, 446
 Maritime law, code of, under Richard I.,
 450 *seqq.*
 Markets, 652, 654
 Markets and fairs, 205 *seqq.*
 Mark system, 183, 302
 Marriage, early British, 34 *seqq.*; Old Eng-
 lish, 310
 Marsh, Adam, 624
 Matilda, 368-369; coin attributed to, 481
 "Matthew of Westminster," 634
 Matthew Paris, work of, 634; map by, 655
 MAUDE, J. H.: The English Church, 224-239
 Medicine, in early Britain, 31; *see* Public
 Health, Physicians
 Mediterranean trade, 651
 MEDLEY, D. J.: Social Life in Middle Ages,
 532-558, 680-691
 Menhirs and stone monuments, lviii., 127,
 129
 Meon-waras, 192
 Mercenaries in 12th cent., 434
 Merchant guilds, 522
 Merchants among Old English, 190;
 foreign in 13th cent. England, 662
 Merlin, 31
 Merton College, 620
 Metre of English poetry, 510 *note*, 636, 637
 Migrations into Britain, Iberian, 1; Celtic,
 3, 128; Scotti, 98; Angles and Saxons,
 161, 294
 Military centres, Roman, 45 *seqq.*, 94-98

- Military exercises, 688 *seqq.*
 Military organisation of Romans in Britain, 45 *seqq.*, 76-106; *see* Warfare
 Mills, 659
 Mines in Celtic Britain, 14; in Roman Britain, 67 *seqq.*; forced labour in, 54; in Old English period, 296
 Minstrels, Old English, 312; medieval, 544
 Mistletoe, veneration of, 112
 Mithras-worship in Britain, 62
Mixtum, the (a meal), 556
 "Model Parliament," 566
 Mold, corselet found at, 130
 Monasteries, Welsh, 117; in Scotch Church, 225 *seqq.*; Old English, 307; pillaged by Danes, 234; Dunstan's reformation of, 236; in Normandy, 330; founded by William the Conqueror, *ibid.*; English, as industrial centres, 301; increase under Stephen, 388; life in medieval, 550 *seqq.*; organisation, 554 *seqq.*; officers, 555; influence on agriculture, 388, 644
 Monastic buildings, 550 *seqq.*
 Monastic communities as cultivators, 645
 Monastic services, 556
 Monastic settlements in Yorkshire, 388
 Monasticism, in Normandy, 330; under Stephen, 388
 Monkwearmouth, Old English architecture, 286
 Mons Badonicus, 191; battle of, 174
 Montfort, Simon de, his parliaments, 568
 Moot-stead, 210
Morgengifu, 310
 Mosaics, Roman, in Britain, 56, 72, 149-150
 Moyses Hall, Bury, 478, 671
 Municipal government, 519
Murdrum, 534
Mycel-gemot, 201
- Nationality of Roman soldiers, 99
 Navy, English, in 11th and 12th cents., 525
 Navy, Romano-British, 53, 99; of Harold, 442; under William I., 438; under John, 454 *seqq.*; under Henry I., 445; under Henry II., 447; under Richard I., 448
 Neolithic era, 124
 Newcastle (Pons Ælius), 46
 New Forest (Roman) ware, 141
 Nightdresses, 545
 Nodens, 109
 Nominalism and Realism, 484 *seqq.*; in 13th cent., 626
 Norfolk, wealth in 1341, 614
 Norman arch, 458
 Norman churches, 459 *seqq.*
 Norman conquest, effects of, lix *seqq.*, 349; on literature and language, 496 *seqq.*; on trade, 662; fusion after, 532 *seqq.*
 Normandy, society in, 320, 331; peasant revolt in, 321 *seqq.*; relations with England, 322, 324, 326, 328; civilisation of, compared with England at Conquest, 332; severed from England, 382
 Norman fleet, 438 *seqq.*, 443
 Norman-French in England, 630
 Norman masonry, 460
 Norman nobility in England, 346-348
 Norman warfare, 340
 Normans invade Gaul, 317; settle in Normandy, *ibid.*; conquer Channel Islands, 318; in Italy, 323; under William the Conqueror, 324 *seqq.*; fusion with the English, 370
 Northampton, university at, 614
- Northumberland, incorporation with realm of English king, 215
 Norwich, 299, 525
Notitia Dignitatum, 102, 163
- Oakham Castle, 467, 478
 Oath-helpers, 413 *seqq.*, 419, 426
 Occam, William of, lxviii, 627
 Odo, Bishop of Bayeux, 336
 Offa, laws of, 241, 291 *seqq.*
 Ofydd, 108
 Old English Chronicle, 276 *seqq.*; versions of, 503
 Old English divisions of year, 178
 Old English, early civilisation, lix, 166; land system, 166
 Old English law, 197, 239 *seqq.*, 241; brevity of, 241, 247; characteristics of, 247 *seqq.*
 Old English period, length and divisions of, 197
 Old English poetry, lxxvi, 276
 Old English social divisions, 182 *seqq.*
 Old English tribal system, 167
 Oleron, laws of, 449
 OMAN, C. W. C.: O'd English Army, The, 256-262; Armies, The, of the Danes, 262-267; Military Art, The (under Norman and Angevin kings), 428-438
 "Open field system," Old English, 166; in medieval England, 514 *seqq.*
 Orchards in 11th cent., 515
 Ordeal, trial by, 359-360, 412 *seqq.*
 Ordericus Vitalis, 504, 534
 Ornaments, of Britons, 18; Old English, 280
 Orm and his "Ormmulum," 511
 "Orpheo," 640
 Oswald reconverts Northumbria, 229
 Oswy, King of Northumbria, 231
 Othere, voyage of, 294
 Outlawry, 424
 "Ovates," 111, 112 *note*
 "Owl and Nightingale," the, 637
 Oxford, foundation of, 298; in Domesday, 343; St. Frideswide's fair at, 524; "Mad Parliament" at, 563
 Oxford University, founded, 298; origin of, 490; early history of, 613 *seqq.*; college system, beginnings of, in 13th cent., 620, 619 *seqq.*
 Oysters of Roman Britain, 69
- Paganism, Celtic, 106-113; Old English, 217-224
 Pages, 542
 Painting, lxxxiii *seqq.*; in 13th cent., 598
 Palæolithic era, 122
 Pallium, 364
 Papal relations with Old English Church, 225, 229, 221-234; with William I., 356 *seqq.*; with William Rufus, 364; with Henry I., 365 *seqq.*; with Henry II., 392 *seqq.*; with John, 384, 398; with Henry III., 560, 561, 574, 575
 Paris, Matthew, 634 *seqq.*; on import of corn, 679; map by, 655
 Parliament, origin of, 201, 566 *seqq.*
 Parochial system secured by Theodore, 234
 Paulinus, Bishop of Northumbria, 228
 Pearls, British, 20, 68, 134
Paine forte et dure, 421
 Pelagian heresy, 119
 Pele towers, 476
 Penda of Mercia defeats Edwin at Hatfield, 228
 Penitentials, 202

- Pennenden, moot-place for Kent, 191, 412
 Pestilence, goddesses of, in early Britain, 110
 Pestilences in early England, 253 *seqq.*; in 11th and 12th cents., 530
 Peterborough Cathedral, window at, 607
 Peterborough Chronicle, account of Domesday in, 341; relations of, to other versions of Old English Chronicle, 502
 Peter des Roches, 561
 Physician's, Jewish, 577
 Picts, 35, 39
 Picts and Scots, 170
 Piracy, 444, 588
 Poetry, Old English, lxxvi, 271; Anglo-Norman, 498 *seqq.*; English under Norman rule, 510 *seqq.*; in 13th cent., 636-640; of Chaucer, lxxvii; of Restoration, lxxix; of 18th cent., lxxx
 Pointed arch, 462
 Police, 203
 Polyandry in early Britain, 35
 Pons Ælius (Newcastle), 46
 POOLE, R. L.: Learning and Science, 1066-1216, 481-495; The Universities, 1216-1273, 613-628
 Population of England in Anglo-Saxon period, 197; in 13th cent. 642; distribution of, 644
 Port-reeves, 203
 Portsmouth, 447
 Posidonius visits Britain, 13, 14
 Pottery, early British, 126; Romano-British, 138; Old English, 280 *seqq.*
 Poultry, 548
 POWELL, F. YORK: Decline of the Roman Power, 169-175; Britain under English, 175-205; Danish Invasion, the, 205-217; Domesday Book, 340-350
Presides, 41
 "Presentment of Englishry," 400, 534
Primuspilus (senior centurion), 77
 Prisaige, 663, 664
 Privateering, 588
 Procedure in early law, 248
 Proctors at Oxford, 614
 Prose, English, lxxx
 Proverbs, collections of, in 13th cent., 637
 "Provision," custom of, 562, 574
 Provisions of Marlborough, 584
 Provisions of Merton, 584
 Provisions of Oxford, 563; language of, 535
 Provisions of Westminster, 566
 Public Health in Old English period, 253-256; 1066-1216, 526-532; 1216-1273, 678-680
 Punishments, Old English, 202; under maritime law, 449; of wreckers, 451
 Puritanism, lxxvi
 Pythas of Massila visits and writes about early Britain, 13, 127
- Quadrivium, 482 *seqq.*
 Quintain, the, 690, 692
- Ranulf Flambard, Bishop of Durham, 363-394
 Realism, 482, 484
 Reculver (Regulbium) 48, 103, 586, 587 *note*
 Reformation, the, lxxv
 Religion, *see* Christianity, Church, Paganism
 Religious literature in 13th cent., erotic character, 512
 Renaissance, the, lxxviii; and English Art, lxxxi
 "Reneard and Sigismund," 640
- Richard I., 378; death of, 380; naval ordinances of, 448
 Richard III., Duke of Normandy, 324
 Richard of Cornwall, 563, 679
 Richard the Fearless, 318
 Richard the Good, 320-322
 RICHARDS, F. T.: Roman Britain, 37-76
 Richborough (Rutupiæ), 48, 73, 75, 103 *note*
 Rishanger, William, 635
 Roads, ridgeways in Celtic Britain, 18 *seqq.*; Roman, 49, 54, 66, 94, 96, 98; in Norman times, 524; in the 13th cent., 653
 Robert Duke of Normandy, 324
 Robert Earl of Gloucester, 363
 Robert of Belesme, overthrow of, 353
 Robert of Gloucester, 503; language of, his poems, 630
 Robert of Normandy, capture of, at Tenchebrai, 353
 Roger of Wendover, 633
 Roger the Poor, Bishop of Salisbury, Justiciar, 354, 367, 461
 Roland, Song of, 498 *seqq.*
 Rollo, 317
 Romances, English, in 13th cent., 640
 Roman de Rou, 498 *seqq.*
 Roman influence on Old English law, 252
 Roman law, effect on England, 405, 408
 Romano-British Art, 138; death of, 160
 Roman public buildings in Britain, 151
 Roman roads in North of England, 96-97; in Wales, 49, 98
 Roman rule, advantages of, 48-50; effect on Britain, lix, 74, 105
 Roman sculptures, 158
 Romans in Britain, amphitheatres, 56, 158; extent of occupation, 39; colonies, 100; army, 76 *seqq.*; legions, their complement and their number, 77-78; auxiliary troops, 78; in the provinces, 80 *seqq.*; frontier defence, 80; in Wales, 98; authorities on, 84; stations of the "legiones," 85-86; basilica, 156; at Silchester, 157; conquest, 8 *seqq.*; forum, 156; in Britain, *ibid.*; houses in Italy, 145; in Britain, 146; origin of, 147; corridor and courtyard types, 146; at Carisbrooke, Andover, Silchester, Bignor and Darenth (Kent), 146, 147; frescoes in, 148; mosaics of, 119 *seqq.*; temples, 158; tombstones, 154 *seqq.*; 158; walls, 155; decline of Roman power, 73-76, 169 *seqq.*; influence on Britain, 74 *seqq.*, 105 *seqq.*; *see* also below
 Roman shrines, 154
 Roman soldiers in Britain, nationality of, 99
 Roman stations in Britain, 96 *seqq.*; in Wales, 97-98
 Roman wall, of Hadrian, 86, 89, 151; of Pius, 90 *seqq.*, 151
 "Romescot," 356
 Roscellinus or Roscelin, 482
 Runes, 219
 Rutupiae, *see* Richborough
 Rye, *see* Cinque Ports
- Saga, or prose epic, 210
 Sailors, Norman, 442
 St. Alban, martyred, 115
 St. Albans (Verulamium), 44: abbey of, after conquest, 360, 362; historical school at, 633 *seqq.*
 St. Anthony's fire, 255, 530
 St. Columba founds Iona, 225
 St. Cross, Winchester, 464

- St. George, banner of, 452
 St. Hugh of Avalon, Bishop of Lincoln, 395, 397
 St. Hugh ("Little") of Lincoln, 579
 St. Joseph of Arimathea, 114 *seqq.*
 St. Patrick condemns slavery, 18; converts Ireland, 225
 St. Paul's, London, 298
 St. Sampson, 254
 St. William of Norwich, 578, 675
 Salisbury Cathedral, 473, 592 *seqq.*
 Salt works, 31, 300
 Samian ware, 138
 Sanctuary, right of, in Wales, 122; in England, 425
 Sandwich, customs town, 664; *see* Cinque Ports
 Sarum, fall of (550), 191; bishopric at, 360
 Saturday, origin of name, 220
 Saxons, 162; invasion of Britain, 163
 Scab in sheep, first appearance of, 641
 Schools for boys in the Norman period, 488; after the Reformation, lxx
 Science in 17th and 18th centuries, lxxi; in 19th cent., lxxiii *seq.*
 Scots, migrations from Scotland, 93
 Scotland, Gaels and Celts in, 2; Romans in, 92-93; in Old English period, 214; and William I., 339; and William II., 350; and Henry II., 376; language in 13th cent., 631 (map)
 Scots, 214
 Scriptorium, the Monastic, 552
 Sculpture, English, lxxxiv; in 13th cent., 599 *seqq.*
 Seafight of Richard I. in Mediterranean, 452
 Seafights, 590
 Senlac, battle of, *see* Hastings
 Septimius Severus, Scotch campaign of, 92
 Serfs, 183
Scviri, 41
 Sexes, intercourse of, in Middle Ages, 512
 Sheep, among Old English, 187; milk of, 187, 518; scab among, 641; rearing, among monks, 644; profit from, 650
 Sheriffs, 203, 378
 Ships, early Celtic, 19; of Angli and Saxon invaders, 294; Norman, build of, 440 *seqq.*; under Richard I., fittings of, 451; size of in 13th cent., 588, 589
 Shire-courts used by Henry I. and II., and Richard I., 507
 Shire-moors, 401
 Shops, medieval, 662
 Silchester, 146; Roman church at, 57, 121; amphitheatre at, 158; wall round, 155; forum of, 156 *seqq.*; basilica at, 157; desolate, 297
 Silures, 10
 Silver, 296
 Silvester, Bernard, 492
 Simcon of Durham, 504
 Simon de Montfort, 563 *seqq.*
 Sirona, Welsh goddess, 108
 "Sir Tristrem", 633
 Sward Boornssen, ancestor of English royal family, 208
 Slate in Roman Britain, 69
 Slaves, Old English, 183, 194, 296 *seqq.*, 309; in Domesday Survey, 512
 Slave trade, in early Britain, 18; in Roman Britain, 69; prohibited by Old English laws, 296; interfered with by Lanfranc and Wulfstan, 360
 Smith, Adam, influence of, lxxii
 SMITH, A. L.: Trade and Industry in Old English Period, 294-304; in Anglo-Norman Period, 512-526; Political History under William I., 333-340; William Rufus and Henry I., 350-355; Stephen, 367-372; Henry II. and John, 372-387; Henry III., 563-566; genesis of Parliament, 566-573
 Snake's egg, Druidical myth of, 112
 Snakes (shies), 451
 "Social England," scope of, xlvii-lviii; divisions of, lviii-lvi
 Social life, in Celtic Britain, 4 *seqq.*, 22, 37; social inequality, 23; in Roman Britain, 37-76; of Old English, 304-317; in medieval England, 532-558, 680-691
 Soemen, 516, 546
 "Solar," 538
 Sources, of history of agriculture, 645 *seqq.*; of history of trade, 648; *see* Authorities
 Southampton, and Mediterranean trade, 651; customs town, 664
 Sovereignty of the Seas, 456
 Squires, 542
 Stamford, secession from Oxford to (1331), 615
 Standard, battle of the, 371, 376
 Stanmoor, battle of, 206
 Statuettes, Romano-British, 143
 Steelyard, the, 523
 Stephen, reign of, 368 *seqq.*; his reign an anarchy, 367 *seqq.*; and Jews, 666
 Stigand of Canterbury deposed, 355
 Stilicho, 170
 Stokesay Manor House, 610
 Stonehenge, 127
 Stories, of death of Cynewulf and Cyneheard, 198; of Hubert de Burgh and the blacksmith, 516; *see* Legends.
 Stourbridge Fair, 654
 Strongbow, William, 354
 Suetius, 110
 Suetonius Paulinus in Anglesey, 113
 Sunday, observance of, in Celtic Church, 120
 Swine, 2, 16, 513, 548
 Tacitus on Britain, 18, 20, 38, 84
 Tactics, naval, 590
Taeog, 7 *note*
 Tail-rime, 637
 Taliesin, 31
 Tallage, 672 *note*.
 Tar and feathers as punishment, 449
 Taxation, in Roman Britain, 50 *seqq.*; in medieval England, 550; as factor in English history, 571; on imports, 652, 663, 664
 Tebalus, Bestiary of, 636
 Temples in early Britain, 20, 55, 158
 Tertiana, goddess ofague, 61
 Theatres in Roman Britain, 49, 158
 Thegn, or Thane, 182, *seqq.*; his service, 182; wergild of, 250
 Theodore of Tarsus, lxi; made Archbishop of Canterbury, 230; organiser of English Church, 231
 Theodosius, 170
 Thetford, burning of, 216
 "Thingwald," 210
 Thornton, Abraham, and trial by battle, 422
 Thralls, *see* Slavery
 "Thrush and the Nightingale," 637
 Thurecytel, Danish Earl of Bedford, 212
 Thurecytel the Tall, 200
 Tin, 14, 220
 Tombs, Celtic, 130
 Totemism in Celtic Britain, 7, 24, 35
 Tournaments, 690

- Town life under Normans and Angevins, 518 *seqq.*
 Township and borough differentiated, 520
 Towns, in Roman Britain, 42-45; Old English, 299; English, chief, in 11th and 12th cents., 525; in 13th cent., 661
 Tracery, "plate" and "bar," 605, 606
 Trade, lxxxv *seq.*, xcii.; pre-Roman, 18 *seqq.*, 134; in Roman Britain, 67-70; Old English, 296; English in 13th cent., 617 *seqq.*; regulation of, by Crown, 663
 Trades in 13th cent., 661
 Trafalgar, battle of, xciii
 Travel, Old English, 317; in Norman and Angevin period, 536 *seqq.*; in 13th cent., 663
 Treaty of Falaise, 376
 Treaty of Wallingford, 369, 481
 Trees in early Britain, 18
 Tre'r Ceiri, hill fort at, lvii
 Triads, 113
 Trial by battle, 400, 412 *seqq.*, 414, 534; last instance (1818), 422
 Tribal-moot chooses kings, 200
 Tribe, Celtic, constitution of, 4 *seqq.*; possessions, 29, 30
 Tribesmen and villages in early Britain, differences, 4; conditions become assimilated, 8
 Tribunes of legions, 77
Tributum, 51-52
 Trivium and Quadrivium, the, 482 *seqq.*
- Ulfilas, 267
 University, origin of, 489 *seqq.*; meaning of term, *ibid.*; history of English, lxvii, 613, 628; see Oxford, Cambridge
 Upchurch ware, 141
 Urban II., 364
 Uriconium, see Wroxeter
 Usury, Church view of, 666
- Vacarius, 408, 490, 494
 Valentia, province of, 40
 Valentinian, 170
 Versification, English, 510, 636, 637
 Verulamium, 44; see St. Albans
 Vespasian and Britain, 86
 "Vicarius Britanniarum," 41
 Vikings (Wickings), 210, 262; derivation of term, 209 *note*
 Vill, 176
 Village, the, in Celtic Britain, 7, 32; see Villans, Open field system
 Villas, Roman, 76, 146 *seqq.*; date of, 176, 178
 Villcinage in 11th cent., 512, 514, 516 *seqq.*
 Vineyards, 18, 67, 515
 Viroconium, see Wroxeter
 Vortigern, 172
 Vortipore, 184
- Wace, Robert, 498, 509
 Wales, under Romans, 98; Christianity in, 116-118, 121 *seqq.*; relations with Old English kings, 214; after Norman conquest, 353, 374 *seqq.*
 Walter, Hubert, Archbishop of Canterbury, 380, 384, 396
 Walter of Merton, 620
 Waltheof, 202
- "Wanderer," poem, 274
 "Wapen'akes" of Northmen, 202
 Warfare, Old English, 251 *seqq.*, 264; Danish, 263; Norman, 340 *seqq.*
 Wayland Smith's cave, 223
 Weapons, Celtic, 15; Old English, 258 *seqq.*; Danish, 266; after Norman conquest, 431, 433, 436, 437
 Weaving, 281, 657, 658, 661
 Week, days of the, 217
 Weights and measures, supervision of, 523, 656
 Wells, Bishop's palace at, 611
 Wells Cathedral, 599 *seqq.*
Wergild, 250, 305
 Westminster Abbey, Edward the Confessor's work at, 290; reconstruction under Henry II., 596 *seqq.*
 Westminster Chapter House, 598
 Westminster Hall, as legal centre, 404; architecture of, 476 *seqq.*
 Wheat, area of, in 11th cent., 513; importation of, 679
 Whitby Abbey, 307; synod at, 231
 White Ship, 351, 442, 416
Wicking, 209, 210, 262
 "Widsith," poem, 274
 William I., lineage, 324; history up to Battle of Hastings, 324-332; expedition to England, 328 *seqq.*; conquest of England, 336; methods of subjugating England, 339; defeats Danes (1069), 338; and Scotland, 339; effects of rule, 340; his relations with the Pope, 358; separates Church and lay courts, 359
 William II., 354 *seqq.*; controversy with Anselm, 364
 William Longsword, Duke of Normandy, 318
 William of Malmesbury, 500, 506
 William of Newburgh, 500, 506; testimony as to famine of 1196, 532
 William of Ockham (Occam), lxviii, 627
 William of Sens, 468; and painted glass, 604
 William of Wrotham, 456
 Winchelsea, see Cinque Ports
 Winchester, 298; King's Hall at, 611; fair, 654
 Windows, medieval, 539; in 12th cent., 605; "Early English" and "Decorated," 605-608
 Wine, in early Britain, 18, 67; native, 515; imported, 652; taxation on, 664
Witte theowas, 309 *note*
 Witenagemot, 200 *seqq.*
 Woden, 219; king a descendant of, 198
 Women, in early Britain, 33; among Old English, 309 *seqq.*; in medieval society, 542, 544
 Woodchester, Roman remains at, 72, 151
 Woodland in 11th cent., 513
 Wool, English, 296; taxation paid in, 644
 Wright, Joseph, lxviii
 Wroxeter (Uriconium or Viroconium), 45, 155, 196
 Wulfstan, Bishop of Worcester, 360, 362
 Wycliffe, lxiv.
- Yardland, 180
 "Yellow Death," 110, 253, 254
 York (Eboracum), 44, 46, 94, 100, 299
 Yorkshire, rising in, against Romans, 55; against William I., 336; reclaimed by monks, 644



A SELECTED LIST
OF
CASSELL & COMPANY'S
PUBLICATIONS



Illustrated, Fine Art, and other Volumes.

- Adventure, The World of.** *Cheap Edition.* Profusely Illustrated with Stirring Pictures and Eighteen Coloured Plates. In Three Vols. 5s. each.
- Adventures in Criticism.** By Q (A. T. QUILLER-ROUCH). 6s.
- Advice to Women on the Care of their Health, Before, During, and After Confinement.** By FLORENCE STACPOOLE. *New Edition.* 2s.
- Æsop's Fables.** Illustrated by ERNEST GRISET. *Cheap Edition.* Cloth, 3s. 6d.; bevelled boards, gilt edges, 5s.
- Animals, Popular History of.** By HENRY SCHERREN, F.Z.S. With 13 Coloured Plates and other Illustrations. 6s.
- Army Business, The, and its London Office.** By a Colonel in Business. 1s.
- Art, Sacred.** With nearly 200 Full-page Illustrations and Descriptive Text. 9s.
- Art, The Magazine of.** With Exquisite Photogravures, a Series of Full-page Plates, and hundreds of Illustrations. *Yearly Volume*, 21s.
- Artistic Anatomy.** By Prof. M. DUVAL. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- At Britain's Call, Dramas of a Memorable Year.** By S. WALKER. 6d.
- Automobile, The: Its Construction and Management.** Translated from GERARD LAVERGNE's "Manuel Théorique et Pratique de l'Automobile sur Route." With Additions and New Illustrations. Revised and Edited by P. N. HASLUCK. 10s. 6d. net.
- Ballads and Songs.** By WILLIAM MAKEPEACE THACKERAY. With Original Illustrations by H. M. BROCK. 6s.
- Barber, Charles Burton, The Works of.** With Forty-one Plates and Portraits, and Introduction by HARRY FURNISS. *Cheap Edition.* 7s. 6d.
- Berry, D.D., Rev. C. A., Life of.** By the Rev. J. S. DRUMMOND. 6s.
- Biographical Dictionary, Cassell's.** Containing Memoirs of the Most Eminent Men and Women of all Ages and Countries. *Cheap Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- Bird Friends, Our.** By R. KEARTON, F.Z.S. With 100 Illustrations from Photographs by C. KEARTON. 5s.
- Birds, Our Rarer British: Their Nests, Eggs, and Summer Haunts.** By R. KEARTON, F.Z.S. With 70 Illustrations from Photographs by C. KEARTON. 7s. 6d.
- Birds' Nests, British: How, Where, and When to Find and Identify Them.** By R. KEARTON, F.Z.S. With nearly 130 Illustrations of Nests, Eggs, Young, &c., from Photographs by C. KEARTON. 21s.
- Black Watch, The.** The Record of an Historic Regiment. By ARCHIBALD FORBES, LL.D. 6s.
- Boer War, Cassell's Illustrated History of.** 7s. 6d.
- Breechloader, The, and How to Use It.** By W. GREENER. 3s. 6d.
- Britain's Roll of Glory; or, the Victoria Cross, its Heroes, and their Valour.** By D. H. PARRY. Illustrated. *Cheap and Enlarged Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- Britain's Sea Kings and Sea Fights.** With Original Illustrations. 7s. 6d.
- British Ballads.** Illustrated. *Cheap Edition.* Two Vols. in One. Cloth, 7s. 6d.
- British Battles on Land and Sea.** By JAMES GRANT. With about 800 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* Four Vols., 3s. 6d. each.
- British Sculpture and Sculptors of To-day.** By M. H. SPIELMANN. Illustrated. Paper, 5s. net; cloth, 7s. 6d. net.
- Building World.** In Half-Yearly Volumes, 4s. 6d. each.
- Campaign Pictures of the War in South Africa (1899-1900).** Letters from the Front. By A. G. HALES. 6s.
- Canaries and Cage-Birds, The Illustrated Book of.** By W. A. BLAKSTON, W. SWAYSLAND, and A. F. WIENER. With 56 Facsimile Coloured Plates. 35s.
- Cassell's Magazine.** Yearly Volume, 8s.; Half-Yearly Volume, 5s.
- Cathedrals, Abbeys, and Churches of England and Wales.** Descriptive, Historical, Pictorial. *Popular Edition.* Two Vols., 12s. the set.
- Cats and Kittens.** By HENRIETTE RONNER. With Portrait and 13 magnificent Full-page Photogravure Plates and numerous Illustrations. 4to, £2 10s.
- Child's Bible, The.** *New Edition.* With 100 full-page plates, including 12 in Colours. 10s. 6d.
- China Painting.** By FLORENCE LEWIS. With Sixteen Coloured Plates, &c. 5s.
- Chinese Pictures: Notes on Photographs made in China.** By MRS. BISHOP, F.R.G.S. (ISABELLA BIRD). With 60 Illustrations from Photographs by the Author. 3s. 6d.
- Chinese Crisis, The Story of the.** By ALEXIS KRAUSSE. 4s. 6d.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Chinese Porcelain.** By COSMO MONKHOUSE. Illustrated, 30s. net.
- Choice Dishes at Small Cost.** By A. G. PAYNE. *Cheap Edition*, 1s.
- Chums.** The Illustrated Paper for Boys. Yearly Volume, 8s.
- Civil Service, Guide to Employment in the.** *Entirely New Edition.* Paper, 1s.; cloth, 1s. 6d.
- Clinical Manuals for Practitioners and Students of Medicine.** (*A List of Volumes forwarded post free on application to the Publishers.*)
- Clyde, Cassell's Guide to the.** Illustrated. Paper covers, 6d.; cloth, 1s.
- Cobden Club, Works published for the.** (*A Complete List on application.*)
- Colour.** By Prof. A. H. CHURCH. *New and Enlarged Edition*, 3s. 6d.
- Conquests of the Cross.** Edited by EDWIN HODDER. With numerous Original Illustrations. Complete in Three Vols. 9s. each.
- Cookery, Cassell's Dictionary of.** With about 9,000 Recipes. 5s.
- Cookery, A Year's.** By PHYLLIS BROWNE. *Cheap Edition.* Limp cloth, 1s.; bevelled cloth boards, 2s.
- Cookery Book, Cassell's New Universal.** By LIZZIE HERITAGE. With 12 Coloured Plates and other Illustrations. 1,344 pages, strongly bound in leather gilt, 6s.
- Cookery, Cassell's Popular.** With Four Coloured Plates. Cloth gilt, 2s.
- Cookery, Cassell's Shilling.** Limp cloth. 1s.
- Cookery for Common Ailments.** By A Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians and PHYLLIS BROWNE. *Cheap Edition.* 1s.
- Cookery, Vegetarian.** By A. G. PAYNE. *Cheap Edition.* 1s.
- Cooking by Gas, The Art of.** By MARIE J. SUGG. Illustrated. Cloth, 2s.
- Copyright in Books, The Law and History of.** (Seven Lectures.) By AUGUSTINE BIRRELL, M.P. 3s. 6d. net.
- Countries of the World, The.** By Dr. ROBERT BROWN, M.A., F.L.S. With about 750 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* In Six Vols. 6s. each.
- Cyclopædia, Cassell's Concise.** With about 600 Illustrations. 5s. Half Persian, 6s. 6d.
- Cyclopædia, Cassell's Miniature.** Containing 30,000 Subjects. *Cheap and Revised Edition.* Limp cloth, 1s. Cloth gilt, 1s. 6d.
- Dainty Breakfasts, The Dictionary of.** By PHYLLIS BROWNE. 1s.
- Dante in Paradise, With. Readings from the "Paradiso."** By ROSE S. SELFE. With 6 Illustrations. 2s.
- "Death or Glory Boys, The."** The Story of the 17th Lancers. By D. H. PARRY. With Frontispiece. Cloth gilt, 6s.
- Dictionaries.** (For description, see alphabetical letter.)
- Dog, Illustrated Book of the.** By VERO SHAW, B.A. With 28 Coloured Plates. Cloth bevelled, 35s.; half-morocco, 45s.
- Doré Don Quixote, The.** With about 400 Illustrations by GUSTAVE DORÉ. *Cheap Edition.* Cloth, 10s. 6d.
- Doré Gallery, The.** With 250 Illustrations by GUSTAVE DORÉ. 4to, 42s.
- Doré's Dante's Inferno.** Illustrated by GUSTAVE DORÉ. *Popular Edition.* With Preface by A. J. BUTLER. Cloth gilt, 7s. 6d.
- Doré's Dante's Purgatory and Paradise.** Illustrated by GUSTAVE DORÉ. *Cheap Edition.* 7s. 6d.
- Doré's Milton's Paradise Lost.** Illustrated by GUSTAVE DORÉ. 4to. *Cheap Edition*, 12s. 6d. *Popular Edition*, cloth or buckram, 7s. 6d.
- Earth's Beginning, The.** By SIR ROBERT BALL, LL.D. Illustrated. 7s. 6d.
- Earth, Our, and its Story.** Edited by Dr. ROBERT BROWN, F.L.S. With nearly 800 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* In Three Vols. 5s. each.
- Egypt: Descriptive, Historical, and Picturesque.** By Prof. G. EBERS. Translated by CLARA BELL, with Notes by SAMUEL BIRCH, LL.D., &c. Two Vols. 42s.
- Electric Current, The.** How Produced and How Used. By R. MULLINEUX WALMSLEY, D.Sc., &c. Illustrated. 10s. 6d.
- Electricity, Practical.** By Prof. W. E. AYRTON, F.R.S. *Entirely New and Enlarged Edition.* Completely re-written. Illustrated. 9s.
- Electricity in the Service of Man.** A Popular and Practical Treatise. With upwards of 950 Illustrations. *New and Cheaper Edition*, 7s. 6d.
- Employment for Boys on Leaving School, Guide to.** By W. S. BEARD. F.R.G.S. 1s. 6d.
- Encyclopædic Dictionary, The.** In Fourteen Divisional Vols., 10s. 6d. each.
- England and Wales, Pictorial.** With upwards of 320 illustrations prepared from copyright photographs. 9s.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- England, A History of.** From the Landing of Julius Cæsar to the Present Day. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.A. Fully Illustrated, 5s. Cloth gilt, gilt edges. 6s. 6d.
- English Dictionary, Cassell's.** Containing Definitions of upwards of 100,000 Words and Phrases. *Cheap Edition*, 3s. 6d.
- English History, The Dictionary of.** Edited by SIDNEY LOW, B.A., and Prof. F. S. PULLING, M.A., with Contributions by Eminent Writers. *New Edition*, 7s. 6d.
- English Literature, Library of.** By Prof. H. MORLEY. In 5 Vols. 7s. 6d. each.
- English Literature, Morley's First Sketch of.** *Revised Edition*, 7s. 6d.
- English Literature, The Story of.** By ANNA BUCKLAND. 3s. 6d.
- English Writers from the Earliest Period to Shakespeare.** By HENRY MORLEY. Eleven Vols. 5s. each.
- Etiquette of Good Society.** *New Edition.* Edited and Revised by LADY COLIN CAMPBELL. 1s.; cloth, 1s. 6d.
- Eton Boy's Letters, An.** By G. NUGENT BANKES. 5s.
- Eventful Life, An.** By the Rev. A. J. HARRISON. 6s.
- Familiar Butterflies and Moths.** By W. F. KIRBY. With 18 Coloured Plates. 6s.
- Family Doctor, Cassell's.** By A MEDICAL MAN. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition*, 6s.
- Family Lawyer, Cassell's.** By A BARRISTER-AT-LAW. 10s. 6d.
- Far East, The New.** By ARTHUR DIÓSY. With a Map and Illustrations. *Cheap Edition*, 6s.
- Fiction, Cassell's Popular Library of.** 3s. 6d. each.
- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>The Refiner's Fire. By Mrs. E. Heckliffe.</p> <p>By a Hair's Breadth. } By Headon Hill.</p> <p>Spectre Goblins. } By Headon Hill.</p> <p>Island Nights' Entertainments. By R. L. Stevenson.</p> <p>What Cheer! } By W. Clark Russell.</p> <p>List, ye Landsmen! } People's Edition, 6d.</p> <p>Mrs. Cliff's Yacht. } By Frank Stockton.</p> <p>The Winner of the Two- }
Horned Alexander. }
The Girl at Cobhurst. }
The Adventures of }
Captain Horn. }
Pomona's Travels. }
Cupid's Garden. By Ellen Thorneycroft Fowler.</p> <p>The Impregnable City. } By Max Pemberton.</p> <p>The Sea Wolves. } People's Edition, 6d.</p> <p>The Iron Pirate. }
Loveday. By A. E. Wickham. }
Tiny Luttrell. }
Young Blood. }
Some Persons Un- }
known. } By E. W. Hornung.</p> <p>The Rogue's March. }
My Lord Duke. }
The White Shield. By Bertram Mitford.</p> <p>Tuxbury's Little Maid. By G. B. Burgin.</p> <p>The Hispaniola Plate. By John Blundell-Burton. People's Edition, 6d.</p> <p>Highway of Sorrow. By Hesba Stretton and Famous Russian Fable.</p> <p>King Solomon's Mines. By H. Rider Haggard. Also People's Edition, 6d.</p> | <p>The Admirable Lady Biddy Fane. By Frank Barrett.</p> <p>The Lights of Sydney. By Lilian Turner.</p> <p>Is: A Love Story. } By "O." (A. T. Quiller-Couch).</p> <p>Dead Man's Rock. } People's Edition, 6d.</p> <p>The Splendid Spur. }
The Red Terror: A Story of the Farns Commune. By Edward King.</p> <p>The Little Squire. By Mrs. Henry de la Pasture.</p> <p>Zero, the Slave.</p> <p>Into the Unknown! } By Lawrence Fletcher.</p> <p>Capture of the "Estrella." The. A Tale of the Slave Trade. By Commander Claud Harding, R.N.</p> <p>The Awkward Squads. And other Ulster Stories. By Shan F. Bullock.</p> <p>A King's Hussar. }
A Free Lance in. } By Herbert Compton.</p> <p>a Far Land.</p> <p>Playthings and Parodies. Short Stories, Sketches, &c. By Barry Pain.</p> <p>The Medicine Lady. By L. T. Meade. People's Edition, 6d.</p> <p>Father Stafford. By Anthony Hope. People's Edition, 6d.</p> <p>The Avenger of Blood. By J. Maclaren Cobban.</p> <p>The Man in Black. }
People's Edition, 6d. }
Francis Claude, The }
Story of. } By Stanley Weyman.</p> <p>From the Memoirs of a Minister of France.</p> <p>The Doings of Ramles Haw. By A. Conan Doyle.</p> |
|---|--|
- Field Naturalist's Handbook, The.** By Revs. J. G. WOOD and THEODORE WOOD. *Cheap Edition*, 2s. 6d.
- Field Hospital, The Tale of a.** By Sir FREDERICK TREVES, F.R.C.S., K.C.V.O. With 14 Illustrations. Bound in Leather, 6s.
- Figuer's Popular Scientific Works.** With Several Hundred Illustrations in each. 3s. 6d. each. The Insect World. The Human Race. Reptiles and Birds. Mammalia. The World before the Deluge. The Vegetable World. The Ocean World.
- Flora's Feast. A Masque of Flowers.** Penned and Pictured by WALTER CRANE. With 40 pages in Colours. 5s.
- Flower Painting, Elementary.** With Eight Coloured Plates. 3s.
- Flowers, and How to Paint Them.** By MAUD NAFTAL. With Coloured Plates. 5s.
- Franco-German War, Cassell's History of the.** Complete in Two Vols., containing about 500 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition*, 6s. each.
- Fruit Growing, Pictorial Practical.** Illustrated. 1s.; also, 1s. 6

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Garden Flowers, Familiar.** By Prof. F. EDWARD HULME, F.L.S., F.S.A. With 200 Full-page Coloured Plates, and Descriptive Text by SHIRLEY HIBBERD. *Cheap Edition.* In Five Vols., 3s. 6d. each.
- Gardener, The.** Yearly Volume. Profusely Illustrated. 7s. 6d.
- Gazetteer of Great Britain and Ireland, Cassell's.** With Numerous Illustrations and 60 Maps. 6 Vols., 5s. each.
- Gladstone, William Ewart, The Life of.** Edited by Sir WEMYSS REID. Profusely Illustrated. 7s. 6d.; in 2 Vols., 9s.
- Gleanings from Popular Authors.** *Cheap Edition*, 3s. 6d.
- Gun and its Development, The.** By W. W. GREENER. Illustrated. 10s. 6d.
- Health, The Book of.** By Eminent Physicians and Surgeons. Cloth, 21s.
- Heavens, The Story of the.** By Sir ROBERT BALL, LL.D., &c. With Coloured Plates and Wood Engravings. 10s. 6d.
- Heroes of Britain in Peace and War.** With 300 Original Illustrations. One Vol., 3s. 6d.
- History, A Foot-note to. Eight Years of Trouble in Samoa.** By R. L. STEVENSON. 6s.
- Home Life of the Ancient Greeks, The.** Translated by ALICE ZIMMERN. 5s.
- Horses and Dogs.** By O. EERELMAN. With Descriptive Text. Translated from the Dutch by CLARA BELL. With 15 Full-page and other Illustrations. 25s. net.
- Houghton, Lord: The Life, Letters, and Friendships of Richard Monckton Milnes, First Lord Houghton.** By Sir WEMYSS REID. Two Vols. 32s.
- Hygiene and Public Health.** By B. ARTHUR WHITELEGGE, M.D. Illustrated. *New and Revised Edition*, 7s. 6d.
- In a Conning Tower; or, How I Took H.M.S. "Majestic" into Action.** By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.A. *Cheap Edition*. Illustrated. 6d. Cloth 1s.
- India, Cassell's History of.** In One Vol. *Cheap Edition*, 7s. 6d.
- Khiva, A Ride to.** By Col. FRED BURNABY. *New Edition*. Illustrated. 3s. 6d.
- Kilogram, The Coming of the; or, The Battle of the Standards.** By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.A. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition*, 6d.
- Kronstadt.** By MAX PEMBERTON. With 8 Full-page Plates. 6s.
- Ladies' Physician, The.** By A London Physician. *Cheap Edition*, 3s. 6d.
- Lady's Dressing-Room, The.** Translated from the French by Lady COLIN CAMPBELL. *Cheap Edition*, 2s. 6d.
- Landels, William, D.D.: A Memoir.** By his Son, the Rev. THOMAS D. LANDELS, M.A. 6s.
- Landscape Painting in Water Colours.** By J. MACWHIRTER, R.A. With 23 Coloured Plates. Cloth, 5s.
- Letts's Diaries and other Time-saving Publications** are now published exclusively by CASSELL & COMPANY. (*A List sent post free on application.*)
- Little Huguenot, The.** By MAX PEMBERTON. 1s. 6d.
- London Afternoons.** By Rev. W. J. LOFTIE, F.S.A., F.Z.S. Illustrated. 10s. 6d. net.
- London, Cassell's Guide to.** Illustrated. *New Edition*, 6d. Cloth, 1s.
- London, Greater.** By EDWARD WALFORD. Two Vols. With about 400 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition*, 4s. 6d. each.
- London, Old and New.** By WALTER THORNBURY and EDWARD WALFORD. Six Vols., with about 1,200 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition*, 4s. 6d. each.
- Marine Painting in Water Colour.** By W. L. WYLLIE, A.R.A. With 24 Coloured Plates. Cloth, 5s.
- Masque of Days, A. From the last Essays of Elia.** By WALTER CRANE. With 40 Designs in Colour. 6s.
- Medical Handbook of Life Assurance.** By JAMES EDWARD POLLOCK, M.D., and JAMES CRISHOLM. *New and Revised Edition*, 7s. 6d.
- Medicine, Manuals for Students of.** (*A List forwarded post free on application.*)
- Mesdag, H. W., the Painter of the North Sea.** With Etchings and Descriptive Text. By PH. ZILCKEN. The Text translated from the Dutch by CLARA BELL. 36s.
- Military Forces of the Crown, The: Their Organisation and Equipment.** By Col. W. H. DANIEL. 5s.
- Modern Europe, A History of.** By C. A. FYFFE, M.A. *Cheap Edition in One Volume*, 10s. 6d. *Library Edition, Illustrated*, 3 vols., 7s. 6d. each.
- National Gallery Catalogue.** Illustrated. 6d. net.
- National Portrait Gallery.** Edited by LIONEL CUST, M.A., F.S.A. Illustrating every picture in the National Portrait Gallery. Two vols., paper covers, £6 6s. net.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- National Gallery, The.** Edited by Sir E. J. POYNTER, P.R.A. Illustrating every Picture in the National Gallery. Three Vols. (*Price on application.*)
- National Library, Cassell's.** Paper covers, 3d.; cloth, 6d. (*A Complete List of the Volumes post free on application.*)
- Natural History, Cassell's Concise.** By E. PERCEVAL WRIGHT, M.A., M.D., F.L.S. With several Hundred Illustrations. 7s. 6d.
- Natural History, Cassell's New.** Edited by P. MARTIN DUNCAN, M.B., F.R.S., F.G.S. *Cheap Edition.* With about 2,000 Illusts. Three Double Vols., 6s. each.
- Nature and a Camera, With.** By RICHARD KEARTON, F.Z.S. With Frontispiece, and 180 Pictures from Photographs by CHERRY KEARTON. 21s.
- Newman Hall. An Autobiography.** With Portrait and Frontispiece. *Cheap Edition*, 6s.
- North-West Passage by Land, The.** By LORD MILTON and Dr. CHEADLE. *Cheap Edition.* Illustrated. 2s.
- Novels, Popular.** Extra crown 8vo, cloth, 6s. each.
- The Giant's Gate. By MAX PEMBERTON.
- The Laird's Luck, and other Fireside Tales. By A. T. QUILLER-COUCH ("Q")
- Lepidus the Centurion: A Roman of To-day. By EDWIN LESTER ARNOLD
- A Man of Millions. By SAMUEL R. KEIGHTLEY, M.A.
- The Princess Cynthia. By MARGUERITE BRYANT.
- The Ambassador's Adventure. By ALLEN UPWARD.
- Alice of Old Vincennes. By MAURICE THOMPSON.
- Afield and Afloat. Illustrated. By FRANK STOCKTON.
- A Soldier of the King. By DORA M. JONES.
- Tommy and Grizel. } By J. M. BARRIE.
- Sentimental Tommy. } The Little Minister. }
- Old Fires and Profitable Ghosts. } By Q (A. T. QUILLER-COUCH).
- The Ship of Stars. }
- A Bitter Heritage. } By J. BLOUNDELLE-BURTON.
- A Vanished Rival. } Jenetha's Venture. By Colonel HARCOURT.
- The Little Novice. By ALIX KING.
- In Royal Purple. By WILLIAM PIGOTT.
- Roxana. By LOUIS CRESWICK.
- The Guests of Mine Host. By MARIAN BOWER.
- The Shellback; or, At Sea in the 'Sixties. By ALEC J. BOYD.
- Potsherds. By MABEL C. BIRCHENOUGH (Mrs. HENRY BIRCHENOUGH).
- Grace O'Malley, Princess and Pirate. By ROBERT MACHRAY.
- A Limited Success. By SARAH PITT.
- Ill-gotten Gold: A Story of a Great Wrong and a Great Revenge. By W. G. TARBET.
- The Garden of Swords: A Story of the Siege of Strasburg. Illustrated. } By MAX PEMBERTON.
- Kronstadt. }
- Puritan's Wife, A. }
- The Master of Ballantrae. } Also *People's Edition*, 6d. each. By R. L. STEVENSON. } Also a *Popular Edition*, 3s. 6d. each.
- Kidnapped. }
- Catona. }
- Treasure Island. }
- The Black Arrow. }
- The Wrecker. By R. L. STEVENSON and LLOYD OSBOURNE. *Also People's Edition*, 6d.
- Our Own Country.** With 1,200 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* 3 Vols., 5s. each.
- Oxford, Reminiscences of.** By the Rev. W. TUCKWELL, M.A. Illustrated, 9s.
- Paris, Cassell's Guide to.** Profusely Illustrated. 6d.; cloth, 1s.
- Paris, Old and New.** Illustrated. In Two Vols., 10s. 6d. each.
- Passing of the Dragon, The.** By F. JAY CEAUGH. 1s.
- Peel, Sir Robert.** By LORD ROSEBERY. 2s. 6d.
- Penny Magazine, The New.** With about 650 Illustrations. In Quarterly Vols., 2s. 6d. each.
- Peoples of the World, The.** By Dr. ROBERT BROWN, F.L.S. Complete in Six Vols. With Illustrations. 3s. 6d. each.
- Peril and Patriotism.** True Tales of Heroic Deeds and Startling Adventures. 2 Vols. in One, 5s.
- Personal Recollections.** By H. SUTHERLAND EDWARDS. 7s. 6d.
- Phrase and Fable, Dr. Brewer's Dictionary of.** Entirely New and largely increased Edition, 10s. 6d. Also in half-morocco, 2 Vols., 15s.
- Physiology for Students, Elementary.** By ALFRED I. SCHOFIELD, M.D., M.R.C.S. With Two Coloured Plates and numerous Illustrations. *New Edition*, 5s.
- Picturesque America.** Complete in Four Vols., with 48 Exquisite Steel Plates, and about 800 Original Wood Engravings £12 12s. the set. *Popular Edition* in Four Vols., price 18s. each.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Picturesque Canada.** With about 600 Original Illustrations. 2 Vols. £9 9s. the set.
- Picturesque Europe.** POPULAR EDITION. In Five Vols. Each containing 13 Litho Plates, and nearly 200 Illustrations. 6s. each. Vols. I. and II., THE BRITISH ISLES; Vols. III., IV., and V., THE CONTINENT. Vols. I. and II., bound together, are issued at 10s. 6d.
- Picturesque Mediterranean, The.** With a Series of Magnificent Illustrations from Original Designs by leading Artists of the day. Two Vols. Cloth, £2 2s. each.
- Pigeons, Fulton's Book of.** Edited by LEWIS WRIGHT. Revised, Enlarged, and Supplemented by the Rev. W. F. LUMLEY. With 50 Full-page Illustrations. *Popular Edition.* In One Vol., 10s. 6d. *Original Edition,* with 50 Coloured Plates and numerous Wood Engravings, 21s.
- Planet, The Story of Our.** By Prof. BONNEY, F.R.S. With Coloured Plates and Maps and about 100 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition,* 7s. 6d.
- Playfair, Lyon, Memoirs and Correspondence of, First Lord Playfair of St. Andrews.** By Sir WEMYSS REID. With Two Portraits. 7s. 6d.
- Police and Crime, Mysteries of. A General Survey of Wrong-doing and its Pursuit.** By Major ARTHUR GRIFFITHS. Two Vols. 21s.
- Polytechnic Series, The.** Practical Illustrated Manuals. (*A List will be sent on application.*)
- Poultry, The Book of.** By LEWIS WRIGHT. *Popular Edition.* Illustrated. 10s. 6d.
- Poultry, The Illustrated Book of.** By LEWIS WRIGHT. With Fifty Coloured Plates, and numerous Wood Engravings. *New Edition in Preparation.*
- Poultry Keeper, The Practical.** By LEWIS WRIGHT. With Eight Coloured Plates and numerous Illustrations in Text. *New and Enlarged Edition,* 3s. 6d.
- Practical Nursing of Infants and Children.** By F. C. MADDEN. 3s. 6d.
- "Punch," The History of.** By M. H. SPIELMANN. With nearly 170 Illustrations, Portraits, and Facsimiles. Cloth, 16s.; *Large Paper Edition,* £2 2s. net.
- Q's Works, Uniform Edition of.** 5s. each.
- * Dead Man's Rook.
 - * The Splendid Spur.
 - * The Delectable Duchy. Stories, Studies, and Sketches.
- The Astonishing History of Troy Town.
"I Saw Three Ships," and other Winter's Tales,
Noughts and Crosses.
Wandering Heath.
- * Cheap Illustrated Editions of these Works, 3s. 6d.
- Queen Summer; or, The Tournay of the Lily and the Rose.** Penned and Portrayed by WALTER CRANE. With 40 pages in Colours. 6s.
- Queen Victoria: A Personal Sketch.** By MRS. OLIPHANT. With 3 Rembrandt Plates and Numerous Illustrations. 3s. 6d.; half leather, 5s.
- Queen Victoria: Her Life in Portraits.** 6d. net; cloth, 1s. net.
- Queen Victoria, The Life and Times of.** By ROBERT WILSON. Complete in Two Vols. With numerous Illustrations. 21s.
- Queen's Empire, The.** Illustrated. Two Vols. 9s. each.
- Queen's London, The.** Exquisite Views of London and its Environs, and a fine series of Pictures of the Diamond Jubilee Procession. *Enlarged Edition,* 10s. 6d.
- Rabbit Keeper, The.** By "CUNICULUS." Illustrated. 3s. 6d.
- Railway Guides, Official.** With Illustrations on nearly every page, Maps, &c. Paper covers, 1s.; cloth, 1s. 6d.
- | | |
|--|--|
| London and North Western Railway.
Great Western Railway.
Midland Railway.
Great Northern Railway. | Great Eastern Railway.
London and South Western Railway.
London, Brighton and South Coast Railway.
South Eastern & Chatham Railway. |
|--|--|
- Abbreviated and Popular Editions of the above Guides can also be obtained. Paper covers, 3d. each.*
- Rivers of Great Britain: Descriptive, Historical, Pictorial.**
- Rivers of the South and West Coasts. With Frontispiece and Numerous Illustrations. 42s.
 - The Royal River: The Thames from Source to Sea. *Popular Edition,* 16s.
 - Rivers of the East Coast. With highly finished Engravings. *Popular Edition,* 16s.
- Robinson Crusoe.** *Cassell's Fine-Art Edition. Cheap Edition,* 3s. 6d.
- Ronner, Henriette, the Painter of Cat-Life and Cat-Character.** By M. H. SPIELMANN. *Large-paper Edition,* 10s.
- Royal Academy Pictures, 1901.** With 5 Rembrandt Plates and about 200 Exquisite Reproductions. 7s. 6d.
- Ruskin, John: A Sketch of his Life, his Work, and his Opinions.** With Personal Reminiscences. By M. H. SPIELMANN. With numerous Portraits and other Illustrations. 5s.
- Russo-Turkish War, Cassell's History of.** With about 400 Illustrations. *New Edition.* In Two Vols., 9s. each.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Saturday Journal, Cassell's.** Illustrated throughout. Yearly Vol., 7s. 6d. 6
- Scales of Heaven, The.** Narrative, Legendary and Meditative, with a few Sonnets. By the Rev. FREDERICK LANGBRIDGE. 5s.
- Scarlet and Blue; or, Songs for Soldiers and Sailors.** By JOHN FARMER. 5s.
Words only, paper, 6d.; cloth, 9d. *Cheap Edition*, 1d.
- Science for All.** Edited by Dr. ROBERT BROWN, M.A., F.L.S., &c. *Cheap Edition.* With over 1,700 Illustrations. Five Vols. 3s. 6d. each.
- Science Series, The Century.** Consisting of Biographies of Eminent Scientific Men. Edited by Sir HENRY ROSCOE, D.C.L., F.R.S., M.P. New Edition, 2s. 6d. each.
- Pasteur.** By PERCY FRANKLAND, F.R.S., and Mrs. FRANKLAND.
John Dalton and the Rise of Modern Chemistry. By Sir HENRY E. ROSCOE, F.R.S.
Major Rennell, F.R.S., and the Rise of English Geography. By Sir CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S., President of the Royal Geographical Society.
Justus von Liebig: His Life and Work. By W. A. SHENSTONE.
The Herschels and Modern Astronomy. By Miss AGNES M. CLERKE.
Charles Lyell and Modern Geology. By Professor T. G. BONNEY, F.R.S.
J. Clerk Maxwell and Modern Physics. By R. T. GLAZEBROOK, F.R.S.
Humphry Davy, Poet and Philosopher. By T. E. THORPE, F.R.S.
Charles Darwin and the Theory of Natural Selection. By EDWARD B. FOULTON, M.A., F.R.S.
Michael Faraday: His Life and Work. By Prof. SILVANUS P. THOMPSON, F.R.S.
- Sea, The Story of the.** Edited by "Q." Illustrated. Complete in Two Vols., 9s. each. *Cheap Edition*, 5s. each.
- Shaftesbury, The Seventh Earl of, K.G., The Life and Work of.** By EDWIN HODDER. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition*, 3s. 6d.
- Shakespeare, The England of.** By E. GOADBY. With Full-page Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 224 pages, 2s. 6d.
- Shakespeare, The Plays of.** Edited by Prof. HENRY MORLEY. Complete in 13 Vols., cloth, in box, 21s.; also 39 Vols., cloth, in box, 21s.; half-morocco, cloth sides, 42s.
- Shakespeare, The Leopold.** With 400 Illustrations, and an Introduction by F. J. FURNIVALL. *Cheap Edition*, 3s. 6d. Cloth gilt, gilt edges, 5s.; roxburgh, 7s. 6d.
- Shakespeare, The Royal.** With 50 Full-page Illustrations. Complete in Three Vols. 15s. the set.
- Shakespeare, National Library Edition.** 37 Vols. Leather, 1s. 6d. net.
- Shaw, Alfred, Cricketer: His Career and Reminiscences.** Recorded by A. W. & PULLIN ("Old Ebor"). With a Statistical Chapter by ALFRED GASTON. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
- Sights and Scenes in Oxford City and University.** With 100 Illustrations after Original Photographs. In One Vol. 21s. net.
- Sketches, The Art of Making and Using.** From the French of G. FRAIPONT. By CLARA BELL. With Fifty Illustrations. 2s. 6d.
- Social England. A Record of the Progress of the People.** By Various Writers. Edited by H. D. TRAILL, D.C.L. *Illustrated Edition.* Vol. I. 12s. net. To be completed in Six Volumes.
- Sports and Pastimes, Cassell's Complete Book of.** *Cheap Edition*, 3s. 6d.
- Spending and Saving: A Primer of Thrift.** By ALFRED PINHORN. Illus. 1s.
- Star-Land.** By Sir ROBERT BALL, LL.D., &c. Illustrated. *New and Enlarged Edition*, 7s. 6d.
- Strange Adventures in Dicky-Bird Land.** Stories told by Mothers to amuse their Chicks. Overheard by R. KEARTON, F.Z.S. Illustrated from Photographs by C. KEARTON. Cloth, 3s. 6d.; cloth gilt, gilt edges, 5s.
- Sun, The Story of the.** By Sir ROBERT BALL, LL.D., &c. With Eight Coloured Plates and other Illustrations. *Cheap Edition*, 10s. 6d.
- Technical Instruction.** Edited by PAUL N. HASLUCK. Vol. I.—Practical Staircase Joinery. Vol. II.—Practical Metal Plate Work. Vol. III.—Practical Gasfitting. Vol. IV.—Practical Draughtsmen's Work. Vol. V.—Practical Plumber's Work. Vol. VI.—Practical Painting and Graining. 2s. each.
- Thames, The Tidal.** By GRANT ALLEN. With India Proof Impressions of 20 Magnificent Full-page Photogravure Plates, and many other Illustrations, after original drawings by W. L. WYLLIE, A.R.A. *New Edition*, cloth, 42s. net.
- "The Shop." The Story of the Royal Military Academy.** By CAPTAIN GUGGISBERG, R.E. With Coloured Plates and other Illustrations. 12s. 6d. net.
- Transvaal, Behind the Scenes in the.** By D. M. WILSON. 7s. 6d.
- Treasure Island. A Story of Pirates and the Spanish Main.** By R. L. STREVENSON. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition*, 2s. 6d. *People's Edition*, paper, 6d.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Uncle Tom's Cabin.** By HARRIET BEECHER STOWE. With upwards of 100 Original Illustrations. *Cheap Edition*, 5s.
- "Unicode": The Universal Telegraphic Phrase Book.** Pocket or Desk Edition, 2s. 6d. each.
- United States, Cassell's History of the.** By EDMUND OLLIER. With 600 Illustrations. Three Vols., 9s. each.
- Universal History, Cassell's.** Profusely Illustrated. *Cheap Edition.* In Four Vols., 5s. each.
- Vicat Cole, R.A., The Life and Paintings of.** Illustrated. In Three Vols., £3 3s.
- Wallace Collection at Hertford House, The.** By M. H. SPIELMANN. 1s.
- War Office, The: The Army and the Empire.** By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.P. 1s.
- War and Peace, Memories and Studies of.** By ARCHIBALD FORBES, LL.D. *Cheap Edition*, 6s.
- Wars of the Nineties, The.** A History of the Warfare of the last Ten Years of the 19th Century. Profusely Illustrated. In One Vol., 7s. 6d.
- Westminster Abbey, Annals of.** By E. T. BRADLEY (Mrs. A. MURRAY SMITH). Illustrated. With a Preface by the DEAN OF WESTMINSTER. *Cheap Edition*, 21s.
- Whist, Encyclopædia of the Game of.** By Sir WILLIAM CUSACK-SMITH, Bart. 2s. 6d.
- Wild Birds, Familiar.** Vols. I. & II., 3s. 6d. each. To be completed in 4 vols.
- Wild Flowers, Familiar.** By Prof. F. EDWARD HULME, F.L.S., F.S.A. With 240 Coloured Plates and Descriptive Text. *Cheap Edition.* In Six Vols., 3s. 6d. each.
- Wild Flowers Collecting Book.** In Six Parts, 4d. each.
- Wild Flowers Drawing and Painting Book.** In Six Parts, 4d. each.
- Wild Life at Home: How to Study and Photograph It.** By RICHARD KEARTON, F.Z.S. Profusely Illustrated from Photographs, taken direct from Nature, by C. KEARTON. 6s.
- Windsor Castle, The Governor's Guide to.** By the DUKE OF ARGYLL. Profusely Illustrated. Limp cloth, 1s. Cloth boards, gilt edges, 2s.
- Work.** The Illustrated Journal for Mechanics. Half-Yearly Vols. 4s. 6d. each.
- "Work" Handbooks.** A Series of Practical Manuals prepared under the Direction of PAUL N. HASLUCK, Editor of *Work*. Illustrated. Cloth, 1s. each.
- World of Wit and Humour, Cassell's.** With New Pictures and New Text. Complete in Two Vols., 6s. each.
- World of Wonders, The.** With 400 Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* Two Vols., 4s. 6d. each.

ILLUSTRATED MAGAZINES AND PRACTICAL JOURNAL

- The Quiver.** Monthly, 6d.
- Cassell's Magazine.** Monthly, 6d.
- Little Folks Magazine.** Monthly, 6d.
- The Magazine of Art.** Monthly, 1s. 4d.
- Cassell's Saturday Journal.** Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.
- Chums.** The Illustrated Paper for Boys. Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.
- The New Penny Magazine.** Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.
- Tiny Tots.** For the Very Little Ones. Monthly, 1d.
- Work.** The Journal for Mechanics. Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.
- Building World.** The Journal for the Building Trades. Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.
- The Gardener.** Weekly, 1d.; Monthly, 6d.

* * Full particulars of CASSELL & COMPANY'S Monthly Serial Publications will be found in CASSELL & COMPANY'S COMPLETE CATALOGUE, which may be had at all Booksellers, or will be sent post free on application to the Publishers.

CASSELL & COMPANY, LIMITED, Ludgate Hill, London.

Bibles and Religious Works.

Bible Biographies. Illustrated. 1s. 6d. each.

- The Story of Joseph. Its Lessons for To-day. By the Rev. GEORGE BAINTON.
 The Story of Moses and Joshua. By the Rev. J. TELFORD.
 The Story of Judges. By the Rev. J. WYCLIFFE GEDGE.
 The Story of Samuel and Saul. By the Rev. D. C. TOVEY.
 The Story of David. By the Rev. J. WILD.
 The Story of Jesus. In Verse. By J. R. MACDUFF, D.D.

Bible, Cassell's Guinea. With 900 Illustrations and Coloured Maps. Royal 4to
 Leather, 21s. net. Persian antique, with corners and clasps, 25s. net.

Bible Dictionary, Cassell's Concise. By the Rev. ROBERT HUNTER, LL.D.
 Illustrated *Cheap Edition*, 5s.

Bible Student in the British Museum, The. By the Rev. J. G. KITCHIN,
 M.A. *Entirely New and Revised Edition*, 1s. 4d.

Bunyan, Cassell's Illustrated. With 200 Original Illustrations. 3s. 6d. and 7s. 6d.

The Child's Bible. With 100 New Full-page Plates, including 12 in colour.
 Handsomely bound in cloth gilt, gilt edges, 10s. 6d.

Child's Life of Christ, The. Complete in One Handsome Volume, with about
 200 Original Illustrations. *Cheap Edition*, cloth, 7s. 6d.; or with 6 Coloured Plates,
 cloth, gilt edges, 10s. 6d.

Church of England, The. A History for the People. By the Very Rev. H. D. M.
 SPENCE, D.D., Dean of Gloucester. Illustrated. Complete in 4 Vols., 6s. each.

Church Reform in Spain and Portugal. By the Rev. H. E. NOYES, D.D.
 Illustrated. 2s. 6d.

Commentary (Bible) for English Readers. Edited by Bishop ELLICOTT.
 With Contributions by eminent Scholars and Divines:—

- New Testament. *Popular Edition*. Unabridged. Three Vols., 6s. each.
 Old Testament. *Popular Edition*. Unabridged. Five Vols., 6s. each.

Commentary, The Bible. Edited by Bishop ELLICOTT. Handy Volume
 Edition. Suitable for School and General Use.

Genesis. 3s. 6d.	Leviticus. 3s.	Deuteronomy. 2s. 6d.
Exodus. 3s.	Numbers. 2s. 6d.	
St. Matthew. 3s. 6d.	Romans. 2s. 6d.	Peter, Jude, and John. 3s.
St. Mark. 3s.	Colossians, Thessalonians, and Timothy. 3s.	The Revelation. 3s.
St. Luke. 3s. 6d.	Titus, Philemon, Hebrews, and James. 3s.	An Introduction to the New Testament. 2s. 6d.
St. John. 3s. 6d.		
The Acts of the Apostles. 3s. 6d.		

Doré Bible. With 200 Full-page Illustrations by GUSTAVE DORÉ. *Popular Edition*. In One Vol. 15s. Also in leather binding. (*Price on application*.)

Early Christianity and Paganism. By the Very Rev. H. D. M. SPENCE, D.D.
 Illustrated. 21s.

Early Days of Christianity, The. By the Very Rev. Dean FARRAR, D.D., F.R.S.
 LIBRARY EDITION. Two Vols., 24s.; morocco, £2 2s.
 POPULAR EDITION. In One Vol.; cloth, gilt edges, 7s. 6d.; tree-calf, 15s.
 CHEAP EDITION. Cloth gilt, 3s. 6d.

Family Prayer-Book, The. Edited by the Rev. Canon GARBETT, M.A., and
 the Rev. S. MARTIN. With Full-page Illustrations. *New Edition*. Cloth, 7s. 6d.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

"Graven in the Rock"; or, the Historical Accuracy of the Bible confirmed by reference to the Assyrian and Egyptian Sculptures in the British Museum and elsewhere. By the Rev. Dr. SAMUEL KINNS, F.R.A.S., &c. &c. Illustrated. *Library Edition*, in Two Volumes, cloth, with top edges gilded, 75s.

"Heart Chords." A Series of Works by Eminent Divines. In cloth, 1s. each.

My Father. By the Right Rev. Ashton Oxenden, late Bishop of Montreal.

My Bible. By the Rt. Rev. W. Boyd Carpenter, Bishop of Ripon.

My Emotional Life. By Preb. Chadwick, D.D.

My Body. By the Rev. Prof. W. G. Blaikie, D.D.

My Soul. By the Rev. F. B. Power, M.A.

My Growth in Divine Life. By the Rev. Prebendary Reynolds, M.A.

My Hereafter. By the Very Rev. Dean Bickersteth.

My Aids to the Divine Life. By the Very Rev. Dean Boyle.

My Sources of Strength. By the Rev. E. E. Jenkins, M.A.

My Comfort in Sorrow. By Hugh Macmillan, D.D.

Helps to Belief. Helpful Manuals on the Religious Difficulties of the Day. Edited by the Rev. TEIGNMOUTH-SHORE, M.A., Canon of Worcester. 1s. each.

MIRACLES. By the Rev. Brownlow Maitland, M.A. | **THE ATONEMENT.** By William Connor Magee, D.D., late Archbishop of York.

Holy Land and the Bible, The. A Book of Scripture Illustrations gathered in Palestine. By the Rev. CUNNINGHAM GEIKIE, D.D. *Cheap Edition*, cloth gilt, 7s. 6d. Also *Superior Edition*, with 24 Colotype Plates, cloth gilt, gilt edges, 10s. 6d.

Life of Christ, The. By the Very Rev. Dean FARRAR, D.D., F.R.S.

CHEAP EDITION. With 16 Full-page Plates. Cloth gilt, 3s. 6d.

POPULAR EDITION. With 16 Full-page Plates. Cloth gilt, gilt edges, 7s. 6d.

ILLUSTRATED 4th EDITION. Cloth, gilt edges, 7s. 6d.

Life and Work of the Redeemer. Illustrated. 6s.

Life of Lives. Further Studies in the Life of Christ. By the Very Rev. Dean FARRAR. 15s.

Matin and Vesper Bells. Earlier and Later Collected Poems (Chiefly Sacred). By J. R. MACDUFF, D.D. With Frontispiece. Two Vols. 7s. 6d. the set.

Methodism, Side-Lights on the Conflicts of, During the Second Quarter of the Nineteenth Century, 1827-1852. Cloth, 8s. *Cheap Edition.* Unabridged. Cloth, 3s. 6d.

Moses and Geology; or, the Harmony of the Bible with Science. By the Rev. SAMUEL KINNS, Ph.D., F.R.A.S. Illus. *Library Edition*, 10s. 6d.

Old and New Testaments, Plain Introductions to the Books of the. Containing Contributions by many Eminent Divines. In Two Vols., 3s. 6d. each.

Plain Introductions to the Books of the Old Testament. 336 pages. Edited by Bishop ELLICOTT. 3s. 6d.

Plain Introductions to the Books of the New Testament. 304 pages. Edited by Bishop ELLICOTT. 3s. 6d.

Protestantism, The History of. By the Rev. J. A. WYLIE, LL.D. Containing upwards of 600 Original Illustrations. *Cheap Edition.* In Three Vols., 3s. 6d. each.

"Quiver" Yearly Volume, The. With about 600 Original Illustrations and Coloured Frontispiece. 7s. 6d. Also Monthly, 6d.

St. George for England and other Sermons preached to Children. *Fifth Edition.* By the Rev. Canon TEIGNMOUTH-SHORE, M.A. 5s.

St. Paul, The Life and Work of. By the Very Rev. Dean FARRAR, D.D., F.R.S.

ILLUSTRATED 4th EDITION. 7s. 6d.

CHEAP EDITION. With 16 Full-page Plates, cloth gilt, 3s. 6d.

LIBRARY EDITION. Two Vols., cloth, 24s.; calf, 42s.

ILLUSTRATED EDITION, One Vol., £1 1s.; morocco, £2 2s.

POPULAR EDITION. Cloth, gilt edges, 7s. 6d.

Shortened Church Services and Hymns, suitable for use at Children's Services. Compiled by the Rev. Canon TEIGNMOUTH-SHORE. *Enlarged Edition.* 1s.

"Six Hundred Years"; or, Historical Sketches of Eminent Men and Women who have more or less come into contact with the Abbey and Church of Holy Trinity, Minories, from 1293 to 1893, and some account of the Incumbents, the Fabric, the Plate, &c. &c. By the Vicar, the Rev. Dr. SAMUEL KINNS, F.R.A.S., &c. &c. With 65 Illustrations. 10s. 6d. net.

"Sunday": Its Origin, History, and Present Obligation. By the Ven. Archdeacon HESSEY, D.C.L. *Fifth Edition*, 7s. 6d.

Educational Works and Students' Manuals.

- Alphabet, Cassell's Pictorial.** Mounted on Linen, with Rollers, 2s.
Mounted with Rollers, and Varnished, 2s. 6d.
- Arithmetic: Howard's Art of Reckoning.** By C. F. HOWARD. Paper, 1s.; cloth, 2s. *Enlarged Edition*, 5s.
- Arithmetics, The "Belle Sauvage."** By GEORGE RICKS, B.Sc. Lond. With Test Cards. (*List on application*.)
- Atlas, Cassell's Popular.** Containing 24 Coloured Maps. 1s. 6d.
- Blackboard Drawing.** By W. E. SPARKES. With 52 Full-page Illustrations. 5s.
- Book-Keeping.** By THEODORE JONES. FOR SCHOOLS, 2s.; or cloth, 3s. FOR THE MILLION, 2s.; or cloth, 3s. Books for Jones's System, Ruled Sets of, 2s.
- British Empire Map of the World.** By G. R. PARKIN and J. G. BARTHOLOMEW, F.R.G.S. Mounted or Folded. 25s.
- Chemistry, The Public School.** By J. H. ANDERSON, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- Cookery for Schools.** By LIZZIE HERITAGE. 6d.
- Dulce Domum.** Rhymes and Songs for Children. Edited by JOHN FARMER. Old Notation and Words, 5s. N.B.—The Words of the Songs (with the Airs both in Tonic Sol-Fa and Old Notation) can be had in Two Parts, 6d. each.
- England, A History of.** From the Landing of Julius Cæsar to the Present Day. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.A. *Revised Edition*. Fully Illustrated. 5s.
- English Literature, A First Sketch of,** from the Earliest Period to the Present Time. By Prof. HENRY MORLEY. 7s. 6d.
- Euclid, Cassell's.** Edited by Prof. WALLACE, M.A. 1s.
- Euclid, The First Four Books of.** *New Edition*. In paper, 6d.; cloth, 9d.
- "Eyes and No Eyes" Series, Cassell's.** By ARABELLA BUCKLEY. With numerous Illustrations and Coloured Plates. Books I. and II., 4d. each. Books III. to VI., 6d. each.
- Farm Crops.** By JOHN WRIGHTSON, M.R.A.C., etc. Fully Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
- Founders of the Empire.** By PHILIP GIBBS. Illustrated. Cloth, 1s. 8d.; bevelled boards, 2s. 6d.
- French, Cassell's Lessons in.** *New and Revised Edition*. In Two Parts. Cloth, 2s. each. Complete in One Vol., 3s. 6d. Key, 1s. 6d.
- French Lessons in French.** By F. P. De CHAMPTASSIN, B.ès L., B.ès Sc. 2s.
- French-English and English-French Dictionary.** 3s. 6d. or 5s.
- Galbraith and Haughton's Scientific Manuals.**
Astronomy, 5s. Euclid, Books I., II., III., 2s. 6d. Books IV., V., VI., 2s. 6d. Mathematical Tables, 3s. 6d. Optics, 2s. 6d. Hydrostatics, 3s. 6d. Algebra, Part I., cloth, 2s. 6d. Complete, 7s. 6d. Tides and Tidal Currents, with Tidal Cards, 3s.
- Gaudeamus.** Songs for Colleges and Schools. Edited by JOHN FARMER. 5s.
Words only, paper, 6d.; cloth, 9d.
- Geography, A Practical Method of Teaching.** By J. H. OVERTON, F.G.S. Book I.—England and Wales. Book II.—Europe. 6d. each.
- Geometry, First Elements of Experimental.** By PAUL BERT. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
- German Dictionary, Cassell's.** German-English, English-German. *Cheap Edition*, cloth, 3s. 6d.; half-morocco, 5s.
- German Reading, First Lessons in.** By A. JÄGST. Illustrated. 1s.
- Hand and Eye Training.** By GEORGE RICKS, B.Sc., and JOSEPH VAUGHAN. Illustrated. Vol. I., Designing with Coloured Papers; Vol. II., Cardboard Work. 2s. each. Vol. III., Colour Work and Design. 3s.
- Hand and Eye Training.** By G. RICKS, B.Sc. Two Vols., with 16 Coloured Plates in each. 6s. each.
- Historical Cartoons, Cassell's Coloured.** Size 4½ in. x 35 in., 2s. each. Mounted on canvas and varnished, with rollers, 5s. each. (Descriptive Pamphlet, 16 pp., 1d.)
- In Danger's Hour; or, Stout Hearts and Stirring Deeds.** A Book of Adventures & for School and Home. With Four Coloured Plates and numerous Illustrations. Cloth, 1s. 8d. Bevelled boards, 2s. 6d.
- Latin Dictionary, Cassell's.** (Latin-English and English-Latin.) 3s. 6d.; half-morocco, 5s.
- Latin Primer, The First.** By Prof. J. P. POSTGATE. 1s.
- Latin Primer, The New.** By Prof. J. P. POSTGATE. 2s. 6d.
- Latin Prose for Lower Forms.** By M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- Laws of Every-day Life.** For the Use of Schools. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.A. 1s. 6d.
- Little Folks' History of England.** By ISA CRAIG-KNOX. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

- Making of the Home, The.** By Mrs. SAMUEL A. BARNETT. 1s. 6d.
Map Building for Schools. A Practical Method of Teaching Geography (England and Wales). By J. H. OVERTON, F.G.S. 6d.
Marlborough Books: Arithmetic Examples, 3s. French Exercises, 3s. 6d. French Grammar, 2s. 6d. German Grammar, 3s. 6d.
Mechanics, Applied. By JOHN PERRY, M.E., D.Sc., &c. Illustrated. 7s. 6d.
Mechanics, Cassell's Cyclopædia of. 7s. 6d. Profusely Illustrated.
Mechanics for Young Beginners. By the Rev. J. G. EASTON, M.A. *Cheap Edition*, 2s. 6d.
Mechanics and Machine Design, Numerical Examples in Practical. By R. G. BLAINE, M.E. *New Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* With 79 Illus. 2s. 6d.
Metric Charts, Cassell's Approved. Two Coloured Sheets, 42 in. by 22½ in., illustrating by Designs and Explanations the Metric System. 1s. each. Mounted with Rollers, 3s. each. The two in one, with Rollers, 5s.
Models and Common Objects, How to Draw from. By W. E. SPARKES. Illustrated. 3s.
Models, Common Objects, and Casts of Ornament, How to Shade from. By W. E. SPARKES. With 25 Plates by the Author. 3s.
Natural History Coloured Wall Sheets, Cassell's New. Consisting of 16 subjects. Size, 39 by 31 in. Mounted on rollers and varnished. 3s. each.
Object Lessons from Nature. By Prof. L. C. MIALL, F.L.S., F.G.S. Fully Illustrated. *New and Enlarged Edition.* Two Vols. 1s. 6d. each.
Physiology for Schools. By ALFRED T. SCHOFIELD, M.D., M.R.C.S., &c. Illustrated. 1s. 6d. Three Parts, paper covers, 5d. each; or cloth limp, 6d. each.
Poetry for Children, Cassell's. 6 Books, 1d. each; or complete in One Vol., limp cloth, 6d.
Popular Educator, Cassell's. With Illustrations, Coloured Plates, and Maps in Colours. *Cheap Edition.* In Eight Vols., 5s. each.
Readers, Cassell's "Belle Sauvage." An Entirely New Series. Fully Illustrated. Strongly bound in cloth. (*List on application.*)
Reader, The Citizen. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.A. Cloth, 1s. 6d.; also a Scottish Edition, cloth, 1s. 6d.
Readers, Cassell's Classical. Vol. I., 1s. 8d.; Vol. II., 2s. 6d.
Reader, The Temperance. By J. DENNIS HIRD. 1s. or 1s. 6d.
Readers, Cassell's "Higher Class." (*List on application.*)
Readers, Cassell's Readable. Illustrated. (*List on application.*)
Readers for Infant Schools, Coloured. Three Books. 4d. each.
Readers, Geographical, Cassell's New. Illustrated. (*List on application.*)
Readers, The Modern Geographical. Illustrated throughout. (*List on application.*)
Readers, The Modern School. Illustrated. (*List on application.*)
Rolit. An entirely novel system of learning French. By J. J. TYLOR. 3s.
Round the Empire. By G. R. PARKIN. With a Preface by the Rt. Hon. the EARL OF ROSEBERY, K.G. Fully Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
R. H. S. Curves. By Prof. R. H. SMITH. Set of 23 Scaled Curve Templates. 10s. 6d. per set.
Sculpture, A Primer of. By E. ROSCOR MULLINS. Illustrated. 2s. 5d.
Shakspere's Plays for School Use. Illustrated. 6d. each.
Spelling, A Complete Manual of. By J. D. MORELL, LL.D. Cloth, 1s. *Cheap Edition*, stiff cloth, 6d.
Technical Educator, Cassell's. A New Cyclopædia of Technical Education, with Coloured Plates and Engravings. Complete in Six Vols., 3s. 6d. each.
Technical Manuals, Cassell's. Illustrated throughout. 16 Vols., from 2s. to 4s. 6d. (*List free on application.*)
Technology, Manuals of. Edited by Prof. AYRTON, F.R.S., and RICHARD WORMELL, D.Sc., M.A. Illustrated throughout. (*List on application.*)
Things New and Old; or, Stories from English History. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.A. Illustrated. Cloth. Seven Books, from 9d. to 1s. 8d.
Troubadour, The. Selections from English Verse. Edited and Annotated by PHILIP GIBBS. 1s. 6d.
World of Ours, This. By H. O. ARNOLD-FORSTER, M.A. Fully Illustrated. *Cheap Edition*, 2s. 6d.
Young Citizen, The; or, Lessons in our Laws. By H. F. LESTER, B.A. Fully Illustrated. 7s. 6d. Also issued in Two Parts under the title of "Lessons in Our Laws." 1s. 6d. each.

Books for Young People.

- Topsy Turvy Tales.** By S. H. HAMER. With Four Coloured Plates and other Drawings by HARRY B. NEILSON. 1s. 6d.
- Songs of Near and Far Away.** By E. RICHARDSON. With Numerous Coloured and other Illustrations. 6s.
- The Jungle School; or, Dr. Jibber-Jabber Burchall's Academy.** By S. H. HAMER. With Four Coloured Plates and other Illustrations by HARRY B. NEILSON. Crown 4to, Picture Boards, 1s. 6d.
- Peter Piper's Peepshow; or, All the Fun of the Fair.** By S. H. HAMER. With Four Coloured Plates and other Illustrations by HARRY B. NEILSON and LEWIS BAUMER. Crown 4to, Picture Boards, 1s. 6d.
- Animal Land for Little People.** By S. H. HAMER. Illustrated from Photographs and Original Drawings, and containing Four Coloured Plates. Crown 4to, Picture Boards, 1s. 6d.
- Master Charlie.** By C. S. HARRISON and S. H. HAMER. Illustrated. Coloured boards. 1s. 6d.
- Whys and Other Whys; or, Curious Creatures and Their Tales.** By S. H. HAMER. With Illustrations by HARRY B. NEILSON. Paper boards, 2s. 6d.; cloth boards, 3s. 6d.
- Micky Magee's Menagerie; or, Strange Animals and their Doings.** By S. H. HAMER. With 8 Coloured Plates and other Illustrations by HARRY B. NEILSON. Coloured Boards, 1s. 6d.
- Two Old Ladies, Two Foolish Fairies, and a Tom Cat.** The Surprising Adventures of Tuppy and Tue. A New Fairy Story. By MAGGIE BROWNE. With Four Coloured Plates and Illustrations in text. Cloth, 3s. 6d.
- The Victoria Painting Book for Little Folks.** Containing about 300 Illustrations suitable for Colouring, 1s.
- "Little Folks" Half-Yearly Volume.** Containing 480 pages of Letterpress, with Six Full-page Coloured Plates, and numerous other Pictures printed in Colour. Picture boards, 3s. 6d.; or cloth gilt, gilt edges, 5s.
- Bo-Peep.** A Treasury for the Little Ones. Yearly Volume. With Original Stories and Verses. Illustrated with Eight Full-page Coloured Plates, and numerous other Pictures printed in Colour. Elegant picture boards, 2s. 6d.; cloth, 3s. 6d.
- Tiny Tots.** Yearly Volume. Illustrated. Boards, 1s. 4d.; cloth, 1s. 6d.
- Beneath the Banner.** Being Narratives of Noble Lives and Brave Deeds. By F. J. CROSS. Illustrated. Limp cloth, 1s.; cloth boards, 2s.
- Good Morning! Good Night!** Morning and Evening Readings for Children, by F. J. CROSS. Illustrated. Limp cloth, 1s.; cloth boards, 2s.
- Notable Shipwrecks.** *Cheap Edition. Revised and Enlarged.* Limp cloth, 1s. *Superior Edition*, with Full-page Illustrations. 2s.
- Beyond the Blue Mountains.** By L. T. MEADE. Illustrated. 5s.
- Pleasant Work for Busy Fingers.** By MAGGIE BROWNE. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
- Magic at Home.** By Prof. HOFFMAN. Fully Illustrated. 3s. 6d.
- Three-and-Sixpenny Books for Girls.** With Original Illustrations. Cloth gilt, 3s. 6d. each.
- | | | | |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A Girl Without Ambition. | } By Isabel Stuart | Sisters Three. | } By Jessie Man- |
| Mrs. Pederson's Niece. | | Tom and Some Other Girls. |  | sergh (Mrs. C. De Horne Valzey). |
| The King's Command. | } Robson. | Polly. | } By L. T. Meade. |
| A Story for Girls. | | The Palace Beautiful. |  | A Sweet Girl Graduate. |
| By Maggie Symington. | | A World of Girls. | Merry Girls of England. |
| The Rebellion of Lil Carrington. | } By L. T. Meade. | Five Stars in a Little Pool. | By Edith Car- |
| Red Rose and Tiger Lily. | | ington. | Bound by a Spell. |
| Hashful Fifteen. | | By the Hon. Mrs | Greene. |
| The Medicine Lady. | | | |
| (also People's Edition, 6d.) | | | |

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

Three-and-Sixpenny Books for Boys. each. Cloth gilt.

Under the Great Bear. By Kirk Munroe.
The Three Homes. By the Very Rev. Dean Farrar.
Capture of the "Estrella." The. By Commander Claud Harding, R.N.
Red Terror, The; A Story of the Paris Commune. By Edward King.
Under Bayard's Banner.
Locomotive Engine, The. By Henry Frith.
Biography of a.

Half-Crown Volumes.

Rogues of the Fiery Cross. By S. Walkey.
The Queen's Scarlet. By G. Manville Fenn.
The Master of the Strong Hearts. By E. S. Brooks. Illustrated.
Told Out of School. By A. J. Daniels.
Lost Among White Africans. By David Ker.
Pictures of School Life and Boyhood. Edited by Percy Fitzgerald.
Little Mother Bunch. By Mrs. Molesworth. Illustrated.
Heroes of the Indian Empire. By Ernest Foster.
Lost on Du Corrig. By Standish O'Grady.
Through Trial to Triumph. By Madeline Bonavia Hunt.
Strong to Suffer. By E. Wynne.
By Fire and Sword. By Thomas Archer.
Fairy Tales in Other Lands. By Julia Goddard.

Books by Edward S. Ellis. Illustrated.

Blazing Arrow.
Chieftain and Scout.
Iron Heart, War Chief of the Iroquois.
Red Jacket, The Last of the Senecas.
In Red Indian Trails.
Unconquering a King.
Two Boys in Wyoming.
Scouts and Comrades; or, Tecumseh, Chief of the Shawanoes.
Klondike Nuggets.
Cowmen and Rustlers.
A Strange Craft and its Wonderful Voyage.

Tad: or, "Getting Even" with Him.

Two-Shilling Story Books. All Illustrated.

Fluffy and Jack.
The Mystery of Master Max.
Uncle Silvio's Secret.
Wrong from the First.

Pontiac, Chief of the Ottawas. A Tale of the Siege of Detroit.
In the Days of the Pioneers.
The Phantom of the River.
The Great Cattle Trail.
Shod with Silence.
The Path in the Ravine.
The Hunters of the Ozark.
The Camp in the Mountains.
Ned in the Woods. A Tale of Early Days in the West.
Down the Mississippi.
The Last War Trail.

Ned on the River. A Tale of Indian River Warfare.
Footprints in the Forest.
The Rubber Hunters (formerly Up the Tapajos).
Ned in the Block House. A Story of Pioneer Life in Kentucky.
The Young Ranchers.
The Lost Trail.
Camp-Fire and Wigwam.
Lost in the Wilds.
Lost in Samoa. A Tale of Adventure in the Navigator Islands.

Books by Edward S. Ellis. Illustrated. 1s. 6d. each.

Astray in the Forest.
Captured by Indians.

Wolf Ear the Indian.
The Daughter of the Chieftain.

The Four Cats of the Tip-pertons.
Poor Nelly.
In Mischief Again.
Peggy, and Other Tales.

The Boy Hunters of Kentucky.
Red Feather.

Eighteenpenny Story Books. All Illustrated throughout.

On Board the *Emeralda*.
Clare Linton's Friend.
Her Willful Way.
To School and Away.
All in a Castle Fair.
The Bravest of the Brave.
Dolly's Golden Slippers.

Up the Ladder.
Dick's Hero; and Other Stories.
The Chip Boy.
Roses from Thorns.
Faith's Father.

By Land and Sea.
Jeff and Jeff.
Stories of the Olden Time.
Rhoda's Reward.
Jack Marston's Anchor.
Ruth's Life-Work.

The "World in Pictures" Series. Illustrated throughout. *Cheap Edition*

1s. 6d. each.
All the Russias.
Chats about Germany.
Peeps into China.
The Land of Pyramids (Egypt).

Glimpses of South America.
The Eastern Wonderland (Japan).
The Land of Temples (India).
The Isles of the Pacific.

Wonders of Bodily Strength and Skill.

Wonderful Balloon Ascents.

With Eight Full-page Illustrations in

With Redskins on the Warpath. By S. Walkey.
The Champion of Odin. By J. F. Hodgetts.
For Fortune and Glory. By Lewis Hough.
"Follow my Leader." By Tabbot Haines Reel.
For Glory and Renown. By D. H. Parry.
With Claymors and Bayonets. By Colonel Percy Groves.

Robin's Ride. By Ellinor Davenport Adams.
Perils Afloat and Brigands Ashore. By A. Elwes.
Fairway Island. By Horace Hutchinson.
At the South Pole. By W. H. G. Kingston.
The True Robinson Crusoes.
Heroes of Every-Day Life. By Laura Lane.
Home Chat with Our Young Folks.
Cost of a Mistake.
The White House at Inch Gow. } By Sarah Pitt.
Adam Hepburn's Vow. By Annie S. Swan.
No. XIII.; or, The Story of the Lost Vestal.
By Emma Marshall.
To the Death. By R. D. Chetwode.
An Old Boy's Yarns. By Harold Avery.
Freedom's Sword. By Annie S. Swan.
Wanted—a King. By Maggie Browne.

Selections from Cassell & Company's Publications.

One Shilling Story Books.

A Pair of Primroses.	The Heiress of Wyvern Court.	Their Road to Fortune.
Ella's Golden Year.	Little Queen Mab.	Won by Gentleness.

Cassell's Standard Library. Cloth gilt, 1s. each net.

Adam Bede. By GEORGE ELIOT.	The Last of the Mohicans. By FENIMORE COOPER.
Westward Ho! By CHARLES KINGSLEY.	American Humour. Selected.
The Old Curiosity Shop. By CHARLES DICKENS.	Jane Eyre. By CHARLOTTE BRONTË.
Ivanhoe. By Sir WALTER SCOTT.	Handy Andy. By SAMUEL LOVER.
The Last Days of Pompeii. By LORD LYTTON.	Uncle Tom's Cabin. By HARRIET BEECHER STOWE.
Pride and Prejudice. By JANE AUSTEN.	The Prince of the House of David. By the Rev. J. H. INGRAHAM.

The World's Workers. A Series of New and Original Volumes by Popular Authors. With Portraits printed on a tint as Frontispiece. 1s. each.

John Cassell. By G. Holden Pike.	Sir Titus Salt and George Moore.
Richard Cobden.	George and Robert Stephenson.
Charles Haddon Spurgeon. By G. Holden Pike.	Charles Dickens.
General Gordon.	Handel.
David Livingstone.	Turner the Artist.
The Earl of Shaftesbury.	Sarah Robinson, Agnes Weston, and Mrs. Meredith.
Dr. Guthrie, Father Mathew, Elihu Burritt, Joseph Livesey.	Mrs. Somerville and Mary Carpenter.
George Müller and Andrew Reed.	

*** The above Works can also be had Three in One Vol., cloth, gilt edges, 3s.

Illustrated Books for the Little Ones. Containing interesting Stories. All Illustrated. 9d. each.

Bright Tales and Funny Pictures.	Bible Pictures for Boys and Girls.	Some Pretty Pets.
Merry Little Tales.	Firelight Stories.	Some Farm Friends.
Little Tales for Little People.	Sunlight and Shade.	Those Golden Sands.
Little People and Their Pets.	Hub-a-dub Tales.	Our Schoolday Hours.
Tales Told for Sunday.	Fine Feathers and Fluffy Fur.	Creatures Tame.
Sunday Stories for Small People.	Scrambles and Scrapes.	Creatures Wild.
Stories and Pictures for Sunday.	Tittle Tattle Tales.	Up and Down the Garden.
Thorns and Tangles.	Dumb Friends.	All Sorts of Adventures.
The Cuckoo in the Robin's Nest.	Surly Bob.	Wandering Ways.
	The Giant's Cradle.	The Cost of Revenge.
	Shag and Doll.	Clever Frank.
		The Ferryman of Brill.

Cassell's Picture Story Books. Each containing 60 pages. 6d. each.

Auntie's Stories.	Good-Night Stories.	Dewdrop Stories.
Birdie's Story Book.	Little Chimes.	

Books for the Little Ones. Fully Illustrated.

The Album for Home, School, and Play.	The Old Fairy Tales. With Original Illustrations. Cloth, 1s.
My Own Album of Animals.	Cassell's Swiss Family Robinson. Illustrated. Cloth, 3s. 6d.; gilt edges, 5s.
The Sunday Scrap Book. With Several Hundred Illustrations. Boards, 3s. 6d.	The New "Little Folks" Painting Book. Containing nearly 350 Outline Illustrations suitable for Colouring. 1s.
Cassell's Robinson Crusoe. With 100 Illustrations. Cloth, 3s. 6d.	
Cassell's Pictorial Scrap Book. 6d. each.	

**CASSELL & COMPANY, Limited, Ludgate Hill, London.
Paris, New York & Melbourne.**

